UMASS/AMHERST
312066015287583

DATE DUE			

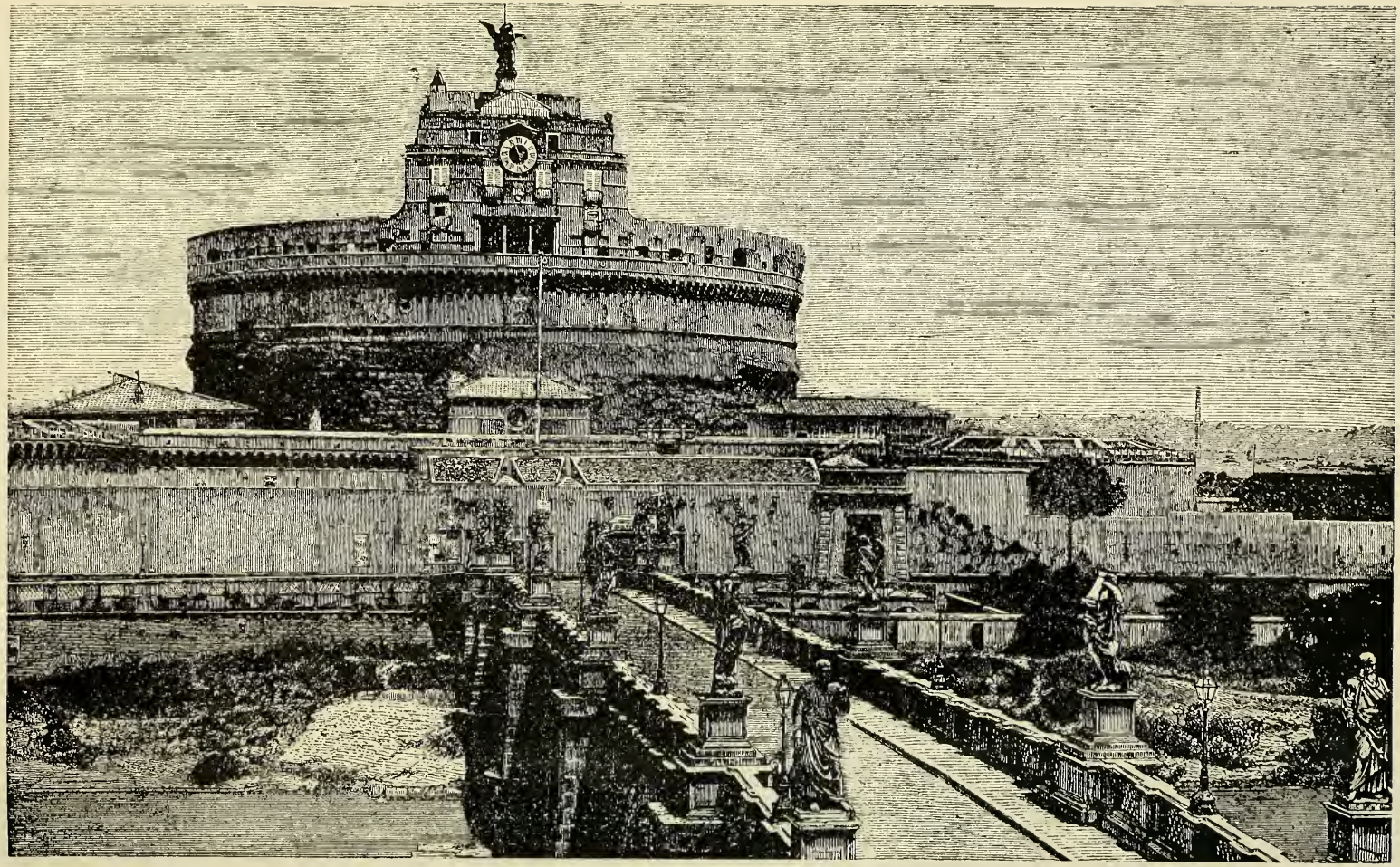
UNIVERSITY OF MASSACHUSETTS
LIBRARY

CARD

D
103
F87
1903

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
Boston Library Consortium Member Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/modernhistoryfro1952fred



CASTLE AND BRIDGE OF ST. ANGELO.

MODERN HISTORY;

FROM THE

COMING OF CHRIST

And Change of the Roman Republic into an Empire,

TO THE

Present Time.

With Questions, Adapted to the Use of Schools.

BY PETER FREDET, D.D.

PROFESSOR OF HISTORY IN ST. MARY'S COLLEGE, BALTIMORE,
AUTHOR OF "ANCIENT HISTORY," &C., &C.

Historia testis temporum, lux veritatis, vita memoriæ, magistra vitæ, nuntia vetustatis
Cicer. lib. ii. *de Orat*, c. ix., n. 36.

New Edition, Revised and Enlarged.

JOHN MURPHY COMPANY,

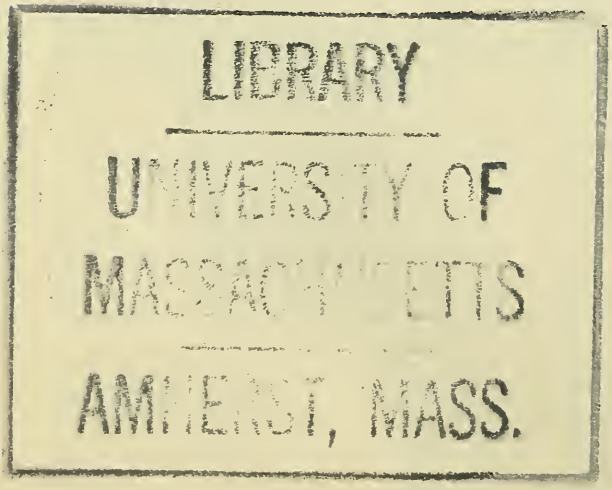
BALTIMORE, MD.:
200 W. LOMBARD STREET.

NEW YORK:
70 FIFTH AVENUE.

ENTERED according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1867, by JOHN MURPHY, in the Clerk's Office, of the District Court of Maryland.

ENTERED according to the Act of Congress, in the year, 1888, by JOHN MURPHY & Co., in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

ENTERED according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1903, by JOHN MURPHY COMPANY, in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.



Publishers' Preface

The revision of the second volume of Fredet's History has been made with the same painstaking care which the publishers felt it their duty to bestow upon the first volume, and which secured so favorable a reception to it. It has been thought proper to bring the subject-matter as far as possible down to the present day, though, of course, the most recent events could only be given as facts. The features which met with a gratifying commendation in the revision of the first volume have been preserved. For the excellent maps, which are taken from the "Outlines of Mediæval and Modern History," we are indebted to the courtesy of President Myers, the author, and Ginn & Co., the publishers of this work.

Baltimore, May, 1903.

Author's Preface.

The utility of History as a branch of public and private instruction has always been admitted. Cicero calls it "the witness of ages, the torch of truth, the life of memory, the oracle of life, the interpreter of the past," and does not hesitate to say, that "to be ignorant of what has happened before one's birth, is nothing less than to remain in a continual state of childhood." (Cicer. *De orat.* *n.* xxxiv.) Plutarch informs us that Cato the Censor, whose name and eminent qualities reflected so much honor upon the last days of the Roman Republic, composed for his infant son, and, with his own hand, wrote in large characters a description of remarkable actions taken from the lives of illustrious Romans; in order, said he, that this child might be enabled, from his very infancy, and without leaving the paternal roof, to become acquainted with the great men of his country, and to imitate those ancient models of probity and virtue.

History is an immense repository, whence we may, with little labor, derive extensive knowledge, and draw many instructive and useful lessons; nor is there any study (except that of Religion) better calculated to improve all the faculties of the soul. By its means, the memory is furnished with a multitude of interesting events; the judgment continually improves, from the assiduous attention which is given to objects well deserving of notice; and experience, so necessary in life, is easily acquired, because we appropriate to ourselves that of others, and become wise at their expense. History conduces also wonderfully to the improvement of the heart: everywhere it affords moral examples adapted to the different stations and conditions of social life; everywhere it presents for imitation models of courage, of patriotism, probity, disinterestedness, generous sentiments, and heroic actions. Its pages, indeed, are frequently filled with the narrative of various crimes; but these it mentions only to inspire us with horror for them, and to convince every one that unruly passions, besides degrading humanity, generally prove the cause of the subversion of empires, not less than of the ruin of private individuals and families.

History gives us another very important instruction, in the continual change and succession of kingdoms and empires. There we behold the all-wise and

powerful Providence of God displaying itself in the course of human affairs; sometimes granting to his people good and virtuous rulers; at other times permitting political storms to burst forth, wars to rage, and wicked men to reign for the chastisement of nations; then restoring tranquillity, and rendering subservient to his designs, even those events in which our limited reason can perceive only the agency of creatures. Thus we are taught to humble ourselves under the mighty hand of God, to refer every prosperous effect to Him, as its only real and independent cause, and to expect from Him alone a lasting happiness.

These advantages are to be found chiefly in Modern History, which extending to many more countries than the history of former ages, presents us with more numerous and remarkable instances of the effects of divine justice upon kings and nations. It likewise abounds, much more than the periods long since past, in heroic deeds, and, including the times of the Christian era, exhibits a much greater multitude of personages worthy of being proposed as models of virtue, than could ever be afforded by the ancient Greeks and Romans. Hence, Modern History, though generally little known, should be considered as peculiarly important and useful: not indeed, as we find it in the works of many recent authors, such as Hume, Gibbon, and others, whose partiality, prejudice, or even irreligion, appears in almost every page of their works; but, as it ought to be presented to the reader, in a spirit of candor and impartiality, after a sincere and diligent research on the part of the writer.

The present course includes all the time which has elapsed from the coming of Christ, and even from the battle of Actium (B.C. 31.) to the age in which we live. Although a shorter duration than this is commonly, though arbitrarily, assigned to Modern History, we have thought proper to refer its beginning to the memorable epoch which is termed in the Scripture *the fulness of times* (Ephes. i. 10.), and which nearly coincides with the change of the Roman Republic into an Empire after the battle of Actium. Thus, in reckoning from the dispersion of the sons of Noe, and following the division of Sacred History into two chief parts, the *Old* and the *New Law*, we have a similar and very natural division of the civil history itself into two grand portions, the one *before*, the other *after* the coming of Christ; and whilst we take a view of the civilized world during the last nineteen hundred years, we also perceive the connection which it had with the Christian Church from her foundation.

To treat of each nation separately, is not the object of the present work; we are not writing a collection of particular histories, but a general one; nor, on the other hand, is it our intention to confine ourselves, as is too frequently done, to a meagre outline of names, dates, and facts, without mentioning their necessary circumstances; but, by selecting from the best historians of the different nations, whatever is most important and worthy of notice, to present, as far as possible, a detailed and connected view of the whole. Nothing more can be reasonably expected from an elementary course of this class: if it omits no essential fact or circumstance, and, at the same time, does not impede the progress of the narrative by introducing numberless events of secondary importance, surely nothing more can be desired in this respect, either for instruction or amusement. There is no other means of imparting, in an interesting manner, a sufficient knowledge of History. Should any disadvantage occasionally arise from this plan, it will be compensated by synoptical and chronological tables; and, moreover, facts of an extraordinary nature, or which have been commonly misrepresented in modern publications, will be illustrated by notes placed in the latter part of the volume.

As a conclusion of these preliminary remarks, and an immediate introduction to Modern History, some idea must be given of the political disturbances which so long agitated ancient Rome, and terminated in the destruction of the Commonwealth.

The Romans, by their invincible patience and constancy during seven hundred years, had conquered almost the whole of the then known world, viz. Italy, Gaul, Spain, Northern Africa, Egypt, Syria, Asia Minor, Greece, Illyria, etc. But, at the same time, all kinds of vices were introduced. Love of country, and respect for the laws were gradually superseded by luxury, avarice, intrigues, and an almost universal corruption. Public employments and dignities, the emoluments of which had increased, were solicited with extraordinary avidity; ambitious candidates sought only to flatter the people; and generals of the same character strained every nerve to gain the troops over to their party, even resorting to extravagant promises and presents, in order to attain their object.

Sulla, having obtained, after his great victories, the Dictatorship for life, proved to the world that Rome could endure a master; like him, Pompey and Julius Cæsar successively rendered themselves all-powerful. The violent death of the latter, who was slain in the Senate, augmented, instead of lessening the evil. There were now three competitors for the supreme power: Antony, Lepidus, and the young Octavius, grand-nephew and adopted son of Cæsar. During their triumvirate, all in Rome who were most remarkable for their courage and their opposition to tyranny, were destroyed: Cicero was put to death; Brutus and Cassius were defeated at Philippi; and with them expired the liberty of the Roman people.

Octavius and Antony, having removed the feeble Lepidus, made various agreements respecting the division of power; but the young Cæsar, more dexterous than his colleague, always found means to obtain the better share, gained the popular favor in Rome, and rapidly advanced to the sovereign authority. Antony, in his attempts to repair his losses, engaged in a civil war, which served only to accelerate his utter ruin: his defeat in the battle of Actium, and his death, which followed soon after, left Octavius undisputed master. This memorable event, which took place in the year 722 after the building of Rome, and 31 before the coming of Christ, brings us to the beginning of our course of Modern History, which includes eight parts or epochs, in the following order:

The first part comprises the time which elapsed from the battle of Actium (B.C. 31) to the accession of Constantine (A.D. 306), including 337 years.

The 2d.. ...from the accession of Constantine (A.D. 306) to the fall of the Roman Empire in the West (A.D. 476).....170 years.

The 3d.....from the fall of the Roman Empire in the West (A.D. 476) to its revival under Charlemagne (A.D. 800).....324 years.

The 4th.....from the revival of the Western Empire under Charlemagne (A.D. 800) to the beginning of the Crusades (A.D. 1095).....295 years.

The 5th.....from the beginning of the Crusades (A.D. 1095) to their termination (A.D. 1272).....177 years.

The 6th.....from the end of the Crusades (A.D. 1272) to the discovery of America (A.D. 1492).....220 years.

The 7th.....from the discovery of America (A.D. 1492) to the Treaty of Versailles, or Paris, in which the Independence of the United States was solemnly and universally acknowledged (A.D. 1783).....291 years.

The 8th.....from the Treaty of Paris (A.D. 1783) to A.D. 1902,.....119 years.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

FROM THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM (B. C. 31), TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE (A. D. 306).

	PAGE.
ROMAN EMPIRE	1
Augustus	1
Tiberius	13
Caligula	26
Claudius	29
Nero	32
Galba—Otho—Vitellius	39
Vespasian	44
Titus	52
Domitian	54
Nerva—Trajan	57
Adrian	60
Antoninus Pius	64
Marcus Aurelius	68
Commodus—Pertinax—Didius Julianus	69
Septimius Severus	70
Caracalla—Macrinus—Heliogabalus	79
Alexander Severus	80
Military Usurpers	86
Claudius II	88
Aurelian	90
Interregnum—Tacitus,	94
Probus	94
Carus, and his two sons Carinus and Numerian	96
Diocletian and Maximian; afterwards Constantius Chlorus and Galerius	96

PART II.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE (A. D. 306), TO THE DOWNFALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE IN THE WEST (A. D. 476).

	PAGE
Constantine the Great	103
Constantius, and his brothers Constantine II. and Constans	114
Julian	117
Jovian	121
Valentinian and Valens	122
Theodosius the Great—Gratian and Valentinian II.	125
Honorius and Arcadius	133
Valentinian III., in the West; in the East, Theodosius II., or the Younger	137
Marcian—Leo the Thracian, in the East—Last period and fall of the Western Empire	144

PART III.

FROM THE DOWNFALL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE (A. D. 476), TO ITS REVIVAL UNDER CHARLEMAGNE (A. D.) 809).

PAGE.

Foundation of the principal and most celebrated States of Europe 148
Anglo-Saxons in Great Britain—Hengist 148
Visigoths in Spain—Evaric, 150
Franks in Gaul—Clovis ... 151
Ostrogoths in Italy—Theodoric the Great 153
Emperors of Constantinople 157
Justin I..... 157
Glorious reign of Justinian 159
Justin II.—Tiberius II..... 170
Mauritius 174
Phocas 179
Heraclius 180
Rise of Mohammedanism... 183
Progress of Mohammedanism..... 186
Conquests of the Saracens in Syria, Palestine and Mesopotamia..... 186

PAGE.

Conquests of the Saracens in Egypt 189
.....in Persia, Rhodes and other countries 192
Dissensions among the Saracens 194
Prosperity of the Greek empire under Constantine Pogonatus 195
Conquests of the Saracens in Africa 197
.....in Spain..... 201
Saracens defeated in the East—Leo the Isaurian .. 203
Saracens defeated in France—Charles Martel, 204
Pepin, king of France 206
Charlemagne, king of France and Lombardy ... 210
Remarks on the state of civilization, learning, and particularly religion, during the third part of modern history 217

PART IV.

FROM THE REVIVAL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE (A. D. 800), TO THE BEGINNING OF THE CRUSADES (A. D. 1095).

PAGE.

Charlemagne, Emperor ... 222
Louis the Debonnaire, and his sons—Feudal system, 226
Arabian and Greek Empires during the ninth century 228
Spain during the ninth and tenth centuries 233
England during the ninth and tenth centuries 238
France and Germany in the tenth and eleventh centuries 244
Eastern nations in the tenth and eleventh centuries 247

PAGE.

Ireland, particularly during the tenth and eleventh centuries 251
Danish kings in England—Saxon line restored 254
Normans in England—William the Conqueror 256
Normans in Italy 260
Chivalry, particularly in Spain—Rise of the kingdom of Portugal 261
Affair of Investitures 263
Remarks on the Middle Ages—Truce of God 266

PART V.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE CRUSADES (A.D. 1095), TO THEIR END (A.D. 1272).

	PAGE
Origin and causes of the Crusades	274
First Crusade	275
General view of the first Crusade.—Return of the Crusaders	288
Kingdom of Jerusalem,	290
Second Crusade	293
Germany and Italy under Frederic I. (Barbarossa).—England and Ireland under Henry II. (Plantagenet)	296
Fall of the kingdom of Jerusalem	299
Third Crusade	302
Fourth Crusade	310
Fifth Crusade.—Foundation of the Latin empire of Constantinople	311
Wars throughout Europe	316
Conquests of Genghis Khan in Asia	323
Sixth Crusade	325
Seventh Crusade.—St. Louis	328
St. Louis continued.—Civil war in England	332
Eighth and last Crusade	334
Remarks on the Crusades.	338

PART VI.

FROM THE END OF THE CRUSADES (A.D. 1272), TO THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (A. D. 1492).

	PAGE
England, Wales, and Scotland, under kings Edward I. and II.	345
Germany under the emperor Rodolph of Hapsburg.—Commencement of the Helvetian Confederation,	346
Prosecution and abolition of the Knights Templars,	349
Progress of the Christians of Spain, and signal victories over the Moors	352
War between France and England	355
Edward III. of England and Philip VI. of France	355
Edward III. and John II.	360
Edward III. and Charles V.	364
Rise of the Ottoman empire, and its progress, till the battle of Nicopolis	368
Tamerlane and the Moguls.—Battle of Ancyra	373
Renewal of war between England and France	377
Henry V. and Charles VI.,	378
Henry VI. and Charles VII.	380
Fall of Constantinople	385
Mahomet II. continued	393
Mahomet II. and Hunniades	393
Mahomet II. and Scanderbeg	396
Mahomet II. and Peter d'Aubusson	399
Contest of the houses of Lancaster and York in England	401
Ferdinand and Isabella.—Final overthrow of the Moors in Spain	405
Remarks on the discoveries made during the sixth period of Modern History,	408

PART VII.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (A.D. 1492) TO THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES, OR PARIS, IN WHICH THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES WAS SOLEMNLY AND UNIVERSALLY ACKNOWLEDGED (A.D. 1783.)

	PAGE
Preliminary observations on America	411
Discovery of America.—Christopher Columbus	413
Portuguese Settlements in Asia	422
Decline of the Italian republics.—Wars for the possession of Italy.—Cardinal Ximenes.—Pope Leo X.	426
Luther and the Reformation	430
Charles V. and Francis I.	433
Charles V. and Soliman II.,	435
Conquest of Mexico.—Hernando Cortez	438
Conquest of Peru.—Francis Pizarro	449
Charles V. continued.—Accession of Philip II., and first transactions of his reign	452
England under the Tudors,	454
War against the Turks.—Siege of Malta.—Loss of Cyprus.—Battle of Lepanto	457
Philip II. continued.—The republic of Holland.—France under the last Valois and Henry IV.—General state of Europe in the beginning of the seventeenth century,	465
The Thirty Years' war	468
Civil war in England.—Commonwealth.—Restoration	471
British and French colonies in North America	477
Splendor of the Reign of Louis XIV.	478
War of Flanders.—Of Candia, etc.	481
War of Holland—and subsequent events till the League of Augsburg	483
League of Augsburg.—Revolution in England	488
Succession of Spain.—Death of Louis XIV	491
Decline of the Turks	498
Rise of Prussia and Russia.—Peter the Great.—Charles XII., king of Sweden	500
Western Europe, from the death of Louis XIV. in 1715 to the treaty of Vienna in 1735	502
Eastern Europe.—Thamas Kouli Khan, or Nadir Shah, the Persian conqueror, etc.	504
War of the succession of Austria.—The Pretender in England and Scotland,	506
Old French war, otherwise called War of Hanover, or Seven Years' war	510
Origin and progress of the American Revolution	512
War of Independence	516

PART VIII.

FROM THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES, OR PARIS, IN WHICH THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES WAS SOLEMNLY AND UNIVERSALLY ACKNOWLEDGED (A.D. 1783) TO THE YEAR OF OUR LORD 1902.

	PAGE
Formation of the Federal Constitution of the United States.—Washington, first president,.....	525
French Revolution,.....	527
Napoleon Bonaparte, General and Consul.....	538
Napoleon Bonaparte, Emperor,.....	543
Second American war,.....	548
View of the Civilized World, A.D.,1815–1844,...	551
Annexation of Texas.—Mexican war, and its consequences,.....	554
Disturbances and Revolutions in Europe,.....	564
Crimean War,.....	571
The Italian War,.....	573
European expeditions to China, Cochin-China and Mexico,.....	577
Civil War in the U. S.....	579
War in Schleswig-Holstein.—War in Italy and Germany,.....	588
Important events in Europe between 1866–1870,.....	591
France since 1871,.....	595
England until 1902.....	601
Europe since 1870,.....	607
Outlying Countries in Recent Times,.....	616
United States since 1876....	623

NOTES.

NOTE A.—Character and Death of Seneca, Lucan, etc.....	33
B.—The historian Josephus.....	44
C.—Number of Martyrs, during the general persecutions of the Church.....	99
D.—Attempt of the emperor Julian to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem.....	119
E.—Mohammed's pretended miracles.....	184
F.—Answer of Pope Zachary to a consultation of the French.....	206
G.—Temporal dominion of the Pope.....	208
H.—Popes of the Middle Ages.....	289
I.—Conquest of Ireland.....	299
J.—Prosecution and abolition of the Knights Templars	352
K.—Inquisition.....	405
L.—Bull of Alexander VI., called the Bull of Partition.	417
M.—Influence of the Roman Church on the improvement of science.—Affair of Galileo.—The Calendar	429
N.—Massacre of St. Bartholomew's day.....	467
O.—Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.....	488
P.—On religious persecution.....	670
Tables of contemporary Sovereigns.....	675
Chronological Table.....	687
QUESTIONS TO FREDET'S MODERN HISTORY.....	1

MODERN HISTORY.

PART I.

FROM THE BATTLE OF ACTIUM (B.C. 31), TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE (A.D. 306.)

ROMAN EMPIRE.

AUGUSTUS.—B.C. 31—A.D. 14.

On his return to Rome after the battle of Actium, Octavius, afterwards called Augustus, deliberated whether he should abdicate or retain the almost unlimited power which he possessed. He felt more inclined to the latter measure; but his mind was a prey to fear and anxiety, when he considered the love of the Roman people for liberty, and the danger to which, by preserving the supreme authority in his own hands, he would be unavoidably exposed.

Mæcenas' and Agrippa's advice.—To act the more prudently in a matter of such importance, he caused the alternative to be discussed in his presence by his two dearest and most trusty friends, Agrippa, a celebrated warrior, and Mæcenas, a profound politician. Dion Cassius the historian has transmitted to us the contradictory advice of these two great men. Agrippa first delivered his opinion, and, though a relative of Augustus, and the chief instrument of his victories, openly declared for a generous abdication of the supreme power into the hands of the senate and people. He represented the great danger of attempting to govern, as sovereign, men born and reared in a republic; nor did he fail to insist on the striking precedent of Julius Cæsar, who, a few

years before, had been killed in the senate, for hazarding a similar project.

Mæcenas was of a different opinion: to him the scheme of abdication appeared more brilliant than prudent; and he strenuously maintained that it would prove fatal to all parties. Were Augustus to descend to the condition of private life, his death would be sought and easily procured by his enemies; while, on the other hand, considering the violent storms which had lately shaken the republic, and looking over the broad extent of the Roman dominions, it was evident that Rome could no longer subsist without a monarch.

Augustus assumes the title "Imperator."—Division of provinces.—Augustus, having patiently heard his friends and thanked them for their advice, determined to follow the opinion of Mæcenas, without entirely rejecting that of Agrippa. He accordingly retained the sovereign power, but would not assume the title and insignia of a king, contenting himself with the name of *imperator*, a title which was frequently given to commanders of armies after a signal victory. His object was to effect a real change, and yet apparently to preserve the ancient form of government. The consuls and other public officers were appointed as regularly as before, and although subordinate and accountable to Augustus, exercised the same functions which they had to perform in the days of the Commonwealth. He also divided the provinces between himself and the Senate, to which body he assigned the nearest, as being the most peaceable; but reserved for himself such as were more exposed to the attacks of an enemy. He thus concentrated in himself the whole military power, by holding the command of the standing troops, which were stationed in those provinces only that were liable to invasion.

His conservative policy.—Notwithstanding the doubtful character of these measures, the use which Augustus made of his great authority, was truly beneficial to the Romans. "After twenty years continuance," says Velleius Paterculus, "the civil contests ended, foreign wars ceased, peace was re-established, hostilities were everywhere ended; vigor was restored to the laws, authority to the tribunals. . . . . The fields were again cultivated; sacred things were respected, and the lives and property

of the citizens placed in a state of security." * Nor did Rome and Italy alone reap the fruits of these happy improvements. The several provinces, before distracted by civil wars, or plundered and harassed through the avidity of their governors, now began to recover and to enjoy their former prosperity.

No sooner did Augustus see his authority well established in the Capital, than he set out (B.C. 27), to visit the various parts of the empire, Gaul, Spain, Greece, Asia Minor, Syria, etc. Residing in each for some time, he regulated the government, enacted suitable laws, and applied himself particularly to the repression of licentiousness, which he, although his own conduct was not blameless, justly considered as one of the greatest evils of the state.

Augustus as patron of letters.—The progress of science and literature formed one of the principal objects of his attention. Cicero, Sallust, and Cornelius Nepos having been, a short time before, snatched away by death, Augustus endeavored to repair this loss, by encouraging the genius of others so as to make them contend successfully with the Greek writers in eloquence and poetry. Foremost among these were Virgil, Horace, Ovid and Livy; all of whom enjoyed the uninterrupted favor of Augustus, except the poet Ovid, who, having witnessed some shameful disorders in the emperor's family, was, on that account, banished to Tomos, a town of Scythia near the Euxine Sea, where he ended his life the same day on which Livy died at Padua (A.D. 17). Livy left a complete history of Rome, from its foundation to his own time, consisting of 140 books, most of which are lost; still the few which have been preserved are sufficient to place their author in the first rank of historians, particularly for his noble and elegant style. Horace died almost suddenly, in the 56th year of his age (B.C. 8). Virgil having gone to Greece, where he expected to find the proper information and tranquillity necessary for the completion of his Æneid, was prevailed upon to return with Augustus

* Finita vicesimo anno bella civilia, sepulta externa, revocata pax, sopitus ubiquè armorum furor; restituta vis legibus, judiciis auctoritas. . . . . Rediit cultus agris, sacris honos, securitas hominibus, certa cuique rerum suarum possessio.—*Vell. Patere Hist., part 2d.*

to Rome. Although laboring under indisposition, he embarked on the Adriatic; the voyage augmented the violence of his disease, and he expired on his arrival at Brundusium, at the age of 51 years (B.C. 19). His remains were interred at Naples, and on his tomb was placed the following epitaph composed, it is believed, by himself; it contains, in two verses, the place of his birth, that of his death and burial, and the subjects of his various poems:

> I sang flocks, tillage, heroes; Mantua gave
> Me life, Brundusium death, Naples a grave.*

Virgil, not having had time to give the last touches to his principal poem, commanded, just before his death, that it should be cast into the flames; but this rigorous order, happily for literature, was not executed. Augustus, besides preventing its destruction, took care that nothing should be added to the work, a circumstance which accounts for the many unfinished verses found in the Æneid. Its author is justly looked upon as the prince of Latin poets. He was moreover skilled in mathematics, geography, natural and moral philosophy; and, what is still more admirable, amidst the general esteem in which he was held for his talents, he always preserved a modest deportment; he was plain in his manners, even at court, and pure in his morals, even in the most corrupt of ages.

Wisdom of his conduct and policy.—The wisdom of Augustus was like an abundant spring whence happiness flowed without interruption, spreading itself over every portion of the world and through every class of society. Governing others as he himself would have wished to be governed, he marked all the years of his reign by numerous acts of a wise and prudent administration. His behavior towards the senate and the people exhibited a happy mixture of condescension and firmness: when deliberating on public affairs, he was not offended at seeing his opinions strenuously opposed; when inclined to anger, his custom was, either to leave the company for a moment, or, in compliance with advice which he had received from the philosopher Athenodorus, to suppress his natural feelings, before saying or doing any thing.

---

* Mantua me genuit, Calabri rapuêre, tenet nunc
Parthenope; cecini pascua, rura, duces.

With regard to the people in general, he was studious to conciliate their favor by public exhibitions and largesses; and the Romans saw, with the utmost pleasure, not only abundance and security completely restored under his government, but their city also wonderfully embellished by his orders and care. According to his own expression, "he found it of brick, and left it of marble:" he did not, however, trespass on the rights of the inhabitants, preferring to leave some works unfinished, and imperfect, rather than encroach upon the property of others.

The conduct of Augustus towards particular persons, was equally admirable. He excused the senators from all troublesome ceremonials, and would not suffer them to wait upon him at the palace, in order to conduct him to the senate-house: here he received their compliments and returned their salutations, calling them by their names. Nor did he extend this mildness and affability to senators only, and persons of distinction; he permitted all to approach him and was accessible even to the citizens of the lowest classes, receiving their petitions with kindness, and encouraging those whom reverential awe rendered timid and bashful.

Very many instances are related of his moderation and clemency towards those who behaved disrespectfully towards him. The following one will suffice. As he was making preparations for a journey, a senator, named Rufus, said at an entertainment: "I wish that Augustus may never come back again;" and jesting about the number of victims which were usually sacrificed in thanksgiving for the emperor's return, he added that all the oxen and calves entertained the same wish. These words were carefully treasured up by some of the guests. The next day a slave of Rufus reminded his master of what he had said when heated with wine, and advised him to go and be the first to declare his fault with the emperor. Rufus followed the advice; he hastened to the palace, presented himself before Augustus, and attributing his conduct of the previous day to a fit of madness, begged him to forgive his foolish temerity. Augustus granted his request. "Cæsar," said Rufus, "no one will believe that you have restored me to your friendship, unless you make me a handsome present." The prince granted this

also, adding with a smile : "for my own sake, I will take care not to be angry with you in future."

However, Augustus did not always suffer the odious imputations cast upon his character to pass unnoticed : a proper care for his reputation often induced him to repel them, either by orations delivered in the senate, or by declarations publicly made in his name. But he was a stranger to revenge. Tiberius, who afterwards succeeded him, and who was of a very different character, having once exhorted him to punish an insult, Augustus replied: "My dear Tiberius, do not abandon yourself too much to the vivacity of your age, and be not so indignant at those who speak ill of me; it is enough to prevent them from doing us any harm."

Who would imagine that a man of such mildness and moderation had, in his youth, shed so much blood, and committed so many cruelties ? This change in Augustus, though springing perhaps from interested views, cannot but appear truly astonishing. Examples may be found of a good natural disposition corrupted by constant prosperity, and especially by unlimited power ; but to find, in such circumstances, bad qualities removed, and succeeded by noble and generous feelings, is extremely rare.

A government so mild, and possessing so many advantages both for the state and private citizens, excited a general esteem and love for its wise executive. Even when he proposed to the senate, with more policy than sincerity, to resign his power, the senators, either through a dread of new evils, or through attachment to his person, entreated him to retain the supreme authority. He had, or pretended to have, the modesty to accept it only for ten years ; but it was afterwards bestowed upon him for ten more, when that term had elapsed.

He receives the title "Father of his Country."— Still more honorable for Augustus was the manner in which he received, in compliance with the desire of the whole nation, the title of *Father of his Country*, a title so eminently glorious when truly merited. At first, the people offered it to the emperor by a solemn embassy ; Augustus having refused, all the inhabitants of Rome insisted, and with unanimous acclamations earnestly begged that it should be accepted. Finally the senators agreed

among themselves to make a last effort; and one of their number, Messala, in the name of all, addressed Augustus in these terms: "Cæsar, the senate together with the Roman people proclaim you the Father of the Country." The emperor, moved even to tears, answered: "Senators, having reached the summit of my wishes, what else can I ask of the immortal gods, than that I should always deserve and obtain from you the affectionate sentiments which you have just expressed?"* This was truly the happiest day of his life.

Augustus' generosity towards Cinna.—Still, as there are always some discontented persons even under the most moderate governments, Augustus was not secure from secret conspiracies. He showed himself inexorable in the punishment of the first offenders, Ignatius Rufus, Murena and Cepion; but he pursued a different course in the case of Cinna, a grandson of Pompey, whose party many persons of high standing had joined. The emperor was informed of the bold design by one of the accomplices, and this information threw him into the greatest perplexity. Must he again shed torrents of blood, or would it be more expedient to forgive? This alternative was the subject of a conversation between him and his wife Livia, and to the empress is attributed the honor of having induced her husband to lean on the side of clemency. His resolution being formed, he sent for Cinna, named in his presence all the conspirators, whose leader he was, and showed himself perfectly acquainted with the manner, time and place which they had appointed. Cinna was thunderstruck at this unexpected disclosure; but his surprise was still greater when Augustus, after enumerating the benefits he had conferred on him, added: "Cinna, I forgave you once, when you were found in the camp of my enemies; I now pardon you a second time, after you have attempted to be my murderer. Let us become sincere friends, and by our future conduct towards each other, make it doubtful which is greater, my generosity or your gratitude."

---

* Cæsar Auguste, senatus consentiens cum populo Romano, te consalutat patriae patrem. Cui lacrymans respondit Augustus his verbis: Compos factus votorum meorum, P. C., quid habeo aliud Deos immortales precari, quam ut hunc consensum vestrum ad ultimum vitæ finem mihi perferre liceat? *Sueton. in August.*

To this noble language, Augustus joined equally generous acts; he nominated Cinna consul for the ensuing year, and gave him many other marks of particular affection. In return, Cinna became the faithful friend of his sovereign, and was ever afterwards inviolably attached to his interests. The emperor derived a still more valuable advantage from his clemency on this occasion; it completed his popularity in Rome, and from that time, effectually prevented conspiracies against his person and authority.

Birth of Christ.—The most memorable event during the reign of this prince, was the birth of our Saviour. Augustus unintentionally contributed to the accomplishment of the designs of Heaven: as he had issued a decree that the whole world should be enrolled, every one in his own city, the B. Virgin was obliged to go with St. Joseph from Nazareth to Bethlehem, a little town of the tribe of Juda.* There, as the Prophet Micheas had foretold †, the Incarnate Son of God was born and commenced the work of our redemption, seven hundred and fifty-three years after the building of Rome, and thirty-one after the foundation of the Roman empire by the victor of Actium.

The birth of Christ coincided with the very uncommon circumstance that the temple of Janus was shut; this was the case only during a universal peace. From Romulus to Augustus, an interval of seven hundred years, it had been shut only twice: first, under the reign of Numa, and a second time, between the first and second Punic wars. The tranquillity which the world now enjoyed, was a type of that spiritual peace which the Eternal Son of God came to impart to mankind.

This tranquillity originated chiefly in the moderation of Augustus; no sooner did he find himself without a competitor in Rome, than his views became wholly pacific. He never undertook a war, except through necessity and when the advantages expected from it far exceeded the loss that might be feared. His usual saying was, that they who, without hesitation, purchase small advantages by running great risks, resemble a man fishing with a golden hook the value of which far exceeds that of all the

---

* Luke, ii. 1, 3, etc. † Micheas, v. 2.

fish he may hope to catch. On the same principle, he frequently blamed Alexander for having continually sought to extend his empire by warfare, rather than govern it in peace and watch over its internal prosperity.

Pacification of provinces.—Still, Augustus was compelled to engage in several wars, most of which became successful through the ability of his generals. The Cantabrians in Spain were defeated by Agrippa. Tiberius repressed the rebels of Dalmatia and Pannonia, subdued the Rhetians in despite of their mountains, and humbled the pride of Maroboduus, a powerful king of the Marcomans; whilst his brother Drusus, a young hero, made four glorious campaigns in the heart of Germany, and extended his conquests as far as the river Elbe. The Roman arms were every where respected: the Parthians returned the prisoners and colors that had been in their possession since the defeat of Crassus (B.C. 53); and the nations of India sought, through embassies, the alliance and friendship of Augustus.

Defeat of Varus in Germany.—These brilliant successes were followed by a disaster, the more grievous to the prince and to the people, as it was quite unexpected. Quintilius Varus, who commanded in Germany five Roman legions (about 25,000 men), and some auxiliary troops, gradually rendered himself odious to the inhabitants by his love of money and his great extortions. His imprudence soon caused his complete overthrow. He obstinately refused to give ear to the warnings which he received of a threatened insurrection, and was even prevailed upon by Arminius, a young German prince whose fidelity he did not suspect, to divide his army into several separate bodies, and to station them in different quarters. These scattered troops were easily destroyed by the natives, and the revolt became general. At length, the Roman general, aware of his danger, hastened with three legions to subdue the rebels; but he imprudently suffered himself to be blocked up between woods and marshes, and Arminius, with all the forces he could collect, attacked him in the night and amidst the horrors of a violent storm. The Romans fought bravely, but in vain; they were cut to pieces together with their commander and officers, and but very few escaped to carry back the tidings of the defeat (A.D. 9).

Never was Augustus so much afflicted at the news of any misfortune. When he was apprised of the event, he rent his garments in excess of grief, and was often heard to cry out : "Varus, restore me my legions." He feared moreover that the Germans would follow up their victory, invade Italy and attack Rome itself : but the danger was not so great as had been imagined, and the following year Tiberius easily checked the progress of the enemy.

The imperial family.—Another source of grief for Augustus in his advanced age, was the misconduct of some of his children and grand-children, whom he was obliged to send into exile. The death of those around him in whom he had placed all his confidence, such as Agrippa and Mæcenas, or whom he expected to be the future support of his throne and family, likewise pressed heavily upon him. Drusus, his step-son, was taken off in the midst of his victorious career ; Marcellus, his nephew and son-in-law, died at a premature age ; as did also Caius and Lucius Cæsar, the emperor's grandsons, children of Agrippa.

Agrippa.—Next to Augustus, Agrippa was beyond dispute the first man of his age, great in peace and in war, illustrious in the field and in the cabinet. Sicily, Greece, Germany, Gaul and Spain, were successively the theatres of his military achievements. In time of peace, his mind was ever occupied with grand and noble designs all tending to the public good ; and he has rendered his name immortal by works far surpassing in splendor and magnificence those of any other private individual. Qualified to hold the first rank in a republic, he contented himself with the second under Augustus, who made him his son-in-law, colleague, and intended successor.

The intimacy of their friendship reflects equal honor on both. Agrippa obtained the favor of Augustus without mean condescension and flattery ; and Augustus, without either distrust or jealousy of Agrippa's conspicuous merit, raised him almost to an equality with himself. After the death of so faithful a friend, he honored his remains by magnificent obsequies, at which he himself pronounced the funeral oration, and would not suffer him to be laid in any other tomb than that destined for himself.

Mæcenas.—Mæcenas too, although indolent with re-

gard to his own affairs and person, was an able minister, who joined a superior mind to beneficence and modesty. He always endeavored to procure advantage for others, and on the contrary never availed himself of the emperor's friendship to promote his own interest. To him and to his constant protection were science and literature principally indebted for the high degree of perfection which they attained under the reign of Augustus.

Drusus.—Drusus, as we have already said, conquered a great part of Germany. As a Roman, no one surpassed him in noble and generous feelings ; as a general, he was equalled, in that age, only by Agrippa and by his own son Germanicus.

In fine, Marcellus, a young prince possessed of uncommon talents, and still more admirable for his moral virtues, was, in every respect, deserving of his high rank and fortune. He had already acquired general esteem ; he was the hope of the Romans and the pride of his uncle Augustus, when death exhibited in him a new instance of the frailty of human grandeur. This made Virgil say in the 6th book of his Æneid :

> "This youth, the blissful vision of a day,
> Shall be just shown on earth, and snatched away."—*Dryden.**

And again, after alluding to the great hero of the same name, conspicuous in the second Punic war :

> "Ah! couldst thou break through fate's severe decree,
> A new Marcellus would arise in thee." †

These beautiful verses, when first publicly recited, drew tears from all who heard them, and particularly touched Augustus and his sister Octavia, the young prince's mother, who remained inconsolable till death.

Death of Augustus.—Thus the emperor was compelled to centre, if not all his affection, at least all his expectation in Tiberius. He now chose him for his colleague and successor, as the only one whom he knew truly

---

* Ostendent terris hunc tantum fata, neque ultra
Esse sinent.

† Heu, miserande puer! si qua fata aspera rumpas,
Tu Marcellus eris.

capable of upholding the empire. He himself, however, did not entirely withdraw from the cares of the government, a burden always agreeable to his ambition. Even when his health was declining, his mind continued ever busy and active. At length, whilst travelling through the south of Italy, on his way from Beneventum to Rome, he fell dangerously ill, and could not proceed beyond Nola in Campania. When he saw that the end of his life was near, he ordered a looking-glass to be brought to him, and his hair to be dressed ; then called in his friends, and asked them if they thought he had well played his part in the drama of life. Being answered in the affirmative, he cried out in a Greek verse with which the ancient plays generally terminated : "Give me then your applause." Thus at the age of seventy-six, after reigning forty-five years, he expired on the 19th of August, a month formerly called *Sextilis*, but to which he had given his name. He was buried at Rome with great pomp, and even divine honors were impiously paid to his memory.

His character.—Augustus possessed, in an eminent degree, all the qualifications necessary to become the founder of the Roman empire under its present form; viz., penetrating genius, energy of soul, activity, and above all, a consummate prudence under all possible circumstances. His long administration may be offered in most points, as a model of excellent government ; and he himself might be looked upon as one of the best of princes, could we forget that the mild and beneficent *Augustus* had once been the fierce and cruel *Octavius*. Hence, the common opinion entertained respecting his public character is, that it would have conduced greatly to the happiness of mankind, if *Octavius* had never been born, or if *Augustus* had never died.

The census of the Roman citizens was taken several times under his reign. In the beginning, they amounted to four millions and sixty-three thousand ; towards the end, to four millions one hundred and thirty-seven thousand, and shortly after, under the emperor Claudius, they were found to be nearly seven millions. These numbers comprised, very probably, not only the inhabitants of Rome, but all persons in every part of the empire who had obtained by birth or by special privilege, the right of Ro-

man citizenship,* such as was possessed by St. Paul, a Jew and a native of Tarsus in Cilicia.† To ascertain precisely the population of the city of Rome at that epoch, seems quite impossible; but from a variety of circumstances, it may be reasonably supposed to have amounted to about two millions.

TIBERIUS.—A.D. 14—37.

Accession to the throne.—Immediately after the death of Augustus, Tiberius, who had now completed his fifty-fifth year, assumed all the marks of the imperial dignity. He was the son of the empress Livia, by a former marriage with Tiberius Nero. His mother, indeed, by her credit and influence, greatly contributed to his elevation, but it was perhaps owing chiefly to his own military and political talents; and these would certainly have fitted him for his high station, had he not chosen to act the part of a vicious and tyrannical prince.

Shortly after his accession to the throne, Tiberius began to manifest the perverse inclinations of his heart. Naturally morose and cruel, jealous of any glory acquired by others, he was full of dissimulation, and the more to be dreaded, as he knew how to conceal his anger. It sometimes happened that, whilst he was politely entertaining individuals in his palace, sentence of death was pronounced against them, by his orders, in the public tribunals of Rome. The most trifling faults in matters regarding his government, were visited with the penalties of high-treason.

With such a prince it was dangerous to jest. As he had postponed the payment of some legacies bequeathed by Augustus to the Roman people, a wag, who wished to remind him of his obligation, took advantage of a funeral that was passing along the street, approached the bier, and feigning to whisper something in the ear of the dead man, said, in a tone loud enough to be heard by the bystanders: "Pray, remember to tell Augustus that his legacies are not yet paid." The emperor, being informed of this piece of wit, sent for the unfortunate jester, paid him

---

* See Tillemont, *Histoire des Empereurs*, *vol.* 1, *p.* 4, 48, 244.
† *Act. App* XXI. 39; and XXII. 25, 26, 27, 28.

his portion of the legacy, and ordered him to be put to death immediately, saying: "Let him go himself to Augustus, and he will be able to bring him later and better news than that carried by the dead man." The jest however had its desired effect, and the legacies were shortly after paid to the people.

Notwithstanding the vices and tyranny of Tiberius, his reign was not altogether inglorious. At home, it exhibited many acts of justice, firmness and munificence; and it was marked abroad by many successful events, the honor of which belongs partly to Drusus, his son, but chiefly to Germanicus, his nephew, son of the former Drusus.

Revolt of the legions in Pannonia.—On the reception of the first news of the late emperor's death, the legions stationed both in Pannonia and Germany for the defence of these countries, openly revolted, demanding from their leaders, with alarming threats, an increase of their pay and an earlier discharge from military service. Drusus and other persons of high rank, with a few cohorts, were dispatched to quell the insurrection in Pannonia. On their arrival, they found everything in dreadful confusion, which neither the presence of Drusus, nor the reading of his father's letters, was able to remove. He on the contrary, had the mortification to see his guards and counsellors exposed to the violence of the soldiery, and himself to insulting cries and clamors. The following night seemed to threaten the perpetration of still greater crimes, when, in a clear and serene sky, the moon was beheld suddenly, though gradually, losing its brightness. The overawed soldiers, unacquainted with the cause of the eclipse, considered it as a token of the wrath of Heaven, and of the frightful punishment which awaited their disobedience.* Drusus and his council skilfully availed themselves of this favorable circumstance, and, ordering the leaders of the rebels to be arrested, had them executed on the spot. After this, most of the soldiers speedily returned to the strict rule of military discipline; the three legions were then separated without much trouble, and sent to distant quarters; by which measure, the few

* Noctem minacem, et in scelus erupturam fors lenivit: nam luna claro repentè cælo visa languescere. Id miles rationis ignarus omen præsentium accepit. . . . . sibi laborem æternum portendi, etc.—*Tacitus, Annal. lib.* 1, *n.* XXVIII.

remaining sparks of rebellion were easily extinguished. Drusus, having thus re-established good order, and deeming his presence no longer necessary, set out for Rome.

Campaigns of Germanicus.—Germanicus, who held the command in Germany, had many more difficulties to encounter in staying the revolt of his numerous troops. It was only by extraordinary exertions, by subjecting himself to every hardship and even endangering his life, by opportunely exercising severity or lenity, that he was enabled to restore discipline and regularity among the legions both of the Upper and Lower Rhine.

Passing then from one extreme to the other, the soldiers despatched with their swords all who had been foremost in the rebellion; and afterwards, in order to exercise their valor more properly, they asked to be led against the barbarians. Germanicus readily complied with their desire. He threw a bridge over the Rhine, advanced into the hostile country with a numerous troop of chosen men taken from the legions and the allies, and suddenly attacking the Germans, made a great slaughter of them, whereas, among the Romans, not one soldier was wounded.

An account of this disaster soon reached several of the neighboring tribes. Inflamed with resentment, they took up arms, and posting themselves to advantage, surrounded the woods through which the victors were to pass in returning to their camp. After skirmishing with the front and the flanks of the army, they fell with their whole strength upon the rear. The light cohorts of the auxiliary troops found themselves unable to sustain the shock, and began to be thrown into confusion: when Germanicus, riding at full speed to one of the legions, cried aloud that the time was now come for them to efface, by a noble exploit, the guilt of the late revolt; "Let them charge with courage, and gain immortal honor." Animated by these words, the legion rushed to the attack, and at the first onset, broke the ranks of the enemy. The barbarians fled to the open plain, where the Romans pursued them with dreadful carnage; from that time the march was unmolested, and the soldiers went into winter quarters.

Tiberius received the intelligence of these events with mingled pleasure and anxiety. That the sedition was at an end, was to him a source of satisfaction; but he feared that

the success of Germanicus would inspire him with the idea of claiming the throne for himself. This was a groundless suspicion; the young prince, by refusing at the time of the revolt the empire proffered to him by the mutinied legions, had just given an incontrovertible proof of his constant fidelity. Still nothing could diminish the secret envy of Tiberius, and he only waited for some opportunity, or rather sought some pretence, to recall his nephew to Rome.

In the mean time, Germanicus had matured his plan of operations for the ensuing summer. He opened the campaign by a sudden and successful irruption into the territories near the Rhine. After this, he prepared to march against the main forces of the enemy, then assembled under the command of the same Arminius who had, six years before, obtained a memorable victory over the Romans. Four legions and the cavalry proceeded by land; Germanicus with four other legions embarked on the German Sea, the more easily to reach the mouth of the river Amisia (the Ems). All arrived in due time at the place of destination, and the whole army marched towards the forest where the bones of Varus and his legions were said to lie unburied.

The remains of Varus' army found unburied.—As the Romans were advancing, an awful spectacle met their view and excited in every breast feelings of horror. They saw the ground white with bones, in some places thinly scattered, in others lying in heaps, as the unfortunate soldiers of Varus happened to fall in flight, or in a body resisted to the last. Fragments of javelins and the limbs of horses lay scattered about the fields; human skulls were seen upon the trunks of trees; in the adjacent woods stood the blood-stained altars on which the tribunes and principal centurions had been offered up in sacrifice: and near the decaying intrenchments of the Roman camp, was the spot where some, who at first escaped the general massacre, were supposed to have made their last effort, and perished in the attempt.

All were affected at this mournful sight, and with hearts oppressed with grief, buried the remains of their slaughtered countrymen. This duty performed, they pressed forward in pursuit of an enemy whom it was not less difficult to over-

take than to conquer; at length, Germanicus deeming the opportunity favorable, ordered his cavalry to begin the attack. But Arminius, taking advantage of the defiles and other difficult parts of the country, feigned a retreat to the forest: then suddenly wheeling about, he gave the signal to the troops that lay in ambush in the woods to rush out against the Romans. The cavalry which had been advancing, and the auxiliary cohort destined to support it, struck with surprise, were put to flight, and might have been entirely defeated, had not Germanicus come up with the legions in order of battle, and checked the career of the enemy. The armies parted upon equal terms, and retired to winter quarters, not however without the loss of many brave men on the side of the Romans; while the survivors were exposed to innumerable hardships, which they overcame only by their fortitude and patience.

Character and generosity of Germanicus.—In all this variety of events, Germanicus invariably displayed the greatest personal courage, extraordinary prudence, and a constant solicitude for the welfare of his troops. His ability in improving every advantage and every occasion of success, was particularly remarkable. When the Germans were to be attacked and driven from some post, he took upon himself the most arduous part of the attempt, leaving the easiest duties to his lieutenants, and yet attributing afterwards to their conduct so much of the success, that three of them, Silius, Apronius and Cecina, obtained triumphal honors.

He looked upon the soldiers as his children, and treated them with truly paternal kindness. He never uselessly exposed them to dangers, nor fought any battle. except when almost certain that he would obtain a considerable advantage. After an engagement, he visited the wounded, consoled them by placing before them the glory of the past and the hope of the future, supplied their wants, and with his own money indemnified those who had suffered any loss in the campaign. So many virtues and amiable qualities greatly endeared Germanicus to his troops, while his valor and skill made him formidable to the enemy. The only fault perhaps in his conduct, was the unrelenting and inhuman rigor with which he carried on the war against the Germans, spreading slaughter far

and wide, and laying the whole country waste with fire and sword, without regard to age or sex.*

What has already been said of the Germanic war, belongs to the years 14 and 15 of our Lord. To ensure the success of the next campaign, Germanicus determined to have all his troops conveyed by water into the heart of the enemy's country; by his orders, a fleet consisting of a thousand vessels was fitted out for the intended expedition. They sailed from the eastern channel of the Rhine, proceeded over the lakes, and entering the German Ocean, went as far as the river Amisia. There the men disembarked, and the ships were left safe at their moorings. The Romans advanced through the plain, crossed the Visurgis (Weser), and attacked the Germans, who were encamped on the right bank of that river.

At the signal given by Germanicus, the infantry began the assault in front; the cavalry, at the same time, charged the flank and rear; both attacks were made with so much vigor, that the barbarians, notwithstanding their natural bravery, were thrown into confusion and driven from all their posts. Yet Arminius performed wonders; by his voice, by gestures, by every means in his power, still endeavoring to sustain the combat. Wounded as he was, and nearly surrounded, he braved every danger, and at length by vigorous exertions, escaped from the field, having previously besmeared his face with his own blood, in order to disguise himself.

Decisive victory over the Germans.—The enemy was now completely routed. The victory cost the Romans little or nothing; but the country, ten miles round, was covered with mangled bodies and the arms of the vanquished. Among the spoils was found a large quantity of fetters, which the Germans, in anticipation of victory, had destined for the Roman prisoners. The legions, on the field of battle, again proclaimed Tiberius emperor, and having raised a mound, placed on the top of it a pile of German arms, trophies of their victory, with an inscription at the base setting forth the names of the conquered nations.

To the Germans nothing could be so exasperating as

---

* Tacit. *Annal. lib.* I, *n.* LI, LVI; and *lib.* II. *n.* XXV.

this monument of Roman glory. Inflamed anew with the desire of revenge, they raised fresh troops, and once more resolved to try the hazard of a battle. Their martial spirit was not inferior to that of the Romans : still, after a fierce and obstinate combat, they were again defeated, and many of them, seeing that further resistance would be fruitless, surrendered at discretion.

The summer being now far advanced, Germanicus ordered some of the legions to return by land to winter quarters ; he himself sailed with the rest down the river Amisia to the Ocean. The weather was favorable, and the sea was unruffled except by the stroke of the oars and the rapid motion of a thousand vessels. But this calm was of short duration. The sky became overcast ; a storm of hail burst upon them with sudden fury ; squalls of wind drove the billows in different directions ; and the pilot no longer knew what course to steer. Horses, arms and baggage were thrown overboard in order to lighten the ships ; still many of them were either sunk, or wrecked on distant islands, where the soldiers perished by famine or lived only upon the carcasses of horses cast by the sea upon the beach.

At length the storm abated, and the remaining vessels successfully reached the land. Germanicus, almost driven to despair, took every possible care to gather and comfort his troops, and furnish them with new arms and clothes. Having refitted the fleet, he sent ships to the islands scattered through the German Sea, in search of the soldiers who had been cast away : by these timely efforts most of them were saved.

The news of these disasters spreading abroad, the Germans thought of renewing the war ; but Germanicus was not slow in counteracting their designs : two or three parties of Roman troops very soon proved to them the frailty of their hopes. According to the account given by the prisoners, there never was seen among the barbarians more general consternation : they were now forced to confess that the Romans rose superior to adversity, a nation of heroes not to be in any way subdued ; and no doubt remained that another summer would terminate the war.

Germanicus called to Rome.—But Tiberius could

no longer brook the idea that Germanicus should acquire so much glory in the command of armies, and he ardently desired his return. All his letters were to that effect. In them he remarked that it would be much more expedient to abandon the Germans to their own dissensions, and that it was now high time for their conqueror to return, and enjoy in the capital the glorious rest due to his protracted labors. Germanicus obeyed, though with reluctance. His entrance into the city exhibited a magnificent spectacle; and, that nothing might be wanting to the splendor of the occasion, Tiberius ordered money to be distributed among the people and the soldiers, in the name of the young prince. He moreover appointed him his colleague in the consulship for the ensuing year; but these marks of good-will, though specious, were by no one thought sincere.

It is true, however, that what he had foreseen with regard to the termination of the war, really happened. The different nations of Germany, no longer dreading a foreign power, began, according to the custom of barbarians, to quarrel among themselves. Various battles were fought, in which Arminius, at the head of his countrymen, the Cheruscans, maintained his former glory, and gave to the power of the Marcoman king Maroboduus, a fatal blow from which this prince never recovered. About the same time, letters were received at Rome from another German chieftain, in which he proposed to despatch Arminius, provided poison should be sent well prepared for that effect. These letters were read in the senate; but the proposal was magnanimously rejected, and, in imitation of the noble conduct of ancient generals in similar circumstances, Tiberius answered the German prince that it was not by poison and fraud, but by steel and open force that the Romans were accustomed to subdue their enemies.

Arminius' death.—Nevertheless, Arminius did not long survive. When he saw the Roman troops withdrawn from the German territories, and Maroboduus his chief rival fallen, he had the ambition to aim at the sovereign power. The independent spirit of his countrymen turned many of them against him: Arminius fought with various success, and fell at last by the treachery of his own relations; "A man," says Tacitus, "undoubtedly

to be considered as the deliverer of Germany, and with far more honor than generals and kings of former days, as he had not merely to cope with Rome in her infancy, but to struggle against her, now that she had grown into a flourishing and powerful empire. He attacked the Romans in the height of their glory, and in his efforts against them, was sometimes victorious, often defeated, yet, in the issue of the war, still unconquered." * He lived only thirty-seven years, during twelve of which he commanded the Germanic league ; leaving after him a renown very great indeed, but tarnished by his attempt to wrest from his countrymen that liberty which he and they had so long and so gloriously defended.

The death of Arminius lulled the emperor's apprehensions with respect to the Germans, who having lost their hero, did not for a long time excite any dangerous disturbance, but were contented with the peace which the Romans suffered them to enjoy. This was the great object which Tiberius had ardently wished for: he desired nothing so much as to prevent revolts and maintain tranquillity in the empire. Hence, while he exercised his tyranny in Rome, Italy and the provinces had comparatively little to suffer under his government. On many occasions, he manifested great zeal for the due administration of justice, and although addicted to many gross vices, endeavored to stem the torrent of general corruption. Acting up to his own maxim, that *the sheep must be sheared, not flayed*, he took great care that the subjects of the empire should not be oppressed by excessive taxes, and was attentive to afford speedy assistance to those who experienced unavoidable misfortunes.

Tiberius' liberality.—Thus, when many parts of Asia Minor were laid waste by a tremendous earthquake which destroyed in one night twelve celebrated cities (A.D. 17), the liberality of the emperor was an abundant source of relief to the surviving inhabitants. He granted them a remission of all tribute for five years, and sums of money proportionate to their losses. By this generosity, Tiberius gained great praise, and the cities of Asia, to perpetuate its remembrance, struck medals—some of which are yet extant. A few years after, all that quarter

* Tacit. *Annal. lib.* II. *n.* L XXVIII.

of the capital on Mount Cælius was destroyed by a conflagration; Tiberius, without waiting to be solicited and petitioned, and without regard to the rank of the sufferers, equally indemnified all those whose houses had been burnt; those who had no friend or protector at court were sent for, and received the sums necessary to rebuild their dwellings. At another time he gave a hundred millions of sesterces (about three millions of dollars) to repair the losses occasioned by a similar accident. These acts of generosity were the more to his honor, as he was very modest in his own buildings. Furthermore, there was another kind of public calamity that claimed and drew forth his munificence: the practice of exacting heavy interest, and the want of a good currency, having caused great distress among the people, he caused a considerable fund to be lent out of the imperial treasury, without interest, for three years, on condition that the borrower, for the security of the exchequer, should give a mortgage on lands of double the value. By that seasonable aid public credit was revived.

These various examples plainly show that Tiberius was not so regardless of the miseries of his subjects as some writers assert. Yet notwithstanding these generous acts, it must be confessed that his character was really perverse and cruel. From his very youth these defects had appeared; so much so that his tutor declared him to be a lump of clay moistened with blood. Hence Rome and the patrician families had much to dread and suffer from his suspicious policy: it was even a misfortune to be nearly related to him, and a great part of his own family became the unhappy victims of his cruel and jealous temper.

Germanicus in Asia.—Germanicus, after his triumph, was sent to Asia with great powers from the emperor and the senate, to settle some important business, and tranquillize many of the provinces in which considerable disturbances had lately been excited. He faithfully executed his commission, and conferred upon those countries innumerable benefits, with a courteous dignity which enhanced their value. Everywhere, his noble and generous conduct attracted equally the praises and the affections of the people.

His death.—But Cneius Piso, a proud and violent

man, had been at the same time appointed by Tiberius governor of Syria, with secret orders, as it was believed, to annoy, oppose and counteract Germanicus in everything, a commission which, whether given or feigned, was too faithfully performed. For a long time the young prince bore with patience and moderation the affronts and injuries heaped on him by his vile persecutor, and even treated him with generosity; then an open rupture followed, shortly after which Germanicus fell sick and died at Antioch, under the impression that he had been poisoned by Piso and his consort Plancina.

Intense was the grief occasioned throughout the empire by the death of Germanicus. When his disconsolate widow Agrippina carried back in an urn the ashes of her husband, she found the roads covered with people whose tears and sighs told her how deeply they shared in her affliction. But it would be difficult to describe the sorrow evinced in the capital; the day on which the remains of the prince were deposited in the tomb of Augustus, was one of inexpressible mourning. Tiberius himself manifested exteriorly a grief in which his heart probably had no share, and was obliged to abandon Piso to the public indignation. This unhappy man was not, it is true, convicted of the crime laid to his charge; but he had committed other crimes deserving the severity of the law. Piso perceived his danger: before the trial was concluded, he was found dead in his chamber, with his throat cut, and a sword lying near him on the floor; but whether he had committed suicide, or had been killed by others for fear of what he might disclose, was left uncertain.

The other enemies of Germanicus met with little severity; on the contrary, his family supplied new victims to the insatiable hatred of Tiberius. So far did the cruelty of the emperor extend, that he caused Agrippina and her two eldest sons to perish by ill-treatment and starvation. Having a real affection for no one but himself, he bore with a firmness bordering on insensibility, the death of his own son Drusus, who had been poisoned by the commander of the prætorian (imperial) guards.

This commander was a certain Ælius Sejanus, who, gaining the favor of Tiberius, rose from the rank of a simple knight to that of his chief minister. New honors were daily conferred upon him, and in a short time his

power was not far inferior to that of Tiberius himself. Not satisfied with this success, he conceived the daring design of opening his way to the throne by the extermination of the imperial family. After Drusus and the sons of Germanicus were removed, he prevailed upon the emperor to retire from Rome for the sake of greater tranquillity, and to intrust the reigns of government to him, *his tried and faithful minister.* But while Sejanus, thus far successful, was revolving in his mind the last step for the accomplishment of his designs, his treason was detected; and Tiberius having, by a message, informed the senate of the whole affair, sentence of death was pronounced against the traitor and executed without delay. Most of the friends and relations of Sejanus were involved in his ruin.

Preaching and death of Christ.—While these painful events occurred in Rome, Judea was the theatre of most interesting events. For more than three years, our Lord favored it with the public spectacle of His heavenly virtues and the preaching of His Gospel, which He confirmed by many miracles; and finally, by His passion and death, He completed the great work of the redemption of mankind (A.D. 33). Three days after, He rose glorious from the dead; frequently appeared to His disciples, giving them, during forty days, various necessary instructions about the establishment and government of His Church; committed to St. Peter the care of His flock;* commissioned him and the other Apostles to go and teach all nations, with the positive promise of His daily assistance till the end of the world;† and then ascended into heaven in their presence.

After ten days, the Apostles being all assembled in Jerusalem, the Holy Ghost came down upon them in a visible manner. They immediately began to preach with astonishing success. The first two discourses of St. Peter converted eight thousand Jews: many more afterwards became converts; so that, even before the close of Tiberius' reign, a numerous Church was already established in Jerusalem, whence the light of the Gospel began to diffuse itself in every direction and in every part of the world.

---

* John xxi. 16, 17. † Matth. xxviii. 19, 20.

These are the only consoling objects which present themselves to our view in the midst of a deluge of crimes; for no age was ever more corrupted. Tiberius, above all, without ceasing to pay some attention to the public weal, every day gave fuller scope to his unruly passions, and to his tyrannical cruelties against the first families of the empire. Informations, trials and executions were multiplied, and the most illustrious personages in Rome gradually disappeared, unhappy objects of the hatred of a suspicious and sanguinary prince.

Death of Tiberius.—Nothing can be imagined more degrading to humanity, than the scenes which marked the last years of his life. No less odious to himself than to others, he retired into the small and at that time delightful island of Caprea, a name which no one ever after remembered and pronounced without horror. There he abandoned himself, for several years, to all the excesses of the most profligate passions, his cruelties always keeping pace with his debaucheries. At length his constitution was broken, and his strength began to fail. In the hope of finding a more salubrious situation, he left the island of Caprea, and went over to the continent, where, falling very sick at Misenum, a promontory near Naples, he was, on the 16th of March (A.D. 37), seized with a fainting fit during which many thought him dead. He however recovered his senses: but Macro, the commander of the prætorian guard, who had already paid his homage to the presumed successor, gave orders that the old emperor should be smothered with pillows. Thus, in his seventy-eighth year, and the twenty-third of his reign, Tiberius, who had himself so often been guilty of perfidy to others, perished by the perfidy of his own friends.

He did not reach at once the height of wickedness which has justly caused his memory to be held in detestation: Tacitus well observes a striking gradation in his course of vice and tyranny, and accurately defines its different stages. "Tiberius," says he, "was much esteemed while a private man, and as long as he held offices under Augustus. He was artful in feigning virtue, in the beginning of his own reign, until the death of Germanicus and Drusus; his actions were a mixture of good and evil, during the lifetime of his mother Livia; detes-

tably cruel, but secret in his debaucheries, while he loved or feared Sejanus; lastly, he abandoned himself to every sort of profligacy, when, freed from all the restraints of fear and shame, he knew and followed no other guide than the bent of his abominable inclinations." *

Phædrus, the celebrated fabulist, and Quintus-Curtius, the elegant historian of Alexander, lived under Tiberius; the poets Persius and Lucan flourished shortly after.

CALIGULA.—A.D. 37-41.

One of the sons of Germanicus, not only had escaped the ruin in which the rest of his family were involved, but even constantly enjoyed the favor of Tiberius, and became his adopted son. This was Caïus, better known by the name of Caligula (from *Caliga*, a sort of military boot which he had been accustomed to wear, whilst yet a child, in the camp of his father). He succeeded the late emperor without opposition, and even to the great satisfaction of the whole empire; indeed he seemed at first, by several acts of clemency and beneficence, to deserve this mark of public esteem. He restored many privileges to the people; delivered innocent and calumniated persons from prison and banishment; abolished arbitrary prosecutions for crimes of state; and evinced intentions so good, that he received from the senate the most flattering honors.

But the joy of the Romans was not of long duration, and their hopes of a prosperous government were cruelly deceived. Caligula was taken dangerously ill, and after his recovery, either because he was unwilling any longer to restrain his passions, or because his intellect had been impaired by the violence of the disease, he began to act like a madman, and indulged in every species of injustice, cruelty and licentiousness.

Caligula's extravagance and cruelty.—He commenced his extravagant career by spending, in games and foolish entertainments, two billions five hundred millions of sesterces (about sixty-three millions of dollars), in less than one year; and when the public treasury was drained, he had recourse to the most frightful extortions. Daily

* Tacit. *Annal. lib.* VI. *n.* LVI.

confiscations, oppressive taxes, repine, plunder and murder of the wealthiest citizens, were the means to which Caligula resorted, in order to gather heaps of gold and silver for the indulgence of his uninterrupted extravagance. On one occasion, being at play, he happened to want money. He sent for the public register which contained the names of the property-holders, condemned a certain number of them to death, and said, with a smile, to those with whom he was playing: "How unlucky you are! It has taken you a long time to win a small sum, and in one moment I have won six hundred millions of sesterces (fifteen millions of dollars)."

In barbarity Caligula was never surpassed. He wished that the Roman people had but one head, that it might be struck off at a blow. This was impossible, but he at least caused many persons to be massacred by his soldiers, or thrown into the arena, there to be devoured by wild beasts, their tongues having been previously cut out, to prevent them from complaining. He forced others to kill themselves, among the rest young Tiberius his cousin, and grandson of the late emperor. Neither rank nor age was exempt from his fury. At a repast with the two consuls, he suddenly burst into a loud laugh: the consuls having respectfully entreated him to acquaint them with the cause of his extraordinary joy: "I was thinking," he replied, "that it requires but a sign from me, to have both of you killed in an instant." It was his pleasure to see the victims of his monstrous cruelty suffer excruciating torments; his delight to make them feel death, and behold their blood flowing and their limbs scattered.

The more ferocious and barbarous he was towards men, the more kind and feeling he was towards beasts. He honored his horse, called *Incitatus*, in every manner he could imagine: he gave him a palace, with guards, servants, a cook, and such other attendants as the happy animal might require in order to entertain his guests with due solemnity. He invited him to his own table, at which he gave him gilded barley to eat, and wine to drink in golden cups. Incitatus was clothed in purple, wore a collar of pearls, and the night before he had to run in the races, sentinels were placed around his palace, to prevent the least noise that might disturb his repose. In fine,

Caligula was accustomed to swear by his horse, and he would have appointed him consul, had he not been prevented by death.

His military expeditions.—His military exploits were not less extravagant. In addition to the armies stationed in various parts of the empire, he raised new troops, and went with them and a band of comedians, buffoons, and gladiators, to join the old legions encamped on the banks of the Rhine. Here he found himself at the head of nearly two hundred and fifty thousand men. As the Germans scorned to fight against such a general, that he might not leave the frontier without some semblance of victory, he contrived a scheme in perfect accordance with his character. A detachment of his own troops was sent to the other side of the Rhine, with secret orders to conceal themselves in a wood. Then Caligula, crossing over at the head of the legions, marched against them; the pretended enemy was easily routed, and the emperor returned crowned with laurels.

His courage impelled him afterwards to go to the seacoast facing Great Britain. As soon as he arrived, he drew up the legions along the shore, and having gone up a short distance in the imperial galley, returned in great haste and gave the signal for battle. The soldiers, with surprise, asked who was their enemy; then Caligula informed them that the enemy was the ocean just conquered by him in their presence, and that they had nothing else to do than collect the shells thrown on the shore, as trophies of this great victory. The better to perpetuate the remembrance of so glorious an event, he laid the foundation of a lofty tower, and set out for Rome, in order to give himself the honors of a triumph.

To fill up the measure of his absurdities, he even arrogated to himself divine honors. He had a temple erected to his name, and a statue to which sacrifices were offered. Of the order of sacrificators instituted for this purpose, the principal members were his uncle Claudius, his wife, his horse, and himself.

Caligula's death.—At last it entered into the mind of Caligula that the Jews were a most unhappy people in not acknowledging him as a god; he therefore resolved to have his statue placed and adored in the temple of Jerusalem. But before he could execute his

design, a violent death closed his career of crime and impiety. Cherea, a tribune of the prætorian guards, stabbed him in the centre of Rome, after he had reigned four, and lived twenty-nine years (A.D. 41). His name is everywhere recorded as that of the worst of men and a monster of cruelty.

CLAUDIUS.—A.D. 41-54.

On the assassination of Caligula, dreadful confusion followed in Rome. It was the wish of the senate to re-establish the commonwealth ; but the prætorians proclaimed Claudius emperor, and the senators were compelled to submit.

This Claudius was the brother of Germanicus, and uncle of Caligula ; a man of so weak an intellect and such unconquerable timidity, that his mother Antonia, when she met with any silly person, was accustomed to say : "He is as great a fool as my son Claudius." Such a man was assuredly more in need of being governed, than qualified to govern others ; yet, for the greater humiliation of heathen Rome, Almighty God permitted him to hold the sceptre during thirteen years.

Invasion of Great Britain.—The most important event of his reign was an invasion of Great Britain, which reduced a considerable part of that country to the Roman power. Hitherto, the Britons had retained their original independence ; but at the instigation of Beric, a British chieftain whom domestic factions had driven from his native land, the emperor commanded Aulus Plautius to undertake the conquest with four legions and their auxiliaries. It was with great difficulty that the troops were induced to engage in the attempt, and go to another world ; for such they considered Great Britain : at length they followed their general, crossed the channel, and landed, as it appears, in the county of Kent. The natives, notwithstanding their fright at the first appearance of the invaders, made a gallant resistance ; but, overpowered by the well-disciplined troops of the Romans, they soon began to give way and Plautius, pursuing his advantage, arrived at the mouth of the Thames. No sooner was Claudius informed of the success of his lieutenant than he set out to take the command in person. He did not, however, stay

more than sixteen days in the island : after receiving the submission of the natives in the vicinity, he returned to Rome, where he enjoyed the honors of a magnificent triumph.

The war nevertheless was not yet ended. Plautius, who was left behind with a powerful army, spent four years more in extending and securing his conquests. Vespasian, an officer whose merit afterwards raised him to the throne, greatly distinguished himself in that expedition : at the head of a Roman legion and some auxiliaries, he fought thirty battles, took twenty towns, and subdued two of the British nations. Thus, a great part of the country north and south of the Thames, was reduced to a Roman province.

Five years after the beginning of the war (A. D. 48), Plautius went to receive, in the capital of the empire, the reward of his services and was succeeded in Britain by Ostorius Scapula, who not only kept but even enlarged the conquests of his predecessor. Soon after his arrival, he was suddenly attacked by the Britons bordering on the Roman province, who thought that an extraordinary effort might rid them of their invaders, at a time when the new general was yet unacquainted with their manner of warfare and the rigor of their winters. Ostorius, sensible how much the reputation of a commander depends on his first success, immediately marched against them, cut to pieces those who resisted, and dispersed the survivors. A second victory, which in a short time followed the first, gave him a decided superiority over the natives.

Caractacus.—But, the Silures who lived between the Severn and the Irish Sea, were not so easily subdued. Led on by Caractacus, the greatest warrior in the country, they continued to defend their liberty with undaunted courage. Their army, by the arrival of many allies, became very numerous, and so great was their animosity against the Romans, that Ostorius could with difficulty be induced to give them battle. His troops loudly insisting, and crying out that they were sure of victory, Ostorius looked upon their ardor as a happy presage, nor was he deceived in his expectation. No obstacle could successfully oppose the Roman legions. They crossed a river, entered the enemy's intrenchments, and amidst a shower of darts, occupied the heights on which their

adversaries had posted themselves. The Silures were entirely defeated. The family of Caractacus fell into the hands of the victors, and the chieftain himself, betrayed by his own relations, was delivered in chains to the Roman general.

This event was celebrated in Rome with great joy. "The fame of Caractacus had already crossed the seas; and the natives of Italy were anxious to behold the man who had braved for nine years the power of Rome. As he passed through the imperial city, he expressed his surprise that men who possessed such palaces at home, should deem it worth their while to fight for the wretched hovels of Britain." * He appeared in the presence of Claudius with characteristic magnanimity, and, while the other prisoners bewailed with tears their unhappy fate, he behaved and spoke like a hero. The emperor treated him with kindness, and set him and his family at liberty.

Claudius' contemptible life and death.—The other events of the reign of Claudius are little worthy of notice. His government was a mixture of good and evil, from the variety of good and evil counsels which he received, and according as he was left to his natural moderation, or controlled by base advisers. In private, he led a contemptible life, and after being infamously dishonored by Messalina, his first wife, he was poisoned by his second wife Agrippina.

This Agrippina, the daughter of Germanicus, was a wicked and ambitious princess, who used her utmost endeavors to secure the succession to the throne for Domitius, her son by a former husband. Having at length prevailed upon Claudius to adopt Domitius, and confer on him the title of Cæsar, to the exclusion of his own son Britannicus, she soon effected the object of her wishes by poisoning the stupid emperor. He died in the 14th year of his reign, the 64th of his life, and the 54th of the Christian era.

---

* Lingard's *Hist. of Eng. vol.* I. A.D. 52.

NERO.—A. D. 54-68.

Favorable promise of Nero's reign.—The son of Agrippina, on assuming the imperial crown, exchanged his birth-name Domitius for that of Claudius Nero, the name of his adoptive family. He had enjoyed the benefits of a good education under the philosopher Seneca. While controlled by this wise tutor, and by Burrhus, the commander of his guards, a man of great talents and integrity, Nero preserved a show of decency in his public conduct. Like Tiberius and Caligula, he commenced his reign by performing several laudable acts, took great care to have the city plentifully supplied with everything needful and gave considerable pensions to poor senators who could not otherwise support their rank and dignity. On a certain day, when a death-warrant was brought to him to be signed; "I wish," said he, "I had never learned to write." When the senate, on one occasion, had offered him their sincere thanks, he replied: "I shall be happy to receive your thanks, when I truly deserve them." In a word, Nero's actions, in the beginning, were characterized by clemency, liberality, kindness, and everything calculated to win the affections of the people.

Murder of Brittanicus and Agrippina.—But his vices could not long brook restraint; his true character appeared in its native deformity, a compound of all that is cruel, infamous and base. His cruelty first displayed itself in the poisoning of his young brother Britannicus, whose gentle disposition had excited his fears lest he should gain too much upon the favor of the Romans. The poison which perfidious officers administered to the young prince at table, was so violent, that he presently lost the use of his senses, fell upon the floor, and soon expired; while Nero, who was present, and scarcely eighteen years old, beheld that awful spectacle with the steadiness of a tyrant already hardened in crime.

This atrocious deed was but a prelude to another still more heinous, the murder of his mother Agrippina. He endeavored first to have her drowned in the sea; but, this plan failing, she was, by his command, slain in a house into which she had retired.

Murder of Octavia and Poppea.—After such crimes, nothing, how horrid soever, can appear astonishing in the life of such a monster as Nero. He spared neither his first wife, Octavia, whose veins were opened by his orders; nor his second, called Poppea, whom, in a fit of rage, he killed by a blow with his foot: nor his tutor Burrhus, whom, it was believed, he poisoned, in order to rid himself of his admonitions; nor his preceptor Seneca, who, together with the poet Lucan, being accused of having taken part in some conspiracy against him, was commanded to terminate his own existence; a command which both obeyed.* Nero sported with the lives of others, and Rome daily lost her most virtuous and illustrious citizens, victims of his tyranny.

Corbulo in Armenia.—In the mean time, it was necessary to adopt measures for expelling the Parthians from Armenia, which they had lately invaded. Corbulo, a general of well-known talents, was sent against them. When he arrived in Syria to take the command of the legions, he found them greatly weakened by idleness and insubordination. His first care was to subject them, as well as the new levies, to the laws of strict discipline, and to train them to the hardships of war by constant labor, painful marches or encampments, and other military exercises; by rewards properly bestowed and punishments justly inflicted; but particularly by giving to all an example of unshaken courage in dangers, and unconquerable fortitude in enduring fatigue.

As soon as Corbulo could rely on his troops, he led them against the enemy. On their side, the Parthians advanced against him, under the command of Tiridates, a brother to their king Vologeses. According to their custom, they moved with rapidity from place to place, and by this wild and desultory warfare, more than by victories, kept the country in constant alarm. Corbulo endeavored, but in vain, to bring them to an engagement: he was obliged to adopt the very plan of the enemy, and dividing his troops into separate bodies, at last succeeded in counteracting all the operations of Tiridates.

Total subjugation of Armenia.—This, however, did not suffice to terminate the war, and more decisive meas-

* See note A.

ures were resorted to by the Roman general. He pressed forward, compelled all the towns and fortresses in his way to surrender and finally arrived before Artaxate, the capital of Armenia : it was taken in one day, and burnt, after sufficient time had been allowed to the inhabitants to save their lives; Tigranocerta, another important city, surrendered without resistance, and was spared by the conquerors. The Parthians, then terrified at the sudden and repeated successes of Corbulo, sued for peace. It was granted, and even Armenia, which had been the chief occasion of this long struggle, was given as a possession to Tiridates, on the sole condition that he would lay down his diadem at the feet of the emperor's statue in the Roman camp, and afterwards repair to Rome, to receive it again from the emperor himself. Terms so favorable to his fortune, the Parthian prince readily accepted and faithfully executed. The Romans, on their part, strictly fulfilled their engagements ; thus we see that they were still terrible in battle, and moderate after victory.

Suetonius in Great Britain.—What Corbulo did in Asia, was done in Great Britain by Suetonius Paulinus, another famous general. To him the empire was indebted for the reduction of the isle of Mona, now called Anglesey, where he established a garrison and destroyed the groves used by the natives for their cruel and superstitious rites. But the Britons, availing themselves of his absence, formed a powerful league to recover their freedom, and to throw off a yoke which the insolence and extortions of the Roman soldiers rendered every day more oppressive. The whole province rose in arms ; the colonies founded by the conquerors were laid waste with fire and sword ; London and other municipal towns were pillaged, and their inhabitants slaughtered to the number of seventy thousand persons, all citizens or allies.

Suetonius had returned, and was now endeavoring to put down the insurrection. He formed his best troops into one body of about ten thousand men, and determined notwithstanding the enormous disproportion between this number and that of the insurgents, to attack them, and bring on a decisive battle. For this end, he selected a spot encircled with woods, narrow at the entrance, and protected in the rear by a thick forest. In that situation, he had no fear of an ambuscade, and the enemy had no

access except in front. The Britons brought into the open plain that lay before them, an immense multitude of warriors (no less than two hundred and thirty thousand, according to Dion Cassius), under the command of Queen Boadicea, a woman of masculine courage. They were already exulting, and so confident of victory, that they had placed their wives upon wagons at the extremity of the plain, to enable them to survey the action, and behold the wonders of British valor.

His decisive victory.—When the signal for battle was given, the Britons seeing the Romans silent and motionless in their narrow defile, advanced with rapidity, and discharged their darts. At that moment, the legionaries rushed forward in the form of a wedge; the cavalry at the same time bore down upon the enemy, and overpowered all who dared to resist. The Britons betook themselves to flight; but, as a retreat was extremely difficult, on account of the wagons which they had placed in the rear, a dreadful slaughter ensued in which eighty thousand of these unfortunate people are said to have perished; whereas the Romans lost only four hundred men. This splendid victory, equal to any of ancient times, greatly contributed to keep Britain in subjection; the more so, as Boadicea, unable to bear the idea of such a defeat, survived but a very short time. Still, the country was not entirely subdued until the reign of Domitian.

Nero's conduct at Rome.—Whilst, at the two extremities of the empire, Corbulo and Suetonius maintained its majesty, in Rome it was more and more degraded by Nero. He plunged without shame into every kind of debauchery. He frequently spent the night in running through the streets, in the garb of a slave, accompanied by a band of rioters, with whom he attacked every one that he met, and stole whatever fell in his way. His delight during the day was to drive chariots in the circus, or to act the part of a comedian on the stage: there he danced, sang and played on the lute, compelling the audience to admire him and give him their applause.

His daily expenses were enormous: he endeavored to dispel the horror which his crimes excited, by making large donations of lands, houses, gold, silver, jewels and other valuable objects, to the common people; also by having magnificent plays and shows frequently repeated.

Not satisfied with all this, he was fond of exciting surprise by the singularity of his exhibitions, and would often unite at the same time and place, shows of different and even contrary kinds: for example, a vast sheet of water, would, the moment after a sea-fight had been performed on it, be instantly drained, and become a field of battle for land troop and gladiators. Dion Cassius mentions a certain occasion on which the scene was changed in this manner four times in one day.

While Nero thus consulted the gratification of the people, he was still more attentive to his own. Not to mention the extravagant luxury of his table, he built a place so magnificent, so profusely ornamented with ivory, gold and precious stones, that it received the name of the "golden palace." When it was finished, Nero said that then, for the first time, he had a decent habitation. He hazarded at gaming immense sums of money; never put on the same coat twice; never undertook a journey without taking along with him at least a thousand carriages, with a proportionate number of attendants in costly apparel, drivers splendidly dressed, and mules shod with silver. Finally, he was as fond of his monkey as Caligula had been of his horse; and accordingly, he gave it dwellings in the town and lands in the country, and after its death, buried it with royal pomp.

If to this profusion we add his mania for building, we shall easily conceive how the revenues of the whole empire were not sufficient for Nero. As he was determined constantly to follow up his extravagant principles, rapine and extortion became his only resource. Towards the end of his reign, so exorbitant were the contributions which he exacted, that not only Italy, but also the provinces, all the parts of the empire, and even the allies, were ruined.

His cruelties were always equal to his other enormities. The blood of illustrious citizens continued, under various pretences, to be spilt in Rome; "At last," says Tacitus, "Nero desired to destroy virtue itself, by putting to death Barea Soranus and Thrasea Pætus, the two most distinguished and virtuous members of the senate." * Corbulo, as the reward of his great services, received sentence of

* Tacit. *Annal. lib.* XVI. *n.* XXI.

capital punishment the execution of which he prevented by killing himself; and Vespasian narrowly escaped the same fate, for having slept whilst the emperor was singing on the stage.

Conflagration at Rome.—It seemed that nothing more was requisite to render Nero an accomplished monster, than that he should become an incendiary; and such he really became (A.D. 64). To him most historians attribute the famous conflagration which in that year destroyed two-thirds of Rome. It lasted nine days, during which there was nothing to be seen in the city but consternation and despair. Nero, on the contrary, from the summit of a tower, contemplated with delight the devouring flames, and in a theatrical dress, sang verses on the burning of Troy. Such, at least, was the common report at the time.

First persecution of Christians.—The town was rebuilt upon a new and more regular plan; but the wretched prince, in order to remove the just suspicion that it had been set on fire by his orders, laid this crime to the charge of the Christians, who, by the apostolic labors of St. Peter and St. Paul, were already very numerous in Rome. As the purity of their lives was a censure on the corruption of the age, and their total separation from pagan festivities, an occasion of hatred and contempt, Nero thought them fit subjects for public vengeance.* Numbers of them were arrested, and doomed to suffer the most frightful torments. Some, wrapped in the skins of wild

---

*Thus an unjust and atrocious charge gave rise to the first persecution which the Church of Christ had to suffer from the Gentiles. It was fit that her first persecutor should be the same prince who proved an enemy to all virtue. But the example being once set by him, was afterwards too faithfully imitated, and from this time to the reign of Constantine the Great, the Christians were almost continually vexed and tormented, as well under the good as under the bad emperors.

These persecutions were carried on, sometimes by command of the emperors themselves urged on by ruthless magistrates; sometimes by an insurrection of the people; and sometimes by solemn decrees pronounced in the senate, upon the rescripts of princes, or in their presence. Then the persecution was more universal and bloody; and thus the malice of unbelievers, ever inveterately bent on destroying the Church, was excited, from time to time, to new acts of fury. From these successive outbreaks of violence, ecclesiastical historians reckon ten persecutions under ten emperors. . . . . Of all the faithful, the bishops were always the most severely treated; of all the Churches, the Church of Rome was persecuted with the greatest violence; and thirty Sovereign Pontiffs sealed with their blood that Gospel which they declared to the whole earth.—See Bossuet, *Discourse on Univ. History, part* I. *ad ann.* 66 *and* 95.

beasts, were left to be devoured by dogs; others, fixed to a cross, waited in the most cruel agonies, the slow approach of death; others were burned alive, and many, covered with inflammable matter which was set on fire, served as torches during the night in the imperial gardens. In order to enjoy this awful spectacle, Nero went through the avenues in his chariot, in the dress of a charioteer. It was during this persecution that St. Peter and St. Paul suffered martyrdom, the former by the cross, the latter by the sword, both at Rome, and on the same day.

Nero's death.—Nero had now gone through all the stages of his execrable life. His power was upheld only by terror, and by numerous troops of satellites whom he amply rewarded. At length, all mankind, whose oppressor he was, rose up against him, after Vindex in Gaul and Galba in Spain had given the signal for general insurrection. The news, disregarded at first by Nero, very soon filled him with terror and rage. It was reported that, in his despair, he wished to send assassins into all the provinces, to kill the governors, the generals of armies and the exiles, to poison the senators at a feast, to set fire to the town in various parts, and at the same time to let loose all the wild beasts kept for the public shows, in order to prevent the inhabitants from extinguishing the flames. He thought afterwards of raising new troops for his defence, or of moving by his tears the compassion of the army; and at length resolved to fly into Egypt. But he had neither time nor power to execute any of his designs.

The example of Vindex and Galba was readily followed throughout the empire, and even in the capital itself by the Prætorian guards. The tyrant then retired to a country-house, four miles from Rome, the property of a certain Phaon, one of his freedmen, where he hoped to remain concealed ; but the senate, after having been silent and timid for so long a time, now ordered that he should be sought after, apprehended, and put to an ignominious death. Nero, at the first intelligence of the fatal edict, was struck with terror, and wept both at the approach of his last hour and at the loss of his musical voice. Whilst thus lamenting, he heard the sound of horses' feet, and the noise of the soldiers sent to drag him from his retreat, and already quite near the house ; he then wished some of his attendants to embolden him, by setting him the example

of a voluntary death. As no one was disposed to be so complaisant, he drew a dagger, and applying it to his breast: "What a musician," said he, "the world is going to lose!" Still he hesitated: at length, with the help of Epaphroditus, his freedman, he stabbed himself and expired, in the thirty-first year of his age and the fourteenth of his reign (A.D. 68); the very same day (the eleventh of June) on which he had put his unfortunate wife Octavia to death, six years before.

The family of Cæsar Augustus became extinct by the death of Nero. St. Augustine assigns to him the first place in the catalogue of wicked emperors;* an opinion which has been embraced by posterity: for, in the common judgment of men, no greater odium can be thrown on any prince, even on a profligate tyrant, than to call him a *second Nero.*

GALBA.—OTHO.—VITELLIUS.—A. D. 68-69.

Galba.—Galba, that governor of Spain whom we have already mentioned, experienced no difficulty in causing himself to be acknowledged emperor. He was of noble extraction, venerable for his age, and distinguished for his abilities in inferior employments. But when emperor, his conduct answered neither the eminence of his dignity, nor the public expectations. On the one hand, his excessive confidence in unworthy friends led him into many faults: on the other, his parsimony and severity provoked the hatred of the soldiers, and their fury rose to such a pitch, that they stabbed him in the middle of Rome, after he had reigned seven months.

Otho.—Otho, a dissolute and ambitious man who had been chief leader of the conspiracy against Galba, succeeded him upon the throne. Still, he was acknowledged only in the capital and in the neighboring provinces, the legions of Germany having about the same time declared their commander Vitellius emperor. The two rivals had recourse to arms to support their respective claims. Otho was successful in the beginning; but his forces were soon after defeated at Bedriacum, a village near Cremona in Lombardy, and though he had still numerous armies at

---

* *De Civit Dei, lib.* V. *c.* xix.

his disposal, he killed himself after a reign of three months: the whole empire now declared for Vitellius.

Vitellius.—This however was not so much owing to the abilities of Vitellius himself, as to the exertions of his generals and the bravery of his troops. His personal merit consisted chiefly in eating and drinking. He took four abundant and costly meals every day, and all countries and seas were laid under contribution, in order to furnish the most exquisite game and fish for his table. No repast could be offered to him below the value of four hundred thousand sesterces (about ten thousand dollars); so that even the richest citizens were ruined by the expenses which his visits occasioned. Lucius Vitellius, his brother, gave him a dinner in which two thousand fishes and seven thousand birds were served up at the table. His guests lost their health in consequence of this excessive and uninterrupted good cheer, and one of them, called Vibius Priscus, having contracted a disease which relieved him from attending those fatal repasts, congratulated himself saying: "I was undone, had I not fallen sick."

The legions in the East proclaim Vespasian.—The sovereign power, thus degraded by so many contemptible princes, at last passed into better hands. The legions of the East, justly indignant at seeing those of the West and the Prætorians in Rome dispose of the empire at their pleasure, offered the crown to their own general Vespasian, a man of low birth, but of remarkable talents. He hesitated for a time, fearing the unhappy consequences that might possibly happen; at length, he yielded to the advice and entreaties of his friends, and was acknowledged emperor by all the eastern provinces. But the main object was to induce the inhabitants of Rome and Italy to declare in his favor. As they continued to side with Vitellius, Vespasian resolved to subdue them by famine, and by stopping the convoys of provisions from Egypt. This was indeed a wise and prudent scheme, though it might have taken a long time to obtain full success; but Antonius Primus, one of Vespasian's generals, rendered it unnecessary, by the bold and decisive measure which he took to decide the quarrel at once. It is interesting to see how, in a few weeks, this general, full of ardor and activity, arrived from Illyria, surmounted all obstacles in his way, repeatedly defeated the Vitellian

forces, and, pursuing his victorious career, attacked Rome itself, forced an entrance into that capital, and quickly terminated the contest by annihilating the party of Vitellius.

Primus in Italy.—Primus entered Italy by the north, at the head of the Illyrian legions and some auxiliaries from Mœsia. His march was rapid, and met with little or no resistance, till he reached the neighborhood of Cremona, where he found himself opposed by those same legions of Germany, whose valor had placed Vitellius on the throne. Two of them formed a sort of vanguard, while six others were yet at a distance. Primus judged that the success of the whole campaign depended on preventing their junction, and fighting them separately. Accordingly, he took along with him four thousand horse, and leaving orders to the infantry to follow as speedily as possible, he advanced against the two legions. The victory was entirely his work. At the first attack, his soldiers, not expecting so vigorous a resistance, fled in disorder, notwithstanding the efforts of Primus to stop them. He appeared wherever there was extreme danger or some gleam of hope, pierced with his pike the standard-bearer whom he saw flying, and taking the standard in his own hands, turned it towards the enemy. His intrepidity changed the fortunes of the day. Shame at the thought of abandoning so brave a general kept around him about a hundred horsemen, and while they sustained the shock, their companions also returned to the field of battle. The Vitellians began to waver, were routed, and retired into the city of Cremona.

In the evening, all the forces of Primus were assembled. Animated by their first success, they asked to be led without delay to the attack of the town ; nor could their ardor be checked, until they received information that the six other Vitellian legions had just arrived, and were ready to renew the battle. Primus did not lose one instant : he arrayed his troops, placing the auxiliaries in front ; the legions five in number, in the centre ; the cavalry on the wings and rear, and in this order waited for the enemy.

The engagement became general towards nine o'clock at night, and notwithstanding the confusion which darkness necessarily occasioned, was carried on with a fury

scarcely to be conceived. Nearly the whole night, the issue was doubtful, though there seemed to be some disadvantage on the side of Primus, whose legions suffered dreadfully from the military engines of their opponents. The light of the rising moon began to turn the bloody contest in his favor. The shadows of bodies were projected towards the Vitellians, who, deceived by the appearance and believing the enemy to be nearer, did not throw their darts far enough : whereas they themselves were clearly discerned by their foes, who hurled their weapons with unerring aim.*

No sooner could Primus distinguish objects, than he went through every rank, animating his troops, and with equal dexterity and success, he availed himself of the rising of the sun : the soldiers of the third legion, who had served under Corbulo in Asia, saluted it with loud cries, according to the Syrian custom ; whence a rumor was spread, and obtained credit among the combatants, probably through a stratagem of Primus, that great reinforcements had come to his army. The Vitellians began to waver : Primus, perceiving this, pressed them with redoubled vigor, and breaking their ranks by a last effort, put them completely to flight.

Primus' victory at Cremona.—They were pursued with great slaughter, till they reached the camp that surrounded Cremona. In order to deprive them of this last resource, the victorious army resolved to attack the camp without delay. This, indeed, offered almost insuperable difficulties, as it was defended by a whole army, and well fortified by a ditch, a parapet, and powerful engines which threw with violence darts and stones. But nothing could check the ardor of the soldiers of Primus: they advanced towards the intrenchments with their shields joined and raised over their heads ; here again a fierce combat ensued. The assailants were exposed to an incessant shower of arrows and enormous stones from the Vitellian engines ; although wounded, bruised and repulsed, they renewed the attack, mounted upon each

* Neutrò inclinaverat fortuna, donec adultâ nocte, luna surgens ostenderet acies, falleretque. Sed Flavianis æquior a tergo: hinc majores equorum virorumque umbræ, et falso, ut in corpora, ictu, tela hostium citrà cadebant Vitelliani adverso lumine collucentes, velut ex occulto jaculantibus, incaut offerebantur.—*Tacit. Histor. lib.* III. *n.* XXIII.

other's shoulders, wrested the swords from the hands of their opponents, leaped upon the ramparts, or broke open the gates, and rushing into the camp, filled it in one moment with mangled bodies and streams of blood.

These three victories were the work of twenty-four hours, and the fruit of the most obstinate courage ever displayed by Romans fighting against Romans. The third legion distinguished itself on that occasion in a particular manner, and maintained its former glory. But no glory was equal to that acquired by Primus in these actions; he had, as it were, by a single blow, commenced and nearly finished the war, nor could the Vitellians ever regain their former ascendency. The city of Cremona, struck with terror, surrendered to the victors, and having unfortunately done so without previous conditions, was abandoned to plunder and destroyed by fire. All the West began to follow the example of the East, and to declare for Vespasian; so that Rome and a few Italian provinces were all that now remained on the side of Vitellius, and even these but for a short time.

After some transactions of minor importance, Primus with his victorious troops arrived before the walls of the capital. Here also they were vigorously opposed; a series of battles which were fought at the gates, afterwards in the streets, and finally in the prætorian camp, cost the lives of fifty thousand persons. In every one of them the soldiers of Primus conquered their opponents; the Vitellians were driven to their last posts, and, though they still resisted with determined courage, being overpowered by numbers, all fell, with their faces turned towards the enemy.

Vitellius' ignominious death.—Vitellius, unworthy of soldiers so brave, shut himself up in a litter, and was carried to a house in a distant part of the town, from which he intended secretly to make his escape and retire into Campania. But either fear and restlessness of mind, or the hope of kind treatment from the conquerors, induced him to return to his palace; he found it changed into a vast solitude, and the apartments closed, all his officers and servants having fled. Weary of wandering about, he concealed himself behind a bed in the porter's room, but was soon discovered by a party of the victorious soldiers. Notwithstanding his entreaties, they led him away with his

hands tied behind him, his clothes torn, and a cord about his neck, not one person showing him the least compassion. Nay, more, some were so inhuman as to prick his chin with their swords, to force him to raise his head and see his statues overthrown. He was dragged in this manner to the common dunghill, where they put him to death, and then threw his body into the Tiber. He had reigned eight months, reckoning from the death of Otho, who himself had reigned only three; so that the same year (A.D. 69) saw four successive emperors, viz: Galba, who died in January, Otho in April, Vitellius in December, and Vespasian who was left sole master before the end of this same month.

VESPASIAN.—A. D. 69-79.

THE year following (A.D. 70) was rendered famous by the entire overthrow of the Jews, and by the destruction of their nation, city and temple.

From the time when Judea, like so many other countries of the East, after having been subdued by the Romans, was formed into a province of the empire, the Jews always bore the yoke with extreme reluctance. Their desire to shake it off was continually increased by the tyranny and extortions of the Roman governors. Under Florus, the last governor, their patience was completely exhausted, and public animosity being raised to the highest pitch, they rose in arms in the year 66, two years before the death of Nero.

Revolt of the Jews.—Their first endeavors were generally successful. They defeated the Romans, killed many of them, and repulsed Cestius Gallus, the governor of Syria, who had come to the assistance of Florus. But affairs on each side assumed a very different aspect, when Vespasian received from Nero the charge of prosecuting the war against the Jews. Under this able general, the Romans quickly recovered their usual superiority. Nearly the whole of Galilee and Judea was subdued in two campaigns, and, although the insurgents fought in many places with desperate valor, Vespasian drove them from their positions, and approached Jerusalem. He then prepared to lay siege to this capital; but, being at that time proclaimed emperor, he departed for Egypt, and left to his son Titus the conduct of the war.

Jerusalem, one of the principal cities of the East, was a place of very difficult access. Its high position on two mountains, a double, even treble enclosure of strong walls and towers where the approach was naturally easier, and many other fortifications, would have rendered it unconquerable, had not the obstinacy and blindness of its inhabitants forced, as it were, the justice of God to achieve their ruin. The Roman legions commanded by Titus encamped round the city towards the beginning of April, and, as this was about Easter, one of the principal solemnities of the Jews, an immense multitude of people happened thus to be shut up as in a prison. Their provisions were soon consumed, and famine began to exercise its ravages. Moreover, there were in the town two or three furious factions, which, it is true, united their efforts to oppose the assaults of the Romans, but, as soon as the danger was over, quarrelled and fought among themselves. They did not perhaps let one day pass, without committing new cruelties, and staining with blood the streets of the city or the pavements of the temple.

Siege of Jerusalem.—The siege lasted until September, and during all that time, Titus unceasingly called upon the wretched inhabitants to surrender, giving them a full assurance of pardon. All was useless ; they defended every inch of ground and opposed every attack with such obstinate fury that the besiegers sometimes despaired of success ; once, especially, when, after having labored for seventeen days to prepare battering rams and other engines of war, they could not prevent their being burnt and destroyed by the Jews in the space of a few hours. Titus himself, though he had already obtained possession of the first and second walls, was at a loss how to act in order to repair this loss. After much deliberation, he resolved to change, in some particulars, his former plan of attack, and the soldiers as well as officers armed themselves with new courage for the execution of his designs. By his orders, they built all around the city, six miles in circumference, a wall fortified by thirteen towers, to prevent the escape of the rebels and the introduction of provisions into the town. Through the wonderful activity of the Romans, the work was finished in three days.

Famine in Jerusalem.—From that time especially, the famine raged most dreadfully in Jerusalem. The

greater part of its inhabitants were reduced to eat such things as they could not behold without horror ; the leather of their shoes and shields, dried hay, withered herbs, were food which they would greedily devour. The soldiers of each faction violently entered the houses, and visited every corner to discover provisions. If they found any, they wrested them from the owners; if they found none, they put those unfortunate people to the rack, and made them suffer cruel torments, in order to force them to disclose what might be concealed. Barbarity was carried so far as to take from the poorest among the people some herbs and grain which they had collected during the night outside of the walls, at the risk of their lives, without leaving them a small part which they asked in the name of God. Neither women nor little children were spared, when found with a little food in their hands.

And this was not done by the soldiers only. All hearts were steeled against the feelings of humanity and compassion. Husbands would snatch meat from their wives ; children would wrest it from their parents ; and what almost surpasses belief, mothers would deprive their little infants of the necessaries of life. Nay, one of them went so far as to deprive of life itself her little child, in order to eat its flesh, and prolong her own existence by that horrid sustenance. The houses seemed to be changed into graves, most of them being filled with dead and dying. The streets were strewed with so many corpses which blocked up the way, that an order was given by the chiefs of the rebels, to gather them into great heaps in some uninhabited buildings, or to throw them from the wall into the valley. More than six hundred thousand bodies were thus thrown, and, at one gate only, there were counted one hundred and sixteen thousand in the space of three months. As to the survivors, they resembled so many skeletons or walking ghosts : the whole city presented nothing but desolation and the image of death.

When the Romans heard these things, some would not believe them; others were moved to compassion; but the greater number, inflamed with indignation, became still more animated against the Jewish people than they were before. Titus heaved a deep sigh and called heaven to witness that he was not the author of such horrid miseries, since he had frequently, but in vain, offered a full pardon

to the Jews if they would surrender. He therefore determined to carry on the siege with fresh vigor, this being the only means to subdue those furious rebels. New and repeated assaults took place, in which extraordinary efforts were made, and many persons killed on each side; at length, the Romans carried by storm the third wall with the lower part of the town, and entered the porticos of the temple and its exterior galleries, which they set on fire.

Capture of Jerusalem by Titus.—It was the wish of Titus to save the temple itself; but one of the soldiers, says the historian Josephus, hurried on by a certain divine impulse, took a fire-brand, and being lifted up by another soldier, threw it into one of the inner rooms contiguous to the sanctuary. The flames immediately rose. In vain did the Jews endeavor to extinguish them; in vain did Titus also make the most strenuous efforts to stop the conflagration: in spite of both the conqueror and the conquered, the fire spread with unusual rapidity. At the same time, the legions, fond of pillage, and enraged by the long resistance they had met with, slew all who had taken refuge in the temple and the galleries. The whole space was soon covered with dead bodies, over which the Romans advanced in pursuit of the Jews who fled before them, and streams of blood were running through the flames. The conflagration was so violent, and the building so extensive, that the hill upon which it stood seemed all on fire; while the outcries of an immense number of Jews prolonged by the neighboring echoes, were heard on all sides, and increased the horror of the scene.

Burning of the temple.—The fatal day was come: that splendid temple, the most celebrated in the universe, and the centre of the true religion before the coming of Christ, was in a few hours reduced to ashes and a heap of ruins. It perished after a duration of six hundred years, and, by a striking occurrence, was consumed by fire in the same month and on the same day (the tenth of August), on which the former temple, or temple of Solomon, was burnt by Nabuchodonosor, king of Babylon.

Although the rebels still made some resistance in the upper part of the town, Titus found no difficulty in expelling them from all the positions which they occupied. The Romans completed the reduction of Jerusalem on the eighth of September, and put everything to fire and sword.

What the flames had spared was entirely demolished, and levelled with the ground: not a stone was left upon a stone in the whole city, only some parts of the western wall and three remarkable towers were preserved, both for the sake of the Roman garrison which was to be left in Judea, and as monuments of so signal a victory. The booty, notwithstanding the ravages of the fire, was so great that gold lost half its value in the neighboring provinces. Eleven hundred thousand Jews perished during the siege; ninety-seven thousand were made prisoners, and condemned, some to hard labor, others to death; while many were sold at low price, and dispersed all over the earth.

Thus were the predictions of our Lord concerning the utter destruction of Jerusalem, entirely fulfilled.* It was a manifest punishment of the crime of deicide, which the Jews had committed thirty-seven years before; and of the awful imprecation which they had uttered with one voice, during our Saviour's passion: "His blood be upon us, and upon our children."† Titus himself, though a heathen, viewing all the circumstances of their disaster, the most extraordinary that ever befell a nation, confessed that he was only the instrument of divine vengeance.‡

This the Jews also would have acknowledged, had they not hardened their hearts, and shut their eyes against the light. During many years before the war, they were admonished of their impending calamity by prodigies more and more terrific. All their doctors confess that strange phenomena were daily seen in the temple; in so much, that a famous Rabbi cried out one day: "O temple! temple! What is it that moves thee, and why art thou thus terrified?"

In the year immediately preceding the beginning of hostilities between the Jews and Romans, on Easter-Day, a gate of the inner court of the temple, all of brass and so heavy that twenty men could scarcely move it, was opened of its own accord. Some weeks later, chariots and troops of soldiers in their armor, were beheld running among the clouds, and surrounding the cities.

What is more striking than the noise heard in the sanct-

---

* Matt. xxiv.—Mark, xiii.—Luke, xix. xxi.
† Matt. xxvii. 25.
‡ Josephus, *De bello Jud. lib* VI.—Philost. *vit. Apoll. Tyan. lib.* VI.

uary on the day of Pentecost, and that audible voice which issued from the inmost recess of that sacred place: "Let us go hence, let us go hence?" The holy Angels, guardians of the temple, loudly declared that they were forsaking it, because Almighty God, who had there established his abode during so many ages, had now given it up to reprobation.

Josephus* and Tacitus † have both related these prodigies, which therefore cannot be reasonably doubted. The following one, although mentioned by Josephus only, must however appear the least questionable of all, as having been visible to the whole people. Four years before the war commenced, a certain man going up from the country to Jerusalem for the feast of the Tabernacles,‡ suddenly began to cry out: "a voice from the east, a voice from the west, a voice from the four winds; a voice against the temple and against Jerusalem; a voice against all the people!" From that time he ceased not crying day and night: "wo, wo to Jerusalem!" He redoubled his cries on the festival-days. No other words fell from his lips; those who pitied him, those who rebuked him, those who gave him the necessaries of life, could never obtain from him anything but this terrible sentence: "wo to Jerusalem!" He was arrested, tried by the magistrates, and condemned to be scourged: at every question, and at every lash, he constantly answered, without ever complaining of his sufferings: "wo to Jerusalem!" Being dismissed as a madman, he ran up and down the whole country, incessantly repeating the same awful prediction, "wo to Jerusalem!" For seven years he continued to cry out in this manner without relaxation, the strength of his voice remaining ever the same. During the siege of Jerusalem, he shut himself up in the city, going incessantly round the walls, and crying with all his might: "wo to the temple! wo to the city! wo to all the people!" at last he added, "wo to myself!" and was immediately carried off by a stone shot from an engine; thus having been, at the same time, a prophet, a witness, and a visible proof of the divine vengeance lying heavy upon his whole nation.

---

* Josephus, *De bello Judaico, lib.* VI.

† Tacitus, *histor. lib.* V. *n.* XIII.

‡ Thus called, from the custom of the Jews to make on that feast tabernacles or tents as a memorial of their having dwelt under tents for forty years in the desert.

Titus' triumph in Rome.—Shortly after the destruction of Jerusalem, Titus repaired by land to Alexandria, and thence by sea to Rome. The emperor, his father, went forward from the city to meet him; and they enjoyed together, the honors of a magnificent triumph, for the successful conclusion of the Jewish war.

Character of Vespasian.—The reign of Vespasian henceforward passed in peace. This wise prince restored the empire to its ancient splendor. He respected the laws, and caused them to be respected by others; enforced the rules of military discipline; prevented or punished oppression; encouraged virtue and talents. The luxury of the Roman tables was an inveterate evil, and stronger than all laws: Vespasian checked it by his example, private individuals being ashamed to indulge in extravagant expenses, while their emperor declared himself a lover of plainness and simplicity. Whatever savored of effeminacy, so highly displeased him, that being one day accosted by a young man strongly perfumed, who came to thank him for a preferment which he had lately obtained; "I had rather you smelt of garlic," said Vespasian, with a stern and contemptuous look; and immediately revoked his commission.

He was also very careful to procure a right and speedy administration of justice. The pleadings frequently took place before him; his tribunal was public, and his judgments obtained almost general approbation. Being not less beneficent than just, the disasters which Rome and other cities experienced, were the objects of his solicitude. Amiable and cheerful with his friends, merciful to his enemies, good, humane and affable to all, he gave free access to his palace, the gates of which were constantly open; and he was seen to shed tears over criminals whom he could not save from punishment.

On one occasion only, his usual clemency disappeared. A certain Sabinus had assumed in Gaul the title of Cæsar; being defeated towards the beginning of Vespasian's reign, and having remained for several years concealed in a cavern, he was at length discovered and brought to Rome. Eponina, his wife, who had never abandoned him, threw herself at the emperor's feet, and by her supplications and tears, endeavored to excite his compassion. Vespasian was indeed moved with pity, and even sensibly affected; but his emotion yielded to the severity of his political princi-

ples, and both Eponina and Sabinus were condemned to death. No one knew the motives of a rigor so unnecessary, at least in appearance, and which leaves a blot on the memory of so good an emperor.

He is also accused of too great love of money. The charge may be true in some respects; but we ought not to forget that Vespasian ever made a noble and generous use of his revenues. Besides other instances of his liberality, some of which have been already mentioned, he was the first who gave pensions to the professors of Greek and Latin eloquence at Rome. He attracted to that city the best scholars, and the ablest workmen of the time, without however disregarding those of inferior merit and hurting their interests. One of the former, an excellent machinist, having offered to transport heavy burdens at a small expense by machines of his invention, the emperor rewarded him well for the offer, but would not make use of it; "for," said he, "we must not deprive the poor of their means of subsistence."

Vespasian's death.—It was by such amiable qualities, and by repeated acts of a good government, that Vespasian deserved the title of father of his country, which was conferred on him nearly in the same manner as it had been on Augustus. Though advanced in age, he continued to administer the public affairs to the end of his life, and gave audience even in his last sickness. He was however sensible of the danger of his situation, and said one day: "It seems to me I am going to become a god;" thus deriding, in an ingenious manner, the apotheosis which would follow his death. When he felt that he had but few moments to live, he was heard to say: "It is proper that an emperor should die standing:" and, making an effort to rise, he expired in the arms of those who supported him, in the seventieth year of his life and tenth of his reign (A.D. 79).

Under him was made the last census of the Roman citizens. In Italy alone there were found, according to Pliny, fifty-four persons at least a hundred years old. Ten had reached the age of one hundred and twenty-five or thirty years, three the age of one hundred and forty, and two that of one hundred and fifty.

TITUS.—A.D. 79-81.

Vespasian was succeeded by his elder son Titus, a most excellent prince, whose eulogium is comprised in the appellation of the *Delight of Mankind, amor et deliciæ humani generis*, under which he is known. From the time of his accession to the throne, nothing appeared in him but a wonderful generosity and benevolence, from which his very bitterest enemies were not excluded. Two patricians being convicted of a conspiracy against him, he granted them a full pardon and was so kind as to send a messenger to the mother of one of them, to assure her that her son had nothing to fear from his resentment. Moreover, he invited the two guilty persons to sup with him, and on the following day, at an exhibition of gladiators, made them sit by his side, and hold for some time the arms of the combatants, which were brought to him according to custom.

Titus never sent away any person discontented, never, at least, without some hope and consolation; saying that no one should go sorrowful from his prince. Every one knows in what manner he once expressed his regret at having let a day pass without doing some good office; "My friends," said he, "I have lost a day;" an expression worthy of being transmitted to the latest posterity, and infinitely more glorious than all the victories of Alexander and Julius Cæsar.

Destruction of Herculaneum and Pompeii.—The manifold disasters and calamitous events which happened during the reign of Titus, afforded him continual opportunities to display his beneficence. The most dreadful of those visitations was an eruption of Mount Vesuvius in Italy. Even the mere forerunners of it were terrific: a violent earthquake, subterraneous sounds like thunder, the soil burning, the sea foaming, the heavens in a blaze; all was calculated to fill every bosom with dread and consternation. Then, for three days, the volcano belched forth with terrific violence so great a quantity of hot ashes, large stones, and lurid flame, that the day was obscured, the sun was darkened, and the world seemed to be returning to its pristine chaos.

Pliny the elder suffocated.—Pliny the naturalist, or *the elder*, one of the most learned and laborious writers

of antiquity, was at that time the commander of the Roman fleet at Misenum, a promontory at the distance of twenty or twenty-five miles from Mount Vesuvius. He saw the beginning of the eruption, without knowing exactly what it was. Desirous to have a near view of the phenomenon, he advanced on board a galley towards the volcano. Having landed, he found everything in strange confusion, a new promontory formed by the violence of the earthquake, and numbers of people flying on all sides, for the purpose of avoiding the continual eruption of stones, ashes and smoke from the volcano. He himself, notwithstanding his intrepidity, wished after a short stay, to return to his ship. It was too late: before he could reembark, there burst forth a sulphurous vapor accompanied with flames ; all ran from the imminent danger; but Pliny, having a weak breast, could not resist the suffocating exhalation, and fell dead on the spot. His body was found two days after, without any external injury.

Flight of Pliny the younger.—In the meanwhile, Pliny *the younger*, afterwards so famous for his eloquence, was with his mother at Misenum, in their dwelling near the sea. Though it was far from the volcano, they saw themselves exposed, with the other inhabitants of the town, to great perils from the violence of the earthquake, and the clouds of smoke and ashes, which were carried to a great distance in different directions. Pliny's mother exhorted him to save his life by flight, saying that her advanced age and infirmities did not permit her to make her escape. But Pliny would never consent to the separation; she was prevailed upon to follow him, and they went together, accompanied by a great crowd of people. The day was changed into the darkest night; nothing guided their trembling steps, except the dismal flames which from time to time flickered on the top of the mountain. They were frequently covered with ashes; even the flame seemed to advance towards them; it did not however reach them, and they had the good fortune to escape.

Fire and plague in Rome.—When the eruption was over, the surrounding country presented a scene of desolation. The cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum were buried under heaps of ashes, and remained so for more than sixteen hundred years, until the last century, when the people of that country, while engaged in digging

wells and quarries, discovered them at the depth of many feet beneath the surface. Temples and other buildings have been found there, with statues, inscriptions, vessels, even fruits, olives, wheat and bread, preserved in the cement and lava which covered them at the time of the eruption. The volcanic substances with which the whole country was now overspread, occasioned so dreadful a pestilence throughout Italy, that in Rome it carried off ten thousand persons every day for a considerable space of time. Finally, a terrible conflagration added its ravages to those caused by the pestilence, and consumed some of the finest quarters of that city.

Amidst so many disasters, Titus not only acted the part of a good prince, but also evinced the affection of a tender father for his distressed children. In order to repair, as far as possible, both public and private losses, he spared neither the treasure of the empire, nor his own money. He parted even with his jewels and the ornaments of his palace, to afford the sufferers every alleviation in his power. Unfortunately he reigned only two years, and died at the age of forty-one (A.D. 81). Many believed that his death had been procured, or at least accelerated by his wicked brother Domitian. It was so generally and so deeply lamented, not only in Rome, but also in the provinces, that each family seemed to have lost a son or a father.

DOMITIAN.—A.D. 81-96.

It is scarcely possible to find a more striking contrast in the character and dispositions of two successive princes. than is presented by Titus and Domitian. The new emperor, far from imitating the virtues of his deceased brother, abandoned himself to the most degrading excesses. He was careful, however, to conceal his wickedness, until he had, like other tyrants, confirmed his authority among the people, by several acts of justice and a prudent management of public affairs.

Agricola.—The first and most distinguished personage who had to suffer from his suspicious policy, was Julius Agricola, the Roman governor of Great Britain. This illustrious man had completed the subjugation of

that country,* more by mildness and prudence than by the terror of his arms. He continued to govern it with great honor, when Domitian, jealous of his glory, recalled him to Rome, and repaid his eminent services with coldness and ingratitude. Agricola, for fear of giving umbrage to the tyrant, withdrew from public life. He died some years after, excluded from dignities and public employments, but preserving pure and entire the fame of his talents and virtue. His life was written by his son-in-law, Tacitus, in a manner which does honor to both the conqueror and the historian.

Most of the other wars during Domitian's reign, those especially which he conducted in person, proved unsuccessful: he was defeated by the Germans; concluded a disgraceful peace with the Dacians; and yet had the impudence to boast in Rome of his pretended exploits, for which he caused a triumph to be decreed. His only victories were over helpless insects; he frequently shut himself in his chamber, and spent his time in killing flies with a sharp bodkin. Hence a certain Vibius Crispus being asked if any one was with the emperor, aptly replied: "Not so much as a fly."

Second Persecution of Christians.—Under this capricious tyrant, capital punishments were renewed, for a variety of pretexts, against the first personages of the state. Nor were pretexts ever wanted. To be rich, or of noble extraction, was a crime. An equal danger awaited those who enjoyed honors, and those who enjoyed them not; above all, conspicuous virtue and merit almost infallibly proved the ruin of their possessors: this was the case particularly with Christians. Domitian excited against them the second general persecution, in which he spared neither his own relations, nor the advanced age of St. John the Evangelist. This venerable apostle was brought from Ephesus to Rome, and plunged into a caldron of boiling oil, from which he came forth unhurt, and even stronger than before.† The emperor then banished him to the small island of Patmos in the Archipelago, where the holy apostle wrote his

* Not including Scotland, which never was entirely subdued; much less Ireland, which was not even attacked by the Romans.

† Tertullian, *De præscript c.* 36.—St. Jerom, *lib. advers. Jovinianum.*

Apocalypse, or Book of Revelations. After the death of Domitian, he returned to Ephesus, wrote his Gospel at the request of the bishops of Asia, and died towards the end of the first century, being nearly a hundred years old.

Cruelties of Domitian.—Not less impious than wicked, Domitian wished, after the example of Caligula, to be considered and honored as a god; to have temples erected in his honor, and victims sacrificed to his statue. Next to this arrogant and sacrilegious pride, refined cruelty seemed to be his predominant characteristic; he took pleasure in making people suffer, and in feasting his eyes with the sight of their torments. Not satisfied with putting to death a multitude of senators, he resolved to frighten the others, and for this purpose, he contrived a scheme worthy of a tyrant. He invited them to supper, and as they arrived had them conducted from the gate of the palace to an apartment hung with black, where everything presented the image of death. By the glimmer of melancholy lamps, they perceived as many coffins as there were guests, with the name of each inscribed in large characters. A number of boys, whose skins were darkened, danced around the room; in the meanwhile, a mournful silence, interrupted only by Domitian reigned in the assembly, and every one believed that his last hour was come. When their terror was at its height, the emperor dismissed them all with presents.

Domitian, by such scenes, was perhaps desirous to make others feel the excruciating anguish of mind which he himself experienced. Everything gave him offence; and he was continually tormented with the fear of being surrounded by assassins. He had the gallery in which he usually walked, overlaid with stones which reflected objects like a mirror, that he might see those who should attempt to attack him from behind. He entertained unceasing apprehensions, especially, it is said, of a certain day (the eighteenth of September), and of a certain hour of that day (eleven o'clock in the morning). But neither his apprehensions, nor the precautions which he took to screen himself from danger, were able to prolong his life: that very day and hour, he was murdered in his apartment by some officers of the palace, who either knew that their own death had been decreed by him, or otherwise dreaded the effects of his resentment. Some historians relate that

he had been forewarned of the impending evil; and also that the famous magician, Apollonius Tyanensis, who was then at Ephesus, knew the emperor's death at the moment it happened, and announced it in these words: "Strike, strike the tyrant." But this account seems rather uncertain.

Many have drawn a parallel between Domitian and Nero; but a more exact comparison might be made between the former and Tiberius, whose sullenness of temper, malice, cruelty and dissimulation, he possessed in a high degree, as Tillemont justly observes.* He died in the sixteenth year of his reign, and the forty-fifth of his life (A. D. 96), and was the last of those emperors who have been called the Twelve Cæsars.

NERVA 96-98. TRAJAN 98-117.

Reign of Nerva.—Nerva, a venerable old man, was unanimously proclaimed emperor by the army, the senate, and the people. During his reign of only sixteen months, though not always successful, he did much good by his personal exertions, and still more efficaciously promoted the interests of the empire, by the selection of Trajan for his colleague and successor. He died shortly after (A. D. 98).

Trajan's character.—Trajan was a native of Italica or Seville in Spain, and belonged to a family more ancient than illustrious. Possessed of an excellent constitution, an engaging and noble countenance, and great experience added to his natural abilities, he was moreover in that maturity of age which is so desirable for the government of a vast empire. He received the news of his election while commanding the Roman troops in Germany: this produced no change in his character and conduct. He sincerely believed and publicly declared himself to be not less bound than the lowest citizen to observe the laws. Other emperors had used the same language; but what Trajan promised to be, *that* he in reality was. He seemed to retain his rank for the sole purpose of preventing anarchy, and, whenever his prerogatives clashed with the true interest of the people, he diminished them without hesitation. Hence the surname of *Optimus* was given him by unanimous consent.

---

* *Histoire des Empereurs, vol.* II. *p.* 64.

His public works.—He carefully attended both to the embellishment of the capital and to improving the provinces. In Rome, the famous Trajan Square and Column; in Pannonia, a bridge, more than three thousand feet long, thrown over the Danube; a road uniting, as it were the two extremities of the empire, and extending from Gaul as far as the Euxine sea; and many other public works and buildings, were striking instances of the grandeur of his views.

Fully convinced that haughtiness conciliates neither affection nor esteem, and that condescension can be well allied to dignity, he lived with his people, not as a monarch with his subjects, but like a father in the midst of beloved children. His palace was open to persons of all conditions; he listened with patience, corrected with gentleness, and, like Titus, wished no one to go discontented from his presence. As his friends one day represented to him that he carried indulgence and kindness too far; "I must," answered he "behave towards every one, as I desired that an emperor should behave towards me, when I was a private citizen."

With regard to military talents, Trajan was, beyond comparison, the greatest commander of his age, and equal to the most illustrious generals of antiquity. Vigilant and indefatigable, he marched on foot, even when emperor, at the head of his troops, and in this manner passed over vast tracts of country, without using horse or chariot. Equally attentive to reward noble actions and maintain strict discipline, he constantly encouraged both by his own example.

Campaign in Dacia and the East.—So great a prince easily revived the warlike spirit of the Roman legions. He led them first against the Dacians, and triumphed twice over their king Decebalus, who had imposed a sort of tribute on Domitian. Passing afterwards into Asia, he subdued Assyria, Mesopotamia, and other countries the names of which were before unknown at Rome. These conquests however proved more brilliant than solid: the new subjects of the empire availed themselves of the first opportunity to shake off the yoke. Trajan himself beheld the first success of their efforts, and was unable to check it, either for want of time, or on account of other obstacles. He died at Selinontes in Cilicia, whilst on his

journey to Rome, after having reigned nearly twenty years (A.D. 117).

No Roman emperor left a greater reputation for princely ability and goodness. For a long time after his death, the best wish that the Romans believed they could offer to any new emperor, was that he should be happier even than Cæsar Augustus, and better than Trajan. His goodness however did not extend to the Christians, who were again persecuted under his reign. Moreover, his private life was far from being blameless: on the contrary, his intemperance and infamous debaucheries, together with many other instances of the same kind, show well what we must think in general of the greatest men that paganism produced, even those who have been most admired for their virtues.

Tacitus and Pliny.—Besides Quintillian and Juvenal, who flourished about this time, the most celebrated writers that lived under Trajan, were Tacitus the historian, and Pliny the Younger. Both of them were raised to eminent dignities, and yet acquired less glory from their high station than from their integrity and eloquence. They frequently pleaded at the bar, and were always admired; Tacitus, for the gravity and nobleness of his diction; Pliny, for his elegance and facility, which were so great that he could speak five or six hours in succession, without fatiguing any one but himself. He has left ten books of Letters, and a Panegyric of Trajan. The writings of Tacitus consist chiefly of Histories and Annals relating to the first emperors of Rome; several books of his works are lost, to the great detriment of Latin literature.

Tacitus and Pliny, instead of entertaining any feeling of jealousy against each other, were, on the coutrary, sincere and intimate friends. Public opinion made no distinction between them, and in social intercourse, the name of the one could scarcely be mentioned without the name of the other. It once happened that Tacitus, being at a public game, had a long conversation on literary matters with a foreigner sitting by his side, and who did not know him personally. At last, the foreigner asked him who he was. "You know me," said Tacitus, "from my writings." "Then you are Tacitus or Pliny," said the stranger; showing by that sudden reply, that the mere

mention of literature was associated, at that epoch, with the names of these two illustrious writers and friends.

In their time, a young boy, called Valerius Pudens, obtained, at the age of thirteen, the premium of poetry at the Capitolian games (A.D. 106).

HADRIAN.—A.D. 117-138.

Wise policy of Hadrian.—Like Trajan, Hadrian, his nephew and successor, united with a wretched life in private, great abilities for government; but his conduct was far different from that of his predecessor. Being as great a lover of peace as Trajan had been of military glory, he reduced the Roman dominions to their former limits, and abandoned all the conquests lately made in countries situated beyond the river Euphrates. His utmost care, during the whole of his reign, was to preserve peace with the neighboring nations.

To obtain this desired end, he employed two principal means. The first, rather an impolitic one, was to induce, by considerable presents, the tribes of Pannonia and Germany not to attack the empire. The second, much more worthy of a great prince, was to keep the troops always in good order, and ever ready to oppose and defeat every attempt of invasion. For that purpose he took upon himself the task of visiting all the camps of the legions scattered throughout the empire, in order to examine in what manner discipline was everywhere observed, and what was the state of the arms, engines of war, fortifications, ammunition, and, in a word, of everything connected with the military department.

During these visits, the emperor required that an account should be given him of the conduct of the officers and soldiers; which being done, he appropriately distributed praises and reproaches, rewards and punishments; and, in the appointment of military offices, granted nothing to favor, but everything to virtue, merit and experience. He animated the military exercises by his vigilance. his presence, his example. He suppressed with inexorable severity whatever promoted or favored effeminacy among the troops, and showed in his own person a perfect pattern of military discipline, living with the soldiers as one of them, using the most common food, wearing a plain dress

and carrying heavy arms, braving the inconveniences of the various climes and seasons, and walking, with his head uncovered, through the snow of the Alps, as well as through the burning sands of Africa.

By these efficacious means, Hadrian revived the strictness of ancient discipline among the troops, making himself however very dear to them by his kindness, affability and opportune favors. He paid great attention to the welfare of the soldiers, especially of those advanced in years, whom he honorably dismissed in due time, and of those who were sick, whom he was accustomed to visit in their tents or lodgings.

The civil affairs were not less carefully attended to by Hadrian. It was one of his maxims, that an emperor ought to be like the sun, which by its regular course illuminates and vivifies all the regions of the earth. He spent many years in travelling through the various provinces of the empire, reforming abuses, redressing grievances, appointing good governors, and inflicting punishments on those who had abused their power. He likewise, by his own example and assiduity, improved and facilitated the administration of justice, having for this purpose caused a collection to be made of the best ancient laws, and himself having enacted wise statutes against fraudulent bankrupts and a variety of other evil-doers.

His conduct towards the senate was habitually full of deference and respect; towards the people, condescending but firm; towards the allies and subjects of the empire, kind and liberal. He remitted the whole sum due to the exchequer (nine hundred millions of sesterces, nearly twenty-five millions of dollars), and publicly burnt all the books and records which might afterwards be produced to revive that debt. This action of Hadrian did him great honor, and was justly celebrated by inscriptions and monuments. On the whole, although his government proved fatal to some illustrious persons whom he harassed and persecuted, it was highly beneficial to the state. On many particular occasions the emperor manifested a wonderful clemency, and regard for truth. One day a poor woman cried out to him; "Cæsar, hear me and give me justice." Hadrian having answered that he had no time; "Why, then, are you our emperor?" asked the woman. The prince was struck, but not offended by this bold ques-

tion; he stopped, and listened to her complaints. However, he took care not to be imposed upon by artful petitioners. A gray-headed man asked him a favor which was refused. Some time after, the same man applied again to Hadrian for the same purpose, with his hair blackened. The emperor pretended not to recognize him, and coolly dismissed him, saying: "What you ask, I have already refused to your father."

Hadrian had remarkable talents and a very extensive knowledge. He was well versed in mathematics, history, natural philosophy, etc., and deserved to be considered one of the best grammarians, orators and poets of the age. His mind was acute and sagacious; he could at the same time write, dictate to a secretary, give audience to and converse with his friends. His memory also was astonishing. He remembered everything that he had seen or read, and forgot neither the nature of the affairs which passed through his hands, nor the places in which he had been, nor the names of the persons with whom he had conversed. After reading a book, he could repeat it from beginning to end; nay, if a list of names confusedly mixed together was recited to him, he would repeat them all without a mistake.*

Public buildings erected under Hadrian.—His genius was not less elevated than extensive, and always prompted him to undertake great things for the splendor and utility of the state. No prince seems to have surpassed him in the number and magnificence of public buildings. Such were, in Rome, the bridge and castle now called St. Angelo; in Asia, the new city of Jerusalem; in Great Britain, a wall eighty miles long and extending from sea to sea, to protect the Roman colonies against the attacks of the Scots; and in Gaul, the splendid amphitheatre of Nismes, which however is ascribed by some to the emperor Antoninus Pius, who derived his pedigree from that city.

Revolt of the Jews.—The tranquillity of Hadrian's reign was disturbed only by a revolt of the Jews. Many of this infatuated people had already perished under Trajan for the same cause. Being checked for a time, but not subdued, they again rose in arms and committed horrid cruelties in Syria and Palestine, under the conduct of a certain Barcochebas, who called himself the Messiah; for,

* See Spartian, Dion Cassius and Aurelius Victor, apud Crévier, *Histoire des Empereurs Romains*, vol. VIII. p. 63.

after having rejected the true Messiah in the person of our Saviour, the Jews were easily led to follow impostors. Their rebellious obstinacy obtained, as it merited, a total and irreparable overthrow. Hadrian sent against them numerous troops under the command of Tinnius Rufus and Julius Severus, two able officers, who greatly distinguished themselves in this war.

The forces of the rebels were so formidable, and their valor so great, that the Roman generals did not think proper to engage them in regular battle. They had recourse to a war of skirmishes and detached parties, hunting the Jews as they would wild beasts, and pursuing them to death in every part of the country. This manner of warfare proved so successful to the Romans, that, within the space of three years (from A.D. 134 to 136), they took and destroyed nine hundred and eighty-five towns, besides fifty fortresses. In these partial engagements, five hundred and eighty thousand Jews perished by the sword only; it was impossible to tell the number of those who fell victims to fire, sickness, or starvation. All who escaped death were dispersed throughout the empire, and sold in public fairs like horses and cattle. In no country were they subsequently greater strangers than in Judea, and particularly in Jerusalem, which was rebuilt shortly after under the name of Ælia Capitolina; they were forbidden not only to dwell in it, but even to approach within three miles of its walls.

Dispersion of the Jews.—From that time the Jews have been scattered through the various parts of the globe, without any country belonging to them; without kings and princes of their own descent; without laws and magistrates of their own; mingled, but not confounded with other nations; flattering themselves with the vain expectation of a future Messiah, while from the very words of their sacred records, He must have appeared upon earth nineteen hundred years ago. From that time we see them exposed, during the long course of ages, to numberless disasters and calamities, but always preserved by the mighty hand of God, that they may ever continue visible examples of His justice, and unexceptionable witnesses to the truth of the Ancient Scriptures, in which we read alike *our* claims and *their* condemnation.

Death of Hadrian.—Hadrian did not long survive the conclusion of the second Jewish war: being attacked with

the dropsy, and tormented by violent pains, he wished to end his life by the sword or by poison; but the constant vigilance and care of his adopted son Antoninus prevented the deed. He then vented his fury against several members of the senate, whom he condemned, without any legal cause, to capital punishment: but these also Antoninus saved from death, by telling them to conceal themselves. Hadrian, however, still continued to take part in the affairs of the state. At length, he retired from Rome to Baia in Campania, where he observed no regimen, ate and drank whatever pleased him without any regard to his condition, remarking that "the multitude of physicians had killed the emperor." He died at the age of sixty-two, after a reign of twenty-one years (A.D. 138). As he had, towards the end of his life, rendered himself odious to the senate, it was with great difficulty that Antoninus obtained for him the usual honors which attended imperial obsequies.

The truth is Hadrian neither deserved much regret, on account of his many private vices and some acts of tyranny, nor on the other hand did he merit the violent resentment of the senate, considering the habitual mildness, wisdom and prosperity of his government. It is highly probable that his memory would have obtained greater praise, had he been the immediate successor of Domitian. It was an unfavorable circumstance for his public character, that he came to the throne after Nerva and Trajan, and immediately before Antoninus Pius and Marcus Aurelius, the most excellent emperors of pagan Rome.

Although literature was not so flourishing under Hadrian as it had been during the two preceding centuries, still it produced some celebrated writers, viz., the Latin historians Justin and Suetonius; the Greek historians Arrian and Plutarch, and the renowned philosopher Epictetus. Hadrian himself wrote on different subjects, and even on his deathbed composed verses expressing his conviction of the immortality of the soul, and the fears which he entertained respecting his future destiny.

ANTONINUS PIUS.—A.D. 138-161.

THE family of Antoninus was originally from Gaul, but he himself was a native of Italy and fifty-two years old when he ascended the throne. Being chosen by the late

emperor to be his successor, he proved himself in every respect worthy of this exalted station. When the demise of Hadrian put him in possession of the sovereign power, the whole empire seemed to be exulting with joy; nor did this extraordinary esteem entertained for Antoninus suffer any diminution during a reign of more than twenty-two years. The surname of *Pius* was given him, to perpetuate the remembrance of his tender affection for his adopted father, his family, and all his subjects. What he had hitherto been in private life and in inferior employments, that he continued to be when seated on the imperial throne; mild, generous, affable, listening with patience to every one, granting all that was reasonable and just, and returning good offices for insults and ingratitude.

Character of Antoninus Pius.—Thus when, on occasion of a conspiracy which was happily detected, he could not rescue its authors from the rigor of the law, he at least put a stop to all inquiries about their accomplices. "I would not," said he, "begin my government with acts of severity;" adding, with a smile: "It would be both dishonorable and unpleasant to me, to find, upon inquiry, that I was hated by a number of my fellow-citizens." The son of one of the chief conspirators not only was not involved in his father's punishment, but, on the contrary, always found in the emperor a protector and a friend. This clemency of Antoninus, like that of Augustus, produced an excellent effect, and no more conspiracies were formed against a prince who revenged himself in so noble a manner.

The same kindness and generosity appeared in his conduct towards a Grecian philosopher, by whom he had been shamefully offended. When he was proconsul of Asia Minor, being at Smyrna, he took his lodging in the house of this man, called Polemon, who then happened to be absent. Upon his return home, Polemon, instead of finding himself much honored, was highly displeased at seeing his house occupied by the proconsul. He began to utter loud complaints, and went so far as to oblige him, in the middle of the night, to seek another lodging. This was a crying insult; yet Antoninus never thought of punishing it otherwise than by innocent raillery. When Polemon afterwards came to Rome, he received him kindly, and ordered an apartment to be provided for him in the palace, saying with a cheerful voice: "Let no one be so bold as to expel such a

guest, even *during the day.*" A comedian having also complained that the same Polemon had driven him from the stage—"At what hour," asked the emperor, "did this happen?" "At mid-day," answered the comedian. "Why!" exclaimed Antoninus, "he once expelled me from his house at *midnight,* and I bore it patiently."

Many other instances might be adduced of his surprising meekness; it always rose superior to injuries and affronts, yet never degenerated into weakness. He employed rigor against guilty persons, whenever good order and necessity required; but then, not to offer, in such circumstances, too much violence to the benevolent inclination of his heart, he found out such expedients for moderating that rigor, as could not by their example be prejudicial to the community. Thus, for instance, a senator having been convicted of parricide, as it was not possible to save the life of such a monster, the emperor, not to be shocked by the sight of his punishment, caused him to be transported to a barren island, where he might perish by hunger and misery.

A friend of peace.—Antoninus, both from taste and reflection, was a constant friend of peace. He often repeated this saying of Scipio: "I like better to preserve one citizen, than to kill a thousand enemies." He generally had the satisfaction of enjoying the tranquillity which he so much desired; and, not being distracted by the cares of war, he applied himself entirely to the promotion of public and private happiness. His attention was constantly occupied in governing the state, as a good and diligent father governs his children and household. Far from making exactions, he obliged his intendants, under severe penalties, to levy the taxes with moderation. To the many calamitous events which happened during his reign, he applied all the remedies in his power, and showed in numberless instances that he had nothing so much at heart, as to lighten the burden of his people.

His favorable disposition towards Christians.—This excellent prince was also favorably inclined towards the Christians, so much exposed at that time to public hatred. The prejudices of the pagan world against their religion, and the calumnies with which they were blackened, continually raised storms against them, and, even under the best princes, led many of them to martyrdom. No sooner was Antoninus, through the eloquent apology of St. Jus-

tin and other documents, well informed of their innocence, than he endeavored to shelter them from the blind fury of the populace, and from the injustice of magistrates and governors. In a rescript directed to those of Asia Minor, he took the part of the persecuted, extolled their fidelity to God, their courage in suffering death, and turned his praises of their virtues into reproaches against the vices of their persecutors. He concluded the rescript by declaring that the Christian name was by no means a just cause of condemnation, and that, if any were brought before the courts upon no other charge, they ought to be acquitted, and their accusers punished.

The benefits arising from so excellent a government, were not confined to the Romans and subjects of the empire: the reputation of Antoninus for justice, impartiality and wisdom, gained him a degree of authority and influence over the neighboring nations, which he never would have obtained by force of arms. Foreign princes came to pay him homage in Rome; the Indians, the Bactrians, the Hyrcanians, testified their respect for him by solemn embassies. He prevented by letters the Parthian king from invading Armenia; and the very barbarians near the frontiers frequently chose him as an umpire to settle their claims and differences.

His death.—It was in these noble occupations that Antoninus spent the whole of his reign, the blessings of which he completed by the appointment of Marcus-Aurelius for his successor. After a short disease, he died a tranquil death, at the age of seventy-three years (A. D. 161), leaving a name so dear to the Romans, that, for nearly a century, all his successors added it to their own names: it seemed as if it were impossible for either the soldiers or the citizens to acknowledge as emperor any one who should not have some resemblance, were it but a nominal one, with Antoninus. Yet, it would have been infinitely better for him if he had left as unblemished a reputation for purity of life as for wisdom of government; and if his many excellent qualities and princely virtues had been sanctified by the only true religion, whose followers indeed he admired, but whose doctrines he had not the happiness to embrace.

MARCUS AURELIUS—A.D. 161-180.

Marcus Aurelius considered it his bounden duty to walk in the footsteps of his predecessor, and to govern the state upon the same principles. Although he was not so firm, prudent and free from prejudices as Antoninus, yet he displayed the same zeal for the public good, the same application to affairs, the same moderation and generosity; so that his reign, notwithstanding the vices of Lucius Verus whom he had taken as his colleague, was also a period of glory and happiness for the Romans.

War against the Parthians.—About this time the Parthians invaded Armenia, which they had long since threatened. They destroyed the legions which defended that country, and advancing into Syria, filled every place with terror and desolation. Marcus Aurelius being detained in Italy, took proper measures to repel the invaders. Avidius Cassius, one of his generals, not only defeated the Parthians, but also crossed the Euphrates and continued his march as far as the royal city of Seleucia, which he plundered and reduced to ashes. But these brilliant exploits were dearly purchased. The victorious legions, on their return, brought along with them a pestilence which produced so dreadful ravages in the empire, especially in Italy, that more persons were carried off by it within the space of a few months, than would have perished during many years of the most disastrous war (A.D. 166).

War against the Marcomans, etc.—The thundering legion.—This expedition against the Parthians was followed by another against the Marcomans, the Quadi, and other barbarians, who, driven from the north of Asia and Europe by more powerful tribes, or enticed by the hope of pillage, were striving to break through the barriers of the empire. Marcus-Aurelius went to put himself at the head of the legions, and evinced during the whole campaign a skill and valor which drew upon him general admiration. However, after many victories, he suffered himself and his troops to be entangled in narrow defiles amidst the mountains of Bohemia, where, being surrounded on all sides by the enemy, they were on the point of perishing with heat and thirst. In that extremity, the soldiers of the twelfth legion, all Christians, betook them-

selves to prayer, and presently the clouds gathered, and an abundant rain fell, which refreshed the Romans; whereas hail, thunder and lightning spread confusion among the barbarians, and enabled Marcus-Aurelius to gain a complete victory (A.D. 174). On this occasion, his army saluted him *Imperator* for the seventh time, and the name of *Thundering* was given, or confirmed to the twelfth legion.

This prodigy, which pagan writers themselves relate,* and which is still seen engraved on the Antonine pillar at Rome, stopped for a time the persecution that the Christains were then suffering; the war however had but little interruption, and lasted till the end of the emperor's life (A.D. 180). He died at Vienna, near the Danube, having obtained a great reputation for political and military acquirements, and still greater celebrity for his moral virtues, which were not however without a mixture of many great failings, viz., his religious bigotry, his weak connivance at the vices of his son Commodus and of other persons under his control, etc. He had lived fifty-nine years, and reigned nineteen.

Besides being a great emperor and general, Marcus-Aurelius was also an estimable author: he has left twelve books of wise rules of morality.

COMMODUS 180-192.—PERTINAX 193.—DIDIUS JULIANUS 193.

Commodus.—Commodus succeeded his father on the throne, but followed a very different line of conduct. A monster, rather than a man, he seemed to have no relish but for atrocious deeds of every description. He imitated Nero in his worst and basest inclinations, and surpassed Domitian in his cruelties, except that he did not persecute the Christians. After having gone on in this way for many years his unrelenting thirst for blood at length caused his own death, by inducing the persons of his household to poison and strangle him, on the last day of the year one hundred and ninety-two.

Pertinax.—On the following day, Pertinax, a venerable man, whose uncommon merit amply compensated for the

* Dion Cassius, Capitolinus, Claudian, etc. apud Tillemont vol. II. p. 370.

lowness of his extraction, was chosen and unanimously acknowledged emperor. Under him, the paternal and firm administration of Antoninus began to revive. In a very short time the laws were again put in force, the debts were paid, the public revenues increased without laying new taxes, and powerful encouragements were given to agriculture, as the surest means of prosperity both for the state and for private families. In a word, the sound policy of Pertinax, seconded by his ability and experience, promised lasting as well as universal happiness; but these flattering hopes were soon blasted. At the end of three months, the prætorian soldiers incensed at his exertions for the restoration of military discipline, slew him in his palace (A.D. 193).

Didius Julianus.—After this outrage, the rebels were not ashamed to expose the empire to sale at public auction. Purchasers were found, and after bidding for some time, Didius Julianus, a rich senator, carried the point, by offering twenty-five thousand sesterces (about six hundred and twenty-five dollars) to each prætorian.

This shameful transaction drew universal contempt upon Didius. Severus, commander of the Roman troops in Illyria, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor by them, and suddenly departing, crossed the Alps, and made his appearance in Italy, before the news of his march had arrived. As he approached Rome, Didius showed nothing but weakness and hesitation. This unfortunate man saw himself gradually abandoned by the prætorians, betrayed by the Italic cohorts, and condemned by the senate. His death, after a precarious reign of sixty-six days, delivered Severus from a contemptible rival.

SEPTIMIUS SEVERUS.—A.D. 193-211.

Competitors.—Two other and much more powerful competitors were yet in his way, Clodius Albinus and Pescennius Niger, men of great valor and reputation. Like Severus himself, they were, after the death of Pertinax, proclaimed emperors in their respective governments, Albinus in Great Britain, and Niger in Syria. Severus was determined to destroy them both; still, not to be engaged at once in two dangerous wars, he made first an agreement with Albinus, by which he granted him a sort of partici

pation in the imperial authority, and prepared to attack Niger.

Septimius Severus' victory.—After a short stay in Rome, Severus departed for the East with numerous and well disciplined troops. Niger had on his side the legions of Syria and Asia Minor. From the character, firmness and ability of the two rivals, a war of long duration was anticipated; it was however terminated in a few months by three battles, in which all the troops of Niger were overcome, not by Severus in person, who was then occupied in besieging Byzantium, but by his lieutenants. The last battle was fought near the town of Issus in Cilicia, on the same spot where Alexander the Great formerly gained a splendid victory over the Persians. The victory of Severus was also complete. Niger lost twenty thousand men, and saw no other resource than to retire beyond the Euphrates; but being overtaken in his flight by some horsemen of the victorious party, he was slain by them, and his head carried to Severus (A.D. 195).

The conqueror inflicted heavy penalties on the towns which had embraced the party of his opponent; especially on Antioch, the capital of the East, and on Byzantium, which surrendered to him only after a long siege and a most obstinate resistance. He deprived the former of its privileges; the latter he almost entirely destroyed. Such private individuals as had been seen most devoted to the same cause, were also treated with great rigor; some suffered capital punishment; others lost their estates or were condemned to pay enormous taxes.

Motives of policy, and the fear of rendering himself too odious, prevented Severus from carrying severity farther. He published an amnesty for the common soldiers, and would not suffer a pompous inscription in honor of Niger to be erased, saying it was rather fit that it should remain, to let the world know what an enemy he had conquered. The main object which he now had in view was to destroy Albinus, and thus obtain exclusive possession of the throne. Albinus, on his part, was little satisfied with the inferior title of Cæsar, and seeing himself supported by a powerful army and a respectable portion of the Roman senate, he publicly assumed the title of Augustus.

This bold step was precisely what Severus desired: his artful policy made him always endeavor to have appear-

ances on his side, and permit his adversary to become the aggressor. He was returning from the East to Rome, when he received information of the open defection of Albinus. Severus did not fail to improve this favorable opportunity of inveighing against his rival, and having him declared a public enemy; from that moment, the two competitors openly marched against each other; Severus from Mœsia, and Albinus from Britain.

It appears that the intention of Albinus was to penetrate into Italy, and cause himself to be acknowledged in Rome. Severus, fully aware how essential it was for his interests to prevent the execution of any such design, detached some bodies of troops to guard the passages of the Alps, and followed with all possible speed, at the head of the main portion of his army. He set the example of invincible fortitude in the greatest fatigues. No difficulty on the way was able to stop his march; he was bare-headed, disregarded snow and frosts, and both by words and actions, transfused into the breasts of others the ardor with which he himself was animated. He was thus enabled to prevent the entrance of his enemy into Italy, and to come up with him near the city of Lyons in Gaul.

Albinus' defeat.—The quarrel between these two fierce rivals was now about to be decided. The two armies, including at least one hundred and fifty thousand combatants, were equal in number, in courage, and in the advantages of being headed by their respective emperors. All these circumstances contributed to render the battle terrible, and to leave the victory for a long time doubtful. The left wing of Albinus was broken, and the fugitives were pursued to their camp; but his right wing obtained at first a considerable advantage. The legionary soldiers of whom it was composed had dug before them a great number of ditches, and covered them over slightly with clay, so artfully that no one could perceive the snare. To draw the enemy into it, they pretended to be afraid, and hurling their javelins from afar, immediately retreated. The stratagem was successful: the troops of Severus, anxious to come to a close engagement, and despising their adversaries, advanced without any precaution; but they were stopped at once by an obstacle as formidable as it was unexpected. Coming to the place which was overspread with clay, the earth sunk under their feet, and the whole first line fell

into the ditches. As the lines were very close, the second had no time to retrace their steps, and fell upon the first. Those who followed, terrified at this, drew back hastily, and bore down their companions behind them; so that the whole left wing of Severus was thrown into utter confusion.

In this extreme danger, Severus, with the imperial guard, flew to the assistance of his disheartened troops. But at first, far from remedying the evil, he saw even his prætorian soldiers scattered and cut in pieces, and had a horse killed under him. This served only to animate him the more: rallying some of the fugitives, and putting himself at their head, he fell, sword in hand, upon the enemy, determined to conquer or die. His little troop, animated by his example, hewed down all before them, without distinction of friend or foe. Numbers of fugitives were thus forced to return to the charge; and the conquerors, who, through eagerness, had already broken their ranks in order to pursue their advantage, were now compelled to fight in their own defence.

The battle was renewed with fresh fury: but the victory still remained doubtful, till Lætus, the commander of the horse of Severus, decided the fate of the day. He had declined engaging in the beginning of the fight, perhaps through a perfidious design to let the two emperors destroy each other, in order to set up afterwards for himself. But when he saw that fortune began to declare for Severus, being sensible of the danger to which his unwary inactivity exposed him, he fell upon the flank of the enemy, while Severus attacked them vigorously in front. Unable any longer to keep their ground, they fled, and took shelter within the city, together with Albinus, who either died of his wounds, or killed himself in despair. By this complete but bloody victory, Severus was left (A.D. 197) without a competitor; having, in less than four years, destroyed three emperors, Didius-Julianus, Niger and Albinus.

Septimius Severus' cruelty.—He made a terrible use of his prosperity, and showed himself more cruel and inexorable than ever. After Albinus had expired, his violent enemy spurred his horse on the dead body, which he caused to remain exposed until it was devoured by dogs, and sent the head to the senate, with alarming threats against those who had followed the party of that unfortunate gen-

eral. His wife, children and friends, all those who could be discovered to have been his leading partisans, were put to death. Many towns in Gaul and Spain had to mourn the loss of their worthiest citizens, especially of such as were rich, whose wealth was too frequently their only crime.

By means like these, Severus amassed immense treasures, of which he made use chiefly to gain the affection of the soldiery by favors and largesses. His return to Rome with his victorious troops, spread terror through the city, and in a few days forty senators fell victims to his revenge.

Geta and Caracalla.—On this occasion, Severus received a striking lesson from his younger son Geta, who was then only eight years old. The boy, having heard his father declare how he would revenge himself, seemed greatly concerned. In order to quiet his apprehensions, Severus said that the persons who had been marked out for death, were enemies, of whom he was going to deliver him. Geta then asked how many there might be of those unfortunate people. Being told the number, he grew still more pensive, and again asked whether these unhappy men had any relations or friends alive; and, as he was answered that most of them had several; "Alas!" replied he, "there will be then more persons sorry for our victory, than will partake of our joy." Severus was struck by a remark at once so judicious and humane; but the prefects of his guards urged him to accomplish the proposed slaughter, and his eldest son, Caracalla, proposed that even the children of their enemies should be put to death with their fathers. Upon which Geta, with a look of indignation, said to him: "Disposed as you appear to be to spare the life of none, you would also be capable of killing your own brother." Words evincing extraordinary sagacity, and which were afterwards too well verified.

One of the two prefects of the guards just mentioned, was Plautian, a proud and an ambitious man, whose fate was exactly similar to that of Sejanus under Tiberius. Like him, he obtained great influence, which he most shockingly abused, until, by his insolence, he brought about his ruin, and that of his friends and family.

Persecution of the Christians.—In the meanwhile, the Christians everywhere acknowledged and faithfully obeyed Severus. For this reason, and also from a motive

of personal gratitude towards one of them who had cured him of a dangerous sickness, the emperor for some time treated them kindly. A mistaken policy induced him afterwards to change his conduct in their regard. The followers of Christ had multiplied exceedingly, in consequence of the long peace they had enjoyed since the reign of Marcus Aurelius. The miracles which Almighty God daily wrought by their hands, and the spectacle of their extraordinary virtue, drew over to them great numbers of proselytes.* "We fill" said Tertullian to them at that very time, "your cities, your towns, your senate and your armies; we leave you only your temples and theatres."† So rapid an increase threatened the downfall of idolatry. This was probably, together with the clamor of the heathens, the chief consideration which induced Severus to renew the persecution against the Christians. At first permitting the magistrates to execute the former laws on this subject, he afterwards expressly authorized their conduct by a new edict issued in the tenth year of his reign (A.D. 202). Then the persecution became general, and countless numbers received the crown of martyrdom. The most illustrious of those martyrs were St. Irenæus, bishop of Lyons, and St. Leonides, the father of Origen who afterwards became so celebrated for his genius and learning. Being at that time but seventeen years old, Origen, in a moving letter, exhorted his father to die courageously for the faith of Christ, and he himself, desirous of martyrdom, would have gone to present himself before the persecutors, had not his mother compelled him to remain at home by concealing his clothes.

Spread of Christianity.—The fire of persecution raged for many years throughout the empire; but, far from destroying the Church, it served only to purify her, and

* These undoubtedly, with the assistance of inward grace, were the only causes of the stupendous diffusion of Christianity; and such persons as have, like Gibbon, attempted to prove the contrary, have proved only the perverseness of their own views and scepticism. Nothing short of a constant and special interposition of God could have induced men, buried as they were in vice and idolatry, to embrace a religion so contrary to all passions and vices, so destitute of all human support, so violently attacked by all the powers of earth, by calumnies, vexations, tortures and death. Since Christianity was not only unaided, but even opposed by all *natural* and *human* causes, most certainly its propagation must be attributed to a cause *supernatural* and *divine*.

† Tertull. *Apolog.* c. 37.

make her shine with greater lustre. The Christians presented themselves with courage before the tribunals, and viewed with calmness the racks and other instruments prepared for their torture, ready to meet death in its most cruel shapes. The more of them were immolated, the more their number increased; the sight of these wonderful examples of fortitude, and of the miracles which the Almighty was pleased frequently to perform on those occasions, leading many of the spectators, sometimes the very executioners and judges, to embrace the Christian religion.

Learning also and eloquence concurred with virtue and miracles in the vindication of Christianity. In order to refute polytheism, the holy priest Clement of Alexandria made deep researches in every part of heathen mythology, and successfully used them as mighty weapons against its doctrines. Minutius Felix, a celebrated lawyer at Rome, wrote an excellent dialogue setting forth, with great force of reasoning and purity of style, the absurdities of idolatry and the excellency of the Christian doctrine. But the most powerful work published at that time was the Apologetic of Tertullian, a priest of Carthage: in it, he gave a deadly blow to paganism, by exposing its manifold errors; and victoriously refuted every calumny broached against the Christians, by exhibiting the purity of their lives, their piety towards God, their mutual charity, their love of their enemies, their horror for every vice, their patience and constancy in suffering all kinds of torments, even death itself, for the sake of virtue. This was plainly showing the injustice of the persecution which they suffered.

Character of Septimius Severus.—Notwithstanding these and other acts of tyranny exercised by Severus, he is not to be reckoned among such abominable princes as we have frequently had occasion to mention. With religious fanaticism and an inflexible spirit of revenge he united many great and laudable qualities, viz., frugality, vigilance, firmness in the government, prudence in the management of the public revenues, assiduity and equity in the administration of justice, in fine, a wonderful foresight and solicitude in providing even for the future wants of the people. When he died there was in the public granaries a quantity of wheat sufficient to support the inhabitants of the capital for seven years; and all Italy was supplied with oil for five years.

The predominant characteristic of that emperor was his active and warlike spirit, and the most striking feature in his life is to be found in that rapidity of conquests which rendered him almost equal to Julius Cæsar. Besides his exploits in civil wars, he made two successful campaigns against the Parthians and other nations of the East, one after the defeat of Niger, and the other after the ruin of Albinus. In the latter especially, he was so often victorious as to acquire the surname of *Parthicus Maximus*. He failed only in the siege of Atra, a well fortified town near the Tigris, which had also repelled Trajan; but he conquered many other towns in Assyria and Mesopotamia; and in particular, secured to the Romans the possession of the important city of Nisibis, which became the strongest bulwark of the empire on that frontier.

The last expedition of Severus was made in the north of Great Britain against the Caledonians, whom he drove back to their mountains. In order to confine them within due limits, and preserve the Roman colonies from subsequent invasion, he raised a wall similar to, but more solid than the intrenchment of Hadrian, and. like it, extending from one sea to the other. Some of its ruins are yet to be seen between the Friths of Forth and Clyde, and excite the astonishment of the traveller.

As he was going one day to conclude a treaty with the barbarians, in presence of both armies, a sudden cry of horror was heard; Severus turned, and beheld his eldest son, Caracalla, in the act of advancing, sword in hand, to stab him from behind. The outcry stopped the arm of the unnatural son, and his father, without uttering a word, resumed the negotiation of the treaty.

Magnanimity towards Caracalla.—Having returned to his tent, he sent for Caracalla, and, in the presence of Papinianus and Cursor, his chief attendants, reproached him with his heinous crime. Then presenting him with a drawn sword, he added: "If the desire of reigning impels you to imbrue your hands in the blood of your father, satisfy your desire here rather than in the sight of all, both friends and enemies." No other punishment did he inflict upon him. But neither the just reproaches nor the paternal indulgence of Severus produced any feeling of remorse in Caracalla. On the contrary, he persisted in his detestable intention, and besides requesting some of

the physicians of the court to accelerate his father's death, diligently circulated seditious principles among the soldiers; insinuating, for instance, that it was a disgraceful thing to obey an old man who was infirm, attacked with the gout, and unfit to command them any longer. Reports like these produced a revolt in that portion of the army, the direction of which his too indulgent father had confided to him. Severus, assembling the legions, passed sentence of capital punishment against the accomplices of his son, not however against the young prince himself, and even, it appears, granted at this time pardon to all, at their earnest entreaties. Then addressing himself to them with a loud voice and a majestic air: "You see now," said he, "that it is the head which governs, and not the feet."

Shortly after, he fell dangerously sick in the city of York, and the most painful reflections upon the atrocious conduct of Caracalla preying upon his mind, he felt that his days were drawing to a close. He then called his two sons to his bed-side, and declared his intention of leaving the empire to be possessed by them both, exhorting them at the same time to mutual forbearance and concord (an advice which became as fruitless as it was necessary); and added that, having found the state in disturbance and confusion, he left it quiet and respected.

Death of Septimius Severus.—Some moments before expiring, the emperor cried aloud: "I have been all things, and all things are nothing; and I no where found solid content and happiness." Having ordered the urn which was to contain his ashes to be brought to him, he addressed it in these terms: "Thou wilt contain him for whom the whole earth was too little." In order to terminate more speedily his acute and increasing pains, he asked, it is said, for poison; but no one being willing to comply with his desire, he took so great a quantity of food that he was suffocated. This happened in his sixty-sixth year, and about the eighteenth of his reign (A.D. 211). He left behind him the reputation, not of a good, but, in many respects, a great monarch, and, next to Trajan, the most warlike of the Roman emperors. Such was the natural activity of his mind, that, even at the last moment of his life, he was asking whether there was anything to be done.

Making due allowance for the peculiarities necessarily occasioned by the difference of time, place and other cir-

cumstances, there is not perhaps, in all history, a single prince who so strikingly resembles the great conqueror of a later age, Napoleon Bonaparte. Not that Napoleon was so revengeful and inexorable as Severus; but we see in both the same active and warlike genius; the same boldness in undertaking, and quickness in executing; the same talents and firmness in government; the same ardor for the advancement of their families, and, in fine, the same indifference for the lives of other men, when their own interest and ambitious views were to be promoted.

CARACALLA 211-217.—MACRINUS 217-218. —HELIOGABALUS 218-222.

Caracalla.—The death of Severus would have caused little or no regret, had he not been succeeded by so great a monster as his son Caracalla, whose name was derived from a Gallic vestment which he was fond of wearing. He commenced his reign by the murder of his brother Geta, and continued, for six years, through such a course of debaucheries, cruelties and rapines, which Europe, Syria, and Egypt successively witnessed, as fully to deserve the name of the second Caligula, which is given him by some historians. He was murdered at the age of twenty-nine years, by Martialis, a centurion, whom he had offended by an act of injustice; but the chief, though secret leader of the plot, was Macrinus, the commander of the imperial guards, whom the cruel emperor had frequently threatened with death. This revolution happened in the year 217, and was quickly followed by another.

Macrinus.—Macrinus experienced little difficulty in obtaining the place of Caracalla; but he did not, by his government, conciliate the affection and esteem of the people: on the contrary, he drew upon himself the contempt of the troops, by concluding a disgraceful peace with the Parthian king, and earned their hatred, by refusing them the favors which they requested. A new revolt broke out in favor of young Bassianus, otherwise called Heliogabalus (from his being a priest of the sun), who now claimed the sceptre as being a relation, by his mother, to the Severian family. Both parties had recourse to arms, and an engagement took place,

which proved fatal to Macrinus: he was defeated, overtaken in his flight by the conquerors, and deprived not only of the empire, but also of his life, after a reign of only fourteen months (A.D. 218).

Heliogabalus.—All the worst tyrants hitherto mentioned seemed to revive in the person of Heliogabalus. Never was there a more effeminate and despicable, a more dissolute and wicked prince. Every day added to his extravagances, and increased the public indignation. Sensible of the danger to which he was exposed, and unwilling to receive death from any other hands than his own, he prepared silken strings and golden swords, for the purpose of either strangling himself or cutting his throat, if necessary. Moreover, a tower was built for him, surrounded by a pavement of precious stones, in order that, should he be obliged to precipitate himself from the top, he might at least have his head and limbs bruised in a splendid manner.

All these silly precautions proved useless. Heliogabalus was slain in a privy by the soldiers, and the multitude seizing upon his body, dragged it through the streets of Rome, and threw it into the Tiber (A.D. 222). He had reigned nearly four years, and was succeeded by his cousin Alexander Severus, whose reign presents a spectacle as pleasing as that of his predecessor was execrable.

ALEXANDER SEVERUS.—A.D. 222-235.

Alexander Severus' good government.—A natural inclination to virtue, fostered by an excellent education, rendered Alexander Severus one of the most amiable and accomplished princes mentioned in the annals of the world. Justice, goodness and generosity were his favorite virtues. He often repeated this maxim, which he had learned from the Christians: *do to all men, as you would have all men do to you;* he caused it to be engraved on the walls of his palace, and made it the rule of his conduct. He also frequently paid religious homage to our Saviour, whose image he kept in a sort of a chapel, together with those of Abraham, Orpheus, and other signal benefactors of humanity. This is indeed a singular collection of names; but the fact serves at least to show the happy inclination of that prince to honor virtue, wherever he found it sincere and active.

Although Alexander was scarcely fourteen years old when the sovereign power devolved upon him, his administration was truly admirable, almost from the beginning. For this he was partly indebted to the prudence of his mother Mammæa, and to a numerous counsel composed, by her care, of the most virtuous senators, the best officers in the army, and the ablest jurisconsults in the state. Aided by such counsellors, and urged on by his own excellent dispositions, Alexander commenced a reign worthy of being proposed as a model to all future sovereigns.

Reform of civil government.—The whole empire needed a thorough reformation; but innumerable were the difficulties to be encountered in the attempt. Alexander was not frightened by their number and magnitude, but immediately set about this great work with vigor. Besides degrading and dismissing all the iniquitous judges and bad officers appointed by Heliogabalus, he made an exact review of all the orders of the state, of the senate, the knights, the tribes and the armies, expelling from them all bad and corrupt members. No guilty person was spared. Even the crimes of those connected with the emperor by the ties of consanguinity or friendship, met with condign punishment; on such occasions he used to say that the commonwealth was dearer to him than his family.

No criminal did he punish with greater severity than governors who oppressed the people, and judges who suffered themselves to be bribed. So great was his abhorrence of these persons, that, when he beheld any of them, he could not restrain his indignation, but was obliged, as Lampridius relates, to throw up bile; and his fingers, by a sort of natural impulse, were directed towards the face of the criminal, as if to tear out his eyes.* Nor did he stop at mere menaces: great severity was used, in order to repress the abuse.

He treated with no less rigor those who made an improper use of the favor which they enjoyed near him, and betrayed his confidence. A certain man, called Vetronius Turinus, who frequently approached the emperor, received from different persons large sums of money, under the false pretence that the benefits of the court were

* Lamprid. *in vit. Alexandr. Sever.*

granted through his means; this conduct he called *selling smoke.* Having been detected in this shameful proceeding, Alexander ordered that he should be tied to a post, about which a fire was made of green wood, so that the smoke might suffocate him; and a herald cried out during the execution: "The seller of smoke is punished with smoke."

An example like this was certainly well calculated to check the evil; but, the more efficaciously to root it out, Alexander directed all his attention to a good choice of governors and of magistrates. None could obtain public employments who had not first merited his esteem and that of the people:* it was even a maxim with him, that they who shunned dignities were the most worthy of them. He highly approved the custom used in the Christian Church, of publicly proclaiming the names of those who were to be promoted to the priesthood, in order that any objection against them might be made known, and seriously examined. Alexander adopted this plan, declaring beforehand the names of those whom he intended to appoint governors of the provinces. But at the same time, not to excite against them the fury of envy and malice, he insisted that the accusations should be of a serious nature and well proved; otherwise, the accusers were punished as vile calumniators.

With equity and justice, the young emperor united admirable clemency. Being well informed that a senator of illustrious birth, named Ovinius Camillus, had set on foot a plot to raise himself to the sovereign power, Alexander sent for him, thanked him for his willingness to share the troubles annexed to the crown, and began to treat him as his colleague. At that time, a military expedition was to be made against some barbarians who had revolted. Alexander offered the command to Camillus,

* Among the virtuous men in whom Alexander chiefly reposed his confidence, must be reckoned the celebrated historian Dion Cassius, a native of Nice in Bithynia, and well known at Rome for his manifold merits, which had raised him under the preceding emperors, to various offices of state, even to the consulship. By Alexander Severus he was entrusted with the government of many important provinces, and appointed consul a second time. After having travelled, and collected documents during ten years, he wrote a complete Roman History in eighty books, many of which are entirely lost, while many others are extant only in extracts and abbreviations.

and, on his refusal, with prudent generosity invited him to partake at least in the glory of the campaign. They started together on foot. Camillus, being soon tired, was advised by the emperor to take a horse for the rest of the journey, and afterwards to make use of a carriage. These proceedings, so flattering in appearance, mortified him so much, that he abdicated his honors, and hastily returned to his country seat, where Alexander permitted him to live unmolested.

His conduct toward the army.—In the conduct of this prince with regard to the troops, prudence and firmness, kindness and severity were admirably blended. He kept them under strict discipline, marched at their head, used the same food and clothing as themselves. However, while he required of them an exact performance of their duties, he was affable to all, and took particular care that they should not want anything, especially in time of sickness.

By these means Alexander won the unbounded affection of the soldiers, who considered him as their father and brother, and obtained a surprising influence among them, notwithstanding his youth. Once particularly, being surrounded with discontented legionary soldiers who expressed their displeasure on account of a punishment inflicted on some of their number, he endeavored first to appease their murmurs by exhortations and menaces. As they persisted in their clamors, Alexander said to them, with a tone of indignation: "Citizens, retire, and leave your arms." The astounded legion laid down their arms, took off the military insignia, and retired in silence. But, after having thus vindicated his authority, the emperor, moved by their supplications, received them again into favor, and ever after enjoyed their inviolable fidelity and attachment.

The public treasury replenished.—Another important object of Alexander's care was the public treasury. He managed the revenues of the state with so much wisdom, that he was enabled to reduce the taxes imposed by Heliogabalus, in the proportion of thirty to one; and still, far from abolishing the usual favors granted to the soldiers and the people, he, on the contrary, seemed continually occupied in bestowing benefits. Liberality regulated by prudence formed one of the most remarkable fea-

tures in his character. He took particular pleasure in giving to the poor, especially to those who, having a certain rank to support, were destitute of the means of so doing, and had not fallen into distress through their own fault. In a word, history bears him the glorious testimony, that he never suffered a day to pass without performing some act of humanity.

It should not then appear astonishing, that the veneration and love of the Romans for Alexander was carried to a sort of enthusiasm. Whenever he had to depart from Rome on some distant expedition, he was accompanied to a distance by the whole senate and all the people, who manifested by abundant tears, their affection for so good a prince and their grief for his departure, he himself mingling his tears with theirs. When he returned, he could scarcely advance through the streets, on account of the immense multitude of people that surrounded him and cried aloud, with transports of joy: "Rome is happy, since she sees Alexander alive."

Rise of the second Persian empire.—The chief occasion that made him leave the capital for a time, was an important event which had just happened in the East. By a sudden revolution, the Parthian empire, which civil feuds had previously weakened, fell, after a duration of four hundred and fifty years, and the ancient Persian monarchy was re-established by a certain Artaxerxes, son of Sassan, and first king of the dynasty of the Sassanides (A.D. 226). This great change was of no advantage to the Romans, as the Persians gave them, for many centuries, as much trouble at least as the Parthians had given them before. In the very beginning of their new monarchy, they attacked Mesopotamia and Syria with an army of one hundred and twenty thousand horse, and seven hundred elephants carrying wooden towers, each containing many archers. However, formidable as they were, the Persians could not resist the intrepidity of the Roman legions commanded by their emperor in person; and, after suffering considerable loss, they were compelled to retire. This is the most probable account given of that expedition, which was no sooner over, than Alexander, upon information of the disturbances excited by the Germans in the West, speedily returned to Rome, where he received the honors of a splendid triumph.

At his departure from the East, he left a sufficient number of troops to prevent or repel any subsequent invasions of the enemy. These and other troops employed by Alexander in the Persian war, were not only brave in the field, but likewise so well trained by good discipline, that in their marches and in their whole deportment they rather resembled so many bodies of grave senators: hence every one highly extolled this excellent prince for the great benefits which he conferred both on the armies and the subjects of the empire.

Far more difficult, and terribly fatal in the result, was the attempt to establish the same good order among the legions of Gaul and Germany. Alexander had now repaired to those countries for the purpose of driving back the Germans beyond the Rhine. Accustomed as some of these legions were to disorder and licentiousness, they could not bear the idea of being subjected to the yoke of strict discipline. Wherefore, by the secret direction of Maximin, one of their generals, they attacked the young emperor in his tent; when he, perceiving that all resistance would be useless, covered his face with his cloak, and yielded himself an easy victim (A.D. 235).

Death of Alexander Severus.—Alexander lived nearly twenty-seven years, and reigned thirteen: a prince, equal, if not superior, to the most renowned among the Roman emperors. Trajan, Marcus-Aurelius, and some few others, performed perhaps greater exploits, or were more successful in some respects: but we should remember that they had reached a more mature age when they mounted the throne, than Alexander when he was precipitated from it. No greater misfortune could have befallen the empire than his premature death; it was followed, during fifty years, by so many treasons, civil wars and other calamities, that the third century has derived from them the name of *iron age*. Of the many emperors who reigned in that period until Diocletian, scarcely one escaped a violent death. As they were generally raised to the throne by the arbitrary choice of the soldiery, we will comprise most of them under the head of Military Usurpers.

MILITARY USURPERS.—A.D. 235-268.

Maximinius Thrax 235-238.—As it was not known at the time of Alexander's death, that Maximin had been its chief promoter, the whole army, through esteem for his natural bravery, saluted him emperor. He was of Gothic extraction, a native of Thrace, and had been a shepherd before enlisting among the Roman troops. He was of an enormous size, being, we are told, about nine feet high, and stout in proportion; nor was his strength less astonishing than his stature. He could, without assistance, move a wagon heavily laden, and with a blow of his fist break the teeth or leg of a horse. Hence he was compared with Milo the Crotonian, Hercules, and Antæus, those prodigies of strength in pagan antiquity; like them also he was an extraordinary eater and drinker, requiring, it is said, forty pounds of meat and seven gallons of wine for his daily allowance.

This great bulk of body was accompanied in Maximin with that brutality which is its almost necessary appendage in an uncultivated mind. He was, it is true an excellent warrior, and gained many bloody victories over the Germans; but we may say without exaggeration that he shed still more blood throughout the empire, by persecuting the Christians, whom his predecessor had on the contrary favored, and by putting to death numbers of persons, who either knew the meanness of his extraction, or by their eminent merits excited his jealousy and fears. The people also suffered very much from his rapine and extortions.

Having, by so many acts of tyranny, provoked universal hatred, Maximin was murdered by his own troops, near Aquileia, after a reign of three years (A.D. 238). Four competitors, whom the senate had opposed to him, viz., the two Gordians in Africa, and Maximus with Balbinus in Rome, also perished about the same time, by the fury of the soldiery.

Gordianus III. 238-244.—After them Gordian the younger or the third, reigned six years. His youth and virtuous inclinations, his prosperous government, and great victories ever the Persians, made him a living copy of Alexander Severus. He resembled him likewise in his

death, being murdered by the orders of Philip, the prefect of his guards (A.D. 244).

Philippus Arabs 244-249.—Philip reigned five years, after which he was slain in battle while endeavoring to repress the revolt of Decius, one of his generals (A.D. 249). He governed with prudence and courage the empire that he had acquired by crime, and was favorable to the Christians.

Decius 249-251.—Decius was on the contrary one of the most cruel enemies of Christianity, and the seventh general persecution, of which he was the author, made an incredible number of martyrs. Nothing else of great importance is known concerning this emperor, except that, having undertaken a war against the Goths, which was at first successful, he afterwards rashly entangled himself in marshy places, was entirely defeated, and perished with his son and nearly his whole army (A.D. 251).

Gallus 251-253.—Gallus, a Roman general whose treacherous advice was probably the cause of this disaster, remained in possession of the sovereign power, but kept it only one year and a half. He carried on the persecution commenced by Decius, and, like him, miserably perished.

Æmilianus 253.—Æmilian, who succeeded him, was put to death by his own troops, after a still shorter reign of four months (A.D. 253).

Valerianus 253-260.—The imperial dignity was now, by the unanimous consent of all the orders of the state, conferred on Valerian, a venerable senator, who had greatly distinguished himself in inferior employments. He continued to evince great prudence in common and easy affairs; but for matters of importance, his talents and mind proved inadequate: in the seventh year of his reign he suffered a signal defeat from the Persians, and owing to his own imprudence, was taken prisoner (A.D. 260). King Sapor treated him with the utmost indignity. When he wished to get on horseback or to enter his chariot, he forced the unhappy emperor to bend his body and present his neck as a stirrup. While riding, he compelled him to run by his side, though loaded with chains. At last, after several years of the most ignominious and cruel captivity, Valerian was not only put to death, but also flayed

and his skin, painted red, was suspended in a Persian temple, to serve as a lasting monument of the disgrace of the Romans.

General persecution of Christians.—The heathens wondered at the dreadful fate of Valerian; but the Christians easily perceived in it the hand of God falling heavily upon a prince who, contrary to his own judgment and inclination, had cruelly persecuted them. For, although he knew their fidelity, and was naturally good and moderate, superstition and evil advice induced him to command the eighth general persecution. It lasted three years and a half, and was extremely violent, especially in Africa, where, among others, St. Cyprian, archbishop of Carthage, was beheaded; and in Rome, where the holy deacon St. Lawrence was burnt by a slow fire. Ecclesiastical historians relate of this illustrious martyr, that, when one side of his body was burnt, he himself requested that the other side also should be presented to the fire; and adding, after a few moments, that he was now sufficiently roasted, he calmly expired in the midst of his horrid torments.

Gallienus 260 268.—Under Gallienus both the capital and the provinces were visited by calamities of every description. Within the space of the next few years, the time of the "thirty tyrants," a number of pretenders were seen exerting themselves to obtain possession of the sovereign power. The frontiers were attacked and the Roman territories invaded by the Persians, the Sarmatians, the Germans, the Goths, and other barbarians. Moreover, earthquakes, famine and pestilence made frightful ravages from one extremity of the empire to the other, and particularly in Rome, where the plague sometimes carried off five thousand persons in one day.

So many disasters seemed to indicate the approaching downfall of the empire; but it was saved from destruction, and even restored to its ancient splendor, by a long series of great emperors, the first of whom, according to the order of time, was

CLAUDIUS II.—A.D. 268-270.

A HAPPY union of moral, civil and military acquirements, raised Claudius II. to an equality of merit with

Trajan. He was guilty, it is true, of sharing in the murder of his predecessor; but afterwards nothing appeared in him but love of justice, true patriotism and heroic magnanimity. Notwithstanding the shortness of his reign, he displayed these princely virtues on several occasions, and, when circumstances required, he did not hesitate to practise them against his own interest. Thus, when a woman came to complain of the wrong she had formerly suffered from a certain officer named Claudius, the emperor, understanding that the allusion was to himself, did not take offence at the boldness of the complaint, but presently repaired the wrong, and, by so doing, evinced his readiness to sacrifice every selfish feeling for justice.

Defeat of the Goths.—This excellent prince reigned just long enough to destroy a hostile fleet of two thousand sail, and an army of three hundred and twenty thousand Goths who had invaded Macedonia. He attacked them first near Naissus, in a battle which lasted long and was obstinately disputed. The Romans gave way in several places; but at length, a detachment of their troops going round by roads which seemed impassable, fell upon the rear and flanks of their enemies: this unexpected attack decided the victory, and the Goths were forced to retreat, after having lost fifty thousand men. They rallied however their shattered forces, and hazarded a new battle, which proved as disastrous as the first one. Those who escaped were closely pursued by Claudius; yet such was the fierceness and valor of the barbarians, that, even in the deplorable condition to which their army was now reduced, they once more rallied, and rendered doubtful the event of the battle. Falling with desperate courage upon the Roman infantry, they threw it into confusion, cut part of it into pieces, and would probably have completed its destruction, if the horse of Claudius, wheeling round, had not compelled their wearied troops to retire. The sad remnant took refuge in the passes of mount Hæmus, and fell victims to famine and disease.

In the meanwhile, the Gothic fleet, after scouring the seas, returned loaded with booty to Macedonia, in order to rejoin the land army. But that army was already dispersed, and the arrival of the sea-soldiers at that fatal shore, served only to increase the disasters of their nation.

The ships, being deprived of their defenders, were easily destroyed; and the men, unable to penetrate into a country in which everything opposed them, found themselves compelled to disband and take different directions. Most of them were slain, or carried off by diseases; so that of this incredible multitude of barbarians, only a few stragglers escaped.

Death of Claudius.—After this exploit, one of the greatest ever performed by any Roman general or emperor, Claudius was attacked by the plague which had broken out among his troops, and died at Syrmium in Pannonia (A.D. 270). His death caused inexpressible grief among the people as well as in the army. No sooner had he expired than the legions of Illryia chose as his successor, Aurelian, one of his bravest generals, who immediately went to Rome to take possession of the sovereign authority.

AURELIAN.—A.D. 270-275.

THE military feats of Aurelian had been great before; they were still more conspicuous after his accession to the throne. He began by checking the inroads of numerous hordes of Germans, Vandals and other barbarians, who had advanced so far as to invade Italy itself; then after a short stay in the capital, he departed for the East, where the state of affairs demanded all his attention.

Zenobia.—A powerful monarchy had been recently founded there by the illustrious queen Zenobia, a woman of distinguished abilities. Naturally possessed of great talents, she improved them by study and application; became perfectly acquainted with history, on which she herself wrote a book; and besides the Syriac, her native tongue, knew also the Egyptian, Greek and Latin languages, which she had learned at the school of the celebrated rhetorician Longinus. After the death of her husband Odenat, prince of Palmyra, who had been a constant friend and useful ally to the Romans, Zenobia took advantage of the many calamities of the empire, to invade its fairest provinces in Asia and Africa, and having established an extensive monarchy, she maintained her independence for five or six years with great honor and success.

Aurelian proceeds East.—It was against this princess that Aurelian now directed all his efforts; one year was sufficient for him to put an end to her prosperity, notwithstanding the many obstacles that he had to surmount. On his way from Rome to the East, he was obliged to fight against numerous bodies of barbarians who pillaged the country. His progress was also arrested in Asia Minor by some towns which sided with Zenobia, Tyana, in particular, seeming disposed to offer a vigorous resistance. Aurelian, exasperated at this hindrance, swore in his anger that he would not leave a dog alive in that audacious town; a resolution highly pleasing to the soldiers, who rejoiced beforehand in the hope of obtaining great booty. After the city was taken, the troops entreated Aurelian to keep his oath. "I have sworn," replied he, "not to leave a dog alive in Tyana: kill, then, if you will, all the dogs, but I forbid you to do any harm to the inhabitants." This generous answer, though it disappointed cupidity, obtained universal applause.

In the meanwhile, Zenobia, with numerous troops, had come forward to oppose the further progress of Aurelian. After two actions which took place near Antioch, and the result of which was unfavorable to her cause, the two armies, amounting each to about seventy thousand men, engaged in a general battle under the walls of Emesa. At the first onset, the Palmyrian cavalry gained a considerable advantage over that of the Romans: being more numerous, and the Romans having made a movement in order to extend their front and prevent themselves from being surrounded, the enemy's horse, which attacked them at that very instant, easily broke their disordered ranks, and put them to flight. But, yielding too much to their ardor, the conquerors caused the rest of their army to lose the fruit of their good fortune, by occupying themselves exclusively in the pursuit of the fugitives. The Roman infantry, whose strength was invincible, seeing the other Palmyrian soldiers deprived of the assistance of their cavalry, made a vigorous attack upon them, and threw them into disorder. The cavalry of the Romans, reanimated by the success of this attack, rallied and enabled Aurelian to gain a decisive victory.

Siege of Palmyra.—The enemy had suffered considerable loss. Zenobia, unable to keep the field any longer,

shut herself up in Palmyra, her capital, where she was soon besieged by the Romans. Palmyra, a town famous in antiquity, had been founded by Solomon,* and had gradually increased in prosperity and wealth, till, under Odenat and Zenobia, it reached a surprising degree of splendor, as its magnificent remains still testify. The situation of that city in the deserts of Syria, between the Roman and Persian dominions, rendered it a very important place; the more so, as it was well fortified, and abundantly supplied with troops, arms and engines of war.

By these means of defence, Zenobia sustained the siege with a courage proportioned to the vigor of the attack, so as to excite the admiration of Aurelian himself. "Truly incredible," he said in a letter which he then wrote, "is the quantity of darts and stones which she pours upon us; she does not leave us one moment of rest, day or night." Unhappily for the besieged, bodies of auxiliary troops upon which they relied for assistance, were defeated by Aurelian, and provisions began to fail in the town. In this extremity, the queen set out during the night, to go and implore the aid of the Persians. But the emperor, being informed of her escape, sent a detachment of cavalry, which overtook her, and made her a prisoner as she was about to cross the Euphrates. She was immediately conducted to Aurelian, and appeared before him with an undaunted air; to his question, why she had been so bold as to oppose the emperors of Rome, this witty and skilful princess answered: "You I consider as real emperor; but Gallienus and such as resembled him, I never thought worthy of that title, nor could I see any reason why I should not maintain my power against them, and refuse to submit to their control."

Surrender of Palmyra.—On the news of the capture of the queen, Palmyra surrendered, and being well and generously treated by the conqueror, appeared to him a secure conquest. However, the submission of the Palmyrians lasted little longer than the time of his presence among them: after his departure, they revolted and slaughtered the Roman garrison. As soon as the news of this treacherous act reached the emperor on his return to Rome, he hastened back with his victorious troops, took

* II. Paralip. VIII. 4.

Palmyra a second time, and putting the inhabitants to the sword, reduced the town to a state of desolation equal to its former glory. As for Zenobia, she was led to Rome, and obtained from her conqueror an honorable retreat, where she spent in quiet the remainder of her life.

Besides the eastern provinces, Aurelian also recovered Gaul and some other countries of the West, which, from the time of Gallienus, had been either occupied by the barbarians, or formed under their governors into separate states. Most of those exploits were performed with surprising rapidity (A.D. 273).

Death of Aurelian.—Having thus pacified the whole empire, and restored it to its ancient limits, Aurelian applied himself to establish order in every department of the public administration. He took many excellent measures for that purpose; but he did not sufficiently curb the violence of his temper which prompted him to acts of cruelty: his severity, after causing the death of many, became the occasion of his own ruin. Suspecting Mnestheus, his secretary, of malversation, he threatened him with severe punishment; and it was well known that punishment usually followed his threats. Mnestheus, who probably knew himself to be guilty, resolved to escape the danger by every means in his power, even the most unlawful. For this end he devised the following horrid plot: counterfeiting the emperor's hand-writing, which he had long copied, he drew up a proscription list of the principal officers of the army, and found means to bring it to their notice. The officers did not suspect the forgery. Alarmed at their supposed danger, they leagued together, and, during the march of the troops whom Aurelian was then leading against the Persians, they fell upon him at a moment when he was accompanied by a small guard, and despatched him with their swords, in the fifth year of his reign, and sixty-third of his age. All his murderers were punished, Mnestheus first, and the others sooner or later; and though Aurelian was little regretted by some persons, the people and the army seemed to vie with each other in honoring the memory of a prince who, notwithstanding the short duration of his government, had rendered highly important services to the empire (A.D. 275).

The Christians did not at first suffer any particular

hardship from Aurelian; he rather seemed disposed to treat them according to the laws of equity, as he did his other subjects. But his feelings being afterwards changed in their regard, the ninth general persecution broke out, and though short, made many martyrs.

TACITUS.—A.D. 275-276.

The death of Aurelian gave rise to an event almost unexampled in history, a protracted contest of mutual deference between the army and the senate. During the space of six or eight months, they several times referred to each other the election of a sovereign; and, what is still more extraordinary, affairs remained perfectly quiet all that time.

At last the senate, yielding to the wishes of the troops, named Tacitus, one of its own members, a man of great wisdom and experience, and a descendant, so at least he considered himself, of the illustrious historian of the same name. He accepted the dangerous dignity with a reluctance which appeared as unfeigned as it was reasonable and just; for, notwithstanding the equity of his administration and the success of his exertions against the barbarians, he was after a very short reign killed by a rebellious soldiery. Some relate however that he died of a fever.

PROBUS.—A.D. 276-282.

The legions of the East now raised to the throne their commander Probus, a general of uncommon merit, and who, to genuine probity signified by his name, joined a surprising courage and greatness of soul. A prince of this character was peculiarly fitted for the time and circumstances in which he lived. The empire was attacked on all sides by the barbarians: Probus defeated them all, and drove them back beyond the frontiers; the Germans especially felt the invincible strength of arms, by the heavy losses which he inflicted on their nation. In a single campaign he destroyed four hundred thousand of them, and those who escaped were so much intimidated, that, for several years, they did not venture to renew their incursions.

Probus resolved also to check the pride of the Persians, and marching into the East, stationed his troops upon the mountains of Armenia, from which the enemy's country was seen. Here he received ambassadors from the Persian king Varanes; the audience which they obtained, recalls to mind the plainness and magnanimity of the Romans of ancient times. Probus was seated on the grass, and eating his dinner, which consisted of old peas and salt meat, when the Persian ambassadors arrived in his presence. "I am," said he to them, "the Roman emperor; go and tell your master, that if he does not, on this very day, bind himself to repair the damage which he has done to the Romans, he will see, before the end of the month, every part of his kingdom laid waste, and as bare as my head is." At the same time he took off his cap, to let them see his head which was entirely bald. He added that, if they wished to eat, they were welcome to a part of his dinner; if not, they must leave the camp without delay, their commission being executed. The king of Persia, alarmed at this news, hastened in person to the camp of the Romans, and concluded the treaty on the conditions laid down by the emperor.

Probus' character.—Not long after this, Probus, to prevent the soldiers from remaining idle, made them drain a marsh near Syrmium in Pannonia. They revolted, and killed this most excellent emperor, whose loss was seriously felt and very justly regretted by the whole empire. For, among all the princes that ever sat upon the throne of the Cæsars, it would be difficult to name one superior to Probus. Though always successful in war, he had recourse to arms through necessity only, preferring honorable peace to military glory. As moderate perhaps as Marcus-Aurelius, he was more fit for war; as a general, at least equal to Aurelian, he was milder and more gentle in his disposition, always attentive to the happiness of his subjects, always engaged in useful undertakings, and in endeavoring to make the labor of his soldiers conducive to the advantages of peace. During his reign, a space of about six years, he built or repaired seventy cities, and formed a great number of excellent generals, several of whom successively became emperors after him, viz., Carus, Diocletian, Maximian-Hercules and Constantius-Chlorus. The empire, raised from its declining state by Claudius II.,

and restored to its former glory by Aurelian, attained under Probus its greatest splendor; and, had not the crime of the soldiers shortened his days, he might have revived the fortunate age of Antoninus or of Augustus.

CARUS AND HIS TWO SONS CARINUS AND NUMERIAN.—A.D., 282-284.

After the death of Probus in 282, Carus, the commander of the prætorian guard, was judged by the soldiers worthy of filling his place. He reigned sixteen months, during which he found sufficient time to overthrow the Sarmatians in a great battle, and, besides defeating the Persians also on different occasions, took some of their principal cities, and carried terror into the very heart of their empire. He intended to pursue his advantage further, but was killed, according to common report, by a thunderbolt, while in his tent near the river Tigris.

He left two sons, Carinus and Numerian; the former, a profligate and brutal, the latter, a gentle and learned prince, and so fond of his father, that he lost his sight by weeping for the death of Carus. Both seemed to have mounted the throne only to be assassinated; Numerian, by his father-in-law, while he was borne in a litter; and Carinus, during a battle, by one of his officers.

DIOCLETIAN AND MAXIMIAN, afterwards CONSTANTIUS-CHLORUS AND GALERIUS.—A.D. 284-305.

Two Augusti.—Diocletian had no share in the murder of his predecessors; but, upon the unanimous choice of the army, he willingly occupied their place, for which his high office in the army seemed to have fitted him. Shortly after his accession, he associated with himself in the government of the state, Maximian, surnamed Hercules, a greater warrior than himself, though not so skilful a politician. Both of them sustained by their victories against the surrounding barbarians, the majesty and reputation of the empire; Great Britain, however, was severed from it for ten years under the skilful usurper Carausius and his successor Allectus.

Two Cæsars.—But the hostile tribes of Pannonia and Germany seemed to be multiplied by their defeats, and meditated new invasions. In order to oppose so many enemies with greater facility and success, it was resolved by the two emperors, that each one of them should take an assistant, with the inferior title of Cæsar. The choice of Maximian fell on Constantius-Chlorus, a man still more worthy of esteem for his equity, wisdom and liberality, than for his noble extraction and great ability in arms. He ruled with admirable prudence the portion of the empire allotted to him, namely, Spain, Gaul and Great Britain, which last he reconquered. The barbarians were overcome by his repeated victories, and the people enjoyed great happiness under his truly paternal government; in return, he possessed the affection of all, as the following anecdote, related by Eusebius, testifies.*

Constantius, for fear of distressing his provinces, levied so few taxes that the treasury was empty. Diocletian, who was of a very different disposition, sent to reprove him for his neglect. Constantius requested the deputies to remain for some days with him, and during that interval, sent notice to the richest inhabitants of the provinces that he was in want of money; all hastened to bring their gold and silver to the treasury, which was soon filled. Then Constantius requested the deputies to examine the money, and said to them: "All that you see has long since been mine; but I had left it in trust in the hands of my people." He then returned the whole to the owners; being certain of obtaining the same assistance, whenever he would be in want, and justly persuaded that the safest treasure of a prince is the love of his subjects.

War with Persia.—The choice which Diocletian made of Galerius for his assistant in the East, was not so happy. This Galerius had been a cow-herd, and, though he afterwards passed through the usual military grades, he still retained much of his low origin. In his actions as well as his corpulence, there was much more to inspire aversion and terror, than to conciliate affection and esteem.† His only talent was for war, and even in war

* Eusebius, *in vitâ Constant. lib.* I. *c.* 14.

† Erat corpus moribus congruens, status celsus, caro ingens, et in horrendam magnitudinem diffusa et inflata. Denique et verbis, et actibus, et aspectu, terrori omnibus ac formidini fuit.—*Lactantius, De Morte Persecutorum* IX.

he sometimes evinced greater valor than prudence: being sent by Diocletian to oppose the Persian king Narses, who threatened Syria with an invasion, he imprudently risked a battle with a small number of troops, and was defeated. The emperor, who liked nothing so much as prudence, was indignant at a defeat caused by such temerity, and when Galerius returned, wishing to make him feel his displeasure, he let him follow his car a considerable way on foot, though vested in purple.

Galerius, instead of being discouraged by these affronts, conceived a most ardent desire of effacing the disgrace of his defeat. He succeeded beyond expectation: with a body of twenty-five thousand men, he attacked the Persians in their camp, killed twenty thousand of their numbers, and took a great number of prisoners, with an immense booty. Narses, thus deprived of his army and resources by a single blow, sued for peace, which was granted him upon the cession of several provinces (A.D. 297).

If Galerius had been humbled by his defeat, he was not less elated with his victory: he from that time assumed a greater share of authority in the government, and chiefly directed his exertions against the Christian religion. His mother, a peevish woman and much devoted to the worship of her idols, had inspired him with a mortal hatred against the Christians, and he left nothing undone to prevail upon Diocletian to persecute them to death. The emperor, naturally moderate, for a long time rejected the cruel proposal. Galerius then had recourse to the calumny formerly made use of by Nero on a similar occasion; by secret orders and management, he caused the imperial palace at Nicomedia to be set on fire, laid the odious deed to the charge of the Christians, and the better to show his conviction of their guilt, ran away with apparent fright, saying that he did not like to be burnt by those enemies of both gods and emperors.

General persecution of Christians.—At length Diocletian yielded, and in the year 303, issued his edicts for the tenth general persecution, the most violent and bloody that the Church ever suffered. Racks and fires, boiling oil and melted lead, sharp stakes and red hot pincers, in a word the most acute and exquisite torments were employed against the worshippers of Christ, and of

every age, rank and state of society, were the innumerable victims of that frightful persecution. A particular account of its enormities belongs rather to Ecclesiastical History. It suffices here to say, with Lactantius and Eusebius, both grave, learned and contemporary historians, that the whole earth, with the exception of Gaul, was a prey to the fury of three wild beasts,* and that it is impossible to tell how many offered themselves in every city and country, as martyrs in the cause of Christ.† At Nicomedia, where the persecution commenced, persons of every description were put to death: on account of their numbers, whole companies were burned together, while others were cast into the sea or beheaded; many perished in this manner with their bishop Anthimus. At Tarsus, Alexandria, Antioch, in Mesopotamia, Pontus, etc., crowds of Christians were likewise tortured in different ways. In Thebaïs, it frequently happened, during the course of several years, that from ten to a hundred persons suffered martyrdom together on the same day. A little before, in the north of Italy, six thousand six hundred soldiers, who composed the Theban legion, chose to be butchered by their companions, rather than renounce their faith. In Phrygia, a whole town, inhabited entirely by Christians, was surrounded by a large body of soldiers, who set fire to it, and all the inhabitants were consumed in the flames, while invoking the name of our Saviour.‡

In a word, such was the rage of the persecutors, and such the quantity of Christian blood spilt by them throughout the empire, that they impiously boasted for a time of having destroyed Christianity. But they boasted in vain; the Church of Christ stood, under the sword of persecution, as firm and strong as ever, whereas dreadful calamities began to fall on its persecutors.

Diocletian's resignation and death.—Diocletian had hitherto reigned with great glory, and with a superiority of political talents that conciliated to him the respect of all his associates in the empire; but, in the year 304, he lost his health, and various misfortunes harassed him and frequently disturbed his reason. In

---

* Lactant. *De Morte Pers. n.* XVI.
† Euseb. *Eccles. Hist. lib.* VIII. *c.* 4.
‡ See note C.

that state, Galerius advised, or rather compelled him by threats to give up the government, and to quit, together with Maximian, the imperial purple. They did so in 305, and were thus reduced to the condition of private citizens; whilst Constantius-Chlorus and Galerius became emperors, two new Cæsars being appointed to fill their vacant places.

After his resignation, Diocletian retired to Salona in Dalmatia, his native country, where he lived eight years longer, amusing himself in the culture of a small garden; an occupation which he began to prefer to the honors of the throne. But life became burdensome to him, when he learned the destruction of his statutes and the triumph of Christianity under Constantine. Lactantius relates* that, seeing himself despised and loaded with disgrace, he was in perpetual uneasiness, and could neither eat nor sleep; he was heard to sigh and groan continually, frequently shed tears, and threw himself sometimes on his bed, sometimes on the ground. At last excessive grief and starvation, and perhaps poison, carried him off in the sixty-eighth year of his age.

Fate of Maximian.—The fate of Maximian was not less wretched. He attempted two or three times, but in vain, to resume the sovereign power which he had abdicated, and even to murder his son-in-law, Constantine. Being detected, he hanged himself in despair.

Death of Galerius.—The justice of God, however, no where appeared more visible than in the death of Galerius, who had been the most cruel of these barbarous persecutors. He was attacked with a frightful disease; the same exactly which, in more ancient times, had afflicted the impious kings Antiochus and Herod Agrippa, for having also waged war against God and his servants.† An ulcer corroded and laid open his very bowels. His body became a mass of corruption, and swarmed with vermin: the stench infected, not only his palace, but also the whole neighborhood in the city of Sardica, and was intolerable even to his own servants, as Eusebius testifies.‡ His pains were so acute as to wring from him the most agonizing cries; nor could any means be devised to allevi-

---

* *De Mort. Persec. n.* 42.
† 2 Macchab. ix.—Act. Apost. xii.
‡ *Eccles. Hist. l.* VIII. *c.* 16.

ate his sufferings: the horrid distemper continued to increase in violence, till at length it put an end to the emperor's life, in the nineteenth year of his reign.

Constantius-Chlorus.—Thus did the persecutors of Christianity disappear from the earth, with the evident marks of the wrath of God upon them. As Constantius-Chlorus had not imitated their example, so likewise he did not share in their disasters. If he could not easily prevent all acts of violence in the provinces which were under his jurisdiction, he himself at least never tormented the Christians; on the contrary, he always manifested the most favorable dispositions towards them. When the bloody edicts of Diocletian were brought to him, he feigned at first to be willing to put them in execution: assembling the Christians of his palace, he told them that they must, in compliance with the imperial orders, renounce either their religion, or their employments and dignities. Some indeed were not ashamed to sacrifice spiritual to temporal interest; but the majority appeared fully disposed to lose everything on earth for conscience' sake. Then Constantius, disclosing his real sentiments, dismissed the former from his service, saying that persons so attached to their own interests, and so treacherous to their God, would not be more faithful to their prince. But he kept near his person those who had continued firm in their faith, declaring them worthy to be intrusted with the care of his most important concerns.

One thing gave him much uneasiness, namely, the absence of his eldest son, Constantine, who having been long before sent to the court of Diocletian as a hostage for his father's fidelity, was unjustly detained there by Galerius, and charged by this wicked prince with a thousand perilous commissions. Constantius, informed of these continual dangers to which his son was exposed, most urgently solicited his return; to this, at last, Galerius pretended to consent, by giving the young prince permission to set out on the following day from Nicomedia, yet resolving at the same time, to find some new pretext for delay. But Constantine, aware of the danger, started at night without the knowledge of the treacherous emperor, and travelled with the utmost haste, taking care to kill or disable all the post-horses on his road, to prevent the possibility of his being overtaken. The fol-

lowing day, Galerius was transported with rage at the news of his escape, and ordered that he should be pursued; both his rage and order were equally unavailing: Constantine was already beyond the reach of danger.

His Death.—He joined his father just in time to close the eyes of that excellent prince, who died at York in Great Britain (A.D. 306). Constantius displayed, in his last moments, the same wisdom and prudence which had characterized his whole life. Instead of meeting with any of the catastrophes which befell contemporary princes, he quietly expired in the midst of an affectionate family, having the consolation of leaving behind him a son perfectly worthy of being his successor, and who was moreover destined by Divine Providence to be the first emperor that should make an open profession of Christianity, and give peace to the Church after three hundred years of sufferings.

PART II.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE (A.D. 306) TO THE DOWNFALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE IN THE WEST (A.D. 476).

CONSTANTINE THE GREAT.—A.D. 306–337.

Possessed of an elevated genius, heroic valor, a noble appearance, and a generous heart, Constantine seemed from the beginning, well qualified to reign over the universe. For some years, however, his authority was confined to Britain, Spain and Gaul: the other provinces were yet under the sway of Galerius and his associates, Licinius and Maximin II.; to whom must be added the son of Maximian-Hercules, Maxentius, who had made himself master of Rome and of all Italy.

Besides this partition of the empire, which necessarily weakened the forces of each emperor, the dominions of Constantine were much exposed to the inroads of the German tribes, and particularly of the Franks. He engaged in a long struggle against them, and on his part conducted it with great vigor and severity, allowing no quarter in order to force them into submission. They were checked for a time; and when they began to meditate new attacks, he sent against them his eldest son Crispus, who gained a signal victory, and joyfully returned through snow and ice to offer his father the fruits of his first triumph. The Franks, after this severe lesson, remained quiet during the whole reign of Constantine.

War against Maxentius.—He had now to contend with more formidable enemies. Maxentius, the tyrant of Rome, a prince sullied with every vice, had declared his hostile designs against him, and was ready to support them by the force of arms, having one hundred and eighty-eight thousand warriors at his command. Constantine had scarcely half that number, and was moreover

obliged to leave a part of his army in Gaul, to defend its frontiers against the barbarians. Aware of this great disparity of forces, he began to think of obtaining the assistance of heaven: the dreadful fate of the persecutors of Christianity had already given him some just ideas respecting the true God whom the Christians adored; that God he fervently invoked, entreating him to be his protector, and the Almighty heard a prayer which came from a sincere and an upright heart.

"**Hoc signo vinces.**"—As the emperor was marching with his troops into Italy, on a certain day in the afternoon, he saw in the sky, just over the sun, the figure of a luminous cross, with the following inscription: (EN TOYTΩ NIKA) IN THIS CONQUER. His army also saw the splendid prodigy, which struck all the beholders with astonishment.* Constantine was inspired to make a representation of that cross, and to use it as a standard in battle. He accordingly made the famous banner called *Labarum*, and being thus encouraged by evident marks of the divine protection, confidently commenced the war against Maxentius.

He first presented himself before Suza, a strong town at the entrance of Italy, took it by storm, and then advanced towards Turin. He found there an army waiting in good order and ready to give him battle; a body of horse completely armed after the manner of the eastern cavalry, was its principal strength. Constantine, who knew that these cuirassiers, confined as they were in their armor, could only advance, and that the least motion either backward or to either side was extremely difficult for them, opened his ranks to receive them, and immediately his soldiers, with great clubs, struck down both horses and riders, and killed them all, without losing a single man on their side. The rest of the army of Maxentius was easily and completely routed. Turin received the conqueror with joy; Milan, soon after did the same, and the whole country on the left of the Po, from Turin

* The miraculous apparition of the cross to Constantine is placed beyond the reach of reasonable doubt, by the concurring testimony of Socrates the historian, Sozomen, Philostorgius, etc., but especially of Eusebius, who expressly declares that he had learned it from the mouth of Constantine himself, who confirmed the assertion with his oath.—*Euseb. in vitâ Constant. lib.* 1, *c.* 27, 28.

to Brescia, willingly accepted his laws. His mildness greatly served to facilitate his conquests : he was not one of those haughty conquerors who mark their progress with terror and devastation ; on the contrary, the cities which submitted to him had reason to rejoice at their good fortune, as they experienced from him nothing but benevolence and generosity.

At Brescia, he was again opposed by a great body of horse ; but this also yielded and retreated towards Verona, where a fresh and numerous army had been assembled, by order of Maxentius, under the command of Ruricius Pompeianus, a general of great repute. Constantine, having safely crossed the Adige, did not hesitate to besiege Verona, and successfully repelled all the attacks made to hinder his approach. Ruricius fearing that the city would soon be compelled to surrender, secretly withdrew, and raising a new supply of troops, returned with them in order to fight Constantine, and force him to abandon the siege. The emperor was, by that means, between the city and an army of enemies coming to attack him in his camp. In this perplexing situation, he formed his plan with equal bravery and judgment, and leaving a part of his troops to continue the siege of Verona, marched with the rest against Ruricius. He had fewer men than his adversary, and was obliged to draw up his whole army in a single line, in order to present a front equal to that of the enemy. But his prudence and valor made him a match for the foe, notwithstanding this disparity of numbers. No sooner had he given the signal, than he threw himself into the thickest of the battle, with so little regard for his own safety, that his principal officers thought themselves bound to complain of it after the victory, and to entreat him, with tears in their eyes, not to expose his life so much in future.

The battle having commenced late in the evening, lasted until the night was far spent. Ruricius was killed upon the spot ; his army was destroyed or dispersed ; and the besieged city, having no longer any hope, surrendered to the conqueror. The neighboring towns followed the example, and the whole country, as far as Rome, submitted to Constantine, who soon appeared at the head of his victorious army, in sight of that capital.

Maxentius, who had hitherto remained in Rome, was at

last prevailed upon to put himself at the head of his remaining legions. He accordingly marched out of the city, and set them in battle array along the Tiber; Constantine, on his side, when he drew near the enemy, arranged his troops as advantageously as possible. During the battle, he displayed his usual skill as a warrior and a general, and was so well seconded by his officers and soldiers, that the numerous troops of Maxentius were broken almost at the first onset. Those resisting were cut to pieces; the rest endeavored to cross the Tiber, either over a bridge or by swimming; but the bridge being broken by some accident, or by the weight and multitude of the fugitives, most of them were drowned, and Maxentius also perished. This happened on the twenty-eighth of October (A.D. 312).

Constantine enters Rome.—On the following day, Constantine made his solemn entry into Rome, where he was received with universal applause and exultation, as the deliverer of the empire. In order to transmit to posterity the memory of these great events, a magnificent triumphal arch which is yet extant, was built at the foot of Mount Palatine, near the amphitheatre of Vespasian. A statue also was erected in one of the public places of the city, representing the conqueror with a cross in his hand, and bearing the following inscription, a token of his religious gratitude: "By this salutary sign, the true mark of courage, I have delivered your city from the yoke of the tyrants, and restored the senate and the people of Rome to their ancient splendor."

Christianity recognized by the State.—Constantine made no other use of the great power he had acquired by his victory, than to disband the prætorians, whom he reduced to the rank of common soldiers, and to destroy their camp, which had been so frequently, since the reign of Tiberius, the scene of disorder and rebellion. He made no changes in the government, magistracy and offices, and abrogated no laws, except such as were useless or unjust, e. g. those against the Christians, which he expressly annulled by a solemn edict. Moreover, he himself began from that time to give his open support to Christianity, and to build splendid churches in honor of the true God, by whom he had been so visibly protected. By his edict of Milan, in 313, he put it on an equal footing with pa-

ganism, and by that of Nicomedia ten years later, he practically made it the state religion, though himself still a heathen. It was only towards the close of his earthly career that at the hands of an Arian bishop, he openly embraced the Christian faith.

Licinius in the East.—About the time when Rome and Italy were delivered from the tyranny of Maxentius, Asia was likewise rescued from her tyrant Maximin II., one of the two Cæsars formerly appointed by Galerius, and, like him, one of the most cruel persecutors of the Church of Christ. Blinded by his ambition, he invaded the provinces of Licinius, but was conquered, near Byzantium, by a much smaller army than his own. The conquerors pursued him as far as Tarsus in Cilicia, where seeing himself almost in the hands of his enemy, he tried to shorten his life by poison. The poison instead of producing immediate effect, brought on a dreadful disease: he was inwardly burnt, with excruciating tortures: in the excess of his pains, he rolled himself on the ground, and roaring in a frightful manner, dashed his head against the walls with such violence, that his eyes started from their sockets: a visible punishment of the cruelty with which he had caused the eyes of numbers of Christians to be put out, during the persecution. He expired, after several days of intolerable sufferings, in rage and despair.

By his death, Licinius remained sole sovereign in the East. But Licinius himself, although a skilful general, was a cruel and worthless prince, an enemy to men of learning, and, in his heart, a foe to religion, though to please Constantine, he at first joined with him in publishing edicts in favor of the Christians. Believing himself injured by the proposal of his colleague for a new and more adequate division of the empire, he raised armies to oppose the armies of Constantine. The two emperors, each at the head of his troops, met near Cibalis in Pannonia, where they commenced a sharp and well contested battle. It lasted from morning till night; when at length Constantine's right wing began to obtain a decided advantage, which led in a short time to a complete victory. Licinius, finding himself totally defeated, fled to Syrmium, and thence to Adrianople in Thrace, where he hastened to raise new forces, in order to stop the progress of his enemy. Accordingly, another battle was fought near a place named

Mardia. Here neither of the parties could claim the victory, nor could either of them be said to have been vanquished, though Licinius suffered more than his adversary;* but their nearly equal losses induced a compromise. Constantine, on account of his previous success and greater actual resources, dictated the terms of the treaty, and obtained a considerable increase of his dominions (A.D. 314).

Constantine sole emperor 323.—This treaty, though greatly disadvantageous to Licinius, was not, like most treaties of the kind, of short duration. It lasted eight years, during which the empire was enabled to recover from the continual shocks and disturbances it had suffered ever since the death of Constantius-Chlorus. But, in the year 323, hostilities were again provoked by Licinius. Constantine, ever quick and active, immediately entered his enemy's territory, and went in search of him, with an army of one hundred and twenty thousand foot and ten thousand horse. The troops of Licinius amounted to one hundred and fifty thousand infantry and fifteen thousand cavalry. He had, besides, a powerful fleet consisting of three hundred and fifty galleys, to which Constantine could only oppose two hundred galleys, under the command of his son Crispus.

The two land armies came in sight of each other near Adrianople, but were still separated by the river Hebrus. Licinius, being advantageously posted upon an eminence, kept himself on the defensive. Constantine earnestly desired to attack him, and as the river was an obstacle, his warlike ardor, which could not bear a state of inactivity, made him contrive a stratagem to surprise the enemy. He ordered a quantity of wood to be cut, and cables to be prepared, as if he intended to throw a bridge over the Hebrus, and while the men of Licinius were trying to impede the progress of this work, Constantine, with a small detachment, went higher up the river, to a place where he knew it to be fordable, and crossing it at the head of some horsemen, was soon after followed by his whole army. Licinius, thus unexpectedly attacked, and unable to retreat, was forced to fight. A great part

* This was, during the long reign of Constantine, the only battle in which he was not completely victorious.

of his troops made but little resistance: they were disconcerted by the success of the enemy in passing the river, while the troops of Constantine were elated with the hope of victory. The event justified the fears of one party, and the expectations of the other. The army of Licinius was completely defeated, and his camp forced and taken; he himself fled with all possible speed to Byzantium, leaving thirty-three thousand of his men on the field of battle, the rest having scattered themselves through the neighboring woods and mountains. During the following days, all these vanquished fugitives surrendered, and were kindly received.

Constantine pursued Licinius, and blocked him up by land in Byzantium. In the meanwhile, two naval battles were fought on the narrow seas between Europe and Asia, in which Crispus, though much inferior in forces, so well availed himself first of the narrowness of the strait, and then of a strong and favorable wind, that the enemy's fleet was almost entirely destroyed. This enabled the victorious fleet of Constantine to advance towards Byzantium and to blockade it by sea, as it was already besieged by land. Licinius, aware of the imminent danger that threatened him, fled to Chalcedon on the opposite shore, not despairing of being still able to raise a sufficient force to try his fortune again.

Surrender and death of Licinius.—He was indeed thus far successful; for we find him at the head of one hundred and thirty thousand men, when his adversary, likewise crossing the strait, overtook him on the other side. The armies engaged near Chrysopolis, a suburb of Chalcedon; and Licinius, in spite of all his efforts, experienced a new and signal overthrow. One hundred thousand of his men were either killed or taken prisoners, the rest dispersed, and he himself, seeing his party entirely ruined, consented to surrender (A.D. 323). He obtained leave to retire to Thessalonica, but shortly after was put to death, with his son and his chief general, either because he meditated new disturbances, or for other political reasons on the part of Constantine, who perhaps did not in this transaction sufficiently consult the natural generosity of his heart.

The other partisans of Licinius received much better treatment from the conqueror, being left by him in the

full possession of their estates and dignities. This clemency, not less than the perfect ability with which he had conducted the war, subdued to his power all the provinces of the East, and he was now acknowledged, without further obstacle, in the whole empire. Being thus free from the occupations and tumults of warfare, he applied himself to repair the evils of past disturbances by the advantages of a profound and lasting peace. He enacted a variety of excellent laws, some in favor of poor laborers, children, orphans, widows, prisoners and slaves; others against iniquitous judges and governors, in a word, against all the oppression of his people. In a rescript which he addressed to all the subjects of the empire, he thus expressed himself: "If any one, of what rank and condition soever he may be, is confident that he can plainly and manifestly prove any injustice done to him by those who exercise authority in my name, let him apply to me personally; I will myself hear him; I will take cognizance of the cause; and if I find his allegations true, I will severely punish the man who shall have deceived me by a false appearance of integrity. So may the Almighty always favor and protect me, and keep the republic safe and flourishing."

Such were the admirable views of Constantine with regard to the civil administration. He likewise applied himself with great care to maintain good order among the troops, and his zeal was crowned with success. It is remarkable that in the great number of civil wars in which he was engaged, no mutiny, no revolt occurred in his armies. He owed the lasting tranquillity he enjoyed in this respect, to his great qualities which commanded the esteem and admiration of his officers and soldiers, and to his behavior towards them, which was properly tempered with indulgence and resolution.

Like all other great princes of every age and country, Constantine loved and patronized letters. He himself cultivated them, and endeavored to procure the same advantage for his sons, Crispus, Constantine, Constantius and Constans, giving them all an education suitable to their birth, and to the high rank to which they were destined. Besides choosing for them excellent masters in every department of literature, he himself was their first master, instructing them in Christian piety, in the sci-

ence of government, and in military exercises. He taught them early the necessity and pleasure of doing good, by employing their tender hands, as soon as they could write, in signing gratuities and rewards.

Council of Nice 325—This great and good prince was particularly anxious to make Christianity flourish. Nothing afforded him more pleasure than to learn its daily progress, and he himself contributed towards its advancement by his exhortation and example. While he gloried in openly professing that holy religion, he invited by an edict all his subjects, without however forcing any one, to renounce their old superstitions, and embrace the true faith which Almighty God had manifested to the whole world in so signal a manner. The zealous emperor endeavored also by letters to inspire Sapor II., king of Persia, with favorable sentiments towards the Christians of his kingdom; and not being able to succeed in this, he granted a safe and honorable retreat to those who were compelled to fly from the persecution raging in their country. Moreover, it was through his protection that the first general council of the Church was convened at Nice in Bithynia (A.D. 325). In this venerable assembly, three hundred and eighteen bishops, together with the legates of Pope St. Sylvester, condemned the Arian heresy with its author Arius, who, contrary to the Scriptures and to the belief of preceding ages, denied the divinity of Christ.

Until about that time, Constantine had reigned with such wisdom and happiness as to have made him equal, perhaps superior, to the most accomplished and celebrated princes. But in the last twelve years of his life, he tarnished in some degree the great glory which he had previously acquired. An excessive goodness made him leave unpunished the bad practices of many among the magistrates and other public officers; this gave rise to a greater number of vexations and miseries among the people. He also too easily gave credit to crafty and hypocritical persons, who abused his confidence, and induced him to banish, or exclude from favor, some of the most worthy men of the empire. His greatest fault was towards his own son Crispus, a young prince of uncommon merit; the emperor was so far deceived by an artful calumny, as to believe him guilty of an atrocious design,

and, in the first moment of his indignation, caused him to be put to death. He soon detected the falsehood, and severely punished its authors; too late however for the unfortunate Crispus, whose hasty execution he could but bitterly lament.

Constantinople founded.—Constantine is likewise reproached with some faults in his administration and political views, chiefly with having disunited the empire by the foundation of a second capital. How far this can be just matter of reproach, it is difficult to determine: the emperor's intention seems to have been pure, and worthy of a Christian prince. Wishing to make his residence in a place entirely purged from the remains of idolatry, and being exceedingly pleased with the situation of Byzantium in Thrace, he built on that spot a magnificent city, called from his name Constantinople, and from that time established in it the principal seat of the empire (A.D. 330).

The faults of Constantine, though real stains on his memory, must not however destroy the esteem and admiration due to his eminent qualities. Activity, application to affairs, piety and benevolence always shone conspicuous in him.* His alms to the poor and to all persons in distress, were immense; his inclination to forgive injuries, was wonderful. In a revolt which occurred in Egypt, probably at Alexandria, the mutinous populace insulted the statues of the emperor; the courtiers, in order to aggravate the crime of the seditious represented that they had gone so far as to throw stones at the face of their prince, which still bore the marks of so foul an outrage. Upon this, Constantine, with a smile, put his hands to his face, and mildly answered: "I do not feel any hurt;" thus refuting the exaggerated charge of the courtiers, and reducing them to silence by a magnanimous reply which will never be forgotten by posterity. The emperor acted

* Pagan writers themselves bear testimony to the virtues of Constantine. Libanius asserts (*orat. 3d*) that he was always engaged in contriving or executing some great design for the public utility. Eutropius, in his Roman hist. lib. x. writes of him thus: "Vir primo imperii tempore optimis principibus, ultimo mediis comparandus; innumeræ in eo animi corporisque virtutes claruerunt." The same, in substance, is said by Praxagoras, Aurelius Victor, and others, whose testimony, not being liable to any charge of party prepossession, are by far preferable to the invectives of the angry Zozimus and of Julian the Apostate, both of them the worthy predecessors of our modern infidels, in their hatred against a prince who was the constant protector of Christianity.

consistently with his principles. Pitying the frenzy of those who had been guilty of such disrespect, he contented himself with taking proper measures to prevent the like disorders in future.

Government and character of Constantine.—This indulgence and goodness of Constantine towards his people, gained him the affection of all; while his greatness and glory attracted the respect, not only of the Romans, but even of all the neighboring nations. His palace was crowded with ambassadors from the Germans, the Goths, the Sarmatians, the Persians, the Indians, the Ethiopians, and other distant nations, as different from each other in their features and complexion, as in their dress and ornaments, but all filled with sentiments of deep veneration for the emperor. According to the difference of their countries and climes, they brought him a great variety of presents, such as crowns of gold, diadems enriched with precious stones, arms of a particular kind, animals unknown in Europe, etc. Constantine graciously received their presents, and in return made them others of much greater value. Many of these foreigners were so much struck at the splendor of his court, so delighted with his noble and affable behavior, and conceived such an esteem for his virtue, in proportion as they became better acquainted with him, that, forgetting their own country, they attached themselves to the service of so great and so excellent a prince.

The glory of arms contributed to crown the splendor of his latter years. He had already, during the interval of his wars against Licinius, defeated the Goths and the Sarmatians in many battles; but, that first lesson not having sufficiently subdued their restless spirit, upon their renewing hostilities in the year 332, he again so signally defeated those fierce nations, that they were obliged to sue for peace, and to give hostages. Moreover, he showed the same resolution against the Persians who had lately attacked Mesopotamia: though much advanced in age, he prepared to march against them, and the mere terror of his name made them retire beyond the Tigris.

Constantine's death.—Shortly after, Constantine fell dangerously ill, and having prepared himself for death by greater piety, departed this life, on the 22d of May (A.D. 337), at the age of nearly sixty-four, after a

glorious reign of thirty-one years, the longest since that of Augustus. The splendor of his military, political and religious achievements, gained him the surname of GREAT which posterity has confirmed. No grief was ever more universal, more sincere, and more strongly expressed, than that occasioned by his death. No sooner was the melancholy event made known, than his guards rent their garments, and in the excess of their sorrow, beat their breasts and fell to the ground, calling him with lamentable sobs and cries their beloved master, sovereign and father. The tribunes, the centurions, and the soldiers seemed unwilling to survive a prince whose liberality they had constantly experienced, whose heroic valor they had so frequently admired on the field of battle. The inhabitants of Nicomedia ran confusedly through the streets, sighing and weeping; it seemed as if each family had lost the best of parents. In a word, all the empire, and Rome itself, which he had left for another residence, were plunged in the deepest affliction; and so dear to all was the memory of their deceased sovereign, that both the people of this capital, and the many legions scattered through the provinces, unanimously resolved, without the possibility of common deliberation, to acknowledge none as emperors, except the sons of Constantine.

CONSTANTIUS AND HIS BROTHERS CONSTANTINE II. AND CONSTANS.—A.D. 337-361.

Division of the empire.—The three brothers divided the empire among themselves, in the following manner: Gaul, Britain and Spain were allotted to Constantine, who was the eldest; Italy, Illyria and Africa, to Constans, who was the youngest; and the provinces of the East, to Constantius. It might seem that everything had been settled to their common satisfaction; however, Constantine remained only a short time contented with his department. After several useless complaints, he endeavored to encroach upon the territories of Constans, but perished in the attempt, being slain in ambuscade near Aquileia (A.D. 340). Constans then seized the estates of Constantine, and added them to his own.

Constantius took no share in the quarrels of his brothers. Being moderate and humane by nature, but weak, sus-

picious, jealous, even cruel through ambition, and always surrounded by evil counsellors, who knew how to conceal their wickedness under the mask of virtue, he made it his chief occupation to disturb the Church in favor of the Arians, and obstinately to persecute the great St. Athanasius, patriarch of Alexandria, and the other defenders of the Nicene faith. He was also engaged for many years in opposing the repeated attacks of the Persians, and this he did with very little ability and success; yet the enemy did not gain any decisive advantage, and having three times assaulted the city of Nisibis, was as many times repelled with considerable loss.

Constantius unites the empire.—Another revolution in the West soon attracted the attention of Constantius. In the year 350, his brother Constans fell a victim to a conspiracy artfully contrived by a certain Magnentius, who commanded troops in Gaul, and pretended to reign in his place. At the first news of this disastrous event, Constantius hastened from the East to punish the usurper, who, on his side, had made extensive preparations to repel the attack. The famous battle of Mursa which cost the lives of sixty thousand men, decided the contest in favor of Constantius. After extraordinary exertions made by both parties, the troops of Magnentius were completely routed, and either destroyed by the cavalry of Constantius, or precipitated into the river Drave. In this distress, Magnentius, seeing himself on the point of falling into the hands of the enemy, cast off the imperial insignia, took the horse and garments of a common soldier, and fled in full speed across the Alps, until he arrived at Aquileia. After a short stay there, he retired to Lyons in Gaul, where he tried the chance of another battle, but was again defeated. At length, finding himself abandoned by his own troops, he put his family to the sword, and then killed himself, after an usurped reign of three years (A.D. 353).

Julian.—Thus all the parts of the empire were again united under the same sovereign. But such a burden was too heavy for Constantius, and he himself being sensible how much he stood in need of an assistant, made choice, for this purpose, of his cousin Julian, who had, on account of his tender age, been spared in the massacre of his family. He conferred on him the title of Cæsar,

and sent him to defend the frontiers near the Rhine against the inroads of the Germans. After having freed himself from the cares of war, he applied more than ever to his favorite occupation of promoting the cause of Arianism. By his orders, the orthodox bishops were driven from their sees, banished, imprisoned, and compelled by threats and ill-treatment to sign ambiguous formulas which might afterwards be made to serve as a confirmation of the heresy. But neither artifice nor violence could make Arianism prevail in the Church, and even in the midst of the storm, the far greater number of both the pastors and the faithful always closely adhered to the profession of the true faith, as is attested by St. Athanasius,* Sulpitius-Severus,† and others.

While Constantius disturbed the whole Christian flock, Julian was discharging his duties and fulfilling his perilous commission in Gaul with great success. This prince, who afterwards deserved the surname of *Apostate,* at first displayed only great qualities. His principal care was to re-establish good order in the provinces, and discipline in the armies. Attacked by numerous hordes of Alemanni and Franks, he not only delivered the country from their invasion, but entirely defeated seven of their kings in a great battle near Strasburg, pursued them beyond the Rhine, and subdued them by repeated victories.

The emperor became jealous and alarmed at the increasing glory of the young Cæsar; and, being moreover attacked anew by the Persians, he thought it a proper opportunity to deprive Julian of a considerable portion of his troops. Accordingly, some legions were commanded to depart from Gaul into Asia. This order caused general discontent, both among the soldiers, and the inhabitants who entreated them not to abandon a country which they had so well defended; at last, the troops revolted, and proclaimed Julian emperor. With real or feigned reluctance, he accepted the title offered him by the soldiers, took the diadem, and not being able to settle his difference with Constantius in a peaceful manner, advanced as far as Sirmium to fight against that prince, who after all had been his benefactor as well as

---

* S. Athan. *Epist. ad Jovianum Imper. n.* 2.
† Sulp. Sever. *hist. sacr. lib.* II. *passim.*

sovereign. Fortunately for his cause, the death of Constantius, which happened just at that time (November 361), delivered him from his perplexing position, and preserved the empire from the horrors of a new civil war.

JULIAN.—A.D. 361-363.

Apostacy of Julian.—Julian now proceeded without opposition to Constantinople, where he was immediately acknowledged emperor, as well as in all the provinces. The beginning of his reign was remarkable for the ardor with which he affected to redress the abuses of the late government; and it cannot be denied that he greatly improved, in a short time, many parts of the civil and military administration. But in this prince, good was always attended with evil. He aimed at nothing so much as the restoration of the worship of idols, and the destruction of the religion of Christ, which he had already publicly renounced. He pursued this twofold object with incessant and unabated activity; though he endeavored to effect it more by dissimulation and artful measures, than by open force and violence. While all favors were lavished on a crowd of miserable sophists and magicians by whom he was constantly surrounded, the Christians experienced nothing from him but contempt, vexations and disgrace. On all occasions he loaded them with insult, and openly violated in their regard the most common laws of equity; excluding them from the rights of citizens, and from fair trial in the courts of justice; forbidding them to teach and to be taught in the schools; not admitting any one to offices of trust and authority; continually endeavoring to make apostates; and, notwithstanding his feigned moderation, often giving secret orders to put to death those on whom other means of seduction had produced no effect.

The rebuilding of the temple at Jerusalem attempted.—Julian desired above all things to bring discredit upon the predictions of our Saviour* and of the prophet Daniel† concerning the entire and irreparable destruction of the temple of Jerusalem. Nearly three hundred years after it had been destroyed under Vespasian and Titus, he undertook to raise it from its ruins.

---

* Matt. xxiv., 2. † Dan. ix., 27.

Although the Jews had no great share in his affection, he invited them, by a flattering letter, to concur in the enterprise; and, uniting effects with promises, he sent a great number of workmen to Jerusalem, ordered his treasurers to furnish money and everything necessary for the rebuilding of the temple, and appointed one of his confidential officers, named Alypius, to enforce the execution of his orders.

The news was no sooner spread abroad, than the Jews, elated with joy, flocked from all parts to Jerusalem. Immense quantities of stone, brick, timber and other materials were prepared for the important work. When everything was in readiness, the workmen began to clear the ground, to dig up the earth, and to remove the old foundations; Jews of all ranks, young and old, women and children, shared in the labor, with so much eagerness, that some made use of silver pick-axes and spades, in honor of the undertaking. St. Cyril, bishop of Jerusalem, beheld these mighty preparations without anxiety. Full of confidence in the divine predictions, he said that the Jews, far from being able to rebuild their temple, would, on the contrary, fully verify the prophecy of Christ, by entirely removing the former foundations which still existed, and thus be instrumental in the literal fulfilment of what our Saviour had foretold, that of all this splendid temple there should not be left a stone upon a stone.

The trenches were now open, the new foundations were ready to be laid next morning, and the Jews already began to triumph; when, during the night, a sudden earthquake destroyed the trenches, overturned the adjacent buildings, and buried many workmen under the ruins: at the same time, the prodigious heaps of lime, sand and other materials which had been prepared, were scattered by whirlwinds. This first failure astonished the Jews, but did not conquer their obstinacy; and they again set to work, under the direction of Alypius. At this moment, from the bowels of the earth, near the foundation, there burst forth a flaming torrent and balls of fire, which dislodged the stones, melted the iron instruments, burned the workmen, and afterwards, running through the place and amidst the multitude of spectators, consumed or suffocated the Jews, whom the avenging element singled out

with a sort of instinct. This awful prodigy was often repeated, and what showed more and more visibly the supernatural intervention of the divine power, was that the fire reappeared whenever the work was resumed, and ceased only when the attempt was entirely given over.

There is not in all history a fact more certain and incontestible than this, as it happened, to use the words of an illustrious historian,* in the presence of the whole world, and was equally attested by Christians, Jews and Gentiles.† Many among the witnesses of this prodigious event, whether Jews or Heathens, confessed the divinity of Christ, and asked for baptism. The unhappy Julian, on the contrary, still continued blind and hardened in the midst of so much light, and now directed his principal thoughts to another object.

War with Persia.—He had been, all this while, making preparations for war, in order to avenge the many insults offered to the empire by Sapor, its inveterate enemy. This Sapor is famous among the Persian kings, for his warlike disposition, violence and cruelties, during a reign of seventy years: he had lately overrun that part of Mesopotamia which belonged to the Romans, and destroyed the important city of Amida. Julian resolved, not only to drive him from his frontiers, but also to subdue the whole Persian monarchy, and then, like Alexander the Great, to proceed to the conquest of India.

With this view, he crossed the Euphrates at the head of sixty-five thousand men, and marched through Carræ in Mesopotamia, a spot rendered famous by the defeat of Crassus. He also visited the sepulchre of Gordian III. who had been murdered at the end of a glorious expedition against the same Persians. Thence, the Romans followed the course of the river, taking by storm and firing such cities as offered any resistance; a numerous fleet loaded with provisions accompanied the army.

At a short distance from the royal city of Ctesiphon, Julian discovered the remains of an ancient canal, which had been dug by the Babylonian kings, to unite the Euphrates and the Tigris, but which was now filled up, and could scarcely be distinguished from the other parts of the

---

*Lebeau. *Hist. du Bas Empire, ad ann.* 363, *vol.* III. *p.* 264.
† See Note D.

plain. The emperor caused it to be cleared, and the fleet following the current of the water, easily passed from the Euphrates into the Tigris. After a short stay, the whole army crossed the Tigris itself, in spite of numerous bands of Persians who, from the other side of the river, vigorously opposed the passage, but who, not being able to resist long the impetuous shock of the Roman legions, were completely routed. The success of the day was owing chiefly to the intrepidity, firmness and presence of mind of Julian.

He did not however attempt to besiege Ctesiphon, for fear both of spending too much time in this undertaking, and of being himself shut up between that town and a formidable army conducted by Sapor, which was daily approaching. He then resolved to follow up the Tigris, until he should reach the confines of Armenia; but specious advice, given him by a Persian deserter whose fidelity he did not suspect, made him again alter his plan. Under the pretence that the fleet would be scarcely able, even with extraordinary exertions to overcome the rapidity of the current, he gave orders, notwithstanding the objection of the whole army, that the vessels should be set on fire; he then left the banks of the Tigris, the more quickly to penetrate into the heart of the enemy's country, and carried his imprudence so far as to continue for several days on the route which his perfidious guide pointed out to him, even after the treason was detected.

Death of Julian.—The army first advanced through a rich and fertile country, but soon found itself in the midst of vast plains where everything had been purposely destroyed and burnt by the Persians. The troops of Sapor then appeared and, thinking the occasion proper for battle, attacked the Romans. The latter indeed remained victorious; but they had now to struggle against more dangerous enemies, namely, fatigue, anxiety and famine. The dangers of the march increased every day; and, to complete their misfortune, they lost just at that time the man who alone could have saved them without dishonor, and have repaired his own imprudence by the natural resources of his genius. In a battle fought on the twenty-sixth of June (363), Julian, having exposed himself without a cuirass, had his liver pierced with a dart thrown by an unknown hand. He was carried back to his tent almost sense-

less, and, notwithstanding the cares of his physicians, expired the following night, at the age of thirty-one after a reign of nearly two years. According to some, he died with great apparent composure and tranquillity; but others * relate that, when he felt himself mortally wounded, he threw a handful of his blood towards heaven, uttering these blasphemous words against Christ: "Thou hast conquered, O Galilean"; and that he likewise upbraided his own gods, charging them with ingratitude towards him.

Julian's character.—It would be impossible to give a precise outline of Julian's character. It was a most singular compound of some good and many bad qualities, moderation and malice, love of justice and blind hatred, courage and temerity. He united a cultivated genius with a bigoted mind; he was a slave to vanity and credulity; superstitiously attached to the meanest, and perhaps also, after he became a public apostate, to the most abominable practices of idolatry: for we are told by some grave authors † that, besides an incredible number of animals, he likewise sacrificed human victims, for the purpose of discovering future events by an examination of their palpitating entrails. In a word, his defects were real, his virtues more apparent than sincere, his talents more brilliant than solid.

The only genuine qualities perhaps that Julian possessed, were his intrepidity in war and the talent he had for transforming his soldiers into heroes. King Sapor did not cease to tremble for the safety of his crown, till he received the intelligence of the emperor's death. He manifested the greatest joy on being apprised of it, and wished to reward the soldier by whom Julian had been wounded; but no one presented himself to receive the recompense.

JOVIAN—A.D. 363-364.

Most distressing was the situation to which the Romans were now reduced in the midst of an hostile country, without food and deprived of their leader. The chief officers assembled to appoint a successor to Julian, and,

---

* Theodoret, Sozomen, etc.
† Especially Theodoret, *Hist. Eccl. lib.* III. *c.* 21.

upon the refusal of Sallust, prefect of the East, Jovian, one of the commanders in the imperial guard, was proclaimed emperor. After a slow and painful march for several days, he concluded with the Persians a disadvantageous treaty of peace; a step deemed necessary to save the army from starvation, but disgraceful to the empire, which lost, by this means, five provinces and the best towns of Mesopotamia. Such was the result of Julian's imprudence and temerity.

Although the Romans, in their retreat, were no longer interrupted by the enemy, still they encountered many dangers, especially when they undertook to recross the Tigris; and their march continued difficult and harassing, until they reached their own territory. Jovian, on his arrival at Antioch, immediately turned his attention to the government of the state, and the restoration of peace to the Church. He had, even during the storms of the two preceding reigns, always adhered to the orthodox faith, and anxious to preserve it in others, he labored to heal the wounds inflicted by Julian on Christianity in general, and by Constantius on the Catholics. His excellent intentions and many good qualities, though less dazzling than those of Julian, promised a prosperous reign; but, having set out from Antioch in the dead of winter, he was found lifeless in his room (February, 364), before he could reach Constantinople. The cause of his death was never ascertained; but the most common opinion is that he inhaled the fumes of charcoal. Jovian had lived thirty-three years, and reigned eight months.

VALENTINIAN—A.D. 364-375, AND VALENS—A.D. 364-378.

Valentinian.—The army set about a new election, and proclaimed emperor, Valentinian, an officer of distinguished merit. His noble size and features gave him a warlike and majestic appearance; he was renowned for prudence, valor, learning, sincere attachment to religion and great love of justice. Pure in his morals, grave in his deportment, he spoke little, but always with great judgment and natural eloquence. Unhappily, these truly valuable qualities of body and mind were offset in him by some notable defects, such as violence of temper and excessive

severity, whence finally arose the painful accident which terminated his life.

Valentinian had no sooner assumed the purple, than he associated to himself his brother Valens in the government of the empire. Still, before publicly declaring his intentions, he consulted his chief officers on the subject. All remained silent, except one, who was generous enough to say: "Prince, if you love your family, you may choose your brother; if you love the state, select the fittest man for so great a dignity." This advice struck the emperor; however, he persisted in his design, and declared Valens his colleague. He allotted to him the provinces of Asia, with Egypt and Thrace, and kept for himself the other provinces situated in Africa and Europe.

Valentinian governed his portion of the empire with vigor and firmness. Making his residence, sometimes in Milan, sometimes in Triers, Paris or Rheims, he was always ready to defend his frontiers, and to repel the attacks of the barbarians posted beyond the Rhine and the Danube. He kept in constant awe the restless tribes of Germany, and triumphed over them in every battle.

His death.—But, while his bravery and military science struck terror into the minds of the barbarians, his irascible temper was almost equally dreaded by his own subjects, till in the end it proved fatal to himself. The Quadi, a poor and timid nation, having incurred his displeasure, sent ambassadors to appease his anger by an humble apology. Valentinian was offended at the mean appearance of the ambassadors, and violently breaking forth exclaimed that it was a shame for the empire and the emperor, that he had to treat with such ill-looking people. He spoke with such warmth and passion, that he broke a large blood-vessel, and fell senseless to the ground, his blood gushing forth abundantly from his mouth. In a very few hours afterwards he expired, suffering most excruciating pain, at the age of fifty-four, after a reign of nearly twelve years (A.D. 375), leaving his sceptre to his sons Gratian and Valentinian II.

Valens.—The East was still under the sway of his brother Valens, a prince of good morals and steadfast in his friendship; but at the same time indolent, and without genius and experience, he often suffered his ministers to make a tyrannical use of his authority. He showed no

energy except in protecting the Arians and cruelly persecuting the Catholics. But the faith of the latter was successfully defended by the illustrious doctors, St. Gregory Nazianzen and his intimate friend St. Basil, archbishop of Cæsarea, against whom all the emperor's efforts proved fruitless.

With regard to military achievements, Valens, by the skill of his generals and the bravery of his troops, conducted, with considerable success, several campaigns against the Goths, the Persians, and the usurper Procopius, who, after many vicissitudes of fortune, was betrayed by his own friends, delivered up to the emperor, and beheaded.

Beginning of the migration of nations.—But the last expedition of this prince had, through his own fault, a quite different result. Numerous bodies of Huns, a barbarous people from the north of Asia, were at that time (A.D. 375) driving before them all the tribes whom they met in their devastating course. Two hundred thousand Goths, finding themselves more and more harassed by these formidable enemies, asked and obtained of Valens leave to cross the Danube, and to settle in Thrace as subjects or allies of the empire. They were followed by other bodies of their countrymen whom it was not possible to keep far off when so considerable a portion of their people were on the other side of the river; and the Roman officers stationed on the frontier were at the same time so exceedingly imprudent and inhuman, as to exasperate by ill-treatment that immense multitude dying with hunger and supplied with arms.

The Goths revolted against the terrible cruelties of their oppressors, and, being excited both by distress and the desire of revenge, they began to overrun the country and put everything to fire and sword.

The generals of Valens endeavored, but too late, to stem this torrent. Several bloody battles were fought to no purpose; and the emperor, not satisfied with the result, judged it necessary to repair in person to the field, and put himself at the head of his troops. This step served only to increase the danger; for the commander of the Goths, Fritigern, was an able and experienced general; while Valens had neither ability nor prudence. Instead of waiting for the arrival of his nephew Gratian, who,

after gaining a great victory over the Germans, hastened to his assistance, the unwary prince, contrary to the advice of his best officers, marched with precipitancy and confusion against the enemy; and, with troops harassed by fatigue, commenced near Adrianople a battle more disastrous, it is believed, than any that the Romans had ever fought from the time of their defeat at Cannæ by Hannibal. Here also they experienced a most signal overthrow, and lost nearly their whole army, with an incredible multitude of chief officers, and the emperor himself, whose body could never be found. According to common report, he was wounded, and carried in that state to a hut, which the Goths, not knowing who was in it, set on fire; and Valens perished in the flames. He had reigned about fifteen, and lived nearly fifty years (A.D. 378).

THEODOSIUS I., SURNAMED THE GREAT.—GRATIAN AND VALENTINIAN II.—378-395.

THE Roman empire had perhaps never been so much exposed to the danger of total ruin, as immediately after the battle of Adrianople. Though the Goths were unsuccessful in their attacks upon that and some other towns, they together with the Huns and Alans continued, with impunity, to plunder, waste and destroy everything in Thrace, Illyria and the neighboring provinces. The Suevi, Alemanni and Franks were at the same time preparing to invade Gaul, and the provinces of Asia were also threatened with fresh attacks from the Persians. Gratian, upon whom the whole burden of the government devolved by the death of his uncle Valens, was fully aware that he could not by himself repel so many enemies, nor could he as yet derive any assistance from his brother Valentinian, a child seven or eight years of age. Standing in need of more powerful succor, he was candid enough to openly acknowledge his situation, and wise enough to choose as his associate the ablest man of the empire, viz.: the great Theodosius, with whose name is associated the recollection of every civil, religious and military virtue.

Victories of Theodosius.—Theodosius was a native of Spain, and son of the celebrated Count Theodosius, who, after having by his brilliant campaigns under Valen-

tinian I., saved Great Britain and Africa from powerful invaders, had lately perished on a scaffold at Carthage, the victim of an atrocious and artful calumny. Previous to this melancholy transaction, his son had on several occasions, displayed great military talents; but, after the tragical death of his father, he led a retired life in his native country; until Gratian called him back to court, and offered him the purple, which he at first refused through sincere modesty, but afterwards accepted from a sense of duty. It was agreed among them that he should rule over the East, Gratian reserving the West for himself and his young brother Valentinian.

The accession of Theodosius almost immediately changed the desperate state of affairs, and gave a salutary check to the inroads of the barbarians. The Goths were the first who experienced the effects of his indignation and invincible bravery. He obliged them either to surrender, or retire beyond the Danube. The Huns and the Alans were soon compelled to do the same; the Persians, informed of his rapid successes, sued for peace; and, in a few years, the name of Theodosius was respected throughout the world.

Theodosius as legislator.—During the tranquillity which followed his victories, he enacted several admirable laws, conducive alike to the prosperity of the state at large, to the repression of vice and the advancement of good morals among private individuals, to the security of life and property, etc. All his legislation breathes, as it were, an ardent love of the public good, of justice and religion, happily blended with a dignified clemency towards those who might possibly offer him personal insults, by outrageous language against his person, conduct and government. "If such persons," said he in one of his rescripts, "act and speak thus through levity, we should disregard their fault; if their conduct proceeds from blindness and folly, we should pity them; if from ill-will and malice, we should forgive them." His heart was so inclined to benevolence, that, once dismissing several prisoners, he exclaimed: "O that I could restore the dead to life!"

His religious zeal.—Theodosius endeavored likewise during the whole course of his reign, to promote, by wise and prudent means, the advancement of true piety, and

of the orthodox faith which he sincerely professed. Arianism, not being able to obtain the least favor from so religious a prince, rapidly dwindled into insignificance. The Macedonian heresy against the divinity of the Holy Ghost, was solemnly condemned by the second general Council, held under his patronage at Constantinople (A. D. 381). In fine, the pious efforts of the emperor gave the death blow to heathenism, and his zeal, equally mild and firm, judicious and constant, was not satisfied until the public worship of idols disappeared from his dominions.

Usurpation of Maximus.—The example of Theodosius was in most respects faithfully imitated by Gratian, the emperor of the West. This prince, although very young, would perhaps have become equal to his virtuous colleague in glory and wisdom, had it not been for a single defect, which being disregarded, tarnished the lustre of his excellent qualities, and brought upon him a terrible disaster. Being excessively fond of hunting, the natural consequence was that he paid little attention to the affairs of his court, where discontent began to prevail, at the sight of the honors and benefits conferred upon strangers. Maximus, one of the chief officers in Great Britain, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor by some of the soldiers; nor did the defection confine itself to that island, but passing over to the continent, it spread among the legions of Gaul with such rapidity, that in a few weeks Gratian saw himself abandoned by nearly all his troops. No other resource was now left him than a precipitate flight; and even that proved insufficient to save him from the hands of his enemies: he was overtaken at Lyons, and cruelly murdered at the age of twenty-four, after a reign of eight years (A. D. 383).

Death of Maximus.—Maximus abstained for a time from pursuing his audacious and ambitious career; fixing his residence in Triers, he contented himself with reigning over the provinces which Gratian had governed. Still, he was making slow and powerful preparations to oppose young Valentinian in Italy, as he had done his brother in Gaul; but Valentinian having received timely warning of the designs of his enemy, fled at full speed to Thessalonica, persuaded that he would find a zealous protector in Theodosius. His hopes were not deceived: The-

odosius received him with open arms, and marched with him at the head of his army, against Maximus, who was coming forward to meet them, with more boldness than prudence. One single and short campaign terminated the contest. The numerous troops of the usurper were conquered in two battles, and he himself being taken prisoner in Aquileia, whither he had retired after the second engagement, was led to Theodosius, with his hands tied behind him. At the sight of his captive, the generous conqueror felt inclined to compassion and forgiveness; but his officers, less indulgent, led Maximus away, and immediately beheaded him. No search was made after his partisans, and Theodosius added to the dominions of Valentinian those of his brother Gratian (A. D. 388).

About the same time, he gave to all future generations a most admirable example of clemency. A great revolt having occurred in Antioch, the people carried their insolence so far as to break to pieces the statues of the emperor and of his family. Theodosius, justly irritated against an ungrateful city on which he had bestowed many signal favors, sent two commissaries, with orders to punish the leaders of the seditious riot, to deprive Antioch of its privileges, and to degrade that proud capital of Syria to the low rank of a simple borough.

The arrival of the two commissaries spread terror through the town. The most guilty of the inhabitants were arrested, and put in prison; however, the sorrowful multitude, together with the clergy, obtained by their supplications and tears a postponement of the punishment. The venerable bishop Flavian had already set out for Constantinople, in order to allay, if possible, the indignation of Theodosius. When he was introduced before him, he remained at some distance, with his eyes cast down, and observing a mournful silence. The emperor, whose heart was not less afflicted, approached the bishop, and with strong but tender reproaches, expatiated on the ingratitude of his countrymen. Flavian, being then emboldened to speak, acknowledged both the enormity of the crime and the justice of any punishment that might be inflicted on its authors; but he afterwards so eloquently described and extolled the advantages of the forgiveness of injuries, that the emperor, unable any longer to restrain his tears, cried out that he willingly

pardoned Antioch, after the example of Christ who had forgiven his very executioners. The pardon was full, unreserved; and did infinite honor to the clemency of Theodosius.

Theodosius and Ambrose.—Three years after on a similar occasion, he appeared to forget his own principles. The populace of Thessalonica, in a tumultuous insurrection, stoned their governor to death: Theodosius, who then resided at Milan, was so indignant at this outrage, that he issued a command for the soldiery to be let loose on the inhabitants of Thessalonica during three hours, and the commission was executed with such fury, that seven thousand persons were put to the sword. No sooner was the holy archbishop of Milan, St. Ambrose, informed of the awful deed, than he declared to the emperor that he could not admit him into the Church, nor to the participation of the sacred mysteries, until he had atoned, by an exemplary penance, for the enormity of the crime lately committed. Theodosius humbly submitted to the decision of the holy prelate, and remained thus excluded from the Church for eight months, at the end of which time St. Ambrose, moved by his tears and lively repentance, again admitted him; on condition, however, that he would ever after, in order to avoid similar faults, postpone for thirty days the execution even of just sentences of death. Theodosius willingly yielded to the proposal, and, by this docility, left it uncertain which is more worthy of admiration, the firmness of the archbishop or the piety of the emperor.

He had scarcely returned to Constantinople, when a fresh and disastrous revolution, caused by the murder of Valentinian II., obliged him to make a new expedition into the West. That young emperor, trained up to virtue by the instructions and examples of Theodosius, knew already how to conduct himself with great wisdom, and gave every day greater hopes of a fortunate and glorious reign. Being told that some suspicions, though ill-founded, were entertained concerning his morals, he dismissed without delay the persons whose society might become dangerous to his virtue. He overcame his excessive fondness for the games and shows of the circus, by abolishing the games, and causing all the beasts destined for them or for the chase, to be killed on

the same day. Although he had found the treasury exhausted, no solicitation of his courtiers could ever induce him to augment the taxes. His conduct obtained respect even from the barbarians, and he was endeavoring by every means in his power to procure abundance and tranquillity to his subjects, when a cruel plot prepared by Arbogastes, the general of his troops, deprived him of the empire and of life, at the age of twenty, after a reign of nine years since the death of Gratian (A.D. 392).

The usurper Eugenius.—Intense was the affliction of Theodosius, when he learned the melancholy fate of this excellent prince, his brother-in-law, his partner in the empire, and his sincere friend. Justice, humanity and conscience obliging him to avenge the death of Valentinian and punish the murderers, he spent two years in making adequate preparations for this new expedition, which he justly supposed would be difficult and bloody; for Arbogastes had a great reputation for skill in war, and a strong party on his side. Still, being of barbarian extraction, he did not dare assume the imperial sceptre himself, but placed it in the hands of a certain Eugenius, a proud, ambitious man, who had been a secretary of the late emperor, and had taken part in his assassination.

The two armies advanced against each other, the one from Gaul, under the command of the two usurpers, who had the images of the false gods carried before them; the other from Thrace, under the banner of the cross, and commanded by Theodosius in person. They met in the north-east of Italy, about thirty miles from Aquileia. Here a general engagement took place, which the importance of the cause, the number and discipline of the troops, the heroic intrepidity of Theodosius and the desperate courage of Arbogastes, rendered extremely furious and obstinate. It lasted two days, on the first of which, without either side having any decisive loss or advantage, there was a tremendous slaughter of the bravest troops of Theodosius. The pious emperor spent the following night in prayer, placing his confidence in God whose cause he supported, more than in his own ability and valor. At the dawn of day, he again drew up his army, and, taking his shield and cutlass, marched out with ardor against the enemy.

This was the moment which heaven had chosen, in

order to declare visibly in his favor. On a sudden, frightful whirlwinds arose, which directed all their violence against the rebels, broke their ranks, and forced their shields from their hands. Their arrows turned against themselves, while those of their opponents received additional force from the wind.* Thus exposed, blinded by the dust, and overpowered by the storm, they either fell on the field of battle, or threw themselves, in their flight, into a neighboring river. Arbogastes, seeing that all was lost, stabbed himself, and died in rage and despair. Eugenius was brought in chains by his own soldiers before Theodosius, who presently condemned him to death; but the generous conqueror pardoned all the others of their party. The slaughter ceased, and the two armies mingled together, exulting with joy, one for its victory, the other for its defeat, and both looking on their pious emperor as really invincible.

Death of Theodosius.—This memorable battle, which was fought on the 6th of September (A.D. 394), subjected all the West to Theodosius. He lived but a short time after this glorious triumph over his enemies: continual labors and hardships, especially at the head of armies, had exhausted his constitution, and, after lingering for some weeks, he died in the middle of the following January (A.D. 395), at the age of fifty, after a reign of sixteen years. This was the last reign which saw all the parts of the Roman empire united under the sway of

---

* See Socrates, *Eccles. Hist. lib.* V. *c.* 25;—Sozomen, *lib.* VII. *c.* 24;—Orosius, *lib.* VII. *c.* 3;—Theodoret, *lib.* v. *c.* 24; especially St. Augustine, who had learned the fact in question from the very soldiers of Eugenius who had been present at the battle, as he himself relates in these terms: "Milites nobis, qui aderant, retulerunt, extorta sibi esse de manibus quæ; cumque jaciebantur, cùm à Theodosii partibus vehemens ventus iret, et non solùm quæcumque in eos jaciebantur concitatissimè raperet, verùm etiam ipsorum tela in eorum corpora retorqueret;" *De Civitate Dei, lib.* V. *c.* 26. Moreover, the poet Claudian, though a heathen, describes the scene thus, in his poem on the third consulship of the young emperor Honorius;

> Te propter, gelidis aquilo de monte procellis
> Obruit adversas acies, revolutaque tela
> Vertit in auctores, et turbine reppulit hastas.
> O nimiùm dilecte Deo, cui fundit ab antris
> Æolus armatas hiemes; cui militat æther,
> Et conjurati veniunt ad classica venti!

the same sovereign. At the solemn service performed, according to custom, for his departed soul, St. Ambrose delivered the funeral oration in presence of the whole army: after which his body was transferred to Constantinople, and deposited in the Mausoleum of the great Constantine with whom he shares in the just praises and admiration of posterity.

Theodosius' character.—In fact, every public achievement of this emperor would suffice to make illustrious a long reign. He restored the majesty of the empire, made the people under him constantly happy, and conquered all his enemies, who were equally the enemies of the state. He subdued the Goths, drove back the Huns and Sarmatians, kept the Persians in constant awe, overcame two powerful usurpers, checked the Arian and Macedonian heresies, almost completed the destruction of idolatry without shedding a drop of blood, and published a great number of laws so wise and excellent, as to place him far above the wisest legislators of antiquity. Having nothing in view but the happiness of mankind, he commanded by a formal edict, that, on Easter-day, all persons detained in prison, whose pardon would not endanger the interests and good order of society, should be set at liberty, and it was on this occasion that he added the memorable words already mentioned: "O that I could even raise the dead to life!"

In his appearance and deportment, Theodosius was dignified, but at the same time, cheerful, mild, courteous and affable. He always kept himself free, not only from gross vices, but even from those which most easily find admission to the heart, such as ambition and vain glory; he never undertook any war, except from necessity, and though eminently skilled and successful in the command of armies, always blamed the proud spirit of Marius, Sulla, and other such conquerors, whom he said it should be his constant endeavor to resemble as little as possible. His inclinations were naturally violent, but kept under restraint; and, if he committed any fault, he soon repaired it in a manner which did honor to his character. Hence the Holy Fathers, ecclesiastical authors and councils, are unanimous in proposing Theodosius as a model for Christian princes. Pagan writers themselves, with the exception of the furious Zozimus, agree in praising

his extraordinary merit and qualifications; Aurelius Victor, in particular, does not hesitate to represent him as an accomplished hero, far superior to Trajan, whose eminent qualities he possessed without any of his vices. The same historian adds that the virtue of Theodosius continually increased with his prosperity and victories; praise which, to every reflecting mind, must appear most honorable.

HONORIUS AND ARCADIUS.—A. D. 395-423.

From the death of Theodosius must be dated the final decline of the empire. He had maintained it in its former greatness; he left it in all its glory to his sons Honorius and Arcadius; but he could not transmit to these young princes his consummate prudence, valor and ability. Their want of talent, resolution and energy left them almost constantly exposed to the insults of barbarians, and to the ambitious intrigues of their own ministers.

Arcadius in the East.—Arcadius, the elder of the two, was emperor of the East. His reign, which lasted thirteen years, offers nothing remarkable, except the ravages of the Huns in Thrace, and of the Isaurians in Lesser Asia; the power, ambition and miserable death of Rufinus, Eutropius and Gaïnas, who successively supplanted each other at court; and the unjust persecution carried on by jealous enemies against the illustrious St. John Chrysostom, archbishop of Constantinople, who died in exile (A. D. 407), after having filled the whole world with the fame of his golden eloquence. Arcadius died one year after him, and was succeeded by his son Theodosius the younger.

Honorius in the West.—The reign of Honorius in the western part of the empire, was longer and still more disastrous than that of his brother Arcadius. Its various calamities originated chiefly in the vacillating conduct of his prime minister Stilico, who having raised himself to that high station by important services under Theodosius afterwards listened only to the suggestions of his unbounded ambition; defending or betraying the state, as best suited his own interest. At first, all things prospered under him; he destroyed two numer-

ous armies of Goths and other barbarians who had invaded Italy, one conducted by Alaric, whom he obliged to retreat beyond the Alps (A. D. 402); the other commanded by Radagasius, who lost nearly all his troups and was himself slain near Florence (405).

Soon after this defeat, other hordes of barbarians made a successful irruption into the empire, and crossing the Rhine (406), began to conquer its richest provinces, encouraged, it is believed, by Stilico himself. The design of that ambitious man seems to have been to throw insuperable difficulties in the way of Honorius, in order to undermine his power, if he would not consent to resign his crown. To convince Honorius of the plot contrived by his minister, was no easy task; at length, he opened his eyes, and was so readily seconded by the troops, that the traitor and all his partisans suffered capital punishment, most of them however without the orders of the emperor, who endeavored, but in vain, to check the fury of the soldiery.

The detection of the intrigues of Stilico did not stop the progress of the barbarians. While the Alemanni on the one side, and the Burgundians on the other, occupied the territories along the Rhine, the Suevi, Alans and Vandals proceeded farther, and during three successive years plundered the different provinces and cities of Gaul. After this, in 409, they passed over to Spain, where they settled, the Suevi in the north, the Alans in the west, and the Vandals in the south, the eastern part only being left to the Romans.

Rome sacked by Alaric.—But the most formidable of all the enemies of Rome was Alaric, the leader of the Goths. Driven away some years before, he re-entered Italy with an ardent desire of avenging his defeat. Honorius and his court, whose residence was then at Ravenna near the Adriatic sea, opposed to him only protracted negotiations and ineffectual promises, a mode of defence more calculated to inflame the indignation, than to check the progress of a warlike chieftain. Rome was besieged, and after enduring the horrors of a cruel famine, was taken by surprise and treason during the night. The conqueror gave it up to be plundered by his soldiers, who accordingly spreading themselves through every quarter of the city, soon produced a scene of general desolation:

many buildings were fired, and a furious tempest served at the same time, to increase the devastation spread by the barbarians (A. D. 410).

Thus did Rome lose, in the space of a few hours, that power, splendor and magnificence which had made it, for so many ages, the first city in the world. Numbers of its inhabitants fled in all directions, even to the most distant provinces, carrying everywhere the news of the great catastrophe of which they were the victims. This event was, even in countries the most remote, a subject of deep grief; and the sight of so many illustrious families now reduced to the utmost distress, excited universal commiseration, as St. Augustine and St. Jerome relate.* Still Rome, not having been totally destroyed, continued to exist, and even repaired in a great measure its losses, but being once degraded by the Goths, it became a sort of by-word among other barbarians, and its majesty as capital of the Roman empire, had departed forever.

Alaric did not think proper to retain his conquest, but setting out after a few days, he pursued his march without obstacle towards the southern extremity of Italy. His intention was, to pass over the strait into Sicily, and thence to Africa, where he thought he could obtain a more desirable and permanent settlement; but a violent storm interfered with his plans, and death put an end to all his designs. He was carried off by a violent disease, and left the conduct of the Goths to Ataulphus, his brother-in-law, and the faithful companion of his victorious campaigns. His followers regretted him as the hero of their nation, and the chief author of the great power and influence which they had acquired in western Europe. According to the custom of northern barbarians, of concealing the sepulchres of extraordinary men, they changed for a while the course of a small river near Cozenza, and having dug a deep grave in the bed of the channel, deposited there the body of Alaric with many valuable objects, and afterwards made the waters resume their former course.

---

* St. August. *De Civ. Dei. lib.* I. *c.* 33;—St. Jerome, *Epist. ad Principiam et lib.* III. *in Ezech.*—They themselves were visited by several of these noble fugitives; and they showed by their conduct on this occasion, that the charity which animated their hearts, was not less admirable than the genius and learning which have raised them to the first rank among the doctors of the Church.

The Goths now returned to the north of Italy, and advanced into Gaul, where they had to encounter many obstacles in their endeavors to effect a settlement: at length, they were permitted by the Romans, under certain conditions, to occupy the provinces contiguous to the Pyrenees. For this advantageous treaty the Gothic nation was indebted chiefly to the abilities of king Vallia, the third successor of Alaric.

About this time also, the Romans began to lose their influence in Great Britain. Honorius having recalled from that distant province its legionary troops whose presence was necessary to repel dangers nearer home, the whole country remained exposed to the inroads of the Picts and Scots, two tribes inhabiting the north of the island. Some troops, it is true, were again sent to assist the Britons and drive back their foes; but as these succors were granted only for a time, the restless Picts and Scots renewed their depredations with success and perseverance for nearly forty years, so as to render the country as miserable, during that time as it had been prosperous under the Romans.

Beginning of France.—To the close of the career of Honorius many writers trace back the beginning of the French monarchy. According to them, the Franks, a powerful German tribe, crossed the Rhine in the year 420 with Pharamond their king, and wrested the north of Gaul from the Romans; but others believe that their first real settlement upon the Roman territories must be referred only to the year 438 or 440, during the reign of King Clodio. Be this as it may, it is certain that in general the affairs of the empire, during the latter part of the reign of Honorius, wore a more favorable appearance. Several provinces were delivered from the yoke of usurpation and tyranny, and a successful check was given for a time to the progress of the barbarians. The principal author of these happy changes was Constantius, a man of uncommon ability and virtue, which he displayed during ten years by the prudence with which he directed political operations, and by the glory which he acquired in commanding the armies. As a reward for so many services, Honorius, besides giving him his sister Placidia in marriage, conferred on him the title of Augustus, a title which he did not enjoy more than seven months; he received it in

February, and died in the following September (A. D. 421). Not long after (in 423) Honorius himself died at the age of thirty-nine, after a reign of twenty-eight years: a prince, not altogether unworthy of esteem, if we consider his beneficent intentions and private virtues; but certainly unfit from his want of resolution and capacity, to govern the state, especially in the calamitous and disorderly times in which he lived.

VALENTINIAN III. IN THE WEST;—IN THE EAST, THEODOSIUS II. OR THE YOUNGER.—A.D. 424-455.

THE late emperor having left no children, his crown was, with some difficulty, transferred to young Valentinian, his nephew, the son of Placidia and Constantius. This young prince received from his mother a religious education, but profited so little by it, that he is more known in history for his effeminate and dissolute life, than for any active share that he took in the important transactions of his reign.

Pulcheria.—Theodosius the younger still reigned in the East, as he had done since the death of his father Arcadius. During his childhood, the state was governed first by the prefect Anthemius, a man truly deserving of his high office, which he held six years. This able minister repelled foreign invasions, fortified the frontiers, built new walls around Constantinople, and procured for the empire a profound peace. Afterwards, Theodosius being yet too young and inexperienced, the governing power was intrusted to his sister Pulcheria, who, though but sixteen years old, already evinced extraordinary prudence and a vigor of mind equal to her piety. At home, she preserved good order and tranquillity, and at the same time caused the Roman name to be respected abroad. A new war having become necessary against the Persians, all its operations and various campaigns were so successfully conducted, that King Varanes V. saw himself obliged, after many defeats, to consent to a treaty of peace on the conditions dictated by the court of Constantinople.

Unfortunately, Theodosius did not always act conformably to the views and counsels of his sister, but suffered his mind to be prepossessed against her by the intrigues of

crafty and ambitious persons, desirous of having a greater share in the government. From that time, the prosperity of the state rapidly declined Many provinces were laid waste by the barbarians on different sides, and the honor of the empire was trampled under foot by Attila, the fierce king of the Huns, who forced Theodosius to pay him an annual tribute equally onerous and disgraceful. These evils originated in the weakness and indolence of the emperor himself; for, though he possessed the qualifications of a good scholar, and most of the virtues to be desired in a private life, he knew neither how to govern and command, nor how to choose good ministers and generals.

Ætius and Bonifacius.—The West from a variety of causes, continued still to be the theatre of more complicated and calamitous events. There existed, at this time, two men whose talents did equal honor to the state, viz., General Ætius, and Count Boniface, governor of Africa. The former was justly renowned as a commander and a politician, but so high-minded that he could not brook the idea of any one being his equal in talents and glory. The latter, as brave and skilful perhaps as Ætius himself, surpassed him in moderation and disinterestedness; still he had not fortitude enough to submit patiently to great injustice.

Ætius, whose design was to ruin Boniface, secretly wrote to him under the mask of friendship, to tell him that he was in great danger; the empress Placidia being now so incensed against him, that, in case of his return to court, his death would inevitably follow. On the other hand, the artful impostor persuaded the empress that Boniface sought to make himself independent in Africa, adding, with great protestations of zeal for her interest, that the only prudent course she could adopt was to recall him without delay, and, should he refuse to obey her order, to treat him as a rebel.

The Vandals in Africa.—Placidia, not suspecting any treachery, followed this advice without further inquiry. Boniface received a summons to leave Africa; but as he himself entertained strong suspicions of the designs of the court, instead of obeying, he raised troops to oppose those sent against him and thus, by the very means which he selected to prove his innocence, became really guilty. Not long after, both he and Placidia discovered the imposture of Ætius but its evil consequences were now irreparable. Bon-

iface had already called to his aid and introduced into Africa the Vandals of Spain, whom he could not afterwards expel, when he returned to a sense of his duty. These barbarians, having at their head Gaiseric, a warlike and sanguinary prince, overran the whole country with the rapidity of a torrent. Those rich and fertile provinces, whose habitants had provoked by their corruption and vices the wrath of God, were soon deluged with blood and covered with ashes. The Vandals established in the midst of these ruins, the seat of their own power which lasted one hundred and six years (from 428 to 534), when Africa was restored to the empire by the arms of Belisarius.

Bonifacius' death.—In the mean while, the empress durst not punish the perfidy of Ætius, who was more powerful than herself. All she could do against him was to bestow new dignities and all possible marks of distinction on Count Boniface, with whom she was now perfectly reconciled. This was adding fuel to the flame; and as Ætius considered the increase of authority in his rival as derogatory to his own, the two generals took the field in support of their respective pretensions. In the battle that ensued, Boniface was victorious; but his success cost him his life: he received a dangerous wound, of which he died at the expiration of three months (A.D. 432).

No longer seeing a rival in his way, Ætius thought of repairing, by glorious services, the disasters which his jealousy had brought upon the state. He, from that time, showed himself an insuperable barrier against all the attacks of foreign enemies, defeated the Goths in the south of Gaul, the Franks in the north, and other barbarians near the frontiers of Germany and Italy. Shortly after these achievements, a new and most furious storm arose from the East, which engaged all his attention and required all the exertions of his courage.

The Huns under Attila.—Attila, king of the Huns, and leader of an immense multitude of barbarians gathered from the north of Asia and Europe, intended to ravage and plunder the western, as he had done the eastern provinces of the empire. He advanced towards Gaul with an army of five hundred, or, according to some authors, of seven hundred thousand men, leaving everywhere such

dreadful marks of his passage, that he was justly called, and called himself *the Scourge of God.* His very countenance was terrific: he had an enormous head, small and bright eyes, a flat nose, a swarthy complexion, and he appeared, in all his deportment, haughty, fierce and threatening.

In the year 451, this terrible conqueror crossed the Rhine, and penetrated into the heart of Gaul, sacking and burning all the towns in his way. At last he was stopped before the walls of Orleans by a vigorous and prolonged resistance. In the meanwhile, Ætius, who had induced the Visigoths and the Franks to unite with him against the common enemy, was hastening to the relief of the town; he arrived just in time to save it from destruction. The Huns, having broken the gates, were beginning to enter and plunder the city, when Ætius, coming from the opposite direction, suddenly appeared with his army, and immediately charged the barbarians. Their surprise and terror were equal to the suddenness and violence of the attack. Those who had already lost themselves in the streets, were slain or compelled to fly, while Attila, foaming with rage, endeavored to rally the fugitives without the city. He then began to retreat towards the Rhine; Ætius closely followed him at the head of his troops and allies, and overtook him in the vast plains of Chalons in Champaigne.

Battle of Chalons.—Europe had never beheld two armies so numerous as these in presence of one another; the army of Ætius, it is said, was almost equal to that of Attila. The whole plain, as far as the eye could reach, being filled with a countless multitude of battalions bristling with iron and brass, exhibited for some moments a most imposing spectacle, which was soon changed into a frightful scene by the fury of the combatants. The king of the Huns animated his troops by word and example; Ætius displayed that consummate skill and intrepidity, for which he has been surnamed *the last of the Romans.* Like him, his soldiers fought with wonderful courage; still, it appears that the Visigoths won, on that famous day, the prize of valor and had the principal share in the victory. After having broken and routed the enemy's left wing, they fell with such irresistible fury upon the centre of the Huns, that Attila himself was in great dan-

ger. Frightened, for the first time in his life, he abandoned to the Romans and their allies the field of battle strewn with one hundred and eighty thousand, some say, nearly three hundred thousand dead bodies. Horrible indeed must the slaughter have been, since, according to the common report of historians, a little neighboring stream was swelled like a torrent, by the quantity of blood which flowed into its channel.

The battle having ended only at dusk, the confederates were not certain of their advantage till the day following. The joy of the victory which they had gained was damped by the consideration of their own loss, and particularly by the death of king Theodoric, who had been killed while bravely fighting at the head of his Visigoths. His body was found among heaps of the slain, and buried with great honors on the field of battle. Then Ætius dismissed his allies, in the just hope that the Roman militia would now be sufficient to drive the enemy from Gaul; nor was he disappointed: Attila, though still proud and eager for revenge, removed his camp, and retired beyond the Rhine.

Attila invades Italy.—No later than the next year (452), this undaunted conqueror reappeared, and revenged himself for the terrible blow he had received in Gaul, by plundering and laying waste the northern part of Italy. He first laid siege to the important and well fortified city of Aquileia. This celebrated town had, fifty-two years before, repelled the combined efforts of Radagasius and Alaric, and now resisted for three months all the attacks of Attila. The Huns were dispirited, and their leader himself began to think of abandoning the siege, when he perceived storks flying with their little ones from the town into the country. Struck at the circumstance, and skilfully turning it to his advantage, he told his soldiers that, without doubt, the precipitate retreat of those birds from Aquileia was an omen of the city's impending ruin. This was enough to revive the courage of the Huns; they renewed the attack with fresh ardor, battered the walls with all their machines, and having made a large breach, rushed into the place with a fury proportioned to the resistance which they had experienced. The garrison and inhabitants were either put to the sword or reduced to slavery, and the town was consigned to the flames.

Foundation of Venice.—This conquest enabled the Huns to advance without obstacle. Ætius, whose forces were now quite inferior to theirs, did not dare oppose the march of the main body of their troops, but contented himself with cutting in pieces the scouts and exploring detachments. Pouring into the fertile plains of Italy, they destroyed all before them with fire and sword, sacked Milan, destroyed Padua with many other cities, and depopulated entire provinces. The whole country on the left side of the river Po, was one continued scene of carnage and devastation. Such of the inhabitants as had time to avoid this destructive storm, retired into the small islands at the extremity of the Adriatic Gulf, but did not, as legend would have us believe, then found the republic of Venice. The weak emperor Valentinian was on the point of abandoning Italy, and the Romans, in the utmost terror, expected soon to see the barbarians before their gates.

Attila and Pope Leo.—In this general consternation, Pope St. Leo, at the request of the emperor and of the whole city of Rome, went to meet Attila, in hopes of mollifying his rage and preventing his further progress. Avienus, a man of consular dignity, and Trigetius, who had been prefect of Rome, were deputed to accompany him in this embassy. They found the haughty monarch at Ambuleium near Mantua. Contrary to the general expectation, he received the Pope with great honor, and gave him a favorable audience: St. Leo, on his part, addressed the barbarian with so much energy, eloquence and dignity, that he gained the admiration of all, and especially of Attila, who, at his request, concluded a treaty of peace with the empire, under the condition of an annual tribute. The king immediately commanded his army to cease hostilities, and soon after recrossed the Alps, to retire into his own dominions near the Danube; but, on his way home, he was seized with a violent vomiting of blood, of which he died in 453. The Huns buried him with the same honors and precautions, wherewith the Goths had buried their king Alaric forty-three years before. As to the vast empire which that extraordinary man had founded, it disappeared with him, in consequence of the civil wars that broke out among his children and vassals.

Murder of Ætius and of Valentinian.—Ætius did not outlive him more than one year, being destroyed by an intrigue similar to that which he himself had before used against Count Boniface. A charge of conspiracy having been secretly brought against him at court, he was summoned to the palace; he obeyed, and on his arrival, the emperor slew him with a sword. By this crime, the blind and wretched Valentinian deprived his person and crown of the only defender whom he might successfully oppose to his numerous enemies. One of his attendants gave him to understand this fully, when, being asked what he thought of the death of Ætius, he answered that the emperor had cut off his own right hand with the left. A few months after (A.D. 455), Valentinian was murdered in the midst of Rome by some discontented officers, the chief of whom was a certain Maximus, who immediately seized upon the imperial throne. That unhappy prince had lived thirty-six, and reigned about thirty years, if he may be said to have reigned, who was almost constantly a slave to the interested will of others as well as to his own passions, which he never controlled.

Notwithstanding his vices and the faults of his government, Valentinian was regretted by many persons: his widow, Eudoxia, carried her resentment against the murderers so far, as to call the Vandals from Africa to avenge his death. No proposal could be more pleasing to that nation always eager for pillage; they hastened to cross the sea with a numerous fleet, and going up the Tiber, entered Rome before the close of the same year 455. At this time, St. Leo was not able to avert the storm, but he succeeded at least in inducing Gaiseric, though an Arian and a violent persecutor of the Catholics in his own kingdom, to spare the buildings of the city and the lives of the inhabitants. Accordingly, the Vandals contented themselves with taking a certain number of prisoners together with the riches of Rome, and returned to Carthage loaded with booty.

MARCIAN.—LEO, THE THRACIAN, IN THE EAST.

LAST PERIOD AND FALL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE.—455–476.

THEODOSIUS II. died in the year 450, of a fall from his horse, at the age of fifty, after a reign of forty-two years. No one was better qualified to succeed him than his sister Pulcheria; still, as no woman had ever reigned alone in either empire, she married and proclaimed emperor, Marcian, a brave and virtuous officer, who by his merit had raised himself from the condition of a common soldier to a conspicuous rank in both the army and the state.

No sooner was he acknowledged emperor, than he began to rescue the empire from that state of ignominy and dejection to which it had been reduced by the barbarians. When Attila, before setting out for his expedition into Gaul, sent to the court of Constantinople to receive the payment of the annual tribute stipulated by Theodosius II., Marcian answered the deputies that, reserving gold for his friends, he had nothing but iron and steel for his enemies. Towards his subjects he behaved as a true father. Being surrounded by excellent counsellors of his own choice, he devoted with them all his care to restore security and abundance, procure the exact administration of justice, remove unworthy men from public employments, diminish the taxes, avert public and private calamities, relieve the poor and distressed, in a word, to bestow benefits on all, as far as prudence and the state of the exchequer permitted.

The Nestorian and Eutychian heresies.—The object that chiefly engaged Marcian's attention was the cause of the true faith, which demanded his assistance against various enemies in the East. Of late, a succession of violent storms had been raised against it by two opposite heresies, the Nestorian, which denied the unity of person in Christ, and the Eutychian, which attacked the distinction of his two natures. The former of these errors, both equally hostile to the mystery of the Incarnation, had been already condemned by the general council of Ephesus, held in 431; against the latter, the council of Chalcedon, the fourth of the general councils, was, by the authority of Pope St. Leo, and through the care of Mar-

cian, assembled in 451. Besides renewing the condemnation of the Nestorian, it solemnly proscribed the Eutychian doctrines; and such of the abettors of either as refused to submit, were considered as no longer belonging to the Church of Christ: they henceforth formed separate societies, which are still extant in Asia.

Marcian was not less distinguished for his domestic virtues, than for his public conduct. He possessed sincere piety and modesty, beneficence, disinterestedness, and admirable purity of life. His reign, deservedly called the golden age of the Eastern empire, was, if not the most conspicuous in every respect, at least the most prosperous and blameless. Unfortunately, it did not last more than six years and five months; this excellent emperor died in January, 457, at the age of sixty-five.

Leo, the Thracian.—Leo, the Thracian, who succeeded him, and reigned about seventeen years, also showed great zeal for religion. He was well fitted for the sovereign power, though not so talented or successful as his predecessor. A powerful fleet which he sent against Gaiseric was entirely defeated; but he gained signal victories over the barbarians of the north, and, in general, maintained his dominions in that state of respectability in which they had been left by Marcian. He died in the year 474, and Gaiseric, that terrible conqueror whom we have often mentioned, followed him to the grave three years later, after having during half a century inflicted on the Romans, in every part of their dominions, all the injury in his power.

The Western empire was now in the last stage of its existence. After the death of Valentinian III., and of the usurper Maximus (A.D. 455), Avitus, a senator of great repute, was acknowledged emperor in their place: still, the greater portion of the authority soon fell into the hands of Ricimer, a general of Suevian extraction, who was equally capable of noble deeds and great crimes; prudent and eloquent, skilful and intrepid, but devoid of true honor, fidelity and gratitude, and guided only by his ambition. He might, at three different times, have assumed the purple; but he preferred to confer it on others, whom he raised and afterwards destroyed in the most capricious manner.

Within the short space of twenty-one years, no fewer

than eight emperors successively appeared and disappeared, viz.:

Avitus, whose reign commenced in . . .	455.
Majorianus	457.
Libius-Severus	461.
Anthemius	467.
Olybrius	472.
Glycerius	473.
Julius-Nepos	474.
Romulus-Augustulus.	475.

Some of these emperors were men of great merit, and, in more favorable circumstances, might have reigned with glory. Majorian especially, and nearly the same might be said of Anthemius, was not less commendable for his moral and mental qualities than for his military acquirements; but these two emperors incurred the displeasure of Ricimer, by not leaving the government in his hands, and were put to death by that ambitious and cruel minister.

Notwithstanding so many revolutions and enormities, Ricimer vigorously repulsed the various foes who were striving to complete the dismemberment of the empire. Death alone put a stop to his career of crimes and victories (A.D. 472).

Odoacer.—The last emperor of the West, by a singular coincidence, bore the names both of the founder of the city (Romulus), and of the founder of the empire of Rome (Augustus); being called Romulus-Augustus, or Augustulus (on account of his youth). At that time, the Romans, blended with other nations which continually poured into their territory, had no longer any attachment either to the imperial government, or to emperors who could not defend them against their enemies. Odoacer, king of the Heruli, taking advantage of the apathy of the people, easily overthrew a tottering throne. He attacked Augustulus in Ravenna, and, having made himself master of the town, deprived him of the purple, though, through compassion for his age, he spared his life, and even granted him an honorable retreat near Naples. The conqueror found no greater difficulty in subduing Pavia, Rome, and all Italy, of which he was proclaimed king (A.D. 476).

End of the Western Roman Empire.—Thus was the Roman empire destroyed in the West, twelve hundred

and twenty-nine years after the building of Rome, five hundred and seven after the battle of Actium. Its fall, long since prepared by the weakness of many emperors and the despotism of armies, by civil wars and foreign invasions, was scarcely noticed in the world ; it disappeared without any violent commotion, like a man full of years, who dies of decrepitude. The Eastern empire, being less exposed to foreign attacks, and better defended by its capital and frontiers, existed yet for many centuries, its history being connected with that of nations of more recent origin ; but it never attained the power, splendor and wealth, which had distinguished ancient Rome.

Amidst so many disturbances and revolutions, religion alone fully maintained her influence and dignity. Far from yielding to the violence of the storms which shook the social world to its very centre, she exercised her divine power over the very conquerors of Rome, and, being founded upon an immovable rock by the hand of God himself, she triumphed over them, as she had formerly triumphed over her pagan persecutors. Even at this disastrous and turbulent period, she began to tame and civilize those fierce barbarians who before acknowledged no law but that of the sword. Divine Providence seemed to have permitted their irruptions into the Roman provinces for no other view than to destroy, through their means, the last remains of idolatry, and effect their own happy conversion to the laws of the Gospel. On the other hand, the inhabitants of the invaded countries were led to understand, in the midst of their sufferings, that all was not lost for them, but that they would find a sure refuge in the Church of Christ.

PART III.

FROM THE DOWNFALL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE (A. D. 476), TO ITS REVIVAL UNDER CHARLEMAGNE (A.D. 800).

FOUNDATION OF THE PRINCIPAL AND MOST CELEBRATED STATES OF EUROPE.

From the overthrow of the Western empire we may date the foundation of the principal states now extant in Europe. The northern tribes by whose multiplied efforts its entire ruin was effected or accelerated, vied with each other in taking speedy possession of its fairest provinces. The conquests of the Vandals and of the Heruli having been already mentioned, we have to speak at present of the still more successful and celebrated establishment of the Anglo-Saxons in Great Britain, of the Visigoths in Spain, of the Franks in Gaul, and of the Ostrogoths in Italy.

§1.—ANGLO-SAXONS IN GREAT BRITAIN.
A.D. 449.

Hengist and Horsa.—Ever since the time when the Roman troops were totally withdrawn from Great Britain, the Picts and Scots seized every favorable opportunity to renew their inroads. District after district became a scene of devastation, and the misery of the natives increased every day, till finding themselves destitute of all resources at home, they at length resolved to call in as auxiliaries a body of Saxons (Jutes), who, having sailed from the north of Germany, were then cruising in the channel along the coast in quest of plunder. Adventurers like these could not fail to comply with a request which they justly presumed would turn to their own advantage. For six years (449–455) they fought the battles of the natives with great fidelity and success; and having by this time invited great numbers of their countrymen,

to whom the Angles, another German tribe, willingly joined themselves, they excited the jealousy and alarm of the Britons, who refused them an increased supply of provisions.

This was the signal for a war which proved most fatal to the liberty of the natives. The Anglo-Saxons conquered them in many battles, and began to bring under subjection the country which they had just defended against the Scottish invaders. Their first settlement upon the British territory was that of Kent, which the valiant chieftain Hengist gained and secured by a series of bloody victories, from the year 455 to 473, and which, at his death, in 488, he left in a prosperous condition to Horsa. The work of conquest was continued after him, and, though the Britons fought with great valor, and sometimes with success, for the independence of their country, their efforts ultimately proved fruitless, and the greater part of the island was subjugated by the Anglo-Saxons, who, changing its name, laws and constitution, established in it seven independent kingdoms, commonly called the Heptarchy, namely: Kent, Sussex, Wessex, Essex, Northumbria, East Anglia, and Mercia.

By this conquest, the whole of the country was plunged again into the state of barbarism from which it had been rescued by the Romans. It remained in that state until the close of the sixth century, when its conquerors received the light of the Gospel through the pious zeal of St. Augustine and forty other missionaries sent from Rome by Pope St. Gregory the Great. The natives, as soon as they found resistance useless, fled with their most valuable effects to the hills and forests, to escape the exterminating sword of the invaders. Multitudes found a secure asylum in the craggy and mountainous districts of the country of Wales, which they henceforth occupied for many centuries. Others, crossing the ocean, landed on the western extremity of Armorica in Gaul, where they made permanent settlements, and gave to the new tract they inhabited the name of Brittany (Brétagne), which it still retains.

§II.—VISIGOTHS IN SPAIN.

EVARIC.—A.D. 466–484.

THE conquests of the Visigoths, or Western Goths, in Spain, were more rapid than those of the Anglo-Saxons in Britain. Their king Evaric, taking advantage of the weakness and continual change of the last Roman emperors, sent a powerful army from the south of Gaul to the nearest provinces beyond the Pyrenees. The success of this expedition was astonishing: the very strongest towns opened their gates, and the natives, defeated in a great battle, abandoned a considerable portion of their country to the enemy. Upon this, Evaric himself arrived at the head of fresh troops; the war was prosecuted with redoubled vigor; nothing could resist his arms, nor impede his progress, and with the exception of a few northern provinces occupied by the Suevians, the whole peninsula submitted to his power (A.D. 473).

This warlike prince subdued also the portion of Aquitania not yet in his possession, and many other provinces in Gaul. The name of Evaric was now respected abroad: his court, which he established at Bordeaux, beheld ambassadors from all the neighboring nations paying homage to him as to the mightiest monarch of western Europe; and this high reputation he enjoyed until his death.

But besides being a powerful conqueror and the founder of the kingdom of the Visigoths in Spain, Evaric wished also to be the legislator of his people. Until then, the Gothic code was very limited, consisting only of some statutes of their kings, which had little authority among them, and were frequently disregarded in practice. Evaric published a collection of those ancient laws, and added to them new regulations peculiarly adapted to the time, place and other circumstances. Well aware that on their faithful observance depended his personal safety as well as the prosperity of the state, he carefully enforced their execution, and thus began to accustom the Visigoths to the duties and practices of social life.

Evaric died at Arles in 484, after a glorious reign of eighteen years. His uncommon talent for war and civil

administration would have still more entitled him to the praises of posterity, had he not, through ambition, stained his hand with the blood of his brother Theodoric II., and, through sectarian intolerance, treated his Catholic subjects with great severity, he himself being an obstinate Arian. Great however were the civil benefits he bestowed on his own people; the conquest of the peninsula, especially, was so much the more fortunate for the Visigoths, as they were on the point of being expelled from their possessions in Gaul by a still greater conqueror, and of being compelled to confine themselves to their newly acquired and more lasting kingdom of Spain.

§ III.—FRANKS IN GAUL.

CLOVIS.—A.D. 481-511.

This conqueror was Clovis, king of the Franks, who, for the magnitude and important consequences of his exploits, is justly considered the real founder of the French monarchy. The Franks were not at first a single nation distinct from all others, but made up of several German tribes which had, long before, entered into a confederacy for the support of their independence. During the greater part of the fifth century, under four successive kings, they made frequent irruptions into Gaul, and took possession of its northern frontiers; Clovis, more enterprising, undertook, at the early age of twenty years, to bring it entirely under his power.

Battle of Soissons.—His first opponent was Syagrius, a brave general, who had formed a small state for himself in the north of Gaul on the ruins of the Roman empire. Clovis attacked him near Soissons (A.D. 486), and gained so complete a victory, that Syagrius, being left almost alone fled for refuge to the court of Alaric II., king of the Visigoths. Nor could this asylum save him from the hands of his victorious enemy. Clovis compelled Alaric, by threats and terrors, to deliver up the unfortunate general, whom he put to death, and, by this act of cruel policy, remained in full possession of his territory.

Conversion of Clovis to Christianity.—After the lapse of some years, the French king was obliged, in consequence of a sudden invasion of the Alemanni, to carry

the war to the banks of the Rhine. An obstinate battle was fought at Tolbiac, near Cologne, in which the Franks, almost entirely routed in the beginning, remained in the end masters of the field. It was after this unexpected triumph, which Clovis himself attributed to the special protection of the true God whom he had invoked during the contest, that both he and his nation, abandoning the worship of idols, embraced the Christian faith (A.D. 496).

War against and defeat of the Visigoths.—During the course of the ensuing years, Clovis, always active and fond of conquests, continued to enlarge his empire. Either by force of arms, or by negotiations and treaties, he obliged the Arborici (inhabitants of Belgium) to acknowledge him for their king, subdued Bavaria, and rendered the Burgundians his tributaries. This rapid increase of power in the French monarch was a source of uneasiness and alarm for his neighbors, particularly for Alaric, king of the Visigoths: fearing for his own territory, he raised troops for its defence. Nothing could be more consonant than this with the designs of Clovis, as it afforded him an occasion of declaring an open war, and striking at once a signal blow. He marched with his usual rapidity, crossed the river Loire, came up with the army of the Visigoths near Poitiers, and forced them to engage in a general battle (A.D. 507). After a sanguinary contest, victory declared in favor of Clovis. With his own hand he struck Alaric dead; the Visigoths then fled with all possible speed, their conquerors pursuing them in every direction. In less than two years, Clovis took nearly all their possessions between the Loire and the Pyrenees, and thus nearly extinguished their power in Gaul; he would even have carried his conquests farther, had not a considerable body of his troops been defeated near Arles, by those of Theodoric, king of Italy.

Division of the kingdom of the Franks.—Still, this defeat did not deprive Clovis of the principal fruit of his labors. He preserved his former conquests, and returning to the north of Gaul, or rather France, as we shall henceforth call it, fixed his residence in Paris. The extraordinary reputation he had gained, being now far spread, and causing a great sensation even at the court of Constantinople, the emperor Anastasius sent him the insignia of the consulship, as a mark of his esteem and

alliance. Unfortunately, Clovis did not preserve his glory pure to the end, but sullied it by several acts of cruelty to the princes of his own kindred, whose estates he wished to invade. He died in 511, at the age of forty-five, after a reign of thirty years, leaving his kingdom to be divided among four sons, viz.: Theodoric I., Chlodomer, Childebert and Chlotar, a mode of succession which was followed after him on different occasions, and became a source of numberless disasters and civil wars.

Although the government of Clovis had been military and despotic, it evinced in many respects a wise and skilful policy. He did not, barbarian like, expel the natives from the provinces which he subdued, nor deprive them of their liberty and all their property; he only required that the lands of the country should be divided between them and his followers; whence it followed that the two nations, living and dwelling together upon the same soil, were soon blended into one people. He also published a code of laws, one of which declared women unfit to inherit such estates as had been obtained by arms and conquest; and this gave rise to the fiction invented in the early part of the fourteenth century, according to which the French crown never devolved to women.*

§ IV.—OSTROGOTHS (EAST GOTHS) IN ITALY.

THEODORIC THE GREAT.—(A.D. 493-526)

Siege of Ravenna.—Clovis, notwithstanding his justly renowned deeds in war and his legislation, was neither the greatest warrior nor the ablest politician of his age, this praise being due rather to Theodoric, king of the eastern Goths or Ostrogoths. This nation, after the dismemberment of Attila's empire, settled first in Pannonia near the Danube, but, being little satisfied with its situation, set out in 489 on an expedition against Italy. Odoacer,

* That code was called the *Salic law*, from the tribe of the *Salian Franks*, to which Clovis belonged. The article which settled the right of succession became subsequently, when understood of the succession to the throne, a proverb thus expressed: *Le royaume de France ne tombe point en quénouille.*

who was yet reigning there, did not fail to defend with courage a kingdom which he had now governed, during fourteen years, with great wisdom and glory. Still, victory everywhere followed the standard of Theodoric: three battles lost by Odoacer, and the vigor with which the Goths conducted the siege of the city of Ravenna where he had taken refuge, obliged him to come to an agreement with his conqueror. He was first treated with cordiality; but Theodoric, sacrificing justice and humanity to the cruel policy of the times, perfidiously put to death a prince worthy of a better fate (A.D. 493).

But, if the Gothic monarch had recourse to so odious a means for the acquisition of a new kingdom, he on the other hand took the wisest and most efficient measures to secure its possession. One of the most successful was, to enter into a permanent alliance with the neighboring princes. Some of them he compelled to live at peace with him; others he attached to his family and to himself by the ties of affinity; with others, he assumed the tone of parental authority, fully justified by his great wisdom and experience. "You are young," he wrote to them, "and stand in need of good advice. Your ambition and imprudent behavior afflict me, and I cannot see with indifference that you are ruled by your passions." He was guided by these wise counsels himself, taking care not to enlarge his dominions by rashly exposing the life of his people or violating the laws of equity. "Let others," said he, "wage war for the sake of destruction and plunder, as for me, my intention is, with the help of God, to conquer my enemies in such a manner, that the vanquished may be sorry for not having been before of the number of my subjects."

Theodoric's legislation.—No sooner did Theodoric see his power firmly established in Italy, than he undertook to civilize his people. He adopted for that purpose the Roman jurisprudence, which he reduced to one hundred and fifty statutes, well calculated, by the prudent rules and judicious maxims with which they abounded, to promote the public utility. He wished the Italians and the Goths, after a new division of the lands, to consider themselves not only as allies, but even as kinsmen and brothers, governed upon the same principles and

by one who looked upon himself as their common father. The only distinction established between them was, that the carrying of arms and the performance of military duty were reserved to the Goths, while civil employments and trades were left to the Romans. During the whole course of his reign, Theodoric proved the impartial benefactor of the two nations, and became equally endeared to both. Though an Arian by birth and education, instead of persecuting the orthodox, like the Vandal kings of Africa, his cotemporaries, he on the contrary favored and protected them; and so firm was his conviction, acquired by experience, of the disinterestedness and charity of the Catholic bishops, that he usually applied to them for the distribution of his alms to the poor and the exercise of his liberality towards the provinces.

His wisdom in choosing men.—This great prince knew how to gather around him and select for his counsellors persons the most conspicuous for their merit and ability, such as Boethius, Cassiodorus, etc. Boethius was a man of consular dignity, of noble feelings and superior genius, which shine forth in all his writings, especially in his five books *De Consolatione Philosophiæ*. Cassiodorus, who was not less distinguished for his learning and virtue, is proposed chiefly as the model of a zealous, active and disinterested minister of state. After a most laborious life at court, he retired into a pleasant solitude in Calabria, where he devoted the remainder of his days to study, writing, and religious exercises, and died at the age of about one hundred years.

Thus was literature, so long after the Augustan age, still cultivated with great success in Italy; and, while the Franks, the Burgundians, and the Visigoths, had scarcely begun to learn the principles of civilization, the court of Theodoric was the centre of learning and politeness. His palace was constantly open to talents and merit. To him Rome was indebted for the rebuilding of its walls and the preservation of its ancient monuments; Ravenna, Pavia and other cities, were also repaired or embellished. He favored every useful enterprise, revived agriculture and commerce, and procured so perfect a security for social intercourse, that neither citizens nor travellers had anything to fear, either in the towns or in the country.

Extent of his empire.—The empire which Theodoric had founded, and which, by improving every fair occasion, he almost continually enlarged, was very extensive. He reigned over Italy, Sicily, Dalmatia, Pannonia, Rhetia, Noricum, and some of the finest provinces of France and Spain. But his glory, besides being already impaired by the unjust death of King Odoacer, was, like that of Clovis, much diminished by several subsequent acts of cruelty. Old age and infirmity made him suspicious. He listened to the slanders and false accusations of jealous courtiers against the most respectable men of the state. Cassiodorus resigned his offices, and left the court: Boethius, and Symmachus, his father-in-law, suffered capital punishment, without being convicted of any crime, and the holy Pope John I. was thrown into prison, where he died after a painful confinement of several months.

Theodoric's death.—Remorse for these acts soon assailed Theodoric. His bitter grief for his late cruelties, produced a melancholy which accelerated his death. Most historians relate that, being one day at table, when a large fish had been served up, he imagined he saw in the dish the head of Symmachus; he withdrew terrified from the table, went to his bed, and expired, a prey to anguish and remorse, at the age of seventy-four years (A.D. 526). He had however sufficient time to proclaim, with the unanimous consent of those around him, his grandson Athalaric for his successor, under the regency of Amalasontha mother of this young prince.

The administration of Theodoric was, during thirty years (from 494 to 524), a model of excellent government in almost every respect. Having previously shown to the world what he could do on the field of battle, he appeared, all that time, a modest conqueror, a wise legislator, and a pacific monarch, who knew, by a happy mixture of severity and mildness, how to keep his victorious soldiers within the bounds of strict discipline, and to gain the hearts of his new subjects. When Belisarius conquered the Goths, he overthrew the statues of that great prince, but spared his sepulchre. It is yet extant in Ravenna, and attracts, by its elevation, the admiration of travellers.

EMPERORS OF CONSTANTINOPLE (EAST-ROMAN EMPIRE).

JUSTIN I.—A.D. 518-527.

We must now revert to the Eastern empire, which began about this time to make a greater figure in the political world than it had done under its last sovereigns, Basiliscus, Zeno and Anastasius I. After them, Justin, an officer of obscure parentage, but renowned for his valor, was judged worthy of the throne, at the advanced age of sixty-eight (A.D. 518). It is remarkable that this emperor knew neither how to read nor write, and still rendered important services to the state, during the nine years of his reign. Having natural talent and a sound mind, which he improved by experience and by asking counsel of other prudent men, he easily perceived the course to be followed in difficult affairs, and always acted with wisdom and equity.

He took particular care, on the one hand, to appoint able ministers and virtuous magistrates, and, on the other, to afford seasonable relief to his people in their calamities and disasters, which were then uncommonly frequent. But a short time before his elevation, a tremendous earthquake had desolated several parts of Illyria. For some days, a chasm immensely deep, about twelve feet wide, and extending to the distance of thirty miles, threw out sparks and flames, and swallowed up trees, rocks and houses. Some years before a dreadful conflagration had consumed many buildings in Constantinople, among others, that which contained the public library consisting of one hundred and twenty thousand volumes. An invaluable copy of the works of Homer, written in golden letters on the skin of a serpent one hundred and twenty feet long, was lost on this occasion.

Earthquake at Antioch.—Again in the years 525 and 526, similar accidents desolated or destroyed many cities, especially the great city of Antioch, the capital of Syria. About noon of the twenty-ninth of May (526), a sudden and violent shaking of the ground overthrew the houses in the western part of the town; and, as the earthquake quickly reached the other quarters, nearly all the build-

ings fell at the same moment, with a frightful crash. To this first evil, fire added its ravages. A subterraneous furnace, the usual attendant of earthquakes, ignited the very soil; hot cinders were carried up by whirlwinds, and fell afterwards in the form of a fiery rain, which consumed the wood-work of the houses, while another fire, rising from the ground, augmented the conflagration.

So unexpectedly did all those scourges come upon the inhabitants, that few of them could escape into the country; and this great city, the most populous of the East, became in a moment the common sepulchre of two hundred and fifty thousand persons. Most of them were crushed by the falling of the houses, or consumed by the flames; but others met a fate which almost exceeds belief. Bands of robbers began to commit depredations in the midst of these scenes of destruction and death. While numbers of unfortunate people, covered with bruises and wounds, were running in dismay through the streets and public places in order to avoid impending ruin, they met murderers, who cruelly deprived them of life and took possession of their fortunes, and who, soon after, were themselves destroyed with their criminal booty.

The deplorable spectacle of a city which barbarous conquerors have just taken by storm, would present but a faint idea of the desolation of Antioch. Some of the inhabitants, however, had the good fortune to escape from the ruins of their houses, under which they were for a time buried. Twenty or thirty days after, persons yet alive were taken from these sepulchres, where they had lived upon the victuals usually kept in families; but a far greater number were found dead. This earthquake, the fifth that Antioch suffered since its foundation, was the most awful and disastrous. It lasted six days with uninterrupted violence, and during six months was felt at different times; nor was the ground entirely settled till eighteen months after.

The news of these calamitous events pierced the heart of the emperor with grief. He presently despatched virtuous and trusty men, with considerable sums of money, to repair those cities which had suffered most, and rescue their surviving inhabitants from misery and despair; we are told that, in rebuilding Antioch alone, he spent fifty millions of livres (ten or twelve millions of dollars). It

was in the course of these occupations, so worthy of a sovereign, that Justin closed his useful career (527). A short time before his death, he associated his nephew Justinian in the imperial power, and, by his demise, left this prince in a condition to raise to its proper height the edifice of glory of which he had laid the first foundation.

GLORIOUS REIGN OF JUSTINIAN.—A.D. 527-565.

THE reign of Justinian forms an interesting epoch in the history of the Greek empire. The enlarged views of this prince, the union of favorable circumstances, the highly cultivated state of the science of law, and the brilliant successes obtained in different wars, equally contributed to render it glorious.

Inauguration of the compilation of laws.—Justinian, on his elevation to the throne, resolved to reconquer the western provinces which formerly belonged to the Romans, and to improve the civil legislation. This latter design he executed with the assistance of the ablest civilians of his age, particularly the famous and learned questor Tribonian. There already existed, it is true, different collections of laws, published under Adrian, Theodosius II. etc.; but all of them were defective. To become well acquainted with the ancient jurisprudence, it was necessary to peruse two thousand volumes containing, amidst several wise enactments, many inaccuracies and obscure passages, and even opposite and contradictory statutes. Justinian undertook to introduce order into that chaos, by comprising in a work of moderate extent, both the general principles of jurisprudence, and the best laws or judiciary sentences that had been promulgated before his time, during the space of thirteen hundred years.

The Codex Justinianus.—The Pandectæ and Digesta.—He first ordered a select collection to be made of the imperial statutes, from the beginning of Adrian's reign. By the assiduity of Tribonian and his associates, the work was soon performed, and published under the name of the *New* or *Justinian Code* (A.D. 529). After three years more of immense labor, the *Digest* (*Digestum*), or *Pandects* (*Pandectæ*), appeared in fifty books, containing the most equitable ordinances of ancient legislators with the best decisions of lawyers or civilians, under proper di-

visions and titles. To render the study of these books easier and more useful, some introduction was necessary; this was also made, and four other books, called *Institutes*, were published, which not only are the key to the Roman jurisprudence, but even contain the fundamental principles of all legislation. Of the different parts of the Justinian compilation, it is the best and most admirable. In fine, the emperor revised his Code, published it again more correctly in 534, and to the ordinances contained in it added a great number of new statutes, the collection of which, under the title *novellæ* completed what we call the *Roman* or the *Civil Law*.

Such was the origin of that famous body of laws, which, notwithstanding some imperfections, is the most remarkable that human wisdom ever produced. It was gradually adopted in several countries; and it is moreover from that abundant source of social principles, that the present states of Europe derive the better portion or supply the deficiency of their respective Codes.*

Foreign Policy.—While Justinian was engaged in this important work, he did not forget the other design he had formed; viz., of reconquering the western provinces of the empire now occupied by the barbarians. Not to be surrounded with enemies on all sides, he ended a long and undecisive war against the Persians by a solemn treaty of peace, and then directed all his efforts to the conquest of Africa. The Vandals, who were still masters of that country, had very much degenerated in courage; and perpetual quarrels among the descendants of Gaiseric con-

---

*The history and character of the Roman jurisprudence are described with great erudition and sagacity by Chancellor Kent, in the twenty-third lecture of his Commentaries. His concluding remarks are these: "The civil law shows the proofs of the highest cultivation and refinement; and no one who peruses it can well avoid the conviction, that it has been the fruitful source of those comprehensive views and solid principles, which have been applied to elevate and adorn the jurisprudence of modern nations. . . . . The whole body of the civil law will excite never failing curiosity, and receive the homage of scholars, as a singular monument of wisdom. It fills such a large space in the eye of human reason; it regulates so many interests of man as a social and civilized being; it embodies so much thought, reflection, experience and labor; it leads us so far into the recesses of antiquity, and it has stood so long against the waves and weathers of time, that it is impossible, while engaged in the contemplation of the system, not to be struck with some portion of the awe and veneration which are felt in the midst of the solitudes of a majestic ruin." *Commentaries on law, 2d edit., vol.* I, *pp.* 547. 548.

tributed to weaken more and more their political strength. One of these dissensions furnished Justinian with an opportunity to send a fleet and an army to Africa, under the command of Belisarius (A.D. 533).

Belisarius.—This general had already, during the preceding Persian war, begun to display that extraordinary skill in the art of commanding armies, which afterwards rendered him equal to the greatest generals of ancient Rome. He sailed from Constantinople with five hundred and ninety-two vessels of all sizes, and, after a long voyage, landed on the shores of Africa, at some distance from Carthage. His troops amounted to scarcely sixteen thousand men; but they were full of ardor, and the general was himself a host. The Vandals, on the contrary, had numerous troops; but their generals were unskilled in war, and showed more valor than prudence: two of them perished in a first battle; the others, with King Gelimer, were put to flight. This enabled Belisarius to advance through the country without further obstacle. Everywhere he was received as a deliverer by the ancient inhabitants, especially by those of Carthage: the rigor and barbarism of the Vandals had long since exasperated them; whereas the mildness of Justinian's general, and the excellent discipline which he maintained in his army, gained him universal confidence and affection. From Carthage, Belisarius went forward in pursuit of Gelimer. Having found him stationed at Tricameron, a place twenty miles distant from Carthage, with only ten thousand men against one hundred thousand Vandals, he obtained a glorious victory, which rendered him master of the whole surrounding country, of the royal treasures, and even, in a short time of the person of the king (534).

Gelimer.—This prince had fled from the field of battle to the extremity of Numidia, and there had shut himself up in a town situated on the summit of a high mountain. Belisarius, whose presence was necessary at Carthage, sent one of his generals, named Pharas, with a part of the army, to invest that place, and if possible to take the king prisoner. Accordingly, the town was closely besieged, and, before the expiration of three months, was reduced to the last extremity; in the meanwhile Pharas wrote to Gelimer, and exhorted him to surrender, with a positive assurance that he would be honorably treated by Justinian. The unfort-

unate prince wept while reading the letter, and in his answer to it, after expressing his unwillingness to become a captive, requested Pharas to send him a loaf, a sponge and a lute: a loaf, because he had not seen any bread for a long time; a sponge, to wash his wounds; and a lute, to accompany his voice when singing his misfortunes.

Pharas, moved with compassion, granted the request, but still continued, with diligent care, to obstruct all approach to the fortress. At length, Gelimer, afraid lest it should be taken by storm, consented to capitulate. He descended from the mountain, and, on the repeated assurances of honorable treatment, went with Pharas to Carthage, where he delivered himself into the hands of Belisarius.

Thus was Africa again subjected to the Roman power,* and the kingdom of the Vandals destroyed after a duration of one hundred and six years. Belisarius, having provided, as well as he was able, for the security of his conquest, returned to Constantinople, where he received honors proportionate to the greatness of his exploits. He had taken the precaution to make Gelimer embark with him from Africa. When this unhappy monarch was solemnly presented to the emperor, in the middle of an immense concourse of people, no sigh, no tear escaped him; but appearing to be plunged in deep reflection on the present state of his fortune, he several times repeated these words of Scripture: *Vanity of vanities, and all is vanity.*† Justinian gave him a rich estate in Galatia, where he was permitted to live in quiet with his family.

Belisarius in Italy.—Scarcely had the African provinces been united to the empire, when similar views began to be manifested with respect to Italy. The unjust death inflicted by ungrateful subjects on Queen Amalasontha who had been a faithful ally to the court of Constantinople was for the emperor a favorable pretext for attacking the Goths. In the year 535, the conqueror of Africa, Belisarius, unexpectedly appeared in Sicily, at the head

---

* The empire of Constantinople retained for many centuries the name of *Roman* or *Eastern*, though it is also frequently designated by the appellation of *Greek* or *Lower Empire*.

† Eccles. i. 2.

of seven thousand five hundred men. With this handful of soldiers that great general knew how to achieve exploits, which others would have found difficult to accomplish with very numerous armies.* After subduing the island, he passed over to the continent, and either by storm or surprise, by force or capitulation, took Naples, Rome, Ravenna, and many other cities, defeated the Goths on several occasions, and finally compelled their king Vitiges to embark, as Gelimer had done, for Constantinople, where the Gothic monarch also received estates and honorable titles from Justinian, as a compensation for the loss of his kingdom (A.D. 540).

Still the power of the Goths in Italy was not yet entirely overthrown. Notwithstanding the fatal blow it had just received, it recovered for a time its former strength, and even acquired, after the departure of Belisarius, an astonishing superiority, under the conduct of Totila, whom the Goths chose for their leader in 541.

Totila.—Of all the successors of Theodoric the Great, Totila was the only one who perfectly resembled him in prudence, activity, valor, justice and generosity. He conquered the Roman commanders in Italy, as often as he attacked them, and retook Rome in spite of all the exertions made by Belisarius after his return (A.D. 546). This great general, left by the emperor without the necessary supplies of ammunition and troops, saw his former prosperity decline ; after some years of fruitless efforts, he resigned the command of the army, and left to Narses the honor of terminating the war.

Narses.—Narses was one of those extraordinary men whom Providence prepares, as it were, in secret, for the prosperity or the destruction of states. Though a stranger, of small size and mean appearance, he had risen from a slave, to be one of the first officers in the palace of Justinian. The deficiency of regular education was abundantly supplied in him by a natural and noble eloquence.

---

* This appeared particularly in the year 537, when Belisarius, after taking Rome, was himself besieged in that city by an army of one hundred and fifty thousand men. The siege lasted twelve months and nine days, during which the two parties engaged seventy times, with a great display of valor on each side: but Belisarius, with only the twentieth part of the enemy's forces, defeated all their efforts, and finally obliged them to retire.—Procopius, *De Bello Goth.*; Lebeau, *Hist. du Bas. Empire, vol.* IX. *b.* 44. *pp.* 395–473.

A quick and sound judgment, a profound and extensive genius, wisdom in contriving the best plans and activity in executing them, insured the success of his undertakings. He possessed in an eminent degree all the virtues not incompatible with a certain ambition, above all, generosity and beneficence. As for his talents in war, they only wanted an occasion for their display, and without having been a soldier, he all at once appeared a consummate general.

Besides these natural advantages, Narses enjoyed the favor of Justinian, who readily granted him what had been refused to Belisarius, viz.: all the troops, money and ammunition requisite to carry on the war with vigor and success. Being thus well provided in every respect, he had but to appear in Italy, to check the prosperous fortunes of the Goths, and the very first battle which he fought, in the plains of Lentagio, entirely turned the scale in favor of the Romans. In vain did Totila make every effort to maintain the superiority which he had acquired; his army was completely defeated, his bravest warriors were killed, and he himself, being forced to fly for the first time in his life, died of his wounds a few hours after the battle. Narses immediately sent to Constantinople the news of his victory, together with the cuirass and the crown of Totila; and Justinian received, in the midst of the senate, these spoils taken from a prince far superior to him in personal merit (A.D. 552).

Tejas.—The Goths, although vanquished, and deeply afflicted by the death of their excellent king, did not lose courage, but hastened to provide a worthy successor in the person of Teias, the bravest of his lieutenants. In his arduous post, Teias answered as well as he possibly could the hopes of his nation, and, being unable to save it, strove at least to prevent its entire overthrow. He rallied the remains of the Gothic army, and leaving the open country to the victorious troops of Narses, went to occupy a strong position near Mount Vesuvius. The Roman general, at the head of all his forces, pursued him so closely, that the Goths began to suffer considerably from famine. Then, considering the decaying state of their fortune, which was on the point of being utterly lost, these magnanimous last survivors of a nation formerly so flourishing, looked at their swords, and resolved

to fight once more, either to conquer by a last effort, or at least to die with glory.

No sooner had they come to this determination, than, descending from the heights, they rushed with desperate fury against the enemy: but the resistance was not less vigorous than the attack was violent. The Romans were encouraged by the remembrance of past success, and an implicit confidence in the superior talents of their general: the Goths were animated by despair and by the example of their king, who having taken his post in the first rank, displayed the most heroic courage, and, for the space of four hours, spread among the enemy terror and death. Assailed as he was by a multitude of javelins and arrows, Teias, immovable as a rock, with one hand warded off the weapons, and, with the other, slew as many Romans as came within his reach. At length, unable to bear up his shield, which was pierced with twelve javelins, he asked for another. While he was taking it from the hands of his armor-bearer, and putting off the first, his breast for an instant remained uncovered; at this very moment, he received a deadly blow; he however continued to fight until he became exhausted, and then fell with his face towards the enemy.

The Romans cut off the head of this valiant prince, and exposed it, on the top of a pike, to the gaze of both armies, especially of the Goths, in order to throw them into consternation and despair. But the courage of those intrepid warriors, instead of being abated by this melancholy event, was rather increased by the desire of avenging the death of Teias. They therefore continued fighting with great heroism, until the darkness of night separated them from the Romans. Both parties spent the night on the field of battle, and, as soon as the dawn appeared, the combat was renewed with the same fury and maintained with the same obstinacy as on the day before; nor could Narses put to flight enemies who were few in number, wounded and fatigued, but, at the same time, buoyed up by their excitement, and making their last desperate effort. Giving up the hope of conquering men to whom liberty was dearer than life, he permitted them to retire unmolested, on condition that they would never more unsheathe their swords against the empire; after this, he easily achieved the conquest of Italy (A.D. 553).

The kingdom of the Ostrogoths thus disappeared forever, after a short duration of sixty years, during which it had produced three undoubted heroes, Theodoric, Totila and Teias. The authority of Justinian being now acknowledged throughout Italy, Narses, by his appointment and in his name, governed the country which he had so gloriously subjugated.

War against the Franks.—Warfare however was not yet entirely at an end, owing to the share that the French took for a long time in these wars. The successors of Clovis had inherited his warlike spirit, which they all exerted in subduing the little neighboring states: but none among them became as remarkable in this respect, as Theodebertus, king of Austrasia and of a considerable part of Germany. So great was his reputation for ability and valor, that both the Greeks and the Ostrogoths, from the very beginning of their contest, eagerly courted his alliance. He promised it to each nation, but was faithful to neither, his design being to conquer for himself. With this interested view, he crossed the Alps at the head of a powerful army, attacked both parties successively, defeated them, and would probably have remained sole master of the disputed regions, had not a contagious distemper, which broke out among his soldiers, obliged him to retire with considerable loss (A.D. 539).

After his retreat, though none of those who followed him had perished by the sword of the Romans, Justinian had the ridiculous vanity to assume the title of *Francicus*, or conqueror of the French. Theodebertus, filled with indignation, resolved to avenge the insult, and by following the course of the Danube, to invade Thrace, and then attack the very capital of the Greek empire. Already great preparations were being made for this purpose, and the emperor began to tremble in Constantinople, when Theodebertus died in the flower of his age (A.D. 548), and there was none after him skilful or bold enough to execute his projects.

It was only towards the end of the Gothic war, that two of his successor's generals, Leutharis and Bucelin, undertook in their own name the defence of the Goths, who were now deprived of every other resource. They passed across the Alps into Italy, with seventy-five thousand warriors, French and Germans. This army, like a

furious torrent, overran the whole peninsula, from the northern provinces to the southern extremity of Calabria, sweeping away or destroying everything in its impetuous course. Leutharis then desired to secure his booty by returning to the north, but was entirely foiled in his attempt. Being first defeated by the Romans during his march, he had scarcely reached and recrossed the river Po, when a dreadful pestilence carried him off, with nearly all his soldiers; a just punishment for the depredations and cruelties which they had committed.

Subjugation of Italy.—In the meanwhile, the army of Bucelin was also in a very perplexed condition; Narses, unable, in the opening of the campaign, to stop his progress, succeeded at last in famishing his wearied troops; this induced the German chieftain to engage in a general battle, rather than let all his followers die of sickness and starvation. The two armies met near Capua, on the banks of the little river Casilino, from which the bloody fight took its name. Never was there witnessed greater impetuosity on the one side, nor more valiant resistance on the other; nor was there ever a more striking proof of the superiority of true courage regulated by discipline over blind and unrestrained bravery. Although the Romans and their auxiliaries found themselves at first in great danger from the violence of the enemy's attack, the defeat of the French and Germans was so complete, that, out of thirty thousand, only five men escaped, all the others being slain with their general; whereas the conquerors, whose number scarcely amounted to eighteen thousand, did not lose more than eighty men. All of them had performed prodigies of valor; but the honor of the day was by every one attributed to Narses, whose presence of mind and superior genius had changed into so glorious a triumph, a combat the beginning of which seemed almost desperate for the Romans (A.D. 554). Shortly after, he cut to pieces another party of French, who were occupying a large portion of the country between the Po and the mountains; so many losses made them abandon the hope of obtaining a footing in Italy.

War in Persia.—While the bravest troops and the ablest generals of the empire were thus employed in the West, the Persians had recommenced the war in the East. During many years, their king Chosroes I., surnamed the

Great, spread devastation through the rich provinces of Mesopotamia and Syria, burning or sacking the towns, plundering the country, and routing the armies sent for its defence. He several times returned, after his campaigns, to Persia with an immense booty, or after having forced Justinian to pay him a heavy tribute. Belisarius repaired in some degree the dishonor of the Roman arms; but after his departure, when he went to Italy for the second time, it daily increased under other generals; particularly when thirty thousand Romans were defeated by four thousand Persians, and, on another occasion, fifty thousand by three thousand only.* At length, a signal victory, and other advantages gained by the troops of Justinian, permitted him to conclude a truce less disgraceful to the empire (A.D. 555).

This truce was the more opportune as the state was visited at this period by many other calamities. Earthquakes overthrew several buildings, and pestilence destroyed many of the inhabitants of Constantinople; on the other hand, the Huns made a furious irruption into Thrace, and advanced so far as to threaten the capital. Belisarius was once more, on this occasion, the glorious defender and the strongest bulwark of the empire. Though scarcely able, on account of old age, to wield a sword, he marched out with a handful of warriors against the barbarians, and obliged them to retire (559).

Belisarius' sad fate.—In return for so many services, the suspicious emperor, deceived by the slanders of the court, and believing Belisarius privy to a late conspiracy, stripped this great man of all his honors, and condemned him to an ignominious confinement which lasted seven months. It is even said and believed by many that his eyes were put out, and that he was reduced to misery so great as to beg his bread in the streets of Constantinople. But this seems to be a mere tale, quite unknown to contemporary historians, and founded on no better authority than that of John Tzetzes, an injudicious Greek writer of the twelfth century. More ancient authors, as Cedrenus and Theophanes, instead of mention-

---

* Lebeau, *Hist. du Bas. Empire*, *vol.* x., *pp.* 225–228 ; and *vol.* xi., 18–22 Agath. and Procop. *De Bello Persico.*

ing any such fact, relate that Belisarius recovered his dignities and the friendship of the emperor.

Both of them died shortly after, and in the same year (565). Justinian was in the eighty-fourth year of his life, and the thirty-ninth of a reign which had been more famous abroad than prosperous at home, especially towards its close. The armies were now in a miserable condition for want of regular pay, and the provinces were groaning under the pressure of heavy taxes, which served only to enrich covetous courtiers, or were spent in purchasing peace from the barbarians. Moreover, the emperor's munificence often degenerated into prodigality; this and an inordinate passion for new buildings, one of the incorrigible defects of Justinian, resulted in the expenditure of immense sums, that might have been much better employed.

It should also be remarked that, after having amended the Roman legislation, he frequently altered his own laws, or suffered them to be changed by his courtiers and ministers, in accordance with their interests and passions. The same inconstancy, and a weak condescension for his haughty and wicked wife Theodora, often betrayed him into wrong and unjust measures, so far as to disgrace his ardent zeal for religion by the violence of his measures, and by his continual attempts to rule and direct the affairs of the Church, while he neglected those of the empire. Owing to his imprudence, the factions of the circus excited many disturbances, sometimes even bloody revolts in Constantinople, the emperor's blind partiality for one of the parties having increased their mutual animosity, which continued under his successors, and proved one of the greatest calamities of that capital. In a word, although Justinian possessed great talents and many virtues, one might reasonably think, from the general tenor of his government, that he was rather an idle spectator of the splendid transactions which occurred during his reign, and that he really did less good than evil to both Church and State.

However, it would be unjust to deny that this emperor had many noble ideas and formed truly glorious designs. The reform of jurisprudence, the conquest of Italy and Africa, his endeavors to increase the power and splendor of the empire, were certainly undertakings cal-

culated to confer undying honor on any reign. If he did not himself carry them into execution, *his* at least was the glory of having contrived the plans, furnished the means, and effected their accomplishment through the instrumentality of talented individuals whose services Divine Providence placed at his disposal.

JUSTIN II.—TIBERIUS II.—A. D. 565-582.

At the death of Justinian, who left no issue, the imperial sceptre passed into the hands of his nephew, Justin II. This prince commenced his reign with universal applause, having, on the very first day, redressed many grievances, and paid innumerable debts contracted by Justinian in his old age. His subsequent conduct was not, it is true, always marked by the same love of law and justice; still, the emperor displayed it on many other occasions, particularly in the following occurrence, which is well deserving of notice.

Justin II.'s high sense of justice.—In order to check fraud and extortion in the capital, Justin appointed for its prefect a magistrate of renowned integrity, who was not less firm in the discharge of his duty, than upright and virtuous. He invested him with unlimited power to punish, without appeal and without hope of pardon, all criminals, of whatever rank or condition; a just, though severe decree, which frightened all iniquitous men and extortioners, one only excepted, a proud nobleman, who thought himself above the reach of either divine or human law. A complaint was lodged against this man by a poor widow whom he had robbed of all her property. The prefect, through regard for the accused, who was a relation to the emperor, wrote to him, and intrusting the letter to no one but the injured widow, begged him to indemnify her for the wrong she had suffered. The only satisfaction she received, was insult and ill treatment.

The prefect, hearing this, was inflamed with indignation, and summoned the offender before his tribunal; but his new orders were equally despised, and answered only by fresh insults and raillings against both the judge and the judgment. Instead of appearing, the haughty nobleman went to the palace, where he was invited to dine with a

great number of courtiers. No sooner did the prefect know that he was at table with the emperor, than he himself entered the dining-room, and said to Justin: "My lord, if you persist in the resolution which you have manifested of punishing oppression and violence, I also shall continue to fulfil your orders. But if you renounce a design so worthy of you, if the worst of men are honored with your favor and admitted to your table, receive my resignation of an office which becomes useless to your subjects, and cannot but be displeasing to yourself." To this noble remonstrance Justin answered that he had not changed his mind. "Punish," said he to the prefect, "punish injustice everywhere; were it even seated with me upon the throne, I would rather descend, to deliver it up to punishment." The virtuous magistrate did not desire more: emboldened by this answer, he presently ordered the culprit to be seized in the midst of the guests, and carried before his tribunal. The widow's complaints were heard, and as that man, before so arrogant, and now speechless and trembling, could not urge anything in his defence, the prefect caused him to be stripped and beaten with rods, and then to ride upon an ass, with his face turned to the tail, through all the streets of the city; his effects were moreover forfeited for the benefit of the widow. This exemplary chastisement stopped for some time the course of usurpation and extortion. The emperor rewarded the resolute conduct of the prefect by raising him to the rank of a patrician, and confirming him in his charge for the remainder of his life.*

The other qualities of Justin were not equal to his zeal for the enforcement of the laws and of good order. He was dissolute, indolent, pusillanimous, and, at the same time, haughty to excess towards the ambassadors of foreign nations. This unbecoming pride, which his wife Sophia too faithfully imitated, occasioned bloody wars, and caused great losses to the empire. That princess, having long since harbored a deep hatred against Narses, the conqueror, and at that time, the governor of Italy, sent him a spindle and a distaff, with a scornful letter,

*This act of firmness and vigor is by some referred to the reign of Justin I. but more probably belongs to that of Justin II. and to the year 574 or near that time.—*See* Lebeau, *Histoire du Bas Empire, vol.* XI. *pp.* 235–237. Petavius *Rationarium temporum, vol.* I., *p.* 409.

telling him that those articles were more suitable for him than the command of armies and the government of provinces: for which reason she ordered him to depart from Italy and return to Constantinople, to be employed in the palace.

The Lombards under Alboin.—Narses had virtue, firmness and courage, but not to such a degree as patiently to bear so cruel an affront. On the perusal of the letter, his eyes sparkled with wrath, and in a sarcastic tone: "Go," said he to the messenger, "and tell the empress, that I will cut out for her more work than she desires." He immediately wrote to the nation of the Lombards (so called from their long beards), inviting them to come and invade Italy. He soon repented of his treason, and died with the bitter regret of having by that one act, dishonored a life of ninety-five years, the last part of which had been ennobled by so many glorious achievements.* But this repentance came too late to prevent the evil consequences of his rash step: the Lombards had already set out under the command of their King Alboin (568). They crossed the Alps from the north-east, and meeting with little opposition, subdued all that part of the peninsula which received from them the name of Lombardy. Pavia was the capital of this new kingdom. The invaders did not advance far enough, or in sufficient numbers, to take the other chief cities, Rome, Naples, Ravenna, etc.; these therefore continued, for nearly two centuries more, under the power of the emperors of Constantinople, Ravenna being chosen, on account of its advantageous situation, to be the residence of the governors whom they appointed under the title of exarchs.

War against Chosroes in the East.—The imprudence of Justin gave rise also to a new war against the Persians, in the beginning of which great injury was done to the Romans. While the emperor, more ready to threaten than to act, remained shut up in his palace, Chosroes, ever active and intrepid, unexpectedly appeared on the

---

* In this we follow the account commonly given by historians; still it should be observed, in justification of Narses, that several learned critics deny his having yielded to his resentment and made any proposal, to the Lombards about the invasion of Italy; which invasion, they say, was undertaken for a variety of other causes.—*See Annales du moyen age, vol.* III. *p.* 188.—Lebeau, vol. XI., *pp.* 178, 179.

frontiers at the head of one hundred and forty thousand men, attacked Mesopotamia and Syria, and with little or no opposition, laid waste those rich provinces. The intelligence of these disasters threw Justin into such a melancholy as degenerated into real madness, the paroxysms of which became more and more frequent. Having fortunately retained his senses sufficiently to feel that he was no longer able to govern without a colleague, he made choice of Tiberius, the commander of his guards, a man universally respected for his prudence and virtue, and intrusted to him the reins of government (A.D. 574).

Victory over Chosroes.—It would have been difficult to make a better choice; and Chosroes soon perceived, to his cost, that the imperial court was now directed by a more vigorous hand. He saw the course of his triumphs and prosperity checked at the battle of Melitene, a town of Lesser Armenia, where he found himself opposed by one hundred and fifty thousand men, Romans and auxiliaries, whom Tiberius had mustered from the different parts of the empire as well as from the surrounding nations. Notwithstanding the exertions of Chosroes during the contest, most of the Persians were put to the sword, or driven into the Euphrates, where they perished. The dejected monarch fled with all haste to the confines of Persia, and died in grief and despair, after a memorable reign of forty-eight years.

While Tiberius was thus restoring the honor of the Roman armies, he was not less careful to restore the interior tranquillity of the state. Crime and extortion were checked by severe laws. The vain magnificence and useless expenses of the imperial court were abolished, and by this wise measure Tiberius found means to support the standing army, diminish the taxes, relieve the wants of divers provinces, and gain the hearts of his subjects, by conferring on them benefits worthy of a great prince. He considered them all as his children, the state as his family, and the sovereign power as a blessing which he must render, as much as possible, common to all, by his equity, kindness and liberality.

Tiberius and Sophia.—Amidst these laudable employments, the death of Justin, in 578, left him sole master. As the empress Sophia, by her counsels and influence, had been instrumental in placing him on the

throne, she expected that, as she was now a widow, he would marry her, and thus enable her to preserve the title of empress. But Tiberius was already married, a fact of which she was not aware. On the day of his coronation, he made his virtuous wife, Anastasia, suddenly appear in the sight of the people, and crowned her with his own hands, to the extreme joy of all the spectators except Sophia, whose disappointment can scarcely be imagined. This ambitious princess, in the violence of her resentment, did all in her power to dethrone a sovereign to whose elevation she had so much contributed. Tiberius contented himself with depriving her of the great riches which had been left at her disposal, and in spite of her intrigues, remained in quiet possession of the throne.

He occupied it only four years, and during this short period, constantly displayed virtues equal to his rank. To procure the welfare of his people and maintain the honor of the empire, were now, as they had hitherto been, the constant objects of his solicitude. If, for want of sufficient forces, he could not deprive the Lombards of their conquests in Italy, nor prevent the Avari, a Scythian nation from obtaining a similar foothold in Pannonia, he at least continued, though desirous of peace, to gain great advantages against the Persians, whose new king Hormisdas was obstinately bent on prosecuting the war.

For these successes the emperor was chiefly indebted to Mauritius, commander of his armies in the East. Mauritius was a man of great valor and experience, and, with the exception of a certain taint of avarice, still more commendable for the qualities of his heart. Tiberius, whose health was rapidly declining, thought he could do nothing better for the state than to appoint him his successor. This he did in a solemn assembly with universal applause, and died the next day (14th of August, 582), leaving Constantinople in deep affliction for the loss of so excellent an emperor, and yet in the cheering hope of equal prosperity under the new sovereign.

MAURITIUS.—A.D. 582-602.

THE triumphs of Mauritius over the Persians had raised him to the throne: in order to maintain his position, and pursue the course of his victories, he sent numerous

armies to the frontiers; but the misunderstanding of the troops and generals permitted the enemy to regain the superiority in the first campaigns. At length, good order was re-established, and the Persians were conquered in many battles. These defeats, joined to the intolerable pride and cruelty of Hormisdas, roused his subjects against him. He was thrown into a dungeon, and shortly after, put to death, with the consent of his son Chosroes II. who began to reign in his place.

But Chosroes himself was not secure upon a throne lately stained with his father's blood. A considerable portion of the army persevered in its rebellion against the royal family, and defeated the troops of the king. In this distress, Chosroes, trusting more to a generous enemy than to disloyal subjects, fled for refuge to the Roman boundaries, whence he wrote a moving letter to Mauritius, requesting his assistance and protection. Mauritius liberally complied with the request: by his orders, the fugitive monarch was treated in a manner worthy of a sovereign, and moreover supplied with a powerful army, whose exertions enabled him to re-enter his own dominions in triumph, to crush the rebels, and regain the undisturbed possession of his kingdom (A.D. 593).

Peace with Persia.—In return for these signal benefits, Chosroes yielded to the Romans the territories and cities for which so much blood had been shed and so many battles fought within the last year. A permanent peace was concluded between Persia and the empire; and thus, instead of meanly fomenting the internal feuds of a powerful and rival state, Mauritius had the honor of bringing them to a happy termination, of replacing an exiled sovereign upon his throne, and of ending, by an act of generosity far more commendable than all his victories, a long and violent struggle which had proved so fatal to both nations.

The emperor then directed his attention chiefly to the defence of the northern frontier against the attacks of the Avari. These barbarians were accustomed to a life of warfare and pillage: frequently victorious and successful in their attempts, sometimes conquered and repulsed, they incessantly renewed their inroads, and spread devastation through Mesia, Thrace and other provinces. At last a masterly expedition of Priscus, one of the Roman generals,

in 601, almost annihilated their forces, without however destroying their warlike and restless spirit.

War against the Avari.—This brave commander, having resolved to strike a signal blow, crossed the Danube with the intention of attacking the Avari upon their own territories, and immediately sent away the boats, in order to reduce his own soldiers to the necessity of conquering or perishing. This being done, he marched out of his camp, with all his troops drawn up in battle array; and, as it was the custom of the barbarians to fight in separate bodies and in a desultory manner, Priscus divided his army into three square battalions, the better to face the enemy on all sides. He ordered them, moreover, not to use their arrows, but to come to close fight with their pikes and javelins. The first combat ended only with the day, and the issue was favorable to the Romans; for, while their loss did not amount to more than three hundred men, they had killed four thousand of the Avari.

The enemy did not appear for two days. On the morning of the third, Priscus drew up his army in the same order as before, but, during the contest, gradually extended its wings, so as to enclose the barbarians, who lost nine thousand men on that day. The ten following days passed without any new engagement. Priscus, animated by his first success, and seeing the Avari at a stand, went forward to provoke them a third time to battle. He posted his troops on the declivity of a hill, at the bottom of which there was a lake. The Romans rushed upon the barbarians with such fury, and drove them towards the lake with such irresistible force, that fifteen thousand of them were put to the sword, or perished in the water. Of this number were the four sons of the Khan (chief of the Avari); and the Khan himself was, for some moments, in great danger, which he escaped only by a precipitate flight.

The Gepidæ.—Priscus, having let his troops take some repose, went in search of the Avari, and fought them in a fourth and equally successful battle, which obliged the vanquished to retreat beyond the river Teissa. The conqueror sent four thousand men to observe them, and examine their new position. This detachment found in a certain borough a great multitude of Gepidæ, subjects of the Avarian nation, who had just come to celebrate one of

their solemn feasts. These barbarians, not being informed of the issue of the last battle, were enjoying themselves at table during the night, particularly in drinking; the Romans arrived just at that time, and easily slew thirty thousand of them; they then returned, loaded with booty, to their camp on the other side of the river.

Twenty days more having elapsed, the Khan, at the head of a considerable force, recrossed the Teissa, and challenged the Romans to a fifth battle. His obstinate resolution was still of no avail, and this victory of Priscus crowned the success of his glorious campaign, which had not lasted more than two months. The numerous army of the Avari was either cut to pieces or drowned in the river. There remained only about seventeen thousand men, many of whom were taken prisoners, but, shortly after, the Khan had the good fortune to recover them by a stratagem, and with them repaired, in some measure, the great losses of his nation.

It was just the reverse with the Greek emperor, whose political career, so successful in the beginning, ended in a bloody tragedy of which he and all his family were the victims. During one of the preceding campaigns, the Avari had taken twelve thousand Roman prisoners, whom Mauritius refused to redeem, though but a trifling sum was asked for their ransom; and this refusal so enraged the barbarians, that they put them all to the sword. The emperor then began to be stung with remorse, gave large alms, and prayed that God would rather punish him in this life, than in the next. His prayer was heard, and he himself unknowingly prepared the way for its accomplishment.

Phocas.—The conduct of this prince with regard to the prisoners had already provoked loud complaints against him, when, in the year 602, he ordered the troops on the frontier to take up their quarters in the enemy's country, and to subsist there by plunder during winter. The soldiers exasperated at this command, chose one Phocas, a daring, ambitious man, for their leader, and marched to Constantinople, where he was crowned emperor. Mauritius endeavored to make his escape, and passed indeed to the opposite shore; but he was overtaken with his family. His five sons were slain before his eyes at Chalcedon, while he repeated these words of the Royal

Prophet: *Thou art just, O Lord, and thy judgment is right;* * and when the nurse offered her own child instead of his youngest, he would not suffer it. Last of all, he himself was massacred, and, after having shown himself a great general and an emperor of some ability, he appeared in his last moments a true and magnanimous hero. He had held the sceptre twenty, and lived sixty-three years.

Events during Mauritius' reign.—During his reign, an inundation took place in Italy, which was deemed the most surprising and destructive that had ever happened since the deluge. All the rivers overflowed, and spread devastation throughout the whole country. The plains were covered with such a quantity of water, as to present the spectacle of a vast sea, upon whose surface the wrecks of farms, the timber of houses, the dead bodies of men and animals, were floating on every side as in a general shipwreck. The Tiber was so high, that it filled the streets of Rome, destroyed many buildings, and left uncovered only the seven famous hills of the city, which then appeared as so many islands. The rapid stream carried along with it an incredible multitude of serpents, among which there was seen one of an enormous size. Being all hurried away into the sea, they perished, and were thrown up by the waves upon the beach. This deluge was accompanied by frightful storms, thunder and lightnings, and followed by a pestilence, which swept off vast numbers of inhabitants.

St. Gregory the Great.—In the midst of these calamities, St. Gregory the Great was, notwithstanding his modest reluctance, raised to the chair of St. Peter, which he occupied fourteen years (590–604). During that period he constantly acted the part of a wise, enlightened, virtuous and holy pontiff, as all contemporary monuments testify.† This great pope arrested the prog-

---

* Ps. cxviii. 137.

† This being an incontestable fact to which all sorts of documents bear ample testimony, plainly demonstrates how unjust and absurd are the charges of bigoted zeal, ambition, flattery towards princes, etc., brought forward by Hume and other infidels against St. Gregory.

Equally unfounded and ridiculous is the accusation of his having destroyed the books and other monuments of ancient literature in Rome. This work of destruction is not only well accounted for by the multiplied ravages of the barbarians, but, even in the opinion of Bayle and Barbeyrac,

ress of the plague by his prayers; instructed emperors, and at the same time inculcated the obligation of true obedience; consoled and strengthened Africa; confirmed in the true faith the Visigoths of Spain, lately converted from Arianism with their king Recared; sent to England the glad tidings of the gospel; reformed discipline in France; subdued the fierce temper of the Lombards; saved Rome and Italy, which the emperors were unable to assist; checked the growing pride of the patriarchs of Constantinople; enlightened the whole Church by his doctrine; governed the East and West with equal vigor and humility, and afforded to the world a perfect model of ecclesiastical government.

PHOCAS.—A.D. 602-610.

Mauritius and his guiltless offspring being inhumanly cut off, Phocas, the leader of the rebellion, the personification of intemperance and cruelty, appeared in secure possession of the supreme power in Constantinople. But Chosroes, the politic king of Persia, with sentiments of seeming indignation at the murder of his kind benefactor and ally, loudly exclaimed against the assassin on the throne, and threatened revenge. A still stronger motive, his own interest, induced him to declare war against the tyrant Phocas. With numerous troops he passed the Roman boundary, and, meeting with no resistance, quickly overran Mesopotamia and Syria. Phocas, who had renounced the profession of a soldier, without assuming the character of a prince, remained inactive, and beheld with indifference his dominions ravaged. He suffered Chosroes to gratify his revenge and ambition without a check, and exclusively employed himself in shedding the blood of the worthiest men of the state, and gratifying his unruly passions. His own relatives

---

two authors little suspected of partiality for the popes, not one single good proof can be adduced that St. Gregory ever attempted to do so; except, perhaps, with regard to books of sorcery and astrology, which St. Paul himself judged worthy of entire destruction, as we read in the Acts of the Apostles, xix. 19. All this has been candidly acknowledged by Roscoe, in his *History of Leo the Tenth, vol.* i. *ch.* i. *p.* 53, where he praises "the beneficence, candor and pastoral attention of Gregory I.—unjustly charged," he adds, "with being the adversary of liberal studies."

and the senate of Constantinople, seeing nothing done for the preservation of the empire, secretly requested Heraclius, the governor of Africa, to come to their assistance, assuring him that the purple would be the reward of his services.

Age had extinguished the last spark of ambition in the breast of Heraclius; but he took all proper means to secure the crown for his son. The young Heraclius boldly embarked in the hazardous enterprise, put a select body of troops on board the vessels that were ready for sea, set sail, and nearly reached Constantinople, before Phocas had the least suspicion of his rival's approach. After a sharp contest at sea, Heraclius forced the entrance of the harbor. In the meantime, the tyrant destitute of friends, was seized by a private enemy, and conveyed on board the galley of the conqueror, who first reproached him for his atrocious crimes, then ordered his head to be struck off and his body to be burned. Heraclius was immediately proclaimed emperor (A.D. 610).

HERACLIUS.—A.D. 610-628.

War in the East and West.—By this time the empire was in a most deplorable condition. On one hand, the public treasury was drained; there were hardly any troops to defend the frontiers, and not one good general at their head, the ablest officers having either fallen in battle or perished by the sword of the tyrant. On the other hand, the Avari were recommencing their inroads in the West, and the Persians, continuing the work of depredation throughout the whole East. The latter, in four successful campaigns (611–615), subdued Mesopotamia, Cappadocia, Syria and Palestine; plundered the cities of Edessa, Cæsarea, Antioch, Damascus, Jerusalem, etc., and carrying off innumerable captives, together with an immense booty, left those unfortunate regions covered with blood, ruins and ashes.

Chosroes' demands.—In pursuit of new conquests, the Persians then marched into Egypt, took the wealthy city of Alexandria, and laid waste the whole country around; while another army advanced through Pontus and Asia Minor as far as the Straits of Constantinople. Unprepared, and unable to resist so powerful a force,

Heraclius begged peace of Chosroes with suppliant entreaties, and even on the humiliating terms of purchasing it by an annual tribute. The haughty monarch rejected the proposal with scorn. Putting the ambassadors in chains, he swore that he would spare neither the emperor nor his subjects, unless they would abjure their crucified God, and, like the Persians, adopt the worship of the sun.

In this desperate state of affairs, Heraclius thought of abandoning Constantinople and transferring to Carthage the seat of the empire. Rising however from that despondency and lethargy in which he seemed to be plunged, he at length generously determined to put himself at the head of his shattered troops, and to run with them all the hazards of so perilous a war. Being once roused to action, nothing appeared in him but heroism. He spent one year in preparing his soldiers, and inspiring them with his own ardor and intrepidity; his design being, from the very first step, to remove the seat of war into Persia, and thereby oblige the infidels to return home for the defence of their country. Not to leave any enemies behind, he concluded a truce with the Avari, who had lately attacked him on the side of Thrace; and in the year 622, the twelfth of his reign, began his march towards Persia, immediately after Easter.

Heraclius' victorious campaign.—Before the expiration of the same year, Heraclius began to reap the fruits of his efforts, by defeating the Persians in Armenia. This first success turned forever the scale of fortune: the Romans, so much dispirited before, but now under the conduct of a magnanimous prince, and animated by the example of his heroic valor, fearlessly entered the hostile territory, overthrowing, as they advanced, whatever dared oppose their progress. Chosroes beheld, with impotent rage, all his armies conquered, his dominions laid waste, his cities and castles taken by storm, and himself compelled to fly for safety to more distant quarters. In the summer of 623, Heraclius took the important city of Gansac or Tauris, and consigned a great part of it to the flames, especially a famous temple dedicated to heathen worship, and the palace of Chosroes, in which there was a rich statue of this proud monarch, under a dome which represented the heavens with the sun, moon and stars,

and round about it angels holding sceptres in their hands in honor of Chosroes, with machinery intended to produce effects resembling storms and thunder. Leading back his army to go into winter quarters in Albania, near the Caspian sea, the emperor was moved with compassion towards fifty thousand Persian captives whom he had brought with him, and released them all, after having supplied them with the necessaries of life. This act of humanity so touched their hearts, as to make them pray with tears for his further success, and express their ardent desire that he might deliver Persia from a tyrant who, by his exactions and cruelty, was the destroyer of mankind.

The campaigns of Heraclius in 624 and 625, were equally successful. He fought the numerous troops of the Persians in five or six battles, and was as many times victorious. In 626, Sarbar, one of the Persian generals, arrived with a powerful army before Chalcedon on the Asiatic bank of the Bosphorus, and was seconded by the perfidious Avari, who, having broken the truce, attacked Constantinople on the European side; but they were repulsed both by land and sea, and Sarbar was likewise foiled in his attempts against Chalcedon.

Battle of Ninive.—On the 12th of December, 627, Heraclius, almost without any loss on his side, entirely overthrew the Persians near the ruins of the ancient city of Ninive. Razates, their general, was found among the slain, with his shield and cuirass of solid gold; and with him fell nearly all the officers and the greater part of the Persian army. The haughty Chosroes was now driven from town to town and yet continued obstinately deaf to all proposals of peace. This obstinacy so exasperated his subjects against him, that even his nobles and generals revolted, with Siroes, his eldest son; and, as the old king had just declared Medarses, another of his sons, his successor, Siroes seized on his father, bound him in chains, and threw him into a dungeon. There he was loaded with insults, allowed only a small quantity of bread and water for his sustenance, frequently shot at, and wounded with arrows, until he expired, on the fifth day of his confinement (A.D. 628).

Chosroes' death.—Thus, through a just judgment of God, Chosroes II. perished by the hands of an unnatural son, after having himself obtained the throne by

spilling the blood of his father Hormisdas, and filled not only his own kingdom, but all the East, with carnage and desolation, during a reign of thirty-five years. Siroes immediately entered upon a treaty of peace with Heraclius, restored the provinces which the empire had lost, and released all the Roman prisoners. Another effect of this treaty was the restitution of the Holy Cross, which had been carried away by the Persians fourteen years before, and which, being now recovered from their hands, was conveyed back with great solemnity to Jerusalem.

The emperor then returned in triumph to Constantinople, and made his entry into that capital in a chariot drawn by four elephants, amidst the shouts of multitudes. He afterwards applied himself to repair in the several provinces, the evils caused by so disastrous a war; Persia, in the meantime, remaining a prey to an almost uninterrupted succession of bloody revolutions, which followed the hasty death of Siroes. Upon the whole, both nations were exceedingly weakened, and shortly after found themselves unable to resist with success a common and most formidable enemy, who, issuing forth from the deserts of Arabia, was preparing at this very time to impose upon the whole East his yoke, his laws, and his religion.

RISE OF MOHAMMEDANISM.—A.D. 622-632.

The author of this amazing revolution was Mohammed, or Mahomet, a descendant through Ismael of the great Patriarch Abraham. This famous impostor is believed to have been born in the year 570, at Mecca, a town in Arabia. The first part of his life he spent in obscure employments, already cherishing however that unbounded ambition which was to produce such great results. At the age of forty, he assumed the role of a prophet: and supposing, contrary to the divine promises, that the true worship of God existed no longer upon earth, boldly maintained that he was commissioned by Heaven to restore the religion of Abraham, Moses, and Jesus Christ, to its primitive purity, dreadfully disfigured, he said, by Christians, Jews and idolaters.

Mohammedanism.—Upon this foundation, Mohammed built his religious system, which is a monstrous compound of Judaism, Christianity, old heresies, and his own fancies; on one side, discarding all the mysteries of religion, on the other, continually inculcating that "God is God and Mohammed is His prophet." Being subject to fits of epilepsy, he attributed them to the visits of the archangel Gabriel, by whom he pretended he was taught, but whose presence he could not bear without trances and convulsions. As he knew neither how to read nor write, it was only with the assistance of a Jewish Rabbi and of a Nestorian monk that he compiled his Koran, or book of books, as he called it, and which, in reality, is nothing else than a most strange medley of some beautiful sentences and maxims taken from Holy Writ and of nonsense, absurdities and ideas the most extravagant, without design or connection, though expressed in a lofty and an animated style.

The hegira.—It was a circumstance very favorable for the design of Mohammed, that he preached his doctrine first among Arabs and Saracens, the most ignorant people perhaps then in the world. Still, instead of making much progress in the beginning, it rather met with powerful opposition at Mecca; so strong indeed, that the pretended prophet, seeing that his life was in danger, was obliged to depart from that town. This event happened in the year 622, and is famous among the Mohammedans, who trace back to it the beginning of their era, under the name of *hegira* or *flight.*

Mohammed retired to Medina or Yatreb, another Arabian city, where he was received with great honors. He made there numerous proselytes, to whom he declared that he intended to establish his religion, not by the power of miracles, as the ancient prophets had done, but by force.* To this first means of enforcing conviction, he added another equally successful with the generality of men, the enticement of sensual pleasures; he himself setting the example of debauchery, as well as of ambition, enthusiasm and desperate courage. Having assembled a little army, chiefly consisting of thieves and fugitive slaves, he at first attacked the caravans that went through

---

*See Note E.

RETURN OF PILGRIMS FROM MECCA.

To face p. 184.

Arabia for the purpose of trade, and meeting with great success, he enriched his soldiers and enlarged his projects. He took the city of Mecca from which he had been compelled to flee and thence carried the sword of destruction from one tribe to another, forcing all to embrace his religion, or pay him an annual tribute. Before his death (632), nearly the whole of Arabia was already subjugated.

Reasons of Mohammed's success.—Such were the first results of the exertions of Mohammed ; and, since he personally set the example to an enthusiastic people, it is chiefly to him that we should refer the long course of victories gained, and of conquests made by his successors. It was he who changed some miserable tribes, until then confined to the deserts of Arabia, into armies of undaunted warriors, for whom the invasion of the whole world seemed to be too little. Of what efforts were not those men capable, whose minds he had impressed with the dogma of absolute predestination, whose souls he had inflamed with all the ardor of religious fanaticism, and whom, in fine, he had taught to look upon themselves as strictly bound and most happy either to conquer or to die on the field of battle for the propagation of their religion.

The inexorable severity of Mohammed towards the vanquished was another cause of the rapidity of his success, the terror which he spread abroad frequently disarming those whom he threatened with war. His practice was to propose the choice of one of three conditions, viz., the adoption of his religious system, or the payment of a tribute, or an appeal to the sword. They who agreed to the first not only preserved their lives and property, but were even made partakers of all the privileges of Mussulmans. Those who consented to pay a tribute were allowed to profess their own religion, provided it was not gross idolatry. If they had the courage to fight, no quarter was granted to them ; only the women, old people and children were spared, to be reduced to slavery. This terrible mode of proceeding continued for many years, and was abandoned only when the Mohammedan power, being firmly established, had nothing to fear from its enemies.

Derivation of the various names.—The followers of Mohammed are called *Mohammedans* from his own

name;—*Mussulmans* or *Moslems*, from the word *Islam*, which means submission to God and to His prophet, and by which they designate their religion;—sometimes *Arabs*, from their parent country;—and more frequently *Saracens*, from one of the principal tribes that first embraced Mohammedanism. As to the chiefs of this new religion and empire, they took the name of *Caliphs*, or vicars of the prophet, and sometimes also the title of *Emir al moumenin* or *Miramolin*, which signifies prince, or commander of the faithful.

PROGRESS OF MOHAMMEDANISM.

CONQUESTS OF THE SARACENS IN SYRIA, PALESTINE AND MESOPOTAMIA. A.D. 632-639.

Mohammed having left no male issue, it was natural to expect that the titles and power he had enjoyed should be transferred to Ali, his cousin, son-in-law, and designated heir. Still the suffrages of the nation were for Abu-Bekr, Mohammed's father-in-law, a man of great repute among the Arabs, and to whom, more than any one else, Islamism was indebted for the popularity it had acquired. Moreover, he was powerfully supported by the most influential chieftains of the Mussulmans, Omar and Othman, who preferred to see the dignity of caliph, to which they themselves probably aspired, intrusted to a man sixty years old, the age of Abu-Bekr, rather than to Ali, a young man, who, having, according to the ordinary course of nature, the prospect of a long life, would likely prevent them from ever becoming caliphs.

Abu-Bekr.—Abu-Bekr therefore was elected, and immediately took the census of his subjects. Having found one hundred and twenty-four thousand Mussulmans, he did not doubt but that he might, with these forces, undertake and execute great projects. After quelling some seditions among the Arabs, and driving the Persians from ancient Chaldea, he raised three armies for the invasion of Syria, under the command of three valiant chieftains, Kaled, Abu-Obeyda and Omar. Their first attack was directed against the frontier towns, Bostra, Palmyra, and some others which were easily conquered. Kaled, who was the commander-in-chief, then

went, at the head of fifty thousand men, to lay siege to the important city of Damascus. Neither the courage of the citizens and garrison, nor the exertions of the troops sent to their assistance, could save the town from the hands of the infidels. It was taken by them at the end of six months, and most of its brave inhabitants were inhumanly slaughtered, by the order of Kaled. This happened on the 30th of August (634), and was the last event of the reign of Abu-Bekr, who died on that very day, at the age of nearly sixty-three years, after having appointed Omar his successor.

Omar.—The death of one caliph and the accession of another made no alteration in the plans and put no stop to the progress of the Saracens. The only change that was made was that Abu-Obeyda received the chief command of their troops, in the place of Kaled whose temper was too violent and sanguinary. This terrible but truly magnanimous warrior descended without a murmur to an inferior rank, and declared that this circumstance would by no means prevent him from making the utmost exertions for the public welfare. Such was the heroic spirit of the Arabs of that period; religious enthusiasm raised their minds above the ordinary feelings of nature, and kept them ever ready to sacrifice their private interests and personal views on the altar of patriotism. However, as Kaled possessed surprising activity and great talents for war, he continued, under Abu-Obeyda, to direct the operations of the army, and this good understanding between the two generals greatly facilitated their success.

In the mean time, the Greeks and the Syrians, roused by their extreme danger, offered in different parts of the invaded country a formidable resistance which cost the lives of many Saracens, particularly in the neighborhood of fortified places whose garrisons frequently made vigorous and successful sallies. Heraclius also was exerting himself and taking measures to preserve Syria. Having raised a numerous army, he placed it under the command of a general named Manuel, who immediately went in search of the Saracens. It did not take him long to find them; at the news of his approach, Obeyda and Kaled had assembled their forces, and stationed them on the banks of a river near the city of Zermat : there the

furious and bloody engagement took place, that almost annihilated the Roman power in those provinces. During the battle, which lasted several days, women seemed to vie with men for the prize of courage. On the first day, the Greeks animated equally by despair and by the superiority of their numbers, three times put the Saracens to flight, and three times the fugitives returned to the field, spurred on by the taunts of their wives, who were placed at the rear with the great standard of Mohammed. Not less sharp and obstinate was the fight of the following day. At last the Christians being not only attacked, but also betrayed, were entirely defeated, and lost more than a hundred thousand men, many of whom fell by the exterminating sword of the Arabs; some perished in the river, and others were taken prisoners.

Jerusalem taken by the Saracens.—The conquerors seized the occasion of improving their victory, by the pursuit of the vanquished, and by the capture of those places in Syria and Palestine that were yet subjected to the empire. Jerusalem, in particular, was the grand object of their aims. Mohammed had always professed a peculiar veneration for that holy city, and had transmitted that veneration to his followers, who ardently desired to have the town in their possession. Accordingly, only one month after the battle of Zermat, Omar sent to his generals an order to march into Palestine and attack Jerusalem. The city, though destitute of all hope of assistance from Heraclius, resisted during several months all the efforts of the enemy, but was in the end compelled to surrender. The caliph went himself from Arabia to treat of the capitulation, granted mild conditions to the inhabitants, and solemnly took possession of the town in May (A.D. 637). Aleppo, Antioch, Tyre, Cæsarea, etc., fell also about the same time under the power of the victorious Arabs, and the conquest of Syria and Palestine was completed by them in the space of six years.

The conquest of Mesopotamia cost them still less time and fatigue. One year was sufficient to subdue that country, for which the Romans and Persians had fought during many centuries. Edessa, Nisibis, and other towns, so famous in antiquity for the glory of their arms, as well as for the flourishing state of Christianity within their walls,

scarcely dared make any resistance, and submitted to the Mohammedan yoke.

All this happened during the reign of Heraclius, who was now disgracing by indolence the glory which he had formerly acquired, and who seemed to have lived merely to behold the loss of his finest provinces. He died in the year 641, the thirty-first of his reign, and sixty-seventh of his age, leaving the Greek empire in a condition nearly as deplorable as that from which he had rescued it some years before. After him, Constantine Heraclius and Heracleonas, his sons, occupied the throne ten months only, and Constant II., his grandson, who occupied it twenty-seven years, did little else than persecute the Church and tyrannize over his subjects.

CONQUESTS OF THE SARACENS IN EGYPT.—A.D. 639–644.

Sovereigns of this description were certainly incapable of checking the progress of the Saracens, whose armies had already penetrated into Egypt. The leader of their forces in that coveted country, was Amroo, a brave general, who has been already mentioned. Uniting wisdom and prudence with intrepidity, he first took different towns either by capitulation or surprise, and at length appeared in sight of the populous city of Alexandria.

Conquest of Egypt.—Like other great generals, Amroo trusted to no one but himself for the precautions and measures to be taken in war. In order then to become well acquainted with the position and strength of the town, he himself went to examine its outworks, accompanied only by a slave called Verdan and Mulisma, one of his chief officers. Having approached too near the wall, they were apprehended and brought before the governor of the place, who asked them upon what grounds the Mohammedans had come to attack Alexandria. Amroo replied that their view was, either to make the Greeks embrace the religion of Mohammed, or compel them, sword in hand, to pay an annual tribute to the caliph.

So bold an answer led the governor to believe that the man who gave it was certainly the general of the Saracen troops : "This is Amroo himself," said he to his officers ; "let him be beheaded." Verdan, who under-

stood Greek, seeing the imminent danger of his master, turned to him, and giving him a violent blow, said in an angry tone: "Why do you, who are the least of the Mussulmans, take upon yourself to answer? Let your superiors speak." Then Mulisma, raising his voice, said that the general of the Mohammedans, desirous to treat with the governor, had sent them to demand an interview; and, if the Greeks were disposed to offer or accept reasonable conditions, peace would be soon concluded.

This stratagem had the desired effect. The governor, believing now that he had been mistaken about these men, dismissed them unmolested; but, instead of the proposed interview, Amroo, on the following day, showed himself with his whole army near the walls of Alexandria, and immediately commenced the seige (A.D. 640).

Alexandria taken.—It lasted fourteen months, during which the Saracens lost twenty-three thousand men, who were slain either in different assaults, or in the frequent sallies made by the garrison. At last, they took the city by storm, and putting to the sword many of its brave defenders, drove the others into the country, whither they were pursued by Amroo. Still, many of them had time to embark in the vessels which they found in the harbor; they soon returned, re-entered the city, and slew all the Saracens whom Amroo had left there. At this melancholy news he hastened back with his troops, and finding the Greeks already in possession of the fortress, attacked them without delay, and, notwithstanding their vigorous resistance, drove them from this their last retreat. Those who escaped the destructive sword of the conquerors, reembarked with precipitancy, and abandoned to the Saracens this powerful city, which had been so long the great storehouse, as it were, of Rome and Constantinople, the honor of the empire, and the centre of commerce in the East. It lost then these noble prerogatives, and the whole province passed with it under the Mussulman sway.

The library at Alexandria destroyed.—At this time also, literature suffered an irreparable loss by the conflagration of the Alexandrian library, which contained upwards of five hundred thousand volumes. Amroo sent deputies to consult the Caliph, and to ask him what was to be done with so many books; Omar answered that, being useless if they agreed with the Koran, and dangerous if

they differed from it, in either case they were to be destroyed. The Mussulman general, who was not less moderate after victory than intrepid in battle, reluctantly, but punctually, obeyed the order: the books were distributed throughout the various quarters of the city, and served, it is said, to warm the public baths during six months.

Omar's death.—No sooner was Egypt entirely subdued, than Amroo, proceeding farther west, carried his victorious arms into Lybia, and would have made still greater progress, had not the death of Omar occasioned his return. This caliph was murdered at Medina, in 644, by a Persian slave, to whose complaints against his master he had refused to listen. Othman, another celebrated personage among the Arabs, was immediately chosen to succeed him; still, the death of Omar created deep affliction in the heart of every true Mussulman. Of all the caliphs, he is, to this day, the most revered among the Mohammedans, at least those called Sunnites (see p. 195), as having contributed most to the increase of their civil and religious power. In fact, according to an ancient historian, he conquered, within the space of ten years and a half, thirty-six thousand towns or fortresses. Syria, Mesopotamia, nearly all Persia, Egypt and Lybia, were subdued by his generals; and, what is still more surprising, these conquests were not less secure and permanent than they had been rapid and extensive, owing to the wisdom and firmness with which the caliph governed—his staff, to use the expression of the Arabs, being more respected than the sword of his successors.

This wonderful success of Omar's administration produced no change in his morals, no alteration in his manner of life, which was quite plain and even austere. Careless about his own ease, he every Friday distributed the money of the treasury to the poor, according to the wants of every individual. Historians highly praise also his love of justice, though they admit that he sometimes carried it to an excess bordering on cruelty, and that he was not always faithful to his promises.

CONQUESTS OF THE SARACENS IN PERSIA, RHODES AND OTHER COUNTRIES. — A.D. 632-656.

Othman.—Othman completed the subjugation of Persia, which had been commenced under Abu-Bekr and vigorously prosecuted under Omar. This kingdom was, in consequence of its frequent revolutions and the victories of Heraclius, nearly shorn of its strength; and Isdegerdes III., who, in 632, ascended to the throne at the age of fifteen years, was too young to defend it with success against the attacks of the Mussulmans. At the same time they invaded Syria, thirty thousand of their warriors carried the sword of destruction to the banks of the Euphrates and Tigris. They were commanded, in this first period of their progress, by Saad, one of the heroes of the Saracens, who achieved in Persia exploits equal to those of Kaled in Syria, and of Amroo in Egypt. The Persians, on their side, like the Syrians and the Greeks, roused themselves to a new exertion of that courage which they had so frequently displayed in former and better times. They made incredible efforts to avert the storm and secure their independence; nor could the Saracens truly look upon themselves as the conquerors and masters of Persia, as long as there were inhabitants to defend it against invasion.

Defeat of the Persians.—No later than the year 636, a great battle was fought near the town of Cadesia between the Mussulman troops commanded by Saad, and an army of Persians amounting to one hundred and twenty thousand men, under the command of Rostan, the bravest of their generals. This battle, which is as famous among oriental nations as that of Arbela between Alexander and Darius (B.C. 331), was continued three days, with the utmost fury on both sides. The Saracens lost nearly eight thousand, and the Persians upwards of sixty thousand men; Isdegerdes was obliged to fly to the remotest parts of his kingdom, where he hoped he would be better able to muster new forces.

The Mussulmans, before pursuing him, marched to Ctesiphon, or Modin, the capital city of Persia, and took it at the first onset. They found in it immense treasures

and effects of inestimable value, the pillage of which enriched them, and, by a necessary consequence, made them lose the noble simplicity of their ancestors. Still, their warlike and enthusiastic spirit was ever the same, as clearly appeared when Saad, a few months after the capture of Modin received from the caliph an order to go forward in pursuit of Isdegerdes. This intrepid general, with an ardor not to be surpassed, led his troops through the deserts and mountains of Persia, from one extremity to the other of this vast empire. Having overtaken the king at Gialola, in the province of Khorasan, he gained over him a second victory as bloody and decisive as that of Cadesia. The unfortunate monarch was driven entirely from his dominions, and forced to apply for refuge and assistance to the petty neighboring tribes.

Battle of Nahavend.—A third battle gave the death blow to the Persian monarchy. Rostan, summoning all who could bear arms, raised another very numerous army, with which he determined to make a last and desperate effort for the support of this tottering empire. Nooman, at that time commander of the Saracens, in the place of Saad who was engaged in subduing important provinces, did not avoid the battle. It took place near Nahavend, and was for a long time disputed with incredible animosity and valor. Nooman perished in the conflict, and the Saracens were about to abandon the field, when Hodaïfa, a brave officer, revived their courage, and rushing at their head against the enemy, so broke his ranks, and made such a slaughter, as to gain at last a decided and most signal advantage, which the Arabs call *the victory of victories.*

End of the second Persian empire.—From this time forward, the Persians did not venture to appear any more in the open field; cities everywhere opened their gates to the conquerors, a very few only having dared to make some show of resistance. It was in vain that Isdergerdes once more endeavored to retrieve his losses; his last troops were easily overthrown, and he himself, being again obliged to fly, was put to death by discontented auxiliaries. Thus ended the second Persian empire (A.D. 651), after having lasted four hundred and twenty-five years from its restoration in 226. The Arabian power was

now fully established in that kingdom, and the surviving population adopted the religion of Mohammed.

Saracen conquests.—About the same time, the Saracens made other conquests in various countries, but neither so secure nor so important. The reduction of the island of Cyprus was but temporary, it being shortly after reconquered by the Christians. Nearly the same happened in Armenia; but Nubia, in the south of Egypt, was rendered tributary, and the conquest of the island of Rhodes proved more lasting. Moaviah, a brave and skilful general, entirely subdued it in 653. The famous Colossus, or brazen statue of the sun, which the Rhodians had erected (B.C. about 300), after their deliverance from a powerful enemy (Demetrius Poliorcetes), was still lying on the ground. It was at least one hundred and five feet high, its other dimensions being in proportion; each finger was larger than a man of ordinary size; and being placed at the entrance of the harbor upon two opposite rocks which served as pedestals, ships could pass without difficulty between the feet of the statue. It was thrown down by an earthquake, after having stood fifty-six years; and it remained upon the shore for about nine centuries, when the Saracens, now masters of the island, sold the broken parts of the Colossus to a Jewish merchant, who loaded with them nine hundred camels: this supposes the whole weight to have been seven hundred and twenty thousand pounds.

DISSENSIONS AMONG THE SARACENS.—A.D. 656–668.

Ali.—The progress of the Saracens in Asia was now checked for a time by various obstacles, the greatest of which arose from among themselves. It was occasioned by the death of Caliph Othman, who, having provoked general discontent by the singularity of his deportment and his partiality for his relatives, upon whom he blindly lavished the dignities and treasures of the state, fell by the swords of assassins at the age of eighty-two years (A. D. 656). The right of succeeding him was claimed simultaneously by Ali, the son-in-law of Mohammed, and by Moaviah, the conqueror of Rhodes. A civil war ensued, which, though bloody, left the question unde-

cided; till Ali, being murdered in 661 by a certain fanatic of his own party, and his son Assan dying after the lapse of some years, Moaviah remained sole and undisputed master. He chose Damascus for his residence, and was the head of the Ommiade dynasty, which reigned over the Saracens ninety-two years.

But, although Moaviah succeeded in uniting under his sway all the parts of their empire, the hatred of the two parties did not abate: founded, not only on the difference of political pretensions, but also on the disagreement of religious doctrines, it has even continued almost to this day the cause of frequent and bloody wars between the Persians, who adhere to the sect of Ali, and the Turks, who are followers of Omar and Moaviah. The preference given to Abu-Bekr over Ali (see p. 186) is commonly assigned as the origin of this lasting animosity. According to the Persians, Ali was the lawful successor of Mohammed, and the first three caliphs were mere usurpers, as well as the Ommiades, who reigned after them to the detriment of the Fatimites, or offspring of Ali by his wife Fatima, Mohammed's daughter. The Turks, on the contrary, call themselves *Sunnites*, or orthodox, attached to the traditions of their Mohammedan ancestors, and give to the Persians the name of *Shyites*, that is to say, schismatics and sectarians.

PROSPERITY OF THE GREEK EMPIRE UNDER CONSTANTINE-POGONATUS.—A. D. 668–685.

ANOTHER great obstacle with which the Mussulmans of this period met in their career of invasion, was the superior ability of the Greek emperor, Constantine IV., or Pogonatus. No sooner had his father, Constant II., been slain by his own servants (A.D. 668), than he seized, with a resolute hand, the helm of the state. He commenced his reign by punishing the murderers of his father, and bringing to a speedy termination some dangerous revolts. Having succeeded in this, he found a still better opportunity of displaying his energy, in the defence of his capital city against the attacks of the Saracens.

Moaviah.—During seven years in succession (673–679), the numerous armies of Caliph Moaviah presented them-

selves before the walls of Constantinople, and battered them with all kinds of military engines; but they were constantly repelled, and finally obliged to retreat. Their failure was owing to their want of prudence and experience in the attack of fortified places, inasmuch as they retired every winter, and were afterwards obliged to recommence the siege as if nothing had hitherto been done; and also to the unwearied courage and activity which the emperor and his troops displayed all that time. Among the various means which they took to baffle the efforts of the enemy, none was of greater service to them than the Grecian fire, which had lately been invented by a Syrian named Callinicus. This man, having come from Heliopolis to Constantinople, carried thither the secret of that famous composition, which for many centuries rendered innumerable services to the Greeks in their different wars. It was used for the first time during this siege, and caused dreadful ravages among the Saracens. Burning even in water, and directing its blaze downwards, that terrible fire consumed both men and ships, and even iron and stones, before it could be extinguished; for which purpose they were obliged to make use of sand or vinegar.

The Mussulmans, unable to bear up against this mode of warfare, abandoned their undertaking, after it had already cost them a considerable part of their fleet and army. The remainder was not less unfortunate, when they attempted to retreat. All the vessels were, in consequence of a furious tempest, driven on shore, and wrecked against the rocks or swallowed up by the waves; while the land soldiers, worn out with fatigue and afflicted by a contagious disease, were quickly overtaken by the Greeks, and cut to pieces, to the number, it is said, of thirty thousand men. Other bodies of Mussulman troops were likewise entirely defeated by the brave Syrian inhabitants of Mount Libanus. These multiplied losses induced Moaviah to sue for peace; it was granted on condition of an annual tribute; and Pogonatus had thus the honor of compelling the most powerful prince of that time, to become a tributary of the empire.

The Bulgarians settle on the Danube.—The state was beginning to recover its ancient splendor, when the Bulgarians, a barbarous nation, until then very little

known, made settlements near Thrace on the banks of the Danube. Notwithstanding the wisdom of the measures adopted by the emperor to drive them back, his army was vanquished, and he found himself obliged to conclude a treaty, not very honorable indeed, but necessary for the well-being of his subjects. He then labored, with great zeal and success, to restore the peace of the Church, which had been considerably disturbed in the East by new heresies. This good, just and pious prince died in the eighteenth year of a reign generally prosperous and glorious (A.D. 685).

Internal trouble.—After his death, the court of Constantinople experienced, during thirty years, an almost uninterrupted series of treasons and revolutions, which it would be equally tedious and useless to relate. Civil wars were also carried on among the Saracens for the possession of the supreme power, until Abdel Malek, the fourth successor of Moaviah, by repeated victories, destroyed his competitors, overcame their partisans, and was acknowledged sole caliph in 691.

CONQUESTS OF THE SARACENS IN AFRICA.—A.D. 644–710.

This event enabled the Arabs to resume their former course of proselytism and conquest; not so much however in the eastern part of the Greek empire, where they now suffered frequent defeats, as in other countries. While some of their armies penetrated into India, others, taking the opposite direction, reached the western extremity of the African shores. Yet this did not happen till after a long struggle and repeated efforts, the subjugation of Africa having been, of all their conquests in the civilized world, the most arduous and painful. Amroo had commenced it in the year 644; a second expedition was undertaken in 647 under Abdalla, his successor in the government of Egypt. With an army of forty thousand brave warriors, he advanced as far as Tripoli, a town advantageously situated on the coast of the Mediterranean sea opposite to Sicily. For want of ships and engines of war, he could take neither that city nor another which he likewise attacked; but in the following year, he distinguished himself by a more brilliant expedition.

First conquest.—At the approach of the Mussulman troops, the Patrician Gregory, who commanded in those parts, had assembled one hundred and twenty thousand men, either Greeks or natives, and inspired them with his own ardor for the defence of the country. He attacked the Saracens near Yakoubé, and these enthusiastic adventurers, though far inferior in numbers, willingly accepted the offer of battle. Nothing indeed ever surpassed the animosity of the combatants on each side, nor was any battle ever conducted in a more singular manner. Every day, at the rising of the sun, the two armies went forth from their camps, and fought valiantly until noon; then equally exhausted by excess of heat and fatigue, they retired, as it were, by common agreement, and rested themselves to recommence the next morning.

This was done for several days in succession, without any decided advantage for either party; till at last a stratagem of the Saracens rendered them completely victorious. By the advice of Zobeir, one of their most distinguished officers, part of their troops remained in the camp, ready to march at the first signal, while the others, early in the morning, went forward against the enemy. The engagement, as usual, was terrible and obstinately disputed, Zobeir purposely prolonging the fight, in order to waste the strength of the Africans. At length the Saracens withdrew from the field, and laid aside their armor, as if to take some repose; the Africans also, worn out with fatigue and the heat of the sun, began to retreat towards their camp.

At this moment the Saracen troops in reserve mounted their horses, and, with the indefatigable Zobeir at their head, bore down upon a wearied enemy. This unexpected attack everywhere spread terror and confusion among the Africans, who fled in every direction. Gregory, having rallied some brave soldiers, endeavored, but in vain, to withstand the fury of the assailants: pierced by a pike, he died on the spot which had been the theatre of his valor. After this, the fugitives were pursued with great slaughter, and the Saracens easily subdued all the country around, and obtained an immense booty. Still, as they had themselves suffered a great loss of men and horses, they did not, at this time, proceed farther, but, after having taken the precaution to leave garrisons in the

places which they had conquered, their army returned to Egypt (A.D. 648).

Second conquest.—No other troops were directed against Africa, for the space of seventeen years, namely until 665, when a brave general, called Moaviah, like the celebrated caliph by whom he was sent, gained another victory near Tripoli; but it had no great effect upon the fate of those regions.

In 670, a more spirited and effectual effort was made by Oucba, another general full of ardor and enthusiasm, who had just received orders from the caliph to complete the subjugation of the whole coast along the Mediterranean sea. This intrepid and fanatic warrior quickly overran all that part of Africa included in his commission. Torrents of Christian blood were spilt in the places which he subdued: although, according to the rule laid down by Abu-Beker, he spared old people, women and children, and sent eighty thousand prisoners to Egypt. Not satisfied with depopulating the Roman provinces, he attacked and put to the sword the barbarians of Mount Atlas, and, having at length reached the shores of the Atlantic, he spurred on his horse into the sea, and loudly expressed his regret that this barrier should oppose his farther progress.

On his return, Oucba was guilty of great imprudence. In the mistaken belief that the country was entirely subdued, he dismissed or scattered his forces, and kept only five thousand men with him. This rashness caused his ruin. There were still many towns occupied by the Roman troops, the rapidity of Oucba's course not having permitted him to attack them, and drive them all from Africa. They assembled together with the natives, chose for their leader Kuscilé, a Moorish prince greatly renowned for his courage and prudence, and marched against Oucba before he had time to collect his own troops.

The field of Oucba.—This undaunted man did not hesitate one instant to go and fight them with a handful of soldiers; determined as he was to die rather than lose his former glory, he met the confederates half way. When, at the head of his five thousand warriors, he was in sight of that army of a hundred thousand men, he broke in pieces the scabbard of his sword; all his followers did the same, and then, with desperate fury, fell upon

the enemy, wishing only to sell their lives as dearly as possible. In fact, not one of them died until he had slain at least his first antagonist, whether Roman or Moor, and the combat lasted as long as there remained one Saracen alive. Oucba was found dead upon a heap of enemies whom his sword had despatched; and the field of battle, which is to this day called *the field of Oucba,* still bears testimony to his intrepid valor.

This loss of the Saracens prevented, for many years more, the entire reduction of Africa. A new attempt was made in 688 by Zuheir, another hero of Islamism not inferior to those already mentioned; but this undertaking, like the expedition of Oucba, although at first brilliantly successful, terminated, like the former, in the slaughter of Zuheir and all his troops.

Thus did northern Africa repeatedly baffle the measures of its invaders. But its final overthrow was now at hand. No sooner had Abdel Malek defeated his competitors and their partisans, than he directed his attention towards the achievement of this important conquest, and raised for that purpose numerous armies, the command of which he intrusted to Hassan, then governor of Egypt. This general, equal in courage, and superior in skill and prudence, to his predecessors, instead of overrunning without any fixed object, the country which he desired to conquer, marched directly to Carthage its capital, and took it by storm (A.D. 697). He left a garrison there, with every means of defence; which, however, did not prevent the Romans from reconquering the city before the end of the same year. In the ensuing year (698), Hassan, after defeating them in a naval battle, took Carthage a second time, and utterly destroyed that celebrated town, without any regard for its past glory or its prospects for the future.

Thus was the death-blow given to Christianity and civilization in Africa. There was yet, it is true, some show of resistance on the part of the remaining Romans united with the Moors; but the persevering efforts of the Saracens overcame all obstacles, and the whole region, from Egypt to the straits of Gadez or Gibraltar, was finally subdued in the year 710, the sixty-sixth after the first attempt made by Amroo. Most of the natives gradually embraced the Mohammedan religion; and north-

ern Africa soon became the chief quarter from which the Saracens issued forth to pillage the coasts of Italy and Sicily, and to invade the rich provinces of Spain.

CONQUESTS OF THE SARACENS IN SPAIN.—A.D. 711-718.

The Visigoths had possessed Spain during the space of two hundred and fifty years, when the misconduct of a prince and the treason of a subject overthrew their flourishing monarchy almost in a moment. King Roderic, shortly after his accession to the throne dishonored by his immorality the family of Count Julian, one of the most distinguished of the nation. The exasperated nobleman, in order to avenge the insult, resolved to call in the Saracens of Africa. He conducted this fatal design with all the ardor, secrecy and animosity of which the spirit of revenge is capable; and the greatest enemies of his religion and country were solicited by him to cross the straits, with assurances of powerful assistance (A.D. 711).

Battle of Xeres de la Frontera.—This proposal was readily accepted, and Musa, the Saracen governor of Africa, sent an army composed of Arabs and Moors, under the command of Tarik, one of his ablest generals. Roderic had scarcely heard of the approach of the invaders, when he beheld them at the gates of his kingdom. He summoned the strength of the nation to attend him in the field, and raised an army of a hundred thousand men, many of whom unfortunately were rather effeminate citizens than true soldiers. The Saracens had scarcely one-third of that number, but nearly all of them were old warriors, accustomed to fight, hardened against fatigues, proud of the conquest of Africa, and eager in propagating the empire of the Koran by the effusion of Christian blood.

The two armies met near Xeres in Andalusia, and being animated, one by the necessity of defending the national liberty and religion, the other by the love of glory and conquest, soon came to a furious engagement. The animosity and obstinacy of the combatants made victory for a long time doubtful; for, although the Gothic army was partly composed of a new and undisciplined militia, there was in it a sufficient number of brave sol-

diers to withstand all the efforts of the Saracens, and the king himself gave such proofs of personal bravery, as could hardly have been expected in a man of his dissolute habits. All this raised among the Goths cheerful hopes, when a sudden treason caused victory to declare for their enemies.

During the hottest part of the battle, two sons of King Vitiza whom Roderic had dethroned, joined the Arabs at the head of their followers, and attacking their countrymen in the flank, threw them into irremediable confusion. The Goths frightened by so strange an event, lost courage and fled; the king, after using his utmost exertions to rally the fugitives, was himself carried away by their force of numbers, and disappeared; nor was his fate ever perfectly ascertained. His horse having been found, with the royal crown and mantle, at a short distance from a neighboring river, it was generally supposed that the unhappy monarch had been drowned.

End of Visigoths.—This day, so fatal to his cause, was decisive in favor of the invaders, on account of the immense booty, and the great number of standards and prisoners that fell into their hands. From the slain among the conquerors, who lost sixteen thousand, may be judged the terrible slaughter of the vanquished. But the most certain as well as most important result of the battle of Xeres, was the downfall of the Gothic monarchy. The Saracens easily dispersed the remainder of its supporters, and directed their victorious course to those portions of Spain which they had not yet invaded. Musa, the African governor, arrived with new forces, and dividing them into three separate bodies, overran in a short time the whole peninsula from Gadez to the Pyrenees. The inhabitants were either put to the sword or made tributaries; the cities were destroyed, or compelled to submit to the Arabian yoke.

Asturias remains a Christian kingdom.—In the northern part of Spain however, a small number of Christians preserved their independence. Under the guidance of Pelagio and Alfonso, two generous princes of royal descent, they retired from the invaded provinces to the remote and mountainous district of Asturias, where the conquerors at first perhaps disdained, and soon after were unable to attack them with success (A.D. 718). This was

the beginning of the more recent kingdom of Spain, which gradually increased, but had to struggle for about eight hundred years, before it attained its former size, by the entire overthrow of the Arabs and Moors in the Spanish peninsula.

SARACENS DEFEATED IN THE EAST.—LEO THE ISAURIAN.—A.D. 717–730.

THE Saracens had now, in the space of ninety years, achieved as many conquests as had the ancient Romans in seven or eight centuries; but the empire of the former was not settled upon so lasting and solid a foundation as that of the latter. Even at the time which immediately followed the subjection of Spain, the Mussulmans experienced signal defeats, whereby their power and glory were greatly impaired. Having a second time attacked Constantinople, both by land and sea, they were again repulsed, with the loss of more than one hundred and twenty thousand men who perished by famine, cold, pestilence, or the sword of the enemy. Their fleet also, consisting of about eighteen hundred ships, was utterly destroyed, either by storms, or the Grecian fire. Only five ships escaped to convey to Syria the news of that frightful disaster (A.D. 718).

Leo the Isaurian.—The emperor of Constantinople at this period, was Leo the Isaurian, a prince justly renowned for his military skill, which he admirably displayed during the siege of his capital. When he had delivered the empire from its enemies, he undertook a war of a very different nature, and much more worthy of a tyrant than of a wise sovereign. Unwilling to recognize that the veneration of images is only an inferior honor referred to the person whom they represent, he published a severe edict against the use of them in churches, as if it were an idolatrous practice; and thus gave rise to the sect of Iconoclasts, or *Image-breakers.*

In obedience to the emperor's orders, the pictures and images of Christ and of his Saints were destroyed in many places, to the great scandal of the faithful, and not with-

out much blood-shed and innumerable deeds of barbarous cruelty.* One of the most shocking, was the burning of the twelve learned and virtuous librarians (whom Leo had not been able to gain over to his party), together with the public library of Constantinople (A.D. 730). This persecution was carried on with even greater violence by his successor, Constantine Copronymus, and continued to disturb both Church and State till the year 787, when, in the seventh general council† the second of Nice, the relative honor paid to images was solemnly declared to be according to apostolic tradition, and to the practice of the primitive Church; was confirmed by examples from Scriptures, and vindicated from the charge of idolatry and superstition.

SARACENS DEFEATED IN FRANCE.—CHARLES MARTEL, ETC.—A.D. 731–752.

IN the west of Europe, the Arabs and Moors, after the conquest of Spain, looked upon France with a jealous eye, and wished to bring it also under their power. The first attempts in this direction had but little success, being repeatedly defeated by the brave resistance of Eudes, Duke of Aquitania. But, in 731, a new invasion took place that threatened not only France, but likewise all Christendom. Four hundred thousand Saracens, having at their head Abderahman, a renowned general, crossed the Pyrenees, and driving everything before them, filled whole provinces with terror and desolation. Their march everywhere exhibited one continued scene of conflagration, plunder, and bloodshed. Those who had the good fortune to escape the exterminating sword of the enemy, were seen flying in all directions. Eudes, who attempted to check the career of the Saracens, was defeated, and forced to abandon his dukedom to the victorious barbarians.

---

* *See* Theophanes' *Chronography* p. 339;—Anastasius, *in Pap. Gregor.* II.;—Fleury, *Hist. Eccles. b.* 42, *n.* 5,—Lebeau, *Hist. du Bas. Emp. b.* 63, *n.* 50, *etc. vol.* 13, p. 357–363.

† The fifth general council had been held under Justinian in 553, and the sixth, under Constantine Pogonatus in 680 (both at Constantinople); for the purpose of condemning pernicious writings and doctrines connected with the Nestorian and Eutychian heresies.

The Saracens advance to the Loire.—They then advanced without obstacle as far as the river Loire, into the very heart of France, constantly marking their passage with the most frightful ravages. The French monarchy seemed to be on the brink of ruin; every day added to its dangers; but fortunately, it possessed at that time, in the person of Duke Charles Martel the greatest general of Christendom. This hero, who had been hitherto engaged in subduing the restless tribes of Germany, was no sooner informed of the progress of the Saracens, than he marched from the north with a choice body of thirty thousand warriors, and meeting the enemy between the cities of Poitiers and Tours, soon stopped them in their triumphant and destructive course.

Battle of Tours and Poitiers.—Seven days were spent on each side in preparing for a general engagement. On the eighth day, the French, animated by the presence of their invincible leader, briskly charged the barbarians, and began to pierce the thickest battalions by the tremendous blows of their sabres and battle-axes. The Saracens sustained the attack with equal courage, and, though numbers of them fell dead, still vigorously resisted, by constantly opposing fresh troops to the impetuosity of the assailants. The battle was fought in this manner for several hours, during which the Mussulman army was mowed down with uninterrupted and frightful slaughter. Towards the close of the day, Abderahman fell among the dead. Night separated the combatants, who retired to their respective camps, but with very different feelings—the French with the consciousness of their advantage, the Arabs in deep consternation. These fierce invaders a short time before so proud of past success, but now reduced to a small number, and sensible of their immense loss, availed themselves of the darkness to effect their retreat, and precipitately retraced their steps towards the Pyrenees.

So great was the number of the Saracens who fell in the battle, that, according to many historians, it exceeded three hundred thousand, whereas the loss of the French scarcely amounted to fifteen hundred men. Hence the defeat of the former is considered by all as one of the most signal that ever happened, and the victory of the latter as one of the most complete, important and decisive

ever gained, as it was thought to have saved, not only France, but all Europe from the yoke of barbarism and infidelity. It is also commonly believed that this was the day on which Charles acquired the surname of Martel (hammer), because, like a hammer, he had broken to pieces the weapons and crushed the power of the Saracens (A.D. 732).

This great man continued to conquer all his enemies, and to govern France, as he had done before, with sovereign authority under the title of duke. There still existed kings and princes of the family of Clovis; but they were generally weak and indolent, abandoning the cares of government to their prime-ministers.

Pepin the Short.—Pepin *the Short*, who, in 741, inherited the power and great qualities of his father Charles, thought of taking the last step towards the throne. Many existing circumstances seemed to favor the execution of his project; on one hand the mode of succession of the last kings, which had bordered on the elective, and the inability of the present sovereign, Childeric III., contrasted with his own transcendent merit; and on the other the wishes of the French people, and the favorable though very prudent answer of Pope Zachary, who was consulted on the subject, emboldened him to prosecute his design.*

The Carolingians ascend the throne of France.—Pepin therefore resolved upon this step, and was proclaimed king in a general assembly of the nation (A.D. 752); Childeric having been in the mean time removed to a monastery, where he died three years after. In this prince ended the dynasty of the Merovingian sovereigns, after having occupied the French throne about three hundred years, during which it produced but few good and great monarchs. Dissensions and civil wars first weakened its power; long-continued indolence and incapacity completed its downfall.

PEPIN, KING OF FRANCE.—A.D. 752–768.

PEPIN showed himself every way worthy of the high station to which he was now raised. He not only main-

* See note F.

tained profound tranquillity in his kingdom, but extended its limits, and, from the very beginning of his reign, distinguished himself by a brilliant expedition equally important in itself and in its consequences.

Pepin called by the Pope against the Lombards. —By this time, the Lombards, already masters of a great part of Italy, aimed at subduing the whole, and indeed conquered the province of Ravenna, which, under the name of Exarchate, had until then belonged to the emperors of Constantinople. Rome itself being on the point of falling into their power, Pope Stephen sent to implore help from Constantine Copronymus, in whose name the government of Rome was still administered. But that emperor was too deeply engaged in warring against the images of the saints, to think of sending troops against the Lombards. In this extremity the Romans embraced the last resource which was left them, that of calling the valiant monarch of the French to their assistance.

The pope went in person to France, where he was received with all possible honor and respect, and found the king and his lords ready to undertake the defence of Rome against its obstinate enemies. But before any act of hostility, and in order to prevent the effusion of Christian blood, deputies were sent, at the pope's request, to Astolphus, king of the Lombards, strongly to exhort him to do justice, and renounce his ambitious views. The fierce Lombard answered the proposal with threats and insults. Pepin then marched with his troops into Italy, and forcing the passage of the Aips, defeated the Lombards, and obliged Astolphus to shut himself up in Pavia, his capital, where, after a short siege, the vanquished prince consented to accept the terms of peace offered by the conqueror. With the most solemn promises he agreed to restore the towns which he had taken, and to put everything in the same state as before the war. Pepin, relying on his word, contrary to the advice of the pope who knew the character of Astolphus better, returned to France.

Scarcely had he departed, when the perfidious Lombard recommenced hostilities, and laid siege to Rome, around which he renewed all the ravages of the late war; Stephen had recourse again to his royal protector, and Pepin again

hastened across the Alps into Lombardy. His march was rapid and successful. Astolphus dared not face him in the field, postponed no longer the execution of the stipulated treaty, and was moreover condemned to bear the expenses of the war.

At this juncture, two ambassadors arrived from Constantinople, to claim for the emperor the restitution of the cities and provinces which had been usurped by the Lombards. Pepin answered, with a firm tone, that these countries being now his conquest as justly as any one obtained in a lawful war, it was quite surprising that the Greeks should claim for themselves the fruit of his labors and the possession of lands and places which they had been neither willing to defend nor able to preserve: accordingly, as it was not for their master that he and his troops had undergone so many fatigues, it was not to him that he would resign what he had so justly acquired.

Foundation of the temporal power of the Popes.—The French king intended to make a donation of his conquests in Italy to Pope Stephen and his successors in the pontifical chair. After the Greek deputies had retired, he carried out his resolution by a solemn grant to the see of Rome of that part of Italy which is, on this account, called the *Ecclesiastical State*, and until recently composed the temporal dominions of the popes. Before that time they had been subject in civil matters to the Roman or Greek emperors: but, when the Roman empire no longer comprised the whole of Christendom; when, after its downfall in the West, there sprang up from its ruins innumerable states and kingdoms, whose pretensions, views and interests were different, nay, commonly opposite it was the kind design and will of Divine providence that the popes should become totally independent of the power and influence of any secular prince. This independence they obtained through the instrumentality of Pepin and his successor Charlemagne, who conferred on the popes such an extent of temporal power as might enable them freely to exercise their spiritual authority.*

The middle of the eighth century seemed destined to witness great changes in every part of the world. For,

---

* See Note G.

at that period, the Ommiades who had held the Mussulman sceptre for about a hundred years, were, after a bloody struggle, deprived of their ascendancy by the Abassides, another powerful family among the Arabs. Abul-Abbas was the first caliph of this new dynasty. His successor, Almanzor, built on the left bank of the Tigris the splendid city of Bagdad, which he made his residence; and this city became, under the Abassides, what Damascus had been under the Ommiades, and Medina under the first successors of Mohammed.

The Caliphat of Cordova founded.—At the same time Abderahman, one of the Ommiades, having escaped the ruin of his family, fled from Asia to Spain, where he found the power of the Saracens much weakened by their late defeats in France, by the progress of the Christians in Asturias, and by their own dissensions and feuds. Putting himself at the head of one of the contending parties, he overcame the others, and founded a kingdom free from all allegiance to the caliphs of Bagdad. Cordova was the capital of this new empire.

Pepin's death.—The defeats just mentioned, of the Saracens in France, had been achieved by King Pepin. This warlike monarch drove them entirely beyond the Pyrenees, added Aquitania to his dominions, and moreover by his activity and constant vigilance, made his arms equally formidable to the various nations of Germany. Broken down by the hardships of so many campaigns, rather than by old age, he died in the fifty-fourth year of his life, the seventeenth year of his reign, and the twenty-seventh of his political and public career (A.D. 768).

Pepin's character.—Valor, prudence, all the endowments of a noble mind and a generous soul, though somewhat tinged with ambition, contributed to make Pepin a most accomplished monarch. He possessed a surprising talent for winning esteem, respect and affection. Although his birth did not call him to the throne, he ascended it with general applause, and, from the beginning so well established his authority, that no mention is made of the least rebellion during his reign. Prudence was his predominant quality, and the greatest praise that could, in after ages, be bestowed on a prince, was to say of him: "He is as prudent as Pepin." In a word,

being the son of one hero and the father of another, he appeared worthy of both, and historians observe that everything was remarkable in him, except his size, from which he derived the surname of *Short*.

But even that, although for many persons an object of raillery, became for Pepin an occasion of glory. On a certain day, as he was witnessing the combat of a bull and a lion exhibited for the amusement of the court, he turned to his attendants, and asked which of them felt bold enough to separate those furious beasts. Not one dared make the attempt. "Mine then shall be the task," replied Pepin; and leaping into the circus, he went to the lion which he killed by a single blow of his scimitar, and with another stroke cut off the head of the bull. All extolled his bravery, and acknowledged the impropriety of their railleries.

CHARLEMAGNE, KING OF FRANCE AND LOMBARDY.—A.D. 768-800.

It would have been no small honor for the successor of Pepin to follow in the footsteps of this great prince. Charles, his eldest son, did more than this; he surpassed him, and by the invincible firmness of his mind, the superiority of his genius, and the incredible number of his exploits, raised the French monarchy to the highest degree of splendor that it ever attained.

In brief, a continual series of victories gained over the Saxons, the Lombards, the Saracens, the Greeks, the Avari, and other nations; the conquest of Saxony, Bavaria, Noricum, Austria, Pannonia, Bohemia, and of a considerable part of Italy and Spain; the diligent and wise administration of his extensive dominions, during a great number of years; the civilization of Germany; the revival of sciences and literature; the re-establishment of the western empire, with all its prerogatives, in favor of the French monarch and of his successors: such are the splendid characteristics with which the reign of Charlemagne presents itself to the admiration of posterity.

Destruction of the Lombard Kingdom.—He began by chastising the Aquitanians now armed against him, and the Saxons who, at the other extremity of his king-

dom, had made inroads upon his territory. After this double campaign, he was called into Italy for a still more glorious and useful expedition against Desiderius, king of the Lombards, who obstinately refused to abide by the treaty concluded by his predecessor Astolphus with Pepin. That restless and ambitious prince was even threatening the city of Rome, nor could the favorable conditions which were offered him, prevail upon him to give satisfaction.

Charles therefore resolved, at the entreaties of the Romans, to afford them speedy relief, and rescue them from their foe by measures more vigorous and efficacious than mere exhortations. After the example of his father, in like circumstances, he crossed the Alps at the head of a gallant army, put the Lombards to flight, and in a few weeks rendered himself master of almost all the country which they possessed between the Po and the mountains. Still, Pavia, their capital, where Desiderius had finally taken refuge, resisted for six months; during that time Charles, while the siege was continued by his troops, went to Rome, and visited Pope Adrian I., a pontiff equally conspicuous for his ability and virtue.

The pope received his royal guest with great joy and extraordinary honors, and Charles in return manifested his respectful attachment to the Apostolic See, by ratifying and augmenting the donation which Pepin had made in its favor. Upon his return to the camp before Pavia, King Desiderius surrendered at discretion. Charles spared his life, but sent him to a distant monastery, and, by being crowned and acknowledged in his place, annihilated the separate kingdom of Lombardy, which had lasted two hundred and six years (A.D. 774).

Scarcely was this important conquest achieved, when he was earnestly begged to pass over to Spain, for the purpose of rescuing some Moorish princes, his allies or tributaries, from their oppressors of the same nation. Complying with the request, he subdued the north of the Spanish peninsula with as much facility as he had subdued the north of Italy, and with a very trifling loss. But, as he was leading back his victorious troops to France, being himself at the head of the vanguard, the rear was defeated by the Gascons in the defiles of the

Pyrenees (A.D. 778). This however neither impaired his personal reputation, nor made him lose the fruit of his campaign.

War with the Saxons.—Immediately after his return, Charles had to renew the war against the Saxons. This warlike and savage people, though conquered many times before, did not cease, by their yearly revolts, to trouble the French monarch. On the return of almost every spring, they signalized their ferocious courage by laying waste the countries situated between the Rhine and the Weser. As often indeed as they took up arms, Charlemagne forced them to submit, and to implore his mercy; but he had, among their chiefs, an implacable enemy, whom nothing could subdue. Always at the head of the rebels, this fierce warrior, when defeated, disappeared for a time, and, like another Arminius, returned to renew the attack as soon as he perceived in the attempt a gleam of success.

Witikind was the name of this undaunted Saxon. He spent the time during the absence of Charles, in urging his countrymen to take up arms again; and they, readily complying with the summons, overthrew all the monuments of religion and foreign power which existed in that part of Germany. Some French troops having endeavored to suppress the rebellion were themselves, through the misunderstanding of their generals, defeated and cut to pieces.

Charlemagne, little accustomed to receive such news, was much afflicted at this event, and lost no time in repairing, or at least in checking the evil. He marched in person at the head of a new army, and suddenly appearing among the Saxons, again forced them to submission. They came to him in great fear, and humbly sued for pardon, ascribing the guilt of the late revolt to Witikind who had now taken refuge among the Danes. But Charles, as dissatisfied with this excuse as he was exasperated at their continual acts of rebellion, and not believing it possible to tame their ferocious spirit otherwise than by exercising severe justice, required the other chief rebels to be immediately delivered into his hands, and sentenced them to be beheaded on the same day, to the number, it is said, of four thousand five hundred.

He had intended, by this rigorous chastisement, to

inspire the whole nation with a salutary and lasting fear; but the deep mourning which it first occasioned, was quickly turned into fresh and ungovernable animosity. Witikind once more re-appeared, and going through the different parts of the country, infused into every breast his own fury and desire of revenge. Fury, however, was of little avail against the warlike genius and activity of the French monarch. He attacked them before they could muster all their forces, defeated them in three bloody battles, and did not cease during three years to visit with a terrible retribution every quarter of that unhappy region.

Still, Charles ardently desired the end of a war which proved so destructive and fatal to his subjects, as well as to his enemies. Resuming therefore his former course of moderate measures, more conformable to his character than harsh methods, he undertook to gain by mildness the very men whom the utmost severity and the most terrible disasters could scarcely subdue. Through his deputies, he represented to the Saxon leaders how many calamities they had brought upon their countrymen and upon themselves, and promised them not only entire safety, but even great honors, if they would lay down their arms.

Witikind converted to Christianity.—At first, Witikind and Abbon, another renowned chieftain, could hardly believe that the king was sincere in offering them such favorable conditions; but being at last induced to rely on his word, they went boldly to meet him. Charles received them with so much kindness, and treated them with such generosity, that they did not hesitate any longer to swear inviolable fidelity to so great a prince, and asked to be instructed in the Christian religion, which they sincerely embraced (A.D. 785). This step was followed by the entire reduction of Saxony. Partial revolts, it is true, continued to exercise for some years the activity of Charlemagne; but these were much more easily checked than the former; and, in order to prevent their revival in future, thirty thousand Saxon families were transported from the north of Germany to other parts of the French empire. At length, after an obstinate struggle of thirty years, this extensive country was entirely subdued, and being now reckoned among the

dominions of the French king, consented to receive the two-fold benefit of civilization and Christianity.

Charlemagne's conquests.—But new wars were threatening in other quarters. The conquests made by the French having awakened the fears and jealousy of the neighboring nations, their sovereigns formed for their mutual support a powerful league, which, however, only afforded Charlemagne an occasion to gain new laurels and to enlarge his empire. All his enemies fell into the very snare they had prepared for him. He subdued the Bavarians, conquered the Greeks, carried his victorious arms into Pannonia, and defeated the Avari so often and with so great a loss on their part that this nation disappeared from the earth and left in his power both their settlements along the Danube and the prodigious wealth which they had acquired within the last two centuries by the pillage of the Greek provinces (A.D. 796).

Charlemagne's wise policy.—When Charlemagne had obtained, by so much labor, a state of comparative tranquillity, he applied himself more than ever to make religion justice, agriculture and commerce flourish throughout his vast empire. These great and useful objects he always kept in view, even when engaged in his many wars; but more particularly when his sons and generals became capable of filling his place at the head of armies. The internal government of the state was then his chief employment. His wisdom in enacting the most suitable laws and his firmness in enforcing them, enabled him to restore order wherever it had been disturbed, and to repress grievous abuses which had arisen before the reign of his father Pepin.

One of the principal means that he employed for the attainment of these important objects, was to commission regularly every year, persons of integrity, wisdom and experience, vested with ample powers, to visit the several parts of his extensive monarchy, to inquire into the conduct of public officers, remove iniquitous judges, redress grievances, and repress disorder and crime. It was the duty of these royal commissioners, to free the provinces which they visited from robbers and other malefactors, to protect the weak and innocent, in a word, to provide for all the subjects of the empire the benefits of a wise, firm and moderate government. Affairs involving difficulties and re-

quiring a protracted examination, were referred to the superior authority of the king. It was principally in the general assemblies which, by his orders, annually met in his presence, that Charlemagne instituted a strict inquiry into the wants, and applied the best remedies to the evils of the state. Here, surrounded by his counsellors and the representatives of the nation, he discussed with them the most important affairs, adopted the measures for the preservation of public tranquillity, and enacted those celebrated statutes known under the name of *Capitulars*, which constitute the most valuable part of the ancient legislation of the Franks.

Alcuin.—Charlemagne undertook likewise to raise literature and science from the low state to which the invasion of northern barbarians had reduced them during the last centuries. Accordingly, he invited men of great erudition from foreign states to his court, and with their help established, in the principal towns of France and Germany, public schools for the purpose of promoting the study of every branch of true and useful knowledge. The most celebrated among them was Alcuin, a learned and virtuous Englishman, whom the French monarch loaded with honors and blessings. This prince appointed him to open a great school in his own palace, and to deliver lectures, at which he himself was usually present with his sons and other personages of his court. By these noble exertions, he made the desire of instruction almost universal among his subjects. Various establishments arose, especially in great cities, for the revival of science, and historians note particularly a sort of academy, or society of learned men, who had frequent debates or kept up an animated correspondence on scientific and literary subjects, the king himself being one of its most distinguished members.

Extent of Charlemagne's Empire.—Charlemagne was now at the height of his glory, and the celebrity of his name had reached the most distant parts of the civilized world. The kings of the English Heptarchy solicited his friendship; the Saracens of Spain dreaded his arms; Irene, the empress of Constantinople, entered into a treaty of alliance with him; and the celebrated Caliph Haroun-Al-Rashid, the greatest monarch of the East, and, like Charles himself, a zealous protector of learning and learned men, sent ambassadors to him from Bagdad, with splendid

gifts, among which were the keys of the city of Jerusalem a repeating clock, and an elephant (the first that had been seen in France): in a word, the whole earth admired his wisdom and respected his power. By the vigor and success of his military exertions, he had become master of a greater extent of country than any prince had possessed in Europe since the fall of the western empire: all the territory that composes modern France; Spain, from the Pyrenees to the Ebro; the greater part of Italy; Tyrol; Pannonia; Noricum or Austria; Helvetia or Switzerland; Bavaria; Saxony, as far as the Elbe; Frisia and Holland were subject to that mighty monarch. Nothing was wanting to his earthly grandeur but the imperial diadem; and even that was bestowed upon him about this time, in the most flattering manner.

Charlemagne crowned by the Pope as Emperor.—Just at the end of the eighth century, he had repaired to Rome for the purpose of defending Pope Leo III. against wicked and unjust persecutors. In return for this and other benefits, the Romans agreed to proclaim Charlemagne emperor of the West. Accordingly, as he was assisting at the divine office in St. Peter's church on Christmas day, the pope approached, and, in presence of a great number of bishops and lords and an immense crowd of people, placed on his head the imperial crown which had been purposely prepared, all present crying out together, three times, in transports of joy; "Life and victory to Charles, most pious, the great and pacific emperor of the Romans;" (A.D. 800).

Thus was the Roman empire, three hundred and twenty-four years after its extinction in the West, revived in favor of a monarch truly deserving, by his piety, valor and heroic actions, to be the successor of Theodosius and Constantine. The singular modesty which he evinced on that occasion, made him appear still more worthy of the extraordinary honors he then received. We learn from Eginhard, his secretary, that he was totally unacquainted with the design of the pope and of the Romans. In returning from the divine service, he declared that, had he known what was to take place, he would have abstained from going to church on that day, notwithstanding the solemnity of the festival.

From this time forward, Charlemagne joined the title

of Roman emperor with that of king of France and Lombardy. During the stay which he made in Rome after the ceremony of his coronation, his extraordinary munificence and generosity gained him more and more the hearts of the people. Even the court of Constantinople acquiesced at last in acknowledging him as emperor of the West, though with great repugnance, but the consent was necessary, and the refusal would have been useless, and perhaps dangerous.

REMARKS ON THE STATE OF CIVILIZATION, LEARNING AND PARTICULARLY RELIGION,

DURING THE THIRD PART OF MODERN HISTORY.

No one well acquainted with the history of remote ages, can forbear noticing that contagious distempers, famine, and other similar visitations were then much more common than they are at present. This difference may be ascribed in some measure, to the want of experience in those times, or to a great deficiency in the use of necessary precautions with regard to the cleanliness of cities and towns, streets, houses, dress and so forth. Still, it would be neither just nor accurate to acknowledge no other causes than these, of the calamities which befell men during the period in question, and thence conclude a total absence of foresight or of industry; for, very frequently also, they originated in earthquakes, inundations, excessive heat or extreme cold, and other natural effects which could not be either foreseen or prevented. Merely to add one instance more to the facts already mentioned (see reign of Justin I., of Mauritius, etc.): we learn from the Byzantine historians, that in the year 763, the Euxine or Black Sea (which now shows almost no ice even in the dead of winter), was frozen, throughout a considerable part of its extent and during the space of four months, to the depth of forty-five feet, with thirty feet of snow on the surface; in the following summer, a multitude of springs and rivers were dried up by the excess and duration of the heat.*

* See Cedrenus, Zonaras, Nicephorus and especially Theophanes, a contemporary author; apud Lebeau, *vol.* XIII, *pp.* 473–475.—See also A. M. SS. C. G. *Histoire du Bas-Empire*, *vol.*, I *p.* 273;—Lenglet-Dufresnoy, *Tablettes Chronologiques*, *ad ann.* 763 ; etc.

A more general and more lasting calamity was that occasioned by the settlement of the barbarian tribes in the civilized world. Their successive invasions and incessant warfare necessarily produced great confusion in the laws, customs and manners of the countries which they occupied. It was only by repeated exertions, and after a lapse of many years, that these new states were enabled distinctly to establish their respective constitutions and national character. Languages too, by the continual intercourse of the conquerors and the vanquished, became singular medleys of Latin and Celtic or Gothic words, which happening to undergo, during the course of ages, various alterations or improvements peculiar to each clime and country, gave rise to the principal tongues of Europe, as they now exist.

Discoveries in art and science.—One of the most pernicious effects of the invasion of the barbarians, was the rapid decline of literature, arts and sciences, wherever those wild conquerors passed or settled. Owing to their almost exclusive relish for war and plunder, literary and scientific monuments disappeared from innumerable places, and in the very regions where formerly belles-lettres had been most flourishing, ignorance began to prevail, not however to such an extent as is commonly imagined. Even at the epoch which preceded the revival of learning under Charlemagne, there always remained much of useful knowledge. The vast store of erudition possessed by a Venerable Bede, an Alcuin, a Deacon Paul, etc. ; the numerous and eminent scholars that went forth from Ireland, England, Italy, etc., are sufficient vouchers of this truth. Nay, discoveries were made in those times of confusion, which would have done honor to conspicuous and enlightened ages; among others, the invention and application of water-mills, in the year 555; of glass windows for churches, about the same time; silk manufactures, in 551; bells in churches, towards 605; organs, in 660; the Grecian fire, in 673; computation of years from the birth of Christ, first proposed by Dionysius Exiguus, a learned monk of the sixth century and adopted in 742.

Religion.—Religion was the chief, or rather the only means which stemmed this torrent of barbarism, and not only saved letters and learning from universal shipwreck, but also caused the wild tribes, whose destructive invasion

had been so detrimental to them, gradually to imbibe and adopt the principles of civil and social life. It was not to be expected that the Goths, Franks, Lombards, Saxons, and Germans would ever receive those principles from studies which they heartily despised: Christianity alone could, and really did rescue them from their ignorance and barbarity. As it was already established in the provinces that fell under their power, these savage tribes, whose habits of plunder and revenge could not be checked by force of arms, sooner or later yielded to the mild precepts of the gospel. Their minds and hearts became attached to a religion which did not teach them only by speculative maxims and didactic precepts, but also by examples, festivals and rites equally moving and instructive.

No sooner had they received and embraced the faith of Christ, than they began to lay aside the rudeness of their manners, and to establish among themselves a more adequate distribution of justice. By the enforcement of the divine law concerning the indissolubility of marriage, there resulted an immense benefit for the community at large, as well as for individuals and families. Outrageous acts, which idolatrous nations had considered mere trifles, were now gradually suppressed. A stronger barrier was opposed to human passions, morals became more pure, nobler feelings animated mankind, milder customs were introduced; and these salutary effects were invariably in proportion to the degree of influence which religion acquired over the minds of her new followers.

"The influence of Christianity," says the learned Chancellor Kent, "was very efficient towards the introduction of a better and more enlightened sense of right and justice among the governments of Europe. It taught the duty of benevolence to strangers, of humanity to the vanquished, of the obligation of good faith, and the enormity of the sin of murder, revenge and rapacity. The history of Europe during the early periods of modern history, abounds with interesting and strong cases, to show the authority of the Church over turbulent princes and fierce warriors, and the effects of that authority in meliorating manners, checking violence, and introducing a system of morals which inculcated peace, moderation and justice."*

---

* *Commentaries on law, vol.* I, *p.* 10.

The Power of the Church of Rome.—Bishops, priests and monks, afterwards so much calumniated by an ungrateful posterity, were the active instruments employed by Divine Providence to forward these various improvements in their respective countries. It was from episcopal houses and monasteries that crowds of holy missionaries went forth to instruct, convert and civilize the fierce barbarians of the north. Moreover, the superiors of clerical and monastic bodies were frequently invested by Christian kings and emperors with civil jurisdiction, and as it was exercised by them in a more equitable manner than by secular magistrates, men quickly learned to prefer their decisions to the hasty judgments of warlike and ignorant nobles. This accounts for the great portion of temporal authority which bishops and abbots possessed in those remote ages, and which they used in checking the arbitrary exactions of the nobles, and rendering as much as possible the various classes of the people partakers of the general advantages of society.

The zeal of the clergy and monks, preserved also not only the sacred science of religion, but likewise all the different branches of useful learning. They were careful and active in discovering and collecting the remains of ancient literature, and many persons among them daily allotted a considerable portion of their time to the humble but useful occupation of transcribing old manuscripts. Others, more fit for manual labor, actively employed themselves in clearing forests, draining marshes and fertilizing barren lands. Every obstacle presented by nature or the soil, was overcome by their unwearied exertions, and plentiful crops arose where before naught was seen but reeds or briers. Thus, while the lay proprietors reigned in solitary grandeur over their wide and unfruitful domains, the lands originally bestowed on the monks and clergy by the gratitude, confidence and piety of their contemporaries, were cultivated and improved; their houses were asylums constantly opened to the poor, the infirm and the traveller; their villages were crowded with inhabitants, and the foundations were laid of several among the principal cities in England, Germany, etc.*

---

* See Lingard, *Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church, ch.* 3, 4 *and* 10; —Bergier, *Dictionnaire de théologie, art. Moines, Monastéres, etc.*

Still greater and more important than these, were the benefits conferred by the Sovereign Pontiffs upon Europe at large, and all Christendom. This will be the subject of a separate dissertation on the popes of the middle ages.

PART IV.

FROM THE REVIVAL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE (A.D. 800), TO THE BEGINNING OF THE CRUSADES (A.D. 1095).

CHARLEMAGNE, EMPEROR.—A.D. 800-814.

CHARLEMAGNE signalized the beginning of his reign as emperor, by redoubling his zeal for the happiness of his people. Still more than ever did he watch over the different parts of his vast monarchy, to procure in all a speedy redress of grievances and an exact administration of justice. As to the command of armies, he now left it to his lieutenants and his sons, whom he had so well trained in military science, that victory followed their standards on almost every occasion, whether in Italy, Germany or Spain. The Moors or Saracens experienced by new defeats the superiority of French discipline and courage; Bohemia and the coasts of Venetia were added to the empire; the north-eastern frontier was extended to the shores of the Baltic, and the Danes were taught to confine themselves to their isles and their peninsula of Jutland.

Charlemagne's death.—These new and brilliant conquests were owing chiefly to the abilities of Charles and Pepin, the two eldest sons of Charlemagne. With delight he looked upon these young heroes as the supporters of his empire and his future successors; but he had the misfortune to see both of them die in the flower of their age and in the midst of their triumphs. Not permitting however the sensibility of the man and the grief of the father to prevail over the duty and firmness of the monarch, he did not abandon or neglect the cares of government, and seemed rather to be more active in improving all the good he had already done, the nearer he approached the end of his long and glorious career. Finally, after having filled the world with the renown of his genius, conquests and legislation; after having rendered invaluable services

EUROPE
IN THE TIME OF
CHARLES THE GREAT
814.
Roman Empire of the East
Roman Empire of the West and its dependent States
Western Caliphate
Eastern Caliphate
ORKNEY IS.
SHETLAND IS.
THE HEBRIDES
IONA
Northmen
Swedes
FINNS
Novgorod
Lindisfarne
Tees R.
Whitby
York
Humber R.
Danes
Saxons
Hamburg
Paderborn
New Corbey
Canterbury
London
Rhine R.
AACHEN (Aix-la-Chapelle)
AUSTRASIA
NEUSTRIA
Paris
Verdun
Frankfurt
BOHEMIA
Chalons
Tours
St. Gall
Geneva
Lyons
BAVARIA
AQUITANIA
Milan
Venice
Avars
Kief
Dnieper R.
GASCONY
Pass of Roncevalles
Ravenna
Arles
Spalato
Danube R.
Cherson
CANTABRIA
SPANISH MARCH
Saragossa
Valencia
EMIRATE OF CORDOVA
Lisbon
Tagus R.
Toledo
Seville
CORDOVA
Granada
Guadiana R.
Guadalquivir R.
Xeres
Cadiz
Ceuta
Strait of Gibraltar
Tangier
MOROCCO
BALEARIC IS.
CORSICA
SARDINIA
ROME
M. CASSINO
Naples
Salerno
Amalfi
Otranto
Sophia
Philippopolis
Hadrianople
Thessalonica
CONSTANTINOPLE
Nicomedia
BITHYNIA
Angora
Trapezus (Trebizond)
Araxes R.
Nicæa
Dorylæum
PHRYGIA
Philadelphia
Iconium
Edessa
Nineveh
Tigris
MESOPOTAMIA
Palermo
SICILY
Carthage
Tunis
Syracuse
Kairouan
MALTA
Athens
Antioch
Aleppo
RHODES
CYPRUS
CRETE
Berytus
Sidon
Tyre
Damascus
Ptolemais (Acre)
Tiberias
Nazareth
Jaffa
Jerusalem
Ascalon
Cæsarea
Gazza
Pelusium
Alexandria
Tripoli
CALIPHATE OF BAGDAD
BAGDAD
Ctesiphon
Cufa
Euphrates
Medina
Mecca

to religion as well as to social order, and given innumerable examples of Christian piety, he died at Aix-la-Chapelle, on the 28th of January of the year 814, the seventy-second of his life, the forty-seventh of his reign as king, and the fourteenth of his reign as emperor.

His character.—Never was there a monarch greater than *Charlemagne,* perhaps his equal never existed, the epithet *great* being in the judgment and language of posterity, so strictly due to him, that it constitutes a part of his name.* He had a mind which wonderfully fitted him to rule over the most extensive monarchy. Vast in his designs and quick in their execution, going incessantly from one province to another wherever his presence might be required, from Italy to France, and from the Pyrenees to the shores of the German Ocean, he possessed in an extraordinary degree the uncommon talent of performing the greatest things with promptness and the most difficult with facility. His laws and statutes commonly known under the name of *capitularies,* everywhere display a wonderful sagacity, anticipating everything in point of duty and morality, and by a secret persuasive influence leading successfully to the preservation of good order. All the parts of the empire were closely united by his mighty genius. He established such an equilibrium among the orders of the state, that they counterbalanced one another, and were constantly kept under his control; his own children, two of whom were decorated with the title of king, being his first subjects, the instruments of his authority, and perfect models of obedience. In fine, he always showed himself deeply convinced of the obligation which is incumbent on every sovereign to render equal and prompt justice to his subjects. Besides the ordinary judicial tribunals established in every part of his kingdom, he maintained one constantly, even in his own palace; he wished his attendants to wake him at any hour of the night, to hear the complaints of injured persons, and receive the petitions of such as appealed to him from inferior courts of justice. Even his time of dressing was not lost; he spent it in listening to the different arguments the parties could adduce in their

* The word *Charlemagne* is composed of *Charles* and *magne,* in Latin *magnus* which signifies *great.*

favor. Of the numbers that applied to him, none could ever complain of having been unreasonably denied an audience or put off to another day—none could remark any alteration in his countenance, or perceive any uneasiness in his gestures, which might indicate impatience and weariness; so that Charlemagne, in this respect, as in others, can be justly held up as an excellent model not only to sovereigns, but likewise to judges, governors and magistrates, in a word, to all those who have any share in the exercise of the sovereign authority.

Not less just than powerful, Charlemagne never provoked the barbarian tribes that bordered on his frontiers; but none of them ever attacked him with impunity. Never defeated, when commanding in person he conquered or checked all his enemies, and by the celerity and precision of his movements, frequently baffled their wisest measures and their plans of confederacy, before they could suspect that he was marching against them at the head of his armies.

His learning.—This wonderful sovereign and mighty conqueror was also one of the most learned men of his age. Arithmetic, astronomy, rhetoric, logic, even biblical criticism and theology, were sciences familiar to him. Besides Tudesque, his native tongue, he knew Greek and Latin well; and being naturally possessed of great eloquence, he could speak, though unprepared, with much grace and facility on almost every subject.*

Nor were his moral and Christian qualities inferior to his military, political and literary acquirements. Except perhaps in the earlier part of his life, in which his private conduct does not seem to have been altogether blameless,

---

* What we here say of the eloquence and learning of Charlemagne, is founded on the unanimous testimony of his biographers and historians, and is consequently of unquestionable authority. Some modern writers, however, would fain make us believe, from a certain passage of Eginhard, his chief secretary, that he did not know how to write.—But Eginhard does not say this exactly, he merely states that Charlemagne made little progress in the art of writing, for want of early study and practice: moreover, we learn from other sources, that this prince revised several manuscripts and corrected them with his own hand. (See *Annales du moyen age, vol.* VIII, *p.* 471;—*Hist. de l'Eglise Gallicane, vol.* IV., *p.* 449;—Feller, art. *Charlemagne*, etc.) All that can be inferred, then, from the words of his secretary, is that he did not know how to write with that haste which the urgency of affairs frequently demands, nor with that perfection of calligraphy which was then required in manuscripts.

he gave constant marks of the most sincere piety, profound respect for the Church, exact justice towards every one, unwearied beneficence, and unbounded charity towards the poor, the widow and the orphan. These and other distressed persons he assisted not only in his own dominions, but also in other countries, sending for that purpose large sums of money to Africa, Egypt and Syria. Hence there is no exaggeration in the remark of an ancient author,* that his death produced universal grief and mourning, particularly among his subjects, and that the pagans themselves bewailed his loss as that of the father of mankind.

What must increase our admiration for Charlemagne is the amiable simplicity which appeared in all his ordinary actions, and which was still more remarkable in him than in other great men. It is particularly interesting to see how he regulated his family. His queen attended to the furniture of the palace, paid the wages of the officers and servants, settled the daily expenses of the table, and procured the necessary provisions. He watched over the education of his children with such great assiduity and tenderness, that he would never sit down at table without them, nor be separated from them even during his journeys. He managed the revenues of his estates with as much prudence as he did those of the empire itself, took care that all the lands should be diligently cultivated, and, while he spent in works of beneficence the immense treasures of the Lombards and the Avari, he commanded his farmers to sell their superfluous fruits, vegetables, and other such things, rather than commit the least waste. In his ordinary dress, he wore only coats and tunics made by the persons of his own household.

His creations and projects.—Charlemagne however knew how to appear with majestic dignity, and could display great magnificence, whenever he was obliged to act as sovereign; for instance, in the reception of foreign ambassadors. Many splendid buildings owed to him their existence; among others, his palace of Aix-la-Chapelle, where he usually resided, exhibited all that architecture and art could effect at that time. He created a

* Monach. Engolism.; see *Annales du moyen age, vol.* VIII., *p.* 353.

navy, in order to oppose the first descents of the Normans, those famous pirates of the north. And, too, it was his design to unite the Atlantic with the Euxine sea by a canal that would have reached from the Rhine to the Danube: a project truly worthy of the genius of Charlemagne, but the execution of which was beyond the powers of his contemporaries, and failed for want of necessary instruments and experience.*

LOUIS THE DEBONNAIRE AND HIS SONS.—A.D. 814-877.

FEUDAL SYSTEM.

Louis the Pious.—Charlemagne was succeeded by his son Louis, surnamed the *Pious* or the *Débonnaire*, who had shown until then much wisdom in the government of Aquitania, and great courage in his expeditions against the Saracens of Spain. His virtues indeed he carried with him to the throne; but his talents were inadequate to this new and much more exalted station. Nearly the whole of his reign was spent in adopting false and impolitic measures which drew contempt upon his authority, and the most humiliating disasters upon his

---

* A distinguished French historian has beautifully described the character of Charlemagne in these words, "Charlemagne réunit dans son caractère les traits les plus magnifiques de grandeur, de sagesse et de bravoure, avec ce que la piété chrétienne a de plus solide et de plus éclatant. Aussi grand homme que grand prince, aussi bon père de famille que bon roi, aussi sage législateur dans le cabinet que général vigilant et intrépide à la tête des armées; il fut encore un chrétien humble et fervent, qui n'eut pas moins de zèle pour faire servir Dieu, qu'il n'avait d'autorité pour se faire servir lui-même. Toujours heureux à la guerre, il aima-cependant toujours la paix. Maître absolu de ses peuples il mit sa gloire à en être le père; et il eut le plaisir de voir qu'il en était aimé, autant qu'il en était craint. Restaurateur des beaux-arts et des lettres en France, il fut encore le bienfaiteur le plus libéral aussi bien que l'enfant le plus soumis de l'église: ses victoires furent pour elle des conquêtes, et le fruit le plus doux qu'il recueillit de tant de combats, ce fut d'étendre le royaume de Jésus-Christ, à proportion qu'il étendait le sien.—L'accusation d'incontinence est la seule tache qui pourrait obscurcir ses vertus; mais il n'est pas difficile de le justifier de ce reproche. . . . Que s'il a commis quelque faute en ce genre, il en aura fait pénitence avant sa mort, comme nous devons le présumer de la pieté d'un prince si religieux, et qui par mortification portait un cilice sous ses habits —En un mot, Charlemagne fut le héros de son siècle, le protecteur le plus zélé de la religion, le plus puissant des rois qui aient gouverné la France, et l'un des plus grands princes qui aient jamais occupé aucun des divers trônes de l'univers."—*F. J. Longueval, Histoire de l'Eglise gallic., ad ann.* 814.

person. Twice he was outrageously reviled and deposed by his own sons and ministers, and twice also was he restored by the exertions of his affectionate subjects. These revolutions greatly weakened the French monarchy, and permitted the Saracens on one side, and the Normans on the other, to ravage with impunity the coasts of Italy and France.

Battle of Fontanet.—Louis died in 840, leaving three sons who divided the empire among themselves. France was allotted to Charles the Bald; Germany to another Louis; and Italy to Lothaire, with the title of emperor. This last, who had been the chief promoter of the late disturbances and rebellions against his father, undertook also to deprive his brothers of their rights. Charles and Louis, not being able to produce a change in his sentiments, united their forces against him, and completely defeated him in the fierce battle of Fontanet near Auxerre, which cost the lives of a hundred thousand men. Lothaire fled to Aix-la-Chapelle, and shortly after was compelled to retire into his Italian dominions: but the conquerors not knowing how to ensure the permanency of their victory, the civil war still continued for a time, without any important result, except a waste of their forces and the misery of their subjects. These circumstances, added to the continual piracies of the barbarians on all sides, more and more debased the family of Charlemagne, and prepared its downfall.

Feudal power.—The want of prudence and firmness in Charles the Bald occasioned another evil which proved the ruin of public tranquillity, particularly in France. Until that time, the presidency and government of provinces, dukedoms and counties, had been temporary and reversible charges; but towards the middle of the ninth century, they were permitted to become hereditary dignities, transferable from father to son. This considerably increased the power of their possessors to the detriment of the royal authority, and completed the organization of the *feudal system* or compact between lords and vassals, which was for several centuries the basis of the political constitution of Western Europe where it occasioned innumerable disturbances and civil wars.

ARABIAN AND GREEK EMPIRES DURING THE NINTH CENTURY.—A. D. 800–886.

Haroun-Al-Raschid.—Not dissimilar to the empire founded by Charlemagne, was that of the Arabs in Asia and Africa. It reached the summit of its glory under Haroun-Al-Raschid, and declined under his successors, none of whom displayed abilities equal to those of this celebrated caliph. He waged war against the Greeks with uninterrupted success, and obliged the famous empress Irene, and after her, the emperor Nicephorus, to pay him a heavy tribute. No Mussulman prince, except perhaps Caliph Omar, was ever more absolute, or knew better how to enforce submission. It was enough for him, when he had the least suspicion or discontent against his generals and governors of provinces, to send them word to resign their offices; the order obtained immediate obedience.

Haroun sometimes carried his severity to excess, and while, on one hand, he exercised uncommon liberality and beneficence, he is said to have, on the other, occasionally set aside equity and gratitude in order to indulge his ill-grounded suspicions and capricious feelings. He is however styled *the Just*, probably for some remarkable acts of justice that he performed, or for the just protection which he granted to literature, arts and sciences. However, he contributed more than any other caliph, to raise the Eastern Mussulmans from the state of ignorance and darkness in which they had been so long buried. He assembled in his court of Bagdad learned men of every class and country, to have them translate into Arabic or Syriac books on philosophy and astronomy, which he had bought from the Christians; in return, the Arabs communicated to Europe their cyphers, the sciences of Algebra and Chemistry, etc.

His death.—Haroun-Al-Raschid died in the year 809, after a prosperous reign of twenty-three years. The Arabian monarchy, no longer supported by his vigorous hand, gradually lost the strength which he had imparted to it; while the Greek empire, on the contrary, began to recover from the heavy losses which it had suffered under Nicephorus.

Nicephorus.—This wicked emperor, during the nine years (802–811) of his reign, seemed to vie with foreign enemies in harrassing and plundering his people. The end of his reign was particularly disastrous. Having, though absolutely destitute of talents, the highest idea of his princely abilities, he undertook against the Bulgarians an expedition which he thought would be decisive and sufficient to avenge all previous defeats. Through his own imprudence and temerity, just the reverse happened. The Bulgarians shut him up with his numerous troops among the mountains, and made such a slaughter of them, that nearly all perished, with the officers, the generals, and the emperor himself. His head was cut off, by command of King Crumnius, and the dried skull afterwards served as a cup in the solemn repasts of that fierce barbarian. After this, the conquerors poured into Thrace, a part of which they easily conquered under the short reigns of Stauracius and Michael Curopalates, and even advanced so far as to threaten the capital.

Leo the Armenian.—Such was the alarming state of the empire until the year 813, when Leo the Armenian, a man of great military skill, ascended the throne. He had no sooner assembled an army, than he marched out against the Bulgarians, and meeting their victorious bands near Constantinople, came to a bloody engagement with them, in which he was on the point of being defeated. His troops, terrified by the multitude and fury of those barbarians, began to fly in great disorder when the emperor, perceiving that there was as much confusion on the side of the conquerors as among the fugitives, suddenly rushed against the former with a body of reserves, and stopped them by the violence of the attack. This revived the courage of his own soldiers, who then returned to the field of battle, and enabled Leo to obtain a complete victory. The next campaign (A.D. 815) was still more successful. The emperor first deceived the Bulgarians by feigning to retire at their approach, and when he knew from his spies that they did not suspect any danger, he entered their camp during the night, and surprising them in their sleep, put them all to the sword. After this, he advanced into their territory, and laid it waste, the more easily, as he experienced but a slight resistance from the inhabitants, who had no regular troops to oppose him.

So great was their loss on this occasion, that for the space of seventy years they were unable to do, or afraid to attempt anything against the empire.

Leo spent the remainder of his reign in persecuting the defenders of images with great violence, and conducting the affairs of the state with a rigor which often bordered on cruelty. He was murdered in the year 820 by the partisans of Michael surnamed the *Stammerer*, commander of the guard, who was then confined for rebellion, and whom this revolution raised from the prison to the throne. This was exchanging bad for worse; for Michael, besides being a cruel persecutor like Leo, was moreover an unskilful and profligate prince from whom nothing good could be expected. His reign of nine years, instead of doing any service to the empire, beheld the loss of the rich islands Crete and Sicily, which were conquered by the Mussulmans.

Theophilus.—Under Theophilus, the son and successor of Michael, war broke out again with fresh fury between the Greeks and the eastern Saracens. After many unimportant battles, most of which however were fatal to the Greeks, Theophilus undertook, in 840, to repair his losses by an extraordinary effort. He set out at the head of one hundred thousand men, and after overrunning all Syria, laid siege to Sozopetra, the birth-place of Caliph Mutasem. The Saracen prince, not having had time to assemble his forces, wrote to the emperor, and earnestly begged him to spare the town for his sake; but, instead of complying with the request, Theophilus took and utterly destroyed Sozopetra, put many of the inhabitants to the sword, and led the others into captivity.

This conduct filled the caliph with rage and an insatiable desire of revenge. He raised an army superior in numbers to any that had, for a long time, been seen among the Saracens, and caused the name of Amorium to be engraved on the shields of all his soldiers, to signify that his object was the destruction of this city, the native place of Theophilus. In vain did the emperor supply it with a numerous garrison composed of the bravest troops and officers of his army; in vain did they oppose so heroic a resistance, that Mutasem lost seventy thousand men in the short space of thirteen days: the besiegers, having been informed by a traitor of the weakest part of the town,

carried it by storm during the night, and reduced it to ashes, after having made a dreadful slaughter of the garrison and inhabitants. Still, thirty thousand soldiers or citizens, were preserved alive, to be led as prisoners into Persia: but many of them perished before reaching that country, and forty-two officers having generously resisted all the efforts of the court of Bagdad to make them exchange the Christian faith for the religion of Mohammed, were put to death after seven years of confinement and sufferings.

Michael III.,—The emperor Theophilus had died some time before (A.D. 842), of a disease the progress of which was accelerated by his grief for the loss of Amorium. He was succeeded by his son, Michael III., a worthless and wretched prince, who, after enjoying some years of prosperity under the regency of his virtuous mother Theodora, threw himself into an abyss of crimes and evils, and authorized the first separation of the Greek from the Latin Church. The chief author of that fatal schism was Photius, a man of great genius and learning, and of still greater ambition and wickedness. By his intrigues, which were supported by a vicious court, he succeeded in invading the patriarchal see of Constantinople, after he had procured the unjust expulsion of the lawful patriarch St. Ignatius (A.D. 857). His unparalleled talent for dissimulation and imposture enabled him, likewise, to gain over to his party many of the principal personages in the Greek Church and state; but all his cunning failed with regard to Pope Nicholas I., in whom he found an insuperable barrier to all his wicked schemes.

Pope Nicholas I. and Photius.,—This great pontiff not only refused to approve of the irregular proceedings of Photius, but even pronounced against him a solemn sentence of excommunication. Photius, who had until that time acknowledged without question the primacy of the Apostolic see, resolved in his anger to separate the Church of Constantinople from that of Rome. He took the bold step in the year 866, and endeavored to support it by every means in his power, especially by impostures and calumnies of the most outrageous nature. This course of violence lasted, it is true, but a short time, because, in consequence of a new revolution which happened at court, Photius was expelled from the patriarchal see, and

solemnly condemned by the eighth general council held in 869 at Constantinople for the reunion of the two Churches; still, there always lurked in the breasts of the oriental bishops a leaven of jealousy and discord, which again burst forth in the eleventh century, and completed the schism.

Basil the Macedonian.—The new revolution just mentioned took place in 867, when Michael III., while meditating the death of Basil the Macedonian, his associate in the empire, was himself killed in a state of intoxication, after a despicable reign of twenty-five years. Basil was, by unanimous consent, acknowledged sole emperor, and showed himself, notwithstanding his humble birth, more worthy of this high preferment than all his predecessors within the last two centuries. Not less attentive to save the citizens from oppression than to defend the state from foreign foes, while he gained considerable advantages in war against the Saracens, he at the same time repressed the injustice of magistrates and governors wherever he could detect it, as well in the nearest as in the most distant provinces; himself taking the greatest care to appoint to offices of trust only upright and virtuous persons, men neither to be bribed by presents nor frightened by threats, and wholly bent on the faithful discharge of their duties. In order to banish cupidity from all tribunals, he strictly forbade judges, as he allowed them a sufficient stipend from the state treasury, to receive anything from either of the contending parties, under any pretence whatever. So far did he watch over the interests of poor people, when attacked before the courts of justice by some rich and powerful person, that he even established a public fund to enable them to defend their cause, and support them until it should be decided.

The vigilance and firmness of Basil soon restored peace, abundance and security, in every part of the state. Complaints against governors and magistrates, which were very common before, ceased so completely, that the emperor having one day gone, as usual, to receive and examine the petitions which might be presented to him, did not hear of a single grievance. Fearing lest the injured persons might have been, by violence or treachery, prevented from entering the palace, he sent confidential officers to inquire into the situation of his subjects. After diligent

research, all returned and assured the emperor, that they had found no one who had expressed any dissatisfaction; this news filled Basil with extraordinary joy; he shed tears of exultation, and gave thanks to God for so admirable a change. On another occasion, having been informed that the price of flour had become so high that poor people were almost dying with starvation, he directly caused all his granaries to be opened, and the wheat to be sold at one-twelfth of the ordinary price.

This excellent emperor died in 886, of an accident that happened to him in the chase. A strong and stately stag, rushing by him, caught his cincture, and dragged him from his horse; before assistance could arrive, the animal shook him so violently, that a fatal disease ensued, and in a few days brought him to the grave. He had reigned about nineteen years, during which, by constant and successful application to affairs, he infused new life into the Greek empire. His glory indeed is tarnished by the share which he took in the murder of his predecessor, by some acts of inhumanity towards prisoners taken in battle, and a certain pride which occasionally betrayed him into wrong measures; still the great number of his illustrious and generous actions has justly ranked him among the most remarkable sovereigns of Constantinople. His descendants occupied the throne for nearly two centuries; but none of them was equal in talent and merit to the founder of their dynasty, and the empire fell again into the state of weakness from which it had been rescued by the exertions of Basil.

SPAIN DURING THE NINTH AND TENTH CENTURIES.—A.D. 800-998.

Growth of Asturias.—On the contrary, the increase of extent and power of the new kingdom formed by the Christians in Spain became from that epoch peculiarly remarkable. Ever since their first endeavors, under Pelagio and Alfonso I., to struggle against the fierce invaders of their country, they almost constantly gained new advantages; but it is chiefly to the ninth century that the ardor of their heroical times ought to be referred. Their noble ardor and natural bravery, continually stimulated by obstacles, rose now to a full display of their energies, and

while the Moors began to be enervated by a long possession of wealth and a fine climate, thirst after glory united with religious zeal produced among the Christians uninterrupted wonders of courage and virtue.

Alfonso III.—In the first rank of great and conspicuous men who flourished at that time, must be placed Kings Alfonso II. and Ramirez I., both of whom conquered the Saracens in many battles, and greatly enlarged the Christian territory. Still more brilliant were the achievements of Alfonso III., surnamed *the Great*, during his long reign of about fifty years, from 862 to 912. He first employed himself in vindicating his rights to the throne against different competitors. This being accomplished, he attacked the Moors, and spreading terror among them by the rapidity of his marches, so often overthrew their armies in various campaigns that he repeatedly compelled them to sue for peace.

He was obliged to desist from war for a time, in order to suppress conspiracies that had been formed against him in his own family. Alfonso quelled them all by his activity and prudence, but dishonored himself on this occasion by an act savoring more of cruelty than of justice. Having discovered that his four brothers were at the head of one of these conspiracies, besides confining them in a prison, he caused their eyes to be plucked out: a sort of punishment which, although frequently inflicted at that period on state criminals, was in itself especially in this instance, inhuman and shocking.

Alfonso, being thus delivered from all foreign and domestic enemies, devoted his time to the improvement of his kingdom of Asturias and Oviedo. By this means, he regained the affection of his people, but not that of his family. While a new war with the Saracens was affording him an occasion of new triumphs, another conspiracy at home recalled him from the pursuit of his conquests, and, though opposed by this warlike prince, at first with some success, it finally obliged him to resign the sovereign power in favor of his two sons (A.D. 911). Still, he requested that some troops should be left to him, that he might attack the Moors once more before his death. Having obtained his request, he made an irruption into their territory, and returned loaded with spoils. This was the last of his exploits. He died in the following

year, after a reign almost continually disturbed both by domestic dissensions and by foreign wars.

Alfonso the Great being no longer on the throne, the success of military expeditions was sometimes on the side of the Christians, sometimes on that of the Saracens, and, for a long period, nearly equal on both sides. In the year 921 the former were entirely defeated at Jonquera by the Arabian monarch Abderahman III.; but in their turn, under the conduct of King Ramirez II., they gained a complete victory at Simancas, in 939; on which occasion eighty thousand Mussulmans are said to have lost their lives.

Abderahman.—This bloody defeat and others which followed did not prevent Abderahman from raising his kingdom to a degree of prominence it probably had never attained before. Being a skilful politician as well as a brave general, sometimes victorious, frequently defeated, but always great, whether in peace or war, he ever knew how to improve his success and repair his losses. Notwithstanding the obstinate warfare in which he was engaged, and the great expenses he must have incurred to support his armies, he displayed at court a magnificence which would appear incredible, were it not unanimously recorded, by contemporary historians. His palaces, his gardens, and his various monuments were splendid. Like two of his predecessors of the same name, and even more than they, he protected the arts and sciences; established celebrated schools, especially of medicine; attracted to his court the ablest physicians, architects, astronomers and poets of his age and nation; and rendered Cordova, his capital, the centre of industry and learning. If we give credit to Arabian authors, this city contained two hundred and thirteen thousand houses, eighty-five thousand stores, six hundred mosques, nine hundred public baths, seventy libraries, and seventeen large institutions for the instruction of youth.

Abderahman, having the reputation of a great love for justice, and possessing those moral qualities which may be found in a false religion, went through a long reign, in a manner which secured to him the esteem and confidence of his very enemies. But nothing perhaps so well proves the greatness and superiority of his mind, as the following note found among his papers after his death: "I have been caliph for fifty years, and have

enjoyed all that men can possibly desire here on earth. Being desirous to know the number of the days in which, during this long space of time, my heart was truly satisfied, I found it upon exact enumeration, to amount to fourteen only. Mortals, learn from me how to appreciate worldly grandeur and this transitory life."

Almanzor.—Abderahman III. died in 961, at the age of seventy-two years. The good effects of his government continued to be felt under his first successors, owing chiefly to the exertions of their prime-minister, Mahomet Almanzor, whose fidelity was equal to his courage, and who always remained satisfied with an inferior rank, although he might have occupied the first with the consent of his nation. This famous warrior invaded, it is said, fifty-two times the Christian territory, and generally returned triumphant and loaded with booty.

At first, he met with an invincible opponent in the person of Count Fernando Gonzales, the chief founder of the sovereignty of Castile, and one of the greatest men of an age which produced in Spain so many heroes. Most unfortunately for the Christians, Gonzales died in the year 979, twenty years before Almanzor. The undaunted Moor determined then, not only to repair his late defeats by new efforts and new invasions, but also to effect, if possible, the final overthrow of the Christians. Although they sometimes found him a generous conqueror, they never experienced a more formidable enemy. He ravaged their dominions, attacked their armies separately, and defeated them all, notwithstanding their courageous resistance.

Of all his victories, the most splendid and glorious was that which he gained, in the year 995, over King Bermudez II. This prince had just mustered great forces, in order to stem the destructive torrent: although afflicted with the gout he put himself at their head, and from his litter gave the signal for battle. The Christians, animated by the presence of their sovereign, and by the thought of their religion, their liberty and their lives, for which they were going to fight, attacked the Saracens with irresistible fury, routed them on all sides, and obliged them to flee in great disorder. Almanzor did, on that occasion, nearly the same that is related of Julius Cæsar.*

* In the battle of Munda (Spain), against the sons of Pompey (B.C. 45).

Dismounting from his horse, he lay upon the ground, and cried out that he preferred to be either trodden under foot by the fugitives or slain by the conquerors, rather than outlive his glory. The sight of this great man in such imminent danger made his soldiers ashamed of abandoning him, and inspired them with fresh courage. Rallying around their general, they rushed with him against the pursuers, whom the anticipation of victory had rendered too confident; the Christians were terrified in their turn, and fled, yielding the victory to their intrepid and obstinate enemies.

Battle of Medina Cœli.—After this, Almanzor, with little or no difficulty, overran the whole country, and taking, ransacking or burning the cities, pursued the vanquished as far as the mountains of Asturias, which had been their first asylum nearly three hundred years before. He would have probably carried his conquests still farther, had not a dreadful plague broken out among his soldiers, which destroyed a considerable part of his army and forced him to retire in great haste. When he returned with fresh troops, he found that the Christian princes of the different parts of Spain had now united their forces against the common enemy. They stopped his victorious march at Medina Cœli, or Calacanasor, in Castile (A. D. 998). The battle, upon which such great interests depended, was begun with equal animosity on both sides, and lasted the whole day. The following morning, the Christians prepared to recommence the attack, but soon perceived that the Moors had retreated. Almanzor, frightened at the greatness of his loss, which amounted to one hundred thousand men, dismissed his surviving soldiers, fled in despair to Medina, and there put an end to his life by starvation.

Foundation of Christian kingdoms in Spain.—With Mahomet Almanzor fell the splendor of the Arabian empire in Spain. His death was soon followed by a series of feuds and civil wars among the Arabs, which distracted their monarchy, and divided it into eight or nine petty kingdoms. This permittted the Christians, not only to recover entirely from their recent losses, but even to found and solidly establish four kingdoms in the north of the peninsula, viz., Leon including the more ancient kingdom of Asturias and Oviedo, Navarre, Arragon and

Castile. These latter two, though the last in order of time, soon became the most powerful of the four, and afterwards formed by their reunion the present kingdom of Spain.

ENGLAND DURING THE NINTH AND TENTH CENTURIES A.D. 800-1016.

Among the states of modern Europe, none experienced during the middle ages more vicissitudes and revolutions than England. Its conquest by the Anglo-Saxons, and the establishment of the Heptarchy, have been already mentioned. As long as any district remained in the island, that might be easily subdued, the Saxon kings lived together in harmony, each one being content with his dominions, or extending them only at the expense of their common foes. Afterwards, they turned their arms against one another, and thus gave occasion to the ruin of the Heptarchy.

Egbert.—Egbert, the apparent heir to the crown of Wessex, had been first compelled by a strong party to leave the shores of England, and to take refuge at the court of Charlemagne. He served three years in the armies of that emperor, and spent the period of his exile in acquiring proficiency in the science of war and of government. Charles spared no pains in improving the noble and promising qualities of the British prince, and in every important transaction wished to have him near his person. He had taken him along in his last journey to Rome, when Egbert was informed of the death of his competitor, and of other favorable circumstances, which recalled him to his native country.

The royal exile lost no time, but, taking leave of the French monarch, who loaded him with marks of affection and esteem, he returned to England, where his claim was unanimously acknowledged by the West-Saxon lords. Being crowned, with universal applause, king of Wessex in the year 801, he devoted the first part of his reign to peaceful pursuits; but, from the time when he first unsheathed the sword against the Britons of Wales, each succeeding year was marked by new victories and conquests. The Britons were subdued; then the

feeble kingdoms of Essex, Kent, and others shared the same fate; and before 830, Egbert had extended his authority over the greater part of the island.

Invasion of the Danes.—Scarcely however had he attained this superiority among the native princes, when he saw himself attacked by a foreign and most dangerous enemy. At this period, Denmark was the birthplace of a race of men who spent the best portion of their lives on the sea, either because they were compelled to leave their country which was too thickly inhabited, or because they preferred the fruits of rapine to those of industry. While the Normans, their countrymen, laid waste the coasts of France and Spain, the Danes directed their attempts against the British isles. Their first descents, it is true, had no great effect, and produced temporary alarm, rather than permanent uneasiness; but towards the close of the reign of Egbert, the numbers of the pirates perpetually increased, and their visits being annually renewed, took a much more alarming aspect. In 833, Egbert himself had the mortification of seeing his West-Saxons defeated by the invaders. Convinced of the necessity of adopting stronger measures, he summoned all his vassals around him, and waited in anxious suspense for the next descent of the enemy: success crowned his efforts, and a decisive though bloody victory compelled the Danes to take refuge in their ships. This was the last exploit of Egbert, who died in the following year (A.D. 836), after a prosperous reign of about thirty-five years.

Ethelwulf.—His death, and the pacific disposition of his son Ethelwulf, emboldened the barbarians to renew their invasions. Redoubled exertions were made, on the one side for the attack, and on the other for the defence, with a continual alternation of success and misfortune. At last, a general battle was fought at Okeley (A.D. 851), in which the Danes were so completely overthrown, that their loss is said to have been greater than they had ever sustained in any age or country. They appeared to be disheartened by so severe a defeat, and respected, for a time, the shores of England. But their loss seemed only to urge them to make more extensive preparations for subsequent attacks. After the death of Ethelwulf, and under his four sons, Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred and Alfred, all of whom reigned successively,

those undaunted pirates renewed their efforts and inroads with fresh and incessant fury. In spite of many severe losses which they again suffered, they returned to the charge so often and so repeatedly, as finally to take possession, in a few years, of a great part of the island.

Alfred the Great.—Such was the state of Great Britain, when Alfred, the last of the four brothers just mentioned, ascended the throne in 871. No reign ever commenced with more unfavorable auspices. The Saxon prince had scarcely any troops to oppose the invaders, and saw himself compelled to enter into a treaty with them, by which he was left in possession of Wessex and a few other districts, while they kept the better part of the country for themselves. Nor even did this arrangement last long. Repeated attacks of the Danes forced Alfred to abandon for a time the whole of his dominions to their rapacity, and retire into a small island situated in a morass between two rivers. Here he submitted to his humble lot with piety and resignation, in hope of better times. Being one day buried in deep reflection on his misfortunes, he happened to let some cakes burn, which the wife of the herdsman with whom he lodged, had committed to his care. She reproached him severely, telling him he was more ready to eat than to earn his bread. On another occasion, the pious king did not hesitate to give one-half of the only loaf that remained in the place, to a poor and needy traveller: a truly charitable action, which the providence of God shortly afterwards rewarded by the arrival of a large supply of provisions.

War with the Danes.—In the mean time, the Danes spread terror throughout the whole country, which they plundered and laid waste, with almost no resistance. However, one of their parties was entirely defeated in 878, by the earl of Devonshire, who killed their general Ubbo with twelve hundred of his followers. This revived the courage of the Saxons, and Alfred having now quitted his retreat, a multitude of brave warriors flocked to his standard, ready to shed their blood for his defence and the independence of the realm. The king immediately marched out with them against the main body of the Danes, who, on their side, advanced with hasty steps to meet him on the field of battle.

As the armies approached, they uttered shouts of

mutual defiance, and, after the first discharge of their missile weapons, came to a close and sanguinary engagement. The animosity of the two nations, the efforts of their leaders, the fluctuations of victory, can be more easily imagined than expressed. The Danes displayed a valor worthy of their former renown; the Saxons were stimulated by honor, shame, and every motive that can influence the heart of man. At length, their intrepidity bore down all opposition; the Northmen, after suffering a tremendous slaughter, fled to their camp, where being pursued and closely surrounded, they consented to capitulate. The terms imposed on them by the conqueror were, that they should either leave the island, or embrace the laws of Christianity; and if they became Christians, that they should quit the kingdom of Wessex, and confine themselves to their former settlements in other parts of England. All this appears to have been at the time faithfully executed.

Alfred's policy.—Alfred being now in a state of comparative tranquillity, set about repairing the damages occasioned by war, and providing against future disasters. The army, fortifications and navy claimed his first care. Bodies of regular troops were organized for the defence of his kingdom, especially along the coast; castles were built in places the best fitted to prevent the landing, or to impede the progress of an enemy; and a considerable fleet was equipped, which, within a few years, obtained numerous triumphs over the pirates: so that Alfred may be regarded as the real founder of the naval and military glory of Great Britain.

His legislation.—He next turned his attention to the improvement and civilization of his people. In order to check the spirit of disorder and anarchy which, during the long period of barbarian invasion, had become prevalent throughout the realm, the king restored and enlarged the salutary institutions of his predecessors, and from ancient statutes, composed a code of law adapted to the present circumstances. But, as legislative enactments are of little avail, unless well observed in the community, he insured their execution by his constant vigilance and firmness. Particularly attentive to the proceedings of the courts of judicature, he frequently revised them himself, and receiving the appeals of all injured

persons, inflicted severe though proportionate penalties on all ignorant or iniquitous judges. This severity produced the most beneficial result; magistrates were taught to become more learned and more conscientious; while murder, theft and other crimes, being sure to meet with due punishment, were rendered as rare as they had been common before. So exact was the observance of the laws, that according to the unanimous assertion of English historians, if a traveller lost his purse on the road, he would the next day find it untouched; and some relate besides, that golden bracelets having been suspended on the high road, nobody ventured to steal so valuable an object.

Alfred as Protector of literature and art.—Alfred was also the restorer of literature and learning, which had considerably suffered during the late wars. With the assistance of distinguished scholars of his own and foreign countries, whom he invited to his court, he not only founded the university of Oxford, but likewise opened schools in many other places for the instruction of his subjects. He himself gave to all an example of application to study, in which he succeeded so well, that several good works were either composed, or translated by him from the Latin into the Saxon tongue. Nor were these the only services that Alfred rendered to his people. He also encouraged agriculture, commerce, and all necessary and useful arts; applying himself above all to restore the salutary influence of religion, and to revive piety around him both by word and example. In fact, the domestic life of this admirable prince was as well regulated as his public conduct, and a proper management of his time enabled him perfectly to fulfil all his duties. Each day, he gave eight hours to the care of his kingdom, eight to study and works of piety or charity, and the other eight to sleep and necessary recreation. As the use of watches and clocks as we have them at present, was not yet known, he employed, for the division of the day, six wax candles, each one of which burnt during four hours, and his chaplains informed him when it was extinguished.

Alfred's death.—After many years of peace, Alfred was attacked by those same Normans, who had so long and so often desolated the coasts of France. He opposed them with superior ability, defeated them by land and sea, and, more successful than the French kings, delivered

his kingdom from those adventurers. Shortly after, he died, full of glory and all good qualities (A.D. 900), having lived fifty-one, and reigned twenty-nine years.

With the name of Alfred posterity has associated the epithet of *Great;* which indeed few princes have equally deserved for courage in danger and wisdom in government. While many other kings of England are chiefly known in history by their actions in the field of battle, it is the glory of Alfred, that he was not merely a warrior, but also the patron of learning and the legislator of his people. The celebrated Henry Spelman, filled with enthusiasm at the recollection of this illustrious king, speaks of him thus: "O Alfred, the wonder and prodigy of all ages! If we reflect on his piety, we will be inclined to believe that he always lived in retirement and solitude; if we recollect his warlike exploits, we will judge that he never departed from the camps; if we call to mind his learning and writings, we will imagine that he spent his whole life in a literary institution; if we direct our attention to his wise administration and wholesome laws, it will seem that these had been his only study and employment."*

Edward.—Alfred was succeeded on the throne by his son Edward. In legislation and literary merit, Edward was much inferior to his father; but he surpassed him in the magnitude of his conquests. During the whole of his reign (900–924), there were but few intervals free from war against the Danes. He gained many victories over them, and, by the subjugation of various provinces, acquired more real power than had ever been possessed by his predecessors. All the tribes from Northumbria to the channel owned his sway; the kings of the Scots and the princes of Wales acknowledged him as their lord, or paid him tribute; and the other nations in the island eagerly solicited his friendship.

Athelstan.—Athelstan, Edward's eldest son and successor (924–940), pursued the same line of policy. By his unceasing efforts, the influence of the British and Danish chieftains disappeared in England during the

---

* See, on the reign and qualifications of Alfred, besides civil historians, a very learned, extensive and interesting note of Alban Butler, in his *Lives of the Saints* under the 28th of October.

latter part of his reign. All the provinces originally subdued and colonized by the different Saxon tribes, became united under the same crown; and the celebrated battle of Brunanburg in Northumbria (A.D. 937), confirmed the ascendency of Athelstan. He thus completed the work commenced by his forefathers, and to him chiefly belongs the glory of having established what has ever since been called the Kingdom of England.

This happy state of Great Britain was however soon disturbed by new storms, more furious and lasting than had ever been experienced before. After a few short reigns, the most remarkable of which was that of Edgar, and after the death of King Edward the Martyr, in 978, the Danes reappeared with fresh forces, and resumed their former course of invasion. So furious indeed, and so persevering were their inroads and ravages, that for many years, viz., from 980 to 1016, England presented nothing but almost uninterrupted scenes of devastation, plunder, bloodshed and all kinds of misery.

FRANCE AND GERMANY IN THE TENTH AND ELEVENTH CENTURIES.—A.D. 912-1024.

SUCH had been also, for a long time the case with France, the conquest of which was the ambition of the terrible Normans. Although repelled with great loss from the walls of Paris in 886, they persevered in their course of piracy, under the conduct of Rollo, one of the greatest warriors of that iron-age. At length, King Charles the Simple consented to give up to them, on the condition of vassalage, the north of France, which thus became their permanent property about the year 912, and took from them the name of Normandy. This cession proved indeed most beneficial to the kingdom, and to the Normans themselves, who, without renouncing their warlike spirit, abandoned their predatory habits, and adopted those of a civilized and Christian life; but it did not stop the decline nor prevent the downfall of the dynasty of Charlemagne. The same year, 912, beheld the imperial sceptre pass from his family into the hands of the German lords, while his successors on the French throne, for want either of talent and firmness, or of sufficient authority, were little respected in their own dominions. The king-

dom was parcelled out, as it were, between themselves and the great vassals of the crown, who, being frequently more powerful than the sovereign, became mere nominal subjects, and, refused to obey his orders when they appeared to conflict with their supposed interest or their caprice; while they freely waged war against one another, with the help of their own respective subjects.*

The Capetian dynasty in France.—Such was the wretched condition of France and of its sovereigns during the tenth century. In fact, after the demise of Louis V., who died without issue, the French lords refused to acknowledge as his successor, his uncle Charles, duke of Lorraine, who had lately submitted himself in the quality of a vassal, to the German emperor. They offered the sceptre to Hugh-Capet, duke of France, as being the most worthy of it for his royal qualities and the great power he already enjoyed (A.D. 987). In vain did Charles, at the head of an army, attempt to maintain his claims to the throne; Hugh, having popular favor on his side, baffled all his measures and remained in possession of the sovereign power.

His reign lasted nine years, the greater part of which he spent in keeping his vassals and subjects within the bounds of respect and duty, as well by his prudence and moderation, as by multiplied victories. His wisdom still more appeared in his successful efforts to establish a regular mode of succession to the throne: instead of dividing the kingdom among his sons, as had been so often and so imprudently done before, he, with the consent of the nation, ordered that Robert, the eldest, should be his only successor. The like was done after him at every new accession, and this practice became one of the fundamental laws of the French monarchy.

Conrad I. of Franconia.—The case was just the reverse in Germany. Ever since the empire was transferred from the French to the German princes, from hereditary it had become elective. The sceptre was first offered to Otho, duke of Saxony, who thought proper, on account of his advanced age, to decline the honor, and

---

* The great vassals were six in number, viz., the three dukes of Burgundy, Normandy and France properly so called: and the three earls of Flanders, Champaigne and Toulouse.

recommended Conrad, duke of Franconia, though his personal enemy, to the choice of the electors.* Conrad therefore was selected, and reigned seven years (912–919). When he found himself drawing near the end of life, he, with equal generosity, proposed for his successor, Henry, the son of Otho, as being the best fitted to rule the state in those turbulent times.

Henry I. the Fowler.—Henry, surnamed *the Fowler*, on account of his fondness for hunting, was in truth well qualified to wear a crown and fully answered public expectation. He delivered Germany from the attacks of the surrounding tribes, especially of the Hungarians, a fierce and warlike people of Mongolian descent, whose only delight was in pillage and destruction. The emperor succeeded in uniting all the German forces against them, and the effect of this coalition was the entire defeat of the Hungarians in two great battles fought near Merseburg (A.D. 920 and 934), in one of which they lost eighty thousand, and in the other forty thousand men.

Henry was endeavoring at the same time to promote, by every means in his power, the safety and happiness of his people. He organized a militia, inured the nobility to the hardships of war, fortified the towns, rescued the country from banditti and robbers, and took proper measures to extend the wholesome influence of religion throughout all his dominions. The wisdom of his laws against vice and disorder was not less conspicuous than the multitude of his exploits against foreign enemies. This great prince died in 936, having lived sixty and reigned seventeen years.

Otho I. the Great.—Otho I., his eldest son, was chosen to succeed him in the empire, not however without much opposition and many obstacles, all of which he overcame by his prudence, firmness and activity. He was equally successful in different wars against the Bohemians, the Hungarians, and the Italian princes. His reign lasted thirty-seven years, during which he gave such proofs of unparalleled magnificence, generosity, valor, wisdom, re-

* The number of the electors did not continue always the same. By the Emperor Charles IV., in 1356, it was reduced to seven, viz., the archbishops of Mainz, Triers and Koeln; the king of Bohemia, the duke of Saxony, the count Palatin, and the marquis of Brandenburg: to whom were subsequently added the dukes of Hanover and Bavaria.

ligion and justice, as to deserve, notwithstanding some failings in the exercise of his power, the praises of impartial posterity.

After him the German throne was successively occupied, from 973 to 1002, by Otho II., Otho III. and Henry II, his son and grandsons respectively; and from 1002 to 1024 by their relative Henry II., or St. Henry, under whom Germany again enjoyed all the advantages that can be expected from a good, wise and virtuous sovereign. Some years before he died, he had wished to renounce all earthly grandeur, and, applying to Richard, abbot of St. Vannes in Lorraine, begged admittance into the monastery. The holy abbot, not to afflict him by a stern denial, received his vow of obedience, but immediately commanded him, in virtue of it, to reassume the government of the empire, for the honor of God and the good of his people; to which the pious monarch humbly, though reluctantly, submitted. As he left no children, the imperial sceptre passed a second time into the hands of the Franconian dukes, and, after a few reigns, devolved on the princes of the house of Suabia.

EASTERN NATIONS IN THE TENTH AND ELEVENTH CENTURIES.—A.D. 960-1040.

Nicephorus Phocas.—In the mean time, the Greek empire had shone with great splendor under three successive emperors, Nicephorus Phocas, John Zimisces and Basil II., the first of whom began to reign in 962. He was born of an illustrious family in Constantinople, and from his youth distinguished himself in the army. Having become a general, he succeeded, by his persevering efforts and vigilance united with valor, in expelling the Saracens from the important island of Crete, of which they had been masters one hundred and thirty-five years (A.D. 960). The troops, to whom he was much endeared, raised him to the throne, after the death of Romanus II. He then enlarged his projects, and, attacking the Saracens of Asia with unrelenting vigor, wrested from them many towns and several provinces, which he reunited to the empire.

To these splendid achievements, the zeal of Nicephorus for military discipline contributed as much as his personal bravery. He kept his soldiers within the strict bounds of

duty by the most efficacious of all means, that of example: claiming for himself no special exemption, he easily induced others to become equally patient and courageous. Unfortunately, so great a warrior, the terror of all his enemies, was also, by his avarice and exactions, the terror of his own subjects. Augmenting the taxes, and debasing the coinage, he seemed obstinately resolved to make all the riches of the nation pass into his coffers, Hence it happened that many officers, even among those who had been most sincerely attached to him, being now exasperated by his injustice and tyranny, secretly conspired against his life. John Zimisces, their leader, and five others, were introduced during the night in a basket, and through a window, into the apartment in which Nicephorus was asleep. He awoke only to see the daggers directed against his breast. The conspirators dragged him from his couch, and stabbed him at the feet of Zimisces, whom they proclaimed emperor in his place (A.D. 969).

Zimisces.—If heroic fortitude and courage, if the habitual practice of mildness, justice, generosity, in a word, of all public and private virtues, ever could obliterate a crime, this lenity should be extended to Zimisces, a prince undoubtedly one of the greatest among the successors of Constantine. The Greek historians seem to vie with each other in bestowing upon him the highest encomiums, and even the annals of northern nations have praised this illustrious emperor, who stopped their warlike and victorious hordes. For, it was at this juncture that a formidable army of Rossi or Russians, having, under the conduct of their duke Wenceslas, crossed the Danube, made an irruption into Bulgaria and Thrace, which they ravaged as far as Adrianople. At first, Zimisces sent his ablest generals against them; afterwards, marching in person, he expelled the invaders from the towns and fortresses which they had taken, and driving all their detachments before him, at length forced them to a general engagement, near the city of Dorostolis, on the banks of the Danube.

The Russians defeated.—The multitude and natural bravery of the Russians on the one side, and the valor and skill of the imperial legions on the other, rendered this battle one of the most obstinate and terrible in the annals of war. So great was the animosity of the combatants

that the advantage is said to have successively passed from one army to the other no fewer than twelve times. The contest thus raged with unabated fury from morning until late in the evening, when the Russians began to waver, and Zimisces, redoubling his efforts gained at last a complete victory. Three or four more battles, fought within a short time, saw him equally victorious, and almost destroyed the Russian forces. Being now deprived of all resource, the remnants of their army came to the determination of abandoning all their designs of conquest, and of retracing their steps to their own country. But, while they were retreating, another barbarous tribe surprised them by an ambuscade, and mercilessly put them all to the sword (A.D. 971).

Zimisces' death.—Zimisces, on the contrary, returned in triumph to Constantinople, where he was received with extraordinary joy and magnificence. Shortly after, he marched against the eastern Saracens, who had availed themselves of his absence, to reconquer many places in Asia. The arrival of Zimisces once more changed the state of affairs: wherever he appeared, towns and fortresses were either compelled by force or induced by promises to surrender. When he returned from this glorious expedition, as he was passing through a tract of land extremely rich, beautiful and adorned with palaces, he was told that all these belonged to his minister Basil. "Behold," he exclaimed, "it is then to enrich *one* man that the state is exhausted, that the armies undergo so many hardships; that soldiers, officers, emperors, expose their lives and shed their blood in battles!" These words were, by perfidious friends, related to the minister, who, fearing an inquiry into his administration, determined to avoid, by the commission of an atrocious crime, the disgrace with which he was threatened, and bribed the cupbearer of the emperor to poison this excellent prince. The fatal draught being tendered and taken, Zimisces felt an inward fire, which soon manifested itself outwardly by carbuncles and vomiting of blood. However, the sight of approaching death did not terrify his great soul; he spent his last days in preparing, by confession and other religious exercises, to appear before the tribunal of God, and, after forbidding inquiries to be made as to the author of his death, terminated with the sentiments of an humble

penitent, a career which, with the exception of one day, had been that of a Christian hero (A.D. 975).

Basil II.—After him the throne was filled by two brothers, descendants of Basil the Macedonian, Basil II. and Constantine VIII. They reigned together, and equally enjoyed the honors of the purple; but the exercise of the supreme authority was left entirely to Basil, who far surpassed his brother in genius, ability, and application to public affairs. He skilfully extricated himself from various rebellions and civil wars excited in the beginning of his reign by some discontented generals. He then directed all his energies against the Bulgarians, who had been so long a match for the empire. Their courageous resistance protracted the war probably much longer than had been anticipated, and a series of continual attacks and bloody engagements was hardly sufficient to subdue that nation and its leaders, who defended themselves with truly heroic fortitude; but so obstinately, and, it may be said, so cruelly bent was Basil on the entire reduction of Bulgaria, that it finally passed under his sway, with all the treasures which the Bulgarians had amassed during three hundred years, by war and pillage.

In the East also, Basil extended considerably the boundaries of the empire. Even age could not extinguish his martial spirit; and he was actually preparing for an expedition against the Saracens of Sicily, when a violent fever carried him off in the sixty-eighth year of his life, and the fifty-first of his reign (A.D. 1025). This long period had indeed been marked by many successful wars and by a firm administration; but unfortunately, Basil II. did not know how to win the affection and esteem of his subjects. While his armies were everywhere victorious, the people were groaning under heavy taxes, and religion and humanity often condemned the actions of the monarch. The fifty years immediately following his decease beheld the rapid succession of fifteen emperors, most of them unworthy of notice.

Decline of Arab power in the East.—In the mean time, the vast monarchy founded by the Arabs had been going to decay. The indolence of the caliph of Bagdad encouraged the ambition of the different governors of provinces to withdraw their allegiance from him, and to proclaim their independence. In this manner were

Africa and Persia gradually severed from the sway of the Abassides. Towards the end of the tenth century they lost also Palestine and Egypt, where the Fatimites (real or pretended descendants of Fatima, a daughter of Mohammed) established their dominion, under the venerated title of caliphs (A.D. 972).

The Seldjuks.—Against these and other invaders, the caliphs of Bagdad called to their assistance some of the Turkish tribes stationed in the neighborhood of the Caspian sea; tribes famous for their exploits under their leader Seldjuk. At first the caliphs had reason to applaud themselves for this measure. Those warlike tribes fought with great valor and success against the enemies of the reigning dynasty, and re-established its authority in several provinces; but, towards the year 1040, they began to make conquests for themselves. Animated by the favorable result of their first attempts, they spread their wandering hordes over Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine and Asia Minor, and, defeating the Greek emperor Romanus Diogenes in a great battle, took possession of those rich countries, which formed the renowned though short-lived empire of the Seldjukian Turks. In a few years, Iconium, Jerusalem, Antioch, Tarsus and Nicea were subdued by them, and remained in their power until the time of the Crusades.

IRELAND, PARTICULARLY DURING THE TENTH AND ELEVENTH CENTURIES.—A.D. 965-1014.

RETURNING to the history of western Europe, we shall here speak exclusively of Ireland, and by retracing for a moment our steps to more remote ages, we will place together before the eyes of our readers, the chief events which then distinguished this interesting portion of the world.

The origin of the Irish as a distinct nation is generally referred to a very high antiquity. During a long lapse of centuries, both before and after the coming of Christ, they were governed by kings, one of whom, called the king of Tara, was considered as the supreme ruler of the island. The subordinate princes who reigned in the four great provinces of Ulster, Leinster, Munster and Con-

naught, were obliged to pay a tribute to that monarch, as a sign of inferiority; but, in several cases, they endeavored to render it a merely nominal subjection, while, in other respects, they were by right absolutely independent in their own respective kingdoms. Thus the government was in its form pentarchical; a form which, though possessing several advantages, was calculated to create and foster a spirit of disunion, as experience too often fatally showed in the course of ages.

St. Patrick converts Ireland.—In the fifth century after the coming of our Lord, Ireland was converted to Christianity by the great St. Patrick. This truly apostolic man had the satisfaction of baptizing an incredible multitude of pagans, who hastened, at his call, to exchange their heathenish superstitions for the pure precepts of the Gospel. "While, in other countries," says Moore, "the introduction of Christianity has been the slow work of time . . . in Ireland, on the contrary by the influence of one humble but zealous missionary, and with but little previous preparation of the soil by other hands, Christianity burst forth at the first ray of apostolic light, and, with the sudden ripeness of a northern summer, at once covered the whole land."* Churches arose everywhere; schools and monasteries were founded, in which science and exalted virtue continued long to flourish. Such was indeed the renown of Ireland for sanctity and learning, that, by common consent, she received the glorious title of "the island of saints;" foreigners flocked to her shores to be instructed in religion and letters, and a residence in Ireland was considered as almost essential to establish a literary character. Not content with affording an asylum to strangers at home, the sons of Hibernia crossed the seas to diffuse the same blessings abroad, all the neighboring nations, England, France, Germany and Switzerland, profited by the zeal and learning of Irish missionaries, and the most celebrated nurseries of science in those remote ages were founded or improved by Irish scholars.

Invasion of the Northmen.—At the close of the eighth century, Ireland began to be invaded by the Danes, those terrible Northmen, who, for above two hundred

* *History of Ireland*, p. 110.

years, proved so formidable to several nations of Europe. Here, as elsewhere, ruin and desolation marked the progress of these invaders: the country was ravaged; churches, monasteries and universities were plundered and destroyed. From time to time, it is true, the Danes were boldly attacked and defeated; but fresh swarms succeeded, and committed new outrages and depredations throughout the island. Thus fortune was alternately propitious, till the reign of Brian Boru, who came to the throne of Munster in 965. This gallant hero soon compelled the enemies of his country to flee before him. In 970, he attacked Limerick, of which they had become masters, drove them from this post, and pursuing his advantage, gained over them from twenty-five to thirty pitched battles.

Defeat of the Northmen.—Success so brilliant and uninterrupted, united with truly royal qualities, prudence, valor, magnanimity and patriotism, elevated the king of Munster to the higher station of monarch of Tara. Some years after his elevation, he was again summoned to the field by a new and formidable attack of the Danes. Regardless of his advanced age, he resolutely marched at the head of thirty thousand warriors against his undaunted foes, and attacked them in the plains of Clontarf, on the 23d of April (A.D. 1014). The battle lasted from eight in the morning till four in the afternoon, with a display of almost superhuman courage on both sides. It raged most fiercely around the chiefs of either party, numbers of whom perished in this memorable action, among others, Brian's heroic son, Morrough, who, during the whole conflict, had performed prodigies of valor; Brian himself was slain in his tent after the battle, by a fugitive Dane. Notwithstanding these losses of the Irish, their victory was complete, and the Danes were driven from the field with immense slaughter.

The battle of Clontarf gave the deathblow to the power of the Northmen in Ireland. Of the survivors, some bade an eternal farewell to the country; others submitted to the government which they had in vain endeavored to subvert, and the remainder, few in number, mingling with the mass of the population, gradually disappeared as a distinct people. Thus was Ireland, through her own persevering efforts, entirely freed from those terrible and

obstinate invaders; an event so much the more glorious, as this very period witnessed their success in England, of which they made themselves masters, and over which, during three successive reigns, they ruled with absolute sway.

DANISH KINGS IN ENGLAND—SAXON LINE RESTORED, A.D. 1016—1066.

Edmund Ironsides.—The bloody struggle of the Anglo-Saxons against the Danes, their obstinate enemies, had now lasted two hundred years, when Edmund, surnamed *Ironsides* (from his great bodily strength), came to the throne of England in 1016. This prince seemed destined to restore the independence of his country, having, within the short space of six months, fought no fewer than five battles, and gained nearly as many victories over the Danish King Canute. But having been, through the perfidy or cowardice of a certain Count Edric, entirely defeated in the fifth battle, the noblemen of both parties, equally tired of this sanguinary warfare, obliged their sovereigns to come to a compromise, and divide the kingdom between them. Edmund died within a month after this treaty of pacification, and left Canute in possession of all England.

Canute, 1016–1035.—The Saxons had no reason to repent of submitting to this foreign prince. No sooner did Canute see himself secure on the throne, than he became, from a turbulent warrior, a just and beneficent monarch. He often lamented the bloodshed and misery which the Danish war had inflicted on the natives. and considered it his bounden duty to compensate their sufferings by a mild and equitable administration. He always treated them with kindness, and, placing the people of the two nations on a footing of equality, admitted them alike to offices of trust and emolument. By this means, he won the affection of all, even of his English subjects; while he also gained their admiration and esteem by his Christian virtues and sincere piety, of which he gave a striking proof on the following occasion:

Canute's character.—Being one day near the seashore, his courtiers, to flatter him, said that he was the king of kings, the master of both land and sea. Canute

took this opportunity to show how much he despised their foolish flattery. Sitting down, and addressing himself to the tide which was advancing: "I am thy master," he exclaimed; "mine also is the earth: I command thee, therefore, to stay where thou art, and not to move farther and wet my feet." All present thought the king mad, to imagine that the sea was going to obey his orders: it continued to advance, and at length came to the feet of the monarch. Turning to his flatterers, he said: "You see how far I am from being the master of all things. Learn hence that the power of kings is very inconsiderable. There is indeed no other king than Almighty God, by whom alone the heavens, the earth and the sea are governed." He rose at these words, went to the church of Winchester, and taking the crown from his head, placed it on the great crucifix in the cathedral, and never more wore it even at public ceremonies.

End of the Danish Supremacy, 1042.—Canute was king not only of England, but of Denmark also, and moreover acquired and exercised a sort of jurisdiction over the Norwegians, the Swedes, the Welsh and the Scots. This vast extent of dominion rendered him one of the mightiest monarchs in Europe, while his truly royal qualities gained him universal respect from foreign princes. He died after a glorious reign of eighteen years (A.D. 1035). His kingdoms were divided among his three sons, two of whom successively reigned in England, namely, Harold and Hardicanute. After their death, the English having determined to restore the Saxon line of their monarchs, Edward, a brother to Edmund Ironsides, was recalled from Normandy where he had spent many years in exile, and with general applause, ascended the throne of his fathers (A.D. 1042.)

Edward the Confessor 1042-1066.—If we estimate, as Dr. Lingard observes, the character of a sovereign by the test of popular affection, we must rank Edward among the best of princes. While alive, the goodness of his heart, which he had improved in the time of banishment, was adored by his subjects; and, after death, his memory became an object of veneration to posterity. The blessings of his reign are the constant theme of ancient English writers; not that he displayed any of those brilliant qualities which attract the admiration of

the world, while they inflict misery on the human race: but he exhibited the interesting spectacle of a king negligent of his private interests, and entirely devoted to the welfare of his people. To ward off foreign aggression and restore the dominion of laws, to preserve peace and promote religion, were the constant objects of his solicitude. He was pious, kind, and compassionate, the protector of the weak, and the father of the poor; more willing to give than to receive; more inclined to pardon than to punish, and better pleased to bestow his own revenues in acts of charity, than profit by the labors of his subjects.

Edward published a new compilation of the statutes of his Saxon predecessors, among which those favorable to the people held the first rank. Hence they were ever after called *the laws and customs of the good king Edward.* This truly good and excellent monarch died in the beginning of the year 1066, and was canonized, about a century after, by Pope Alexander III.

NORMANS IN ENGLAND—WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR. A.D. 1066-1087.

Harold and William.—By the death of King Edward, England was replunged into the miseries of war. As he had died without issue, the British sceptre was claimed by several competitors, among whom Harold, the chief of the English nobility, and William, duke of Normandy, were the most powerful. Setting aside the question which of the two was more entitled to the throne, both of them were worthy of it through uncommon qualifications of body and mind, and, what was very singular, each one claimed it in virtue of the late king's will and appointment, and the former also by election of the Thanes.

While William prepared to prosecute, by arms, his claims or his pretensions, Harold, being already present in the kingdom, was the first proclaimed and acknowledged as its sovereign. But he had the misfortune to be opposed at the same time, not only by a foreign rival, but also by his own brother Tostig, in whom he experienced, for having been accessary to his exile during the preceding reign, a bitter and deadly enemy. Tostig visited Normandy, and arranged a plan of coöperation with the duke; having moreover sent deputies to the northern princes, he

succeeded in obtaining the assistance of Hardrada, king of Norway. A gallant army in a fleet of three hundred sail, unexpectedly appeared, landed without opposition, and subdued the province of Northumberland with York its capital. Harold, who was at that time awaiting the threatened descent of the duke of Normandy, lost no time in marching against the Norwegians. He overtook them at Stamford Bridge, and completely defeated them in a bloody battle, in which both his perfidious brother and the Norwegian monarch were slain. The survivors were compelled to re-embark.

Almost simultaneously with this great victory, intelligence arrived that the Normans had just landed on the coast of Sussex. William having at length completed his vast preparations for the invasion of England, crossed the channel with a fleet of at least nine hundred vessels, which carried an army still more formidable for the valor than for the number of the combatants. The duke set them an example of wonderful daring. At the very moment of the landing of his troops, happening to fall on the shore, and being afraid lest this should appear to weak minds a bad omen for the success of his enterprise, he cried out with admirable presence of mind: "I take possession of England; it belongs to me; I lay hold of it with both hands." At the receipt of the fatal news, Harold mustered his forces, and led them straight forward against the enemy. He had defeated the Norwegians on the 25th of September; on the 14th of the following month, he arrived in sight of the Normans, at a place called Senlac, nine miles from Hastings.

The battle of Hastings or Senlac, Oct. 14, 1066.—The next day both armies prepared for battle. Harold posted his troops on the declivity of a hill in one compact body; William marshalled his host on the opposite eminence, and arranged with particular care the squadrons of his numerous cavalry, on which he principally rested his hope of success. After the usual discharge of arrows, the Norman knights fiercely advanced against their motionless opponents. The shock was dreadful; but the English at every point opposed a vigorous and successful resistance, and their battle axe was so powerfully wielded, that the aggressors could not prevent their left wing from being thrown into confusion. Even a report was spread

that William himself had fallen; and the whole army was beginning to waver, when the duke, riding along the line, exclaimed: "I am still alive, and, with the help of God, I shall gain the victory." This revived the courage of the Normans, and those among the English who had incautiously pursued the left wing too far, were intercepted and cut to pieces.

The combat having now recommenced with greater vigor. William had recourse to a stratagem suggested by his previous success: he ordered a division of his cavalry to feign flight; a considerable number of their opponents pursued them, and were instantly destroyed. This, however, did not suffice to decide the bloody contest: the main body of the English obstinately maintained their position, and, by always opposing to the Normans a solid and impenetrable mass, bade defiance to all their efforts. The battle continued in this manner, with doubtful success, from nine in the morning till about sunset, when Harold, who had, like William, constantly animated his troops by word and example, was shot by an arrow which penetrated to the brain. He instantly fell among heaps of the dead, and the knowledge of his fall broke the spirit of the surviving English: at dusk they fled in utter confusion, dispersed through the woods, and were pursued, with great slaughter, by their victorious enemy.

Such was the ever memorable battle of Hastings, which put an end to the Saxon line of monarchs, and placed the Norman dynasty on the throne of England. On the side of the conquerors, more than one-fourth of their army, which amounted to almost sixty thousand men, were left on the field; the number of the slain among the vanquished, although justly supposed to have been much greater, is unknown; all agree at least in pronouncing the victory of William complete and decisive. After refreshing his army by a few days' repose, and taking the castle of Dover, he marched straight to London. His unexpected presence spread terror and dismay among the people, the nobility and the clergy, who were there assembled; they however received him with expressions of congratulation, and offered him the crown, which, after some hesitation, he accepted.

William I. the Conqueror, 1066-1087.—From the best and most impartial historians, it appears that the plan of William was that of a mild and moderate government. His first acts tended to sooth the feelings and to win the esteem of the English. Having shortly after his coronation, made a tour through the kingdom, he everywhere scattered benefits around him, and graciously received the submission of his new subjects. The privileges of the citizens were rather increased, nor was any change attempted in their laws and customs, unless imperiously required by existing circumstances. It is true that, in order to secure their obedience, he built and garrisoned castles in various parts of the country, and granted valuable rewards to his Norman followers; but the former step was a precautionary measure which it would be unreasonable to blame in a conqueror; and the latter transaction appears to have been so far conducted according to the strict rules of justice, as to give to no Englishman any just cause of complaint.

These proceedings however displeased the natives, and William soon perceived that he had gained neither their favor nor confidence. As he had set out in the spring of 1067, to visit his continental dominions, the English, no longer awed by his presence, thought it a happy opportunity to obtain their freedom. Their feelings of aversion for a foreign yoke were now highly excited by the imprudence of the governors, whom the Conqueror had left, and who, instead of adopting his system of conciliation, arrogantly oppressed the people; the hatred of the people increased, discontent became general, and rebellion seemed everywhere inevitable.

William being informed of all this, returned to England with a secret determination to crush by severity, a people whom he could not win by mildness. In fact, from this time forward, he laid a heavy hand upon his English subjects, and treated them with that rigor which he thought the right of conquest justified. He obliged them to extinguish their fires and candles at an early hour (eight o'clock) in the evening, the signal for which was given by a bell called the *curfew* (*couvre-feu*); nor were they permitted to rekindle their fires till the morning bell, which rang at four o'clock. His policy suffered no Englishman to hold any place of trust. By means of

fines, land taxes, banishment, and sometimes capital executions for crimes of state, William had the disposal both of property and honors, and secured in his own hands the whole strength of the nation.

If these measures terrified some of the natives, others raised the standard of insurrection in different parts of the kingdom. But nothing could surprise William. His vigilance, firmness and activity disconcerted all the plans, or baffled all the measures of the insurgents; and his good fortune so constantly prevailed, that every attempt to ruin his power, served only to establish it more firmly. He maintained it with equal success against foreign enemies, the Scots, the Danes and the French. At last after having gloriously reigned during forty-one years in Normandy, and twenty-one in England, he died in 1087; odious indeed to many, on account of his severity, but still in point of natural talents, of enterprising spirit, of political and military achievements, undoubtedly one of the first princes, and perhaps the most conspicuous sovereign of his age. His posterity, either in the right, or in the female line, has ever since occupied the throne of Great Britain.

NORMANS IN ITALY.—A.D. 1016-1089.

Beginning of Norman power in Italy.—The subjugation of England was not the only conquest made by the Normans in the eleventh century; during the same period, other warriors of the same nation equally astonished Europe by their exploits in Italy. A little before the year 1016, forty Normans, returning from a pilgrimage to tho Holy Land, happened to stop at Salernum, a maritime town of Campania, at the very time when it was closely beseiged by the Saracens. These pilgrims were men of remarkable size, warlike appearance, and still greater courage. Having penetrated into the town, they asked for arms and horses, and, making a sudden sally against the besiegers, slew many of them, put the rest to flight, and by a signal victory obliged them to abandon the siege. Both the prince and the inhabitants of Salernum exceedingly admired their valor, loaded them with presents, and endeavored to retain such useful warriors in their country. But they refused, alleging that they had

fought for no other end than the glory of God and the honor of his religion. However, the Italians prevailed upon them to carry to their countrymen different kinds of excellent fruit, as proofs of the fertility of the land, and an inducement to come to Italy.

Tancred.—To a warlike and enterprising people, proposals so flattering could not fail to be acceptable. Many Normans flocked to the peninsula, and, by defending it against its enemies and invaders, began to acquire in that delightful country rich and honorable settlements. Among these fortunate adventurers, there was a whole family of heroes, consisting of the twelve sons of a certain Norman lord, called Tancrede, who, with the help of some hundreds of their countrymen, performed most surprising exploits. Sometimes united with the Lombards and Italians against the Greeks, sometimes with the Greeks against the Saracens, they became a match for all, defeated numerous armies, took well defended and fortified towns, and subdued extensive provinces.

Robert Guiscard and Roger.—Of these heroic brothers, the most illustrious were: William Ironarm, who, by incredible exertions of courage, solidly established the Normans in Apulia (A.D. 1043); Robert Guiscard, who stripped the Greeks of their last possessions in the same province (1080); and Roger, who expelled the Saracens forever from Sicily (1089). All these conquered territories formed, when united, a powerful and flourishing state, which lasted upwards of one hundred years. During that interval, the Norman princes who ruled over it, a number of times defeated the emperors of Constantinople, but were themselves, in the end, obliged to yield to the emperors of Germany.

CHIVALRY, PARTICULARLY IN SPAIN.—RISE OF THE KINGDOM OF PORTUGAL. A.D. 1045-1095.

THE age which immediately preceded the Crusades, was eminently the age of chivalry properly so called, The order of chivalry was composed of Knights-Errant, who rode through all parts of the country, in complete armor, for the purpose of redressing grievances, and of protecting innocent, weak and afflicted per-

sons, against tyranny and oppression. Their origin may be traced to the reign of Charlemagne, or thereabouts; their decline must be referred to the twelfth century, which gave rise to many Military Orders, of far greater merit and celebrity than private knighthood; however, during the epoch of which we are now speaking, chivalry, notwithstanding the abuses that occasionally attended it, proved truly beneficial to humanity and social order in Europe, especially when there was question of defending Christians against infidels.

Ruy Diaz the "Cid."—Owing to its state of constant warfare against the Moors, Christian Spain possessed numbers of those generous knights ever ready to shed their blood in the cause of national glory, religion, and justice. Among them, the foremost in heroic valor and fortitude was the illustrious Rodriguez Diaz of Bivar, who, during the last fifty years of the eleventh century, fought with wonderful success the enemies of his country. All Europe resounded with the fame of his prowess and repeated triumphs; of the battles he had fought, the victories he had won, the princes he had conquered, the towns he had subdued; exploits so much the more astonishing as they were effected entirely by his personal exertions, and frequently performed without any assistance from his sovereign. His fame extended even to Asia; and the Mohammedan king of Persia sent deputies to the Christian knight of Spain, to congratulate him upon his glorious achievements. The name of *Cid,* or *Seid* (lord), under which he is known in history as well as poetry, was given him for the first time by the ambassadors of five Moorish chieftains whom he had just defeated in a great battle. He died in 1099.

Christian ascendancy over the Moors.—It was chiefly with the help of this great warrior that King Alphonso VI. succeeded in the most important and difficult expedition as yet attempted by the Christians against the Moors. This prince cherished an ardent desire to reconquer Toledo, the ancient capital of the Goths, which had been in the power of their enemies for three hundred and seventy-two years, and which contained nearly three hundred thousand inhabitants. No sooner was his intention made known, than, from all parts of Spain and other states of Christendom, multitudes of warriors and knights

flocked to the standards of the Spanish monarch, to share with him in this glorious enterprise. The siege was long and perilous, and the defence was not less vigorous than the attack. At length the bravery of the Saracens yielded to the valor of the Christians, and, in the spring of 1085, Toledo, with many other towns, surrendered to Alfonso, who made it the capital of his kingdom and the seat of his residence, instead of Burgos, the chief city of old Castile.

Among the foreign knights who had come to unite their efforts with those of the Spaniards for the achievement of this great conquest, the most distinguished were Counts Raymond and Henry of Burgundy, of the royal family of of the Capetians in France. In every battle, they displayed a valor worthy of their rank, and on every occasion evinced such noble feelings, as to attract general esteem, and particularly from the Spanish king. In order to secure their subsequent services, Alfonso gave them his daughters in marriage, and loaded them with honors. The posterity of Raymond inherited the throne of Castile, and occupied it until it passed, by alliance, to the house of Austria, in the beginning of the sixteenth century. Henry was invested with extensive power over the more western provinces which had been taken from the Moors, and thus laid the foundation of the Portuguese monarchy, so called from Porto, its first capital (A. D. 1095). This new state, however, did not acquire the title of kingdom, until forty-four years later, when Alfonso Henriquez, the worthy son of Count Henry, having gloriously defeated five Saracen kings on the same day, was himself proclaimed king by his troops on the field of battle.

AFFAIR OF INVESTITURES.

Pope Gregory VII. (Hildebrand).—During these civil revolutions in many parts of Christendom, transactions of a different nature engaged the public mind in Germany and northern Italy. The custom had been introduced in various places, and particularly throughout the German empire, of putting the newly elected bishops and abbots in possession of their benefices, by giving them the ring and the crosier, the symbols of pastoral authority. As this ceremony, called *investiture*, seemed to imply the

conferring of spiritual jurisdiction by temporal princes, it was, after due examination, justly considered as an encroachment on the rights of the Church. Not content, however, with exercising it, the emperor Henry IV. carried on a shameful and most scandalous traffic in ecclesiastical dignities, bestowing them, not on worthy candidates, but on those who offered him the largest sums of money. Pope Gregory VII. inveighed against these crying abuses with ardent zeal and unabated vigor. But both his entreaties and expostulations were disregarded; and the wicked emperor, instead of amending his conduct, convened an assembly at Worms, in which, with a body of schismatical associates, he presumed to pass sentence of deposition against the pontiff (A.D. 1076).

Excommunication of Henry IV.—This outrageous act served only to increase the zeal of Gregory. He not only continued to govern the Church with apostolic vigor but even thought that his duty required more than he had hitherto done. With the advice of a numerous council, and taking into consideration both the incorrigibleness of Henry and the repeated complaints of his oppressed subjects, he excommunicated him, and pronounced him fallen from his royal dignity; at the same time declaring the Germans no longer bound by their former oath of allegiance to him. Singular as the power may appear which Gregory then exercised, the general opinion of his contemporaries admitted that it lay within the sphere of papal jurisdiction, and it was supported by the civil and common jurisprudence of the times.*

Henry IV. at Canossa.—At the news of the sentence pronounced by the pope, the lords and princes of Germany assembled in great numbers, in order to appoint another emperor in the place of Henry. The distressed monarch

---

* This point has been, from a variety of public and authentic documents, set in the clearest light by the learned and judicious author of a very able work published in Paris, entitled: "*Pouvoir du Pape au moyen age.*" It is likewise solidly proved by Count de Maistre (*Du Pape, livre* 11, *ch.* x.); by Abbé Jager (in his *Introduction to the life of Gregory VII.*, translated from the German), etc. Nay, it is admitted by many celebrated Protestant writers, such as Leibnitz, *De Jure Supremat*ûs, Pseffel, etc. and even by the infidels Bolingbroke and Voltaire. This alone must appear sufficient to vindicate the conduct of Pope Gregory with regard to the emperor Henry IV., and of some of his successors towards other sovereigns of the same stamp.

perceived the gathering storm, and saw no means of averting it but by a reconciliation with the See of Rome; he therefore departed in great haste for Italy, fully determined to effect this desired reconciliation on any terms. Gregory had left Rome and advanced as far as Canossa, a castle of Lombardy, on his way to Germany where he was expected by the princes. Henry, in a penitential garb, presented himself before the gates of the castle, humbly begging to be admitted into the presence of the pontiff, acknowledging his guilt, and with every mark of true repentance, expressing his readiness to give all the satisfaction in his power.

Gregory, who had more than once experienced the insincerity and inconstancy of the emperor, kept him, by way of trial, in suspense for three days: on the fourth day, Jan. 28, 1077, he gave him an audience, received his submission, and absolved him on certain conditions. But the repentance of Henry did not last more than fifteen days; having assembled a numerous army, he refused to comply with the terms which he had accepted, and resumed his former course of violence against Church and State. At length the German lords, disgusted with this faithless and wicked monarch, proceeded to the election of another, and chose Rudolph, Duke of Suabia, for their sovereign. Still, Henry remained master of the empire, his competitor having perished in a battle near Merseburg, after three years of a disputed succession (A.D. 1080).

Henry IV. besieges Rome.—Death of Pope Gregory VII.—Elated with success, the conqueror marched at the head of his troops into Italy, and besieged Rome, which he took after a long siege, more however by bribery than by force of arms. He entered the Lateran palace, and endeavored to have the excommunicated bishop of Ravenna, Guibert, declared pope, under the name of Clement III. In the mean time, Gregory had retreated into the strong castle of St. Angelo, where he remained secure till the arrival of Robert Guiscard, the valiant leader of the Normans, who compelled the emperor to retire with his anti-pope. The lawful pontiff was thus left master of the city; but, as party violence rendered it either unsafe or unpleasant for him to remain there, he removed first to Mount Cassino, and thence to Salerno, where he was taken dangerously ill. In his last moments,

he uttered these words: "I have loved justice, and hated iniquity; wherefore I die in a strange land;" * after which, amidst the prayers and tears of the cardinals and bishops who had gathered around him, he calmly expired, on the 25th of May, 1085.

Henry IV.'s death.—Far different was the end of his violent persecutor. The obstinate perseverance of Henry in the schism kept up a strong opposition against him in Germany; even his own sons openly revolted, and obliged him to abdicate the crown. The dethroned monarch retired to Liege, where he died shortly after, like the early persecutors of the Church, a prey to excessive grief and misery, and hated by the whole world. He had reigned about fifty years, and during that time, had been present in sixty-two battles, in most of which he was victorious. His exploits, his bravery, and his talents might have placed him among the greatest emperors of Germany, had he not disgraced himself by his perfidy, and by yielding to detestable and unruly passions.

Concordat of Worms.—The question of investitures was settled after his death; in the year 1122, the emperor Henry V. agreed to resign the right of giving the ring and the crosier, and this transaction was solemnly confirmed by the first general council of Lateran, in 1123.

REMARKS ON THE MIDDLE AGES.

TRUCE OF GOD.

The ninth, tenth and eleventh centuries, are commonly called the *middle*, and, by a numerous class of writers, the *dark* ages. To know whether or how far this second appellation is correct, deserves a particular investigation, and will be the object of the following remarks.

The Church the mother of science and knowledge.—In the first place, it must be confessed that, a short time after the reign of Charlemagne, ignorance began anew to greatly increase in Europe, especially among nobles, many of whom, being exclusively devoted to

* "Dilexi justitiam et odi iniquitatem, propterea morior in exilio."

the profession of arms, even boasted of their want of instruction and literary knowledge.* But never perhaps were more strenuous efforts made to keep alive the sacred flame of science, and promote the instruction of youth, than were made by the Church at the period of which we are speaking.† Besides smaller schools for children in country parishes, there were in large cities, in monasteries, and in episcopal houses, various institutions in which a relish for study and learning was carefully preserved. In these, besides the Holy Scriptures and Christian doctrine, the students could learn what were then termed the seven liberal arts; Grammar, Logic, Rhetoric, Arithmetic, Geometry, Astronomy and Music. Many schools of this kind are known to have existed in Italy, England, France, Germany, etc., such as those of Rome, Lyons, Paris, York, Oxford, Fulda, Ratisbon, Paderborn,‡ etc. They did not, it is true, possess men like St. Basil and St. John Chrysostom, Fenelon and Bossuet, Newton and Leibnitz; yet it cannot be denied that they produced many learned writers and eminent scholars, who might have become

---

* Many deeds and legal instruments of those ages are found, which terminate thus: "And the aforesaid lord has declared that he did not know how to sign his name, owing to his being a nobleman."

† See the decrees of Popes Eugenius II, Leo IV., etc., in the councils of Rome, A.D. 826, 853, etc.;—the canons of the councils of Mentz and Chalons, A.D. 813; of Paris, 829; of Valence, 855; of Toul, 859, etc:—and the statutes of Herard, Archbishop of Tours; of Rieulfus, bishop of Soissons; etc. Merely to quote one or two of these decrees; the council of Toul, in the tenth canon, earnestly entreats princes and recommends bishops to establish everywhere public schools, for the teaching of both sacred science and polite literature: and Herard, archbishop of Tours, in his book of synodical regulations, commands his priests to have, as far as they can, schools in their parishes. Not long before, Theodulphe, bishop of Orleans, had expressed himself thus, in the 20th Art. of his *1st Capitular*; "Let the priests establish schools in towns and villages for the instruction of children, and not refuse to receive and teach those who are personally addressed to them. But in so doing, let them require no salary, nor accept anything but what may be voluntarily and charitably offered by the parents."

‡ In Paderbornensi ecclesiâ publica floruerunt studia, quandò ibi musici fuerunt, et dialectici enituerunt, rhetorici, clarique grammatici. Ubi mathematici claruerunt, et astronomici habebantur, physici atque geometrici. Viguit Horatius, magnusque Virgilius, Sallustius et Statius. *Apud* Thomassin, *Discipl. de l'Egl. Part.* II, *l.* I, *ch.* 99. n. 2;—*vol.* II. *col.* 638.

In the same chapter and in other chapters of the same work, the learned Oratorian shows that studies were also very flourishing in the schools of Worms, Paris, Lyons, and still more so in that of Rome, of which he speaks at length, and then says; "Let us conclude that the pontifical palace of Rome was the palace of polite literature, and the sanctuary of ecclesiastical learning." *ch.* 100, n. 3. See also on this subject, Digby's *Ages of Faith, vol.* II *part* III, *ch.* 5 and 6.

models for posterity in point of literature and learning, had they enjoyed the number of books and other advantages which we now possess.

Distinguished learned men.—Whatever may be the diffusion of superficial knowledge at the present day, it may certainly be doubted whether in point of solid, profound and extensive learning, many persons could be found superior to such men as Lupus, abbot of Ferrieres, a writer of the ninth century, in whose treatises and letters all impartial critics acknowledge an immense fund of erudition ; or St. Bruno, archbishop of Cologne, in the tenth century, whose biographers relate that there was no part of Latin and Greek literature, no branch of sacred and profane learning, with which he was not familiar.* The same, or nearly the same, may be said of the following authors, as their own writings testify ; Agobardus, archbishop of Lyons, who died in 840;—Rabanus, archbishop of Mentz, 856 ;—Paschasius Radbertus, a monk, 865 ;—St. Ado, archbishop of Vienne, in France, 875 ;—Anastasius, the Roman librarian, 880 ;—Hincmar, archbishop of Rheims, 882 ;—Remigius of Auxerre, a monk, 908 ;—Notker, a monk of St. Gall, 612 ;—Atto, bishop of Vercelli, 960 ;—Flodoardus, a canon in the church of Rheims, 966 ;—Sylvester II., pope 1003 :—Abbo, a monk and abbot of Fleury, 1004 ;—Fulbert, bishop of Chartres, 1029 ;—St. Peter Damian, cardinal, 1072 ;—St. Gregory VII., pope, 1085 ; Lanfrancus, archbishop of Canterbury, 1089 ;—St. Bruno, founder of the Carthusian order, 1101 ;—St. Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, 1108 ;—and many others, belonging to the secular clergy or to religious orders.

To speak now of laymen ; although generally less fond of study and less instructed, it ought not to be imagined that they were plunged in a state of barbarism and complete darkness—far from it ; an attentive perusal of the history of the Middle Ages will rather lead to the conclusion that without knowing how to display much elegance in their manners, and to appreciate the flowing periods of Demosthenes and Cicero, they had in their noble sim-

---

* *Præter Sacras litteras* quidquid historici, oratores, poetæ atque philosophi, novum et grande perstrepunt, diligentissimè cum doctoribus cujus cumque linguæ perscrutatus est. Nullum penitùs erat studiorum liberalium genus, in omni Græcâ vel Latinâ eloquentiâ quod ingenii sui vivacitatem aurugeret. *Apud.* Thomass. *lib. cit.* c.99, *n* 3.

plicity, as much good sense and judgment with regard to affairs of real importance, as we have in this our age *of light*, and frequently more than we manifest. They knew how to set a higher value on religion than on temporal concerns, even their own lives; they knew how to refer their best achievements in the arts to the honor and service of the Almighty rather than to the petty motives of selfish gratification and human applause; they knew, too, how to examine attentively difficult matters, to reason with accuracy, to act with prudence, to succeed in complicated negotiations, and adopt the best course in perplexing circumstances: witness, among others, the emperor Otho I. in Germany; Kings Alfred, Edgar and Canute in England; Hugh Capet in France; Alfonso III. in Spain, and John of Gortz and Luitprand, the ambassadors of Otho I. to the courts of Cordova and Constantinople.

Inventions during the Middle Ages.—Nor did our ancestors want sagacity and genius for useful discoveries and improvements, since many were made during the Middle Ages. It was at the end of the tenth century that Gerbert, a monk afterwards archbishop of Ravenna, and at length pope under the name of Sylvester II., invented clocks with a balance, which continued in use till pendulums began to be employed in 1650. To him also arithmetic was greatly indebted for its progress. About the same time, lanterns, and paper made of cotton rags, commenced to be used. Towards the year 1022, Guy, a monk of Arezzo in Italy, invented and introduced into the Church singing the gamut or scale of musical notes, by which a child can learn in a few months, what no person before could learn without several years of study. With regard to mechanical arts, it is enough to read the history of the siege of Jerusalem in 1099, to know what wonderful and complicated machines of every description were constructed by the first Crusaders, men consequently of the Middle Ages.

True character of Arabian culture.—Still, if credit were to be given to certain authors, the inhabitants of western Europe, at the time of which we are speaking, were mere barbarians, compared with the Arabs, to whom alone, we are told, belonged the honor of cultivating letters and the arts and sciences. This notion is altogether false and unjust. The Arabs indeed, whether in the

empire of Bagdad or in the kingdom of Cordova, distinguished themselves by a great show of politeness and magnificence, by some happy discoveries, and the brilliant dreams of their imagination; but that they were superior, in point of solid acquirements, to the Christian nations of Europe, it would be difficult to prove, and may be justly doubted.* Their metaphysical science instead of being a source of true learning, was filled up with subleties taken from the categories of Aristotle; their astronomical observations were blended with the ridiculous theories of astrology, and their prejudices against anatomy and surgery greatly impeded the progress of the art of medicine. Nor were they better in historical composition, which was characterized by a bombastic style and exaggerated statements. Hence the learned author of a recent history of the Crusades does not hesitate to prefer the plain and unaffected narrative of the First Crusade, left by some Christian writers of the eleventh century, to the Arabian records of the same epoch. †

Christian architecture during the Middle Ages.—Another and still more striking vindication of the Middle Ages against the charge of complete darkness is to be found in the great number of splendid churches that were then built throughout Christendom, many of which still exist; for, as several learned men have justly remarked, the state of architecture has always been in every country a sure proof of the degree of perfection in which the other arts flourished. Not only was this advantage possessed by England during the reign of the great Alfred, but also by other countries under less favorable circumstances. A little before the close of the tenth century,

---

* Even at the time when arts and sciences were in their most flourishing state among the eastern Arabs, namely, under Al-Mamon the son and second successor of Haroun-Al-Raschid: that caliph was himself obliged to acknowledge the superiority of Christian scholars over his subjects. In his own palace, a Greek slave, who had formerly studied mathematics in Constantinople, confounded all the doctors and masters of the court. While all present stood astonished, the slave said that there were many persons among his countrymen more skilful than himself, above all, a certain philosopher, called Leo, from whom he had received lessons. In fact, as a geometer and an astronomer, Leo had not his equal in the whole empire. The caliph endeavored, but in vain, by the most flattering letters and promises, to bring him over to Bagdad: the Emperor Theophilus would never let him go, nor consent to deprive his own capital of so distinguished a scholar.—See Lebeau, *Hist. du Bas. Emp. vol.* XVI. *pp.* 441, 446.

† Michaud, *Hist. des Croisades, vol.* I., *p.* 519.

an opinion had been entertained by many simple persons that the world would end with the year 1000, nor had the writings of learned men been able to remove that imaginary fear. But when all saw the eleventh century begin without accident, joy took the place of terror, and the gratitude of the people towards Almighty God prompted them to repair churches, or build new ones still more worthy, by their splendor, of being consecrated to his honor.

Gothic Cathedrals.—Then, indeed, arose in different parts of Christendom those Gothic temples whose appearance, at once grand, majestic and imposing, surpasses the flimsy elegance of most modern edifices. Then were laid in many European cities the foundations of those splendid cathedrals, in which we still admire the symmetrical rows of beautiful pillars supporting immense arched roofs, the towering steeples, and a thousand other ornaments : monuments the more astonishing and worthy of admiration as they are found even in many inconsiderable cities, and bear testimony to the grand ideas as well as to the zeal and piety of our European ancestors.

Conversion of Northern Europe.—Furthermore it was also during the Middle Ages that, through missionaries from Italy, Germany, France, England, etc., northern Europe received the light of the gospel ; that the Normans, the Hungarians, the Danes, the Swedes, the Russians, the Bohemians, the Poles, etc , began at the same time to become Christian and civilized nations. But how could this, we may ask, have been effected by any of their contemporaries, had those contemporaries been themselves mere barbarians? How could so arduous a task ever have been undertaken and performed, except by men equally zealous and learned, equally possessed of the heroic virtues and great mental acquirements? And indeed, that such were the qualifications of the missionaries who subjected these nations to the laws of Christianity, we learn from all the documents of that period.

From this variety of evidence and facts we are certainly authorized to conclude, in the first place, that the opinion commonly entertained about the Middle Ages is egregiously wrong : and secondly, that it is to the Catholic Church, to her popes, bishops and monks, that we stand indebted for the preservation of civilization, literature, arts and sciences in Europe. The complete revival of

letters came from the same source, and the progress of ignorance, after having been vigorously opposed even in the most difficult times, was at length effectually checked (A.D. 1179–1215), by the decrees of popes Alexander III. and Innocent II., in the third and fourth councils of Lateran, conformably to which decrees, colleges and universities began to spring up in every part of Christendom.

The "Truce of God."—Another excellent institution that owed its existence to the Middle Ages, and for which humanity was also indebted to the happy influence of religion, was the sacred compact usually termed the *Truce of God.* From the ninth to the eleventh century, the feudal system, however beautiful in many of its principles, had been a constant source of contentions and wars. Each petty chieftain arrogated to himself an almost unlimited use of force and violence to avenge his wrongs, and enforce his rights whether real or pretended. As, moreover, vassals, were obliged to espouse the quarrels of their immediate lords, rapine, bloodshed and their attendant miseries were everywhere; nor could the most peaceful citizens depend on one moment of perfect security, either for their properties or their lives.

Religion, by her divine and universally revered authority, was alone capable of raising an efficacious barrier against this torrent of evils. Experience having already shown the impossibility of stemming it at once, prudent measures were taken gradually to diminish its violence. Several bishops ordered under penalty of excommunication that every week, during the four days consecrated to the memory of our Saviour's passion, death, burial, and resurrection, viz., from the afternoon of Wednesday till the morning of the following Monday, whatever might be the cause of strife and quarrel, all private hostilities should cease. Shortly after, the same prohibition was extended to the whole time of Advent and Lent, including several weeks both after Christmas and after Easter-Sunday. This beneficial institution, which originated in France towards the year 1040, was adopted in England, Spain, etc. and was confirmed by several popes and councils: nor must it be thought that it remained a dead letter; its success, on the contrary, was so remarkable, that the pious age in which the experiment was made, hesitated not to attribute it to the interposition of heaven.

Thus by the exertions of ecclesiastical authority, the horrors and calamities of feudal war began to be considerably diminished. Its ravages were restrained to three days in the week and to certain seasons of the year; during the intervals of peace, there was leisure for passion to cool, and for social habits to become more and more deeply rooted. A considerable number of days and weeks afforded security to all, and all being now shielded by this sacred compact, could travel abroad, or attend to their domestic affairs, without danger of molestation. Such was the splendid victory which the religion of Christ won over the natural fierceness of the ancient tribes of the North; a victory perfected also by her influence, when the Crusades obliged these restless warriors to turn against the invading hordes of the Saracens and Turks, those weapons which they had hitherto so frequently used against their fellow-Christians.

PART V.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE CRUSADES (A.D 1096), TO THEIR END (A.D. 1272.)

ORIGIN AND CAUSES OF THE CRUSADES.

We have now reached the eventful period in which a violent struggle took place between two great divisions of the globe, for the possession of Jerusalem and Palestine; when Europe, shaken, as it were, to its foundation, seemed repeatedly to precipitate itself against Asia. The better to fix our attention on so grand and interesting a subject, we will be more than ever careful to say little about contemporary transactions of merely secondary importance.

By *Crusades* are meant those military expeditions which were set on foot under the banner of the cross, for the purpose of delivering the Holy Land from the oppressive yoke of the Mohammedans. Numerous and forcible were the motives that urged the nations of Europe to engage in these expeditions. New hordes of barbarians were threatening to invade all Christendom, and required a powerful barrier to check their destructive course. The Seljukian Turks had conquered, within a few years, the fairest portions of western Asia; the extent of the Greek empire was more and more reduced by their usurpations; and the emperor Alexius Comnenus, harassed and distressed on every side, eagerly solicited the assistance of the Latins against the common enemy of Christianity.

On the other hand, public indignation was roused throughout Europe by the daily recital of the enormities which the Arabs and Turks committed in the Holy Land, and of the cruel treatment which they inflicted on the Christians, whether inhabitants of the country, or travellers and pilgrims who went to Jerusalem. At this period, a lively faith and fervent piety induced multitudes of Christians from all countries to visit the places consecrated by the sufferings of our Redeemer. When, after a

thousand dangers and hardships, they arrived in Palestine, the gates of Jerusalem were opened only to those who could pay a piece of gold; and, as most of them were poor, or had been plundered on the way, they were obliged to linger in wretchedness around the city for which they had left their native land and every domestic comfort. Many died of hunger, or fell by the sword of the barbarians. In the city itself, they who had been allowed to enter it, were exposed, like its Christian inhabitants, to all sorts of torments and outrages, some being loaded with chains, some forced to draw a car or a plough, and others condemned to an ignominious death. Those who could escape and return to Europe, did not fail to relate what they had seen and suffered; and these reports being widely circulated, excited universal commiseration among the faithful.

FIRST CRUSADE.—A.D. 1096-1099.

Peter of Amiens.—Such were the feelings of Christian Europe when a French priest, called *Peter*, and surnamed the *Hermit* on account of his retired life, undertook a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. Seeing the cruel oppression which weighed down his brethren in Asia, his heart was deeply afflicted; and, after a moving interview with Simeon, the pious patriarch of Jerusalem, he prevailed upon him to write to the pope, and to the princes of Europe, for the purpose of imploring their assistance, offering himself to be his deputy and the bearer of his letters. This measure being readily adopted, Peter set out from Palestine, crossed the seas, and, landing on the Italian coast, hastened to the pope, Urban II. The pontiff received him with kindness, listened to him with emotion, praised his devotedness and zeal; and, as he himself was convinced of the necessity of opposing the alarming progress of the infidels, and of rescuing the eastern Christians from oppression, he commissioned Peter to go forward and preach everywhere in favor of the speedy deliverance of Jerusalem.

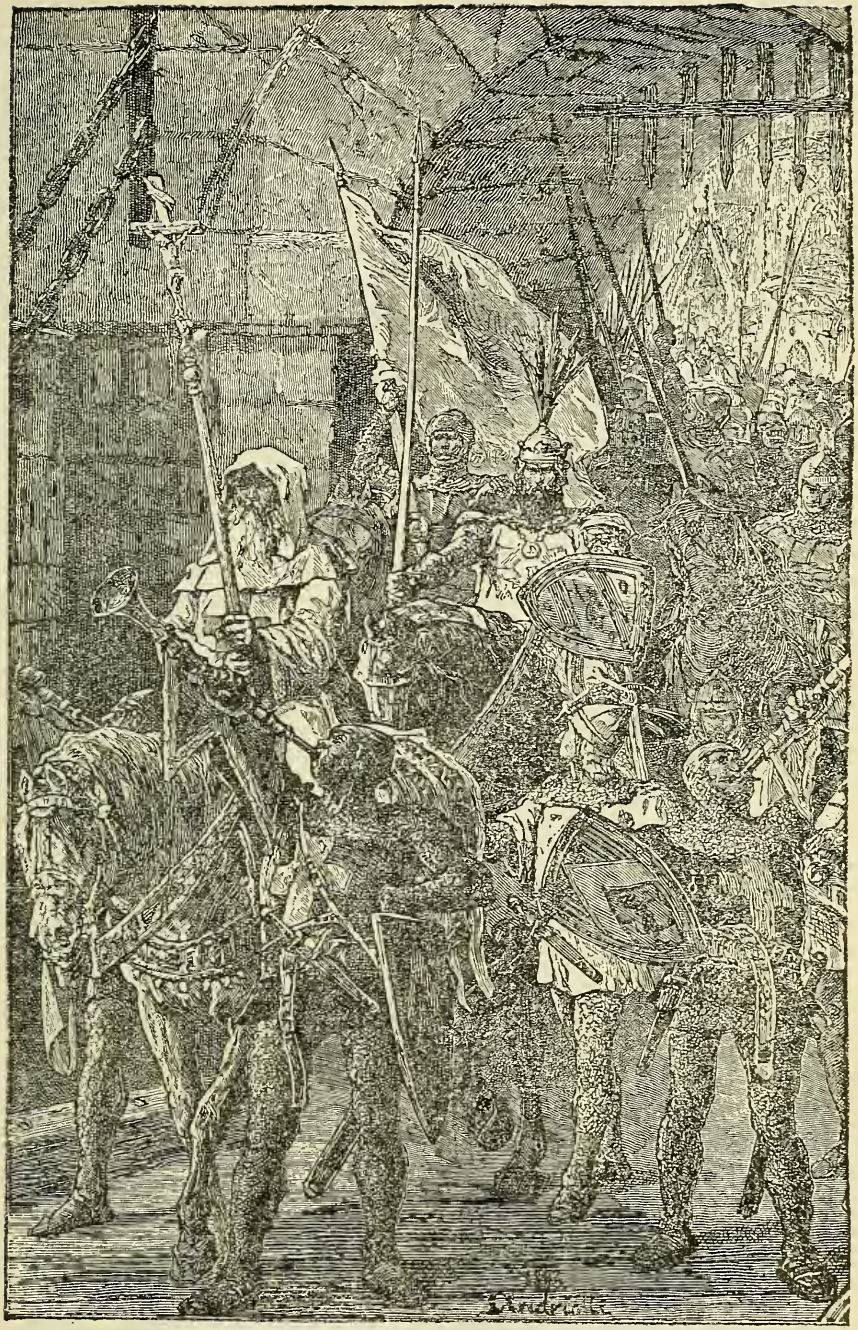
Councils at Placentia and Clermont.—The generous hermit was eminently qualified for this noble office. Though poorly clothed and of mean appearance, he was a man of elevated mind, great energy of soul and heroic sen-

timents; his pathetic and glowing eloquence readily found its way to the hearts of his hearers. He travelled through Italy, France and other countries, communicating to all by his preaching and his exhortations, the zeal with which he himself was animated. The pope soon followed him, and, after a first council held at Placentia in Italy, appointed for the final decision another to be celebrated at Clermont in France towards the close of the year 1095.

The assembly met at the time and place which had been assigned, and, from the great number of bishops, princes, dukes, and other distinguished persons who composed it, together with an immense crowd of spectators, it might be considered a general convention of Christendom. Peter the hermit having first spoken with his usual ardor in favor of the holy war, Pope Urban delivered an eloquent and animated discourse, at the end of which the whole assembly spontaneously exclaimed: *God wills it; God wills it.* Most of those who were present hastened to be enrolled for the sacred expedition. They wore, in token of their holy cause, a *cross* made of red stuff, and commonly fastened on the right shoulder; whence originated the name of *Crusaders* and *Crusade.*

The enthusiasm spread rapidly through the cities and states of Christendom. Those who in the council of Clermont, had listened to the animating voice of the pontiff, on their return to their homes diffused a similar fervor among their countrymen. Thousands and thousands flocked to the banner of the Cross from every part of Europe, particularly from France and Italy where all ranks manifested the greatest eagerness to share in the Crusade, and, forgetting their private quarrels, began to prepare for their departure into the East.

Leaders of the First Crusade.—Among the princes who engaged themselves in the holy war at the head of their vassals and subjects, the most illustrious were: Raymond, count of Toulouse; Robert, duke of Normandy, and brother of the king of England; Hugh the Great, count of Vermandois, and brother of the French king; Stephen, count of Blois; Robert, earl of Flanders; Godfrey of Bouillon, duke of Lorraine, with his two brothers Eustace and Baldwin; and Bohemond, prince of Tarentum, with his heroic nephew, Tancred, the very personification of ancient chivalry. Warriors like these



CRUSADERS ON THE MARCH IN ROME.

To face p. 276

He loaded the chiefs with presents, used every means in his power to attach them to his interest, and making them fair promises of powerful aid, gave directions that vessels should be prepared, with the utmost despatch, to convey them across the Bosphorus to the Asiatic coast.

Attack upon the territory of the Sultan of Iconium.—The Christian army, consisting of about six hundred thousand men, about one-sixth cavalry, directed their march to Nice, the chief city of Bithynia. This town, famous for the reception it formerly gave to the Fathers of two general councils, was now in the power of the Turkish Sultan Kilidgi Arsland, or Soliman the younger; a prince highly commendable for the inexhaustible resources of his genius and the unshaken firmness of his character. At the head of a numerous body of cavalry, he moved forward to protect his capital. Furious and repeated attacks were made against the Christian camp, but, after prodigious efforts, the Crusaders remained masters of the field, and bore off the spoils. Soliman himself could not forbear admiring the lion-like courage of the Christian leaders, who, with a thousand lances, would often break and put to flight twenty times that number of Turkish troops. Thus repulsed with great loss, he retired to a distance in order to collect new forces, and attack the Christians at their departure with greater advantage.

Siege of Nice.—The siege was now carried on with unabated vigor, the besiegers and the besieged making use of all the resources that military science had hitherto devised for the attack and defence of fortified places. Besides a double wall and a numerous garrison, the city was protected on one side by large ditches, and on the other, by the lake Ascanius; but the Christian warriors were not to be stopped or dispirited by these obstacles. They at length succeeded in preventing all access to the town, even by the lake; and Count Raymond undermined one of the principal towers. Nice, reduced to the last extremity, was on the point of being stormed, when the flags of the Greek emperor suddenly appeared on the walls, Alexius, by private embassies, having prevailed upon the inhabitants to surrender to him rather than to the Franks. This artful conduct highly displeased the Crusaders: still, not to break their treaty with the Greeks,

nor be diverted from the main object of their enterprise, they consented to leave the town in the hands of Alexius; for they had previously promised him to conquer in his name, and to restore the cities which had formerly belonged to the empire of Constantinople, on condition that he should aid them in the conquest of the Holy Land.

Baldwin founds the principality of Edessa.—As, however, the Greek monarch soon evinced little inclination to fulfil his own promises, the Latin lords thought themselves no longer bound by the treaty. Shortly after the reduction of Nice, they began to occupy the cities of Asia-Minor and Syria, to leave garrisons in them, and appoint governors in their own name. Tarsus and the rest of Cilicia were already in their possession, when Baldwin, the brother of Godfrey, led off a detached body of Crusaders towards the north, and traversed a large tract of country inhabited entirely by Christians, till he came to the Euphrates. The citizens of Edessa, in Mesopotamia, as soon as they heard of his arrival, invited him to take them under his protection. He cheerfully acceded to their request, assumed sovereign power among them, and established a principality, which stood until the year 1144, when it was subdued by the famous chieftains Zenghi and Nouradin.

Victory of the Crusaders at Dorylæum.—A little before the departure of Baldwin, the Crusaders were exposed to a greater danger than they had yet encountered. As they were marching in two great divisions, the less numerous body, commanded by Robert of Normandy, Bohemond and Tancred, was suddenly attacked near Dorylæum in Phrygia, by a countless multitude of Turks, Persians and Arabs, who covered all the hills and plains as far as the sight could extend.* Bohemond instantly sent messengers to Godfrey of Bouillon and to the other princes, whom he knew to be near, to inform them of the danger with which he was threatened. In the interim, he drew up his forces as well as the spot permitted, and, at their head, together with Duke Robert and Tancred,

* The number of the Turks and Persians is believed to have amounted to nearly two hundred thousand men, all on horseback; as to the Arabs, says a contemporary historian who was present at the battle, so great was their multitude that God alone could count them.

exerted all his courage to resist the shock of the enemy. The battle lasted for many hours; but about noon the Christians, forced back by the multitude that pressed upon them, and exhausted by heat, thirst and fatigue, began to give way before the infidels, and their defeat seemed inevitable, when repeated shouts and a cloud of dust rising from behind the hills announced the arrival of the main body of the Crusaders.

Godfrey, Hugh the Great, and Robert of Flanders, had taken the lead with fifty thousand cavalry; Raymond of Toulouse and Adhemar of Puy were following as rapidly as possible with the rest of the army. Each one marshalled his troops, as they came up; and, after the usual cry, "God wills it," all, with levelled lances, advanced against the Turks, who vainly endeavored to maintain the superiority which they had acquired. Unable to withstand the charge of the Latin chivalry, the infidels fled in disorder, and abandoned to the Christians their camp with all their provisions and treasures (A. D. 1097).

The loss of the Crusaders, after so long and severe a battle, was less than might have been anticipated; only four thousand of them are said to have fallen, and nearly all in the earlier part of the day. The loss of the Turks was far more considerable, as it amounted to upwards of twenty thousand soldiers and three thousand officers, with several of their generals. Those who escaped, spread themselves, by the orders of Soliman, in large bands over the country, and hopeless of defending it any longer, began to waste and destroy everything in their way. When the Crusading armies, after some days of repose, resumed their march, they found themselves obliged to traverse large tracts which had been completely ravaged by the enemy. There, in barren plains or narrow defiles, under a scorching sun, and without water to quench their thirst, thousands sank under the weight of fatigue and sickness, and most of the horses perished. Still, the survivors marched with an unshaken resolution, and at length reached a better country. After subduing many towns, and defeating many parties of Turks, they saw themselves in the midst of delightful plains, near the great and well fortified city of Antioch, the capital of Syria.

Siege of Antioch.—In a council of war held by the leaders, it was thought unsafe to leave so important a place behind them. Accordingly, they resolved to besiege it; an undertaking, which the strength of the ramparts, the valor of the garrison, and the imprudence of the Crusaders rendered both tedious and difficult. At first, many of the Christians, delighted with the beauty of the land, spread themselves without precaution through the neighboring plains, where they were surprised and slaughtered by the Turks. Others, forgetting their duty and the laws of the Gospel, gave themselves up to many disorders, which God did not delay to punish, want of food during winter, continual rains and other calamities having soon caused the death of many, and made others repent of their excesses. At length, the united exertions of the princes and clergy put an end to those evils. Abundance returned with the spring; the courage of the troops was revived with the restoration of good order and discipline; and the Moslems were repulsed, whenever they attempted to attack the Christian camp, whether from the town or from the neighboring country. On one occasion, particularly, they were entirely defeated, and, by the vigorous efforts of the Christian knights, experienced such slaughter, as to lose twelve of their generals called emirs, and fifteen hundred of their most distinguished warriors, besides a multitude of others who were drowned in the river Orontes.

Still, Antioch continued to resist with undaunted obstinacy. Every means employed by the Crusaders to destroy its mighty bulwarks, proved ineffectual; and all their efforts might ultimately have failed, but for the following circumstance. The prince of Tarentum had of late opened a secret correspondence with a Mussulman officer named Phirouz, formerly a Christian, who was invested with the chief command in three of the principal towers that defended Antioch. By splendid promises, Bohemond succeeded in inducing this officer to deliver them into the hands of the Christians. The plan was concerted between them; the darkness of a stormy night facilitated its execution; and in a few hours the whole army, being introduced into the city, took possession of it on the third of June, 1098. At the break of day, Bohemond planted his banner on one of the highest towers, and was, by common assent,

acknowledged sovereign of Antioch and its dependencies, under the title of prince.

Kerboga, Emir of Mosul.—The joy of the Crusaders at this valuable conquest, was in a very short time dampened. They had not yet subdued the citadel, into which a great part of the garrison had retired, nor taken measures to procure the necessary supplies of provisions, when they saw themselves besieged by an army much more numerous than their own. It consisted of three hundred and sixty thousand men, whom the Persian sultan sent to the relief of Antioch, under the command of Kerboga, prince of Mosul. This general manifested on every occasion the greatest contempt for the Crusaders and, having arrived too late to preserve the city from their invasion, he considered them as so many victims reserved for his vengeance.

Sufferings of the Crusaders.—Everything, at first, seemed to favor his design. After a few days, the Crusaders, having consumed all the provisions in Antioch were exposed to a most dreadful famine, so far as to eat the flesh of horses and camels, afterwards leaves of trees, and boiled leather. Such was the excess of their misery, that many of these renowned warriors, even among the barons and knights, after having resolutely endured a thousand other hardships, now lost courage, abandoned their colors, and fled from Antioch. Both the strength and resources of those who remained, were exhausted. Several of the chief lords themselves were reduced to absolute beggary, and became completely dependent on the bounty of Godfrey even for their food, till he himself having killed his last horse, had nothing more to give. Mourning, consternation and death reigned throughout Antioch, and the whole city seemed destined to become the sepulchre of the Christian soldiers; nor could the princes, either by exertions or entreaties, stimulate them to new combats.

In this desperate state of things, the evil suggested its remedy. The Crusaders, deprived of all human assistance, placed their hopes in heaven; and, in the abyss of misery to which they were reduced, they received with the greatest alacrity every token and mark of the return of God's special protection, their warlike enthusiasm being particularly excited, as many authors relate, by the discovery of the lance which had pierced the side of our Saviour.

In the meanwhile, Tancred, ever foremost in heroic feelings and actions, pledged himself with an oath not to turn back from the road to Jerusalem, so long as he should be followed by sixty knights; and the whole army, imitating his example, took the same oath. Furthermore, the unexpected discovery of some provisions in the city increased the confidence and restored the strength of the soldiers of the Cross. Their activity, resolution, and energy reappeared; they felt in themselves the same intrepid ardor which they had displayed in former battles, and loudly asked to be led against the enemy.

Victorious sally of the Crusaders.—The princes lost not a moment. The gates of Antioch were thrown open, and early on the morning of the twenty-ninth of June, one hundred thousand emaciated but brave warriors were seen marching out with noble assurance, while the banks of the Orontes and the neighboring hills resounded with their usual battle cry, "God wills it; God wills it." Kerboga did not imagine, at first, that the Crusaders could entertain the thought of fighting, and believed they were coming to implore his clemency. His illusion having soon vanished, he hastened to draw up his numberless squadrons in battle array, and made several skilful movements for the purpose of surrounding the comparatively small host of the Crusaders. The Christians, on their side, with little attention to the ordinary arts of warfare, continued to march on, their courage increasing rather than diminishing; till, having come within bowshot of the Persians, after the clarions and trumpets had sounded, they rushed against the enemy.

Kerboga's signal defeat.—Then only did Kerboga and his troops perceive what sort of heroes were Tancred, Godfrey, Hugh-the-Great, the duke of Normandy and the earl of Flanders, whose swords flashed with the rapidity of lightning. As the other chiefs arrived, they also threw themselves into the thickest of the battle; and the fight had scarcely lasted one hour, when the infidels began to waver. They endeavored, but in vain to stop the Christian soldiers by setting the weeds on fire; nothing could damp the enthusiasm of the Crusaders; the Persian columns were driven forward, broken and routed with dreadful slaughter. In vain too did their most courageous warriors attempt to rally upon a hill behind a

deep ravine; the Christian knights, hurried on by almost superhuman valor, followed them across the precipice, and their victorious swords destroyed all who dared await their approach. The Persians were scattered in every direction through the woods and hollows; and the banks of the Orontes, the mountains, the plains, appeared covered with fugitives abandoning their colors and throwing aside their arms. The haughty Kerboga himself, who had promised the sultan the entire defeat of the Christians, and who had, in anticipation of that event, prepared a great quantity of fetters for his prisoners, fled towards the Euphrates with a few horsemen, leaving a hundred thousand of his bravest soldiers on the field of battle. The loss of the conquerors was ten, or, according to several historians, only four thousand.

Immense was the booty of gold, arms, rich vestments, horses, cattle and provisions which the Crusaders found in the Persian camp. The whole army, loaded with wealth and rejoicing in their abundance, entered once more within the walls of Antioch, and made the air resound with their thanksgivings for the triumph which they had obtained. To the infidels themselves this victory of the Christians seemed so wonderful that many were induced, on that account, to abandon the religion of Mohammed. They who defended the citadel of Antioch, struck with astonishment and terror, surrendered, on the very evening of the battle, to Count Raymond who had been left to guard the town; three hundred of them embraced Christianity; and several went through the cities of Assyria, everywhere proclaiming that the God of the Christians was the only true God.

Expedition towards Jerusalem.—The way towards Jerusalem was now left open; the princes however, for the sake of granting to their troops a necessary repose, thought proper to postpone their further advance till the next spring. In that interval, a pestilence broke out among the Crusaders, sweeping off not only thousands of the less cautious multitudes, but also many illustrious knights, and the venerable bishop of Puy, whose noble qualities of mind and heart had given much dignity and strength to the enterprise. Another sad effect of the delay just mentioned, was that it enabled the Egyptian caliph to turn the losses of the Turks to his own profit: driving them

from Jerusalem, whilst he amused the leaders of the Crusading host with proposals of alliance, he took possession of the Holy City. It was therefore against this new enemy that the Christians had to fight during the last period of the Crusade (A.D. 1099).

Arrival before Jerusalem, June 7th, 1099.—The time appointed for their departure from Antioch at length arrived. They advanced along the fertile coasts of Phœnicia, and then through the desolate lands of Palestine, without finding much resistance; at length, on the seventh of June, Jerusalem lay before their eyes. No one can sufficiently describe the pious transports which, on the appearance of the Holy City, the remembrance of our Saviour's passion and death excited in every bosom, and their feelings of indignation at beholding Jerusalem in the hands of the infidels. The army marched on in haste, driving back some parties of the enemy, and almost immediately made so vigorous an assault that the town would probably have been taken at the first onset, but for want of ladders and other necessary instruments. After many had fallen on each side to no effect, the attack was suspended, and all the energies of the Crusaders were employed in constructing wooden towers, catapults, battering rams and other warlike engines.

Five weeks' siege of Jerusalem.—While these machines were being made a severe drought afflicted the army. For many days the soldiers of the Cross again experienced all the inconveniences of heat and thirst; and their number, already so much diminished by previous plagues, diseases, desertions, battles, and garrisons left in various places, became reduced to about forty thousand, one-fourth of whom were unable to fight. The garrison alone of Jerusalem was more numerous than the whole army of the Crusade; the town, too, was defended by strong fortifications, and supplied with all things requisite for a long resistance.

So many obstacles, instead of abating, seemed rather to increase the ardor of the Christians; and as soon as the engines were completed, the attack was renewed. Early in the morning of the fourteenth of July, towers, mangonels and battering rams moved all at once against three different parts of the wall, and began to cast a shower of arrows and stones, and to make a breach. Language can-

not describe the violence of this first shock. As did princes, who fought all that day from the platform of their wooden towers, the multitude of the assailants fearlessly braved all kinds of perils; but, in return, the Saracens obstinately opposed them at every point, and being abundantly furnished with darts, boiling oil, and Grecian fire, spread ruin and dismay among the Christians. Thus passed that whole day in one of the most tremendous encounters that the Crusaders had ever sustained; night came on, and the besiegers re-entered their camp, burning with indignation because the city was not taken.

Storm of Jerusalem on July 15th, 1099. — On the following day, a new attempt was made to storm the city. During the whole morning thousands of darts were heard continually whizzing through the air; beams and rocks, thrown by the engines, dashed against one another, and fell with a frightful crash upon the assailants. Many of them had already been killed, or had received wounds at the foot of the ramparts; the others were almost exhausted, whilst the Saracens, on the contrary, seemed to fight with renewed vigor. At that moment, Raymond and Godfrey, though placed at a great distance from each other, suddenly exclaimed that they saw a celestial warrior coming to their assistance, and giving a signal to enter the town. This instantly revived the fainting hopes of the Christians; prodigious efforts were made on all sides; the tower of Godfrey, in spite of a shower of darts and Grecian fire, was rolled forward till it touched the wall; and, a movable bridge being let down, two illustrious brothers, Letold and Engelbert of Tournai, immediately sprang upon the battlements. They were followed by the intrepid duke and other knights, who bore down upon the Saracens with irresistible force, and rushed after them into the very streets of Jerusalem. Tancred, with the earl of Flanders and the duke of Normandy, imitated their example in another quarter; while Raymond of Toulouse, almost at the same instant, forced his way into the town by scaling the walls. Thus was the Holy City, after exertions of the most heroic fortitude, at length taken by the Christians, on a Friday at three o'clock in the afternoon; a circumstance which has been carefully noted, as coinciding with the day and hour in which our Saviour expired on the cross.

Terrible Massacre.—Most terrible were the first moments of victory. The Crusaders, exasperated by their long sufferings and by the obstinate resistance of the infidels, and being also probably afraid of new dangers, put to the sword nearly all the garrison and inhabitants of Jerusalem. The streets, the mosques, and the citadel were filled with blood, and the number of the slain is estimated by many to have been at least seventy thousand.

Pilgrimage to the Church of the Resurrection.—After this bloody scene, the conquerors exhibited a spectacle more consonant with the mild spirit of Christianity. Assuming the robe of penitents, and going up to the Holy Sepulchre, they bedewed with their tears the spot consecrated by the sufferings and death of our Blessed Redeemer. The princes afterwards directed their attention to the appointment of a king, for the defence and preservation of Jerusalem; and the brave, the generous, the virtuous duke of Lorraine, Godfrey, was chosen by unanimous consent. For the sake of the public good, he modestly accepted the distinguished task intrusted to him; but firmly refused the diadem and other insignia of royalty, saying that he would never consent to wear a golden crown, where the Saviour of the world had been crowned with thorns.

Godfrey feudal king of Jerusalem.—Scarcely was Godfrey proclaimed king, when certain information arrived of the approach of a powerful army sent by the caliph of Egypt against the Crusaders. The new sovereign and his undaunted knights instantly determined to meet the foe half-way, which they did with as much alacrity as if they had been going to a feast. After a few days, they met the enemy in the vast plains of Ascalon, near the sea. Notwithstanding the great disparity between the opposing forces, the host of the Crusade having been reduced to twenty thousand men, whilst the Egyptians and their allies amounted to about four hundred thousand, the Christians gained, with less difficulty than on any former occasion, a complete victory. In a few moments, and with the loss of but a few soldiers, they strewed the plain with ninety thousand dead bodies of the Egyptian army, and dispersed the rest. The enemy, says a contemporary historian, fell under their

swords, as the grass falls in the harvest before the mower;* or, to use the words of a great poet, fled at their approach, as clouds are seen flying through the air, when driven before the northern blast.† The victorious army, after gathering an immense quantity of spoils, returned in triumph to Jerusalem.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE FIRST CRUSADE.—RETURN OF THE CRUSADERS.

Such was the result of the First Crusade, one of the most heroic enterprises and most brilliant expeditions of all ancient and modern history; one which, notwithstanding the accidental interference of human passions was sustained by the loftiest and noblest motives that ever animated an army, and was at length brought to a happy issue by prodigies of valor and feats worthy of eternal remembrance. We behold in it a multitude of warriors, knights and princes leaving their country and their homes, their estates and their dignities, for the sake of religion and of humanity. We see them cheerfully exposing themselves to all the dangers of a long and distant expedition, undergoing the fatigues of a painful march, the severity of the winters or the excessive heat of the climate, famine, thirst and contagious distempers; and still, almost continually fighting against the Turks, the Persians and other foes, frequently too against their own imprudence, and the dangers occasioned by the quarrels of the leaders or the want of discipline among the troops. We see them, through the various vicissitudes of the Crusade, surmounting all these obstacles, conquering all their enemies, and, at last, bringing their enterprise to a fortunate conclusion. What warlike achievement is more deserving of the admiration of posterity?

Nor can it be objected, that the success of the Crusaders was owing to their overwhelming numbers; this

---

* *Apud* Michaud, *Hist. des Croisades, vol.* I. *pp.* 475–76.

† La Palestine enfin, après tant de ravages,
Vit fuir ses ennemis, comme on voit les nuages
Dans le vague des airs fuir devant l'Aquilon;
Et des vents du midi la dèvorante haleine
N'a consumé qu' à peine
Leurs ossemens blanchis dans les champs d' Ascalon.
B. Rousseau, *Ode against the Turks.*

circumstance proved rather a disadvantage, on account of the difficulty they had to procure a sufficient quantity of provisions in an unknown country. Moreover, their number was soon greatly diminished by desertion, famine, disease and battles; so that, in the end, they were far less numerous than their enemies. It is true, many bodies of fresh troops were successively sent from Europe to their assistance; but none of them arrived, having all been destroyed before reaching Syria, either by starvation, or by the swords of the Turks. Hence, the success of the First Crusade could be attributed to no other cause than the heroic patience, constancy and intrepidity which the crusaders evinced, during three years, in a great number of combats, but chiefly during the sieges of Nice, Antioch and Jerusalem, and in the great battles at Dorylæum, at the Orontes and at Ascalon, against all the forces of Asia and Africa.

Fate of the principal leaders.—After this last victory, which secured their conquests and crowned all their exploits, most of the Crusaders thought of returning to Europe. Count Raymond, however, did not go farther than Constantinople; but being invested by the emperor Alexius with princely jurisdiction over the territory of Laodicea, he retraced his steps into Syria, to take possession of this new state. Baldwin and Bohemond were already settled in their principalities of Edessa and Antioch. Robert of Flanders and Robert of Normandy reached their European dominions, and were received with great joy by their vassals and subjects; but the latter, having imprudently undertaken to dethrone his brother Henry I., king of England, was taken prisoner, and, being unable to recover his liberty, died after many years of severe confinement. Peter the Hermit also revisited his native country, and, retiring to a monastery founded by himself, lived sixteen years in the practice of the most edifying virtues. As to Hugh the Great and Stephen of Blois, having departed from the East before the end of the Crusade, shame and public discontent compelled them to go back to Asia, where they both fell while fighting against the infidels.

Among the other knights who returned to France, history has not forgotten two noble twin-brothers, Stephen and Peter of Salviac, whom their own age admired as

models of fraternal affection. Peter having taken the cross in the council of Clermont, Stephen, though authorized by many just reasons to remain at home, determined to follow his brother, and to share with him all the perils of the Crusade. In battles, they always stood side by side; and they fought together at the sieges of Nice, Antioch and Jerusalem. A short time after their return from the East, they both died in the same week, and the same sepulchre received their mortal remains; their tomb bears an inscription transmitting to posterity the remembrance of their exploits and of their admirable friendship.

KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM.—A.D. 1095-1144.

Godfrey 1099-1110.—By the death or departure of most of the Crusaders, the new kingdom of Jerusalem was left to be maintained by the wisdom of Godfrey and the sword of Tancred, with an army of less than three thousand men. Fortunately, this want of forces did not last long; fresh bands of Crusaders daily arrived from Europe, and the new sovereign was enabled, not only to defend, but also to enlarge his conquests. He at the same time compiled and published, for the improvement of his rising state, an admirable code of laws, under the title of "*Assises de Jérusalem*," and promoted or patronized many establishments equally beneficial to religion and social order, above all, the Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem, who afterwards became so much renowned as the Knights of Malta.*

His character.—These numerous achievements were

* Their first origin dated from the year 1048, when certain merchants of the city of Amalfi in the kingdom of Naples, trading in the Levant, obtained leave from the Saracen caliph to build a house at Jerusalem for pilgrims, on the condition of paying an annual tribute. Shortly after, they founded in honor of St. John the Baptist, a church and a hospital, from which they took their name; and being exceedingly favored by Godfrey and his successors, they enlarged their benevolent projects, and, besides attending the sick and pilgrims with the utmost care and assiduity, bound themselves by a vow to defend all Christians in the Holy Land against the attacks and insults of infidels. By this noble determination, the Hospitallers, without ceasing to be a *religious*, became a *military* order, and a permanent body of sacred soldiery, which conferred innumerable services on the kings of Jerusalem and on all Christendom.

accomplished by Godfrey within the short space of one year. On his return from a distant expedition, he was seized with a severe illness, and died on the eighteenth of July of the year 1100, leaving behind him so unblemished a reputation for wisdom, courage and virtue, that his name, equally extolled by history and poetry, will ever live in the memory of men as the brightest ornament of the First Crusade. From his earliest years, his father, one of the greatest warriors of that age, taught him, by theory and practice, how to excel in the profession of arms. His mother, a very pious lady, impressed on his tender mind the maxims of our holy faith, which he ever afterwards observed, even at the head of armies, with as much regularity as if he had been in a religious house, always commencing and concluding his enterprises with acts of religion. Free from ambition and other human weaknesses, his views were always perfectly disinterested, his feelings always generous, his morals always pure; and not only did he thus constantly present a perfect example of honor and virtue, but the troops also which he commanded, were, during the whole Crusade, distinguished above all others for their excellent order and discipline. Never was there indeed a more admirable model of Christian chivalry; nor did fabulous antiquity ever picture to itself so accomplished a hero as Godfrey of Bouillon. He prepared for death with the same piety and fortitude of mind that he had evinced during life; and, in his last moments, recommended to his knights the promotion of the divine glory and the defence of the Holy Land. The Christians, overwhelmed with grief, buried him near the Holy Sepulchre, the preservation of which was so dear to his heart; and the infidels themselves shed tears over the tomb of a prince whom they were obliged to acknowledge, notwithstanding the difference of religion, to

---

The Knights Templars were instituted in 1118, also at Jerusalem, by some French and Flemish noblemen, for nearly the same purposes as the Knights Hospitallers, but under a plan and rule somewhat different. They derived their name from the first house which they possessed in the holy city, it being situated near the site of the temple of Solomon. The Teutonic order owed its establishment to some nobles from the cities of Bremen and Lubeck who assisted at the siege of Ptolemais in 1190, and was intended for the relief of German pilgrims. There were also three military orders founded in Spain alone, viz., the orders of St. James, Alcantara and Calatrava; and one, that of Avis, in Portugal.

have been at once the mildest and the greatest of their sovereigns.*

Baldwin I., 1110–1118 and Baldwin II., 1118–1131.—The first successors of Godfrey in the kingdom of Jerusalem, were Baldwin I., his brother, and Baldwin II., his cousin. Both of them prosecuted, with great vigor, the glorious work which he had commenced; and, notwithstanding some defeats, they gained considerable advantages over the Saracens. Strong and important cities were successively conquered, and the Christians now possessed in Asia four extensive princedoms, Jerusalem, Antioch, Edessa and Tripoli. The Greeks, too, strove continually to recover some of their former possessions in Asia Minor and Syria; and, on many occasions, under their warlike and skilful emperors, Alexius and his son, John Comnenus, success accompanied their efforts. Had the forces of the empire been at that time united with those of the Latins, the Turks might have been totally expelled from those envied regions. Unfortunately, mutual differences always kept the two powers at a distance from each other; and, what was more unfortunate still, after the death of Baldwin II., in 1131, jealousy, animosity and violent dissensions began to arise among the Latin princes themselves.

Fall of Edessa.—From this time, therefore, the prosperity of the Christian states began to decline in the

---

* To enable the reader more fully to appreciate the incomparable merit of Godfrey of Bouillon, we may be allowed to adduce, from authentic sources, some particular instances of his wonderful strength, generosity and piety.

During the siege of Nice, a certain Turk of gigantic stature signalized himself by the immense slaughter he made of the Christians, throwing upon them large fragments of rocks from the wall. Godfrey advanced, and shooting an arrow with a vigorous hand, sent the weapon directly to his heart, and left him dead on the battlement.—During the stay of the army in Asia Minor, riding out on horseback in a wood, he saw a huge bear about to kill a poor soldier who was gathering sticks. Regardless of his own danger, the generous duke rode up, and seizing one of the paws of the ferocious beast with his left hand, with the right plunged his sword into its body to the very hilt.—In the field nothing could resist the edge of his sword; helmets and cuirasses were broken by it to pieces. In one of the battles which preceded the capture of Antioch, a Turkish officer of extraordinary size and bravery singled him out as the object of attack. Godfrey, indignant at such boldness, raised himself in his stirrup, and rushing against his opponent, aimed a blow which cut the infidel in twain. The upper part of the body fell to the earth; but the headless trunk, being tied to the saddle, remained on the horse, and was thus carried into Antioch

East. The Moslems scattered through the country took advantage of every new dispute among the conquerors, to harass them with a desultory warfare. At length Zenghi, sultan of Aleppo and Mosul, attacked, stormed and took Edessa in 1144; after which his son Nouradin, pursuing the same line of policy against the Christians, began to threaten their other possessions in the East. The news of these calamitous events being spread abroad, gave occasion to the

SECOND CRUSADE.—A.D. 1147.—1149.

Bernard of Clairvaux.—King Louis VII. of France and Conrad III. of Germany.—Deputies had been sent in haste from Syria to Europe, for the purpose of obtaining necessary auxiliaries. Immediately after their arrival, the Crusade was preached under the direction of Pope Eugenius III., by the celebrated abbot of Clairvaux, St. Bernard, whose eloquent exhortations, supported by great miracles, had exactly the same effect which the exertions of Peter the Hermit had produced fifty years before. Such was the excitement produced in France and Germany, that King Louis VII. the Younger and the emperor Conrad III. took the cross, with all the choicest men of both nations, so as to form in a very short time two powerful armies. The Germans alone brought to the

---

where the awful sight spread terror and consternation among the Turks. In fine, such was the strength of the duke of Lorraine, that, being once requested by some Saracen emirs to display it in their presence, he with one blow, severed the head of a camel from the body.

On the other hand, such was his moderation, that he never undertook to vindicate by force mere private rights, or to avenge personal injuries, his sword, he used to remark, being destined to spill the blood, not of Christians, but of infidels, and that, only in unavoidable battles. At the taking of Jerusalem, a success owing chiefly to his intrepid valor, he no sooner saw victory declare in favor of the Christians, than he ceased fighting, laid aside his armor, and hastened to visit the Holy Sepulchre with the most edifying piety: an example which was soon imitated by all the Crusaders. Mild and innocent as a lamb in the ordinary course of life, he was like a lion on the field of battle. While the other princes respected him as a perfect model of Christian chivalry, the multitude loved him as the best of fathers; and his servants being asked, before the election of a king of Jerusalem, about his private character, could say nothing against him, except that he remained too long in church after the divine offices; in consequence of which, they complained, his dinner frequently grew cold, and became almost good for nothing. This was the only fault that could be found in the whole conduct of Godfrey.

field seventy thousand horsemen with coats of mail, beside light cavalry and the infantry, The French host consisted of a hundred thousand warriors. These forces were more than sufficient to repair the losses suffered by the Christians in the East, and to foil all the attempts of their enemies; but, such was the perfidy of the Greeks, and the want of discipline among the Latins, that no great enterprise ever failed so completely as the Second Crusade.

Unsuccessful progress of both armies.—Both armies started in the year 1147. The Germans, being the first to reach the neighborhood of Constantinople, began to experience the ill-will of the Greeks, which, it must be confessed, they sometimes provoked by their predatory and disorderly acts. The emperor himself, Manuel Comnenus, is generally charged with having, under the veil of friendship, acted perfidiously towards them. This at least is certain, that the Crusaders, without experience against cunning, were deprived by the Greek population of their money and of the means of procuring necessary provisions; while, on the other hand bodies of soldiers attacked them when marching through narrow defiles. Finally, treacherous or unskilful guides led them through the difficult passes of Cappadocia, where they had to endure all the horrors of a cruel famine, and at last saw themselves surrounded by the Turks. The heavy-armed Germans in vain endeavored to reach the Turkish cavalry. All their courage could not protect them against numberless foes, who fled and rallied with surprising quickness, attacked their exhausted squadrons from the tops of the mountains, and harassed them by continual skirmishes. It became absolutely necessary to retreat towards Bithynia, under an incessant shower of arrows, every day adding thousands to the number of the slain. Conrad himself received two wounds; and when, at length, he reached the city of Nice, he could scarcely gather around him a tenth part of the knights and soldiers who had followed him from Europe.

The French, under the command of Louis, had less perhaps to suffer from the Greeks, and yet were not less unfortunate than the Germans. Victorious at first on the banks of the Meander, which was crossed in spite of all the efforts of the Turks, they experienced, after a few

days, a signal overthrow near the town of Laodicea in Phrygia. This disaster was brought upon the Christian army by the imprudence of a single general. On coming near a steep mountain, the commander of the vanguard had received orders from the king to halt on the summit, and there wait for the rest of the army. Disregarding this just command, the incautious man, after accomplishing the ascent, advanced into the plain on the other side, two or three miles beyond the spot specified: in the meantime, the Turks, taking advantage of the terrible mistake, occupied the hill and thus completely separated the two divisions of the Crusaders.

Such was the perilous position of the French army, when the rear, commanded by the king in person, and as yet unaware of its danger, began to climb the mountain in full security and without any precaution against an attack. On a sudden, as they were toiling up the steep acclivity, a shower of arrows from the top of the hill fell upon them, spreading indescribable confusion and dismay. Numbers were precipitated headlong down the precipice, or killed by the masses of rocks hurled against them; others, who had nearly reached the summit, were forced back by the victorious enemy upon those in the rear. It was in vain that Louis, at the head of his cavalry, endeavored to protect the infantry, and repel the Turks: the steepness of the ascent, and the fierceness of the foe rendered the contest too unequal; men and horses fell together, and the king himself was in imminent danger of being killed; but springing upon a rock and leaning against a tree, he defended himself with his trusty sword against several Turks, till at the approach of night, they withdrew and thus premitted him to rejoin his surviving troops.

The Holy Land reached by sea.—After these losses and others which the Greeks and the Turks continued to inflict on them, both Louis and Conrad put to sea, in order to reach Palestine. Having arrived at Jerusalem, all the princes there present were summoned to assemble in council; and it was agreed that, instead of attempting to reconquer Edessa, which had been the original object of the Crusade, the Christian forces of Syria, united with the Crusaders, should undertake the siege of Damascus (A D. 1148). The monarchs immediately took the field,

approached the town, drove before them the advanced bodies of Moslems, and began the siege with such great vigor that success seemed certain. All at once, jealousies and quarrels among the lords disturbed the Christian camp; former animosities were revived, and treason being added to all these evils, the siege was finally abandoned. At length, Conrad and Louis, full of regret and indignation, left the Latin princes of Asia to their own wretched dissensions and departed for Europe.

Failure of the Second Crusade.—The ill success of the Second Crusade spread mourning over all the West, and was felt particularly in France, where loud complaints were lodged against St. Bernard, as the chief promoter of this fatal enterprise. The holy abbot, in a written apology, triumphantly vindicated his conduct; showing, with equal modesty and strength of reasoning, that, exactly as the Hebrews of old more than once failed, through their own fault, even in designs approved by God, so also, in the present instance, the blame was to be laid, not on the promoter of the Crusade, but on the Crusaders themselves, on their disorders and want of discipline, which had drawn upon them the avenging justice of the Almighty.* Shortly after (A. D. 1153), St. Bernard departed this life, at the age of sixty-three, having deserved, by his eloquence, sanctity, immense labors for religion, and the excellency of his writings, to be numbered among the most illustrious Fathers of the Church.

GERMANY AND ITALY UNDER FREDERIC I. (BARBAROSSA).—ENGLAND AND IRELAND UNDER HENRY II. (PLANTAGENET).—A.D. 1153-1189.

Frederic I. (Barbarossa) 1152-1190.—Conrad lived three years after his return from Palestine; at his death in 1152, he left the crown to Frederic Barbarossa, his nephew, a prince of great learning, ability and courage, but proud, haughty and ambitious. Wishing, like the first Roman emperors, to be considered sovereign of the

* See St. Bernard himself, *De Consideratione, lib.* II, *c.* I, *nos.* 2, 3; where he adduces the example of the Israelites who died in the desert, and especially that of the eleven tribes defeated by the tribe of Benjamin.—*Judg.* XX, 18–27.

whole world, he made powerful efforts, during twenty years (1157–1177), to oppress both the See of Rome and the small states of Italy. His wicked attempts to raise a general schism in the Church and to place popes of his own creation in St. Peter's chair, were defeated by the vigor of the lawful pontiff, Alexander III., united with the zeal evinced by the other sovereigns of Europe, particularly the kings of England and France (Henry II., Louis VII.), in acknowledging Alexander as the only true pope. The exertions of the emperor towards the subjugation of the Italian republics were in the beginning more successful; but the Milanese, whose city he had destroyed in 1162, having entered with the neighboring states into a common league in 1167 to rebuild Milan and repel the violent usurper, he experienced from them a signal overthrow in the battle of Legnano in 1176, which entirely reduced his power, and blasted his hopes with regard to the possession of Italy.

This state of things induced Frederic to come to a reconciliation with the pope and the Italians, on the conditions which they required, especially that of renouncing the schism and abandoning his hostile demonstrations against the peninsula. The treaty was finally settled at Venice (A.D. 1177), to the satisfaction of all parties, the emperor being now as eager to testify his sincere and perfect submission to the Sovereign Pontiff, as he had before been in manifesting his opposition. It is not true, that the pope, as some historians relate, set his foot on the neck of Frederic, and insulted him with these words of the Psalmist: *Thou shalt walk upon the asp and the basilisk: and thou shalt trample under foot the lion and the dragon.** The story, as has been remarked by many Catholic critics,† and acknowledged by impartial Protestant historians,‡ is not in keeping with the well known meekness and moderation of Alexander III., nor founded on any credible testimony. This pretended humiliation

---

* Psalm xc. 13.

† Feller, *Dict. Histor.*, *art. Alex.* III.—Natalis Alexander, *Hist. Eccl.*, *Sæculo* XII, *c.* II, *art.* 9 *de Alex.* III.—Baronius, and *Hist. de l'Egl. Gall ad ann.*, 1177.

‡ The English authors of *Univers. Hist.*, *Paris edit.*, 1787, *book* XXV, *c.* IV, *reign of Fred. I.*;—or *vol.* XCVII, *p.* 190, *of the historical part*, and *p.* 191, *note.*

of Frederic is indeed represented in some modern pictures; but who does not know that the liberty of fictions and symbolical representations is allowed "to painters as well as to poets?"

England under Henry I., 1100–1135 and Stephen of Blois 1135–1154.—England, during the same period, was not less disturbed than Germany and Italy. King Henry I., the last son of William the Conqueror, having died in 1135, the crown had been subsequently disputed by his daughter Matilda and his nephew Stephen of Blois, earl of Boulogne. At last, in order to reconcile the jarring interests of the two parties, it was agreed that, upon the demise of Stephen, the crown should devolve upon Henry, the son of Matilda and of Geoffrey Plantagenet, earl of Anjou, whom she had married after the death of the German emperor Henry V., her first husband. This agreement was executed in 1154, and Henry Plantagenet ascended the throne of England under the most favorable auspices. He inherited from his father Touraine and Anjou, and from his mother Maine and Normandy. He had also received with his wife Eleanor the provinces of Poitou, Saintonge and Guienne; so that, besides England, a third part of France acknowledged his authority, and though he did homage for his continental territories as a vassal to the French king, he was more powerful than that monarch.

Henry II. of Plantagenet-Anjou, 1154-1180.—The reign of Henry II., like most long reigns, was marked by several important events; among others, by the martyrdom of St. Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury, and by the conquest of Ireland. The invincible courage with which the archbishop defended the rights and immunities of the Church against the encroachments of the civil power, excited the animosity of the king, and so provoked the fury of four of his courtiers, that, repairing to Canterbury, they stabbed him in his own cathedral (A.D. 1170). So atrocious a deed raised a general outcry of horror and indignation, not only against the murderers, but also against the king; nor could he otherwise avert the imminent dangers to which he now found himself exposed on all sides, than by submitting to an exemplary penance for the murder lately occasioned by his passionate words.

Ireland added to England in 1171.—Having extri-

cated himself from these difficulties, Henry carried out the design which he had long since formed of adding Ireland to his dominions. Until then, this celebrated island, as we said before, had never been conquered, not even by the Danes, although their frequent ravages had greatly interfered with religion, morality and civilization. Under the plea of rescuing the Irish from the evils that pervaded their several provinces, the English monarch obtained leave from Pope Adrian IV. to enter their country, and skilfully availed himself of the intestine feuds which divided their sovereigns, to make conquests in Ireland. The natives, it is true, struggled long and desperately, even sometimes successfully, against the English; but their dissensions and domestic broils prevented them from obtaining any permanent advantage, and Henry succeeded in obtaining a solid footing and extensive settlements upon their territory. From that period, the British monarchs were called "Lords of Ireland," until 1542, when Henry VIII. took the title of king, and Ireland was made a part of the United Kingdom.

The remainder of Henry's reign was spent in improving the jurisprudence of his kingdom, and in various affairs, political and military, with foreign princes, during the course of which he generally showed himself an able monarch, a skilful general, and a courageous soldier. His greatest trouble was the disobedient and rebellious conduct of his sons, whose ingratitude he frequently experienced. So bitter was his grief in consequence of their last revolt, that it is supposed to have accelerated his death, which happened in the year 1189.

FALL OF THE KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM. —A.D. 1187.

After the departure of Louis and Conrad from the East, Nouradin, without much difficulty, continued his conquests in Syria. Even Egypt, which had long been an independent sovereignty, was subdued by his generals; and the Christian colonies were more and more closely surrounded by their indefatigable foes. Their danger further increased under Saladin, a Mussulman emir, who succeeded Nouradin in 1176, and who, to the possession of extensive dominions and an alarming power, joined all the qualifications nec-

essary to complete the ruin of a contiguous and decaying state. Talents, ambition, activity, valor; sometimes inflexible severity; sometimes wonderful generosity and kindness; everything, in fine, contributed to make him the greatest hero of Islamism and the most formidable enemy of the Christians.

Guy of Lusignan, king of Jerusalem.—It was in the year 1187, that he wrested from them the possession of Jerusalem and of nearly all Palestine. He first entered the province of Galilee with eighty thousand horsemen, and cutting to pieces a body of knights who defended that part of the country, stormed and captured Tiberias, its capital, but was stopped before the citadel. In the meantime the Christian princes held a great council in Jerusalem, to deliberate on the measures to be taken for the preservation of the kingdom. Contrary to the advice of the most prudent, it was resolved to march out against Saladin. Accordingly, the troops of the different princes, as well as those of Guy de Lusignan, king of Jerusalem; the knights Hospitallers and Templars; the garrisons of the towns; in a word, all who could bear arms, were collected, and formed an army of fifty thousand men, who immediately marched towards Tiberias.

Battle at Tiberias.—The two opposing hosts were soon in sight of each other, and without delay prepared for battle. The advantage of position was on the side of the Moslems, who, occupying the summit of the hills, commanded the valleys and defiles through which the Christians had to pass before coming to close contest. They, however, continued to advance amidst a shower of darts and stones. Although the Mussulman cavalry rushed from the hills to oppose their passage they still preserved their ranks; and, animated by the exhortations of the chiefs and the consciousness of their own danger, withstood unmoved the impetuous attack of the enemy. Saladin himself could not forbear admiring their intrepidity, and confessed, in one of his letters that the Franks had fought that day with extraordinary valor. But they had more courage than strength; destitute as they were of food and water, and debilitated by the heat of the day, even the most vigorous among them seemed prostrated by excessive weariness. Night suspended the still dubious conflict.

Defeat of the Christians.—The next day, the Saracens and Franks again mingled in the combat; but Saladin, as a skilful general, did not give the signal for battle till the Christian army was weakened by the rays of the meridian sun. He moreover caused the dry herbs which covered the plain, to be set on fire, so that the Christians were soon encircled by the smoke and flames which reached them on every side. In this extremity, confusion in their ranks became unavoidable; yet they continued intrepid and formidable to their opponents, several of them rushing from among the clouds of dust into the thickest ranks of the Mussulman forces. The Templars, above all, and the knights of St. John, by their almost supernatural efforts, would have saved the army, could it possibly have been saved; but the combined exertions of courage and despair everywhere found an insuperable obstacle in the multitude of their opponents, and the repeated charges of the Christian warriors served only to diminish their own numbers. At length entirely overcome by thirst and fatigue, both their chargers and themselves fell before the infidels, who either butchered them on the spot or took them prisoners, together with the king of Jerusalem. A few only escaped, by cutting a passage for themselves through the enemy.

Conquest of Jerusalem by Saladin 1187.—Saladin did not neglect to improve the signal victory which he had gained. He at once advanced into the heart of Palestine, took possession of many cities and fortresses, and at last laid seige to Jerusalem. As this capital was now stripped of its defenders, who had just perished in the fatal battle of Tiberias, it could not resist the victorious arms of Saladin. Moreover, the Syrian inhabitants of the city had conspired among themselves to deliver it into the hands of the conqueror. This fact being made known, increased the well-grounded alarm of the Latins, and they offered to surrender the place, provided honorable conditions should be granted. After some difficulty, Saladin complied with a part of their request; permitting them to retire unmolested, after having required from each person the payment of a certain sum, he entered Jerusalem in October, 1187, eighty-eight years after it had been conquered by the heroes of the First Crusade. There now remained in the possession of the Latins only three con-

siderable towns in Syria, namely, Antioch, Tyre and Tripoli.

THIRD CRUSADE.—A.D. 1188—1194.

The news of the fall of Jerusalem spread consternation through all Christendom. Pope Urban III. was so much afflicted, that he died of a broken heart; the western princes, who had seemed before to disregard the danger of the Christian colonies in Asia, now condemned their apathy, and determined to forget their private quarrels for the common interest of Christianity (A.D. 1188).

The three most powerful monarchs take part.—Three famous potentates were at that time reigning in Europe: Frederic I., emperor of Germany, Henry II., king of England, both of whom have been already mentioned in a preceding section; and Philip II., surnamed Augustus, king of France, whose abilities raised that nation to a degree of splendor and power which it had not possessed since Charlemagne. These three illustrious monarchs, together with the chief lords of their respective states, received the cross from the hands of William, the celebrated historian, and archbishop of Tyre. Laws were enacted to maintain good order and discipline among the Crusaders more successfully than during the foregoing Crusades; and, to raise money for the expedition, a council of princes and bishops ordered that every man who did not take the cross, should give the tenth part of his revenue and personal property. This tax, called *Saladin's tithe,* from the terror which the alarming progress of Saladin inspired, was levied in England and France by royal commissioners.

Frederic I. proceeds by land.—The first to set out for Asia was the emperor Frederic, at the head of one hundred and fifty thousand men. How much might be expected for the success of the Crusade from such an army, under a high-spirited prince of consummate skill and valor, may be easily conceived. In fact, the progress of the Germans, until the death of Frederic, was but one series of victories. The Greek emperor, Isaac Angelus, who dared to attack them when they entered his territory, had the mortification of seeing his troops routed, his capital in great danger, and himself compelled to supply

the conqueror with provisions for several months, and with a sufficient number of vessels to convey the Crusaders to the opposite shore in Asia.

The Germans continued to advance with uninterrupted success. Although many of them died before reaching Syria, the progress of their army spread terror abroad. They cut to pieces or drove before them all the Turkish forces in their way, defeated twice the army of the sultan of Iconium, which consisted of two or three hundred thousand combatants; and, taking the city itself at the first onset, forced the sultan humbly to sue for peace. Their discipline was equal to their bravery, and from all sides information was conveyed to Saladin of the heroic patience of the Germans in a painful and harassing march, and of their indomitable valor. If we give credit to some historians, the Mussulman prince was already preparing to retire towards Egypt, when a fatal circumstance unexpectedly delivered him from his most formidable enemy.

Frederic's death.—After crossing Asia Minor and passing the defiles of Mount Taurus, Frederic, with his army, was going along a small river, which many believed to be the very same (the Cydnus) in which Alexander-the-Great had well nigh perished. The heat of the day was excessive. The emperor, enticed by the coolness and clearness of the water, threw himself into it; but, being suddenly benumbed by the cold, he was taken out of the river in the agonies of death, or, as others say, was carried down by the rapidity of the current, and drowned.

His death was more fatal to his army than the loss of a great battle could have been. Many soldiers abandoned the army of the Crusade; while the others, proceeding towards Palestine in spite of a thousand obstacles, saw their numbers so far diminished by famine, fatigue, disease and repeated battles, that they were no longer able to contend with the hardy troops of Saladin. They therefore went to join the army of King Guy of Lusignan, who, after his deliverance from captivity, had undertaken to besiege the strong town of Acre or Ptolemais, on the Syrian coast (A.D. 1190).

Richard the Lion-hearted and Philip II. proceed by sea to Palestine.—Various incidents had retarded

the departure of the French and English monarchs. In the interval, Henry II. died, and left his place to be filled both on the throne and in the crusade by his son Richard I., surnamed *Cœur de Lion*. The new sovereign quickly made his last arrangements for the holy war; and, in order to avoid the dangers of a march by land, both he and Philip resolved to convey their armies to Palestine by sea. These two princes were then in the flower of their age, ardent, ambitious, brave and intrepid; but Philip was the greater king, Richard the greater warrior; Philip had, in a greater degree than Richard, qualities which entitle a prince to affection and esteem; but he was inferior to him in those qualities which excite surprise and admiration. Moreover, the haughtiness and violence of Richard often made enemies and led him into unpleasant adventures.

Although the two monarchs had sworn inviolable friendship and fidelity to each other, conflicting views and difference of character soon resulted in jealousies and quarrels between them, which greatly injured the cause of the crusade. Philip arrived first in Palestine, where the siege of Acre, owing to the obstinate resistance of the garrison, had already lasted nearly two years, the besiegers being themselves besieged in their camp by the innumerable troops of Saladin, who, from the neighboring mountains, constantly watched all their motions. Bloody and frequent were the conflicts, and incalculable the losses of both armies on the field of battle; many also were carried off by pestilence and famine; but the arrivals of each day supplied the losses of the preceding. The landing of Philip diffused new vigor among the Crusaders; military engines were erected, the walls were battered down and undermined; all the preparations were made for the assault; nothing was wanted but the presence of Richard who had not yet arrived to share in the danger and glory of the attempt.

Acre taken by the united forces.—This monarch had sailed from Sicily about three weeks later than Philip, and had moreover been detained in chastising the perfidy of a Greek prince, and in subduing the rich island of Cyprus. He at last reached the Christian camp, and the siege of Acre received from his presence a new impulse. Assaults were repeatedly made; and although

the town held out for some time it was easy to perceive that the resistance could not last much longer. The garrison, seeing their defences ruined, and all the efforts of Saladin insufficient to stop the progress of the siege, consented at last to capitulate, and the Christians took immediate possession of the city (A.D. 1191).

Thus ended the siege of Ptolemais, one of the most famous in history; one during which such exploits were performed by the Crusaders as might, if well directed, have sufficed for the conquest of all Asia. Although it gave rise to some acts of cruelty and bloody retaliation, it was also distinguished by many acts of politeness and courtesy interchanged between the Latins and the Moslems. In times of truce, the contending nations mingled together in friendship; and at one moment they reciprocated good offices, while at another they met in impetuous and bloody conflict. Saladin used to send presents of excellent fruit to Kings Richard and Philip, who, in return, sent him jewels and productions of Europe.

Philip departs for France.—The joy which the conquest of Ptolemais spread among Christian nations, was soon damped by the news that Philip intended to withdraw from the Crusade. No doubt can exist that the health of this monarch had been considerably impaired by a dangerous illness; but his chief motive in returning to Europe, was the disgust he had conceived at the overbearing conduct and passionate temper of Richard, which ever prevented them from cordially co-operating. Under such circumstances, the French king seemed justifiable in retiring from the army, on the plausible plea that he would, by so doing, rather advance the cause of the Crusade. Accordingly, he took his final determination, and embarked for France, leaving behind him ten thousand men with the duke of Burgundy, to support the king of England.

By this retreat of Philip, the chief command devolved solely on Richard. After repairing the fortifications of Acre, he marched out with a considerable force, and, taking the road along the sea-shore, proceeded towards Ascalon, while vessels laden with provisions followed along the coast. The Saracens pursued the army as it marched, and harassed it by continual skirmishes, which led, however, to no serious consequences. But near Antipatris,

at the passage of a river called Arsur, the Christians were suddenly attacked by two or three hundred thousand Moslems, whom Saladin, in order to impede the progress of the Crusade, and to avenge the loss of Ptolemais, had assembled from all parts of his empire.

Richard's valor.—Richard, seeing that the battle was unavoidable, desired to make it a decisive one, and forbade his troops to commence fighting until the signal should be given. The Crusaders waited for it with impatience; they could bear anything but the shame of remaining idle in the presence of an enemy who was vigorously pressing upon them. At length, some of the most intrepid knights, forgetting the king's orders, rushed against the Saracens; and, as others followed their example, in a few moments the engagement became general. So furious was the shock, and so thick the dust which enveloped both armies, that several fell by the swords of their own companions, who mistook them for antagonists. Richard seemed to multiply himself, and to be in every part of the field in which the danger was greatest; and everywhere the enemy fled at his presence. The other chiefs under him seconded his efforts; and the Mussulmans, unable to withstand so impetuous a charge, fled to the mountains, calling the Crusaders a nation made of iron, and which could not be broken.

His victory over the Saracens.—In the meantime, the Christians could scarcely believe that they were so soon victorious; nor were their doubts entirely groundless. While they still occupied the spot on which they had just fought, attending to their wounded companions, the engagement was renewed by a body of twenty thousand infidels, whom their commander, a nephew of Saladin, had rallied and led back to the charge, but with as little success as before. Finally, just as the conquerors were resuming their march, the enemy, hurried on by fury and despair, again attacked them in the rear. Richard, with only fifteen knights, ran to the spot and again routed the Moslems. Their army, thus defeated three times on the same day, at last abandoned the field with the loss of thirty-two emirs, and several thousand of their choicest men. Many more yet might have fallen had they not found a timely refuge in the neighboring forests.

First retreat from before Jerusalem.—Still, this victory, splendid as it was, procured more glory than real advantage to the Crusaders. Yielding to the same spirit of inaction which is supposed to have proved fatal to Hannibal after the battle of Cannæ, Richard, instead of leading his victorious troops without delay to Jerusalem, wasted his time in repairing the town of Jaffa and the castles of the neighborhood. The Moslems recovered from their terror, and Saladin had sufficient respite to fortify the Holy City in such a manner as to promise a most vigorous resistance. When afterwards Richard, on two different occasions, approached Jerusalem with the intention of besieging it, the difficulty of the attempt, the severity of the climate, the dissensions and jealousy of the chief crusaders, and the fears which he entertained for his European dominions, induced him on both occasions to retire. This was a source of much regret and sorrow both to the army and to the king. While many persons loudly murmured against him, and withdrew from his standard, he shared in the common grief, and was indignant at himself. One day, while pursuing a party of Saracens as far as the hills that surround Jerusalem, and from which he could see the towers and steeples of the town, he burst into tears, and covered his face with his shield, thinking himself unworthy to contemplate the Holy City which his arms could not rescue from the hands of infidels.

Second retreat from before Jerusalem.—Notwithstanding these uncertainties and obstacles, Richard continued to wage a terrible war against the Moslems, and, by splendid feats, to maintain the just reputation he already enjoyed of being the greatest warrior of his age. Immediately after the second retreat of the Christians from the neighborhood of Jerusalem, Saladin burst into the city of Jaffa, and, putting to the sword many of the inhabitants, drove the rest into the citadel, which he besieged. The English king had now returned to Acre. At the first intelligence of the event, he sent the bulk of the army by land, while he, taking advantage of a favorable wind, set sail with seven galleys, and arrived in time to save the besieged garrison by clearing the town of its invaders.

This, however, was not enough for the impetuous courage of Richard. Disdaining to be confined within the

walls of the liberated city, he marched out to challenge the Moslems, and was soon attacked by an army three times as large as his own; but inferiority of numbers was of little consequence, when Richard commanded in person. He repelled all the charges of the Mussulman cavalry, put it to flight, and vanquished every champion who dared to wait his approach, among others a valiant emir, whose head, right shoulder and right arm he cut off at one blow. Seeing the brave earl of Essex and his companions on the point of being slain or captured, he rushed forward with his usual courage, scattered the enemy like a whirlwind, and delivered his friends from their peril.* Indeed, he threw himself with such ardor among the Mussulman squadrons, that for some moments, he disappeared from the sight of his own troops. When he returned, his horse was covered with dust and blood; and he himself bristling with darts fastened in his shield and dress, resembled, according to an eye-witness, a cushion covered with needles.

It was thought that Richard, on this occasion, surpassed his former renown. His conduct won for him the admiration of the infidels themselves, particularly of Saphadin, the sultan's brother, who, during the very conflict, sent him a present of two Arabian horses. His presence alone filled the Moslems with terror, and made their hair stand erect. When Saladin, after the battle reproached the Moslem officers for having fled before a single man: "Nobody," answered one of them, "can withstand him; his approach is frightful, his shock is irresistible, his feats of arms are superhuman." In fact, Richard, to a mind incapable of fear, added an extraordinary degree of muscular strength, and such was the impression

* The readiness of the king to succor his fellow-Crusaders in every danger to which they might be exposed, was repaid by their devotedness in defending his life and liberty at the expense of their own. This appeared chiefly during the first sojourn of the Christian troops in the neighborhood of Jaffa. Richard, having one day gone to the chase in a forest, stopped to sleep under a tree, but was suddenly awakened by the cries of those who accompanied him, and who saw a troop of Moslems rapidly advancing to take him prisoner. He quickly mounted his horse, and began to fight with his usual valor; but, being surrounded on all sides, he would certainly have been captured or slain, had not one of his followers, named William of Pratelles, drawn the attention of the foes to himself, by exclaiming, "I am the king; save my life." The king, being thus enabled to make his escape, retired to Jaffa; while William, having delivered him-

of terror produced by his exploits in Palestine that, for a century after, his name was used to check the impetuosity of the Moslem horse and quiet the restlessness of the Moslem child.

Truce with Saladin.—Still, all these glorious achievements were lost for the Crusade. The dissensions of the Crusaders, which the haughtiness of the English monarch contributed much to increase, the jealousy of the other chiefs against him, and, above all, the information which he repeatedly received of great disturbances in England, made him earnestly desire the conclusion of a treaty of peace, and he repeatedly proposed it to Saladin. At last, a truce was agreed upon between them for three years and eight months. By it the Christians were left in possession of the cities of Palestine situated along the coast, and the Saracens kept the other towns with Jerusalem, under condition of granting to the pilgrims free access to the Holy Sepulchre.

Result of the Third Crusade.—Such was the result of the Third Crusade, which had seen the most powerful monarchs, and, as it were, all the forces of Europe fighting against those of Asia during three years in succession. It led, indeed, to the surrender of Acre, a town of considerable importance for the Christians; and to the conquest of the island of Cyprus, which Richard gave to Guy of Lusignan, the disappointed king of Jerusalem, but it did not recover the Holy City, the real and professed object of the Crusade. Splendid and glorious were the personal exploits of Richard; still his vacillating conduct showed that he possessed neither all the talents of a great general, nor that constancy of mind so necessary for the success of any arduous enterprise. The superiority in

---

self into the hands of the Mussulmans, was conducted to Saladin, who knew how to appreciate so noble an action, and, instead of punishing his deceit, praised his fidelity. Nor was Richard ungrateful towards the generous knight; in order to rescue him from captivity, he willingly returned ten of the principal emirs who had been made prisoners in the battle of Antipatris.

This interesting event is not mentioned by Lingard; still, it cannot be well doubted, being taken from authentic documents of that epoch, and related by many excellent historians, viz. Michaud, *Hist. des Croisades, vol.* II, *p.* 473—Maimbourg, *Hist. des Crois. vol.* II, p. 418;—and F. D'Orléans, *Hist. des Révol. D'Anglet., vol.*, I, p. 230, who all refer the fact to the end of the year 1191.

both these particulars ought certainly to be given to Sala din, who, notwithstanding some defeats, finally remained master of Jerusalem and of the far greater portion of the Holy Land.

Richard shipwrecked and imprisoned.—The English monarch, having nothing more to do in Palestine, sailed from Acre in October (1192); the inhabitants wept at his departure, nor could he suppress his own emotion. Many and disastrous were the adventures which attended his voyage. The vessel in which he sailed being wrecked on the coast of the Adriatic sea, the king resolved to cross Germany incognito and in the guise of a pilgrim, to avoid the snares of his numerous enemies; but even this precaution could not save him from the disasters which he feared. Being recognized at Vienna, in Austria, Duke Leopold, whom he had cruelly offended during the siege of Ptolemais, arrested him, and confined him as his prisoner in a strong castle. The royal captive was afterwards delivered into the hands of the German emperor, Henry VI., also his enemy, who kept him in prison, till a large sum of money was sent from England for his ransom. At length, Richard was allowed to pursue his journey without further molestation. At Antwerp, he found his fleet; and, after a voyage of a few days, landed on the shores of England. The recollection of his recent exploits and misfortunes having obliterated the remembrance of his former faults, he was received with universal joy, after an absence of more than four years (A.D. 1194).

FOURTH CRUSADE.—A.D. 1195–1198.

Saladin's death.—Saladin did not long enjoy the satisfaction of having maintained his superiority in Asia, and particularly in the Holy Land, against the combined efforts of the European princes. One year had scarcely elapsed after the conclusion of his treaty with Richard, when death terminated his career. Finding his end approaching, he commanded the shroud in which his body was to be enveloped, to be carried through the streets, and an emir to cry out with a loud voice: "Behold what Saladin, the mighty conqueror of the East, will carry away with him of all his vast dominions." He died at

Damascus (A. D. 1194)—a monarch in whose character, although not altogether blameless, humanity and justice were more conspicuous than in any other Mussulman conqueror.

The death of this great sultan was followed by civil dissensions among the Moslems, which might have greatly weakened their power, had the Christians been more united among themselves. The sons of Saladin seized upon such portions of their father's empire as they could obtain; but his brother Saphadin, otherwise called Malek-Adel, finding himself equally beloved and respected by the soldiers, waged war against these young princes, and took possession of the greater part of Syria.

Failure of the Fourth Crusade.—This was a favorable opportunity for another Crusade. Pope Celestine III. exhorted all Christendom to improve it by a generous effort, and to take up arms again in favor of Jerusalem. In England and France, his exhortation failed, as Richard and Philip were now too actively engaged in war against each other, to quit their dominions; but in Germany, so many persons offered themselves, following the example of the emperor Henry VI. that three armies were quickly assembled for this new expedition. Henry, however, with the most numerous of the three, did not proceed farther than Sicily, where he put an end to the power and race of the Norman sovereigns. The other two armies reached Palestine, and gained at first great advantages over Saphadin. Unfortunately, new quarrels among the leaders impeded their progress, and the news of the emperor's death induced them to return to Europe for the election of his successor (A.D. 1198). Thus the hope which had been entertained with regard to the recovery of the Holy Land, was again disappointed.

FIFTH CRUSADE.

FOUNDATION OF THE LATIN EMPIRE OF CONSTANTINOPLE. A.D. 1202–1204.

ANOTHER crusade soon followed, productive of the most singular and unexpected effects. Although the ill success of the foregoing expeditions had greatly abated the enthusiasm for the holy war, still the letters of Pope Innocent

III. and the eloquent exhortations of a zealous priest, called Foulques de Neuilly, soon revived in many generous hearts an ardent desire of reconquering Jerusalem. None, it is true, of the crowned heads, owing to their fear of each other, engaged in this new attempt to liberate Palestine; but it was vigorously pursued by several Italian and French lords, under the command of Boniface, marquis of Montferrat, and Baldwin, earl of Flanders.

Siege of Zara in Dalmatia.—These new Crusaders determined, as kings Richard and Philip had formerly done, to convey their armament to Palestine by sea. A treaty was entered into with the republic of Venice, by which the Venetians agreed only to supply the Crusading army with vessels at a stipulated price, and to share in the enterprise. The fleet was soon ready; but the unexpected departure of several among the barons and knights by a different way, greatly perplexed the others, who, although they melted down their plate, could not make up the sum required. In this distress, the famous doge Henry Dandolo, opened negotiations again, and offered, not only to unite with the French in the Crusade, but also to wait for the payment of their entire debt till the end of the expedition, provided they would first aid the Venetians in reconquering the city of Zara, in Dalmatia, which had been taken from the republic some time before by the king of Hungary. The offer was accepted, and Zara being vigorously attacked both by land and sea, surrendered at discretion (A.D. 1202). It now seemed that nothing more could retard the voyage of the Crusaders; but just at this juncture, there came from another quarter a request of an extraordinary nature, and promising the happiest results; this request again diverted them from their former design, and gave a new direction to the operations of the Crusade.

Expedition to Constantinople.—Isaac, the emperor of Constantinople, had lately been expelled from the throne by his brother Alexius, who moreover deprived him of his sight, and imprisoned him. Another Alexius, the son of the dethroned monarch, having made his escape from the hands of the usurper, went through the various countries and courts of Europe, to excite compassion and obtain assistance for his unfortunate father. The French and the Venetians had not yet sailed from Zara, when

the deputies of that young prince, who were soon followed by himself, arrived in their camp. He bound himself by oath, if they would expel the usurper and replace Isaac on the throne, to give two hundred thousand marks of silver, to aid in the conquest of the Holy Land, to maintain there, during his life, five hundred knights for its defence, and to re-establish among the Greeks the authority of the Roman Pontiff. Notwithstanding the tempting promises and engaging manners of young Alexius, his proposal did not receive the unanimous approbation of the Crusaders, many rejecting at once the idea of being again diverted from the main object of their enterprise. Still, the offers were so advantageous in themselves, and seemed moreover so well calculated to further the ultimate result which they wished to obtain, that most of the barons readily accepted them on the terms proposed. Accordingly, the fleet, having on board Prince Alexius, set sail from Zara; and, after a short and prosperous passage, came within sight of Constantinople (A.D. 1203).

Dandolo.—A siege of ten days was sufficient to reduce that celebrated capital. After many skirmishes, a general attack was agreed upon by the Latins, and it was made on the seventeenth of July, both by land and sea, the French and the Venetians rivalling each other on that day in deeds of undaunted courage. Still, they would perhaps have been overcome by numbers, had not Henry Dandolo set them an example of heroic boldness and intrepidity. Although more than eighty years old, and almost blind, he ordered, with terrific threats in case of disobedience, that he should be landed, with the great standard of St. Mark before him. In compliance with the command, his vessel was immediately pushed to the shore, close under the walls; the rest of the fleet followed; and, in spite of darts, stones and Grecian fire thrown by the besieged, twenty-five towers were soon in the possession of the assailants. After this, Dandolo, without loss of time, flew to the assistance of the French who were opposed by innumerable forces. The Greeks retreated; consternation spread through Constantinople; and the usurper, more terrified than any of the citizens, fled during the night from the town, carrying along with him his treasures and the insignia of the imperial dignity.

The inhabitants opened their gates to the conquerors. The old emperor, delivered from his prison, reascended the throne with universal applause, and ratified the promises made by his son to the Latins. But it was an easier task to reiterate them, than to carry them into execution. The heavy taxes which Isaac and Alexius, in order to pay their debt, were obliged to impose on the people; a dreadful conflagration, which raged during three days in the capital; and a variety of other incidents, excited public hatred and contempt against the two emperors; while the Crusaders also were indignant at their delay in carrying out the treaty. The most dangerous of their enemies was a young lord of the court, known under the surname of Murzuphlis, who secretly aspired to the supreme power. While he deceived the sovereigns by an exterior show of zeal for their interests, he left nothing untried to incense the multitude both against them and against the Latins. Finally, the unwary princes having fallen victims to his intrigues and perfidy, he was acknowledged emperor in their place, and immediately prepared to oppose the efforts which, he foresaw, the Crusaders would make, to punish his crime and avenge the death of those whom they had taken under their protection.

Revolt of the Greeks.—In fact, the intelligence of the murder of the young Alexius had no sooner reached their camp, than they determined to proclaim again an open war, and attack the imperial city a second time. They knew well the danger of the attempt, much greater indeed then, from the fury of the Greeks, than it was before; but so little effect had this knowledge on the minds of those intrepid warriors, and so much did they rely on their valor and their swords, and on the protection of heaven, that, even before going to the assault, they agreed among themselves upon the measures to be taken for the preservation and government of their conquest.

Not to divide their forces, they conducted the whole expedition by sea, and directed it against one single part of the city. The galleys approached the wall, and made a furious attack, which lasted until three o'clock in the afternoon, with more courage however, than success on the part of the assailants; for they everywhere met so determined a resistance, that the multitude of their oppo-

nents and the ravages of the Grecian fire compelled those who had landed to return to their vessels and withdraw to a distance. Still, instead of losing courage, they seemed inspired with redoubled ardor. Three days were spent in repairing the injured machines, and in consulting about a new attempt. The leaders of the army judging that a single vessel did not contain a sufficient number of troops to effect a successful assault on any particular spot, it was resolved to employ two vessels for each point of attack.

Constantinople taken a second time.—On the fourth day (12th of April, 1204) the assault was recommenced, and the conflict carried on during the whole morning with the same spirit as before, and again with some advantage on the side of the Greeks. In an instant, however, the fortune of the day was changed. About noon, a wind arising from the north, carried the vessels nearer to the wall; two of them lashed together, called the *Pilgrim* and the *Paradise*, were brought close to one of the towers, and by means of a movable bridge, two intrepid warriors, Peter Alberti, a Venetian, and Andrew d'Urboise, a French knight, sprang upon the battlement. The others crowded after them; three gates were at the same time forced by the battering rams, and the whole host of the Crusaders, entered the town driving before them innumerable troops of soldiers and inhabitants, who fled at their approach like so many flocks of sheep. One Latin put to flight a hundred, or even a thousand Greeks; and such was the terror which seized the vanquished, that they imagined a French cavalier whom they saw advancing at the head of his troop, to be fifty feet high. Murzuphlis, after some faint efforts to rally his troops, made his escape from the city during the night.

The following day, Constantinople was pillaged; and, although the Greeks had time to conceal a great part of their most valuable effects, the conquerors collected an immense booty in gold, silver, jewels and other precious articles. Undoubtedly, several acts of violence, notwithstanding the strict prohibitions of the chiefs, were committed by a victorious soldiery; still, implicit credit ought not to be given to the partial and virulent testimony of exasperated Greeks. From other and more impartial accounts, it appears that there was much less

actual bloodshed than might naturally have been expected; and that many noble and generous actions were witnessed on that occasion, notwithstanding the cupidity and licentiousness which ever accompany the sacking of a great city.

Baldwin, Count of Flanders, elected Emperor.—Thus was Constantinople, that proud capital, well fortified and well defended on every side, containing one million of inhabitants and upwards of two hundred thousand fighting men, taken twice, within a short interval, by a handful of warriors whose whole number was at most twenty thousand. In consequence of the agreement entered into previously to the first assault, twelve commissaries, six French and six Venetian, proceeded to the election of an emperor. After mature deliberation, their unanimous votes proclaimed for that high dignity, Baldwin, earl of Flanders, who held it only one year, as did Godfrey of Bouillon, whom he furthermore resembled in valor, ability and virtue. Dandolo, Boniface, and other leaders of the Crusade received proportionate and splendid preferments in the newly conquered empire, as a just recompense for their glorious exploits and services; while the survivors of the late reigning families fled to Asia and founded there two new states, which they called the empires of Nice and Trebizonde.

It is but natural to presume that such extraordinary and complicated events, did not permit the heroes of the Fifth Crusade to pursue their former project of delivering Jerusalem. They were now too much occupied in defending their new possessions, to think of any other conquest; nor was it without great difficulty that the Latin empire of Constantinople could be maintained for some time. From time to time deprived, by death, of its magnanimous defenders, and surrounded by enemies, it had but a precarious existence, and, after a short duration of fifty-seven years, again fell into the power of the Greeks.

WARS THROUGHOUT EUROPE. A.D. 1200–1226.

War against the Moors in Spain.—While some French and Italian nobles were dividing among themselves the spoils and the provinces of the Greek empire,

the flames of war were kindled throughout the various parts of western Europe. The Christian inhabitants of Spain had very little share in the Crusades undertaken by the other nations of Christendom; but they were themselves engaged in a permanent Crusade against the Moors, and the whole peninsula was a theatre of almost uninterrupted warfare. During the course of the twelfth century, as well as in preceding years, both parties had alternately gained victories and suffered defeats, the loss, however, being more frequently on the side of the Moors. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, the conflict between the two nations became more desperate and determined than for a long time. The Miramolin (commander-in-chief) of the Spanish and African Moslems was now making immense preparations, to crush at once all the Christian kingdoms of Spain. The king of Castile, Alfonso IX., who was particularly exposed to the gathering storm, called to his assistance the knights of France and Portugal, together with the kings of Arragon and Navarre (D. Pedro II.—Sanchez VII.), to oppose the common enemy; and Pope Innocent III. willingly extended to their army the privileges usually granted to the Crusaders. Their combined forces consisted of about one hundred thousand warriors; those of the Miramolin, the most numerous that Spain had ever beheld, amounted to four hundred and fifty thousand combatants, one third of whom were cavalry.

The confederates came in sight of the Moors near a ridge of mountains called *Sierra-Morena,* which separates Andalusia from Castile. It was just behind these mountains that Mohammed, the Saracen prince, had encamped his army in a strong position, at the entrance of a vast plain called *Navas de Tolosa.* When the Christians arrived at the ridge, they found no other way to pass it than a narrow defile occupied by the Moors, in which, according to an expression of the king of Castile, one thousand men could have stopped all the warriors of the world; fortunately, a peasant of the country discovered to the leaders a safer and easier road, which conducted them to the top of the mountain. Mohammed, quite surprised at their sudden appearance, first sent bodies of troops to capture the position and afterwards endeav-

ored to bring on a general battle, while he justly supposed they had not yet recovered from the fatigues of a long and difficult march. The Christians defeated both his attempts, repelled the skirmishers, and took, during two days, the rest which they needed.

Defeat of the Moors.—On the third day, the sixteenth of July (A. D. 1212), they advanced in good order against the enemy. The Miramolin appeared on a height, surrounded by his bravest troops, and even by a large iron chain, which was to be broken before the assailants could reach his person. The onset and the resistance were equally furious and obstinate; and, notwithstanding the prodigies of valor performed by the kings of Castile, Arragon and Navarre, the victory remained uncertain nearly the whole day. A last and desperate effort made by the Christian knights spread confusion and terror among the infidels: the intrepid king of Navarre first of all broke the iron chain; the whole army rushed in, and the Saracens were either cut to pieces or dispersed in every direction. Their haughty sovereign, who had anticipated an easy victory and the conquest of all Christendom, fled in despair, having lost from one to two hundred thousand men, whereas the Christians did not lose more than one hundred and twenty-five in all and even, according to several grave historians, not more than twenty-five or thirty soldiers.* For this amazing success the conquerors acknowledged themselves indebted to a special interference of God in their favor, and returned him their solemn thanks on the field of battle.

If this great victory did not entirely prostrate, it at least considerably weakened the power of the Saracens in Spain. Nearly the whole of this century was for them an uninterrupted series of disasters. On one side, the brave and pious king Ferdinand III., of Castile, took from them Cordova, Seville, and many other important cities; on the other, James I., king of Arragon, subdued the Balearic isles, with the two kingdoms of Murcia and Valentia, and added them to his own dominions.

---

* See Roderic Tolet, *lib.* VIII;—King Alf. *Epist. ad. Inn.* III;—Hurter, *Hist. du Pape Innocent* III, *vol.* III, *pp.* 192-204; F. D'Orléans, *Hist. des Révol. d'Esp. ad ann.* 1212;—Fleury, *Hist. Ecclés. b.* LXXVII, *n.* 11;—Désormeaux, *Abrégé Chronol. de l'Hist. d'Esp. vol.* II, *p.* 112;—in fine. *Univers. Hist. vol.* LXX, *pp.* 493 and 656.

War in Germany between Philip of Suabia and Otto IV.—Frederic II. Emperor, 1212–1250.—Not less important were wars during the same period in Germany, France, and England. The death of the German emperor Henry VI., at the age of thirty-two years, in 1197 had left the imperial crown to be claimed by two mighty competitors, Philip, duke of Suabia, and Otho, duke of Saxony. The latter was at first successful, but was himself finally obliged to yield the sceptre to young Frederic II., son of the late emperor Henry, and grandson of Frederic Barbarossa, whom he afterwards imitated and even surpassed in his reputation for ability, his ambition, his pride, his success, and his subsequent disasters.

War between France and England.—France also and England had been engaged, ever since the third crusade, in a vigorous war against each other. By Richard and Philip Augustus, formerly intimate friends, and now obstinate rivals, the contest was carried on for several years with alternate success; but the death of the lion-hearted king gave the French monarch great advantage. He then conquered Normandy and several other continental provinces of the British crown. John, surnamed Lack-land, the successor of Richard, not having been able to preserve, seemed determined at least to recover his transmarine possessions. For this purpose, and for other causes, a powerful confederacy was formed by him with the emperor of Germany, the count of Boulogne, and the earl of Flanders, against France alone, which was obliged to divide its forces, in order to oppose so many enemies. Part of the troops were sent to the western provinces, where John had effected a landing; his progress, rapid in the beginning, was suddenly arrested by the arrival of Louis, the son of Philip, who compelled him to retire, with a great loss both of men and baggage. But the final result of the campaign was to be decided in the North. There, after gaining a naval victory against the French fleet, the English forces having landed under the command of the earl of Salisbury, were joined by their allies, and formed with them an army of more than one hundred and fifty thousand men, who hastened to invade the French territory. To this overwhelming multitude Philip could oppose only fifty thousand combatants; but inferiority of numbers was counter-balanced by the

devotedness and bravery of his knights, the choicest men of the nation.

Battle of Bouvines.—The two armies met at Bouvines, an obscure village between Lille and Tournay. The French took a position which obliged the enemy to face, during the whole engagement, the dust, the wind, and the rays of the sun, which disadvantages greatly contributed to his entire defeat. The conflict, however, was long and obstinate, and so furious were the efforts of the combatants, that the chief leaders themselves, Philip and Otho, ran great risk of their lives. At last, the army of the confederates was broken, routed on all sides, and pursued with dreadful slaughter. The emperor made his escape; the other generals were made prisoners; and the French king had thus the happiness, not only of saving his kingdom from impending ruin, but also of obtaining a lasting advantage over all his enemies. (A. D. 1214).

Signature of the "Magna Charta" on June 15, 1215.—The battle of Bouvines having annihilated all the hopes of King John with regard to France, he set sail for England, where a still more disgraceful trial awaited him at his very arrival. The excesses of his passionate temper and dissolute life had previously excited much indignation against him, he now became in consequence of his late disasters, an object of contempt to his own subjects. The English barons took secret measures to form a powerful league against him, and having succeeded in assembling a large body of men, asked of the king, with threats of a civil war, the revival of those privileges which Edward the Confessor had granted to the nation, but which had been more or less disregarded by most of his successors. John at first positively refused; afterwards, seeing the numerous forces of the barons, he yielded to their request, and even granted more than had been originally asked, by signing an act which comprised all his grants, and which, under the name of *Magna Charta*, has been for centuries looked upon as the basis of the British constitution.

Henry III. ascends the English throne under difficulties.—The king, however, soon showed that he repented having made these concessions that had been extorted from his fears, and he availed himself of the first opportunity to declare that he would not suffer him-

self to be led by the nobles in the government of his kingdom. This resulted in a second civil war, in which the English nobles applied to the French monarch for assistance, and offered the crown to his eldest son. Accordingly, Louis crossed the sea, and was acknowledged king in London and in many provinces, with hopes of subduing in a short time the other parts of the realm. But the unexpected death of John, whom a violent fever carried off after an illness of a few days, totally changed the face of affairs; patriotism was revived in the hearts of the English lords; many of them gradually abandoned Louis, and rallied around young Henry, son of the deceased monarch. He was crowned at Gloucester, and the care of his person, together with the title of guardian of the kingdom, was intrusted to the valor and fidelity of the earl of Pembroke, otherwise called earl-marshal (A.D. 1216).

This faithful and able minister immediately took the best measures to secure the crown for his royal ward. To discredit the French party, reports of depredations committed by the foreigners and of their contempt for the natives, were industriously circulated; all Englishmen who should return to the allegiance of their lawful sovereign, were promised their liberties; a numerous host of brave warriors was quickly assembled, and a religious character was given to the war. As soon as Pembroke saw his followers animated with his own ardor, he marched to Lincoln, and surprising the main body of the hostile forces, gained a complete victory. Shortly after, a French fleet carrying auxiliary troops, was also defeated between Dover and Calais. By this sudden destruction of his resources, Louis, who had until then kept London and several of the barons on his side, was compelled to give up all hope of success. Negotiations were instantly opened, and the terms having been settled without much difficulty, Louis immediately returned to France, leaving the quiet possession of the British crown to his young competitor. He himself succeeded his father Philip on the French throne (A.D. 1223). Having occupied it three years, during which he showed himself well worthy of it by his lion-like courage and exemplary virtue, he died in 1226, while returning from an expedition against the Albigenses.

The Albigenses.—These Albigenses, so called from the city of Albi in the south of France, where there numbers appeared greater than in any other place, were sectarians, whose principles, taken from the ancient Manicheans and Gnostics, aimed equally at the destruction of religion, social order and humanity. Shocking and frightful were the ravages, depredations and cruelties which they committed during a part of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, pillaging, burning and killing, wherever they found any resistance to their abominable tenets. The lives of their fellow-mortals, as well as the most sacred objects of religion, were a mere sport for them; and, during a long time, every attempt to check the growing evil proved ineffectual.*

War against the Albigenses.—After many years spent to little purpose by holy missionaries, such as St. Bernard, St. Dominic, and others, in endeavoring to convert these wretched and infuriated people by means of patience, meekness, instruction, and prayer, it was unanimously thought necessary to oppose coercive measures to their excesses and disorders. Troops were raised as for a crusade, and marched against the Albigenses under the command of Count Simon de Montford, a general of great energy and courage, who, being invested with full military and civil power, pursued with unrelenting vigor, and sometimes extraordinary severity, those desperate sectarians, whom it was not possible otherwise to subdue. Sometimes abandoned by a considerable portion of his troops, he however went on, and gained signal advantages over the numerous forces of his opponents, whether Albigenses or their allies. His death, which happened in 1218, permitted them, it is true, to regain for a time their former ascendency; but, being again defeated by King Louis VIII., their party was finally crushed during the minority of Louis IX.

---

* These facts are incontestably proved by the *Hist. Albig.* of Peter des Vaux de Cernay, a contemporary author;—by the letters of Pope Innocent III;—the 27th Canon of the third general council of Lateran, in 1179;—the 20th Can. of the council of Avignon, in 1209;—etc.; etc.

On the errors, crimes, and the whole history of these sectarians, see Natalis Alexander, *Dissertationes in Hist. Eccles. sæcul.* XII., *cap.* III. *art.* I, *vol.* VII, *p.* 65; Bérault-Bercastel, *Hist. de l'Egl. l.* XXXIX;—F. Fontenay, *Hist. de l'Eglise Gallic. l.* XXIX, XXX;—Bergier, *Diction, de Théolog art. Albigeois;*—Butler, *Lives of the Saints, 4th of August;*—Herter, *Hist. du pape Inn.* III, *l.* XIV. *etc.*

CONQUESTS OF GENGHIS-KHAN IN ASIA. A.D. 1206-1227.

During the first part of the thirteenth century, Asia was, like Europe, the theatre of astounding revolutions. Its whole centre had been for many ages, occupied by numberless tribes scarcely known to the civilized world, and designated by the common name of Tartars. The Moguls, one of those tribes, were confounded with the others in the same obscurity, when Temujin, or Genghis-Khan, rendered them forever famous by his conquests, and by the foundation of an empire which, comprising in extent no fewer than thirteen or fourteen millions of square miles, was probably the greatest unbroken empire that ever existed.

Temujin.—Temujin was the son of a Mogul prince, and had been brought up with great care under the direction of a skilful minister. The death of his father and the rebellion of his subjects compelled him to fly for safety to the court of the chief sovereign of his nation. There he began to display that wonderful talent and activity, that consummate prudence and skill both in war and government, which afterwards raised him so much above all the other princes of Asia. But, in the beginning of his public career, he met only with reverses. The superiority of his merit soon excited the jealousy of many persons at court, and even that of the sovereign himself, to such a degree that a powerful league was formed against Temujin, who endeavored in vain, to oppose it peacefully without any success. Seeing his efforts useless, he on his side raised a numerous army, attacked his enemies, and gained a decisive victory, which, being supported by other advantages, united under his sway all the Mogul tribes.

He no sooner found himself master of vast dominions, than he resolved to confirm his authority by the public homage of all his vassals, and to extend still farther the boundaries of his empire. The former of these designs he accomplished in 1206, by convoking a general assembly of the Tartar princes subject to his power; and it was on this occasion that he received the name of *Genghis-Khan*, which means *king of kings*. The latter project was the object of his attention during the whole of his reign,

which lasted twenty-two years; and China and Persia, with many other countries, after having been the objects of his ambitious attacks, became the reward of his gigantic exertions.

Mongol invasion of China.—It was particularly in the two regions just mentioned, that the war conducted by Genghis-Khan was most disastrous in its effects. Neither an immense wall built previously by the Chinese to protect their frontiers from invasion, nor any other means of resistance, could save a flourishing empire from the attacks of those numberless hordes of Tartars, whom warlike enthusiasm and thirst for plunder rendered superior to all sorts of dangers and fatigues. The long struggle which the natives maintained against these terrible foes, only served to increase their misery; a considerable part of their country was subdued, and Genghis Khan established in it a governor under the title of king.

The Mongols in Persia.—This event was followed by the conquest, or rather devastation of Persia, India, Karazm and other extensive regions. The Sultan of Persia, Mohammed, having had the imprudence to provoke the indignation and resentment of the Mogul conqueror Genghis Khan marched against him at the head of seven hundred thousand men, commanded by himself and by his four sons. The rapidity of his conquests cannot be better expressed than by comparing it to a furious and destructive torrent which sweeps everything before it with irresistible fury. Mohammed, with five hundred thousand Persian and Karazmian soldiers, endeavored in vain to stop the progress of the Tartars; he had the misfortune to see all his efforts baffled, his troops constantly overcome, his most flourishing cities sacked and destroyed by the conquerors, and himself completely overthrown in a general battle on the banks of the river Jaxartes, near the Caspian Sea, where he lost one hundred and sixty thousand men. This defeat reduced Mohammed, with all his family and kingdom, to the last extremity. Everything was destroyed with fire and sword in those unhappy countries, and millions of the inhabitants perished; a number which will not appear incredible, if we consider that there never was perhaps a greater scourge of nations than Genghis Khan, and that, according to some historians, the

whole number of towns laid waste or destroyed by his armies may be supposed to amount to fifty thousand.*

This terrible conqueror was preparing a new expedition against the remotest parts of Asia, when he died (A.D. 1227), at the age of sixty-five years, leaving several sons, the heirs as well of his enterprising and warlike spirit, as of his vast dominions. Two of them particularly, Octay and Toley, led the Moguls to new victories. Those provinces of China which had, till then, escaped the Tartar yoke, were subdued like the rest. At the siege of Pekin, the capital, the Tartars employed machines, which cast enormous fragments of rock; while the Chinese, on their side, darted iron tubes filled with a certain powder, which, bursting upon the besiegers with a frightful explosion, consumed everything within a circumference of two thousand feet. These dreadful effects, so similar to those produced by gunpowder, seem to show that it was known and used in China, long before its discovery in Europe. In sixteen days and nights, a million of persons, Chinese and Tartars, perished at that siege.

Batu.—From the western frontier of Tartary, Batu-Khan, a grandson of Genghis Khan, carried the war through Russia and Poland as far as Hungary and Austria; fortunately, they retreated into Asia after the battle of Wahlstatt in 1241. Another Mogul chieftain, named Hulagu, took Bagdad in the year 1258, and thus put an end to the power of the Arabian caliphs; but, having crossed the Euphrates in search of new conquests, his troops were defeated by the sultans of Syria and Egypt. This however was but a trifling check for the successors of Genghis Khan, and they long after continued powerful in all central Asia.

SIXTH CRUSADE.—A.D. 1217-1244.

The Children's Crusade.—The Fifth Crusade having failed to recover the Holy Land, a new one was earnestly desired by the Christians of Syria; and reports were diligently circulated that they stood in great need of speedy

* See for the destructive conquests of Genghis Khan, *Univ. Hist., end of 46th and beginning of 47th vol.*—Anquetil, *Précis de l'Hist. Univ. vol.* IV, *pp.* 382-396;—Michaud, *Hist. des Croisades. vol.* IV, *pp.* 111-121;—Lebeau, *Hist. du Bas. Emp. vol.* XXI, *pp.* 412-424.

assistance. However, the necessary succor, owing to a variety of obstacles, was long delayed; when, at length, fifty thousand children almost simultaneously enlisted in the holy cause, in France and Germany. To them, they maintained, Almighty God had reserved the honor of rescuing his Holy City from the hands of infidels. Under this illusion, many embarked at Marseilles, but either perished during the voyage by shipwreck near the shores of Italy, or were betrayed to the Moslems, among whom several suffered martyrdom. Others, after incredible difficulties, reached Genoa; but the Genoese wisely commanded them to evacuate their territory. They then returned to their homes; and, although a great number died on the road, many arrived in safety, and escaped the fate which had overtaken the first bands of their young fellow adventurers.

When Pope Innocent heard of this crusade, he is reported to have said: "While we are asleep, these children are awake." At length, his untiring exertions, and those of his successor Honorius III., succeeded in raising numerous bodies of Crusaders in France, England, Holland, Germany, and Italy. As all were not ready at the same time, but set out in different years, from different points, and for different places, there resulted not one expedition only, but a series of expeditions, making the Sixth Crusade very long and complicated. Some went to Portugal, where they aided the Christians of that country in conquering the Moors in the great battle of Alcazar (A.D. 1218).

Crusade of King Andrew II. of Hungary.—Others, under the command of the kings of Hungary and Cyprus, arrived in Palestine, where, after gaining some advantages, they met with disappointment and disasters instead of success. The king of Cyprus died at Tripoli, on the coast of Syria; and the king of Hungary returned to his kingdom. This circumstance, and the continual arrival at Ptolemais of fresh supplies, left John of Brienne, the titular king of Jerusalem, more at liberty to direct as he thought proper the military operations of the Crusaders.

John of Brienne's Crusade.—He resolved to attack Egypt, then the most valuable portion of the Mussulman empire, and the store-house, as it were, from which they

drew continually new supplies of provisions, ammunition, and troops. Accordingly, the Christian army sailed from Ptolemais, and laid siege to Damietta, which was the key of Egypt on that side. The town, well supplied and ably defended, resisted eighteen months, and was not taken until, of seventy thousand inhabitants, scarcely three thousand remained alive. So great was the terror which both the siege and the capture of Damietta spread among the Mussulmans, that they repeatedly offered to restore Palestine, in order to save the rest of their dominions. John of Brienne and many of the other chiefs were of opinion that the offer should be accepted; but the strong opposition of several influential persons, who, under the impression that the moment had come in which the Moslem power was to be overthrown, displayed more valor than prudence, caused it to be rejected.

The army advanced towards Cairo, the capital of Egypt. A few days' march brought the Christians to a spot where the Nile was to be crossed; but they were greatly disappointed at seeing the whole plain on the other side occupied by an incredible multitude of soldiers, whom the Sultan Meledin (Malek Kamel) had assembled to oppose the progress of the enemy. There was not a sufficient number of vessels to attempt the passage in presence of such a force, with any probable hope of success. Provisions, too, began to be scarce among the Crusaders; and to complete their misfortune, the rise and inundation of the Nile reduced them to the necessity of retracing their steps towards Damietta.

The signal for the retreat was given; but the exhausted troops, incessantly pursued by the Mussulman cavalry, lost thousands, and the survivors were exposed to imminent danger. It was a fortunate circumstance that the victorious sultan possessed a generous soul. Moved with compassion at the misfortunes of the Christians, and seeing them no longer able to weaken his power, he afforded them the means of returning in safety, on condition that they would surrender Damietta, and evacuate all Egypt. These conditions were indeed very different from those which he had proposed a few weeks before; but the respective situations of both armies were now completely changed. The treaty was speedily accepted and executed; and the Christians, leaving the Egyptian shores,

returned by sea to Ptolemais, where their arrival produced as much grief and consternation, as the news of their first success had produced hope and joy (A.D. 1221).

Crusade of Frederic II.—Some years after, the famous Frederic II., emperor of Germany, arrived in Palestine at the head of new bands of Crusaders. He obtained, by a treaty from the sultan of Egypt, the restitution of Jerusalem; but this he purchased by terms so unfavorable, and moreover took so little precaution to defend the Holy City, that it was soon retaken by the infidels. The conduct of Frederic was condemned through all Christendom. He disregarded the complaints, returned to Europe, and there again indulged his vices and unruly passions to such a degree as to provoke more and more the indignation of his contemporaries, the censures of the Church, and the anger of heaven; so that the end of his career was as gloomy and miserable as its beginning had been brilliant and prosperous.

Palestine was next visited by Theobaldus, king of Navarre, and by some other princes who did nothing very remarkable. Finally, Richard, earl of Cornwall, and brother of the king of England, arrived with an army of English Crusaders. This prince had sufficient courage and resolution to carry on the holy war with more vigor than had been displayed for many years; but he found the Christians of Syria divided into so many parties that all he could do for them was to conclude a new treaty of peace with the Saracens (A.D. 1241). After his departure, a sudden invasion of fresh barbarians from Khorazan laid waste the Holy Land; the Christian colonies met with repeated losses; and there now remained no hope of bettering their unfortunate condition, unless some powerful monarch would take the arduous task upon himself.

SEVENTH CRUSADE.—ST. LOUIS. A.D. 1248–1254.

Henry III. and Louis IX. were reigning at this time, the former in England, the latter in France. The beginning of Henry's reign had been quiet. This prince, being gentle, humane, and religious, at first easily won the hearts of his subjects by the solemn sanction which he gave to the privileges contained in the Magna Charta, and

by the success of his arms against Llewellyn, prince of Wales. Afterwards, his want of energy, his prodigalities, the many extortions committed by some of his ministers; above all, the repeal of certain national privileges, and the preference given at court to foreigners, gradually rendered his government odious to the lords and to the people. A powerful confederacy was formed against the king by the barons, who only waited for a proper occasion to commence hostilities; and, in the interim, the general discontent frequently manifested itself by the refusal of subsidies or "grants of money" to the government. In such circumstances, it was plain that little or no assistance could be expected from England for the recovery of Jerusalem.

King Louis IX. of France.—France, on the contrary, was at that time in a flourishing condition under Louis IX. This prince, who, according to the infidel Voltaire himself, was virtuous even to heroism, had succeeded his father Louis VIII., in the year 1226, when only twelve years old. The regency was intrusted to his mother, Blanche of Castile, a virtuous and courageous princess, who, while watching with the utmost care over his royal, and especially his Christian education,* knew how to repress by force of arms the attempts made by restless vassals to obtain an ascendency over her, and to increase their power at the expense of the crown. When Louis took the reins of government into his own hands, new wars disturbed his kingdom; and it again became necessary to check the insolence of the earl of La Marche, a vassal who was the more dangerous, in consequence of the mighty aid he received from the king of England, his relative. Notwithstanding the great difficulty which Henry found in obtaining subsidies and raising troops, he at length succeeded in both these objects; and, crossing the sea, landed in Guyenne, at the head of a considerable force. Louis, without losing a moment of time, marched against him, completly defeated him near Taillebourg; and, on the following day, gained a new vic-

* "My son," she would often say to him, during his childhood, "God knows how dear you are to me; still, I should infinitely prefer to see you fall dead at my feet than ever see you guilty of a mortal sin." These words, so worthy of a Christian mother, had such an effect on the young prince that he is thought never to have lost his baptismal innocence.

tory under the walls of Saintes. So much vigor terrified the rebellious count, who surrendered unconditionally, and was pardoned. The English king, who fled to Bordeaux, hastened likewise to conclude a treaty of peace, after which he returned to England, without having won a single laurel, to the great disappointment of his subjects (A.D. 1242).

Louis IX. embarks for the Holy Land.—Louis, having thus conquered his enemies at home and abroad, and freed himself from the danger of subsequent attacks, turned his thoughts to the affairs of the East. The deplorable condition of Palestine, and particularly of Jerusalem, under the Mussulman yoke, deeply afflicted his generous heart. On his unexpected recovery from a dangerous disease, in the year 1244, he took the cross, and by his exhortations induced the principal dukes, counts and barons of his kingdom, to imitate his example. When all necessary preparations were made, Louis intrusted the care of the government to his virtuous mother, and embarked, with nearly fifty thousand men, at Aigues Mortes, a sea port in the south of France (A.D. 1248).

Capture of Damietta.—The fleet reached the friendly harbors of the island of Cyprus towards the end of September, and spent there the whole winter. In the spring it sailed again for Egypt, which the king with his council had determined to attack first, as being the principal seat of the Mohammedan power. The sultan, on his side, had taken all possible measures to prevent the fleet from landing; and when the Crusaders arrived near Damietta, they saw the beach covered with a countless multitude of Moslem troops, who seemed to oppose a dense forest of swords and pikes to the assailants. This, however, was but a trifling obstacle to the impetuosity of the French; Louis himself did not wait till the vessel in which he was should reach the shore; but, sword in hand, he threw himself into the sea, followed by his valiant knights. The infidels, struck with terror, were dispersed, leaving to the conquerors the undisturbed possession, not only of the coast, but even of Damietta; measures were adopted to secure the important conquest; and, after a short sojourn in the city and its environs, the Crusaders marched towards Cairo, the capital of Egypt.

The Mussulmans assembled their forces on the oppo-

site side of a deep canal formed by the Nile, and prevented for one month the passage of the Christian army. At length, an Arabian peasant agreed for a large sum of money, to point out a ford; the river was crossed, and the enemy, driven from their camp, would have again suffered an entire defeat had the count of Artois, a brother of the king, known how to temper his valor with prudence. At the sight of the Moslems flying in all directions, this impetuous prince forgot the order which he had received, not to pursue the fugitives until the whole force of the Crusade should arrive. Rushing forward with a body of fifteen hundred knights, he drove before him the Mussulman forces. In vain did the earl of Salisbury, with the grand masters of the Hospitallers and the Templars, endeavor to cool his imprudent ardor; blinded by success, he still rushed on, and entered the city of Massoura with the fugitives, who at first imagined that they were pursued by the whole Christian army. They quickly recovered from their panic, and perceiving the small number of their pursuers, shut the gates of the town and united their efforts with those of the inhabitants, to crush at once these brave but reckless men. A terrible fight took place in the streets of Massoura; during five hours the most prodigious display of courage was made by the two parties; but the Christians, besides being greatly inferior in force, began to be exhausted with weariness. At last, valor was overcome by numbers; almost all were killed, and the earl of Artois fell, together with his soldiers, on a heap of Moslems whom he had slain with his own hand.

Louis defeated and captured.—While the Moslems were fighting within the city, another furious engagement took place around its walls, and along the banks of the canal. Although the Crusaders, and especially the king, fought with determined bravery, and twice repulsed the enemy, yet the consequences of this battle were fearfully fatal. The Crusaders were now considerably reduced, and nearly all their horses had perished. Moreover, the dead bodies thrown into the Nile infected its waters, and gave rise to a pestilence which, in a very short time, changed the Christian camp into a vast hospital. Finally, the infidel army having succeeded in preventing all communication between the Crusaders and the city of Damietta

whence they drew their provisions, famine added its ravages to those of the plague, and rendered the retreat from Massoura, a necessary, though a difficult and perilous attempt. The king, by his superior courage and prudence, might perhaps have conducted this retrograde march with some success; but, as he made it his duty to visit the sick, as well as to repel the attacks of the enemy he contracted the disease, and was reduced in a few days to a state of complete exhaustion. Being almost at the point of death, he halted at a little town near the banks of the Nile, and there, notwithstanding the heroic bravery of his knights, was taken prisoner with his surviving brothers and the sad remnant of his troops (A.D. 1250).

Louis liberated, returns finally to France.—Louis displayed in his prison the firmness, intrepidity and magnanimity which he had always evinced on the throne and at the head of armies. The very barbarians into whose hands he had fallen, were compelled to admire his noble conduct and undaunted courage; and their emirs more than once acknowledged that he was the bravest Christian they had ever seen. At length, a treaty was concluded, in virtue of which Louis, by restoring Damietta, recovered his liberty, and by giving considerable sums of money, provided for the ransom of the other captives. He then sailed for Palestine, where, after his arrival at Ptolemais, he spent four years in promoting the cause of religion, securing, as well as he was able, the welfare of the Christian colonies, and repairing the fortifications of the towns which were yet in their power. The intelligence which a message from Paris gave him of the death of his mother Blanche, induced him to return. He was received in France with universal joy; and he himself, notwithstanding the many sorrows that afflicted his soul, experienced the pleasure of a tender father just restored to his children, and had, moreover, the satisfaction of finding his kingdom in the same peaceful and prosperous condition in which he had left it six years before.

ST. LOUIS CONTINUED.—CIVIL WAR IN ENGLAND. A.D. 1254–1268.

Louis, after his return from Palestine, made greater efforts to promote the happiness of his people by meas-

ures of justice, statutes well adapted to the preservation of public order, institutions of charity, and the assiduous care which he took to have his laws faithfully executed. So remarkable and so well known was his justice, that not only his subjects, but even foreigners, referred to him with perfect confidence the decision of their quarrels. This particularly appeared on the following occasion.

Henry III. and the Oxford provisions.—At that time, the English barons were highly incensed against their king, Henry III., who had disregarded their former complaints of misgovernment. In a great assembly held at Oxford (A.D. 1258), they not only demanded the execution of the Magna-Charta, but also endeavored to impose on the monarch new conditions tending evidently to weaken his power; conditions which he of course rejected. The whole subject of dispute was referred to the arbitration of Louis. After mature discussion, the French king pronounced his decision: he confirmed the national privileges contained in the Magna-Charta, but annulled the late decrees of Oxford, as opposed to the just authority of the crown (A.D. 1264).

Battle of Lewes.—This decision, however equitable, displeased the party of the barons. Far from abiding by it according to their previous promise, they openly raised the standard of insurrection; and, under the command of the earl of Leicester, marched with a numerous army against the royalists, who were commanded by the king in person and his eldest son Edward. A battle was fought near the town of Lewes, the issue of which proved as fatal, as the beginning had been favorable, to the royal cause. Prince Edward easily routed the enemy's wing opposed to him, but, as frequently happens on such occasions, instead of improving his advantage by falling on the rear of the confederates, he incautiously pursued the fugitives, and thus left the centre of his own army undefended. The earl of Leicester seized the opportunity, and, making a sudden and vigorous attack, gained so complete a victory, that the king himself fell into his power.

Battle of Evesham.—The victorious count took his prisoner from town to town; and, leaving him the name, assumed himself all the authority of a sovereign. His daring ambition soon provoked discontent and hatred;

the yoke which Leicester laid upon the nation appeared too heavy; and, at the end of one year, the restoration of Henry was almost universally desired. Under these circumstances, Prince Edward easily succeeded in assembling new troops, marched against the usurper, and, more successful than before, defeated and slew him in the sanguinary battle of Evesham (A.D. 1265). Not content with this result, he continued to harass the confederates, until he gave the death blow to their league by the reduction of the island of Ely, whither its last partisans had retired. Thus was the sceptre again placed, more securely than ever, in the hands of Henry; and England, after so many disturbances, began to enjoy profound peace, which permitted Edward to share in the second Crusade of St. Louis—the eighth and last of the Crusades.

EIGHTH AND LAST CRUSADE. A.D. 1270–1272.

THE French monarch was not so much discouraged by the ill success of his first expedition, as to renounce his project of waging war against the Saracens for the defence of the Christian colonies in the East; he was, on the contrary, spurred to renew his attempt by the last melancholy news from Syria. The Moslems there were obstinately bent on depriving the Franks of their last possessions, and inflicted frightful cruelties on those whom they made prisoners, and who refused to embrace Mohammedanism. But lately Antioch had fallen into the hands of Bendocdar, the sultan of Egypt, and one hundred thousand inhabitants had been led away captive. Louis once more expressed his determination to go beyond the sea for the purpose of delivering Palestine from its oppressors; and many princes, lords, knights, and other warriors, again flocked to his standard. Having provided for the security of his kingdom during his absence, he embarked with sixty thousand chosen troops in the beginning of July (A.D. 1270), and landed at Tunis in Africa, near the ruins of Carthage.

Louis IX. lands at Tunis.—The chief reason which prompted St. Louis to give this direction to the Crusade was that the king of Tunis had given hopes of becoming a convert to the true faith, if, in taking so important a step, he could be protected from the displeasure of his

subjects. This conversion, were it to take place, seemed likely to facilitate the recovery of the Holy Land, by depriving the Egyptian sultan of his most powerful ally. But these hopes quickly vanished. When the Christian host arrived at Tunis, the Mussulman prince, far from asking for instruction and baptism, prepared to make resistance, and in every way openly acted as an enemy. Louis, perceiving that the town was strongly fortified, and was defended by a numerous garrison, did not think proper to commence the attack before the arrival of reinforcements daily expected from Sicily. In the interim, he contented himself with protecting his camp by intrenchments and ditches, and repelling the frequent skirmishes of the Moors.

Louis IX.'s death.—The measures taken by the king against a foreign foe were perfectly successful: but all his precaution did not suffice to avert the attacks of enemies of another sort. Malignant fevers and dysenteries, caused by bad water and the heat of the climate, began to rage throughout the camp with such violence, that nearly half of the army was carried off in a few days. The king himself was attacked by the disease, and saw the end of his life rapidly approaching. Never did he appear greater than at this critical juncture. Although he suffered acute pains, he continued to give his orders, and to console every one around him, with his usual tranquillity and presence of mind. At last, his constitution yielded to the violence of the malady; having given his last instructions and blessing to his son Philip and received the last sacraments of the Church with the most edifying piety, raising his eyes towards heaven, he calmly expired, whilst pronouncing these words of the Royal Prophet: *I will come into thy house; I will worship towards thy holy temple* (Psalm v. 8). He had lived fifty-six years, and reigned forty-four.

Louis IX.'s character.—In St. Louis, there was a rare combination of personal accomplishments, and even of apparently opposite qualities, which made him not only superior to his age, but confessedly one of the most extraordinary men that ever wore a crown. His love of religious exercises was never an obstacle to the fulfilment of his public duties. His uncommon piety, his simplicity of manners, and meekness in private life never

prevented him from being a faithful dispenser of justice, a wise legislator, an intrepid warrior, and a dignified monarch. Not only France, but all Europe, and also popes, kings and emperors, entertained for him the highest respect. He won the admiration even of that Asiatic prince, called *Le vieux de la montagne,* from whom the other crowned heads had so much to fear for their lives; and of those terrible Mamelukes of Egypt whose prisoner he was, and who once, as is commonly believed, deliberated whether they should appoint him their sovereign. In a word; Louis IX., by practising every royal, military, and Christian virtue, was at the same time a great king, a great hero, and a great saint. Innumerable witnesses bore testimony to his unblemished morals and piety; and no later than the year 1297, the 27th after his death, he was solemnly canonized by Pope Boniface VIII.*

The last Crusade without result.—His death caused inexpressible grief among the soldiers. Grief however did not abate their courage; and the Moslems, especially after the arrival of the Sicilians, were so frequently and so signally defeated that they were compelled to sue for peace, which was granted on conditions both honorable and advantageous to the Christians, most of whom then re-embarked for Europe. A few only, having at their head the English prince Edward, sailed for Palestine, for the purpose of carrying on the sacred expedition. This they did during part of the year 1271; but their small number prevented them from undertaking any thing of consequence; and Edward, after having been exposed to the danger of losing his life both by sickness and by the dagger of an assassin, availed himself of the conclusion of a truce with the Saracens, to return to England, where he succeeded his father Henry III., who had died during his absence.

---

* "Ce fut un beau spectacle que celui de l'instruction canonique dans laquelle le père commun des fidèles interrogea les contemporains de Louis IX. sur les vertus de sa vie et les bienfaits de son règne. Des Français de toutes les classes vinrent attester sur l'Evangile que le monarque dont ils pleuraient la mort, était digne de toutes les récompenses du ciel. Parmi eux on remarquait les vieux compagnons d'armes de Louis, qui avaient partagé ses fers en Egypte, qui l'avaient vu mourant sur la cendre devant Tunis. L'Europe entière confirma leur religieux témoignage, et répéta ces paroles du chef de l'église: *Maison de France, réjouis-toi d'avoir donné au monde un si grand prince; réjouis-toi peuple de France, d'avoir eu un si bon roi!*"—Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades, vol.* v, *pp.* 114–115.

The Mamelukes take Ptolemais by storm.—Thus terminated the eighth and last crusade, in 1272. Two years after, Pope Gregory X. who had seen with his own eyes the sorrows of Palestine, endeavored to promote a new expedition in its favor; but his premature death, together with a variety of other obstacles, prevented the execution of that design. Hence everything now tended to the utter expulsion of the Franks from Syria, and the more so, as they incessantly provoked the justice of God by quarrels among themselves and by the depravity of their lives. Many of the places which they had hitherto preserved, were successively and rapidly conquered by the sultan Bendocdar and his successors. Ptolemais, then the capital of the Christian colonies, saw the storm approaching its walls, and could not avert it; in the beginning of April (1291), it was invested on the land side by sixty thousand horse and one hundred and sixty thousand infantry, who were commanded by the sultan Khalil in person and supplied with three hundred enormous machines, destined to batter and overthrow the ramparts. The city, although populous, did not contain more than twenty thousand effective men, who were soon reduced to twelve thousand. Still, they at first offered, at every point, a vigorous and successful resistance, and during six weeks repelled all the attacks of their numberless foes, causing such slaughter among them, that in one of those furious assaults, seven Moslems were said to have fallen for one Christian. But the losses of the infidels could be easily repaired, whilst those of the besieged were irreparable, their numbers diminishing every day, until there were but one thousand warriors left. In this frightful distress, even the heroic intrepidity of the Knights Hospitallers and Templars could uphold only a few hours longer the tottering fortune of Acre; they resisted to the last; and it was only when the city had lost its defenders, that it was carried by storm on the eighteenth of May of the same year 1291.

The merciless conquerors destroyed everything with fire and sword in that unfortunate city, slaughtering even a multitude of harmless prisoners who had implored their compassion. The town was utterly devastated. Of the inhabitants who had time to make their escape by sea, some fled to the island of Cyprus, others landed on the

shores of Italy, where they wandered from place to place, begging their bread, and relating with tears, the sad story of the fate of the Christians in the East.

REMARKS ON THE CRUSADES.

The ill success of the last Crusades entirely extinguished that spirit of zeal for the deliverance of Jerusalem which had animated the first Crusaders. Succeeding attempts to renew those expeditions proved fruitless; and the wars carried on in subsequent centuries between the Christians and the Turks were like those which powerful, neighboring and rival nations wage against each other.

Like other events of the Middle Ages, the Crusades have been for very many modern writers an object of scorn and a favorite topic for abusive and insulting language. In the opinion of these men, the Crusades were prompted by unjust and absurd motives; were carried on without judgment and were disastrous in their consequences. It is our duty here to examine these charges, and see whether they rest on a solid foundation.

Motives and Objects of the Crusades.—With regard to the motives which prompted the nations of Europe to undertake the Crusades, they were certainly as just and reasonable as any that ever occasioned wars among men. It was for the purpose of putting a stop to the barbarous oppression to which both the Latin pilgrims and the eastern Christians were exposed, that our European ancestors everywhere took up arms, and rushed to the field, urged by motives of honor, humanity and religion. Their ardor and readiness to enlist in this generous enterprise was moreover powerfully excited by the earnest entreaties of the Greek emperor Alexius, who called for assistance against these same barbarians then in possession of Jerusalem. The desire of rescuing the Holy Sepulchre from the oppressive yoke of those infidels may have been the most general feeling that actuated many of the Crusaders, but that was not the only object of the Crusades; and this desire, very just in itself, as it led to the attack of cruel usurpers, covered a still more important design, namely, that of saving the countries of Europe itself from the invasion with which they were threatened.

Indeed, what was not to be feared from those Mussul-

man hordes, who had already made such progress, and seemed to conquer for no other end than to destroy Christianity and civilization! How alarming was their restless and warlike spirit, always inflamed and fostered by fanaticism and the desire for pillage! Were our forefathers then patiently to wait for the yoke of servitude to be laid upon them? Did it become the Christian nations to suffer themselves to be successively subdued and oppressed, rather than to oppose a powerful barrier to the progress of the common enemy? We admire and praise Hannibal for having crossed seas and rivers and mountains, that he might carry war into the centre of Italy, and conquer the Romans upon the very territory of Rome—and shall we blame the European princes for having done the like in much more difficult and trying circumstances, by going to attack the Turks and Saracens in the provinces of Asia, the very bulwark of their power? Finally, was it not better for the Latin lords to turn against these implacable enemies the weapons which, especially during those turbulent ages of the feudal system, they had so often used against the property and lives of one another?

Now, who can doubt that these considerations were perfectly known to the leaders of the Christian states; since, from the very beginning of the First Crusade, Pope Urban II. in the council of Clermont expressly mentioned them, and presented them in a strain of animated eloquence: "Warriors, who listen to me," said he, "rejoice; the time has come for you to show your courage in the best of causes; the time has come for you to expiate, by your generous exertions in a lawful war, the many acts of violence and injustice which you have committed even during the time of peace. After being so long the terror of your own countrymen and fellow-Christians, go now, and, taking the sword of the Machabees, protect the people of God and defend your persecuted brethren against the implacable enemies of the Christian name. . . . . Mussulman impiety has overspread the fairest regions of Asia; Ephesus, Nice, Antioch, have become Mahometan cities; the barbarous hordes of the Turks have planted their colors on the very shores of the Hellespont, whence they threaten war to all the states of Christendom. Unless you oppose a mighty barrier to their triumphant course, how can Europe be saved from invasion? how can

the storm be averted, which has so long threatened to burst upon our countries?" *

Such were the motives, such the objects of the Crusades; can any be conceived more pure, more noble than these? and, consequently, were not the Crusades as just as any other wars of that or any period? They cost, it is true, the lives of nearly two millions of Crusaders; but the loss, although lamentable in itself, was far from being as extraordinary and dreadful as might at first sight appear. 1°. It was not greater than that occasioned by wars much less important and justifiable and of much shorter duration. The conquests of Genghis Khan alone destroyed five or six, some say, eighteen millions of individuals. The war for the Spanish, succession which did not last more than twelve years (1701–1713), carried off two millions of persons.—Napoleon Bonaparte, in the course of twenty years (1795–1815), is supposed to have occasioned the death of no fewer than seven or eight millions of men, mostly to gratify his ambition and desire for military fame; yet, this man is admired and extolled as the greatest hero of modern times, and the promoters and leaders of the Crusades, whose views were so upright, so grand, and so generous, are bitterly and mercilessly censured! 2°. The number of those who perished in consequence of the holy wars, ought rather to appear comparatively small, if we consider that it must be divided among almost all the nations of Europe, and that, too, during the long interval of nearly two hundred years. 3°. The loss of so many individuals was compensated by the invaluable benefits which resulted from the Crusades, and which will be mentioned in the course of these remarks. Let a single observation suffice here: two millions of Christians may have perished in those distant expeditions; but, in thus perishing, they saved European civilization, secured the independence of Christian states, and laid the foundation of the happiness of future generations; do they deserve censure for all this? and does it become those who now enjoy the benefits resulting from their generous devotedness, to complain of their conduct?

Again, if our European ancestors were not allowed to

* From contemporary authors, *apud* Michaud. *vol.* I. *pp.* 104 *and* 106. See also *Collect. Concil. vol.* X. *col.* 511–516.

feel a deep concern in the most sacred monuments of their faith, and to defend the cause of God against savage barbarians; if they had no right to assist and relieve a cruelly oppressed people, and to deliver them and their country from cruel usurpers; if they committed an injustice in repelling from defenceless frontiers a restless and rapacious foe, whose object was pillage, bloodshed and destruction—then, indeed, we might with truth assert that they were awfully mistaken in thus laying down their lives for religion, their country, and their fellowmen; and that we alone, with our degenerate sentiments, are wise, enlightened and praiseworthy! But who would make the odious assertion?—who, on the contrary, is so insensible to all that is noble, grand, and generous in human actions, as to withhold from the religious and social heroism which prompted our forefathers to undertake the Crusades, the merited homage of sincere admiration?

Let us now view the manner in which these expeditions were conducted. It is true that, notwithstanding the wise laws repeatedly enacted by popes and princes, many disorders and excesses were committed by the Crusaders; but this is no reason to impeach the lawfulness and justice of the Crusades themselves, since similar disorders and excesses have occurred in other wars, even the most just and necessary. This then is not the fault of the military enterprise itself, but of the individuals who have a share in it; and merely proves, that man is always accompanied by his passions, and that there is no object, how good and excellent soever, which may not be abused, and become, through his instrumentality, an occasion of evil.

Moreover, if many of those who called themselves the soldiers of the Cross, committed depredations, cruelties and other excesses, how many also, especially among the leaders, acted with a moderation and dignity worthy of the cause which they defended! How often, whilst contending with the treachery of the Greeks or the ferocity of the Turks, did they content themselves with displaying a magnanimous courage, and a chivalric adherence to their promises! How many examples did they exhibit of energetic resolution, generous feelings, invincible patience and noble fortitude? Let the facts speak for

themselves; the history of the Crusades presents so many acts of virtue and glorious feats of arms that it will, notwithstanding the prejudices of the day, forever remain the most interesting portion of the history of the Middle Ages.

Results of the Crusades.—As to the result of these grand and noble expeditions, there were numerous obstacles to their full success, and the conquest and lasting possession of Palestine, viz., the remoteness of the countries, the differences in climate; the excessive heat; the scarcity or bad quality of the provisions, which occasioned malignant fevers, dysenteries and pestilential diseases; the mingling and jealousies of different nations; the opposing views and interests of their leaders; etc., etc. Still, although the Crusades did not fully attain their immediate object, the entire recovery and the preservation of the Holy Land, great and invaluable were the advantages which they otherwise produced.

The first was as we have already observed, the remarkable diminution of the power of both the Saracens and the Seljukian Turks, who were thus prevented from penetrating into the heart of Christendom.

Another happy effect which the Crusades very naturally had was to procure the absence of a multitude of petty princes and chieftains, who were almost constantly quarrelling among themselves or with their sovereigns, and whose restlessness had, until then, brought so many evils upon the fairest portion of Europe. The oppressions, and other evil consequences of the feudal system, gradually disappeared; travelling became easier and more secure; towns and boroughs obtained their enfranchisement; etc.

In the third place, the necessity of transporting the Crusading armies to Egypt and Palestine naturally improved the art of navigation. The mariner's compass, invented some time before, began to be used during the Seventh Crusade, and led to the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope, and the still more important discovery of America.

Fourthly.—Commerce, the profits of which were undoubtedly a powerful motive for some of the Crusaders, was also vastly enlarged by the constant intercourse of the European nations with their colonies in Asia.

Venice, Genoa, Pisa, and other maritime towns rapidly increased in wealth, power and glory. New and valuable plants were imported from the East into the West, and, succeeding well upon this new soil, resulted in the formation of several important branches of trade. With the sugar-cane and its products the Crusaders became acquainted in 1099; the manufacture of silk was begun in Italy towards 1209; and many useful medicines, etc, were also introduced.

Furthermore, the daily communication of our ancestors with Greece and Syria was one of the most powerful helps towards the complete revival of literature, arts and sciences. Thus we see that the principal universities of Europe were founded in the twelfth or in the thirteenth century, during or immediately after the Crusades; e. g., those of Padua and Paris about the year 1180;—that of Naples, in 1230;—Vienna, in 1238;—Salamanca, in 1240, —Cambridge, in 1280;—Lisbon, in 1290: etc. Decrees were issued by popes and councils to establish in Rome, Oxford, Paris, Bologna and Salamanca classes and masters of Hebrew, Arabic and Chaldaic; the masters being morever bound to translate into Latin the best works originally written in these languages. From that time also geography began to be much better known; chemistry, or rather alchymy, opened its laboratories; and, besides a multitude of eminent scholars and divines, the age of the Crusades produced many excellent historians, William of Tyre, Roger Hoveden, Villehardouin, Joinville, and others.*

Such were the *immense* and *lasting* ADVANTAGES produced by those expeditions against which so much spleen has been vented within the three last centuries; advan-

---

* The truth of these remarks has not escaped the learned authors of the *English Universal History*. "The result of the Crusades," they say, "although fatal to some particular nations, was extremely advantageous to Christendom at large, they stopped the progress of the Mahometan power, at the time of its greatest efforts; they taught the princes of Europe the value of a navy; and, by making them better acquainted with the situation, productions and political state of the vast countries of Asia, they opened the way for those discoveries and conquests which have been in after times an inexhaustible source of gain. These advantages, it is true, were not reaped but at a long interval after the Crusades, and this is the reason why so few authors have viewed them under a proper aspect; but the fact itself is not less evidently demonstrated. Even, at the remote period when those expeditions took place, a Venetian (Sanudo, in a

tages far greater than the *partial* and *transitory* EVILS to which the same enterprises accidentally gave occasion, and well calculated to remove from the minds of the most prejudiced any impression unfavorable to the Crusades.

---

work entitled: *Secreta fidelium Crucis*) wrote a learned and judicious treatise on this subject, which, though it had then little effect, furnishes us, at least with an incontestible proof that these happy consequences of the Crusades had been foreseen long before they happened and could be generally understood." *Univ. Hist.*, *vol.* LV, *p.* 279. See also *Histoire du Bas Empire* (A. M. S.S. C. G., Paris. 1838), *vol.* I. *pp.* 434–440;—Bérault-Bercastel, *Descours sur le troisiéme âge de l'Eglise*;—Bergier, *Diction. Théolog.*, art. *Croisades*;—Nonnote, *Erreurs de Voltaire*, *vol.* I. *ch.* XVIII.

PART VI.

FROM THE END OF THE CRUSADES (A.D. 1272), TO THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (A.D. 1492).

ENGLAND, WALES, AND SCOTLAND, UNDER KINGS EDWARD I. AND II.—A.D. 1273-1314.

Edward I., 1272-1307.—Prince Edward, after his return from Palestine, ascended without opposition the throne of his ancestors, and occupied it, during thirty-four years, with great, though not unblemished glory. His government was vigorous, but frequently despotic; his exploits were remarkable, but often accompanied with an excessive rigor bordering on cruelty; on the whole, Edward I. deserved the reputation of an able rather than of a good monarch. Naturally ambitious, he resolved to restore to the English crown, by his conquests, its former dignity which had been considerably diminished by the misfortunes and weakness of the last two kings, and he aspired to the sovereignty of the whole island of Great Britain; nor was he entirely disappointed in his endeavors.

Conquest of Wales.—Great Britain, not including Ireland, contained three separate states, viz., the two kingdoms of England and Scotland, and the principality of Wales. This last was at that time under the sway of Llewellyn, a prince who had inherited from his family a deep hatred against the English, and in preceding wars had conquered them in many battles. Contrary to the custom of several of his predecessors, he sternly refused, at the accession of Edward, to do him homage for his dominions. Edward, thus provoked, seized the opportunity offered him of attacking the Welsh; and, declaring war, invaded their country with superior forces. It was in vain that Llewellyn took refuge among the mountains which had, for many ages, defended his ancestors against all the attempts of Roman and Saxon

conquerors; Edward, not less active than vigilant, penetrated into the very heart of the country. Llewellyn, seeing himself destitute of all resources, consented to make his submission. He soon, however, took up arms once more, but was slain in a decisive engagement near the river Wye, and with him expired the independence of Wales (A.D. 1283). This principality was thenceforth united to the English crown, and given, as a portion, to the eldest sons of the English monarchs.

Scotland revolts successfully under Robert Bruce.—Shortly after the subjugation of Wales, the affairs of Scotland engaged Edward's attention, and gave him hopes of adding that kingdom also to his dominions. There were several competitors for the crown; the English monarch, to whom the controversy was referred (A.D. 1290), acted first as mediator; but, as new difficulties daily arose among the Scottish lords, he soon began to act the part of a conqueror. Yet, notwithstanding his great exertions and many victories, the conquest never was complete nor secure. During the remainder of his life, the Scots frequently shook off the yoke, and, after his death, which happened in 1307, entirely recovered their national freedom, under the weak reign of his son Edward II. In this protracted war, the most famous champions of Scottish liberty, were William Wallace, who for some time proved a match for all the efforts of the English; and Robert Bruce, who fought the celebrated battle of Bannockburn against King Edward II., and, by a signal victory, secured the independence of Scotland (A.D. 1314).

GERMANY UNDER THE EMPEROR RUDOLPH OF HAPSBURG. — COMMENCEMENT OF THE HELVETIAN CONFEDERATION. — A. D., 1273–1315.

The "Interregnum" in Germany.—Ever since the death of Frederic II. in 1250, Germany had been in a state of confusion and disorder. The people were oppressed; robberies, and other excesses were daily committed with impunity; public and private wars continued without interruption. In this deplorable crisis, a man of uncommon prudence, courage and firmness, was indis-

pensably required to check so many evils; such a man was found in Rudolph, count of Hapsburg, from whom sprang the illustrious family of Austria. Being chosen emperor in 1273, by the unanimous votes of the German princes, he immediately directed all his efforts to the restoration of order. Success attended his exertions; and Germany, recovering from her calamities, enjoyed under him a peace to which she had long been a stranger.

Rudolph of Hapsburg, 1273-1291.—Still, it was not in the power of Rudolph to bring back the empire to its former extent and splendor. During the interregnum that preceded his reign, the state had been stripped of important provinces, two of which, Sicily and Naples, being first subdued and occupied by the French under Charles of Anjou, the brother of St. Louis, successively passed into the hands of the Arragonian kings, the former in 1282, by the slaughter of the French, an event well known under the name of *The Sicilian Vespers*, and the latter by conquest, at a subsequent period. Another revolution took place under Albert, the son of Rudolph, in 1308, when Switzerland began to form itself into an independent republic.

Origin of the Swiss Confederacy.—Until then, Switzerland, formerly called Helvetia, had been a portion of the German empire. Its inhabitants, great lovers of their country and of liberty, considered themselves rather under the protection than the authority of the emperor, and valued their privileges more than life itself. The emperor Albert had the imprudence to provoke their indignation, by summoning them to become vassals to him as duke of Austria; and he moreover excited their resentment by appointing as governors over the Helvetian districts three men commonly represented as capable of the most tyrannical excesses. To the summons the spirited natives returned a peremptory refusal, and to the oppression which, it is said, soon began to weigh heavily upon them, they prepared to oppose an undaunted resistance, under the direction of brave and undaunted peasant leaders of their countrymen, remarkable for their independent and intrepid character. Legend only, not history, says how William Tell had been goaded on to vengeance by the tyrannical command of one of the three governors to shoot an apple from the head of his own son

at a distance of a hundred feet; which he did without hurting a hair of the youth. But, whatever may be said of this circumstance, which is now by all called in question, and which really wears a romantic appearance, the conspiracy of the Helvetians against a foreign domination was vigorously conducted. They took and destroyed the castles that had been the seats of tyranny, and either put their oppressors to death or obliged them with their satellites to evacuate the country.

Albert I., 1298–1308.—The battle of Morgarten.—All hope of reconciliation between the emperor and the Helvetians was now destroyed. At the first intelligence of the insurrection, Albert prepared to check it by marching in person against those whom he regarded as rebels; but he was murdered at that very time, on the banks of the river Reuss. The districts of Uri, Underwalden, and Schwytz availed themselves of the disturbances which followed his death, to strengthen their coalition. It was not long, however, before they were attacked by a formidable army of Austrians under the command of Duke Leopold, a son of the emperor Albert. Fully confident of victory, this prince ventured to penetrate into the heart of Switzerland through a narrow defile called Morgarten, while thirteen hundred men of the district of Schweitz took upon themselves the charge of defending it against the multitude of Germans, as formerly three hundred Spartans attempted to stop the Persians in the pass of Thermopylæ. The Helvetians posted themselves on the summits of the surrounding mountains, and, as soon as the Austrians had entered the narrow pass, cast upon them enormous fragments of rocks, which destroyed the cavalry and threw the infantry in disorder; then, rushing down with resistless fury, they cut nearly all the enemy to pieces, while they themselves lost only fourteen men.

A little before the battle, fifty men, who had been lately banished for misconduct, came and offered to atone for their former delinquencies by shedding their blood in defence of their country. However useful their assistance might be to the small army of the Helvetians, it was looked upon as disgraceful, and consequently rejected. No refusal could be more mortifying nor more disparaging than this to the exiles; but patriotism made

them superior to every consideration. When the fight commenced in the valley of Morgarten, this little band attacked the Austrians with undaunted valor, spread terror and destruction wherever they went, and greatly contributed to the victory of their countrymen. What they had just done, inspired them with greater confidence than before; after the battle, they did not hesitate to make their appearance in the camp of the conquerors, and were received by them with every possible mark of gratitude and exultation.

The Swiss Cantons recognized in 1309 by Henry VII.—The battle of Morgarten was a fatal blow given to the Austrian power in Helvetia, whose inhabitants could now justly hope that their liberty was secure. From that time they formed themselves into a regular confederacy, founded on a few plain and simple principles. As the struggle for independence had taken place mainly in the territory of *Schwytz*, and the victory had been gained chiefly by the exertions of its natives, the other districts adoped that name for themselves. At first, they were only three in number; but, in the course of time the neighboring districts and towns joined the confederacy, and by this union formed the nation of the Swiss; a nation greatly celebrated for its uprightness and loyalty. The former confederated cantons now form an almost ideal democratic federal republic, in which the people can always check corrupt legislation.

PROSECUTION AND ABOLITION OF THE KNIGHTS TEMPLARS.—A.D. 1307–1312.

The Knights Templars, whose institution we mentioned before, had now been in existence for nearly two hundred years. During that time their devotion to the cause of Christendom, their heroic valor and exploits against the Moslems, had acquired for their order an extraordinary reputation and immense riches. But wealth and power generated among them a spirit of arrogance and independence, which exasperated both the civil and ecclesiastical authorities. They became proud, intemperate, insolent, and were daily falling into ill repute, when some of their discontented members informed the French king, Philip

the Fair, of still more shocking and heinous crimes committed in the order.

Corruption acknowledged in the order.—The charges were of such a nature, that they at first served only to excite indignation against their authors. It was however thought advisable to make further inquiries, the result of which induced Philip to have all the Templars of his kingdom arrested on the same day, the thirteenth of October (A.D. 1307). A committee which he appointed in Paris, tried one hundred and forty knights, all of whom except three, acknowledged the justice of the accusation against them; and not only they, but even the grand-master and chief commanders of the Templars twice confirmed the same by their own free and express acknowledgment. Moreover, seventy-two others, were examined at Poitiers, and all confessed themselves guilty of the principal crimes laid to their charge.

Pope Clement V. interferes in the affairs of the order.—As the persons thus accused belonged to an order which was religious as well as military, Pope Clement V. took cognizance of the affair, and conducted an investigation with the most assiduous attention and scrupulous impartiality. Struck at the unanimity in the accusations, testimony and voluntary confessions of so many persons, several of whom he himself had examined, he wrote to all the Christian princes in Europe, that they also might take proper measures against the evil. Everywhere, the Templars were put under arrest, and courts of inquiry were appointed according to the pope's command, to examine the accusations brought against them. The prisoners were strictly interrogated, especially with regard to the charges of profligacy, apostasy, and impiety. Several of them pleaded guilty, and threw themselves on the clemency of their judges, while many others declared themselves innocent, and could not be convicted of any crime.

It appears, in fact, that the order was not equally corrupt in all places; which accounts for the different treatment its members received in different countries. Many were acquitted, particularly in Germany and Spain; others were condemned to perpetual or temporary confinement; others, finally, who were convicted of enormous crimes, and still obstinately asserted their innocence or even retracted their previous free avowal of their guilt,

were delivered to the secular power, to be punished according to the rigor of the law. Fifty-nine were burned at the stake in Paris, nine at Senlis, and several others in the south of France.

Fate of Jacques de Molay.—As for the grand-master, Jacques de Molay, and the chief commanders, who were kept with him in safe custody at Paris, the pope had reserved to himself the decision of their fate. In virtue of the sentence passed against them by the papal commissioners, they were to be punished only by confinement, on condition that they would repeat, in the presence of the people, their former acknowledgment of their guilt. Two of them obeyed and were treated with mildness; but Jacques de Molay and another Templar, contrary to public expectation, suddenly declared that their order was innocent and had been calumniated. The papal legates, greatly astonished and perplexed, sent them back to prison, and prepared to deliberate on the strange incident. But the king, highly incensed by the unaccountable conduct of the knights, would not wait any longer. He directly took the advice of his lay-counsellors, and, on the evening of the same day, ordered the two prisoners to be transported to a small island formed by the river Seine, and there to be thrown into the flames. The grand-master displayed, in that awful moment, his characteristic courage, which made a deep impression on the spectators. He is even reported to have, a short time before expiring, summoned Pope Clement to appear within forty days, and King Philip within the space of one year, before the tribunal of their common and sovereign Judge. But this story seems devoid of proof, being omitted by all the historians of that time, and contradicted by the best critics of more recent date, particularly by Mariana,* F. Brumoy,† Natalis Alexander,‡ etc.

Dissolution of the order in 1312, by the council of Vienne.—As to the order itself, whether it should be abolished or maintained, this was a question to be decided by the pope. For this purpose, and for other important affairs, he convoked a general council to be held at Vienne

---

* *De Rebus Hispaniæ*, lib. XV, *c.* XI.
† *Hist. de l'Egl. Gallicane*, *vol.* XII, *l*, XXXVI, *ad ann.* 1312.
‡ In *Hist. Eccles. Sæc.* XIV, *Dissert.* X. *quæst.* II, *art.* I, *n.* XIX.

in France, towards the close of the year 1311. The inquiries about the Templars, and their different trials having now occupied nearly five years, the whole result was laid before the pontiff, who communicated it to the prelates of the assembly. That many individuals had been guilty of enormous crimes, could not be doubted; but there was not sufficient evidence to implicate the whole order; it was clear, however, that it had greatly degenerated and that far from being now of any utility, it was rather an object of scandal to the Church. When these considerations had been weighed for several months, Clement V. came to the conclusion that the order of the Knights Templars could no longer be tolerated with any sort of propriety. Accordingly, on the third of April (A. D. 1312), he published, in presence of and with the approbation of the council, a bull suppressing the order not as of a judicial sentence but as a measure of prudence and expediency; and, in order that the riches and property of the Templars might be still preserved for the purposes to which they had been originally devoted they were transferred to the Knights Hospitallers of St. John, who, more faithful to the original rules of their noble vocation, were still fighting the battles of Christendom against the infidels, from whose hands they had just rescued the island of Rhodes. From this general grant were excepted the estates lying within the kingdoms of Arragon, Castile, and Portugal: these were reserved for the defence of those countries against the Moors, who still occupied a considerable part of the Spanish peninsular.*

PROGRESS OF THE CHRISTIANS OF SPAIN, AND SIGNAL VICTORIES OVER THE MOORS. —A.D. 1312-1344.

The Prince of Morocco resists Christian ascendancy.—The Christians of Spain were gaining

* The affair of the Knights Templars being very differently represented by various modern authors, we have been careful to consult and follow guides who, from their learning and impartiality, could not lead us astray, and above all, the original documents themselves, so well calculated to repel unjust attacks, and correct inaccurate ideas on this important subject. See note J.

ground almost continually on their enemies; but the Moorish nation by receiving assistance and supplies from their African brethren, resembled the hydra, whose heads reappeared as fast as they were cut off, and nearly as dangerous as before; their frequent defeats appeared to rouse them to new exertions. Extraordinary efforts were made from time to time, to avenge and repair all their losses, particularly in the year 1340, under the command of Alboacen, king of Morocco, a prince much renowned for his exploits and conquests among the African tribes. His forces, gathered from every part of Africa, consisted of four hundred thousand infantry, and seventy thousand cavalry, with three hundred and twenty large vessels or galleys to transport them from one shore to the other. Five months were employed in effecting the passage.

At the approach of that immense multitude of Moslems, who were joined by a hundred thousand more from the kingdom of Granada, not only Spain, but all Christendom trembled. Never had so numerous an army been raised by any Mohammedan prince, not even by those ancient caliphs whose power extended over so many countries of Asia and Africa. The general consternation was increased by the news that the two admirals of Arragon and Castile had been defeated and slain by the Moors, whilst endeavoring to oppose their invasion.

Alfonso XI. of Castile.—In this imminent danger, nothing but prodigies of energy, activity, and courage could save the invaded country; this was effected by the king of Castile, Alfonso XI. Not to leave any possible means untried, he sent deputies to various courts of Europe, in order to obtain vessels, money, and troops. He could not, it is true, obtain much, owing chiefly to the obstinate war which had broken out between France and England; still, the king of Portugal, Alfonso IV., marched in person to the proposed expedition with his choicest troops, who, with those of Castile, formed an army of about forty thousand foot and eighteen or twenty thousand horse. Still the contending forces were left in the proportion of *one* Spaniard to *ten* infidels; but such was the courage, the noble confidence—nay, the cheerfulness—displayed by the Castilian monarch at the approach of the battle that the utmost ardor pervaded

the whole Christian army, and fully made up for the inferiority of numbers.

Battle of Tarifa.—When the two kings advanced to meet their formidable foe, Alboacen was besieging the city of Tarifa, from which the battle has taken its name. He abandoned the siege, and posted his innumerable squadrons near a little river called Salado, where he waited the intended attack. On the twenty-eighth of October, the Christians, after having all participated in the sacred mysteries, crossed the stream, and, in battle array, marched against the Moors. History has recorded few particulars of the battle; but, how extraordinary must have been the courage displayed by the Portuguese and Castilians, may be judged from the result, which would really be incredible, were it not corroborated by the most exact historians of Spain, and had not a similar event already happened in the famous battles of Tours (A.D. 732), and Murandal (1212). Here again, in the battle of Tarifa, whilst the Christians hardly suffered any loss (not more than twenty or twenty-five men), from two hundred thousand to two hundred and fifty thousand Moors perished on the field of battle, besides a vast multitude of others who were taken prisoners with the family of Alboacen. This prince escaped by a precipitate flight from that field so fatal to his glory and power, and the next night recrossed the strait in a small boat; thus strikingly resembling Xerxes, and presenting another instance of the same haughty pride followed by a complete overthrow, which has rendered the Persian monarch so famous in history.

The two victorious kings returned, loaded with laurels, to their respective states. So great was the quantity of coin and other booty collected in the Mohammedan camp and distributed among the troops, that gold suddenly lost one-sixth of its value. Shortly after this, the naval forces of the king of Morocco were destroyed by the combined fleets of Castile, Arragon and Portugal, under the command of the Genoese admiral, Boccanegra; Alfonso himself gained another victory, in which forty thousand Moslems were slain, and the important city of Algesiras surrendered to that prince in 1344. These losses greatly contributed towards the downfall of the Moors in Spain; and it might probably have been effected at that

time, had not a long series of dissensions arisen between the Christian sovereigns of the peninsula, which prolonged the tottering existence of their enemies for one hundred and fifty years more.

WAR BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.

From this period we may date the commencement of that obstinate struggle between France and England, which lasted nearly one hundred and twenty years (from 1339 to 1453), and, having twice brought the French monarchy to the brink of destruction, twice also, by unexpected changes, finally turned to her advantage, and deprived the English of almost all their continental possessions. The importance as well as long continuance of this war, even during its first period induces us to describe it under separate titles and sections.

§ I. EDWARD III. OF ENGLAND AND PHILIP VI. OF FRANCE.—A.D. 1328-1350.

Claimants to the succession in France.—The French king Philip IV. (the Fair), at his death in 1314, left three sons, Louis, Philip, and Charles, all of whom, in the short space of fourteen years, successively ascended the throne, and died without male issue. At the death of Charles IV., the youngest of the three brothers, two competitors, Edward of England, and Philip of Valois, claimed the succession; the former as grandson by his mother Isabella, of Philip IV., and the latter as grandson, by his father Charles de Valois, of Philip III., the immediate predecessor of Philip IV. It had indeed been decided, in 1316, at the death of Louis X., who left a daughter, that females were, by the fundamental law of the kingdom, the so-called "Salic law," excluded from the French throne; but Edward contended that, although the sex of his mother might be a disqualification for herself, it could not affect the succession of her son; Philip, on the contrary, maintained that a mother could not transmit to her issue a right which she never possessed. This important case was brought before the peers and barons of France, who were unanimous in rejecting the claims

of Edward.* Philip obtained the crown, and securing its possession by a signal victory over the Flemish, summoned the king of England to do him homage for the Duchy of Guyenne.

Philip VI., of Valois, 1328–1350, and Edward III., 1327-1377.—This homage was a painful task for the English kings; and the high-minded Edward in particular, most reluctantly submitted to the humiliating ceremony. He moreover still saw with a jealous eye the French crown in the hands of another, and was well disposed to maintain his pretensions to it by an appeal to arms. Accordingly, as soon as the accession of the Flemish to his cause rendered his forces adequate to such a design, he declared war against Philip, towards the beginning of the year 1338.

Battle of Sluys.—Fortune was at first favorable to the French in their struggle against Edward; but the naval battle of Sluys, in 1340, gave the English a decided superiority. A powerful fleet of one hundred and twenty large vessels, carrying forty thousand men, had been raised by Philip, to intercept the British monarch on his passage from England to Flanders. Edward determined to force the passage, and manœuvred his ships for the combat with such prudence and skill, as to win the admiration of the ablest seamen. The battle was obstinate and bloody, and the king himself received a wound, which, however, rather served to increase his natural intrepidity; he skilfully took advantage of the wind and tide, and vigorously attacked the enemy's line, until the timely arrival of the Flemish, his allies, decided the victory in his favor. Nearly all the French vessels were captured, and about twenty-eight thousand men

* That the claims of Edward III. to the French throne were unfounded pretensions, can now hardly be denied, and the same has been acknowledged by many English historians, e. g. the authors of Univers. Hist. (vol. cviii. pp. 403–404); J. Reeve in his History of the Church (vol. ii, pp. 144–145); the authoress of a well written History of Great Britain and Ireland, printed at Cork in 1815, (vol. i, p. 149); etc. Dr. Lingard contents himself with saying (vol. iv, p. 30, note) that Edward, in order to prove his claim, was obliged to maintain three principles, which he enumerates; but, by not adding a word in his favor, nor saying that the monarch proved any of the assertions favorable to his cause, he naturally leads the reader to conclude that the claim itself was groundless, and generally considered as such; whereas Philip de Valois, having on his side the authority of the law, the judgment of the peers, and the practice of preceding times, saw his right plainly and unequivocally acknowledged.

slain or drowned; the loss of the English was, comparatively, inconsiderable.

Battle of Crécy.—The battle of Sluys did not, however, end the dispute between the two monarchs. The following years beheld a series of new and more or less insignificant expeditions, which only lessened the resources of both parties, without ending the war. At length, the English king resolved to make an extraordinary effort, and crush his opponent by attacking him at different points at once. Whilst an army, led by the earl of Derby, engaged the attention of the French in Guienne, Edward himself, with other troops, landed on the coast of Normandy, and rapidly advanced towards Paris, burning or plundering all the towns in his way. The approach of Philip at the head of an army far superior in numbers to his own, induced him to retrace his steps towards the north; this he did successfully, though with great difficulty and danger. He then posted his troops upon a hill near the village of Crécy in Ponthieu, and waited in good order for the arrival of the enemy (A.D. 1346).

Shortly after, the French appeared, and, hurried on by their usual impetuosity, immediately commenced the battle, without allowing themselves any time to rest and to draw up their army properly. On the other hand the English had been taught discipline; so that, being well drilled, and well commanded, they easily defeated the first two lines of the assailants. King Philip repeatedly strove, but in vain, to rally his forces; at each new charge he lost the bravest of his attendants, and was finally compelled to abandon the field of battle, which, on the following day, was found covered with more than thirty thousand slain, among whom were eleven princes and twelve hundred knights. The conquerors lost but one esquire, three knights and a few persons of inferior rank.

First use of cannons.—The young prince of Wales, Edward's eldest son, first in this battle displayed that courage and ability which afterwards made him so illustrious and successful a general. It was also at Crécy that artillery was for the first time made use of by the English; they had four, some say six, pieces of cannon, which greatly contributed to their victory, by the surprise and the terror they spread among the French troops.

Siege of Calais.—The victorious monarch lost no time in improving his advantage. With the view of securing for the future an easy entrance into France, he laid siege to the town of Calais, which was defended by John of Vienne, an experienced commander, and supplied with everything necessary for a long resistance. The operations of Edward were indeed slow in the beginning, but they at length obtained full success; and Calais, after sustaining a siege of twelve months and enduring a dreadful famine, was obliged to surrender. It was, or seemed to be the conqueror's intention to punish the obstinacy of the townsmen by putting some of them to death. He therefore insisted that six of the chief citizens should come, bare-headed and bare-foot, with ropes about their necks, to present him the keys of the town and castle. This spread consternation among the inhabitants, but the gloom was dispelled by a generous patriot, named Eustace of St. Pierre, who offered himself as a victim to appease the anger of the British monarch, and whose example was soon followed by five others. They approached the English camp, and, after delivering the keys, the governor presented his sword to Edward, begging mercy for the citizens. The king appeared inflexible, rejected the intercession of his barons, and even sent for the executioner, when Queen Philippa, who had just arrived from England, threw herself on her knees before her husband, and, by tears and entreaties obtained the deliverance of the unfortunate townsmen. Edward then took possession of Calais, which, after expelling the majority of the natives, he re-peopled with a colony of his own subjects. It soon became the continental mart for British merchandise, and remained in possession of the English for more than two centuries.

Battle of Nevil's Cross against the Scots.—While the English monarch was gaining victories upon the continent, the Scots, taking advantage of his absence, crossed the frontiers with a numerous army headed by David Bruce, their king. Queen Philippa, who had not yet set out from England, seeing the danger, prepared to repel it by a sudden and vigorous effort. She mustered all the forces that circumstances had left at her disposal, and sent them against the Scottish army, which they met

at a place called Nevil's Cross, near Durham. A sharp contest ensued, which soon ended in the total defeat of the Scots. Fifteen thousand of them were cut to pieces; the others were routed, and driven from the field; the king himself was made prisoner, and taken with many of his nobles and knights to the tower of London.

Truce concluded.—Thus were the arms of Edward everywhere successful; but these advantages had been purchased at enormous expense, and with the loss, it is said of fifty thousand Englishmen. This consideration induced him to consent to a truce with Philip, who, owing to the embarrassed state of his affairs, had still greater need of a respite than the English monarch. Through the mediation of Pope Clement VI. the truce was concluded between the two kings, at first for a few months, but afterwards for six years.

The Black Death ravages England and France.—No step could have been taken more useful and necessary than this to both nations. Almost immediately after the conclusion of peace France and England were visited by a pestilence as general and destructive as any recorded in history. It had broken out in the centre of Asia, whence it gradually travelled westward and spread through the different countries of Europe. Of the victims of the plague, many expired in the course of six hours, and few lingered more than two or three days. Although it can scarcely be credited, as some have asserted, that the mortality carried off one-half or one-third of the human race, we may, however, judge of its frightful ravages, from the fact that all the cemeteries in London were soon filled, and the number of the dead in the great hospital of Paris amounted to the daily average of five hundred. This awful calamity was generally regarded as a punishment from heaven, and had the happy effect of bringing multitudes of sinners to a sense of their duty. At the same time the whole continent, from Calabria to the north of Poland, was shaken by a succession of earthquakes.

The French crown prince called "Dauphin."—During these occurrences, King Philip died on the twenty-second of April, 1350, leaving behind him the reputation of a brave, but imprudent, a tolerably good, but not very talented prince. It was his misfortune to

have to contend with so able a monarch as Edward III. Yet, notwithstanding his disasters and losses, France made under his reign the important acquisition of the province of Dauphiné, which was ceded by Humbert II., its last sovereign, under the easy condition that the eldest son of every French king should have the title and name of *Dauphin;* a condition which was faithfully adhered to during five centuries.

§ II. Edward III. and John II.—A.D. 1350-1364.

John II., 1350-1364.—Philip was succeeded on the throne by his son, John II., formerly called duke of Normandy. The success which this prince had obtained in the previous war of Guienne, his experience, and the maturity of his age which was about forty years, seemed to promise a much happier reign than that of his father; on the contrary, however, a valor not guided by prudence, plunged the new monarch and his kingdom into an abyss of misfortunes, and prepared new triumphs for England.

Renewal of hostilities between France and England.—The truce concluded between Edward and Philip being now ended, hostilities recommenced. The prince of Wales, Edward, also called the *Black Prince* (from the color of his armor), opened the campaign. He set out with his troops from Bordeaux, and laid waste all the surrounding country. The year following (1356) he did the same, and advanced into the very heart of France, destroying the crops, slaughtering the cattle, reducing to ashes the farm-houses, towns, and villages, and subjecting the natives to all the horrors of war,* until the sudden approach of King John with an army of sixty thousand men admonished him to retire. But it was now too late; he was overtaken at Maupertuis, near Poitiers, and all he could do was to occupy a strong position upon an eminence in the midst of vineyards.

Battle of Poitiers, 1356.—Could the remembrance of Crécy have checked the presumptuous precipitation of the French, the English prince would not have been able

---

* See in Dr. Lingard (*vol.* IV., *pp.* 136–137) another dreadful instance of the same inhumanity, and the just criticism of the historian of this cruel manner of waging war, which has left a blot on the memory of the prince of Wales.

to escape an entire overthrow. His troops were six or seven times less numerous than those of his opponent; they had scarcely provisions for one day more; nor could they attempt to leave their camp, without manifest danger of being immediately surrounded. Well aware of the perplexing circumstance, young Edward had recourse to negotiations. He offered to restore his conquests, his booty and his captives, promising moreover, not to bear arms against France for the space of seven years. His offers were rejected; and the French, instead of letting famine force the English to surrender, rushed upon them as an assured prey, with their usual imprudence and tumultuous hurry.

The event could not have been more disgraceful for the assailants and disastrous for France. The cavalry, having entangled themselves among the vineyards and hedges with which the spot was covered, were easily overthrown by the English archers: the second line began also to waver, and soon fled precipitately, thus permitting the Black Prince to advance at the head of his cavalry, and charge with immense advantage the division of infantry commanded by the French king in person. Here the combat grew fierce and obstinate. John, animated by despair, maintained for a while the unequal contest, and, by the terrible strokes of his battle-axe, slew or wounded those who ventured within his reach. But his strength soon failed him. He was wounded in the face, beaten to the ground, and finally taken prisoner with his youngest son Philip, who, during the engagement, had fought like the most hardy warrior to save his father's life.

Victory of the Black Prince.—Such was the ever memorable battle of Poitiers, in which a handful of Englishmen defeated the whole chivalry of France, and, besides covering the field of battle with five or six thousand slain, took fifteen thousand prisoners. The moderation of young Edward, after so splendid a victory, increased the admiration which his conduct in battle had inspired. He soothed his royal captive, waited on him at table, and in every particular behaved towards him with all possible courtesy and respect. The next morning he continued his march with his army and his prisoners to Bordeaux; and, having concluded a truce for two years

with the dauphin Charles, regent of France during the captivity of the king, returned from Guienne to England. He was received in London with extraordinary magnificence, which, though apparently intended to honor the French monarch, was easily referred by all to the conqueror of Poitiers.

To have taken two kings prisoners at the same time, was certainly a glorious achievement; but mere glory did not satisfy Edward III., who used every means in his power to turn his victories to the best advantage. A considerable tribute to be paid for a certain number of years, was the condition on which the Scottish king obtained his liberty. The adjustment of the rival claims of England and France was infinitely more difficult, the pretensions of Edward being so high and so excessive, as to be unanimously and indignantly rejected by the French government. This refusal, however, appeared little in accordance with the existing state of affairs, as nothing can be conceived more distressing and deplorable than the condition to which that kingdom was now reduced. The mourning, humiliation, and losses occasioned by the defeats at Sluys, Crécy and Poitiers; the dauphin left without resources; his authority disregarded; factions and dissensions springing up in several provinces; civil wars raging between the nobles and the peasants, who threw on each other the blame of the national calamities; troops of marauders destroying what had been spared by war and pestilence: everything contributed to spread desolation over France. In order, as it were, to give the final blow to the tottering monarchy, just at this juncture, the English king resolved to renew the war, and, landing in the north, recommenced hostilities with the most numerous and best appointed army that had been raised in England for more than a hundred years.

The Dauphin's policy against Edward III.—To meet this emergency, the dauphin wisely deviated from the course hitherto followed by the French monarchs. Knowing, from experience, the danger of general engagements with soldiers so intrepid and hardy as the English, he commanded the leaders of his troops to avoid every kind of battle, and rather to shut themselves up in towns and fortresses, with their supplies of provisions. These measures were perfectly successful. Edward, as he ad-

vanced, found a country in which his army could hardly subsist. Unable to fight in the open field, he attacked the cities of Rheims and Paris; but he failed in both attempts, and was compelled, in a short time, by the scarcity of provisions and the severity of the weather, to retire towards Bretagne.

Peace of Bretigny.—The retreat of the English was like that of vanquished troops endeavoring to escape the pursuit of a victorious enemy. In the neighborhood of Chartres, a frightful storm burst upon their camp. The tents were carried away by the violence of the wind; and the clouds poured down showers of rain mingled with hailstones of a prodigious size, which crushed to death men and horses. At the sight of the evils occasioned by his obstinacy and ambition, the king in a moment of remorse, made a vow not to reject any longer honorable conditions of peace. Accordingly the negotiations for a treaty were resumed, and it was concluded at Bretigny on terms somewhat less hard for France than had been proposed before. Edward consented to renounce his pretensions to the French crown, and to restore a part of his conquests; still, he kept full possession of several provinces, and demanded a ransom of three million crowns of gold to be paid for the French monarch within the space of six years. These conditions were ratified by both parties, and John was at length liberated (A.D. 1360).

John II.'s death.—He did not long enjoy his liberty. Notwithstanding his perfect sincerity, which no man ever questioned, he found it an easier matter to promise than to perform, being unable to raise the stipulated sums at the time appointed for each instalment. On this account, and in consequence of other difficulties arising from the treaty of Bretigny, John determined to give himself up again to his conqueror, saying that, "If honor were banished from every other place, it should find an asylum in the breasts of kings." He actually returned to London, where he died after a few weeks, in 1364.

§ III. EDWARD III. AND CHARLES V. —A.D. 1364-1380.

Hostilities in Spain.—The death of John at first made no change in the existing relations between France and England; and the dauphin, now King Charles V., had sufficient time to restore perfect tranquillity in his kingdom. His best measure was first the delivery of his people from a large body of military adventurers, who after having followed the standard of Edward III. during the war, subsisted, in time of peace, by plundering the French territories. Many fruitless attempts had been made to get rid of those *companies* of formidable banditti; at length Charles succeeded, through the means of his celebrated general Du Guesclin, in inducing them to undertake an expedition into Spain, on the ground that their exertions might be extremely useful to that country and to themselves.

The kingdom of Castile was then groaning under the tyrannical rule of Don Pedro, son and successor of Alfonso XI. That prince, justly surnamed *the cruel*, on account of his vindictive and ferocious spirit, ascended the throne in 1350, at the age of fifteen, and marked each succeeding year by dreadful executions, prompted by his ambition, caprice, or barbarous profligacy. The most illustrious of his victims was his virtuous queen, Blanche de Bourbon, a French princess, who is believed to have perished by poison. Don Henry, earl of Transtamare, and half-brother to Don Pedro, threatened with a similar fate, fled to Paris, where he entered into a confederacy with the French court to punish the murderer of Blanche.

Don Pedro gains an ally in Edward III.—Accordingly the bands of adventurers just mentioned with other bodies of troops under the conduct of Du Guesclin, entered Spain in 1366, and rapidly marching through the kingdom of Arragon, placed Don Henry on the throne of Castile without fighting a battle. It was in vain that Pedro summoned his vassals, they rejoiced at his distress; and he had no other resource than to take refuge on board a vessel, which carried him safely to Bayonne, whence he proceeded to Bordeaux, the capital of the

British possessions in France, and the residence of the prince of Wales. The heart of this young prince was moved by the astonishing, though merited, misfortune of Don Pedro. He readily espoused his cause, and, in order to replace him on the throne, led into Castile a gallant army, with which he attacked the enemy near Navarrete. After a sharp contest, Don Henry was put to flight, Du Guesclin was taken prisoner, and Pedro, without further obstacle, again assumed the sceptre.

Unfortunately for the Castilian monarch, adversity, instead of improving, had rather exasperated his temper. He soon returned to his former cruel course; and for the benefits bestowed upon him by young Edward, returned nothing but ingratitude, delaying, under various pretences, to reimburse him for the expenses of the war. In the meantime, the victorious troops of his allies began to suffer greatly from want of provisions and the heat of the climate; and the constitution of the British prince himself was considerably impaired. Equally indignant and alarmed, Edward abandoned the ungrateful monarch, and returned with his army through the kingdom of Navarre to his own territories.

Pedro killed by his brother in personal combat.—This permitted Don Henry and Du Guesclin, who had recovered his liberty, to re-enter Spain with fresh troops, in 1368. They defeated Don Pedro in several battles, in one of which he lost fifty thousand Moors, who had enlisted in his service; and they soon closely besieged him in the castle of Montiel. He endeavored to make his escape during the night, but was arrested and brought to the tent of a French officer, where, either through accident or design, he was met by his brother and rival. "They immediately grappled with each other; Pedro threw Henry on the floor, and Henry, in the struggle, despatched his adversary with a poniard."

War between France and England—Re-conquest of the English possessions.—Being thus once more seated on the throne, the new king of Castile showed his gratitude to his benefactor and faithful ally, Charles V., by concluding with him an alliance offensive and defensive, and promising him assistance in vessels and troops, in case of a new war against Edward III. This war occurred very soon. The subjects of complaint

between the two rival nations had been, since the death of John II., continually increasing, and his successor was at length induced to answer the lofty demands of his opponents by a declaration of war. The British possessions in France were entered by hostile armies, whose rapid progress was aided by the disaffection of the natives against a foreign government. Careful to avoid a general battle, the French extended their conquests by capturing towns, and securing them with strong fortresses and garrisons. They had, it is true, to contend against the powerful reinforcements continually sent from England for the defence of her transmarine dominions; but circumstances were now totally changed. While the English monarch, now in an advanced age, was leading an indolent life, and the prince of Wales lingering under a disease which he had contracted in Spain, the wisdom of Charles and the activity of Du Guesclin constantly improved their former success. The troops of Sir Robert Knolles, stationed on the borders of Bretagne, were put to flight. A fresh and numerous army, commanded by the duke of Lancaster, was almost entirely destroyed, either by continual skirmishes, or by the fatigues of the march and the weather. In one place, the famous English general Chandos lost his life; in another, the Captal de Buch, one of the best officers in the service of Edward, was taken prisoner; and in 1372, the British vessels, carrying supplies to the continent, were all sunk or captured near La Rochelle, by a Spanish fleet which King Henry had, according to his promise, sent to the assistance of the French.

Death of the Black Prince in 1376, and of Edward III. in 1377.—By this series of disasters and losses, the English found themselves compelled to ask for a truce, which was granted, and, at short intervals by renewals prolonged for some years. They were now deprived of nearly all their ancient possessions in France, and of all their late conquests except the town of Calais. In 1376, they sustained an irreparable loss in the death of Edward, prince of Wales, and one year later, the king, his father, followed him to the grave, at the age of sixty-five years, during fifty of which he had occupied the throne.

"In personal accomplishments," says Dr. Lingard,

"Edward III. is said to have been superior, in mental powers, to have been equal, to any of his predecessors. More than usual care had been bestowed on his education: and he could not only speak the English and French, but also understand the German and Latin languages. His elocution was graceful; his conversation entertaining; his behavior dignified, but also attractive. To the fashionable amusements of hunting and hawking he was much addicted: but to these he preferred the more warlike exercises of tournament: and his subjects, at the conclusion of the exhibition, often burst into transports of applause, when they found that the unknown knight, whose prowess they had admired, proved to be their own sovereign. Of his courage as a combatant, and his abilities as a general, the reader will have formed a competent opinion from the preceding pages. The astonishing victories, which cast so much glory on one period of his reign, appear to have dazzled the eyes both of his subjects and of foreigners, who placed him in the first rank of conquerors: but the disasters which clouded the evening of his life, have furnished a proof that his ambition was greater than his judgment. He was at last convinced that the crowns of France and Scotland were beyond his reach; but not till he had exhausted the strength of the nation by a series of gigantic but fruitless efforts. Before his death, all his conquests, with the exception of Calais, had slipped from his grasp: the greater part of his hereditary dominions on the continent, had been torn from him by a rival, whom he formerly despised: and a succession of short and precarious truces was sought and accepted as a boon by the monarch, who in his more fortunate days, had dictated the peace of Bretigni." *

Death of Charles V. in 1380.—Three years after the death of Edward, Charles V., king of France, also died, leaving his kingdom as prosperous and happy, as he had found it distressed and miserable. In the space of sixteen years, he had by his consummate prudence, repaired the evils of the two preceding reigns. Instead of rashly exposing his own person in battle, as his father and grandfather had done, he confided the command of his

* Lingard's *History of England*, iv, pp. 147-149.

armies to generals equally brave and cautious, and through them waged war with uninterrupted success, he himself directing from his cabinet the chief operations of their campaigns. Nor was his prudence less admirable in his civil, than in his military administration. Good order was re-established in the different branches of government; peace was restored to the capital and the provinces; offices of trust were filled by men of well known merit and integrity; the king himself gave to all the example of sincere piety, purity of morals, charity to the poor, and fidelity to the laws of God and of the Church. At his accession to the throne, having found the coffers of the exchequer empty, he replenished them, not by increasing the taxes, which he on the contrary diminished, but by a wise administration of the public revenues. It was thus that Charles was enabled to deliver France from powerful invaders; to assist his allies; to make his people happy; to foster the arts, sciences and commerce; to lay the foundation of the famous royal library in Paris; in a word, constantly to exemplify the truth of his own maxim: "That kings are happy, only because they have the power of doing good." His subjects bestowed on him the flattering epithet of "The Wise," and posterity has always pronounced him one of the greatest kings that ever sat on the throne of France. He was succeeded by his son Charles VI. Richard II., son of the Black Prince, began to reign about the same time, in the place of his grandfather Edward III.

RISE OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE, AND ITS PROGRESS TILL THE BATTLE OF NICOPOLIS.—A.D. 1300-1396.

Supremacy of the Ottoman Turks.—We must now turn our attention to the east of Europe, where a new and formidable enemy began to make his appearance. The fourteenth century beheld the rise and progress of the savage and warlike nation of the Ottomans, who were destined to sweep from the face of the earth the last vestiges of Roman power. Fresh hordes of Turks, eager to walk in the footsteps of their ancestors, were continually pouring from Tartary over the fairest provinces of Asia—restless and uncivilized tribes, who hardly knew how to

procure the necessaries of life except by war and pillage. After the fall of the Seljukian Turks of Iconium, these barbarians occupied their possessions in Asia Minor, under the rule of seven independent chieftains commonly called emirs.

Othman I. and Urchan.—The most skilful and powerful of these chieftains was *Othman*, from whom the Turks have derived the name of *Ottomans*. His valor and activity soon enabled him to prevail over the petty princes by whom he was surrounded; he made himself master of a great part of Bithynia; and continued his victorious career for the space of twenty-seven years (A.D. 1300–1326). His plan of aggrandizement was successfully followed by Urchan, his son and successor. While the degenerate Greeks were continually weakening themselves by civil dissensions and wars, the well combined forces of the Turks daily increased the extent and strength of their empire. They captured, in a short time, the cities of Prusa, Nicomedia, and Nice, and, crossing the strait of Dardanelles, began to carry their victorious arms into Europe. Many important places of Thrace, and even the city of Adrianople, had already fallen into their power when Urchan died, in 1360.

Murad I.—Murad, who was the third sultan (sovereign) of the Turks, strengthened the throne his two predecessors had reared, by organizing the intrepid band of the *Janizaries*, whose number amounted, in different times, from ten to forty thousand; a body resembling, in almost every respect, that of the Prætorians at Rome under the emperors, and of the Mamelukes in Egypt since the time of Saladin. A regular and gallant troop of cavalry, called *Spahis*, had already been established by Urchan; it was subsequently improved by Murad. This monarch, having chosen Adrianople for the seat of his government, kept, from that city, a watchful eye on the conduct of the neighboring states, in order to turn all their proceedings to his own advantage; for, although he was, we are told, a great admirer of virtue and lover of justice, yet he lost no opportunity to gratify his ambition. Hence his reign, which lasted twenty-nine years (A.D. 1360-1389), was little else than a continual warfare, and was rendered famous by thirty-seven victories, the last of which, however, proved more fatal to himself than to his numerous

enemies, the Hungarians, Servians, and other nations of eastern Europe, who had united their forces to oppose his progress. After the battle, as he was visiting the plain covered with the dead and dying, a Servian soldier, who lay among the rest, suddenly arose, and with a dagger stabbed the sultan, who expired in two hours, in the midst of his officers.

Bajazet I.—The next sultan, Bajazet I. is well known in history under the surname of *Ilderim* (lightning); an epithet which he fully deserved by the rapidity of his conquests, and the uncommon celerity with which he again and again marched from Europe to Asia, and from Asia to Europe. He assembled and marshalled his forces, separated and re-united them with incredible activity; he would disappear for a time, and suddenly appear again when he was thought to be at a distance. Still Bajazet sometimes met with enemies no less brave and skilful than himself; and his life presented a constant alternation of brilliant victories and overwhelming defeats.

Conquest of Moldavia, by Bajazet I. after a first defeat.—His efforts were at first directed against several petty sovereigns of Armenia and Asia Minor, who were all easily subdued. He then turned his attention to a more powerful and warlike opponent, Stephen, prince of Moldavia, who had, two years before, defeated in a great battle the generals of Murad, the father of Bajazet. Anxious to restore the honor of the Turkish name, Bajazet marched rapidly through the province of Thrace, crossed the Danube and entered the territory of his enemy, a warrior as eager as himself for the meeting. After a fierce conflict, the Moldavians were routed; and their leader, who was the last to quit the field of battle, fled towards Nols, a fortified town, where he had left his mother and children. He found the gates closed against him by his mother's command. From the top of the ramparts, this courageous woman upbraided him for his flight, and bade him return, renew the fight, and, if he could not conquer, rather die than survive his defeat. This revived at once the courage and hopes of Stephen; he immediately returned, rallied about twelve thousand men, and rushed upon the Turks, who were then engaged in pillaging, with such impetuosity and vigor, that nearly all were cut to pieces; the imperial tent, with a consider-

able booty, fell into the power of the Moldavians; and the proud sultan precipitately retired to the extremities of his dominions.

He soon reappeared, more fierce and formidable than ever. Thrace, Greece, and other provinces were overrun and laid waste by his armies; and if, for reasons of policy and prudence, he did not yet attack Constantinople, he at least made the suburbs of that city the limits of the Greek empire. The reigning imperial family was treated by him with the utmost contempt. New fortifications having been added to the capital by the emperor John Paleologus, Bajazet was displeased, and sent an order for their demolition, which order Paleologus obeyed. The next emperor Manuel, received from the haughty sultan a command to remain in Constantinople: he complied with the injunction, leaving the city but once, in order to appear at the court of Bajazet, which he did at the risk of his life; for his preservation he was indebted to the generous commiseration of a Turkish officer. He then wrote pressing letters to the Christian sovereigns of Europe, imploring their assistance against the incessant encroachments of the Turks; and his example was imitated by Sigismond, king of Hungary, who was not less anxious to avert the impending storm from his frontiers.

France and Hungary assist the Eastern Empire.—These letters and solicitations had little effect, except in France, which furnished a large number of soldiers and knights under the command of the earl of Nevers, a prince of the royal family. They marched through Bavaria, and joined, near the Danube, the Hungarians commanded by Sigismond, whose forces then amounted to upwards of a hundred thousand men. When he reviewed them, he is said to have exclaimed, in a transport of confidence and joy, that "if the firmament itself should fall, they might support it with their lances." His hopes, however, were grounded more on appearances than on reality; for, if bravery was the distinguishing characteristic of his followers, discord, jealousy, presumption and licentiousness also reigned among them; and Bajazet showed greater foresight than Sigismond, when on being informed of these disorders, he said that his enemies would surely provoke the just wrath of their God.

Battle of Nicopolis.—After some minor engagements, in which the Christians prevailed over the Turks, they commenced a general battle near the city of Nicopolis in Bulgaria (A.D. 1396). When the two armies approached, Sigismond entreated the French to unite prudence with valor against an enemy with whose mode of warfare they were not sufficiently acquainted. The advice was good, but given to no purpose, the earl of Nevers and other young lords imagining that it was the intention of Sigismond to deprive them of the honor of beginning the battle. They therefore, without waiting for the Hungarians, rushed upon the first squadrons of the Turks with intrepidity, but in disorder. The enemy pretended to be terrified, and fled; the French pursued them, with full confidence of an easy victory, when, on a sudden, they found themselves not only surrounded by numerous bands of Spahis and Janizaries, whom Bajazet had placed in ambuscade, but also entangled amidst an incredible number of stakes which had been purposely planted in order to throw them into confusion so that the Christian cavalry could neither advance nor retire. Resolved at least to sell their lives as dearly as possible, they continued fighting with undaunted valor, and for several hours spread terror and death among the thickest battalions of the Turks. At length, overcome by fatigue, and overpowered by the multitudes of their opponents, they fell, almost all, under the Ottoman sword; the remaining few were taken prisoners.

Bajazet immediately led all his forces against the main body of the confederates, put them to flight, and entered their camp, where his soldiers found invaluable riches. Sigismond seeing everything lost, threw himself into a boat, and following the course of the Danube, and then the coasts of the Euxine sea, succeeded, after many adventures, in reaching the imperial city of Constantinople, where his arrival as a fugitive announced his defeat and spread consternation. All trembled at the approach of the victorious sultan; the Greek capital was more than ever in danger of an attack, and would probably have become an easy prey to the Turks, had not its downfall been delayed by the sudden appearance of another conqueror far superior to Bajazet himself.

TAMERLANE AND THE MONGOLS. —A.D. 1369-1405.

BATTLE OF ANGORA.—1402.

TIMUR, better known by the name of Tamerlane, had been raised, amidst the confusion of civil wars, from the station of a petty sovereign to the throne of the Mongols and Tartars, in the year 1369. He soon re-established, by his indefatigable activity and courage, the vast empire of Genghis Khan in Asia. History can scarcely follow him through his gigantic expeditions; and the imagination itself is astounded at the rapidity with which he carried his destructive sword from the centre of Tartary to the borders of Egypt, and from the river Indus to the frozen deserts of Siberia. Such was the man whom Providence destined to crush the pride, and overthrow the power of Bajazet.

Historians are not unanimous in explaining the motives which induced these two mighty princes to turn their arms against each other. It is generally supposed that the complaints of the Greek emperor and of the Mussulman princes of Asia, against the encroachments of Bajazet, were the chief motive of Tamerlane's conduct on this occasion; but it might also be sufficiently accounted for by the character of the two rivals. In the opinion of the Tartar monarch, it was neither proper nor possible that the world should be governed by two sovereigns of equal power; nor was the Turkish sultan less ambitious.

Tamerlane set out from the East at the head of his intrepid Tartars; and, as if he had resolved to give Bajazet an idea of the ravages that everywhere accompanied his armies, he marched them across Armenia and Syria, and these unfortunate countries, so often before the theatre of disastrous warfare, were again laid waste, their riches seized, their cities destroyed, their inhabitants slaughtered; streams of blood, and towers built with human bodies and skulls, everywhere marked the passage of the Mogul conqueror.

The battle of Angora 1402.—At length, the Tartars directed their course towards the Turkish dominions. Tamerlane marched through Anatolia with eight hundred

thousand men, while Bajazet, on his side, fearlessly advanced to meet him, at the head of four hundred thousand brave soldiers. These formidable armies came in sight near Angora (July 1402), and there, through the whole extent of a vast plain, engaged in a conflict more furious and frightful than even imagination can picture. It lasted three days, and cost the lives, according to the lowest calculation, of one hundred and eighty thousand, according to others, of three hundred and forty, or even four hundred thousand of the combatants. Victory at last declared in favor of the Tartars. The remaining Turks were dispersed; and the sultan, after he had fought till the last moment with desperate valor, was surrounded by a host of enemies eager to secure so important a prize, and, in spite of all his efforts, became their prisoner.

Bajazet captured by Tamerlane.—Not only different, but even contradictory, are the accounts given of the manner in which Bajazet was treated by Tamerlane. The more probable, as being founded on the testimony of most of the historians who wrote near that time, is that the Mongol prince received his captive into his own tent with great kindness and regard, and, making him sit by his side on the same carpet, spoke to him in the most consoling terms; but that Bajazet, far from being grateful for this noble and generous reception, showed only ferocious haughtiness and impotent rage, which deeply offended his conqueror. To the question put by Tamerlane, "what he would have done, if fortune had been favorable to him?" he answered, "I would have confined you in an iron cage."—"Let such, then, be your own mansion," replied Tamerlane. The sentence was enforced, and Bajazet, unable to bear his great misfortune, died one or two years after, some say, of grief and despair, others, of apoplexy. His sons were permitted to divide, or rather to dispute among themselves the wrecks of his empire, and the Mongol conqueror returned to his own dominions.

Tamerlane's character.—It may not be amiss to describe here more fully the character of this extraordinary prince. By the oriental nations, Tamerlane is compared to Alexander the Great; and the renowned biographer Feller, in his *Historical Dictionary* (article *Tamerlane*),

seems to approve of that idea, which he even endeavors to confirm by some examples. The comparison may be true with respect to exploits and military abilities; but, in many other particulars, it is certainly false. Alexander was ambitious, without being naturally cruel; while, on the contrary, nothing can be conceived more barbarous than the manner in which Tamerlane carried on his wars, and treated those who presumed to resist. By his orders, seventy thousand persons were inhumanly slaughtered in the capture of Ispahan; one hundred and twenty thousand in that of Sebaste; ninety thousand in that of Bagdad, which city was utterly destroyed; and so, proportionally, in other places. In the conquest of India, the natives were hunted like wild beasts, and it is no exaggeration to say that millions of them were put to the sword, the multitude of prisoners being moreover so great, that each of the Tartar soldiers had many in his power. On one occasion, Tamerlane caused a hundred thousand of these unhappy captives to be slain in the space of an hour; on another, he commanded multitudes of unfortunate people to be crushed under the feet of horses, or to be buried alive; and, besides, he invariably kept up the horrid custom, which we have already mentioned, of building towers with human skulls, as monuments of his victories.* Never assuredly were there deeds of cruelty so awful and so multiplied, perpetrated either by Alexander the Great, or any other conqueror except Tamerlane.

It is truly astonishing that the *man* who could commit such atrocities in war, was in time of peace just, judicious, and generous. Equitable in his decisions, and zealous in the correction of abuses, he was kind towards his relations, attentive to the welfare of his troops, and careful to reward their services, humane towards all his subjects and desirous of their happiness, particularly towards the close of his career. "I do not wish," he once said to his counsellors, "that the distressed and the poor should cry out for vengeance against me on the day

* These, and other particulars respecting Tamerlane, may be seen in *Univers. Hist. vol.* XLVIII, *pp.* 220-468;—Anquetil, *Précis de l'Hist. Univers vol.* IV, *pp.* 446-466;—Michaud *Hist. des Croisades, vol.* V, *pp.* 289-292;—and Ameilhon (the continuator of Lebeau), *Hist. du Bas-Empire, vol.* XXVI, pp. 362-367.

of judgment. I do not wish that any one of my brave soldiers, who have so many times exposed their lives in my service, should have to complain of me and of my ingratitude. I am more sensible of their wants than they are themselves. None of my subjects ought to hesitate to lay his grievances before me; for my intention is that the world should, under my reign, become a sort of Paradise; and I know that, when a king is just and beneficent, his kingdom is blessed with prosperity and glory."

Such was the language in which Tamerlane expressed the noble feelings of his soul in relation to the government of his people. To a sound mind, that distinguished him in council as much as his extraordinary valor distinguished him in battles, he is said to have added a wonderful sagacity, which enabled him to unravel the most hidden intrigues and detect the most artful stratagems of his enemies, while his own secrets remained impenetrable. His principle in governing was to secure by unshaken firmness the execution of his orders, and to attend in person to all transactions of consequence. The palaces, mosques, cities, bridges, canals, magnificent roads, colleges, hospitals for the infirm, for travellers and for the poor, and many other public buildings and institutions, which owed to him their existence, would suffice to make illustrious the reigns and the lives of several monarchs.

Tamerlane preserved, till the end of his days, a robust constitution, great bodily strength, and astonishing fortitude. He disliked flattery, and, instead of being offended by correction and advice, required that the truth, plain and entire, should be spoken to him; the motto on his seal was, "I am candid and sincere." A friend to learning, he frequently read history, and liked to converse with skilful men. And a very extraordinary feature in this mighty sovereign and conqueror, was the singular modesty which he evinced in the midst of his triumphs, not ascribing them to his own exertions and talents, but to the omnipotence of God, who made use of him to chastise nations and to recall them to the path of justice. He believed, as a zealous Mussulman, that he was called to redress grievances, and to exterminate the followers of all religions contrary to his own; and we have seen in

what an awful manner he carried out this imaginary mission.

After the successful termination of his campaign against the Turks, his advanced age and protracted labors seemed to call for repose; yet, even at that time, he meditated new conquests. In a fresh transport of Mohammedan zeal, he determined to attack the Chinese, and for this purpose he set out with two hundred thousand men, in the dead of winter, from Samarcand, his capital city; but, being seized with a violent fever, he expired before he had reached the Chinese frontier, in the seventy-first year of his age, and thirty-sixth of his reign (A.D. 1405). His death was soon followed by the division of his vast empire into many principalities and kingdoms, the most remarkable of which was that of the Mongols in the East Indies, now under the sway of the British government.

RENEWAL OF WAR BETWEEN ENGLAND AND FRANCE.

THE condition of England and France was much the same during the latter portion of the fourteenth, but became quite different in the beginning of the fifteenth century. The two young kings, Richard II. and Charles VI., intended well, and, on many occasions, displayed great spirit and courage; but the ambition of three uncles (in England, the dukes of Lancaster, Gloucester, and York—and in France, the dukes of Berry, Anjou. and Burgundy) was for each of them a constant source of misfortunes, and occasioned many disturbances in the two kingdoms.

England however suffered less, and not only was the first to recover from her losses, but even quickly reassumed her former ascendancy and menacing attitude, in consequence of the great internal strength which she acquired under the prosperous reign of Henry IV., first king of the house of Lancaster, who had, in 1399, dethroned and succeeded his cousin Richard II. On the contrary, France's misfortunes increased; especially after Charles VI. became insane. Each one of the princes of his family wished to hold the reins of government; their disputes gave rise to a long train of dissensions which ended in the murder of several of them, and daily added

to the misery of the whole nation; nor did England fail to turn these disturbances of France to her own advantage.

§ I. HENRY V.—A.D. 1413-1422 AND CHARLES VI., 1380-1422.

Henry V., son and successor of Henry IV., is represented by historians as a prince sagacious in council, skilled in military tactics, and one of the bravest knights of his age. He had, more seriously than any of his predecessors, conceived and matured the design of subduing the French throne, which, after the example of Edward III., he claimed as his inheritance. Having raised a gallant army, he landed at Harfleur, on the 14th of August, 1415, before the French were ready to oppose his invasion. The town was invested; and after a courageous resistance of five weeks, its garrison was obliged to surrender. The siege however had cost Henry many officers and men, and dysentery soon reduced his forces to nearly half their number; in this situation, unable to adopt offensive measures, he determined to retire to Calais, whence he might safely re-embark for England.

Battle of Agincourt, 1415.—But this was a very difficult task: there were no bridges over the rivers; and an army of one hundred thousand French soldiers, five times more numerous than that of their opponents, had been stationed between the English and Calais. At Agincourt, on the 24th of October, Henry found himself in the very same condition in which Edward III. and the prince of Wales had been, the former seventy, the latter sixty years before; and, like them, he gave the world a new proof how much a skilful commander and a few well disciplined troops can effect against a multitude of undisciplined warriors. In his camp and army, perfect order was observed, and ready obedience paid to the commands of their gallant leader; among the enemy, notwithstanding some wise precautions of the commander-in-chief, the constable d'Alores, all was confusion and insubordination. The night before the battle was spent by the English in religious exercises; by the French, who did not suspect the possibility of a defeat, in tumultuous merriment. The result, as might naturally be expected, was the com-

plete triumph of the former, and the entire overthrow of the latter, twenty-four thousand of whom, including the chief leaders and twelve princes, paid with death or captivity, the forfeit of their rash and presumptuous courage. The conquerors gratefully attributed to Almighty God the honor of so signal and astonishing a victory; the 113th psalm was sung in thanksgiving after the battle; and it was an edifying spectacle to behold the king and the whole army prostrate themselves at these words of the Royal Prophet, "*Not to us, O Lord, not to us; but to thy name give glory.*"

Second Invasion of France and Death of Henry V. and Charles VI.—The defeat of Agincourt was still more fatal to France than the disastrous battles of Crécy and Poitiers. The road was now opened into the heart of that kingdom; and Henry V. was both too ambitious and too skilful, not to follow up his advantage with great spirit. This was his chief and almost exclusive object during the subsequent years, and success crowned his new efforts even beyond expectation. Within a short time, Normandy and the neighboring provinces were subdued; town after town surrendered; Paris itself, always the theatre of turbulent factions, opened its gates to the conqueror; and King Charles VI., whose mental powers were almost totally prostrated, was induced to take the English monarch for his son-in-law, and, contrary to the fundamental laws of inheritance in France, to name him his successor. The dauphin Charles, who was heir apparent to the crown, appealed from this illegal disinheritance to God and to the sword. After the death of his unfortunate and cruelly misled father, in 1422, he caused himself to be acknowledged sovereign in all the provinces situated on the south of the river Loire, the others being occupied by the English and their partisans, who called him, through mockery, *King of Bourges.* The same year saw also the premature death of his formidable rival, Henry V., who had not reached his thirty-fifth year. This great prince expired on the last day of August, leaving an infant son, Henry VI., who was crowned king of England and France, under the regency of his two uncles, the dukes of Gloucester and Bedford.

§ II. HENRY VI.—1422-1461 AND CHARLES VII.—1422-1461.

Third invasion of France.—The important events just mentioned, and the change of the principal leaders in each party, though ultimately advantageous to France, did not present at first a favorable prospect for that kingdom. The duke of Bedford, a courageous and skilful prince, was determined to effect its entire subjection, and for a time was so successful, that Charles VII., after several defeats, found himself destitute of money, troops, and assistance, having but a few knights who remained true to his cause. His situation became still more embarrassed, when the English, always advancing in their course of conquest, laid siege to Orleans, the only town that prevented them from crossing with safety the river Loire, and invading the southern provinces (A.D. 1429).

Siege of Orleans.—On both sides the siege gave rise to innumerable and wonderful examples of ability and vigor, the resistance being, on all occasions, as spirited as the attack. As, however, the English received fresh supplies of provisions and troops with greater facility than the garrison of the place, its fall was confidently anticipated by them, and the most gloomy apprehensions began to prevail in the councils of the French monarch. Charles himself meditated a retreat into the distant county of Provence; when he unexpectedly, and from an extraordinary source, received assistance which revived his hopes, filled his enemies with dismay, and turned forever the tide of success.

Joan of Arc.—In a village on the borders of Lorraine, lived a country girl named Joan, about seventeen years of age, and of irreproachable character. When the hope of saving Orleans was almost abandoned, she presented herself before the governor of Vaucouleurs, and maintained, with extraordinary confidence, that she was commissioned by heaven to raise the siege of that place, and to procure the coronation of the king in the city of Rheims. Her confident tone and her repeated assurances prevailed upon the governor to send her well guarded to Charles; she met the French court at Chinon in Touraine. There, whatever may be said by several recent authors in

opposition to the multitude of more ancient documents, every precaution was taken to avoid even the possibility of illusion or imposture.* Joan underwent a most rigid examination before a committee of persons eminent for their prudence and learning, and also before the courtiers, and the king himself; and she constantly gave such proofs of sagacity, wisdom, and more than human knowledge, as to cause her claims to a supernatural mission to be very generally admitted. She consequently received the complete armor of a knight, and the liberation of Orleans was intrusted to her charge.

The first exploit of Joan was her successful entrance into the besieged city, and with a plentiful and much needed supply of provisions to the garrison, at the head of which she then successively attacked and carried the strongest posts of the English. The enemy, dispirited by so many losses, hastily abandoned the siege; but, being pursued by the heroine, and driven from the towns into which they had retired, they were completely defeated at Patay, with the loss of nearly five thousand men, while the French had only one man of their number killed.

Coronation of Charles VII., at Rheims.—Joan had always declared that the object of her mission was twofold, the liberation of Orleans, and the coronation of the king at Rheims. The first of these objects being accomplished, she now urged the execution of the second; and, though the attempt was a dangerous one, the intermediate country being in possession of the English or of the Burgundians, their allies, she prevailed upon Charles to place full confidence in her promises; nor was he in any way deceived. As soon as he began his march with twelve thousand men, all obstacles disappeared, or were easily overcome; and the citizens of Rheims, having expelled the Burgundian garrison, received him with the most flattering demonstrations of joy.

Joan of Arc falls at Compiegne into the hands of the enemy.—The coronation was performed in the usual

---

* See *Hist. de Jeanne d' Arc*, 12mo;—*Hist. de l'Egl.* Bérault-Bercastel *vol.* VIII, *pp.* 31–35;—*Hist. de l'Egl. Gall., discours sur la Pucelle d'Orleans*, at the end of the 16th vol., where the learned author, F. Berthier, adduces innumerable proofs, and upwards of twenty contemporary or almost contemporary authors, French, Italian, German, etc., in favor of Joan of Arc and of her claim to a divine mission.

manner. During the ceremony, Joan, in her warlike dress, and with her banner unfurled stood filled with grateful emotions near the altar; when it was over, she threw herself on her knees, declared her mission accomplished, and with tears solicited leave to return to her country-life; but the king being unwilling to lose her services so soon, she, at his request, consented to remain with the army. Her courage indeed was always undaunted, but success did not follow her exertions so constantly as before. Having undertaken to defend Compiegne as she had done Orleans, and making a sally at the head of some troops, she fell, notwithstanding her heroic efforts, into the hands of the enemy. The shouts of the English and Burgundians announced her fate to the besieged, whom this melancholy news threw into deep affliction; the place however continued to defy the power of the assailants, and the siege was raised by the approach of a French army (A. D. 1430).

Trial and execution of Joan of Arc, 1431.—The unfortunate maid was treated with neglect by her friends, with cruelty by her enemies. Charles, who owed so much to her, does not seem to have made any efforts to rescue her from captivity; but whether he acted thus, because he thought his endeavors would be unavailing, or because he yielded to the jealousy of some of the courtiers and generals towards Joan, is uncertain. The English, exasperated by the repeated defeats and losses she had caused them, resolved to gratify their revenge. For this purpose, nothing, not even the most iniquitous proceeding, was left untried; and, to the eternal disgrace of the duke of Bedford and of the committee which he had appointed, the awful crimes of sacrilege, blasphemy, and sorcery were imputed to the heroine who had given constant and undeniable proofs of her piety, as well as of her innocence and purity of life. Her death was desired; she was executed at the stake as a sorceress, in the market-place of Rouen, before an immense concourse of spectators, who could not restrain their tears. Twenty-five years later, her condemnation was reversed by the archbishop of Rheims and the bishops of Paris and Coutances, whom Pope Calixtus III., had designated to revise the mock trial. After the most assiduous and minute inquiries, after hearing one hundred and twelve persons of

unexceptionable character, dukes, counts, magistrates, etc., who had been witnesses of the superhuman virtues and exploits of Joan of Arc; they pronounced the first sentence passed against her unjust, wicked, and slanderous; and she was solemnly declared innocent of all the crimes with which she had been charged by her enemies.*

England loses its possessions in France.—The English had cherished a hope that the death of Joan would incline the balance in their favor; in this they were disappointed. Such was the impulse just given by her heroism to the course of events, that England could no longer arrest the progress of France. Charles took Paris with most of the other places conquered by Henry V., and the British retained the rest, only through a truce which the two nations concluded in 1444. Thus did Henry VI. lose one of the two crowns he had inherited from his father; while the other trembled on his head, owing to the rise of strong and hostile parties in his own kingdom.

Establishment of standing armies in France.—During this season of calamity for Great Britain, the state of the French monarchy was considerably improved by the wise administration of Charles VII. The better to repair past evils and prevent their recurrence, he established several bodies of regular and standing troops, from whose coöperation both he and his successors derived the greatest advantages in upholding the dignity of their crown, repelling foreign invaders, and restoring tranquillity in the provinces. Stability and peace every where took the place of disturbances and commotions. The former strength of the nation was restored; and

---

* Several writers, and Dr. Lingard himself, who upon this matter seems not to have been sufficiently acquainted with the best sources of information, have endeavored to explain the marvellous actions of the Maid of Orleans by mere natural causes; ascribing them to enthusiastic excitement, to a deluded imagination, which the French court was careful to put to profit. If, however, we attentively consider that Joan of Arc, a timid girl, not more than seventeen years of age, and hitherto employed, not in a city, but in the peaceful and modest occupations of a country-life, from the moment she appeared at court and at the head of armies, evinced in everything a surprising wisdom and energy of soul; that she became, on a sudden, an intrepid warrior and an accomplished commander, while she always remained a perfect model of innocence, piety, and all Christian virtues; that her claim to a supernatural mission was, after the severest trials, admitted by persons of every description, by her countrymen and

everything now conduced to the final overthrow of the English on the continent.

The English lose all possessions except Calais.—In the year 1449, Francis Surienne, a British commander, having been guilty of an infraction of the existing truce, by capturing and plundering the town of Fougères, the French king availed himself of the opportunity to renew the war with immense advantage. England was involved in domestic dissensions; and her power abroad had been much weakened by the recent loss of two battles against the Scots. In one year Charles recovered Normandy with its hundred fortresses. A like success attended his arms in the invasion of Guienne; the decisive victories of Fourmigny and Chatillon, the former in the north, the latter in the south of France, secured his conquests; and the English were driven from every inch of ground they had possessed in that kingdom, with the exception of the town of Calais (A.D. 1453).

Rise of Poland and of Austria.—About this time, Poland, until then comparatively little known, rose in point of civilization, glory, and power, to a conspicuous rank among the European states. For this elevation, she was indebted to the government of the Jagellos, who occupied the Polish throne nearly two hundred years, from 1386 to 1572. Germany also flourished at this period under the emperor Sigismond, who reigned from 1410 to 1437. Though unsuccessful in war, this prince governed with honor and ability in time of peace, and was enabled to transmit his three crowns of Germany, Bohemia and Hungary to Albert of Austria, his son-in-law; thus laying the foundation of that great power

---

by foreigners, by friends and foes, and even by the greatest enemies of France, whose desire it was to have her conduct attributed to an evil principle; that all she said was found true; that all she foretold exactly happened in the time, place, and other circumstances predicted; if we attentively consider all this, we will surely find it difficult, nay, absolutely impossible, not to acknowledge in the authentic story of Joan of Arc something above the ordinary laws of nature; not to believe that she really was under the special guidance of heaven, and admit in her public career a display of the power and wisdom of God, who *chooses the weak things of the world that He may confound the strong* (1 Cor. i, 27), and who, after having *humbled* France, wished to *raise* it again by the hands of a woman, as He formerly saved His chosen people through the instrumentality of Deborah, Judith, and Esther.

and influence which the house of Austria so long enjoyed in Europe.

FALL OF CONSTANTINOPLE.—A.D. 1453.

Ascendancy of Ottoman power and decay of Eastern Empire.—The Greek empire, in the meantime, was approaching dissolution. The defeat of Bajazet Ilderim by Tamerlane had, it is true, delivered Constantinople from that terrible sultan of the Turks, but not from the Turks themselves, who, in a short time, reappeared on the field of battle, as undaunted and powerful as ever. After the pacific reign of Mahomet I. who died in 1421, Amurat II., his son and successor, renewed hostilities against the Greeks, the Hungarians, and other Christian nations upon his frontiers. Notwithstanding the losses and defeats which he occasionally sustained, he continued to gain ground, and at last gave the death blow to the league of his opponents in the famous battle of Varna, in 1444. This battle was more fatal to the cause of Christendom than that of Nicopolis had been, inasmuch as it opened a wide field to the enterprising spirit of the Turks, and deprived Constantinople of its last resources.

Mahomet II.—Thus, Mahomet II. appeared, the most terrible of all the Turkish sultans. No sooner had he grasped the sceptre left by his father Amurat, than he resolved to snatch the Greek capital from the hands of the reigning emperor, Constantine Paleologus or Dragazes, a prince worthy of better times, but whose heroic exertions could postpone only for a short period the fall of Constantinople. This was the last struggle between a power recently founded, but already the most formidable in the world, and an ancient monarchy, the glory of which had filled the whole earth, but which was now degenerate and doomed.

There was not less difference in the character of the two monarchs than in the respective strength and fate of their empires. All admired the virtue and moderation of Paleologus, his prudence in council, his intrepidity on the field of battle, and his unshaken firmness in adversity. Mahomet displayed on every occasion a bold and haughty spirit, and a boundless ambition. He was,

we are told, a lover of the arts and sciences, and could speak several languages; but those pacific studies had not curbed his ferocious temper; in war, he spared neither his enemies nor his own soldiers, and frequently peace itself was rendered bloody by the violence of his passions. —The last successor of Constantine the Great possessed all the virtues of a Christian and magnanimous prince; the son of Amurat was characterized by all the vices of a Mussulman and lawless conqueror.

Siege of Constantinople.—As the siege of Constantinople was to be commenced in the spring of 1453, the preceding winter was actively spent by both parties in making the necessary preparations. Towards the first days of April, the imperial city was surrounded by a fleet of three hundred and twenty vessels, and by a land army of three hundred thousand men, one third of whom were cavalry. To these formidable forces Constantine Paleologus could oppose only a few ships and galleys, and eight or nine thousand warriors, partly Greeks and partly Italians, with whom he had to defend a territory of about twelve miles in circumference. He appointed for their commander-in-chief Giustiniani, a Genoese officer of great experience, who distributed them as well as he possibly could along the ramparts, and reserved for himself one of the points most exposed to the assaults of the enemy.

Use of siege-guns.—The Turks employed in that siege all the resources of the destructive art of warfare, such as mines dug beneath the walls of the city, rolling towers, battering rams, and a multitude of machines destined to cast stones, darts, and arrows. Above all, the use of artillery having now become general, Mahomet did not fail to supply his troops with this powerful means of attack and prepared fourteen batteries of enormous cannon, and balls of proportionate size. Some of these pieces of ordnance could send balls of two hundred pounds weight; and one of them in particular, called *basilica*, sent a ball weighing upwards of six quintals, to the distance of more than a mile. It required two thousand men and about one hundred and fifty oxen, to remove it from the spot where it was made, to its intended battery. Its interior circumference was nine feet, and its weight thirty or forty thousand pounds.

But experience proved that such enormous guns were cumbersome and actually disadvantageous; this was the case particularly with the famous Basilica, which soon burst with a frightful explosion, and killed, among other persons, its very maker, who was a Hungarian apostate.

The "Greek Fire."—The Greeks too were abundantly provided with military engines, cannon, and Grecian fire, which they used with dreadful effect against the Turks, day and night repelling their assaults, ruining their works, and burning their engines. These heroic exertions were owing chiefly to the emperor and his general Giustiniani, whose indefatigable activity seemed to multiply them and make them present in every place where succor was required. It seemed as if they had communicated their energy and courage to all the soldiers of the garrison.

When Mahomet perceived that the exterior fortifications of the town had been almost entirely destroyed by the continuous fire of his artillery, he commanded his troops to prepare for an assault. His hope of success rested principally on a wooden tower many stories high and full of combatants, which he caused, with all possible precaution, to advance towards the wall. Here a fierce conflict took place, which was continued two days with the greatest spirit and prodigious efforts on both sides. At length, victory declared in favor of the Greeks; the Turks were repelled, and had the mortification of seeing their wooden tower overthrown and soon reduced to ashes. This unexpected result highly exasperated Mahomet, who could not forbear saying that, had thirty thousand prophets foretold so extraordinary a disaster, he would not have believed the prediction.

Christian valor during the siege.—A few weeks after this event, a similar disgrace which befell his fleet and which he himself witnessed, threw him into a paroxysm of rage. Four Christian vessels appeared in sight of Constantinople, and, in spite of the great number of the Ottoman ships, fearlessly advanced towards the harbor. The enemy went to obstruct their passage, with full confidence of an easy victory; but the four frigates opened upon them so terrible and so well-timed a fire, that many of the Turkish vessels were sunk, and others greatly damaged. Mahomet who had observed the com-

bat from a neighboring hill, descended, foaming with rage, and spurring his horse into the sea, even at the risk of his life, loaded the commanders of his galleys with the most bitter reproaches, and was carried so far by his passion as brutally to strike the admiral with a golden rod which he held in his hand. But all his fury and threats were idle; the four ships steadily pursued their course: and, continuing to disperse his navy, opened for themselves a free passage to the harbor, which they entered in triumph amidst the acclamations of the Greeks, who, from the top of their ramparts, had also been spectators of the combat. It is supposed that the Turks had sent about two hundred vessels against this intrepid flotilla, and, without killing one single Christian, lost no fewer than twelve thousand men.*

The besieged had a very great advantage, as long as they kept possession of their excellent harbor; nor could the Ottoman fleet force its entrance, which was obstructed by a line of strong galleys and an enormous chain of iron reaching from shore to shore. To deprive them of this advantage, Mahomet conceived the bold design of taking overland seventy or eighty of his vessels from the sea into the port. This fact, though it may seem incredible, is related in substance by all the contemporary historians. By the aid of men and machinery the vessels were rolled a distance of three or four miles over planks thickly covered with grease. As all was done during the night with great celerity, the garrison and inhabitants of Constantinople did not suspect the fatal scheme, until it was too late to prevent its execution. They were surprised and alarmed at seeing the enemy now near their ramparts and their homes, and they attempted, but in vain, to destroy the Turkish vessels, by

* This event and other similar incidents plainly show the great superiority of the Christians over the Ottomans, in discipline, military science and valor. If the latter were at length successful in overthrowing the Greek empire, this was evidently owing to their vast multitude, and to the continual arrival of re-enforcements, rather than to real and well-directed bravery. How great the difference between the warriors of the fifth crusade and those of Mahomet II.! Here we see *three hundred thousand* Turks, supplied with a formidable artillery, scarcely able, *after a siege of eight weeks*, to take Constantinople, whose garrison did not amount to more than *eight or nine thousand soldiers;* whereas *twenty thousand* crusaders, in *three days*, carried it by storm, in spite of the efforts of more than *two hundred thousand men*, by whom it was defended.

means of the Grecian fire, which had so often before saved Constantinople. Forty of their most intrepid warriors, who had undertaken this hazardous enterprise, were basely betrayed, fell into the hands of the Turks, and paid with their lives for their generous self-devotion.

The garrison, however, continued the defence with admirable vigor, following the example of the emperor, whose exertions seemed to be the effect of almost superhuman energy. This excellent prince was acting, at the same time, the part of a father, a sovereign, a soldier, and a general; scarcely allowing himself any repose, but continually occupied in encouraging by word and example a pusillanimous and ill-disposed people, or sharing with his brave garrison in the fatigues of the siege and the dangers of unceasing combats. During the day, he was foremost in fighting and repelling the enemy; during the night, his chief occupation was to reconcile, to soothe and to relieve by every means in his power, his discontented, distressed, and ungrateful subjects. Thus, without ever deviating from the path of virtue, Paleologus displayed a valor and magnanimity which made him not only equal, but even superior to the perils which surrounded him; and, while he stood almost alone upon the ruins of his falling empire, he still seemed to bid defiance to his implacable foe.

Failure of negotiations.—As the virtuous emperor could not banish from his mind the sad apprehension that the day of woe was approaching, he resolved to make an additional sacrifice of his personal feelings for the preservation of his people. He offered the sultan the payment of any tribute that might be exacted, provided the possession of the imperial city should be secured to the Greeks; but as Mahomet absolutely required the surrender of Constantinople in exchange for some principality, Constantine nobly rejected the degrading proposal, and preferred a glorious death.

Mahomet himself was not free from uneasiness with regard to the final result of the war; and he had reason to fear that it might eventually turn against himself, as his troops, dispirited by their losses and by the obstinate resistance of the Greeks, loudly called for the raising of so bloody and perilous a siege. But the undaunted sultan revived their spirits by promising them all the

treasures of Constantinople, should a new attack upon that city prove successful. The assault was to take place on the twenty-ninth of May. At dusk, on the eve of the day appointed, the soldiers were commanded to assemble, each with a lighted torch at the extremity of his lance or scimitar; Mahomet appeared in the midst of them, renewed his promise, and to render it more sacred, swore by *the eternity of God, by the four thousand prophets, by the soul of his father Amurat, his own children, and his sword;* upon which all exclaimed: "God is God, and Mohammed is his prophet." When this warlike ceremony was over, the sultan ordered a profound silence to be observed throughout the camp; and nothing then was heard round Constantinople but the low murmurs of an army silently preparing for a terrible and decisive assault.

Paleologus' heroism.—In the imperial city, the garrison was attentively watching from the ramparts all the movements of the Turks. Their repeated shouts had been heard with anxiety and alarm; the terror was increased by the sudden silence which ensued, and the light of innumerable torches in the camp being reflected by the tops of the towers and by the steeples of churches in the town, rendered still more gloomy, from the contrast, the darkness which covered the other parts of Constantinople. Paleologus assembled his chief warriors, and addressed them in a moving speech, exhorting them to encounter fearlessly the approaching peril. He recommended presence of mind to the officers, obedience to the soldiers, intrepidity to all, and spoke so feelingly as to draw tears from every one of his hearers: they embraced each other as if for the last time; and, after they had separated, the emperor went to pray and receive communion in the church of St. Sophia. He afterwards visited the imperial palace, gave his orders, and asked pardon of all persons there present for the faults which he might have committed in the government of his people; every one answered only by sighs and tears. He then went out in great distress, but still intrepid, and mounting on horseback, visited all the ramparts, examined the different posts of the garrison, and finally resumed his own station, the most perilous of all.

Final assault and fall of Constantinople.—The

last day of the Greek empire had now arrived. At one o'clock in the morning, the clarions resounded in the Turkish camp; Mahomet gave the signal for the assault, and no fewer than two hundred and sixty thousand soldiers began to storm the city of Constantine: at day-break, all the troops on each side were engaged in the conflict. The Turks, animated by their usual wild fanaticism, by the exhortations of Mahomet, by the hope of victory, and the expectation of pillage, forced their way with frenzy through guns and pikes; nor were they deterred either by the perils of the assault at the breach in the wall, or by the sight of their companions falling dead around them while endeavoring to scale the wall with ladders. Reckless of life, they sought only to reach their opponents, and to strike them down with their murderous weapons, while destructive missiles were incessantly thrown from their engines. But, if the shock was furious, the resistance at all points was not less vigorous and obstinate; if the assailants dealt destruction among the besieged their own numbers were thinned by death in its most terrible forms. Besides repeated and successful volleys of musketry, the soldiers of the garrison poured upon the thick battalions of the Turks streams of boiling oil, melted wax, and Grecian fire, and from the top of the wall threw rocks and mill-stones, which crushed all that came in their way. A considerable portion of the battlements and several towers having been demolished by the battering rams and artillery, the noble defenders of Constantinople presented themselves as a new rampart, much more difficult to be overthrown than that built of inanimate materials. The emperor fought at their head, and set every one an example of the most intrepid courage: numbers of barbarians were mowed down by the edge of his sword; the very sight of the imperial banner struck terror into the enemy.

After a tremendous contest of two hours, Mahomet advanced with the choicest of his troops and a body of ten thousand Janizaries. He appeared in the midst of them with a club in his hand, animating his troops by his fierce countenance, and pointing out to them the parts of the wall which they were to attack. Behind this band stood other bodies of troops detailed to support

the assailants, to stop those who might be tempted to fly, and force them to return to the charge. The sound of the clarions, the clashing of the swords and scimitars, the discharges of the artillery, the crash of the falling ramparts, all contributed to render the assault a scene of horror more easily imagined than described. In this awful tumult, the Janizaries themselves showed signs of disorder; and Paleologus, who had perceived the circumstance, was exhorting his brave attendants to make a last and decisive effort, when a fatal accident suddenly changed the aspect of the battle. General Giustiniani, having received a wound, retired, in order to have it dressed. The Genoese and other auxiliary troops, deprived of the presence of their commander-in-chief began to waver, and, imitating his example, withdrew from the conflict. In vain did Constantine endeavor to rally them. Finding it impossible to save his empire, he determined to fall with it, and to die as became an emperor. For some moments more, he maintained the unequal contest, saw his last companions perish by his side, and at length overpowed by numbers, fell among the foremost of the slain.

Constantinople was now irretrievably left a prey to wild and barbarous conquerors. The weak remnant of its garrison was dispersed; Giustiniani had retired to a distant spot, where he shortly after expired. Amidst the inconceivable tumult and desolation that reigned everywhere, the Turks rushed into the city, and, in virtue of the sultan's promise, plundered it during three days. About forty thousand of its unfortunate inhabitants were put to the sword, and sixty thousand detained as captives. Of those who had the happiness to escape, many fled to the western parts of Europe, where, having established their residence, they greatly aided in reviving the fine arts, polite literature, and a taste for the study of oriental languages.

End of the Eastern Empire.—Thus, as the *Western empire,* which had been founded by *Augustus,* expired under *Augustulus;* so the *Eastern empire,* which had been founded by a *Constantine,* fell under another *Constantine,* eleven hundred and twenty-three years after the building of Constantinople. Gradually stripped of its extensive possessions, it had long continued to stand, at least with-

in the precincts of its capital, like a majestic pillar which supports the last arch of a decaying edifice. It at length disappeared under the repeated attacks of the barbarians, and its downfall afforded to the world a new evidence of this truth, that nothing is unchangeable which has been established by men, and that the works of God alone remain forever.

MAHOMET II. CONTINUED.

As soon as order and tranquillity began to succeed the awful scenes of bloodshed, plunder, and destruction, which attended the capture of Constantinople, Mahomet left his camp and took solemn possession of this unhappy city which his efforts had finally subdued. By moderation towards the vanquished, and other measures of policy, he succeeded in retaining within the town the sad remnants of its inhabitants, and in replacing those who had perished; and from that time the former capital of the Greek empire became the chief city of the Turkish dominions. The sultan then considered what country he should next add to his vast monarchy, his ambition being boundless. Unfortunately for the neighboring princes, the long duration of his reign enabled him to attack them all in succession. Either by fraud and stratagem, or by violence and open war, he succeeded so far in his mighty schemes of conquest, as to destroy another empire (Trebizond), subdue twelve kingdoms, and capture more than two hundred cities.

Mahomet failed however in his attempt to establish a universal empire, which was the great aim of his ambition. At the time when he assumed the most threatening attitude, Divine Providence had already raised up three great men to check his progress, and save Europe from his destructive sway.

§ I. MAHOMET II. AND JOHN HUNYADI.

John Hunyadi, prince of Transylvania and governor of Hungary during Ladislaus' minority had previously distinguished himself by his many exploits against Amurat II. Although he lost the battle of Varna in 1444, his name continued to be so formidable to the infidels,

that the Turkish women made use of it to frighten their little children, and the mere rumor of his approach at the head of an army, almost raised the siege of Constantinople. After the fall of that capital, the hopes of Christian Europe chiefly rested upon him, and his sword was in reality its principal defence against the attacks of Mahomet.

Hunyadi's victory at Belgrade.—Belgrade, a considerable and well fortified town at the confluence of the Danube and of the Save, had been for some time an object of particular envy to the Ottomans. In June (A.D. 1456), it was invested by an army of one hundred and fifty thousand men, whom the sultan led in person, and by a fleet so numerous that the vessels covered the two rivers. The soldiers of the garrison bravely maintained their position, and, until the middle of July withstood with indomitable valor all the efforts of the assailants; still, the place, thus closely besieged and battered day and night by formidable artillery, was in imminent danger of being reduced by famine or by storm, when the banners of Hunyadi, who was hastening to its assistance, were seen waving upon the summits of the surrounding mountains, and his fleet at the same time appeared sailing down the Danube. This great man did not hesitate, with raw and half disciplined troops, to attack the whole Turkish fleet, which opposed his passage. The shock was so furious, the resistance so obstinate, and the slaughter so great, that the waters of the Danube seemed changed into blood. At length, the line of the Turks being broken, several of their galleys were captured; the others withdrew; and the conquerors entered the town, amidst the loud acclamations of the inhabitants, who hailed the arrival of Hunyadi among them as a sure sign of their approaching deliverance.

Still, the danger was not yet past. The sultan far from being discouraged, with redoubled energy caused the walls of Belgrade to be so furiously and so incessantly battered, as to prevent their being repaired. No sooner was the breach sufficiently wide, than the Turks rushed to the assault, and in order to divide the forces of the besieged, raised ladders at many places at once. They however advanced but little on that day. After having reposed during the night, the attack was renewed with still

greater fury than before. In a few moments, so fierce was the conflict, that the combatants were mingled together sometimes at the breach, sometimes within the town itself, the Christians and the Turks alternately obtaining the advantage. During this long period of awful suspense, Hunyadi proved himself both a general and a soldier; throwing himself into the thickest part of the battle, he slew, or wounded and dispersed all within his reach; while on the side of the Turks, Mahomet was seen in the midst of the Janizaries, animating his troops, and exposing himself to the greatest dangers.

Hungarian valor.—It was thus that boldness and the hope of victory, well regulated valor and desperate courage, exhibited the whole day a frightful scene of carnage, and produced a variety of exploits which it would be impossible to enumerate. It will suffice here to mention one of them, which really deserves particular notice. A Hungarian soldier, of common rank, but of heroic sentiments, saw a Turk ascend to the top of a tower, where he began to raise his banner with the view of driving the Christians to despair, by making them believe that the city was already taken. Without losing an instant, he hastened after the Turk, and strove to wrest the banner from him; finding himself unable to effect his purpose, he seized the Turk, and, with the strength of despair, dragged him from the top of the tower, and falling with him, thus, by his own death averted impending ruin from the Christians.

At this moment, Kasan, the bravest of the Turks, was struck dead near Mahomet, and the Janizaries began to waver and retire from the bloody conflict. The sultan, by threats and promises, endeavored but in vain to rally his dispirited soldiers; being himself wounded by an arrow, and having lost the use of his senses, he was carried away from the field of battle, where the slaughter of the Turks continued until the rest of their army escaped by flight. There were found in the camp which they hastily abandoned, about two hundred pieces of heavy artillery, forty colors, and an incredible quantity of ammunition, baggage, splendid tents, and other valuable articles. The battle had lasted, it is said, twenty hours, and was the severest check that the Ottomans received during the long reign of Mahomet. When the sultan, after having

recovered his senses, was informed of the extent of his disaster, he was with difficulty prevented from killing himself in despair. Nor was this a transient or momentary impression; as long as he lived, he could not think of Belgrade, without falling into a paroxysm of madness.

Hunyadi's death.—He did not long survive this glorious event; only five weeks later, a violent fever, occasioned by the fatigues of the last campaign and by disease in the Turkish camp, carried him off on the tenth of September, of the same year 1456. Being attended in his last moments by St. John Capistran, his faithful admirer and friend, whose eloquent exhortations had greatly contributed to the victory of Belgrade, he died, as he had lived, with the pious and noble sentiments of a Christian hero, after having had himself carried to the church for the purpose of receiving the Holy Viaticum, "it being proper," he said, "that the servant should go to his Lord, rather than that the Lord should come to His servant." The death of this great man, the news of which was rapidly disseminated, again spread over Europe that gloom which his victory had dispelled. Pope Calixtus III., on being apprized of the sad event, shed an abundance of tears; and Mahomet himself is said to have exclaimed in a melancholy tone: "Never was there a greater general in the world; and now that he is dead, there is none whose overthrow could be a sufficient compensation for my defeat." This, however, was not strictly true; and Mahomet deceived himself, if, besides Matthias Corvinus, who, as had his father, inflicted severe defeats on the Turks, he did not look upon Scanderbeg as an opponent worthy of him, and at least equal to Hunyadi.

§ II. MAHOMET II. AND SCANDERBEG. —A.D. 1443-1467.

Scanderbeg, as history calls George Castriot, was prince of Albania, a rough and mountainous district situated on the eastern coast of the Adriatic sea. In the beginning of his reign (A.D. 1443) he shook off the yoke laid by the Ottomans on his father and country, and, with a handful of warriors, maintained his position against their innumerable armies during the space of twenty-four years.

Amurat II., who attacked him first, soon felt the effects of his undaunted valor; and having presumed to besiege Croja, the capital city of Albania, met there, in Scanderbeg who defended it, an invincible opponent, no armor however strong, no warrior how brave soever, being able to resist this hero. During the whole siege, the Turks were continually harassed by sallies and skirmishes conducted with equal vigor and ability. Their loss, both before the walls of Croja and during their retreat, was so great, and their defeat so signal and so ignominious, that the grief of Amurat on this account is thought to have accelerated his death.

The war continued under Mahomet II., who contented himself in the beginning with sending many of his generals against the Albanians; but Scanderbeg knew so well how to avail himself of his perfect knowledge of the country, of its mountains and defiles, that he repeatedly routed the Turks, notwithstanding their superior forces. On several of these occasions, they lost from twenty to thirty thousand men. At length (towards the year 1464), the sultan determined to go and avenge in person so many defeats: having raised one of those formidable armies with which he had so often visited the neighboring states, he invaded the Albanian territory at the head of two hundred thousand men. Scanderbeg had not more than a handful of soldiers with him; still, the Turks were again repeatedly defeated, Croja was once more saved from their yoke, and Mahomet was compelled to retire disappointed and ashamed.

Scanderbeg's death.—The time was now come for Scanderbeg to exchange earthly laurels for a heavenly crown, the reward of his piety and of the valor which he displayed in the defence of religion. He was taken dangerously ill in the city of Lissa; and, aware that his last hour was approaching, he prepared for it, with his usual magnanimity and fortitude, in the most edifying manner. The last spark of life was about to be extinguished, when information was brought that fifteen thousand Turks had re-entered his territory, and were at a short distance; at this news, he seemed to recover his former strength and warlike ardor, looked for his sword, and giving his orders to the little army which always accompanied him, waited for the result of the battle, until, hearing the glad

sounds of victory, he fell back upon his bed and calmly expired, at the age of sixty-three, on the seventeenth of January, 1467. His death proved an irreparable misfortune for his faithful subjects, who, deprived of their invincible leader, could no longer resist the overwhelming forces of the Ottomans. Hence nothing could be more just and proper than the deep and general affliction caused by the loss of this hero; even his charger is said to have shed tears over him, and, by refusing to take his food, to have died of grief three days after his noble and justly lamented master. The Turks themselves, to whom he had been so formidable an enemy during life, were not the least zealous in honoring his memory. They not only touched his coffin with a kind of religious veneration, but having obtained some of his bones, had them enshrined in silver or gold, to be carried in battles, as a sure pledge, they imagined, of safety and victory.

There indeed appeared in Scanderbeg something almost above human nature; and it is certain that very few generals have been equal to him in firmness of mind, strength of body, heroic valor and brilliant success. He gained twenty-two victories over the Ottomans, while they were in the height of their power and under the most terrible of their sultans; and having with his own sword, slain about two thousand of them in different engagements, he was but once slightly wounded. Mahomet, imagining that there was perhaps something marvellous in his scimitar, desired to see it; but not having found the famous weapon what he thought it to be, he returned it with contempt. "I sent my scimitar to the sultan," said the Albanian prince, "but not the hand which knows how to wield it in battle."

Nearly the whole life of Scanderbeg was a series of wonderful actions, the offspring of the noblest feelings. He not only displayed the intrepidity of a warrior, and the talents of a consummate general, but was also perfectly virtuous. Most historians represent him as the mildest of men; and yet, such was the struggle within him, whenever he met with great opposition, that his lower lip would split and bleed; whence we may conclude that, as he was naturally much inclined to anger, his great mildness must have been acquired by an extraordinary and most commendable struggle with his natural pas-

sions. This self-control, united with the highest degree of military heroism, ought to excite universal admiration for Scanderbeg, and moreover convince every one that the spirit of the true religion, instead of debasing the soul and weakening its energy, as some impious men falsely assert, is, on the contrary, the source of the purest sentiments and noblest actions of which man is capable. Besides the striking examples of Scanderbeg and Hunyadi, another evidence of this truth will be found in the illustrious Peter d'Aubusson, who was also raised up by the Almighty as a rampart to his people, against the invading power of Mahomet.

§ III. MAHOMET AND PETER D'AUBUSSON.—A.D. 1476-1481.

Siege of Rhodes.—The sultan was incensed against the Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem, for the severe losses which they daily inflicted on his commerce, his navy, and his maritime provinces. The storm was now preparing to burst upon them; and the Grand-Master, Peter d'Aubusson, had scarcely completed his preparations to offer a vigorous resistance, when, in the spring of the year 1480, the island of Rhodes, the principal residence of the order, was attacked by a fleet of one hundred and sixty vessels, and one hundred thousand men for service on land. This powerful armament at once directed all its efforts against the capital city of the island, whose walls were, during three months, battered by pieces of ordnance similar to those which had destroyed the ramparts of Constantinople. But all this proved no match for Peter d'Aubusson and his intrepid knights; besides their cannon, they used against the Ottoman artillery a formidable engine, which by violently hurling enormous stones and fragments of rocks, caused frightful loss in the camp of the besiegers. Scarcely a day passed without an assault from the Turks or a sally from the garrison; and in every engagement advantage, although without a decisive result, was on the side of the Rhodians.

Peter d'Aubusson's courage and character.—As the wall, however, had been, in many parts, thrown down by the continual firing of the cannon, the com-

mander of the Turkish army, Bashaw Misach Paleologus, a Greek renegade, led his troops to a general assault. He indeed conducted it with great ability and bravery; but to his great disappointment, the defence was not less vigorous than the attack. The Grand-Master displayed on this occasion a presence of mind and courage seldom equalled, never surpassed. Neither the combined efforts of twelve Janizaries who fell desperately upon him during the conflict, nor excess of fatigue, nor five large wounds which he received, could induce him to withdraw for a single moment from the perilous post which his valor had selected. So noble an example inspired his knights with fresh ardor; all seemed transformed into so many undaunted heroes, anxious to save their magnanimous prince, or to perish with him on the field of battle. After a tremendous fight, the assailants were repulsed at all points from the breach, and leaving several thousand slain around the walls of the city, they fled to their vessels and re-embarked in terror and despair.

The Grand-Master, covered with his own blood and with that of his enemies, was conveyed to his palace, where his wounds were dressed. He happily recovered in a short time; and as soon as he was able to walk, repaired to the church to give solemn thanks to the God of hosts for the splendid victory which he had gained. His next care was to bestow rewards on those of his soldiers and knights who had evinced the greatest courage in the time of danger; and, in order to give proper relief to the poor inhabitants of the country, whose property had been laid waste by the Turks, he maintained them until the following harvest, and relieved them for many years from the taxes which they paid before the invasion. It was in those and in the like laudable occupations that P. d'Aubusson spent the remainder of his life. When at last attacked by a mortal disease, he was not in the least disturbed at the sight of approaching death, but encountered it on the bed of sickness with the same tranquillity with which he had so often faced it amid the greatest perils of war. He died at the age of eighty, justly venerated and esteemed throughout the whole world as one of the most illustrious Grand-Masters of the order of St. John, one of the ablest generals of his age, the delight and pattern of his fellow-knights, the father of the poor,

the deliverer of Rhodes, the sword and shield of Christendom, a model as well of sincere piety as of intrepid valor.

Mahomet II.'s death.—Far different was the sultan of the Turks. This haughty monarch had been exasperated by the disaster of his army in the island of Rhodes, and in his fury he swore vengeance against the Christians. The city of Otranto, on the shore of the Adriatic, being already occupied by his troops, who had taken and plundered it in August, 1480, extraordinary preparations were commenced for fresh invasions, and new calamities threatened Italy, Rhodes, and other states, when a violent disease suddenly put an end to both the life and the projects of the Mussulman Attila (A.D. 1481). He had reigned thirty, and lived about fifty-two years. The Turks, on account of his talents and extensive conquests, place him in the first rank of their sovereigns; Gibbon and Voltaire praise him as a magnanimous prince: but all who know that there is no true greatness without virtue, and are aware of the many acts of insatiable ambition, perfidiousness and barbarity with which the whole of Mahomet's life was sullied, cannot but consider him as a scourge of humanity and a very monster. Dissensions which arose between his sons, and engaged all their attention, left the greater part of Europe in peace for many years.

CONTEST OF THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK IN ENGLAND.—A.D. 1455-1485.

England, although not attacked by foreign enemies, still continued in a state of great disturbance, the causes and progress of which will now be more fully related. King Henry VI. was a prince of virtuous disposition and inoffensive character, but had always exhibited great weakness of mind in his government, and such a want of resolution as encouraged some of his relatives to endeavor to deprive him of his crown. At their head was Richard, duke of York, the first prince of the blood, who, by his mother, stood one degree nearer to the throne than the house of Lancaster; he possessed those talents which render the leader of a party extremely dangerous, and exercised great influence over the chief nobles of England.

Battle of St. Albans.—Unfortunately, at this time, there existed great discontent against the court, on account of the ill success of the last war in France for the recovery of Guienne. The artful duke was careful to encourage the public opinion, at first secretly, afterwards more openly, as soon as circumstances permitted him to do so without peril. At length, he raised troops, for the purpose, he said, of reforming the government, and boldly taking the field, defeated the royalists at St. Albans, and took the king prisoner (A.D. 1455). This important prize, still more than the victory itself, served admirably well the ambitious views of Richard, and enabled him, in leaving to his royal captive the insignia of royalty, to assume with impunity the government of the realm.

The battle of St. Albans was the first in that awful and unnatural struggle, which armed the rival houses of Lancaster and York against each other, made Great Britain one extensive theatre of atrocities, was signalized by twelve pitched battles, cost the lives of more than a hundred thousand men with eighty princes of the blood, and almost completely annihilated the ancient nobility of England. It was prolonged by the obstinate valor of both parties, and by the great ability of their leaders. Besides Duke Richard, the chief commanders of the Yorkists were his son Edward, whose military skill was superior even to that of his father, and, during some time, the intrepid earl of Warwick, surnamed *the maker and destroyer of kings.* The real head of the Lancastrians was queen Margaret, a princess of masculine courage and wonderful constancy, which she displayed in the most distressing circumstances that can perhaps ever befall a queen, a wife, and a mother.

War of the Red Rose and the White Rose.—This fatal and sanguinary contest is well known as the *war of the roses,* from the *white rose,* the distinctive badge of the house of York, and the *red rose,* that of the Lancastrian family. Many were the alternations of success; and King Henry VI. frequently passed from the state of a sovereign to that of a captive, and again changed his prison for the throne. His followers seemed to prevail in 1460, when, being strongly upheld by the queen, they gained at Wakefield a signal victory against

the duke of York, who, with many of his followers, lost his life in the conflict. But this success of the royal cause was not of long duration. Prince Edward not only retrieved the losses and fully repaired the defeat of his party, but even marched to London and had himself proclaimed king without further delay. Returning to the northern counties, he overtook the Lancastrians near Towton, and completely defeated them, after a most furious and obstinate conflict, which cost the lives of thirty-eight thousand combatants (A.D. 1461).

This battle was decisive against the royalists. The unfortunate Henry fled to Scotland for refuge; but his queen and his son had to encounter very strange adventures. On one occasion, as the young prince and his mother were crossing a mountainous district, they were surprised by a troop of banditti, who stripped them of their money, jewels and other articles of value. It is probable that they concealed their quality; otherwise, such distinguished captives would have been more carefully guarded. The ruffians began to quarrel about the division of the booty; threats were uttered, and swords drawn; when Margaret, watching her opportunity, grasped her son by the arm, and plunged into the thickest part of the wood. She had not proceeded far, when another robber made his appearance. The queen, with the intrepidity of despair, advanced to meet him, and taking young Edward by the hand, "Friend," she said, "I intrust to you the son of your king." These words so moved the robber, that he took them both under his protection, and conducted them to a place of safety.

Battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury.—How desperate soever the cause of the red rose might now appear, the courage and spirit of Margaret were not yet subdued. Indefatigable in her exertions, she frequently crossed the sea, in order to obtain foreign assistance, and often reappeared at the head of her partisans in England. Her hopes were cheered by a temporary gleam of success, particularly in the year 1470, when, by the secession of the earl of Warwick from the Yorkist to the Lancastrian side, and by the sudden, though temporary flight of King Edward, Henry VI. was once more replaced upon the British throne. But no later than the following year 1471, the fatal battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury forever

blasted the fruit of so many efforts. The unfortunate monarch again fell into the hands of his implacable enemies, was again recommitted to the tower, and shortly after deprived of life. His royal consort, and his son, then eighteen years of age, being now destitute of all resources, were also taken prisoners. The young prince was immediately led to the conqueror's tent; and, having been asked the reason of his appearance at the head of an army, replied with equal boldness and candor: "To preserve my father's crown and my own inheritance." Edward, enraged at this answer, brutally struck him on the face with his gauntlet; and the bystanders imitating his barbarity despatched him with their swords. As to Margaret, after having supported to the end the cause of the Lancastrian family, and having outlived her fortune, her friends, her husband and her son, she was ransomed for fifty thousand crowns, and died in France a few years after.

Battle of Bosworth—End of the war.—Edward IV. remained in undisturbed possession of the English crown: but, after his death, which happened in the year 1483, dissensions again disturbed the peace of the royal family. Of his two next successors, Edward V., his son, and Richard III., his brother, the former was dethroned, imprisoned, and put to death by the latter, a faithless and ferocious prince, who did not long enjoy the fruit of his detestable ambition. Notwithstanding all the precautions of his artful and tyrannical policy, a strong party was formed in favor of another rival, Henry Tudor, earl of Richmond, member of the house of Lancaster by a collateral and female line. A single battle fought at Bosworth in the year 1485, decided the important quarrel; Richard lost his life, and the victorious army presently proclaimed his rival king of England under the name of Henry VII. The title of this prince was afterwards confirmed by an act of parliament; and his marriage with Elizabeth, the heiress of the house of York, uniting together the claims of both families, put an end to the protracted feuds of the Plantagenets, and to the civil war which had deluged England with blood during the space of thirty years.

FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.—FINAL OVERTHROW OF THE MOORS IN SPAIN.—A.D. 1479-1492.

Consolidation of Castile and Arragon.—At this period, Isabella, princess of Castile, who succeeded her brother Henry IV. on the throne in 1474, married Ferdinand of Arragon, who inherited the crown of his father Juan II., in 1479. This marriage permanently cemented the chief states of Christian Spain in one extensive empire. The Spanish monarchy became thus, almost in a moment, more respectable and powerful than it had been ever since the flourishing times of the Visigoths. This however was owing less perhaps to the fortunate union of the two crowns in one family, than to the uncommon ability and perfect accord with which Ferdinand and Isabella governed their dominions. By strict laws and their vigorous enforcement, they checked the torrent of disorders and crimes to which the preceding civil wars had given rise; destroyed the castles and fortresses from which restless lords issued forth to overrun all the country round; revoked the grant of gratuities, that exhausted the public treasury; rescued the people from the oppression of the nobles; and subjected the nobles themselves to the control of the royal authority. It was at this epoch (A.D. 1480) that they established in Spain the famous, and, we may add, the *so much* and yet *so little* known tribunal of the Inquisition.*

Gradual conquest of the Moorish kingdom.—In the meantime, the Moors having, notwithstanding the existing truce, imprudently recommenced hostilities, Isabella and Ferdinand conceived the just and glorious design of annihilating their power in the peninsula. Hitherto, these sworn enemies of the Christian name had maintained themselves in the southern provinces, and, though they had gradually lost an immense portion of their territory, they still remained masters of the flourishing kingdom of Granada, which contained a great number of fortified places and three millions of inhab-

* See note K.

itants. But the time had now come, when, after a struggle of nearly eight centuries against the Christians, they were to be stripped of their last possession in Spain. The two sovereigns skilfully took advantage of the imprudent step of the Mussulmans and of the bloody feuds which began to prevail among their princes; they declared war against them, and prosecuted it with vigor. During the space of eight years (1482–1490), the different towns and fortresses of the kingdom of Granada fell successively into the hands of the Castilians, and there remained, in 1491, only its capital to be subdued.

Siege and fall of Granada.—This was, it is true, a very difficult and perilous attempt. Two mighty fortresses, a thousand towers, walls of prodigious size, and thirty thousand warriors defended that superb capital. But all these obstacles did not deter Ferdinand and Isabella from pursuing their favorite plan with wonderful activity; and Granada was invested by a gallant army of fifty thousand men, whom the presence of their sovereigns stimulated with unconquerable ardor, patience, and constancy. In that siege, the Spaniards neither made use of artillery, nor attempted an assault, their only object being to reduce the city by famine, and repel the sallies of the garrison. During six months, the spot between Granada and the Spanish camp was a theatre of almost continual skirmishes, and innumerable exploits were performed by the knights of both parties; but never could the Moors bring their opponents to a general engagement. Ferdinand was too prudent to expose the issue of an expedition in which he was nearly certain of success, to the hazard of a battle: he contented himself with protecting his troops by solid entrenchments; and then, to let the Moors fully understand his fixed determination to conquer Granada, he built, at the suggestion of Isabella, in the place of the encampment, a regular city with its houses and streets, under the name of *Santa Fé*, a name which it still retains.

The inhabitants of Granada, and Boabdil, their king, were driven to despair, when they beheld the unshaken resolution of an enemy who spared neither time nor expense, nor fatigue, to attain his object. The first pangs of starvation, and the fear of still greater evils in future, induced them to enter into negotiations with the besieg-

ers. Having obtained a truce for two months, during which no opportunity presented itself of averting their impending ruin, they finally consented under the condition of mild and honorable treatment, to surrender into the hands of the Castilian sovereigns.

Isabella and Ferdinand took possession of Granada in the beginning of the year 1492, after having granted to Boabdil extensive estates and an annual income of fifty thousand ducats in exchange for his kingdom. Notwithstanding these advantages, the unhappy monarch could not leave his capital without shedding a flood of tears; and when he gazed at it for the last time from the summit of a neighboring hill, he repeatedly exclaimed: "O splendid city! O Lord God of hosts! What misfortunes have ever been equal to mine!" Upon which, his mother ironically said to him: "You do well to lament like a woman, the loss of a kingdom which you did not know how to defend like a man." Being soon disgusted with his new situation, he, after the example of his uncle El Zagal, who had long contended with him for the crown, sold his estates to Ferdinand, and passed over to Africa, where, having lived twenty years longer, he was at last killed in a battle fought by the king of Fez against the sovereign of Morocco.

The Moors in Spain and their fate.—The other Moors, besides the king and his attendants, had also in due proportion, obtained valuable privileges from their new sovereigns. By the treaty of peace, they were allowed either to retire to the African continent with their families and riches, or to stay in the peninsula, with privileges scarcely inferior to those enjoyed by the Spaniards, and such as induced great numbers to remain. Unhappily, the course of time showed their submission not to be very sincere and constant; and experience taught the Spanish government the necessity of adopting severer measures to check their present, and hinder their future rebellions. Finally, towards the year 1609, some proofs having been obtained that they were planning a general insurrection, they were expelled from the Spanish territories by an edict of King Philip III. those only being excepted who had become sincere Christians, and whose descendants still exist in the southern districts of Spain.

Ascendency of the Spanish Monarchy.—The wonderful abilities of Isabella and Ferdinand had founded on a permanent basis the greatness of the Spanish monarchy; by the conquest of Granada, it was raised to an eminent degree of splendor; and, within a few years, a variety of other successful events gave it that mighty preponderance, which it enjoyed in Europe during this and the two following reigns.

REMARKS ON THE DISCOVERIES MADE DURING THE SIXTH PERIOD OF MODERN HISTORY.

BEFORE we leave this period, we will make some remarks on the important discoveries in which it abounds.

Gunpowder.—The celebrated Roger Bacon, an Englishman, who flourished towards the end of the thirteenth century, is said to have prepared the way for the invention of gunpowder; but the invention itself is more generally ascribed to Berthold Schwarz, a monk who died at Freiburg about 1354. The use of that composition produced a material change in military tactics, cannon and musketry gradually taking the place of bows, catapults, balisters, battering rams, and other warlike engines. During the course of the fifteenth century, the application of artillery to the different branches of warfare, sieges, naval combats, etc., became general among civilized nations; and it is a remarkable fact that, from that time, battles have been less cruel and bloody than they were during the foregoing ages.*

* We do not read or hear of any combat having been, ever since the universal adoption of gunpowder, half so bloody as many were before, e. g. the battles of Ancyra (A.D., 1402), Tarifa (1340), Murandal (1212), Tours (732), Chalons (451), all which have been mentioned in this history; and, in more remote ages, the battles of Arbela (B.C. 331) and Platea (B.C. 479), said to have cost the lives of nearly three hundred thousand Persians; and particularly the awful fight of the kings of Juda and Israel, Abia and Jeroboam (B.C. 958), in which according to the unexceptionable account of the sacred writer, there fell, on the part of the Israelites alone, five hundred thousand men slain or wounded (II. Paral. xiii. 17); whereas, in the most terrible battles of latter times, e. g. Austerlitz, Jena, Leipzic, Waterloo, the actual loss of the vanquished hardly exceeded thirty or forty thousand.

Reason itself, if we reflect ever so little, confirms our assertion concerning the great difference to be remarked between recent and ancient battles. It is manifest, all other circumstances being equal, that armies fighting at a distance with cannon and musketry, are not exposed to so shocking a mode of spilling blood, nor to such cruel animosity, nor to such ter-

Printing.—A still more important invention was that of the art of printing, the authors of which, according to the more common opinion of learned men, were Faust, Schœffer and Guttemberg at Mentz, about the year 1440.* It was soon followed by engraving and etching on copper, and the improvement made about the same time in the manufacture of paper from rags.

The Magnetic Needle.—It was probably discovered by the Chinese, and applied to navigation in the East already in the thirteenth century; it was introduced in the West in the fourteenth century by Flavio Gioja.

---

rible destruction, as when fighting hand to hand with swords, spears, and battle-axes. For, in the first case, besides the length of time required to fix the batteries, and the vast number of shots which miss their object, if either of the two armies begins to suffer too severely, it may, generally speaking, avoid further destruction by retiring beyond the reach of the enemy's guns.—In the second case, the hostile troops being frequently within the reach of the sword, and, as it were, mingled together, a dreadful slaughter must unavoidably follow, both during the regular fight, and also after it, owing to the closeness of the pursuit.

To these facts and reflections we cannot reasonably oppose the frightful disaster of the French army in Russia (A.D. 1812), because it was the effect of a whole campaign, not of a single battle, and of intense cold, want of food, and the crossing of difficult rivers, more than of the Russian cannon. The only plausible objection perhaps that can be made against our view of the subject is, that gunpowder being a powerful means of destruction added to those which already existed, must consequently be reckoned a real and very great evil—but it should also be remarked, that it is rather a means which has superseded others that were more cruel, more bloody and more dreadfully murderous both in public wars and private quarrels; and since there have always been, and unfortunately always will be quarrels among individuals, and wars among nations, we are authorized to conclude that the invention of gunpowder, instead of being a great misfortune, as is commonly imagined, has been, on the contrary, a real and valuable service rendered to humanity.

* The first printers carried their types about in bags, and printed small pamphlets, letters, etc., in noblemens' houses. The first entire book issued from their press, was the Psalter in Latin, printed at Mentz (A.D. 1457), of which there are yet two copies extant, one in the imperial library at Vienna in Austria; the other was bought by King Louis XVIII. for the sum of 12,000 francs. A complete edition of the Bible in Latin, a copy of which was purchased by the same king for 20,000 francs, came out in two folio vols., also at Mentz (A.D. 1462). From that epoch, the progress of typography was so rapid, that even before the close of the fifteenth century, a variety of editions of the Bible, and an incredible number of other useful books, were published in the different parts of Europe.

It is certain that the art of printing, by removing forever the evil of the scarcity of books, has been highly conducive to the greater diffusion of religious truth and literary instruction; but, alas! it has also become a powerful vehicle of error, incredulity, sophisms, immorality, infamous and slanderous tales, etc.; so apt are men to abuse the very best things which lie within their reach. Indeed, what can be more deplorable than to see the vast number of irreligious, impious and scandalous productions

Finally, the last years of this age were signalized by the discovery of America, and that of the passage of the cape of Good Hope to the East Indies; two events of paramount importance, an account of which belongs to the seventh part of Modern History.

---

of every kind and every size, with which the world is deluged? However, since the abuse of any good art or object does not detract from its intrinsic value, the application of the art of printing to matters of this description cannot be a sufficient motive to inveigh against the art itself, and we ought rather gratefully to consider it as a gift of Divine Providence, intended to be, as it really has been, one of the chief instruments towards completing the revival of science and letters, and securing the triumph of the true religion over error and infidelity.

PART VII.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (A.D. 1492) TO THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES OR PARIS, IN WHICH THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES WAS SOLEMNLY AND UNIVERSALLY ACKNOWLEDGED (A.D. 1783).

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS ON AMERICA.

It is a well founded opinion that America was known to some among the nations of antiquity, particularly the Egyptians and Carthaginians. Besides the mention made by Plato, in his dialogues, and the description ascribed to Solon, of the great island Atlantis, whose existence and identity with the American continent may be called in question; there is in Seneca's *Medea* a passage showing that the ancients had truly the notion of an extensive portion of the world, which though separated from them by the ocean, might be discovered in after-times.* Above all, a very ancient author, who is commonly supposed to be Aristotle, expressly affirms that the Carthaginians, in one of their maritime excursions, discovered a vast and beautiful land, far beyond the straits of Hercules (Gibraltar), but that the senate, for fear of depopulating the republic, forbade other ships to go thither, and endeavored to suppress the notice of the discovery.†

Whatever may be said on this point, the population of America itself and its descent from the inhabitants of the

---

* Venient annis secula seris,
Quibus oceanus vincula rerum
Laxet, et ingens pateat tellus,
Tethysque novos detegat orbes,
Nec erit terris ultima Thule.—*Medea, Act* II.

† See, on this interesting subject, *Univers. Hist. vol.* XXX. *pp.* 142–186. and *vol.* CXIV. *p.* 5 *of the Introduct. to the History of America*;—also *Bibts Vengée de* Duclot, *vol.* I, *Observations préliminaires;*—Dr. Wiseman, *Lectures on the Connection Between Science and Revealed Religion, pp.* 82–86.

Old World, form no longer a difficulty among learned men, and are satisfactorily accounted for in many different ways. The first is that of a regular and bold voyage either westward from the coasts of Africa through the Atlantic, like the Carthaginians, several of whom, according to the ancient author just quoted, remained in the fertile and extensive country which they had discovered—or from the northwest of Europe, through Greenland—or from the eastern shores of Asia, viz. Japan, by the long and almost uninterrupted series of islands in the Pacific Ocean. This seems particularly to have been the course followed by the ancestors of the Peruvians and Mexicans; for, besides the wise conjectures of Hornius in his work *de Origine Gent. American.*, and the solid proofs adduced by Mr. de Guisgnes in the *History of the Huns* and *Researches on Chinese Navigation;* there exists so striking a coincidence of monuments, hieroglyphic figures, strange customs, and arbitrary signs for the computation of time, between the Peruvians and Mexicans on one side, and the Egyptians, Thibetans and Moguls on the other, as to leave no doubt with regard to the identical origin of the nations of both continents, and the direction taken by the migratory colonies in their passage from one country to the other.

A still easier means of communication between the two continents, was by boats in summer, and upon the ice in winter, the narrow strait of Behring, which separates North America from the north-east of Asia. That this means was really resorted to, must appear evident to every one from the innumerable marks of resemblance in color, size, constitution, manners, etc., between the inhabitants of the opposite shores of North America and Asia. Not long since, two learned travellers, Steller and Krachenninikow, proved this truth to a high degree of certainty in the first volume of the History of Kamtschatka.

Moreover, strong winds and tempests have been also justly reckoned among the very probable causes of the early settlement of America, particularly of the eastern parts of South America. How often, during the course of ages, may not ships have been surprised by storms, and driven from the coasts of Europe or Africa to the American shores? Nor is this gratuitously supposed; it seems rather to rest on well authenticated facts. When

Alvarez Cabral, the Portuguese admiral, was going from Portugal to the East Indies, in the year 1500, his fleet was hurried by a furious tempest, across the Atlantic, to the coasts of Brazil, of which he took possession in the name of his sovereign; so that the New World would have become known in consequence of this accident, had it not been discovered eight years before by the genius of Columbus. In 1731, a boat carrying six men was driven in the same direction from the Canary islands to the mouth of the river Orinoco; the men were still alive, although nearly starved. Is it not reasonable to believe that similar causes may have occasionally produced similar effects in preceding ages?

Thus is the population of America in its close connection with the inhabitants of the old world, easily and in many ways explained. But, like many ancient nations shortly after the Deluge, most of the American tribes were, at the time of their discovery, totally uncivilized, the only exception found by the Europeans being that of the empires of Mexico and Peru; and even this Mexican and Peruvian civilization was, in several respects, very imperfect; nor can it be traced farther back than three or four centuries. Yet they had preserved the remembrance of some religious truths, e.g. of the immortality of the soul, and of a deluge which destroyed all mankind, except one family who repeopled the earth. This is a new evidence of the identity of origin that links together all the branches of the human family, and of their descent from one common stock, as the Scripture asserts (Acts, xvii. 26;—Rom. v 12, etc.).

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA—CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.—A.D. 1492-1506.

Christopher Columbus.—The great man whose life connects the history of the ancient continent with that of the new, Christopher Columbus, was born of a woolcomber, at or near Genoa, probably between 1435 and 1446. From his childhood, he manifested a strong inclination for the sea, and, as soon as he was able, indulged it by taking part in the maritime expeditions of the Genoese his countrymen. In this employment, his natural genius acquired that practical knowledge and

fertility of resource, that undaunted resolution and vigilant self-command for which he was afterwards so remarkable. Success increased his inclination for a nautical career, and existing circumstances gave it a peculiar direction, which finally led to the discovery of America.

About this time the Portuguese endeavored to find out a passage to the East Indies by coasting along the shores of Africa. Though they advanced but slowly, their attempts and their discoveries suggested to the mind of Columbus a still bolder idea: the study of both the ancient and recent geographical maps, together with the knowledge of the sphericity of the earth, led him to believe that, by steering directly to the west, across the Atlantic, one might easily reach the Asiatic continent. This theory included indeed a partial mistake, in as much as Columbus had not formed a correct estimate of the size of our globe, nor of the distance of the eastern extremity of Asia from the west of Europe ; but the principal idea was not, on that account, less worthy of a great and mighty genius.

A variety of circumstances concurred to impress his theory more and more upon his mind. Reeds of an extraordinary size, and such as were said to grow only in India, floated to the Azores islands from the west; pieces of wood carved in an unusual manner, and trees of an unknown species had been lately found drifting from the same quarter; above all, a canoe, driven by westerly winds, had been seen carrying the dead bodies of two men, whose features differed from those of any known race of people. These, and other facts of a like nature, confirmed Columbus in his belief in the existence of undiscovered lands in the west.

Having thus formed his theory, he determined to carry it himself into effect; but this required the co-operation of some princely power, and Columbus had the mortification of seeing his admirable plans rejected, with more or less contempt, by the republic of Genoa and by the court of Portugal, to which he successively applied. Even in Spain, where he met with a reception more favorable to his views, many years elapsed in a course of fruitless negotiations and repeated disappointments, before obtaining the aid so earnestly desired. Indeed, having already despatched his brother Bartholomew to England, he him-

self was on the point of departing from Spain, when, at the representations of some zealous and influential persons, Isabella and Ferdinand at length consented to furnish him with three small vessels, and ninety sailors, who were joined by several private adventurers and servants, making the whole number about one hundred and twenty persons. It was with this weak squadron, that Columbus undertook to brave the dangers of unknown seas, in order to execute one of the boldest designs ever conceived.

First voyage and landing on Oct. 12.—On the 3d of August of the year 1492, having, with his officers and crew, prepared himself by religious exercises for the hazardous undertaking, he sailed from the harbor of Palos in Andalusia, under the royal commission which appointed him admiral of the new seas, and viceroy of the lands he was going to discover. He stopped for some time at the Canary islands, to repair his vessels and refresh their crews, and then steered directly west. A gentle breeze blowing from the east, speedily wafted them over a tranquil sea; so that at the end of four weeks more, they had come two thousand and two hundred miles. No land, however, yet appeared; and Columbus had often to struggle against the murmurs and dismay of his companions, who loudly insisted on abandoning the voyage. Some even carried their mutiny so far as to propose in their meetings to throw him into the sea, and spread the report that he had fallen overboard while observing the stars. Columbus, in order to pacify them, had to use consummate prudence; he assured them that they would discover the land within the space of three days. That it was not distant he knew from many certain signs: e.g. birds and fish of such kinds as never go far from the shore, and also green branches, which were seen near the vessels as they advanced. The three days had not elapsed, before land was descried: and, a few hours after, on the twelfth of October, the crews disembarked, to the very great surprise of the harmless natives. The country thus discovered was called by its inhabitants *Guanahani*, one of the *Bahama* islands.

Discovery of Cuba and Hayti.—It would be difficult to conceive the respect which the Spaniards now manifested for the great man whom they so lately threatened with death; and still more so, to describe the feel-

ings of Columbus himself at the sight of his happy discovery. As a memorial of the termination of those dangers from which he had been rescued, he gave the island the name of *San Salvador*, and took possession of it for the Castilian sovereigns. Then again putting to sea, he discovered Cuba, and shortly after another extensive and beautiful island called *Hayti*, an Indian name it has resumed in these latter times, after having been successively called *Hispaniola* and *San Domingo*. Everywhere, a fertile soil exhibited to the sight of the Spaniards productions and animals unknown in Europe. In some places, gold was so abundant, that valuable pieces of it were easily obtained for little mirrors, small bells, and other trifles given in exchange, the simple and artless natives setting little value on that metal so much prized by other nations. Struck with astonishment at the dress, color and arms of the Spaniards, they took these new guests for so many supernatural beings descended from the sky, and accordingly received them with all imaginable kindness and respect. As Columbus always supposed that their country was the extremity of Eastern India, he gave them the name of *Indians;* an appellation which, notwithstanding the subsequent acknowledgment of the mistake, the aborigines of the new world have to this day retained.

Return to Europe.—Columbus now thought of returning to Spain, that he might be the first to impart to the sovereigns the news of his success and discoveries. One of his vessels having run aground, he used the remains of the wreck, with the consent of the Indians, to build a fort upon the shores of Hayti, and leaving in it forty of his companions, sailed for Europe in January, 1493. In the middle of the ocean the two remaining vessels were assailed by so furious a tempest, that Columbus, abandoning all hope, wrote a hasty account of his voyage, and, having surrounded the paper with a waxed cloth, put the whole in a cask, which he threw into the sea, hoping that the waves might carry it to the land. Happily, this precaution proved unnecessary, the storm abated, and, on the fifteenth of March, Columbus triumphantly entered the harbor of Palos, from which he had sailed about seven months before.

Columbus and the egg.—The fortunate admiral pro-

ceeded by land to the Spanish court, then at Barcelona; and, as a specimen of his important discoveries, offered to Isabella and Ferdinand a variety of golden ornaments and productions of the New World. The sovereigns, in return, gave him every mark of regard and esteem, and confirmed his title of admiral and viceroy. Following their example, the courtiers and lords vied with each other in bestowing upon him proofs of personal consideration. As, however, there are never wanting mean characters, jealous of the reputation of others, some persons of this description publicly told him that, after all, he had not much reason to glory in the discovery of America, some little share of courage and a fortunate chance having been sufficient to bring the attempt to a successful issue. Columbus made no direct reply, but, taking an egg, invited the company to make it stand upon one end. As no one could do this, he struck the egg upon the table, so as to break the end, and left it standing on the broken part, showing, in this simple and pleasant manner, that the most perplexing things may become the easiest to be done when we are once shown the way, but not before; and that such was exactly the case with regard to the attempt of going in search of unknown lands.

Bull of Pope Alexander VI. establishing a line of partition.—The tidings of the great discovery made by Columbus rapidly spread throughout Europe, filling every one with astonishment, and arousing among the nations the spirit of adventure and discovery. The Spanish sovereigns lost no time in taking means to secure their new acquisitions. A bull was obtained from Pope Alexander VI., granting them all the land that had been or might be discovered in Western India, under the condition of planting and propagating the Catholic faith among the inhabitants. But, lest the discoveries of the Spaniards should interfere with those of the Portuguese, which had likewise been secured by a papal bull, an ideal line was drawn, by order of the pope, from the northern to the southern pole, a hundred degrees west of the Azores. All land discovered to the west of this line was conceded to the crown of Spain; all discovered in the opposite direction was to belong to Portugal.*

* See note L.

Second voyage of Columbus Sept. 25, 1493.—In the meantime, great exertions were made in the Spanish ports to fit out a second expedition upon a larger scale. It consisted of seventeen ships, and about fifteen hundred persons, among whom were laborers and artisans of all kinds intended for the projected colony, and twelve clergymen who went to impart religious instruction to the natives. With these, Columbus sailed from Cadiz on the twenty-fifth of September, 1493, and had a favorable passage to Hayti; but his disappointment was very great at finding there neither the fort which he had built, nor the forty men whom he had left for its defence. During his absence, their tyrannical and oppressive conduct provoked the hostility of the Indian population, who slew them and utterly demolished their fortress.

The return of Columbus, his authority, his prudence and moderation, might have restored tranquillity in the island; unfortunately the excellent views which he entertained, instead of being seconded by the zeal, were frequently opposed by the avarice, ambition and depravity of many of his new companions. In spite of his efforts, of the orders of the sovereigns, and of the remonstrances of zealous clergymen, the Indians were cruelly oppressed; and the numbers of that unfortunate race daily decreased, from war, starvation, and ill treatment.

Finding himself involved in difficulties, Columbus returned to Spain in 1495. His arrival at court easily dispelled the clouds which envy and calumny had thrown round his conduct and administration; but he now saw how much more he would have afterwards to endure from his enemies.

Third voyage of Columbus.—It was only after two years of fresh disappointments and tedious waiting, that he succeeded in obtaining a squadron of six vessels for a new voyage. For various reasons, he was induced to steer more to the south than he had ever done before. This course led him to the mouth of the great river Orinoco, where he for the first time beheld the continent, on the first of August (A.D. 1498); a most interesting discovery, of the importance of which Columbus himself was little aware at the time. The continual dangers which he had to encounter in those unknown seas, together with a variety of other incidents, obliged him to hasten his

return to Hispaniola, where he hoped to enjoy the rest he so much needed, before pursuing the great work of exploring the continent.

Columbus sent in chains to Spain.—But, while the admiral was thus undergoing all kinds of hardships for the service of Spain, the party of his enemies obtained the ascendency at court. Their charges against his administration were so frequent, so artful and so numerous, that the Spanish sovereigns thought it proper to despatch a commissioner to Hispaniola for the purpose of investigating the real state of affairs. This commissioner was Francisco de Bobadilla, an intelligent, but at the same time a passionate man. After his arrival at San-Domingo, he acted with such great partiality that, while he readily listened to the accusations of the rabble against Columbus, he refused to hear his defence, and even went so far as to send him in chains to Europe (A.D. 1500).

In the midst of the outrageous injuries thus heaped upon him, Columbus displayed surprising magnanimity. When the vessel on which he embarked, put to sea, the captain, who was a man of feeling, wished to take off the fetters of the unfortunate admiral; but he never would consent to it, and protested that he was resolved to wear them until they should be removed by the express command of his sovereigns. It is said that he ever after kept those chains hanging in his room, and gave orders that they should be buried with him, as a memorial of the ingratitude of the world for eminent services.

The arrival of Columbus as a prisoner and a criminal, caused throughout Spain a general burst of indignation against his enemies. The king and queen disavowed the proceedings of Bobadilla, as contrary to his instructions; they consoled the admiral by a most gracious reception, and promised to reinstate him in all his privileges and dignities. This, however, owing both to the untimely death of Isabella, and to the procrastinating policy of Ferdinand, never was effected. After all, selfish and mercenary considerations had but little weight with Columbus; nor could obstacles abate his zeal for useful discoveries.

Fourth and last voyage of Columbus, May 11, 1502.—Having obtained after some delay, a few vessels he

sailed once more from Cadiz, in the spring of 1502, accompanied by his youngest son Fernando, who afterwards wrote his father's life.

Never had the admiral to suffer so much as in this his fourth and last voyage; yet never did he evince more wonderful presence of mind or greater resources of genius. This appeared chiefly in the following occurrence. After a long and perilous cruise on the boisterous seas near the isthmus of Panama, the shattered state of his vessels obliged him, on his return, to run them ashore on the coast of Jamaica, and to remain there for several months. At first, the Indians were eager to supply the Spaniards with provisions, which they exchanged for trifling objects; gradually their interest abated and their useful visits became less and less frequent. The scarcity daily increased in the little camp; and all began to entertain horrible apprehensions of famine, when a most happy idea presented itself to the mind of Columbus.

From his knowledge of astronomy, he ascertained that there would be, in three days, a total eclipse of the moon. He therefore summoned the principal caciques (Indian chieftains) to a conference, appointing for it the day of the eclipse. When all were assembled, he first reproached them, through his interpreter, with their inhuman insensibility, and threatened them with the vengeance of the God of heaven, whom the Spaniards adored: as a token of this impending vengeance, the moon, he said, would refuse its light to them on that very night. In fact, the eclipse commenced a few hours after, and struck terror and dismay into the hearts of the Indians. They fell at the feet of Columbus, and entreated him to ask pardon for them of the God of heaven, assuring him that they would henceforth bring to the Spaniards whatever should be required. He feigned to yield with reluctance to their request, and shutting himself up for some moments in his cabin, came out to them again, and said that, under the strict condition of their future fidelity to their promises, he had obtained their pardon from the Almighty; in sign of which they would presently behold the light of the moon.

The admiral, before speaking thus to them, had waited for the opportune moment when the eclipse was about to terminate. The moon began to appear, and soon recov-

ered all its brilliancy, to the inconceivable joy of the Indians, who were scarcely able, from excess of astonishment, to testify their admiration, reverence, and gratitude for Columbus. They hastened to propitiate him with gifts, and, from that time forward, not only supplied the Spaniards with abundance of provisions, but carefully avoided giving them the least offence. At last, two vessels arriving from Hispaniola, delivered the admiral with his companions from this perilous kind of exile, and conveyed them to a safer place. As soon as the state of his affairs permitted, he re-embarked for Spain, which, after a passage marked by new adventures, he reached on the 7th of November of the year 1504, with a constitution shattered by so many anxieties, hardships, and sufferings.

Columbus' death.—About this time, Columbus lost his constant protectress, Queen Isabella, and, with her, every well-founded hope of ever being reinstated in his former dignities. It was in vain that he had more and more deserved the gratitude of the court by new services and discoveries; in vain too, that he urged the fulfilment of the royal promise; the politic Ferdinand always deferred, under various pretences, till the admiral, who had been ill ever since his return, died at Valladolid, at the age of about sixty-five (A.D. 1506). His last sufferings were sanctified by his usual resignation, his last moment devoted to all the pious practices of religion, and his last words, those of the Royal Prophet, *Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit.*—Psalm xxx, 6.

What has been already said of Columbus, clearly shows that he possessed all the characteristics of a truly great man—a noble soul, a vast genius for discovery, and a surprising sagacity in finding out expedients and resources in the greatest dangers. His piety was genuine and fervent; his heart, benevolent and generous; and his conduct, in unison with the feelings of his heart. Instead of ravaging the newly found countries, like many of his contemporary discoverers, who were intent only on immediate gain, he sought to colonize and cultivate them, to civilize the natives, and subject everything to the control of law, order and religion. If the noble attempt failed, the whole history of this great man proves that the failure cannot be laid to his charge.

Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.—When Columbus, by his death, ceased to excite the jealousy of the Spanish court, great honors were paid to his memory; yet, he never obtained the recompense which he had best deserved, that of giving his name to the New World. His just claims were defeated, and the honor was given to Amerigo Vespucci, a native of Florence, who in 1499 visited the same coast of Paria which Columbus had discovered in 1498. His interesting account of the important fact, first published at Florence in 1507, years afterwards, caused the continent to be called *America*. But even admitting the merits of Vespucci, he cannot claim the honor of the discovery; to him alone it belongs who was the first to conceive, mature and execute the bold design of crossing an unknown ocean in search of a New World.

PORTUGUESE SETTLEMENTS IN ASIA. —A.D. 1497-1515.

Voyage of Sebastian Cabot—Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope by Vasco da Gama in 1498.—Numerous expeditions followed the enterprise of Columbus. Most of them started from the harbors of Spain, and were conducted by Spanish adventurers eager to enrich or distinguish themselves by new and important discoveries; but others were also undertaken by other nations. About the same time that Columbus and Vespucci saw *Terra Firma* in the south, the celebrated navigator, Sebastian Cabot, sailing in the service of Henry VII., king of England, discovered and explored the coasts of the northern continent of America. Not long after, Canada and the river St. Lawrence were visited by Jacques Cartier and other French seamen; but the Portuguese, by following a different direction did something still more remarkable. In 1497 Vasco da Gama, sent by Don Emmanuel, king of Portugal, succeeded in doubling the cape of *Good Hope*, and after a voyage of thirteen months arrived at the fertile shores of East India. During the ensuing years the Portugese made, throughout that extensive country, acquisitions and settlements nearly equal in value to those of the Spaniards in the New World.

The East Indies had always held a conspicuous rank among the states of the Asiatic continent, and had been looked upon, from the time of the ancient Assyrians, Persians, and Greeks, as an important and desirable country. At later periods, India suffered from frequent revolutions, and was exposed to frightful calamities from the incursions of the Turkish, Tartar, and Mogul conquerors. Towards the epoch which now occupies our attention, and during the two following centuries, it comprised many independent states, the most powerful of which, and probably the most opulent in the world was the empire of Hindostan, abounding in pearls, gold, and silver, and enriched both by its commerce and the productions of the soil.

Greater resistance was made by the Indians of Asia than by those of America to their European aggressors. It was only after much toil and hardship, after many struggles, battles and persevering efforts under the command of intrepid leaders, Gama, Cabral, Pacheco, and Albuquerque, that the Portuguese were enabled to establish settlements all along the Indian Coast, at Goa, Cochin, Malacca, etc., and in various Islands of the Southern ocean. Nor did their sway in these countries last long, most of their Asiatic possessions being soon wrested from them by the Dutch and English, in the course of the seventeenth century.

The Portuguese had also extended their commercial relations to the eastern extremities of Asia, as far as China and Japan. These countries although hitherto little known to the nations of Europe, were ancient and flourishing empires. The Chinese particularly claim a very high antiquity, their nation having been founded about two thousand years before the coming of our Lord, and governed since that remote period by two hundred and forty emperors, of twenty-two different families. Still their history, with respect to the ages preceding the epoch of their great legislator Confucius (towards the year 500 B.C.), is involved in obscurity.

China is the most populous empire in the world, containing nearly three hundred millions of inhabitants, and several cities, if not superior, at least equal in extent to the largest among the European and American cities. The established religion is a mixture of theism and idola-

try; there are also Mohammedans and Jews, though in small numbers. In the seventeenth century, Christianity obtained numerous proselytes among the Chinese, under their celebrated emperor Kang-hi; but since that time, the Christians have been always harassed and persecuted with more or less rigor.

The northern frontier of this extensive region is protected by a wall twenty-four feet high, thirty or forty feet thick, and fifteen hundred miles long, crossing not only valleys and mountains, but even rivers, over which it passes in the form of bridges. Its gates and towers are almost every where of a colossal size, and defended by numerous troops. It was built two thousand years ago, as a defence against the Tartars, whom it did not however prevent from twice invading and subduing China, first under Genghis Khan and his sons, and again in the seventeenth century.

The Chinese are generally witty and polite, intelligent and industrious, but only to a certain degree; and they are vain-glorious, self-conceited, and excessively prepossessed in favor of their nation. Although great lovers of architecture, mechanics, painting, astronomy, natural philosophy, etc., they advance but little in these various departments of the arts and sciences. They could not conceal their surprise and jealousy when the Jesuit missionaries appeared three hundred years ago in China, at seeing these foreigners much more versed than themselves in all the branches of mathematics and natural history. Even the knowledge and use of the mariner's compass, of printing, of gunpowder and artillery, which they seem to have possessed before our European ancestors, has been always comparatively imperfect. Their armies, however numerous, scarcely deserve the name of a military force, or their vessels that of a navy; while, in point of morality, their inhuman treatment of infants, their injustice towards foreigners, their pride, and other vices, place them far below most other nations.

During the first half of the present century the opium traffic between India and China grew into gigantic proportions, and became an important source of wealth to the British merchants, and of revenue to the Indian government.

The Chinese government, however, awake to the enor-

mous evils of the growing use of the narcotic, forbade the importation of the drug; but the British merchants, notwithstanding the imperial prohibition, persisted in the trade. Finally, the government seized and destroyed all the opium stored in the warehouses of the British traders at Canton. This act, together with other "outrages," led to a declaration of war on the part of England. British troops now took possession of Canton, and the Chinese government, whose troops were as helpless as children before European soldiers, was soon forced to agree to the treaty of Nanking, by which the island of Hong-Kong was ceded to the English, several important ports were opened to British traders, and the perpetuation of the nefarious traffic in opium was secured. The treaty also provided for the payment by the Chinese of an indemnity of about $20,000,000, to cover the loss sustained by the British merchants in the destruction of their opium, and to defray the expenses of the war.

Japan is likewise a civilized and mighty empire, consisting of many islands, not far from the eastern part of Asia. The revenue and forces of the empire are immense, the former being, it is said, nearly two hundred millions of dollars, the latter amounting, on a war footing, to four hundred thousand infantry and sixty thousand cavalry. The government was until recently absolute and despotic, but has been modified greatly by the advance of civilization within the last three decades.

St. Francis Xavier in Japan.—Towards the middle of the sixteenth century, St. Francis Xavier and other zealous missionaries preached the gospel in Japan with such wonderful success, that, half a century later (in 1605), it contained no less than eighteen hundred thousand Christians. Unfortunately, at that time, powerful and profligate princes undertook to destroy this illustrious portion of the Church, and succeeded in the impious attempt. A dreadful persecution arose, which shed torrents of Christian blood in various provinces of the empire; nor did it cease until there remained no more victims to be sacrificed by the sword of the persecutors. From that epoch, up to the year 1852, Japan remained closed against foreigners, and the Dutch were the only Europeans admitted into one of its harbors for the purposes of trade.

DECLINE OF THE ITALIAN REPUBLICS.—WARS FOR THE POSSESSION OF ITALY.—CARDINAL XIMENES.—POPE LEO X.—A.D. 1494-1517.

The Italian Republics.—The discovery of America and the passage of the cape of Good Hope while they proved of the greatest advantage to Spain and Portugal, naturally occasioned the decline of the Italian republics. Up to this period foreign commerce had been mostly in the hands of the Venetians, Genoese, and other maritime nations of Italy, who, from the shores of the Adriatic and Mediterranean seas, communicated with the Red sea across the Isthmus of Suez, and thus could carry on trade with all the nations of the East. The two great events just mentioned gave a new direction to the ideas, projects and commerce of the European nations; and Venice, with the other commercial states of the peninsula, saw her traffic decline in proportion as Portugal and Spain increased in wealth and power.

War about the Kingdom of Naples.—Another and a still heavier calamity that afflicted Italy at this period, was the almost uninterrupted series of bloody wars in which it was involved during a great number of years. The chief cause was a dispute for possession of the kingdom of Naples. Since 1443, it had been under the princes of the house of Arragon; but the French monarchs looked with a jealous eye at that beautiful country, which had once belonged to princes of their family. King Charles VIII., the successor of Louis XI. whose whole reign had been spent in endeavoring to weaken the power of the great vassals of the crown, undertook to reconquer Naples in 1494. He executed his design in the beginning of the following year, but soon lost all his conquests. The Italian princes had now united against him, and, although he defeated them in the battle of Fornovo, he was merely enabled by the victory to save the remains of his army, and return without further obstacle to France.

Second expedition.—A second expedition for the same purpose took place in 1501, under Louis XII., successor of Charles VIII. It was similar in circumstances

and results to the first: great success in the beginning, followed by great disasters in the end; at first, repeated advantages obtained over the Neapolitan army by the French troops, and afterwards their own signal defeats at Cerignola, Garigliano, etc., by the Spanish commander, Gonzales of Cordova, surnamed the *great general.* A treaty almost entirely to the advantage of Spain, was then concluded between the rival powers, and terminated these contests for the kingdom of Naples.

The League of Cambray.—But there were not wanting other motives or pretences for renewing the war. In 1508, a powerful league was formed at Cambray between the emperor of Germany, the kings of France and Arragon, and some other sovereigns, against the republic of Venice, whose pretensions and conquests had provoked their anger, or awakened their jealousy. None of the confederates acted with as much vigor as Louis XII., and none derived less advantage from the defeat of the Venetians. His very exploits and his brilliant victory at Agnadel (A.D. 1509) having soon rendered him an object of alarm to the other princes, the league turned against him; and the French, notwithstanding their new and bloody victory at Ravenna, where they lost their young heroic leader, the duke of Nemours (A.D. 1512), were again expelled from Italy.

France itself was invaded, on one side by the Swiss, who, having defeated the duke of La Tremoille, at Novara, advanced into Burgundy as far as Dijon; on the other, by the emperor Maximilian and Henry VIII., king of England, whose combined armies gained the battle of Guinégamp, also called *the battle of spurs,* because in it the French cavalry used their spurs more than their weapons. Moreover the king of Scotland, James IV., an ally of France, was also defeated by the English at Flodden Field, where he lost his life in the conflict (A.D. 1513). The conquerors however made but little progress, and Louis happily succeeded in obtaining a truce, which afforded him some respite. He died at this juncture, without male issue, and was succeeded on the throne by his cousin, the earl of Angouleme, who took the name of Francis I.

Francis I., 1515–1547.—This new monarch, being in the flower of his age, resolved to carry on the war with

greater vigor. He therefore crossed the Alps at the head of a gallant army, and pressed forward till he was attacked by the Swiss near Marignano, on the 13th of September, 1515. These brave highlanders had neither cavalry nor artillery, yet they fought with the most undaunted courage. Notwithstanding the dreadful slaughter which the cannon made among them, they repeatedly renewed the charge, and several times were on the point of breaking through the French line. It was only after a furious engagement of two days, and the slaughter of several thousands of them, that the survivors retired from the field. A French general, the marshal of Trivulce, who had been present at seventeen other battles, said that none of them, for the obstinate valor displayed on both sides, could be compared with that of Marignano. He consequently called it the *battle of giants*, by which name it is known in history.

Francis I. displayed on that trying occasion rare courage. He met the most vigorous charges made by the Swiss, without ever losing, in the long conflict, his presence of mind, or his confidence of success. At last, the timely arrival of the Venetians, his allies, under the command of their celebrated general Alviano, entirely turned the tide in his favor.

Great were the fruits of this splendid victory for France. Some of her opponents presently desisted from further hostilities; and the Swiss in particular agreed to a treaty of reconciliation with such willingness and sincerity, as to become, from that time, her most faithful allies. King Ferdinand still endeavored, it is true, to protract the war; but, exhausted by mental fatigue and bodily infirmity, he died in the following year (1516), after an almost uninterrupted career of glory, tarnished, however, on some occasions, by a want of gratitude towards useful men, and of fidelity to his promises. In royal qualities and political achievements he had certainly no equal among the sovereigns of his age, if we except his heroic and virtuous consort Isbella, who moreover surpassed him in pure, noble and delicate feeling.

Cardinal Ximenes.—The chief personages who contributed with Ferdinand and Isabella to the glory of their reign, were beyond doubt Christopher Columbus, Gon-

zales of Cordova, both already noticed in the foregoing pages, and Cardinal Ximenes, archbishop of Toledo, the ablest politician, the most zealous minister of state, the most penetrating genius, in a word, all things taken into consideration, the greatest man that ever Spain produced. Immense and innumerable were the services which he rendered to the Church, to the state, to his sovereigns and to the people, during the twenty-two years of his episcopal and civil administration (1495–1517). Magnificent, great, generous, the constant protector of merit, virtue and innocence, he conceived and executed projects best calculated to advance the cause of religion, humanity and learning. To him the Spanish nation was indebted for several of her best and most useful establishments, and the literary world for the publication of the first *Polyglot Bible*,* which he with incredible care and at great expense, had printed at Alcala, in six folio volumes (A.D. 1515).

Pope Leo X.—From this time we may date the complete revival of literature and of the arts and sciences. The French king Francis I. distinguished himself by his patronage of learning and of learned men. But no one favored their cause and promoted their success, with greater zeal than Pope Leo X. whose name has in consequence been adopted to designate the first part of the sixteenth century considered as a literary age. Endowed with the most exquisite taste, he imparted to all around him a love for the fine arts, for true eloquence and poetry. Scholars and artists, roused to uncommon exertions by his protection and encouragement, were justly compared with the most distinguished geniuses of antiquity, and Italy again beheld, as in the time of the Cæsars, a multitude of her children, Raphael, Michael Angelo, Ariosto, Tasso, Vida, Bembo, Sadolet, etc., astonishing the world, some by their masterpieces of painting and architecture, others by their beautiful poems and various kinds of writing, which we still admire, both for their delicacy and for their pure and elegant style.†

---

* Or, *Bible in several languages.*—There exist three other celebrated Polyglots: that of Antwerp, A.D. 1572;—of Paris, 1645;—and of London, 1658.

† See note M.

LUTHER AND THE REFORMATION. —A.D. 1517-1529.

At the termination of the wars of Italy in 1516, there was a prospect of a general and lasting peace among Christian nations, when unforeseen events unexpectedly excited anew all the human passions and again greatly disturbed Europe. The chief and first cause of these fresh commotions, was the religious revolution effected by Luther in Germany.

Martin Luther.—Martin Luther was born in 1483, at Eisleben, a small town of Saxony. After having studied with great success in the Latin schools of Magdeburg and Eisenach, he completed his education in the university of Erfurt. In the year 1505, he took the degree of Master of Arts, which authorized him to deliver lectures on Physics and the Ethics of Aristotle. But in consequence of an extraordinary event* which happened to him about this time, and produced a deep impression upon his mind, he formed the design of becoming a religious, and accordingly joined the order of the Augustinians at Erfurt.

The life of the young monk (he was then twenty-five years of age) appeared regular, and in many respects edifying. He betrayed however, in several instances, particularly when he was opposed or corrected, a warm and irritable disposition. In 1507 he was ordained priest and in 1512 he was made doctor of theology. His talents and learning caused his superiors to recommend him to the elector of Saxony, as a professor of divinity in the newly erected university of Wittemberg; and when he afterwards began to preach, his ardent language, the boldness of his eloquence, and his nervous style, with great fluency in his mother-tongue, soon acquired for him the reputation of a good preacher.

In the year 1517, Pope Leo X. having solemnly published indulgences to be gained by those who, being truly repentant for their sins, should contribute by their pious offerings, to the rebuilding of St. Peter's church in

* The death of one of his companions, who was killed by a thunderbolt at his side, when they were walking together.

Rome, and to the expenses of an intended crusade against the Turks, the Augustinians could not see without some jealousy, the publication of these indulgences intrusted by the archbishop of Mentz, not to them, as had been usual, but to the Dominican order; and as it was reported, on the other hand, that great abuses existed in the publication and distribution of these indulgences by the Dominicans, Luther was commissioned by his superiors to preach and write against these abuses. This commission he fulfilled with a great deal of warmth; but he did not stop there. In the heat of the dispute, he passed insensibly from abuses which the whole Church condemned with him, to the things abused, and soon began to attack the indulgences themselves; and to maintain his first position, he was gradually led to deny also the efficacy of the sacraments, the invocation of the saints, the sacrifice of the Mass, and many other tenets universally admitted in the Church.

Burning of the papal bull at Wittemberg.—This bold step produced the greatest excitement all over the Christian world: Luther himself was at first terrified at it. When he began the dispute, it was not his intention to carry it so far, still less to come to an open rupture. He had even expressed his perfect submission to the Roman Pontiff in a letter which he wrote to Leo X., and which he concluded with these remarkable words: "Therefore, most holy father, prostrate at the feet of your Holiness, I place myself at your disposal, with all that I am and all that I have. Vivify, kill, call, recall, approve, disapprove, as you please; in your voice I will acknowledge the voice of Christ, who presides and speaks in you." But having in the interval gained over a strong party, he no sooner saw his condemnation pronounced in the papal bull of the fifteenth of June (A.D. 1520), than, yielding to his resentment, he suddenly broke asunder all the ties by which he still adhered to the Roman See, openly separated from it, and the better to seal his separation, he publicly burnt the bull in which his opinions had been condemned, together with the decretals of the popes and the writings of Eckius his principal adversary, in the presence of the professors and the students of the university, and an immense concourse of the inhabitants of Wittemberg.

Zuinglius and Calvin.—The die was cast; Luther continued to indulge his wrath by calling the pope antichrist, the man of sin, the minister of Satan, and enemy of all good: he used similar expressions, not only against the king of England, Henry VIII., who had written a book in refutation of his doctrines, but also against the various universities and Catholic doctors, by whom his doctrine had been unanimously rejected. The vehemence of his discourses, his exhortations to shake off the yoke of sacramental confession, of penitential works of religious celibacy, and his suggestions for the seizure of ecclesiastical property, vastly increased the number of his followers. As early as the year 1523, the doctrines and practices of the Reformation were introduced into Denmark, Sweden, and many other countries of the north of Europe; while, on the other hand, Zuinglius, and shortly after, Calvin, endeavored to effect similar or even greater changes in Switzerland and France, where they met however with more opposition and less success.

Diet at Speier.—In 1529, an imperial decree was issued at Speier for the purpose of checking the progress of religious dissensions, and restoring the unity of faith in Germany; but it had very little effect. The partisans of Luther *protested* against it, whence came their name of *Protestants;* they moreover appealed to the sword in support of their pretensions, and commenced a civil war which disturbed nearly the whole reign of the emperor Charles V. These measures were adopted by them the more willingly, as Luther himself had declared that it was lawful, and even necessary, to take up arms in order to defend and spread the Reformation!

The Council of Trent.—Thus was completed a revolution, which split the great Christian family in Europe into many separate and opposite communities. Its chief promoter lived long enough to see not only the rise of the other branches of the Reformation, but also the subdivision of his own establishment into a multitude of parties. He died in 1546. During the same year, his various tenets, together with those of Zuinglius and Calvin, began to be discussed and subjected to the usual form of Ecclesiastical condemnation in the council of Trent, the last but one of the general councils, first convened in the end of 1545, and, after two interruptions, finally closed in 1563.

CHARLES V. AND FRANCIS I.—A.D. 1519-1529.

Another cause of the disturbances which afflicted Europe at this unfortunate period, was the obstinate jealousy of two rival and powerful sovereigns. The imperial throne of Germany, left vacant by the death of Maximilian I. in 1519, had been simultaneously claimed by Francis I., king of France, and Charles, archduke of Austria, who had lately succeeded his grandfather Ferdinand on the throne of Spain. The former indeed was a brave and generous prince, but the latter possessed more prudence and skill, and, being moreover of German extraction, he was easily preferred to his competitor. He received the imperial crown at Aix-la-Chapelle, on the twenty-third of October (A.D. 1520).

Francis could not, without great regret, see his hopes disappointed; and, imagining himself injured, advanced his claims to the kingdoms of Navarre and Naples as an excuse to commence hostilities. During the first campaigns success was almost equally divided between the two parties, until the Constable de Bourbon, dissatisfied with the French court, and basely abandoning the cause of his sovereign and country, carried his services to the emperor. Immediately after, the French lost all their possessions in Italy, together with the brightest ornament of their chivalry, the illustrious Bayard, surnamed *the knight without fear and without reproach.*

Battle of Pavia.—Francis now resolved, in order to repair his losses, to take upon himself the conduct of the war. He crossed the Alps at the head of a fresh army, and marched as far as Pavia which he besieged, the imperial troops under the command of De Bourbon hastening at the same time to the relief of the garrison. At their approach, Francis was advised by his ablest officers rather to abandon the siege, than to expose his wearied soldiers to an attack from superior forces; but he could not brook the idea of retreating before the enemy; he therefore determined to abide the issue of a battle.

It seemed, in the beginning, that victory would declare for the French. Their well-conducted artillery mowed down whole ranks of their opponents, when, on a sudden the imprudent valor of the king destroyed his prospect

of success. Anxious to fight with the sword, he rushed forward, and most indiscreetly placed himself between the enemy and his own cannon, which, being thus prevented from firing any longer, of course became useless. This conduct was deservedly followed by a complete overthrow. The imperialists, having nothing more to fear from the French artillery, rallied and fell with fury on the squadron commanded by the king. In a few moments, the scale of fortune turned; Francis saw all his attendants fall by his side; and after having fought with the most desperate courage, and killed seven of the assailants with his own hand, he was forced to surrender himself a prisoner. Of the French army, one-half had been destroyed, and the remainder evacuated Italy (A.D. 1525).

Peace of Madrid.—The unhappy monarch was, at his own request, conveyed to Madrid, the capital of Spain. He was detained there for several months, and only released upon promising the full cession of several provinces, which he either actually possessed, or had hitherto claimed. No sooner was he set at liberty, than he bitterly complained of the severity of these conditions, and availed himself of the opposition to the treaty in the council of state, to leave it unexecuted.

Renewal of the war—Peace of Cambray.—This conduct could not but highly displease the emperor. The feelings of both parties were thus more exasperated than ever; the war was renewed and carried on with redoubled violence, especially by the treacherous Constable de Bourbon, who, having no funds to pay his army, chiefly composed of Lutheran soldiers from Germany, promised, in order to make Pope Clement VII. repent of his friendship towards France, to enrich them by the pillage of Rome. Accordingly he led his troops to the attack of this capital; and, although he fell by a musket-ball as he was mounting a ladder in the assault, the city was taken, and being abandoned for two months to a licentious and infuriated soldiery, suffered more from the German adventurers, than it had formerly done from either the Goths or the Vandals. Still, as neither this nor any other event of the war could be looked upon as a decisive action, both parties became tired of hostilities, and equally desirous of a speedy accommodation of their differences. This was effected in 1529 by the treaty of

Cambray, which, although more favorable to the interests of the French monarch than that of Madrid, secured many advantages to the emperor.

CHARLES V. AND SOLIMAN II.* —A.D. 1520-1532.

THE chief motive which had urged Charles V. to conclude peace with France, was, that he needed all his troops to defend his hereditary dominions against the Turks. The spirit of these infidel invaders was as undaunted as under Mahomet II. Not only had they, within recent years, extended their conquests in Europe and Asia, but even Egypt, the richest country of Africa, was entirely subdued by them in 1517, notwithstanding the brave resistance of its possessors, the Mamelukes.

Soliman II.'s expedition into Hungary.—Soliman II., who succeeded his father, Selim I. in 1520, carried still further the glory of the Ottoman name. More fortunate than Mahomet himself, he successfully invaded Hungary; and Belgrade, no longer protected by the sword of Hunyadi, fell, after a siege of six weeks, into the hands of the Turks. Many other towns were successively carried by storm, or obliged to open their gates. After this expedition, the sultan not thinking it advisable for the present, to advance farther in that direction, prepared himself for another conquest which he deemed still more important.

Siege of Rhodes.—In 1522, four hundred vessels and two hundred thousand men appeared in sight of Rhodes and laid siege to the capital of this island which had now been in the possession of the Knights Hospitallers for more than two hundred years. The Grand-Master was Villiers de l'Isle Adam, a hero not inferior in any respect to Peter d'Aubusson, but less favored by circumstances. The nations of Europe being too actively engaged in the struggle between Charles V. and Francis I., to send him any assistance, all the forces he could oppose to the multitude of the assailants, consisted

---

* Called Soliman I. by several authors who do not reckon Soliman, the son of Bajazet I., among the Turkish sultans, owing probably to the short duration of his reign.

merely of five thousand soldiers and six hundred knights. Still, with this handful of warriors, he held out, during six months, against all the efforts of the Janizaries and all the exertions of Soliman, who had now arrived to conduct the siege in person. Such was the valor of these generous defenders of Rhodes, that in a general assault, the Turks lost no fewer than twenty thousand, and in other attacks, a proportionate number of their most intrepid warriors.

At the sight of this dreadful slaughter of his troops, the sultan, driven almost to despair, thought of abandoning the siege, when the secret, but fatal advice of an infamous traitor, one of the chief commanders in the town, encouraged him to stay and redouble his efforts. The treason indeed was detected, and visited almost instantly with capital punishment; but it was too late for the liberation of Rhodes, now in great want of ammunition, and almost reduced to the last extremity. Although the knights continued, with their usual heroism, to repel every assault of the enemy, and seemed determined to bury themselves under the ruins of their capital, the inhabitants were not endowed with the same degree of fortitude. Justly dreading the horrors of a city carried by storm, they urged with entreaties, and even with threats, the acceptance of an honorable and advantageous capitulation offered by Soliman.

Malta becomes the seat of the knights.—It had thus become absolutely necessary to yield, and all subsequent resistance would have been of no avail; however, the few remaining knights could not leave, without deep regret, the spot which had been the theatre of their exploits. Above all, the departure of the Grand Master, at his advanced age, for a distant country, was an afflicting scene, which the sultan himself could not witness without compassion. Like the Trojans of old, under the conduct of Æneas, these noble fugitives, carrying along with them the fortunes and destinies of their Order, wandered for some time over the seas, in search of a hospitable land. After a short stay in Candia, they reached the shores of Italy where they met with the most consoling and cordial reception, and obtained at length from Charles V. the possession of the small island of Malta, in the middle of the Mediterranean sea, a situation well

adapted to their religious and military purposes. They fortified this new residence, so as to make it, like the former, the bulwark of Christendom and the central point of their struggles against the infidels.

Battle of Mohacs—First siege of Vienna.—The heavy losses which Soliman had sustained in Rhodes, taught him not to be hasty in undertaking any new expedition. He therefore passed the three or four ensuing years in promoting the interior prosperity of his empire, and securing justice for his subjects; till a revolt of the Janizaries warned him again, very unhappily for Europe, not to let those restless warriors live any longer in idleness. Having quelled the revolt, he, for the second time, invaded Hungary, at the head of two hundred thousand men. King Louis II., with only twenty-five or thirty thousand soldiers, fearlessly met him in the plains of Mohacs, but was, after a sharp contest, overwhelmed by numbers, and lost on the same day his army, his crown, and his life (A.D. 1526). The sultan, no longer opposed in his march, now laid waste the surrounding country, took Buda, an important place, and advancing westward towards Vienna, laid seige to that city, the capital of the Austrian dominions. Fortunately, Vienna was better supplied than Rhodes with troops and provisions: twenty thousand brave soldiers, under the command of the count Palatine and the earl of Salm, composed the garrison, and all of them displayed such undaunted courage, as finally to compel the Turks to retire, after twenty fruitless assaults, and the loss of eighty thousand warriors (A.D. 1529).

Soliman's retreat before the Imperial Army.—Soliman, however, did not yet give up his hostile designs against Austria. He reappeared in 1532, with an army of three, some say, five hundred thousand men. Charles V. marched against him with thirty thousand horse, and ninety thousand well disciplined infantry, besides prodigious swarms of irregulars. At the sight of these powerful monarchs and of their formidable hosts advancing against each other, all Europe stood in awe and in expectation of a tremendous conflict; yet, when the armies approached, instead of a decisive battle, there were only a few skirmishes between the advanced parties. Soliman did not think proper to risk a defeat; and, retreating in

good order, rather chose to turn his arms against the less warlike nations of Asia. Nor did the emperor undertake to pursue him in this retrograde march, but, satisfied at seeing the country free from invasion, he disbanded his own forces, and set out from Germany to visit his provinces of Italy, and his kingdom of Spain.

CONQUEST OF MEXICO.—HERNANDO CORTEZ A.D. 1519-1523.

First voyage around the world by Magellan.—Whilst Charles V. caused his power to be obeyed or feared all over Europe, his name was carried to the extremities of the earth by the celebrated Magellan, who was the first to undertake the circumnavigation of the globe; and other intrepid adventurers, about the same time, were subjecting to his sway vast and opulent countries in the New World. Such was, indeed, especially during this period, the heroic spirit, partly religious, and partly chivalrous, diffused among the Spaniards, that nothing seemed impossible to their activity, valor, and perseverance. This the reader will easily perceive in the impartial and detailed account of the manner in which a few warriors of that brave nation succeeded in conquering the mighty empires of Mexico and Peru, the former in North, the latter in South America.

Hernando Cortez.—In one of their excursions upon the American continent, the Spaniards were informed that there existed, at no great distance from the coast, a rich and flourishing empire called Mexico. The governor of Cuba, Velasquez, having conceived the design of establishing colonies in that extensive country, fitted out a fleet for that purpose, and placed it under the command of Hernando Cortez, one of his officers, whom he considered a man equally capable of bringing the most arduous enterprise to a happy issue, and at the same time incapable of ever aspiring to independence. His conjectures as to the abilities of Cortez were perfectly correct; for it would have been impossible to find an individual possessing more sagacity and prudence, more energy and boldness: but, as the sequel will show, he had completely mistaken the turn of his mind and his real character.

Foundation of Vera Cruz.—Cortez sailed from Cuba on the tenth of January (A.D. 1519), with eleven small vessels carrying six hundred men, sixteen horses and fourteen pieces of artillery and thirteen cross-bowmen, not hesitating with this inconsiderable force to undertake the conquest of an empire which exceeded in extent all the European dominions of Spain.* He had not proceeded far, when Velasquez began to suspect the new general, and wished to revoke his commission; but it was too late. Cortez, protected not only by the affection of his soldiers, but also, says Solis by the justice of his cause, continued his voyage, and landing on the continent, proclaimed himself independent of the governor of Cuba, and accountable to none but the Spanish monarch. Immediately after this, he founded the colony of Vera Cruz, and the better to inspire his troops with desperate courage, burnt all his vessels, thus taking from them all hope of return.

Alliance with the Tlascalans and advance upon Mexico.—The undaunted Spaniards began to advance through a populous country towards the Mexican capital, concerning which they had obtained fresh and more ample information. It was then under the sway of Montezuma, a prince who governed with absolute despotism. Many of his subjects and tributaries, especially those at a distance, tired of the yoke that lay heavy upon them, looked upon Cortez as a deliverer, entered into an alliance with him, and supplied him with provisions and every assistance. The republic of Tlascala, however, did not follow their example; on the contrary, it prepared to repel the strangers by force. Many battles were fought, in which the people displayed uncommon bravery; but they could not long withstand the arms and tactics of the Europeans. Finding themselves always defeated, the Tlascalans at length con-

* Intelligent readers will easily understand that we here make use of the word *conquest*, only through an anticipated view of the event. The projects of Cortez, as both his words and conduct invariably testified, were wholly humane and pacific. It is true, he provided himself, and that very prudently, with means of self-defence and even of warfare, in a case of stern necessity: but he always intended to treat the natives with due moderation and kindness, and with a sincere desire for their own greater good, nor did he deviate from this rule, until compelled to do so by the indomitable hostility of the Indians.

sented to treat the Spaniards as friends, and in fact became thenceforth their most faithful and useful allies. They aided Cortez wonderfully in the prosecution of his enterprise, particularly in subduing the great city of Cholula, and inflicting a severe chastisement on its inhabitants for a dreadful conspiracy which had endangered the lives of all the conquerors.

Cortez enters Mexico and arrests Montezuma in his own capital.—In the mean time, Montezuma was endeavoring, by every expedient in his power, to impede the progress of the Spaniards; but Cortez overcame all obstacles, and, after a few days, finally came within sight of the vast and populous city of Mexico, which contained no fewer than sixty thousand houses with a proportionate number of inhabitants. It was surrounded by a lake, well fortified, and adorned with a great number of temples, palaces, and other public buildings, evincing a certain degree of civilization. Cortez entered the town, under his assumed quality of ambassador of the Spanish monarch, and was received with great pomp by Montezuma, who lodged him together with the other Spaniards, in one of his palaces. But while these things took place in Mexico, an attack had been directed by a Mexican general against the colony of Vera Cruz. No sooner was Cortez informed of all the circumstances of this new act of perfidy than, in order to secure himself against the dangers of his situation, he conceived and executed the boldest and most extraordinary design of which history makes mention, that of arresting the emperor himself in open day, and in the very presence of his officers and subjects. Taking with him a small band of resolute men, he went to the imperial palace, surrounded Montezuma, and compelled him to come with them to their residence as a hostage. In that new abode, the astounded monarch agreed to acknowledge himself a vassal of Charles V.; and, in consequence of this agreement, delivered into the hands of the Spaniards a large sum of gold and silver, which Cortez distributed among his officers and soldiers with admirable disinterestedness and equity.

Cortez defeats Narvaez.—Everything until now had been successful, and according to the most sanguine wishes of Cortez; but this course of prosperity was soon

to meet with new obstacles. On the one hand, the Mexicans became highly indignant at the long sojourn of their sovereign among foreigners, and at the protracted stay of the Spaniards in Mexico; on the other hand, intelligence was received that the governor of Cuba, Velasquez, had despatched eighteen ships and nine hundred men to attack Cortez as a rebel. This rendered the position of the latter extremely perplexing. Should he remain in Mexico, or march against his new opponents, there was in either case danger of losing all the fruits of his past labors. He therefore adopted a middle course, not less daring indeed than the other two, but which offered a greater chance of succeeding on one side, without losing ground on the other. Leaving one hundred and fifty men in the imperial city under the command of Alvarado, a brave and intrepid officer, to maintain the advantage he had already obtained; he set out with about two hundred and fifty others, to meet his hostile and imprudent countrymen. By great courage and activity, he not only surprised and defeated the nine hundred Spaniards, but even disarmed them all, made Narvaez, their general, prisoner, and taking the vanquished troops of that unskilful commander into his own service, returned in triumph to Mexico.

Insurrection against the Spaniards—Montezuma's death.—His joy was not of long duration. The insurrection of the Mexicans, which had commenced during his absence, became general after his return. The Spaniards were surrounded, and repeatedly attacked in their intrenchments. As, on one occasion, the danger appeared imminent, Montezuma made his appearance, in order to quell the revolt; but the unfortunate monarch was struck by a stone thrown by one of the assailants, and expired after three days of great suffering. His death proved fatal to the Spaniards, in whose preservation and welfare he seemed, in the end, to take a sincere interest. Under Quetlavaca, his successor, the attacks of the Mexicans were carried on with redoubled fury; and, although thousands of them were daily destroyed by the swords and cannon of the Spaniards, others fearlessly rushed forward in crowds to take the places of the slain, and to maintain the sanguinary contest.

In all these occurrences, Cortez made exertions and displayed a valor which seemed to be almost above nature. One day for instance, he fought, though painfully wounded, for three hours, till he forced the Mexicans to abandon a post from which they had greatly annoyed the Spaniards. On another occasion, having driven the assailants to a distance, and being entirely occupied in continuing the pursuit, he at length found himself cut off by a numerous body of enemies from his own troops. In this imminent danger, he endeavored to reach a neighboring street, which he supposed might afford him greater facility for escape. Scarcely had he advanced in that direction when he met another party of Mexicans, and saw in the midst of them his intimate friend Duero, whom they were dragging to a temple of idols, to sacrifice him to their gods. Cortez, forgetful of his own peril, immediately rushed against them, dispersed them and delivered Duero, who was even so fortunate as to find his horse and spear at a short distance. Then the two noble friends riding together, cut their way through the enemy, and safely rejoined their soldiers, who had just completed the defeat of the Mexicans. Cortez always considered this adventure as one of the most fortunate of his life.

Retreat of the Spaniards—The "Noche triste."—It became necessary, however, for the present, to abandon Mexico. The requisite preparations for a retreat were made with extraordinary diligence and care; and the Spaniards began their march a little after midnight, on the first of July, 1520. Silence and darkness favored them at first; but all their motions had been watched by a vigilant foe, and no sooner had they begun to cross a breach in the causeway, than a shower of darts, arrows and stones assailed them from different sides. Dismay and confusion pervaded their ranks, and the preposterous conduct of many who were intent on preserving their riches, was an additional cause of disaster. This awful night, which justly retained the name of *Noche triste*, cost the retreating army, several hundred Spanish, and more than a thousand Tlascalan soldiers, with nearly all the horses, treasure, artillery, and baggage. Cortez appeared inconsolable, and was seen on the following day, when the troops resumed their march, shedding abundant tears,

thus giving a mark of paternal sensibility, that endeared him to his soldiers as much as his consummate prudence and valor caused him to be respected.

The Spaniards continued their retreat in good order. It was rather matter of surprise, that they did not meet with more formidable attacks; but the sixth day of their march discovered the new schemes contrived by the enemy for their destruction. The Mexican forces had been secretly directed to the valley of Otumba, through which the Spanish troops would be obliged to pass, on their way to Tlascala. When Cortez reached the neighborhood of that spot, the whole valley was already occupied by a hostile force amounting, it is said, to two hundred thousand Indians, who had been collected from different tribes, as appeared from the variety of their banners and ornaments. In the midst of them, the general of the empire appeared conspicuous, borne upon a splendid litter, from which he gave his orders. He carried in his hands the imperial standard, which was never intrusted to any one but himself, and never unfurled except on the most important occasions.

Battle of Otompan.—At the sight of this vast multitude of enemies, Cortez fervently implored the divine assistance, and plainly told his followers, that there was no alternative now left them but to conquer or die. His plan was, to open for his troops a passage through the Indians in the narrowest part of the valley, where the confined nature of the spot would more easily render multitudes useless. Accordingly, he disposed his infantry in the form of a column, the files of which were composed alternately of arquebusiers or archers and lancers. As to his cavalry, which terrified the Indians by the mere motion of the horses, it was placed partly in front, to break the first rank of the enemy, and partly in the rear, to prevent them from reuniting. In this order, the Spaniards descended the hill, in order to commence the perilous conflict.

The first discharge of the fire-arms was made with such success, that the Mexicans who were facing the Spanish column, had no time to shoot their arrows. They were instantly attacked with swords and pikes, while the cavalry pushed forward, and dispersed or crushed all who

fell in their way. Considerable advantage was gained by this first onset. Similar charges produced similar results, but so great and obstinate was the bravery of the Indians, that, after the cavalry had forced them to retire, they fearlessly returned to the charge, and regained the ground which they had just lost, the valley of Otumba, in the mean time, resembling a stormy sea agitated by the perpetual motion of its waves. Cortez, who, at the head of the horsemen, was causing terrible slaughter wherever he directed his steps, began to fear that this mode of warfare would finally exhaust the strength of his little army. His uneasiness increased every moment; when he suddenly conceived one of those bold ideas which great danger sometimes suggests, but only in men of uncommon energy.

Cortez' strategy.—At the sight of the imperial banner waving in the distance, Cortez remembered having heard that the issue of battles was considered by the Indians as dependent on its loss or preservation. He immediately called around him his bravest officers, Sandoval, Olid, Alvarado, with some other courageous men, and, at full gallop, forced his passage towards the banner. While his companions were despatching or putting to flight all who had dared to await their approach he himself attacked the Mexican general, wounded him, and by a powerful stroke of his lance brought him to the ground.

As soon as the venerated banner disappeared from the sight of the Mexicans, they lowered the other ensigns, and, throwing down their arms, fled precipitately towards the woods and mountains; so that the valley was in a few moments entirely cleared. Aware how important it was to complete their dispersion and overthrow, Cortez ordered his men to pursue them. He himself was suffering from the blow of a stone, which had broken his helmet and badly wounded his head. His orders, and the knowledge that he was wounded, so animated the Spaniards, that, notwithstanding the dreadful fatigue of the day, their strength seemed to be revived, and their fury to redouble in the pursuit of the enemy. According to the Spanish authors, twenty thousand Indians perished in this famous battle, which may be justly reckoned the

greatest and most glorious ever fought by the Europeans against the aborigines of America.*

This brilliant victory removed all obstacles from the way of the Spaniards. A few days after, they safely reached the friendly city of Tlascala, where a kind reception compensated for the innumerable hardships which they had hitherto endured, and prepared them for new and more decisive efforts against Mexico.

Cortez reinforces his army.—The attention of Cortez was constantly directed to the grand object his mind had previously in view; and difficulties rather increased than diminished his courage. Having granted his troops the repose which they needed, and given permission to reëmbark in the ships of Narvaez to those among his followers who were afraid of another expedition, he devoted all his time and care to the levying of a sufficient force. His good fortune, or rather Divine Providence, seconded his efforts beyond his expectation. Bands of brave soldiers, with arms and ammunition, successively came to him from different quarters of the Spanish settlements; the sulphur of a neighboring volcano enabled him to provide nearly as much gunpowder as might be wanted; thousands of the Tlascalans and other tribes in the neighborhood offered to assist him in the conquest of Mexico: and, there was found sufficient material to build as many brigantines, as would be necessary to secure the command of the lake by which the city was surrounded.

Siege of Mexico.—When all things were in readiness, Cortez, for the third time, approached the capital of the Mexicans, and commenced the regular operations of a siege. By his command, the attack was made under the direction of Sandoval, Olid, and Alvarado, at three different points along three causeways leading to the town. Each of these brave captains had under him thirty or forty thousand Indians, with two hundred Spaniards and two pieces of artillery. Cortez reserved to himself the attempt to gain possession of the lake, as being the object on the attainment of which the success of all their exertions chiefly depended. His penetrating mind hav-

* The interesting particulars of this battle may be seen in the Spanish historian Solis, *Conquista de la Nueva España, lib.* IV., *cap.* 20;—also in the English authors of *Univ. Hist. vol.* CXIV., *pp.* 354–357;—in La Harpe, *Abrégé de l'histoire des voyages, vol.* XIV., *pp.* 484–488; etc.

ing easily perceived that this was the surest way to conquer Mexico, he fitted out for this purpose a flotilla of thirteen brigantines, each of which had, besides sails, twelve Indian rowers, twenty-five Spanish soldiers with a captain at their head, and a piece of ordnance. Cortez selected for himself the swiftest of these vessels, that he might the more easily afford assistance wherever it should be needed.

The brigantines, in a single line, advanced across the lake towards Mexico. At some distance from the shore, a small island, or rather a large rock, on which was a castle defended by bodies of Indian troops, attracted the notice of the Spanish general. When he drew near, the Mexicans, believing their post to be inaccessible, loaded the Spaniards with insults and threats. Cortez thought that such insolence ought not to go unpunished, especially in the sight of the capital and in the presence of its inhabitants, who were observing from their balconies the movements of the European flotilla. He therefore landed, for a moment, with one hundred and fifty men, and the castle was assaulted at two different points with such vigor and success, that one part of the garrison fell by the sword, and the other was obliged to escape by swimming.

This easy triumph gave occasion to another of much greater importance. While Cortez and his troops were detained on the island the Mexicans had sufficient time to collect their canoes on the other side of the lake, to the number of at least four thousand, with which they advanced towards the enemy. This incredible number of boats, the movement of the waves, the glitter of the arms and ornaments of the Indians, presented a spectacle at once magnificent and terrific. Cortez however beheld it without the least emotion, and merely considered it as a warning to prepare for the combat; only, in order to oppose a broader front than before to the enemy, he now caused his ships to be drawn up in the form of a crescent. No sooner had he given the signal for the attack, than all the brigantines urged forward at the same time by the oars and by a favorable breeze, bore down upon the Indian boats with irresistible impetuosity, and, notwithstanding the gallant resistance of the Mexican chieftains threw them into a state of confusion more easily conceived than

described. Nor was the result for a moment doubtful, as the arms of the Spaniards, a favorable wind, and the very bulk of their vessels, gave them, from the beginning of the action, a decided superiority. Great numbers of the Indian canoes were broken to pieces by the artillery, sunk by coming in contact with the brigantines, or dashed against one another; the remainder, closely pursued by a victorious enemy, made a narrow escape.

Fall of the Mexican Empire.—This great naval victory made the Spaniards masters of the lake, and considerably hastened the capture of Mexico. The three divisions of the land army being now aided by their victorious fleet, gradually advanced along the causeways, and proceeded into the very streets of the imperial city, not, however, without terrible obstacles and several bloody conflicts, the Mexicans being occasionally successful in repelling the attacks of the besiegers, and disputing every inch of ground with incredible obstinacy. In these desperate encounters, the Indians were animated by the example of their young and brave emperor, Guatimozin, who had lately succeeded Quetlavaca, and who left nothing untried to save his country and empire. But the combined efforts of the sovereign and of his subjects served only to place in bolder relief the consummate abilities of the Spanish general. His measures were so well concerted, and the attack so admirably conducted by himself and his officers, that, in spite of every obstacle, the three divisions of the army reached the centre of Mexico nearly at the same time. The other parts of the city were soon forced to surrender; and, as the provinces quickly shared the fate, and followed the example of the capital, the capture of Mexico, in August, 1521, may be considered as the date of the downfall of the Mexican empire. The siege had lasted three months, and cost the lives of one hundred and fifty thousand Indians.

Guatimozin.—The emperor, with his court and family, had endeavored to escape but all were taken prisoners. The Spanish soldiery greatly disappointed in the amount of treasures which they had expected to obtain in the city, determined, in order to discover them, to put the unfortunate Guatimozin and his chief minister to the rack. That prince endured the torture with invincible constancy. Most historians relate that hearing his

fellow-sufferer complain, he turned to him and said: "And myself, am I on a bed of roses?" Cortez rescued him on this occasion, from the hands of the soldiery; But Guatimozin being afterwards accused of treason and conspiracy, was condemned and put to death about the year 1523. Thus perished the last emperor of Mexico.

Cortez' fate and death.—Cortez himself soon experienced the vicissitudes of fortune. The conquest of an empire at first acquired for him from Charles V. the honorable title of viceroy of the rich and extensive regions which he had subdued, and his indefatigable activity in extending his conquests entitled him more and more to honors and rewards. But he was doomed, like Columbus, to be the victim of envy. Twice was he obliged to cross the ocean, in order to vindicate himself and although he defended himself with success, he saw his authority gradually declining, until, through the influence of his enemies, it disappeared entirely. His great services now seemed to be forgotten; the conqueror of Mexico was treated with indifference by the court of Spain, and could scarcely obtain an audience from his sovereign. It is said that, as he one day made his way through the crowd which surrounded the carriage of the emperor, Charles asked him who he was: "I am," replied Cortez, "the man who gave more provinces to your majesty than you inherited towns from your ancestors." Finally, baffled in all his hopes of recovering his former dignities he retired to a little town near Seville, where he died at the age of sixty-two years (A.D. 1547).

The life of Cortez exhibits a variety of exploits so extraordinary, that, were it not for the testimony of the best historical documents, they would rather appear to exist only in the imagination. The burning of his fleet, after landing on unknown shores; his attack of a powerful empire with a handful of men; the capture of Montezuma in his own capital; the defeat of Narvaez; the victory of Otompan; the siege and capture of Mexico, with all their circumstances, present a serious of truly wonderful events —events almost unparalleled in the annals of history. Even amongst the greatest conquerors, few possessed, in as high a degree as Cortez, prudence in counsel, sagacity in his plans and measures, intrepidity in their execution, and energy in the severest trials. The greater

were the dangers and hardships to which he was exposed, the more did his courage, presence of mind and military genius appear. To these brilliant qualities was joined a religious mind; a sincere modesty, which made him think it no disgrace to ask for advice; constant probity and generosity, which gained him universal confidence and esteem; in fine, a dignified gravity in public, and an amiable kindness and good humor in social life.*

It is certain then, notwithstanding the envious and prejudiced attacks, that the conqueror of Mexico was every way deserving of the extraordinary success which attended his arms. If jealousy endeavored to depreciate his transcendent merit during life, justice openly proclaimed it after his death; and posterity will ever distinguish Hernando Cortez among the many eminent personages of whom Spain so justly boasts, as one of her most conspicuous heroes.

CONQUEST OF PERU.—FRANCIS PIZARRO. —A.D. 1524-1534.

THE same is to be said of the conqueror of Peru, Francis Pizarro, a man whose courage, energy, and magnanimity were not inferior to those of Cortez, though he had fewer occasions to display them on the field of battle. Having entered into a compact with Diego de Almagro, another intrepid adventurer, and collected a small band of followers, he sailed, in 1525, from Panama, and began to explore the shores of the Pacific ocean. His first at-

* It would be unjust to charge this hero with certain acts of cruelty committed during the Mexican war. He was perhaps too hasty in consenting, though he did so with reluctance and for fear of worse consequences, to the torture and execution of Guatimozin; but, whatever may have been the fury of some soldiers, all historians agree in praising the habitual moderation and generosity of Cortez. He waged, it is true, a terrible warfare against the Mexicans, but it should be remarked, first, that he did not commence hostilities until he had been treacherously and repeatedly attacked by them; in the second place, that, even in the midst of his victories, he frequently offered them peace, which they refused; and, finally, that he had to fight for the noble cause of humanity against enemies not less ferocious than implacable, and addicted to the barbarous custom of immolating human victims, to the number of at least twenty thousand every year. The abolishment of this monstrous custom was, on the authority of the ablest divines and civilians, Suarez, Grotius, etc., sufficient of itself to justify the military expedition of Cortez, and to render it a just and honorable enterprise.

tempts at discovery were attended with little success. A variety of obstacles, contrary winds, disease, and the like, often impeded his progress, and so discouraged his companions, that nearly the whole crew once abandoned him and returned to Panama, not more than thirteen hardy men consenting to remain with him upon a desert coast, until he should receive a fresh supply of soldiers and provisions. By his persevering efforts, he succeeded, under the sanction of the Spanish government, in collecting a body of about two hundred men, by the beginning of the year 1531. With fresh ardor he advanced into the very heart of Peru, an extensive monarchy governed by sovereigns called *Incas*, and the richest then known country in the world for mines of gold and silver.

Conquest of Peru.—The Peruvians were not less awed than the other nations of America, by the sight of men mounted upon formidable animals, and carrying thunder in their hands. The whole country was divided at that time into two hostile parties headed by the late Inca's sons, who had just made an appeal to arms for the decision of their quarrel concerning the succession to the throne. Huascar, the elder, was at first victorious: but being afterwards defeated, he fell into the hands of his younger brother, Atabaliba, who committed great cruelties on this occasion. Both princes were anxious to secure the protection of the strangers, and Pizarro did not fail to take advantage of circumstances so favorable to his views. Concealing his real designs, he marched on to meet the usurper, and, after some useless conferences, so vigorously attacked the Peruvian troops, whose number amounted to upwards of thirty thousand men, that four thousand of them were killed, and the others dispersed, without the loss of a single soldier on the side of the Spaniards. The proud monarch was made prisoner, and, being soon tired of his captivity, he offered for his ransom to fill up with pieces and vessels of gold a room twenty-two feet long and seventeen broad, as high as his hand could reach, and double that quantity of silver. The stipulated sum was paid to the Spaniards: still Atabaliba did not recover his liberty; but on charges of treason, and also as a punishment for his brother's murder, he was put to death in the year 1533.

Foundation of Lima—Pizarro's death.—The two principal cities of Peru, Quito and Cusco, surrendered to the Spaniards, with scarcely any show of resistance (A.D. 1534). The rest of the empire was also subdued in a short time; and, the better to secure its allegiance, Pizarro founded, at a short distance from the sea, the rich and celebrated city of Lima. Unfortunately, obstinate and bloody quarrels began to arise among the conquerors themselves about the partition of their conquest. Pizarro prevailed for a time over the party of his opponents: but, disdaining to credit a reported conspiracy against him, he finally became its victim. On the twenty-sixth of June (A.D. 1541), he was suddenly attacked in his palace at Lima, by a crowd of vile assassins, who, in their fury, made the air resound with the cry, *away with the tyrant.* His friends and servants being either killed or dispersed, he remained alone, without betraying the least sign of fear. Surrounded as he was by murderers, he defended himself with heroic courage, killed some of the assailants, wounded others, and at last, having himself received a mortal wound, fell and expired in the midst of them, while recommending his soul to his Creator.

Chili and Paraguay become Spanish; Brazil, Portuguese.—Such was the deplorable end of one of the most illustrious conquerors of the New World; of one, to whose undaunted valor and invincible courage, Spain was indebted for the subjugation of the Peruvian empire, and Charles V. for the invaluable mines of Potosi. After his death, civil wars continued to desolate Peru, until the chief leaders of the first expedition had all disappeared. It was only in 1548 that the virtuous governor Pedro de la Gasca succeeded, by his consummate prudence, in terminating these wars, and in establishing the Spanish government on a permanent basis in that enviable country. The Spaniards acquired also, about the same time, the extensive territories of Chili and Paraguay; and the Portuguese profited by their example, to form valuable settlements along the coasts of Brazil.

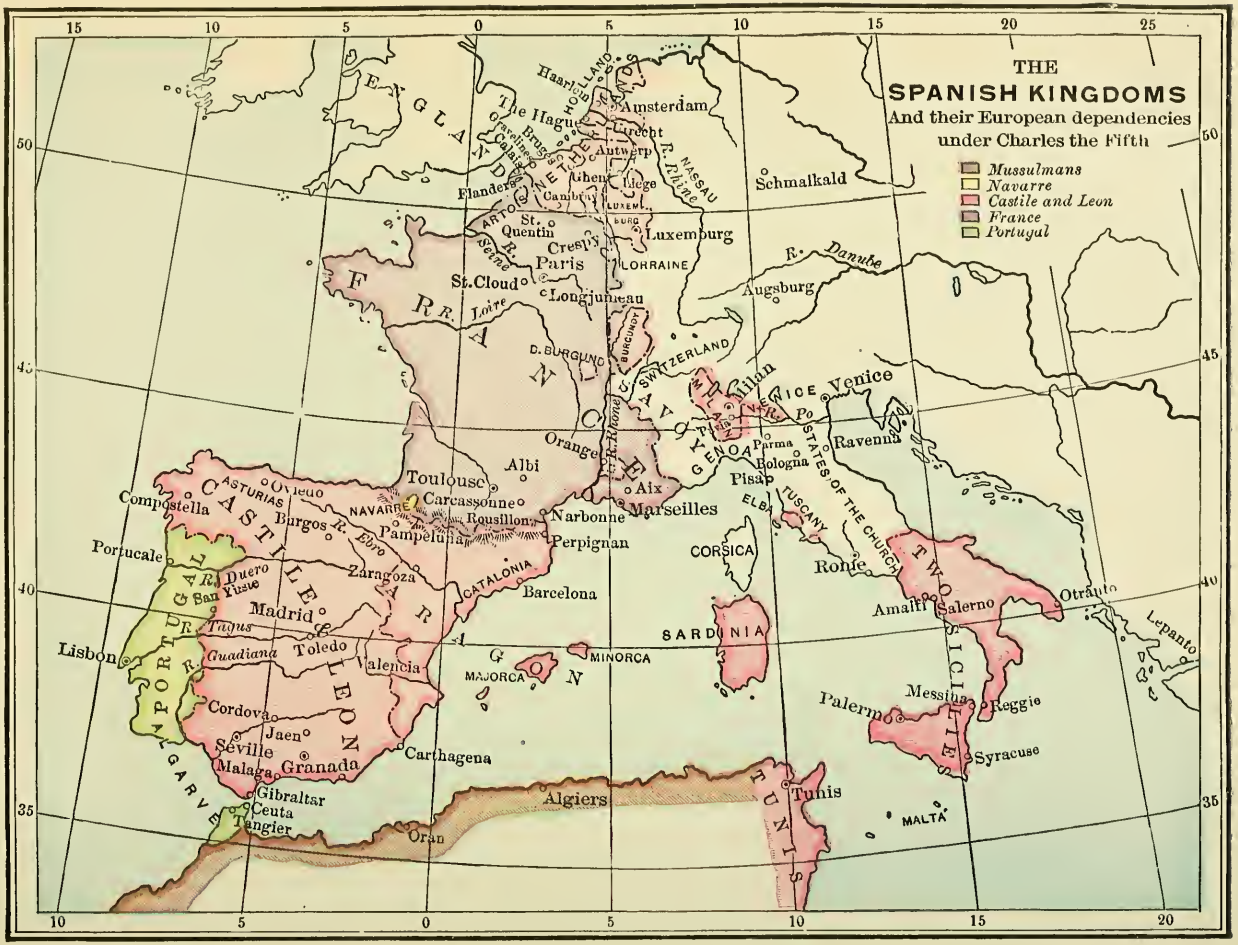
CHARLES V. CONTINUED — ACCESSION OF PHILIP II. AND FIRST TRANSACTIONS OF HIS REIGN.—A.D. 1535-1559.

While the empire of Charles V. was thus increasing abroad to an immense extent, that prince continued to astonish Europe by the display of his military and political talents. War having been renewed between him and Francis I., Charles generally maintained the superiority which he had previously acquired; still, when he attempted, in 1536, to invade France at the head of formidable forces, he was compelled to retire with considerable loss.

Charles V.'s expedition against Tunis.—The year before, the emperor had undertaken an expedition into Africa, for the purpose of checking the alarming progress of Barbarossa, a famous pirate chieftain. Having met him near Tunis, he defeated him in a great battle, took the city and rescued from twenty to thirty thousand Christian slaves. Another expedition of the same kind, directed against Algiers, in 1541, was far from obtaining the same success: dreadful storms both on sea and land destroyed half of the emperor's fleet and army and obliged him quickly to depart from those perilous shores. So unfortunate a result was the more painful to Charles, as he had conceived and followed up the project of conquering Algiers, contrary to the advice of the celebrated admiral Andrew Doria, and other able generals. However, throughout that series of disasters, he evinced such courage, firmness, magnanimity, and above all, so tender a solicitude for his distressed soldiers, as fully to atone for the partial loss which his reputation for prudence and his military glory had sustained.

Battle of Muhlberg.—The same alternation of success and misfortune accompanied him in his wars against the Protestant princes of Germany. He signally defeated them at Mühlberg (A.D. 1547), but they recovered from this blow, and continued to give him considerable trouble till the year 1552, when an agreement was entered into by both parties.

Abdication of Charles V.—His death.—After having been thus long the chief potentate of Europe, after


THE
SPANISH KINGDOMS
And their European dependencies
under Charles the Fifth
Mussulmans
Navarre
Castile and Leon
France
Portugal
ENGLAND
The Hague
Amsterdam
Utrecht
Antwerp
Brussels
Ghent
Liege
Flanders
Cambray
Schmalkald
Luxemburg
St. Quentin
Crespy
Paris
LORRAINE
St. Cloud
Longjumeau
Augsburg
R. Danube
R. Loire
R. Seine
FRANCE
D. BURGUNDY
SWITZERLAND
Milan
Venice
Genoa
Parma
Bologna
Ravenna
Pisa
Orange
Albi
Toulouse
Aix
Marseilles
Narbonne
Perpignan
Carcassonne
Rousillon
Pampelunar
NAVARRE
Oviedo
ASTURIAS
Compostella
Burgos
R. Ebro
Portucale
R. Duero
R. Douro
Zaragoza
CATALONIA
Barcelona
Madrid
R. Tagus
Guadiana
Toledo
Valencia
Lisbon
PORTUGAL
CASTILE
LEON
ALGARVE
MINORCA
MAJORCA
SARDINIA
CORSICA
ELBA
TUSCANY
STATES OF THE CHURCH
Rome
Amalfi
Salerno
Otranto
Lepanto
TWO SICILIES
Palermo
Messina
Reggio
Syracuse
Cordova
Jaen
Seville
Malaga
Granada
Carthagena
Gibraltar
Ceuta
Tangier
Algiers
Oran
Tunis
TUNIS
MALTA
10
5
0
5
10
15
20
25
50
45
40
35

having filled the whole world with the fame of his glorious achievements, this mighty emperor abandoned all earthly grandeur for an obscure and private life. He left the imperial dignity to his brother Ferdinand, resigned the Spanish crown with all its colonies and foreign dominions to his son Philip, and retired into a monastery of Hieronymites in Spain (A.D. 1556). In that peaceful abode he lived two years, dividing his time between spiritual exercises and innocent employments. The manner in which he closed his mortal career was as extraordinary as his life. Stretching himself in a coffin, he had the funeral rites performed, and after the ceremony, retired, in a state of deep melancholy, to his apartments, where he was seized with a violent fever, and died on the twenty-first of September, in the fifty-eighth year of his age. His reign, together with that of his grandfather Ferdinand and that of his son Philip, undoubtedly forms the most brilliant part of the history of Spain.

The famous rival of Charles, Francis I., had descended before him into the grave: he was succeeded by Henry II., a prince equal to his father as well in bravery as in his determined opposition to the house of Austria. This hostile feeling Henry II. had often evinced during the emperor's life; it was revived in the beginning of Philip's reign. Accordingly France and Spain continued to be engaged in war against each other under their new sovereigns; and, in consequence of the marriage of Philip II. with the English queen Mary, England interfered in favor of the Spanish monarch.

War between France and Spain—The battle of St. Quentin.—In the year 1557, the war assumed a most serious aspect. The confederates, amounting to seventy thousand, under the command of the duke of Savoy, invaded the French territory, and laid siege to St. Quentin, a town of Picardy defended only by a handful of soldiers. Then the Constable de Montmorency, at the head of an army of thirty thousand men, undertook to relieve the place, and really succeeded in reinforcing the garrison ; but, not retiring in time he was overtaken by superior forces, and compelled to engage in a very unequal contest. His defeat was complete; his cavalry fled; five thousand of the infantry were killed or wounded; whereas the Spaniards did not lose more than eighty

men, and several thousand among the vanquished, together with their chief officers, the constable himself, eighty-eight banners, and all the artillery and baggage, fell into the hands of the conquerors.

Calais retaken by the French.—The battle of St. Quentin might have proved the downfall of the French monarchy, had the conquerors pursued their advantage without delay. They wasted their time in taking some inconsiderable towns, until the autumnal rains obliged them to retire beyond the frontier. Henry improved the happy circumstance, by speedily mustering new forces, which enabled him, in the very next campaign, not only to stand upon the defensive, but even to attack with success. The duke of Guise, a general justly renowned for having a few years before compelled the emperor Charles to abandon the siege of Metz, was now placed at the head of the army, with the title of lieutenant-general of the kingdom. His prudence and valor fully justified the confidence reposed in him. After deceiving the allies by a skilful march, he suddenly appeared before Calais, and attacked it so vigorously, that this famous town, hitherto considered impregnable, was taken after a siege of eight days. It had been during two hundred and ten years in the power of the English, who lost with it their last possession on the continent (A.D. 1558).

The peace of Cateau-Cambresis.—At the news of this event, so unexpected, and, under existing circumstances. so glorious for France, all nations admired the vigor of her national spirit and the extent of her resources. No later than the ensuing year, a treaty was concluded between Philip and Henry, in virtue of which they restored to each other nearly all their late conquests; but Calais, with some other places, remained in the possession of the French. This loss sustained by the English, naturally leads us to mention the other great events, both civil and religious, which took place in England under the government of the Tudors.

ENGLAND UNDER THE TUDORS. —A.D. 1509-1588.

Henry VIII., 1509–1547.—After the prosperous reign of the first Tudor, Henry VII., the English sceptre passed, in 1509, into the hands of his son, the famous

Henry VIII. For the space of about twenty years, the new monarch enjoyed a great reputation, and increased the glory of his kingdom, by a wise administration at home, owing chiefly to the abilities of his prime minister, Cardinal Wolsey, and by brilliant success abroad, in his wars against the French and the Scots. A vile passion which he would not restrain, transformed him into a despicable prince and a cruel tyrant. Wishing to repudiate his lawful wife, Catherine of Arragon, for the purpose of contracting another marriage with Anne Boleyn, a lady of his court, he applied to Pope Clement VII. to obtain a dispensation; but it was refused as opposed to the divine law. The dissolute monarch, disregarded the refusal; and not content with marrying Anne Boleyn, he, in his anger, disavowed the papal jurisdiction in his kingdom, and assumed himself spiritual supremacy over the English Church (A.D. 1534). From that time, he made his own will the only rule to be followed in Church and State; persecuted both Catholics and Protestants; and spared neither his wives nor his most illustrious subjects, such as Bishop Fisher and Chancellor More, who were put to death for refusing to admit the assumed power, and to obey the wicked orders of the tyrant. This unhappy prince died in 1547.

Edward VI., 1547-1553.—Under his son and successor, young Edward VI., and by the exertions of the regent, the duke of Somerset, the Protestant doctrine became the religion of England.

Mary the Catholic, 1553-1558.—Mary, the eldest daughter of Henry VIII., reëstablished the Catholic worship in 1554; but, in 1559, it was again discarded by her sister Elizabeth, who founded the Church of England as it now exists. Mary, exasperated by the revolts which disturbed her reign, had treated the Protestants with great rigor; Elizabeth, without having any such cause, treated the Catholics with still greater severity, and, under the influence of unprincipled ministers, framed the first of those oppressive statutes which disgraced English legislation for nearly three centuries, and have in particular weighed so heavily upon Catholic Ireland.

Elizabeth, 1558-1603.—Two other events of remarkable importance contributed to render the reign of Elizabeth forever famous in a double point of view.

Death of Mary Stuart.—The first was the death of the queen of Scotland, Mary Stuart, on the scaffold, in 1587. This unfortunate princess, persecuted with inveterate hatred by an unnatural brother, and other enemies of her faith, her authority and her person, had been obliged to seek a refuge in England, where, instead of an asylum, she found a dreary prison. After eighteen years of confinement, she was brought to a trial to which history affords no parallel, and, upon a variety of slanderous and atrocious charges, was condemned to capital punishment, which she suffered at the age of forty-two, with truly Christian fortitude. All Europe shuddered with horror at the crime of her enemies; and Elizabeth endeavored in vain, by affected tears, to wipe away the foul stain forever imprinted on her own character by this deed of darkness.

The other event alluded to, and which, in a political point of view, did great honor to the English queen, was her triumph over all the maritime forces of Spain. Before this, she had, by proper and constant encouragement, placed her own navy on a respectable footing. The famous admiral Drake successively attacked the coasts of San Domingo, Florida, Peru, and Chili, laid waste the Spanish settlements, and each time returned loaded with rich booty. Afterwards, he attacked the coast of Spain itself, and captured or destroyed eighty vessels in the harbor of Cadiz.

Defeat of the Spanish Armada.—These attacks were too flagrant and too often repeated, not to provoke open hostilities from Philip II. After patiently suffering them for a time, he prepared at immense expense, a formidable fleet for the invasion and subjugation of England. It was called the *Invincible Armada,* and consisted of one hundred and fifty enormous vessels, carrying nearly three thousand cannon, with numerous troops and the flower of the Spanish chivalry. Nothing was spared to secure the success of the expedition; England trembled at the approach of this powerful armament: but she was soon relieved from her fears by the intrepidity and skill of her admirals. They carefully shunned a general action, confining themselves to partial engagements, in which they were always successful. After the Spaniards had suffered various losses by this mode of war-

fare, a multitude of incidents aided the exertions of the English, and a series of violent storms completed the defeat of the Armada (A.D. 1588).

The loss of the Spaniards in this unhappy expedition was astonishing; but it produced not the least effect upon Philip, who received the disastrous intelligence with as much tranquillity as he would have done that of a signal triumph. "I had," said he, "sent my fleet to fight against the English, and not against the winds. Let the will of God be done. I thank Him that He has given me so many resources to repair this disaster."

WAR AGAINST THE TURKS. — SIEGE OF MALTA. — LOSS OF CYPRUS. — BATTLE OF LEPANTO. — A.D. 1560-1571.

We may now revert to the affairs of the Turks, and to their new efforts against the Christian nations. At the time when Philip II. began to rule over Spain, Soliman, the conqueror of Rhodes and Belgrade, was still seated on the throne of Constantinople. A war having arisen between these two mighty sovereigns for the possession of Tripoli in Africa, a great naval battle was fought in 1560, in which the Turks were completely victorious. This success emboldened Soliman to undertake other conquests; and resentment urged him to attack once more the knights of St. John, the greatest enemies of his power, and to drive them, if possible, from the new residence which the liberality of Charles V. had conferred on their Order. Accordingly, an army composed of forty thousand choice troops, under the command of three able generals, Mustapha, Piali and Dragut, was landed in 1565 on the shores of Malta, and immediately began a siege which, from the uninterrupted vigor of the attack and defence during the space of four months, may be reckoned the most memorable event of this kind recorded in history.

Siege of Malta.—The number of the knights and soldiers in the whole island did not exceed nine or ten thousand men; but the Grand-Master, John Parisot de la Valette, was a host in himself. This worthy successor of Peter d'Aubusson and Villiers de l'Isle-Adam, had, like them, a mind incapable of fear even amidst the greatest

dangers, wonderful prudence and ability much improved by experience, and intrepid valor constantly animated by religious and patriotic principles. The plan which he adopted from the beginning of the siege, and which he followed up with unshaken constancy, was to defend, by the most vigorous exertions, every fort, every post, every inch of ground, against all the efforts of the Turks, hoping in this manner so to harass them and diminish their numbers, as finally to compel them to evacuate the island.

Its wonderful defence.—In consequence of this noble determination, sharp skirmishes daily took place, retarding the progress of the assailants. A little fort, called St. Elmo, stopped their whole army for several weeks; nor could they take it except by sacrificing eight thousand of their bravest warriors; which made one of their greatest generals exclaim: "If the son has given us so much trouble, what must we expect from the father!" The garrison of that fort, composed of a few knights and some hundred soldiers, exhibited a spectacle never seen before. They not only repelled the continual assaults of the Janizaries, as long as succor could be sent to them by the Grand Master; but even when all communication was cut off, and when they were reduced to a small band, they continued, though wounded and scarcely able to move, to defend the breach against thousands of assailants. As loss of blood and complete exhaustion did not permit some of them any longer to fight standing and with one hand only, they sat upon chairs and benches, and, wielding their swords with both hands, fought to their last breath. Fort St. Elmo was not taken, till after the death of all the knights who had generously devoted themselves to its defence.

Still more awful and bloody was the struggle, when directed against the principal forts of the island, and against the town in which most of the knights resided. Desperate courage on the one side, undaunted intrepidity on the other, daily made the ramparts of Malta a theatre of unparalleled feats of arms. The energy of the Grand-Master seemed to have been transfused into the souls of his brave companions, and the valor of the knights to have communicated itself to all the inhabitants; and such was the admiration which the spectacle of their

noble heroism excited, that all classes of the people wished to partake in their glorious exploits. Thus, on one occasion, a band of some hundred boys, with their slings, greatly contributed to repel a furious assault; on another, two sailors contrived the best measure to defeat one of the most dangerous attacks of the infields. Persons of every age and condition labored day and night in repairing the walls, or making new intrenchments, without being frightened by the scenes of carnage, or by the sight of the dead and of the dying. Even females, forgetting their usual timidity, went forward to help their fathers, husbands, or sons, and fearlessly appearing upon the breach, threw upon the assailants boiling water and oil, melted pitch, fire-works, and even large stones, which they would not have been able to move in any other circumstance.

Incidents of the siege.—As to the Grand-Master, besides continually watching every motion of the enemy, and properly directing all the efforts of the besieged, he seemed to multiply himself, in order to be present at every attack. The imminent danger of death, which he braved a thousand times, never caused him any fear or disturbance. Having, in one of the assaults, received a deep wound, he generously disregarded it, and continued fighting until the Turks were repelled. At another time, his nephew, a brave knight, whom he very tenderly loved, was killed at a short distance from him; La Valette contented himself with saying: "To-morrow we shall have time to weep for the loss of my nephew; let us now avenge his death, by forcing our enemies to fly." Being told that Mustapha, the commander-in-chief of the Turks, had sworn to put all the knights to the sword, and preserve the Grand-Master alone, to bring him before the sultan, "I will prevent him from doing that," coolly replied La Valette: "if, contrary to my expectation, the result of the siege should prove fatal to us, rather than suffer myself to be taken prisoner, I would put on the dress of a common soldier, throw myself into the thickest ranks of the enemy, and fight until a glorious death should unite me to my brethren."

This noble intrepidity, ably seconded by the undaunted courage of the knights, and the Maltese soldiers, could scarcely fail to be crowned at last with full success.

Yet, the Turks were not dispirited; and for a long time they seemed to derive new strength and ardor from their very defeats, their shame at not having hitherto been able to subdue a handful of warriors making them perform prodigies of valor. Besides having recourse to the ordinary modes of warfare, they every day invented new engines to annoy the besieged. Sometimes, by means of powerful machines, they threw barrels filled with gunpowder and case shot, so prepared as to burst upon the ramparts and spread death among their foes. On other occasions, they pushed forward to the walls wooden towers, from the tops of which their musketeers might, with deadly aim, shoot down every human being that appeared upon the ramparts. The besieged, on their side, were active in their endeavors to prevent the effects of these murderous machines, either destroying them by the brisk fire of their artillery, or even turning them against their very contrivers. It was an awful spectacle to see the fatal barrels, before they had time to burst, hurled back upon the assailants, the wooden towers dashed in pieces, the ladders broken, and numbers of Janizaries crushed to death at the foot of the ramparts.

Raising of the siege.—Not only did Mustapha, in these daily conflicts, lose many of his bravest soldiers, he had moreover the most gloomy prospect before him. Instead of reducing the inhabitants of Malta by famine, as he had for a time, hoped to do, he began to feel the want of provisions and ammunition in his own camp. He moreover supposed the defenders of the besieged places to be much more numerous than they really were; and concluding that it was quite useless to continue the attack against the maritime forts, he turned his efforts against the city called *Notable*, the capital of the whole island. Here also his hopes were entirely frustrated. In his perplexity, he resolved to resume the operations of the former siege; when a body of troops, which had been promised by the king of Spain, at length arrived from Sicily. Although it consisted of only seven thousand men, this number was sufficient to raise the siege. Despondency and consternation had already begun to spread among the Turks; panic and despair succeeded; and, after a single powerless discharge of musketry, they hastily fled to the shore and reëmbarked for Constantinople.

An end was thus put to the harassing and sanguinary conflict. At the arrival of the auxiliary troops and the departure of the enemy, there remained, in the residence of the knights, not more than six hundred men able to bear arms, and even most of that number had received many wounds. The Spanish and Sicilian allies could not refrain from tears at the sight of these truly invincible but disfigured and emaciated warriors; their beards and hair were in a dreadful state; their garments, owing to the length of time they had worn them, were falling to pieces, and covered with dust and gore. It was impossible, at such a spectacle, not to mingle lively feelings of compassion with the transports of joy caused by so happy a deliverance. In order to transmit to posterity an authentic memorial of these surprising events, the small town, around which so many exploits had been achieved, received the appellation of *victorious city*, which it still retains.

Foundation of La Valette.—A great and truly noble object now occupied the mind of La Valette. In consequence of the furious siege just ended, most of the houses and fortifications were destroyed, the cannon were demolished or greatly damaged, the stores and arsenals were without ammunition, the coffers without money, the forts without sufficient garrisons, and those parts of the country which had been the theatre of the war, almost without inhabitants; in a word, Malta was in such a state of desolation, that the bravest knights lost all hope of ever seeing it recover its former prosperity, and expressed a desire that Sicily should be selected as the residence of the Order. But the Grand-Master, who, even in the utmost distress, had never consented to yield anything, was much less willing now to abandon that glorious soil so well fitted to produce new laurels. All the Christian princes applauded his magnanimous sentiments, and readily assisted him in carrying out his views. Having therefore chosen a favorable spot, he laid the foundation of a new city, meant to be the principal seat of the Order of St. John; and the work was prosecuted with so much diligence and activity, as to be nearly completed in the space of five years. The city took the name of her illustrious founder, La Valette, and being protected both by nature and art, was deservedly reputed the strongest place in Europe.

Invasion of Hungary.—The intelligence of his army's defeat threw Soliman into a paroxysm of rage; he trampled under foot the letter of his general, and swore vengeance against the Christians. He however thought it prudent not to attack again the heroes of Malta, preferring to attack the Christian islands of the Archipelago. Afterwards, the indefatigable sultan led his Janizaries, for the fourth time, into Hungary (A.D. 1566). The storm at this period burst upon Szigeth a small, but well fortified town, whose brave garrison of three thousand men, and its intrepid commander, Count Nicolas Zriny, bound themselves by a solemn oath, if they could not conquer, at least to die together in defence of their religion and their country. Never was there a generous promise better and more resolutely fulfilled. For the space of two months, they successfully resisted an army of one hundred and fifty thousand Turks, destroying upwards of thirty thousand of the foremost among the assailants. At last, finding their own number reduced to two hundred and fifty, they threw open the gates of the fortress, and rushed into the midst of the Janizaries, where they all fell while fighting with desperate courage; only two soldiers, who were left for dead on the field of battle, afterwards recovered from their wounds. Thus Szigeth fell under the power of the Turks, but not until it had become, as it were, a heap of ruins, without anyone left to defend it any longer. Soliman had not the satisfaction of seeing the end of that destructive siege; his disappointment, roused to fury by so obstinate a resistance; brought on an attack of apoplexy, of which he died three days before the last conflict. As, however, the ultimate result was the consequence of his exertions, the capture of Szigeth may be justly accounted one of the exploits, and the last, but dearly-bought victory of that renowned sultan.

Soliman II.'s character.—Although implicit credit should not be given to all the encomiums bestowed on Soliman by the Turkish writers, since various instances of cruelty and restless ambition are found in his life, which are a stain on his memory; still it must be confessed that his reign was at least one of the most brilliant and successful of the Ottoman dynasty. This prince nearly equalled Charles V., his contemporary, in activity, prudence and warlike genius. A famous conqueror and a great general in the field, he was also an able politician

and a wise legislator at home; he left behind him many useful works; he embellished Constantinople, built a powerful navy, protected learning, and, by his munificence, justice, and liberality, not only secured the respect of his Mohammedan subjects, but even on many occasions was an object of admiration to the Christians themselves.

Cyprus taken by the Turks under Selim II.—Selim II., who succeeded Soliman on the Turkish throne, did not possess the military qualities of most of his predecessors, and yet successfully carried on their plan of aggrandizement and conquest. Looking with a jealous eye at the rich island of Cyprus, then in the possession of the Venetians, he equipped a numerous fleet and army, in order to bring it under his power. The greater part of the country surrendered without opposition, Nicosia and Famagusta being the only places that ventured to sustain a siege. The former was taken at the expiration of seven weeks; the latter held out four months, during which the Turks lost, it is said, forty thousand men, and were obliged to fire one hundred and fifty thousand cannon balls. They sullied their victory by shocking cruelties, and the defenders of Cyprus expiated in tortures the *guilt* of their vigorous resistance. Above all, the wrath of the infidels was visited upon the intrepid commander of Famagusta, Marc Antony Bragadino, whose heroism on that occasion will be remembered by the remotest posterity. This great man, having been, contrary to the terms of the capitulation, carried into captivity, experienced the most barbarous treatment from the Turkish general, Mustapha, and was finally flayed alive, without betraying the least symptom of pain, but piously reciting the fiftieth psalm, until he expired in the hands of the executioner.

Pope Pius V. forms a league against the Turks.—This barbarity of the Turks roused the indignation, while their increasing power excited the fears, of Christendom. To avert the danger which threatened at once religion and civilization in Europe, Pope Pius V. exerted all his faculties, authority and zeal. He, on the one hand, by letters and embassies, formed a powerful league, consisting of his own states, the kingdom of Spain and the republic of Venice; on the other hand, he endeavored to secure victory to their cause by fervent supplications,

and by ordering the dismissal from the Christian host of all persons whose vices and immorality might provoke the wrath of heaven. This being done, the combined fleet, consisting of about two hundred and forty vessels, under the command of Don John of Austria, a half brother to Philip II., went in search of the Turkish fleet which was still more numerous. The belligerent parties came in sight in the gulf of Lepanto; and close to the same spot where Octavius and Anthony had formerly contended for the Roman empire, were the Christians and the Mussulmans now about to fight for the possession of Europe.

Battle of Lepanto.—The seventh of October, 1571, witnessed one of the most terrible naval battles recorded in history. For several hours the conflict all along the line was awful, and victory uncertain. At length the persevering courage of the confederates, the intrepidity of Don John and other generals, their superior skill in naval and military tactics, and a strong and favorable breeze which arose just at the beginning of the battle and carried clouds of smoke towards the Turks gave the Christians a decisive victory. The fierce Ottomans lost in that memorable action thirty-five thousand soldiers, with their admiral and chief officers, fifteen thousand Christian slaves, about two hundred and fifty men-of-war and galleys, three hundred and seventy-two large guns, and an immense quantity of stores with which their vessels were loaded.*

So signal an overthrow everywhere spread terror and dismay among the Turks, particularly in Constantinople; whereas the victory of the confederates filled the Christian world with exultation. In Rome, Toledo, and other places, it was celebrated with extraordinary rejoicings; the Venetians, above all, manifested their enthusiasm by forbidding any one to mourn for the loss of those who had perished in the glorious conflict. The conquerors, it is true, did not know how to pursue and follow up their victory as well as might have been expected; yet, it can-

* A more detailed account of the battle of Lepanto may be found in *Univers. Hist. vol.* LX;—Mignot, *Hist. de l'Empire Ottoman* (*reign of Selim* II.);—*Hist. du Bas-Empire, continuée par Ameilhon, vol.* XXVII;—also in the Eccles. historians, Berault-Bercastel and Fleury, or rather his continuator, *ad ann.* 1571; and Alban Butler's *Life of St. Pius V.*, under the fifth of May, with the notes.

not be denied that its result was of immense advantage, since it proved not only a check to the progress of the Ottomans, but was also the beginning of their decline, at least as a maritime power.

PHILIP II. CONTINUED.—THE REPUBLIC OF HOLLAND.—FRANCE UNDER THE LAST VALOIS AND HENRY IV.—GENERAL STATE OF EUROPE IN THE BEGINNING OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.—A.D. 1566-1618.

War of liberation in the Netherlands.—The prosecution of the Turkish war did not occupy the whole attention of Philip II.; he was also, during the same period, and for many years after, engaged in hostilities against Holland. That country, which had been dependent on Spain ever since the accession of Charles V. began openly to shake off the yoke in 1566, under the pretence of political and religious tyranny. Neither the severity of the duke of Alva, nor the abilities of Don John, nor the heroic qualities of Alexander Farnese, duke of Parma, could reëstablish in it the Spanish rule; and, in spite both of conferences and arms, the republic of Holland, or of the Seven United Provinces, namely Holland, Zealand, Utrecht, Gelderland, Gröningen, Friesland and Overyssel, was proclaimed in 1581. It rapidly increased during the first part of the following century; and, by uniting an active spirit of trade and maritime enterprise with great military skill and numerous exploits on land, it acquired such prosperity, wealth, and power, as frequently to counterbalance the influence of the mightiest sovereigns of Europe. However, it was not universally acknowledged as a free and independent state before the year 1648, in the treaty of Westphalia.

Battle of Alkassor—Loss of Portuguese independence.—The Spanish monarch was more successful in his expedition against Portugal. Not long before, under the reign of Emmanuel and John III., this kingdom had reached the height of opulence and glory. One single act of imprudence on the part of the young king Don Sebastian, in 1578, caused it not only to fall from the high rank which it held among European nations, but even to lose for a time its independence. Contrary to

the advice of his wisest counsellors, that impetuous monarch obstinately persisted in making an expedition against some princes in Africa. A battle was fought, in which he displayed surprising valor, but finally met with a complete overthrow: the Portuguese troops were cut to pieces, and he himself disappeared, and was never seen afterwards. As he left no issue, the crown of Portugal was claimed by many competitors, who prepared to support their pretensions by recourse to law, or by force of arms; but Philip of Spain, who was beyond comparison the most powerful of all the aspirants to the throne, overcame his rivals. Portugal was subdued in one campaign, and, with its numerous settlements in other parts of the globe, remained annexed to the Spanish monarchy during sixty years, viz.: from 1580 to 1640, when a sudden and successful revolution restored it to its native princes.

By the addition of Portugal and its colonies to his hereditary dominions, Philip II. became the sovereign of the most extensive monarchy that had hitherto existed. Several countries of Europe and Asia, and nearly all the regions of America until then discovered obeyed his laws; hence he used to say, and with truth, that the sun never set on his dominions. Nor was his mind unequal to the task of regulating so vast and so complicated a machine. He was continually watching over the different provinces of his amazing monarchy, there being no department of the public administration with which he was not familiarly acquainted, no affair of importance to which he did not personally attend, no minister of state, no general of his army, whose public conduct he did not diligently observe, in order to keep all within the bounds of duty.

France until the reign of Henry IV.—Philip moreover exercised a considerable influence over the other states of Europe, particularly France; he even cherished for a long time the hope of placing one of his children upon the French throne. That kingdom, after the vigorous reign of Henry II., had fallen into a deplorable state under his weak successors, Francis II., Charles IX., and Henry III., owing chiefly to an almost uninterrupted series of civil wars between the Catholics, who wished to maintain the ancient faith, and the Huguenots or Calvinists, who were anxious to establish their own religious

system. The evil was increased, in 1572, by the massacre on St. Bartholomew's day, in which many hundred Protestants were, by an act of cruel retaliation, sacrificed to the resentment and vengeance of the court.* At the death of Henry III., who fell by the sword of an assassin in 1589, Philip II. endeavored, by every means in his power, to exclude the nearest heir, Henry of Bourbon and Navarre, who was a Protestant, from a throne which had always been occupied by Catholic monarchs; but the many victories of Henry, enhanced by his truly royal qualities, and finally his return to the Catholic Church,† baffled the projects and frustrated the hopes of the Spanish sovereign. All obstacles were removed in 1595, and the king of Navarre, the head of the Bourbon family, was universally acknowledged king of France under the name of Henry IV.; a name, notwithstanding the individual frailties of the monarch, ever to be held in grateful remembrance for the return of happiness and prosperity which it secured to this long afflicted kingdom.

Death of Philip II.—In the mean time, Philip II., worn down by age, infirmity, and toil, was called from this world, and left his immense possessions to his son Philip III. His last moments, amidst the acute pains of a complication of diseases, more and more manifested that firmness and energy of character which he had so frequently displayed during his long career. He died, after a reign of forty-two years, on the thirteenth of September (A.D. 1598). Five years later, the famous queen of England, Elizabeth, also departed this life, and was succeeded by the son of the unfortunate Mary Stuart, James of Scotland, who was really the nearest heir to the British throne, when the posterity of Henry VIII. became extinct by the death of Elizabeth. Being the first who reigned over the united kingdoms of England, Ire-

---

* See Note N.

† The conversion of Henry IV. was not, as the infidel Voltaire presumed to assert, owing to political and interested motives, but the fruit of doctrinal conferences held in his presence. Having asked the Protestant divines whether he could be saved in the Catholic religion, and being answered in the affirmative, he concluded that it was undoubtedly the safer step to become a Catholic. He immediately began to act up to this conclusion; and, from that time, never ceased to evince the most sincere and strongest attachment to the faith which he had embraced.

land and Scotland, James, on that account, took the title of *King of Great Britain.*

Preponderance of the power of Austria.—Under these new and pacific sovereigns, Europe, generally speaking, enjoyed profound peace during the first part of the seventeenth century. Still, a violent storm was preparing against the house of Austria, whose preponderance destroyed, in the opinion of many, the necessary equilibrium among the monarchs of Europe. It was the desire of the neighboring princes, and particularly of the French king, to weaken her power, and great preparations were already made for that purpose, when Henry IV. fell by the poniard of a base assassin, on the fourteenth of May, in the year 1610.

Henry IV.'s popularity in France.—This tragical event delayed for a time the project of the confederates, and plunged France into the deepest affliction. At the news of Henry's death, all labor ceased; commerce was interrupted; in the towns, especially in the capital, nothing was heard but sobs and lamentations, and country people were seen to shed torrents of tears, thus testifying their gratitude for the truly paternal affection which the good king had always manifested for this class of his subjects. It was his wish that they could have a fowl to eat every Sunday, and his delight to talk with them about their toils, their profits and losses, and even their smallest concerns. In a word, to promote the happiness of his people may truly be said to have been his predominant passion; hence we need not wonder that he won the love of the French nation and the admiration of all ages and countries. Even at present, the name of Henry IV. reminds every one of a gracious, mild and beneficent king, who rendered himself still more commendable for the generosity of his feelings than for all his other princely and royal qualities.

THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR.—A.D. 1618-1648.

The intended war against the Austrian family, which had been postponed on account of the death of Henry IV., at length broke out in 1618, and lasted, almost without interruption, during the space of thirty years. Its commencement coincides with the beginning of the reign of

Ferdinand II. an emperor whose magnanimity and other virtues won the admiration even of his enemies. His chief allies were the king of Spain, his relative, the king of Poland, and the duke of Bavaria: the principal among the belligerent powers on the opposite side were, at different times, Denmark, Sweden and France. The two first mentioned of these three nations had hitherto been little known, except from their quarrels with each other; but they now began to take an active part and to exert a certain influence in the general affairs of Europe.

War in Bohemia and Denmark.—The first hostile steps in this sanguinary contest, were made by the Bohemians, who had revolted against the Austrian rule, and by Christian IV. king of Denmark, who supported them with a powerful army; but both the Danes and Bohemians were entirely overthrown by the imperial troops. In a few campaigns, Tilly and Walstein, two distinguished generals, compelled the enemies of Ferdinand II. to desist from their hostile designs, and submit to the conditions which he thought proper to impose on them (A.D. 1629), in the so-called "Edict of Restitution."

Swedish period.—Unfortunately, the victorious emperor refused to comprise Sweden in the treaty of peace. This kingdom was at that time under the sway of Gustavus Adolphus, a young hero, with whose abilities, energy and resources Ferdinand II. and his allies were but slightly acquainted. Deeply offended at the refusal, Gustavus immediately prepared to renew the struggle; and, like another Hannibal, resolved to attack his enemies in the heart of their country. His very first appearance in the north of Germany, at the head of a brave and well disciplined host, inclined the scale of fortune in his favor. All fled before him, and Tilly who attempted to stop his progress, was himself, after an obstinate engagement, completely defeated on the plains of Leipzic (A.D. 1631). A second battle was equally unfavorable to that great general, who died a few days after of his wounds, having lived, it was said, one year too long for his reputation and glory.

Gustavus Adolphus falls in the battle of Lutzen.—Walstein then assumed the chief command, and hastened with fresh troops to oppose Gustavus. The armies again met near the village of Lutzen, and fought with such spirit, that victory was for a long time doubtful. At

length, the Swedes, by uncommon and desperate efforts, remained in possession of the field, but lost their invincible leader, who was slain during the hottest part of the action (A.D. 1632). This accident was more fatal to them, than the defeat of their army would have been. For, although several able commanders, by order of their senate, continued the war with great vigor, yet they wanted his penetrating genius; and no later than the year 1634, the Swedish army was signally overthrown by the imperialists in the battle of Nordlingen. This victory of Ferdinand revived his adherents, whereas the loss of eighteen thousand men weakened his opponents to such a degree, that France, their most powerful ally, was obliged, from that time, to take the principal share in the prosecution of the war.

The French join the Swedes.—The French throne was, at this period, occupied by the son of Henry IV., Louis XIII., a just, brave and religious prince, who had given many proofs of great personal courage and of good government. Louis, it is true, did not seem much inclined of himself to make foreign conquests; but he possessed in the person of Cardinal Richelieu, a minister of state equally skilled in conceiving mighty plans, and in carrying them into execution. This powerful genius had hitherto rendered very important services to his sovereign and country, by destroying the excessive power of some of the nobles, and giving the last blow to the feudal system; by suppressing the restless Huguenots, preventing civil wars, and subduing La Rochelle, the principal seat of discontent and rebellion; finally, by establishing the French academy, and laying the foundation of the glory of the following reign. He had just raised the kingdom to this state of prosperity, when the Swedes experienced that defeat at Nordlingen, which obliged their allies to make greater exertions against the common enemy. Hostilities were now carried on principally between Austria and France. As each nation possessed brave troops and skilful generals, numberless gallant exploits were achieved on both sides; still no decisive action took place for several years, so that neither the emperor Ferdinand II. on one hand, nor Louis XIII. and Richelieu on the other, lived to see the termination of the war.

Condé's victories.—It continued under Ferdinand III. and during the minority of the young king Louis XIV., who began, at the age of five, a glorious reign which lasted seventy-two years. Its very beginning, in 1643, was marked by a brilliant victory. The duke of Enghien, better known under his subsequent name of the prince of Condé, had been, a short time before, placed at the head of the French army. The first act of his military career was to conquer and destroy, near Rocroy in Champagne, the formidable Spanish infantry, so renowned for its discipline and valor ever since the time of King Ferdinand V. This victory, gained by a general scarcely twenty-two years of age, gave France a decided superiority, which the same prince, together with his rival in glory, the marshal De Turenne, strengthened more and more by their subsequent triumphs at Freiburg, in 1644, Nordlingen, in 1645, and Lens, in 1648.

Peace of Westphalia.—So many victories for one party and losses for the other resulted, towards the close of the year 1648, in the famous treaty of Munster and Osnabruck, commonly called the treaty of Westphalia. By that treaty the authority of the emperor was reduced to narrower limits, and by a natural consequence, which the French plenipotentiaries endeavored in vain to avert, the Catholics lost much of their influence in Germany. Holland was formally acknowledged as an independent state, and valuable possessions were acquired to France and Sweden. Thus was peace restored in the greater part of Europe; but, the treaty of Westphalia not having been fully accepted by the Spanish king, Philip IV., who still cherished the hope of retrieving his recent losses, hostilities continued for some years longer between him and France. As to England, she had been, nearly all that time, too deeply engaged at home by dissensions and civil wars, to take any active share in these distant broils of continental Europe.

CIVIL WAR IN ENGLAND.—COMMONWEALTH.—RESTORATION.—A.D. 1625-1660.

Charles I., 1625-1649.—The whole reign of James I. had passed in comparative tranquillity;* but this was

* It was under this reign that some infuriated persons, nominal

rather a deceitful peace, and one of those calms which prognosticate a storm. At his death (A.D. 1625), he left to his son Charles I., an empty treasury, a refractory parliament, a kingdom given up to religious disputes and distracted by rival sects, the principal of which were the Episcopalians or Anglicans and the Presbyterians or Puritans. James had always desired to put down the latter of these two parties, but he left the work to be accomplished, if possible, by his successor; and when Charles made the attempt, he met with a resistance which proved the cause of his own ruin.

An order had been issued for the general adoption of the Anglican doctrine and liturgy even in Scotland. The Puritans, who were numerous and powerful there, boldly opposed the royal decrees, and swore to defend their manner of worship against every attack from whatever quarter it might proceed. In order to quell the insurrection, Charles marshalled an army, and led it towards the frontiers; still, yielding to his inclination for peace, he consented to come to an agreement with the Scots, though at the risk of diminishing his authority. This act of condescension instead of dissolving the Scottish covenant, seemed rather to give it new strength; and the covenanters grew bolder than ever, especially when they saw their cause openly supported by the English parliament, which was still more opposed to the court than themselves.

Civil war.—This parliament seemed absolutely resolved to thwart the monarch in all his views, and to strip the crown of its highest prerogatives. Charles yielded on many points; but finding all his concessions of no avail in reëstablishing concord and tranquillity, and morever, never receiving the necessary grants, he had recourse to arms, and summoned around him those who were still attached to his person, his government, or his fortunes. The parliament also raised troops; and civil war in every part of the realm was the consequence (A.D. 1642).

Catholics, formed the horrid project, called the *gunpowder plot*, of blowing up the parliament-house during the session. The plot was detected, and its authors met with condign punishment: unfortunately, several innocent persons were involved in their ruin, and prejudice went so far as to throw the blame upon the whole body of Catholics; as if Catholics at large could be accountable for the conduct of a few desperadoes whose plot they never knew—or the code of Catholic principles answerable for a crime which it always condemned and abhorred!

Battle of Marston Moor, July 2, 1644.—This revolution was at first favorable to Charles, who gained in person great advantages, and forced one of the parliamentary armies, under the command of the earl of Essex, to surrender. But these successes of the royal cause were counterbalanced by the loss of the bloody battle of Marston Moor, fought in the north of England (A.D. 1644); and, on the fourteenth of June of the ensuing year the still more fatal battle of Naseby deprived the king of nearly all his resources. Believing that there was no safer way to escape from the fury of his enemies than to take refuge among the Scots, he determined to throw himself upon their loyalty, and to surrender himself into their hands. This was running from one danger into another; the Scottish *army* (not the *nation* at large), after a short hesitation, shamefully delivered him to the English parliament for the sum of four hundred thousand pounds.

Cromwell and the Independents.—A new party had now arisen in England, very appropriately called the *Independents*, because, in reality they claimed an entire independence in all matters both civil and religious. At their head were Fairfax and Cromwell, two men famous in the history of those times, the former for his valor and skill in the command of armies, the latter for his intriguing genius and uncommon talent—political and military. With boundless ambition, which he artfully concealed under the veil of modesty and religious zeal, all means, whether just or criminal, were equally good in his sight provided they would promote the object of his designs. In a short time, his ability raised him to the chief command of the troops, his refined intrigues to the first rank in his party, and his artful ambition to the sovereign power.

Execution of King Charles I.—Cromwell becomes "Protector."—Cromwell had contributed more than any one to the overthrow of the royalists in the battles of Marston Moor and Naseby. Possessing, on that account, vast influence in the army, he made himself master of the king's person, and, confining him in a prison, defeated all the attempts that were made to set him at liberty. Afterwards, the bold usurper appointed a committee, which he took care was composed of his

warmest partisans, for the trial of the royal captive. Charles indeed refused to acknowledge the competency of that tribunal, and answered the absurd charges laid against him by a dignified silence or a smile of contempt; still, the proceedings went on with unusual rapidity; after a mock examination, he was outlawed, condemned to death as if he were a foe to the English nation, and, finally, executed in London on the thirtieth of January (A.D. 1649). His most faithful defenders and friends soon experienced the same fate; and England saw with dismay her most distinguished nobles perish on the scaffold. On this sanguinary foundation a commonwealth arose in the place of the ancient monarchy, a new constitution was published, and shortly after Cromwell was acknowledged as head of the government under the title of *Protector*.

England a republic from 1649–1660—Continuous wars.—In the mean while, great and numerous were the obstacles which he had to encounter everywhere. No sooner had the intelligence of the king's death spread abroad, than parties were formed in Ireland, Scotland, and England itself, against the usurpers. A man of ordinary talents would have sunk under these accumulated obstacles; Cromwell overcame them all by his prudence and activity. After sending some of his generals to quell the insurrection in England, he himself rapidly passed over to Ireland, compelled, by the superiority of his forces, the inhabitants to submit, and, returning with the same celerity, advanced against the Scots, whom he surprised and defeated at Dunbar (A.D. 1650). This overthrow did not prevent Charles, the eldest son of the late monarch, from penetrating into England at the head of fourteen thousand men. But Cromwell closely followed him, met the royalists again near Worcester, and gained over them a complete and decisive victory; Charles succeeded with extreme difficulty, in saving his life, and escaped into France by crossing the channel in a boat.

Cromwell returned in triumph to London, and thenceforth occupied himself in securing the prosperity of the realm by a vigorous and wise administration. Although the government was called a republic, he acted more absolutely than perhaps any English king had ever done, dissolving the parliament whenever it opposed his views

and measures. Tranquillity was restored to England; literature, arts and sciences were protected, and useful laws enacted, as well against blasphemy and luxury, as for the maintenance of order and justice. Commerce also was revived, and the navy greatly increased.

While he was thus securing the prosperity of his government at home, Cromwell caused it to be also respected abroad. "I wish," said he, "to see the British commonwealth as much honored by other nations, as the Roman republic once was." Accordingly, the English fleets triumphantly swept every sea; haughty conditions were imposed on the rival powers of Europe; and the Dutch, who alone ventured to question the superiority of the British flag, were soon compelled to respect it by a series of great naval battles, in the last of which they lost their celebrated admiral Van Tromp.

Cromwell's alliance with France.—Cromwell was still more honored when his alliance was sought with equal eagerness by France and Spain. Between these two nations, war had already lasted more than twenty years, although of late it had not been actively prosecuted owing to the civil disturbances during the minority of Louis XIV., which divided the attention of the French court. After some hesitation, the Protector preferred the alliance of France, and afforded the young king such assistance in troops and vessels, as to destroy the equilibrium which had so long protracted the war against Spain. As a compensation for this efficient aid, and an indemnity for the expenses incurred, he required that the important city of Dunkirk should be besieged, and the keys after its capture delivered into his hands, and that France, moreover, should afford no refuge or protection to the exiled sons of Charles I.

In consequence of this treaty, preparations were made for two grand expeditions. A British fleet, under the command of Blake, went in search of the Spanish forces, and gained two victories near the shores of Spain and Africa; and Jamaica was also conquered by the English, in whose possession it has since continued. On land, Marshal Turenne, already famous for many glorious campaigns and victories, led his army, composed of French and English troops, to the siege of Dunkirk. The Spaniards, on their side, were not idle; they ap-

proached the French lines for the purpose of raising the siege, but were entirely defeated in the celebrated battle of Dunes, the more honorable to Turenne, as he vanquished at once three able generals, viz., Don Juan, the commander-in-chief, and the prince of Condé and the duke of York, both of whom, discontented with the court of France, had gone over to the party of the Spaniards (A.D. 1658).

Within a few days Dunkirk capitulated, and, according to the previous agreement, was surrendered to the English. Two other victories, and the capture of several other towns, terminated that decisive campaign, which was soon followed by the conclusion of peace between Spain and France on terms very advantageous to the latter. The prince of Condé was included in this treaty.

Cromwell's death.—Cromwell did not see the termination of the war, having died a short time before, just when the prosperous issue of his alliance with France had raised him to the zenith of his glory. However, neither in this nor in any other successful scheme had he ever enjoyed real happiness. From the moment in which he was invested with the supreme power to that of his death, his mind labored under a constant dread of assassination; nor were his numberless precautions and multiplied guards able to remove his fears. The nights especially he passed in a most feverish anxiety, never sleeping twice, or more than twice in succession, in the same chamber, and taking care that, besides the principal door, there should be some other secret one to facilitate escape. He died at the age of fifty-nine (A.D. 1658), on the third of September, the anniversary of the victories obtained by him at Worcester and Dunbar, the former seven, the latter eight years before.

Abolition of the protectorate and re-establishment of the kingdom under Charles II.—Almost simultaneously with the death of Cromwell fell the form of government which he had established. Richard, his son, was, it is true, appointed *Protector* in his place; but, possessing neither the abilities nor the ambition of his father, he soon resigned the office, and the English, being at length tired of so precarious a state of things, agreed to recall the royal family of the Stuarts. The whole affair, admirably well conducted by General Monk,

afterwards called the duke of Albemarle, was finally accomplished in May, 1660, when Charles II. was, with universal satisfaction and applause, replaced upon the throne of his ancestors.

BRITISH AND FRENCH COLONIES IN NORTH AMERICA.

THESE successive changes of government were adopted, without much difficulty, by the numerous settlements which England already possessed in North America. It would have been impossible for these rising colonies, especially at such a distance, successfully to resist the course of events in the mother-country; the more so, as many of the emigrants had a long and bloody struggle to maintain against the Indians, whom, it must be acknowledged, they rather harshly treated almost from the beginning, and who, in return, frequently opposed with all their might the rise and progress of the English settlements. Notwithstanding these obstacles, the colonies gradually improved, and, at length, by dint of labor, industry, and courage, became very prosperous.

Foundation of original states.—The most remarkable of them were established under the government of the Stuarts, and in the following chronological order: *Virginia*, in 1607, by Episcopalians;—*New Amsterdam*, or *New York*, in 1614, or thereabouts, by the Dutch; this colony lost the former, and took the latter name in 1664 or 1665, when it passed under the power of the English;—*Plymouth* and *Massachusetts*, in 1620-1630;*—*Maryland*, in 1632–1634, by Catholics, according to the plan of Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, a nobleman of liberal character and distinguished abilities, and under the direction of his sons Cecilius and Leonard Calvert; the city of *Baltimore* was not however built till a much later period:—*Pennsylvania* and *Philadelphia*, in 1681–1682, by Quakers, under the celebrated William

* Some years later, were founded most of the other New England States. Those of *Delaware* and *New Jersey* were first settled by Swedes and Dutch, shortly after New York. Lord Clarendon and other English emigrants commenced, in 1663–1670, the establishment of *Carolina*; but it was only in 1729 that the country was completely divided into *North* and *South Carolina*. *Georgia* was settled in 1732–1735. The other States of the Union, besides those mentioned above, are of much more recent date.

Penn, to whom that portion of the American territory was ceded by the British court as a reward for the services of Admiral Penn, his father.

Religious freedom established in Catholic Maryland.—In these two last States, a system of equity, humanity and kindness was adopted towards the Indian tribes, which did great honor to the first settlers, and greatly contributed to their rapid increase and early prosperity. A still more distinguishing feature of the colony of Maryland is the example of Christian moderation and tolerance which she gave to her sister colonies; an example hitherto unknown in the history of America. For, while Virginia and New England were dooming, the former to exile, the latter to still harsher treatment, all who dissented from their respective creeds, Lord Baltimore and his associates, without in the least admitting religious indifference, being themselves sincere Catholics, removed however all idea of religious persecution, and legally recognized, from the beginning, that civil freedom of conscience which has since been adopted in the Constitution of the United States.

French settlements.—It was also chiefly during the course of the seventeenth century, that the French made regular settlements in those parts of North America, which they had previously discovered, particularly in Canada. Champlain, an active and enterprising officer, founded Quebec in 1608; and in 1642, Montreal began to rise, and soon after to prosper under the active care of zealous settlers, and especially of the congregation of the Sulpitians, to whom the whole island was ceded about this time. Louisiana also became one of the French colonies, though somewhat later, New Orleans not having been founded before the year 1718. Florida belonged at that time to the Spaniards.

SPLENDOR OF THE REIGN OF LOUIS XIV.

When the restoration of the Stuarts to the throne of England took place, Louis XIV. of France had been king for seventeen years, but as he was only five years old when he became king of France in 1643, the government was conducted by his mother Anne of Austria in conjunction with Cardinal Mazarin, whose consummate skill as

prime-minister continued even after the king's majority to guide the affairs of France until 1661. However, even at that time, he occasionally evinced such energy of character, as plainly to indicate what he might effect at a subsequent period. Mazarin died in 1661, and Louis, then twenty-three years old, took the reins of government into his own hands, and never afterwards relinquished them, nor ceased to hold them in a manner suitable to his power and dignity.

Louis XIV's personal government.—He soon verified a saying of the deceased cardinal, that there was in him sufficent *material* to make four kings. Every branch of the public administration assumed under him a grand and majestic aspect. He settled with precision the extent of power to be exercised by each one of his ministers; required them to report to him at stated hours; and, while he encouraged them by sincere marks of confidence, carefully observed their proceedings, lest they should abuse their authority. His manner of governing, alike dignified and courteous, secured the respect of foreigners and the affection of his own people. Military discipline was enforced, the public revenues were managed with prudence and wisdom, and strict order was observed in the courts of justice. Safe and capacious harbors were in a short time constructed and made ready to receive all kinds of vessels; the canal of Languedoc, a work not unworthy of the genius of ancient Rome, opened an easy communication between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean Sea, and a powerful navy was equipped, to contend for the empire of the ocean with the chief maritime forces then in existence.

France prospers in every direction.—Under this mighty impulse, commerce and industry increased, splendid manufactories arose, which astonished the world by the beauty and elegance of their productions in porcelain, tapestry, etc. The academies of sciences, belles-lettres, sculpture, and painting, were no sooner established than they produced masterpieces of every description. Architecture displayed all its magnificence in the palaces of the Louvre and of Versailles. All the fine arts, with the various branches of literature and useful knowledge, were encouraged and protected both at home and abroad; and no fewer than sixty learned men, in the different coun-

tries of Europe, received from Louis presents and other marks of esteem, with letters no less honorable to the monarch than to themselves. France alone produced at that epoch a great multitude of highly distinguished men; and the same age which saw with admiration Condé and Turenne, Luxembourg and Villars at the head of armies, Duquesne and Tourville in the navy, Louvois and Colbert in the cabinet, beheld also with astonishment the transcendent merit of Bossuet, Fenelon, Bourdaloue, Massillon, Flechier, in sacred eloquence; of Mabillon, Montfaucon, Thomassin, Petavius, Huet, in sacred learning; of Pascal and Descartes, in mathematics and philosophy; of Lamoignon and D'Aguesseau, in jurisprudence; of Corneille, Racine, Boileau, J. B. Rousseau, Lafontaine, in poetry, etc.

In a word, the reign of Louis XIV. was in every respect, the reign of taste and genius; one, during which the capital of France seemed to have become another Rome or Athens, so as to render that age, if not superior, at least equal to the most brilliant ages of antiquity. Hence the name of Louis was respected among the remotest nations of the earth, and ambassadors came from the eastern extremities of Asia to seek his alliance and friendship.

Louis XIV.'s religious zeal.—Nothing however can appear so honorable to the memory of that monarch, as his great zeal for the interests of religion. He encouraged the diffusion of Christianity in the various parts of the world. It was chiefly during his reign, that crowds of pious and learned missionaries set out from France, to preach the gospel in North and South America, in China, Persia, Egypt and other countries, where they rendered invaluable services as well to the Church, as to science and to humanity. In his own kingdom, he extended the same protection to all good and useful institutions, he checked by severe laws the practice of duelling and the profanations of the name of God, and also enacted various laws for the preservation of good order. As for himself, although his character was not always blameless, he however always remained strongly attached to religion, and ultimately atoned for the faults of youth by genuine piety in a more advanced age.

Never perhaps did either France or any other country

behold a greater and more brilliant display of military talents than under the reign of Louis XIV. This shall be shown in the following sections.

WAR OF FLANDERS—OF CANDIA, ETC. —A.D. 1664-1669.

First war of conquest—Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.—The reader has already been told of the glory and advantages acquired by France in the last war against Spain and Austria. Spain was again humbled, in 1667–1668, by the armies of Louis, and such was the rapidity of his conquests both in Franche-Comté and Flanders, that a confederacy of the neighboring nations was thought necessary to stop his progress. A league was therefore concluded, under the name of the triple alliance, by England, Holland and Sweden, the contracting powers agreeing among themselves to settle the differences of France and Spain upon reasonable terms. By a subsequent treaty signed at Aix-la-Chapelle, the French monarch was permitted to retain his conquests in Flanders, and the Spanish king, now Charles II., was contented with the restoration of Franche-Comté.

In the year preceding the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1667), a similar treaty had been made at Breda between the English and the Dutch, for the adjustment of their own differences. A new war had some time before broken out between them, which raged for some years with great fierceness, costing much bloodshed, and enormous expense; several naval battles had been fought, equally obstinate and undecisive; however, the final result was favorable to the English, who obtained from the Dutch, by the treaty of Breda, the cession of extensive and valuable settlements in America.

Participation in the war against the Turks—Battle of St. Gothard.—Louis XIV. was not so much engaged in these great concerns of war and peace with his neighbors, as not to take an active share in the interests of more distant nations. In the year 1664, he sent a body of troops to assist the emperor Leopold against a fresh invasion of the Turks. This and other succors granted by different princes enabled Montecuculli, the commander-in-chief of the Austrian forces, to fight, near

the river Raab, the celebrated battle of St. Gothard, in which the Turks were entirely defeated, and compelled to postpone their projects of invasion.

Siege of Candia.—Four years later, similar though less useful assistance was sent by the French king to the Venetians, for the defence of the island of Candia now vigorously attacked by the same infidels. The siege, or rather blockade of the capital, also called Candia, had already lasted twenty years, when the grand-vizier, Achmet Kiuperly, determined to bring it, by redoubled efforts, to a speedy issue. He himself landed in the island, and closely invested the town with an army no less formidable in numbers than for its valor and discipline. The siege lasted two years and a half longer, being thus one of the most celebrated in either ancient or modern ages, for the obstinacy of both parties and the mighty deeds performed on each side. The besiegers assaulted the place no fewer than fifty-six times; and, in the intervals, their artillery, consisting of three hundred cannon, were fired with such incessant fury, as to make the ramparts of Candia so many heaps of ruins. The besieged, on their part, fired against their foes upwards of five hundred thousand bombs and balls, expended fifty thousand barrels of gunpowder, and, besides repelling all the assaults of the enemy, made ninety-six sallies against the Turkish intrenchments.

Capitulation of Candia after a stubborn resistance.—So terrible and obstinate a contest could not fail to be extremely destructive. According to the most modern account, the Turks, before they could take possession of Candia, lost one hundred and twenty, and the Christians lost thirty thousand soldiers. There was not, all around the city, one spot which had not been moistened by the blood of many heroes. But the garrison being now reduced to a handful of men, mostly wounded, or exhausted by their exertions, it was evident that the place could hold out no longer; and the Venetian commanders were at length induced to surrender it upon the terms of an honorable capitulation, which Kiuperly granted and faithfully executed (A.D. 1669). In all this, the grand-vizier acted with a moderation that did him no less honor than his manner of conducting and concluding the siege. This great man, still more to be admired as a

minister of state than as a general, soon set about repairing in the island the numberless calamities it had suffered from so furious a war, and his efforts, aided by the natural salubrity of the climate and the fertility of the soil, were soon attended with complete success. He then returned to Constantinople, where, under the young sultan, Mahomet IV., he continued to govern the state with prudence and ability until the moment of his death, which happened in 1676.

To return to Louis XIV. This monarch was more successful in checking the depredations of the Algerine pirates than he had been in saving Candia from the arms of the Ottomans. Squadrons which he despatched at different times dispersed the pirates, and restored security to commerce on the Mediterranean sea.

WAR OF HOLLAND — AND SUBSEQUENT EVENTS TILL THE LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG.—A.D. 1672-1686.

Success of the French arms.—A still greater design engaged at the same time the attention of Louis. The Dutch having of late given him many causes of complaint, he resolved to humble their pride and chastise their ingratitude. In the year 1672, a well disciplined force of one hundred and ten thousand men, commanded by the king in person, and by Condé and Turenne under him, crossed the Rhine, and overran a great part of Holland with little or no opposition. Their march was so rapid and successful, that, in the space of two months, three of the seven united provinces were subdued, and forty fortified towns captured. The army continuing to advance, and the conqueror refusing to grant peace except on rigorous and humiliating terms, the Dutch, in their despair opened their dykes and inundated the country. This bold measure saved them from utter ruin, and the French finding themselves in the midst of waters were at last compelled to retreat.

A league formed against Louis XIV.—In the meanwhile William Prince of Orange, who had been just appointed stadtholder of the republic, was using all his efforts to rouse the great European powers against Louis XIV. His exertions easily induced the king of Spain, the

emperor of Germany, and the elector of Brandenburg, all of whom were alarmed at the power of the French monarch, to declare in favor of the Dutch: England alone remained at this time an ally of France, but for only two years. In 1673, great naval battles were fought in the channel between the fleet of Holland and the combined fleets of England and France, without any considerable advantage for either party. Three other engagements which took place on the Mediterranean sea, were more decisive; in the first, the celebrated Dutch admiral, Ruyter, was worsted by the French under Duquesne; in the second, he lost his life near Messina, a maritime town of Sicily; and shortly after, his fleet, attacked for the third time, was almost entirely destroyed (A.D. 1676).

Conquest of the Franche-Comté—Campaign in the Netherlands.—Still more important events happened on land, particularly along the frontiers of Germany and Flanders. Franche-Comté now became inseparably annexed to the French crown, having been a second time subdued by the king, who commanded in person an army on that side. Condé, with another, attacked, near Senef, the united forces of the allies, surprised their rear, and, before it could receive reinforcements, cut it to pieces. He then bore down upon the main body of their troops, and, after a sharp engagement, forced them to abandon the field of battle. Not satisfied with this, and, like Cæsar, accounting nothing to have been done as long as there remained something to do,* the victorious prince pushed forward, and, for the third time, attacked the confederates in a strong position, where all their forces were assembled under the command of the Prince of Orange. Here the conflict was most obstinate and bloody, the slaughter on both sides being carried on from ten in the morning till eleven at night, so as to cost the lives of fifteen, some say, twenty-seven thousand combatants. The allies, though not positively defeated, retired first from this melancholy scene of carnage, and perceiving that they were yet too closely followed by the French, withdrew to a greater distance from the frontier (A.D. 1674).

---

* Nil actum credens, quum quid superesset agendum.
Lucan, *lib* II., *l.* 657.

Turenne's brilliant campaign on the Rhine.— Whilst Condé drove his opponents before him in the Netherlands, Turenne, with twenty thousand men, had to oppose, near the Rhine, sixty thousand German troops, who aimed at nothing less than the conquest of Alsace and Lorraine, whence they might, after winter, strike terror into the very heart of France. The French general, who had until then separately defeated the different divisions of their army before a junction could be effected by them, now seemed to be frightened by the approach of their joint numbers, so superior to his own. He therefore left the banks of the Rhine, and retiring as far as the confines of Lorraine, abandoned the whole province of Alsace to the enemy. This retreat, though admirably well conducted, and achieved without the loss of a single man, seemed contrary to the promise which Turenne had previously made to save the French territory from invasion, and was to every one a subject of astonishment, and the more so, as he had, at the same time, ordered back fifteen thousand men who were advancing through Lorraine to reinforce his army.

In the meanwhile, the German troops freely overran all Alsace, choosing the best positions for their winter quarters, and acting with as much security as if they had been in their own native land. This was exactly the opportunity that Turenne wanted for the execution of a design which he had been maturing for two months. Having divided his troops into different bodies, he put them all in motion in the dead of winter, and without disclosing his intention to any person in the army commanded them to march on by different and difficult roads across the mountains, and to meet at the same time and place, both of which were specified. After a month of separation and painful marches, they found themselves all collected in one spot, with Turenne at their head, not far from the first of the enemy's posts.

The chief commanders of the allies refused to believe the first information that was given them of the return of the French; but their incredulity was soon obliged to yield to the evidence of the fact. Their posts were briskly attacked and obliged to surrender, their scattered troops fell into the hands of the assailants, and those only who had been stationed at a great distance, avoided the snare laid

for their destruction. Such as could escape, precipitately retreated toward Colmar, where their leaders had appointed the general rendezvous. Although their force had been greatly diminished, it still surpassed that of the enemy; and having, besides, taken a very advantageous position, they could scarcely believe that the French would attack them in this their last and strongest intrenchment. But Turenne was too skilful either to lose the opportunity of striking a decisive blow, or to forget anything that might ensure success. No sooner had he arrived in sight of the enemy, than he posted the greater part of his forces just opposite to their front; and he himself, making a wide circuit with some squadrons and regiments, suddenly appeared on their flank. The attack then commenced, and was conducted, on the side of the French, with such vigor and skill, that the dispirited imperialists soon began to waver; a general flight ensued, and the sad remnant of their forces availed themselves of the darkness of the night to retire to Strasburg, whence, by recrossing the Rhine, they speedily returned to their own territory.

This wonderful campaign filled up the measure of Turenne's reputation and glory. In hearing its details not only France, but all Europe was filled with admiration; especially when from a letter written two months before by the marshal himself to the secretary of state, it became publicly known, that so many encampments and marches, even the movements of the allies and the ultimate result of the expedition had been foreseen and planned in his mind exactly as they happened.*

Turenne's death at the battle of Salsbach.—The ensuing year (1675) again beheld Turenne at the head of the French army near the Rhine. He had now to fight against the earl of Montecuculli, an opponent in every way worthy of him on account of his consummate ability and experience. During four successive months, these two great men employed against each other all the resources of military tactics, without either of them being able, all that time, to surprise his enemy in any faulty or inconsiderate measure. Turenne, however, by his masterly manœuvres began to obtain some slight

* See Anquetil, *Hist. de France, ad ann* 1674;—and Raguenet, *Histoire du Vicomte de Turenne, p.* 249.

advantage, and gradually gaining ground, drove the Germans from point to point till they reached the village of Salsbach. Here he made his last preparations to give them battle, and was already expressing to those around him his full confidence of victory, when, at the commencement of the cannonade, a bullet struck him dead (twenty-seventh of July, 1675). The whole army bewailed with bitter tears the loss of that incomparable leader, whose beneficence, generosity, and other Christian as well as military virtues, had gained their most devoted affection. His death was equally lamented throughout all France; and Louis, the better to honor his memory, caused him to be buried with extraordinary pomp in the sepulchre of the French kings at St. Denis, a privilege which had been granted to no one not of royal blood before, except to Du Guesclin, in the time of King Charles V.

Immediately after the death of Turenne, in order to compensate his loss, if possible, and fill his place in the army, no fewer than eight new marshals were created; but Condé was then in truth the only general capable of following up with success the plan of the deceased hero. He not only stopped the progress of the imperialists who had once more invaded Alsace, but obliged them to retire again beyond the Rhine; after which he himself was compelled by the gout to withdraw from the army. Montecuculli also resigned the command of the imperial troops, not judging it worthy of his reputation to fight against newly appointed generals, after he had had the honor of opposing Turenne and Condé. Thus the year of our Lord 1675 closed the military career of three among the chief heroes of *modern times;* just as the year 183 B.C. terminated that of Hannibal, Scipio, and Philopœmen, three of the most illustrious generals of *antiquity.*

The peace of Nimwegen.—Condé and Turenne left behind them skilful disciples in the art of warfare; and Créqui, Luxembourg and others maintained the superiority which the French monarch had already acquired. The king himself, with his brother, the duke of Orleans, frequently appeared at the head of his armies, and gained so many advantages, that the allies at length agreed to a treaty of peace, which they all signed at Nimwegen, on the conditions he had proposed (A.D.

1678–'79). It was then that the surname of *Great* was conferred upon Louis, for his manifold triumphs, military and political, over the multitude of his enemies.

Revocation of the Edict of Nantes on Oct 18, 1685.—Even the time of peace was improved by the victorious monarch to strengthen his power at home, and to extend it abroad. He revoked the privileges which had been granted to the Huguenots by the edict of Nantes in 1598, which had proved, many times since, an occasion of great disturbances.* Genoa, Tripoli, and Algiers having dared to brave his authority, were bombarded by his navy, and compelled to send deputies to apologize for their conduct. Nor did he act less vigorously on land against Strasburg, then a free town, which had repeatedly broken faith with him; twenty thousand men suddenly invested it, and in his name took immediate possession of that city, one of the most important in Europe for its position and strength.

LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG.—A.D. 1686-1697.

England joins the league under William of Orange.—This continual increase of power again alarmed the neighboring states, and a new league, to check it, was formed at Augsburg in 1686, by the emperor of Germany, the king of Spain, the republic of Holland, etc. Louis might have found an ally in the king of England, James II., who had lately succeeded his brother Charles II.; but James, by granting universal liberty of conscience in his kingdom, and being perhaps too eager in favoring the hitherto oppressed Catholics whose religion he had embraced, alienated his other subjects. Seeing himself betrayed and almost universally abandoned, while his son-in-law, the famous Prince of Orange, advanced to dethrone him, he fled, and sought refuge in France; so that the whole strength of the league of Augsburg, now rendered still more formidable by the accession of England, was directed exclusively against the French monarch.

The battle of the Boyne, July 1, 1690.—The first campaigns lacked important events; but, in 1690, the

* See note O.

struggle became most animated in the various countries which were the theatres of the war. The exiled king having, with a strong army passed over to Ireland, where the majority of the population was favorable to his cause, attacked, with more resolution than prudence, the formidable force of his enemy near the river Boyne. The Irish and French began indeed to fight bravely, but without much discipline; and victory soon declared in favor of superior numbers aided by valor and discipline. James retreated, and giving up too soon all further hope of success, departed from Ireland, which in a short time was entirely surrendered to the conquerors. Many however of its inhabitants, through a heroic attachment to a dethroned and fugitive prince, followed him into France, which they soon learned to consider as their own country, and whose battles they fought in subsequent years with such determined valor, that her great monarch bestowed on them the flattering name of *his brave Irish.*

Defeat of the French fleet at La-Hogue in May, 1692.—Just at the time of the defeat of James in Ireland, an important action took place at sea. Admiral Tourville attacked in the channel, near the Isle of Wight, the combined fleets of England and Holland, and, with very trifling loss on his side, burnt or captured fifteen of their vessels. He was not so fortunate two years after (1692). Having to oppose, off cape La-Hogue, nearly a hundred sail under the command of admiral Russell, with only sixty-three, or, as some say, only forty-four ships of the line, he maintained indeed the unequal contest for twelve hours, but could not prevent fifteen or seventeen of his finest vessels from being destroyed by the English. This was a fatal blow to the French navy, of which France at this period was justly proud. England, on the contrary, recovered her sovereignty of the seas and every probable hope of James II. towards the recovery of his kingdom was extinguished forever.

Success of the French arms on land.—The defeat of La-Hogue was the only severe check then suffered by the arms of Louis XIV.; the expeditions of his land forces were much more prosperous, and, for the space of several years (1690–1695), there was one continued series of victories and conquests. While the king in person took the important places of Mons and Namur in the

Netherlands, the dukes of Noailles and Vendôme subdued a considerable part of the province of Catalonia in Spain; Marshal Catinat completely defeated the duke of Savoy at Stafarda and Marsiglia, and conquered nearly all his dominions: and Marshal Luxembourg, by superior talent, gained the splendid victories of Fleurus, Steinkirk, and Nerwinde, over the chief army of the confederates, taking from them so many colors, that these trophies, having been sent to Paris, to ornament the cathedral, gained for the victorious general the singular but honorable appellation of *Tapissier de Notre-Dame.*

So many triumphs reflected immense glory on France; but her very victories, which she did not obtain without great exertions and expense, gradually exhausted her strength, whereas the allies, from their superior numbers, were no less powerful and formidable after their defeats than they were before. This chiefly appeared at the death of Marshal Luxembourg, whom an attack of apoplexy carried off in the beginning of the year 1695.* The confederates availed themselves of his absence from the French army, to besiege and retake the important city of Namur. Both parties being now tired of the war, nothing of great consequence was performed on either side during the ensuing year 1696; France, however, made in 1697 a new and vigorous effort, which enabled her generals to obtain some advantages in Catalonia and Flanders. Moreover, her naval squadrons, under the command of Tourville, d'Estrees, Forbin, Duguay-Trouin, and John Bart, all of them excellent sailors, everywhere annoyed the commerce of the enemy, and bore off immense prizes from the maritime towns and colonies of England, Holland, and Spain.

The peace of Ryswick, Sept. 30 1697.—These multiplied losses, and the withdrawal of the duke of Savoy from the confederacy, at length induced the allied powers to accept the moderate conditions Louis XIV. had

* At that awful moment, this general, one of the most skilful, active, and successful that France ever produced; who never experienced a defeat, and who filled the world with the renown of his military exploits, publicly acknowledged the illusion and emptiness of all earthly glory. "Alas!" he exclaimed, "what will my victories avail me at the tribunal of my sovereign Judge? Would to God that I could offer him, instead of so many useless laurels, the merit of a cup of water given to the poor in his name!"

for a long time been offering to them. On the twentieth of September (A.D 1697), a treaty of peace was signed at Ryswick, by which the victorious monarch consented to resign nearly all his recent conquests, especially those made upon the Spanish territories. Many persons found fault with such great moderation, the secret reasons for which they did not perceive; but time soon disclosed the wisdom of the king's action and the depth of his policy

SUCCESSION OF SPAIN.—DEATH OF LOUIS XIV. —A.D. 1700-1715.

CHARLES II., king of Spain, being about to die without issue, appointed as his heir and successor the duke of Anjou, his grand nephew by his sister Maria Theresa, and grandson to Louis XIV. The Spanish monarchy was claimed (1), By Louis XIV. as son of the elder daughter of Philip III., and husband of the younger daughter of Philip IV. (2), By Leopold I., as son of the younger daughter of Philip III., and husband of the younger daughter of Philip IV. (3), By the electoral prince of Bavaria. Joseph Ferdinand as great-grandson of Philip IV., and grandson of the younger sister of Charles II., as appears from the genealogical table.* It must be remarked, however, that Anna, the wife of Louis XIII., as well as Maria Theresa, the wife of Louis XIV., solemnly renounced their claims to the Spanish monarchy, at the time the marriage took place.

The French court, after mature deliberation, accepted the important though dangerous inheritance, and the duke was proclaimed, in the year 1700, king of Spain, Naples, and the West Indies, under the name of Philip V. This momentous act again excited the jealousy and

---

* Philip III., King of Spain.

Anna married to Louis XIII. — Philip IV. — Maria Anna married to Emperor Ferdinand III.

Louis XIV. married to Maria Theresa. — Charles II. — Margareta Theresa married to Leopold I.

Louis, Dauphin.

Philip of Anjou. King of Spain.

Maria Antoinette married to Max Emanuel of Bavaria. — Joseph Chas.

Joseph Ferdinand Electoral Prince of Bavaria.

awakened the fears of Europe, and particularly of the German emperor, Leopold I., who claimed the same succession for his second son, the archduke Charles. In the course of two or three years, Holland, England, Prussia, Savoy, and Portugal, either apprehending that the house of Bourbon might become too powerful, or from a desire for their own aggrandizement, were induced to embrace the party of the emperor. The allies of France and Spain were the electors of Cologne and Bavaria; neutrality was observed only by the Ecclesiastical State, Venice, and Switzerland. As this was also the time when Charles XII., king of Sweden, engaged in an obstinate and bloody contest against Poland and Russia it thus happened that the earliest period of the eighteenth century beheld the flames of war rekindled throughout nearly all Europe, from the shores of the Atlantic to the vast plains of Russia, and from Gibraltar to the northern pole.

Marlborough and Eugene of Savoy.—The British king, William III., who had been the principal leader in the last two confederacies against France, was preparing to take a prominent part in this new league; but he died just in the beginning of the war (A.D. 1702), with the reputation of a skilful though rather unfortunate general, of whom it has been said that none perhaps could boast of having lost more battles. He was, however, a profound politician; and, upon the whole, he proved to be the most successful opponent of Louis XIV. The death of that prince caused, however, no alteration in the plan of the allies; his views were followed up by his sister-in-law, Anne, who succeeded him on the throne, and his absence from the army was more than compensated for by the duke of Marlborough at the head of the English, and by Prince Eugene of Savoy at the head of the imperial troops. These were the two great generals destined to interrupt the long course of the prosperity of Louis.

Battle of Hochstadt and Blenheim, Aug. 13, 1704.—France, it is true, also possessed at that time skilful and brave commanders, among whom the duke of Vendôme and Marshal Villars were conspicuous; both gained several advantages during the first campaigns; but as they could not be present in every place where their coöperation was needed, the year 1704 witnessed a total change of fortune. Eugene and Marlborough having

united their forces, attacked, near the village of Blenheim, the combined armies of the French and Bavarians, commanded by the Elector-Duke and by Marshals Tallard and Marsin. The battle was a decisive one; the Austrians and English lost indeed twelve thousand men, but the French and Bavarians lost about forty thousand, killed, wounded and prisoners. The artillery, ammunition, baggage, in a word, every trophy that can distinguish a complete triumph, fell, with Marshal Tallard, into the hands of the victors. Moreover, the whole electorate of Bavaria became their prize; and not only were the vanquished driven from the plains of Hochstadt near the Danube to the banks of the Rhine, but even the remnant of that army, which had first spread terror to the gates of the Austrian capital, was obliged to take shelter within the frontiers of France. The conquerors, finding no further obstacle, crossed the Rhine, entered Alsace, and the strong fortress of Landau surrendered to them before the close of the campaign; while, in a very distant quarter, the English captured also the important fortress of Gibraltar, which has ever since remained in their power.

Louis XIV. possessed in an eminent degree that Christian fortitude which enables one to bear misfortunes with composure and resignation. Although accustomed to victory, he received without dismay the sad intelligence of the ruin of his army at Blenheim, and took the most vigorous steps to check the progress of the allies. Understanding that the duke of Marlborough meant to carry the war, by the river Moselle, into the heart of France, he assembled, on that side, an army of seventy thousand men under Villars, whose conduct was so masterly, that he prevented Marlborough from effecting any measure of consequence during the whole of the year 1705. In Italy likewise, the French under Vendôme maintained their superiority against all the efforts both of Prince Eugene and the duke of Savoy.

Battle of Ramillies, May 23, 1706.—Eugene's victory at Turin, Sep 7, 1706.—In the ensuing year (1706) there was one continued series of defeats and losses for France and Spain. In the peninsula, Philip V. saw his fairest provinces conquered by the allies, his very capital invaded, and his rival, the archduke Charles, pro-

claimed king in his place. In the Netherlands, Marlborough completely defeated Marshal Villeroi in the battle of Ramillies, which was followed by the reduction of all Brabant and nearly all Spanish Flanders. The sudden overthrow of the French armies in Italy was the finishing stroke of that eventful year, the most singularly disastrous perhaps that France ever experienced. The duke of Vendôme having been recalled to oppose Marlborough on the northern frontier, the command of the troops in Piedmont was given to the duke of Orleans, assisted by the duke of La Feuillade and Marshal Marsin, all of them full of zeal and courage, but lacking the talent and experience of the former general. They were besieging Turin, when Prince Eugene, by a masterly and successful march, arrived from Germany at the head of fresh forces to relieve the town. The French were attacked, and in spite of their courageous resistance, were forced within their intrenchments. Their loss on the field was dreadful, their defeat complete; and the battle, as disastrous at least as those at Ramillies and Hochstadt, cost them all their conquests in Italy.

Battle of Oudenarde, July 11, 1708. — Never had the arms of the conquering Louis received so severe a check as during this fatal campaign. He made proposals of peace suggested by his situation, and yet could not satisfy the enemies of France, who, elated with past success, expected greater advantages from the continuation than from the cessation of hostilities. His affairs, however, as well as those of Philip V., seemed to take a more favorable turn in 1707, when Marshal Villars defeated the imperialists at Stolhofen, and Marshal Berwick gained, at Almanza in Spain, a splendid victory over the united troops of the English, Dutch, and Portuguese. But this return of good fortune did not last long; Philip was again driven from the capital of his kingdom, and obliged to fly before his rival: in Flanders, a hundred thousand men, under the dukes of Burgundy and Vendôme, were routed at Oudenarde by Eugene and Marlborough; and neither that numerous army, nor the heroic exertions of Marshal Bouflers, could prevent the victorious generals from taking the city of Lille, the strongest bulwark of France in that direction.

Battle of Malplaquet, Sep. 11, 1709.—The dreadful winter of 1709 increased the misfortunes of the French nation. Nearly all the fruit trees were frozen, and the harvest having failed, distress and famine became so general as to render it scarcely possible to provide a scanty sustenance for the troops. It was under these trying circumstances that they had to fight against the superior force of the allies at Malplaquet; and yet such was their ardor for the combat, that, although they had spent the day before without eating, they threw away half of the bread which they had just received, in order to rush the sooner against the enemy. The conflict was extremely fierce and bloody, the French especially fighting with desperate courage, till Marshal Villars being dangerously wounded, they began to give way; but although they left the field, their retreat after the battle was so well conducted by Boufflers, that not one man was taken prisoner. This victory of the allies, if victory it may be called, cost them the lives of twenty thousand men; the French, though they retreated, had not lost half that number.

The campaign not having been very unfavorable to Louis, he thought he could again without dishonor ask for peace; among other conditions he was required not only to abandon the cause of his grandson, but even to concur in dethroning and expelling him from Spain. When informed of this harsh condition, the king exclaimed that, since he must have war, he preferred to carry it on against his enemies rather than against his children. The whole nation, equally indignant at the haughtiness of the allies, approved of his generous resolution and appeared ready to sacrifice their property and their lives for the honor of the kingdom, the glory of their aged monarch, and the support of a just and necessary contest. In conformity with these sentiments, new soldiers enlisted for the army, and money was still found to bear the expenses of the war.

Success of the Spanish arms at Villa Viciosa.—Philip V. who had also been reduced to the greatest distress in his disputed kingdom of Spain, displayed the same determination and obtained the same success. Well aware that his grandfather could not furnish him with troops, he contented himself with asking for the services of the duke of Vendôme, a general in whom he placed

entire confidence. His hopes were quickly realized: the duke had no sooner arrived in Spain, than soldiers, through esteem for his well-known abilities, flocked to his standard from all sides; in a short time, he had collected an army of thirty thousand men, with whom he retook Madrid, and immediately went in search of the confederates, to give them battle. Having overtaken them on the ninth of December (A.D. 1710), he first surprised a body of five thousand English, who were all made prisoners with their general Stanhope, and, on the following day, he gained over the earl of Starenberg the decisive though long disputed victory of Villa Viciosa, which secured the Spanish crown for Philip. This prince was present at the battle, and fought with great courage; when worn out with fatigue, he slept upon the most glorious bed that a conqueror ever had, a bed made by order of Vendôme, of banners taken from the enemy.

Death of Emperor Joseph I.—Another unexpected event greatly interested politicians of the age. The emperor Joseph I., who in 1705 had succeeded his father Leopold on the German throne, died in 1711, and his brother the archduke, who had so long contended for the sceptre of Spain, became emperor under the name of Charles VI. This entirely changed the appearance of affairs; for, had this prince been allowed to reign over both Spain and the empire, that balance of power, for the preservation of which nearly all Europe had arisen against the house of Bourbon, would have been effectually destroyed by the preponderance of the house of Austria. Influenced by this and other considerations, Great Britain began to listen to overtures of peace from France, and, besides dismissing Marlborough from the command of the army, gradually withdrew her forces from the confederacy.

This was an important point; but as the remaining allies still maintained at the northern frontier a formidable force under the command of Prince Eugene, and kept France in constant danger of invasion, much was yet to be feared for that monarchy. The king himself, with all his firmness, could not conceal his anxiety when Villars took leave of him to go and rejoin the army in Flanders. "Sire," said the marshal with emotion, "this is your last army!" The king answered: "I rely upon

your zeal, and upon the bravery of my troops. Go then, and fight the enemy wherever you can find him. If, by some accident, you happen to be conquered, write to me alone: I know the devotion of my people; I will raise a hundred thousand soldiers more; and we will go together, either to repair all our disasters at once, or bury ourselves under the ruins of the monarchy." (A.D. 1712.)

Unsuccessful campaign of Eugene against the French.—This courageous design was never put in execution, as it soon became known that Villars, by a skilful and bold attack, had destroyed the army of prince Eugene at Denain. The different divisions of that army being too widely separated, the French successively assaulted them with equal promptness and success, bore down every obstacle, and, besides destroying the enemy's best troops, took a great number of prisoners, with a prodigious quantity of ordnance, ammunition, provisions, etc. This brilliant victory not only saved France from utter ruin, but suddenly gave her a superiority of which it was no longer in the power of her enemies to deprive her, and, being followed by the rapid conquest of several towns and fortresses, hastened the conclusion of peace.

The peace of Utrecht, 1713, followed by the peace of Radstad.—It was signed at Utrecht, in 1713, by nearly all the belligerent powers, who agreed upon a number of mutual concessions, the principal of which was the solemn recognition of Philip V. as king of Spain and of the West Indies. The emperor, his rival, was offered, in compensation for the loss of Spain, several valuable provinces in Italy and the Netherlands; still, of all the allies, he was the only one who refused the treaty. Hostilities therefore continued for some time longer near the banks of the Rhine, till Villars having gained new and important advantages over Prince Eugene, Charles VI. thought it prudent to yield. A treaty was then concluded at Radstad (A.D. 1714) between that prince and France, upon terms substantially the same, yet a little less favorable to him than those which he had rejected at Utrecht.

Death of Louis XIV.—Thus did Louis XIV., after a long series of disasters, secure by his courage and unshaken firmness a peace more glorious than that which he had obtained at Ryswick by the splendid victories of Lux-

embourg and Catinat. One year later (1715), this monarch, by far the most conspicuous of the age, ended, at the age of seventy-seven, a magnificent reign of seventy-two years. He had recently seen almost all the princes of his family, among others the pupil of the immortal Fenelon, descend before him into the grave ; their loss, though most painful to his paternal feelings, he had sustained with his usual firmness and Christian magnanimity : the approach of his own death had no greater power to frighten or even disturb his noble soul. He now displayed only piety, meekness, and resignation. His last moments were those of a truly Christian and great monarch ; of one who humbly acknowledges his faults in the hope of obtaining the divine mercy ; who willingly leaves all earthly honors because he knows their emptiness, and departs this life even with joy, because he expects a much better and happier one in the heavenly kingdom.

DECLINE OF THE TURKS.—A.D. 1683-1718.

Seige of Vienna in 1683.—We shall now, after a long interruption, revert to the affairs of the Turks. The battle of Lepanto had long since proved that their progress could be checked ; and the signal defeats they afterwards experienced in Hungary and Poland, were no less calculated to remove from their minds the notion that all Europe must pass under their sway. Yet, that warlike ardor which had so long animated their troops, still existed among them, and, being again aroused by the conquest of Candia, could not be extinguished by the further losses which they suffered in Poland from the great general Sobieski. The Janizaries loudly called for a renewal of the contest ; and in 1683, Vienna, the capital of Austria, was invested by two hundred thousand men, Turks and Tartars. As there was not in all Germany a force sufficient to oppose such a host of enemies, the emperor Leopold with his family fled at their approach ; despondency and consternation reigned everywhere ; and, though Vienna possessed a brave garrison, and an excellent commander in the earl of Starenberg, the ruin of that city seemed inevitable.

Sobieski, King of Poland, relieves Vienna.—In this new danger to which Christendom was exposed, Pope Innocent XI. had raised his voice to solicit the succor of Catholic princes and nations, applying chiefly to the great Sobieski, whom numerous exploits and conspicuous virtues had lately raised to the throne of Poland. That hero had several subjects of complaint against Leopold; but, generously sacrificing his resentment to the public good, he hastened at the head of twenty-four thousand warriors, and joined the imperial troops commanded by the duke of Lorraine. As soon as this junction was effected, they descended the mountains, and attacked the Turkish camp at three different points. The Turks, seized with a sudden panic, were routed almost without resistance; their spirits had already drooped in consequence of the length of the siege, and the numerous blunders of their general Kara Mustapha; and now their flight was so precipitate that they left behind them one hundred thousand tents, three hundred pieces of artillery, and nearly five thousand barrels of gunpowder.

Battle of Mohács.—The conquerors, not satisfied with the liberation of Vienna and of all Germany, were eager to improve their victory, by a hot pursuit of the fugitives. During this expedition, King Sobieski having on one occasion attacked the Turks too hastily, was repulsed with great loss; but he took ample revenge two days after, by cutting to pieces a body of twenty-five thousand men near the banks of the Danube. He then returned to Poland, leaving the conduct of the war to the brave duke of Lorraine, who not only continued to drive the Turks before him, but also gained important and extensive victories. These advantages were secured by a new and brilliant victory gained (A.D. 1687) in the plains of Mohács, the very same spot on which the Austrians and Hungarians had experienced an entire overthrow one hundred and sixty years before.

Peace of Carlowitz and Passarowitz.—During the following campaigns, until 1698, and also at the renewal of the war in 1716, the house of Austria, well served all that time by zealous and skilful generals, again defeated the Ottomans in several battles. Their most formidable enemy, during this period, was Prince Eugene of Savoy, who gained over them the decisive victories of Zenta,

Peterwaradin and Belgrade. These bloody contests ended in the treaties of Carlowitz (1699) and Passarowitz (1718), both of which showed the enormous losses lately sustained by the Turks, and the incontestable superiority now possessed by Christian Europe over their once dreaded and formidable empire.

RISE OF PRUSSIA AND RUSSIA.—PETER THE GREAT.—CHARLES XII., KING OF SWEDEN. —A.D. 1689-1725.

Prussia becomes a kingdom on Jan'y 18, 1701.—The rapid decline of the Turks in the scale of power and political importance, coincided with the sudden rise of Prussia and Russia to a high rank among the European nations. Christianity and civilization had begun to be introduced into Prussia towards the close of the Crusades; since that time, it had been governed by the Grand Masters of the Teutonic Order, and then by the princes of the house of Brandenburg, under the title of dukes. In 1701, it arose to the dignity of a kingdom, the title of *king* being then conferred by the emperor of Germany, Leopold I., on the elector of Brandenburg, Frederick I. Prussia became flourishing and powerful during the reign of the next monarch, Frederic William, and still more so under his son and successor, Frederick II., whom we shall see, after a short time, giving a strong and lasting impulse to the general affairs of Europe.

Peter the Great, 1689–1725.—Russia is also known to have been governed by a long series of dukes and of princes called *Czars,* under whom it remained almost totally uncivilized, until the accession of Peter I., which took place in 1689. This prince, possessed of an active mind and superior genius, labored unceasingly to improve the condition of his nation, and to raise it prominently above the neighboring states. He twice left his dominions, and travelled through different countries, in order to acquire, by experience, a knowledge of the various arts, institutions, and customs, which it might be useful to introduce among his subjects. Being attacked by conspirators and rebels, he overcame them all, and punished them with inexorable severity.

Charles XII. of Sweden, 1697-1718, and the Northern war.—In the year 1699, Peter formed with the kings of Poland and Denmark a coalition against Charles XII., king of Sweden, in the hope of wresting some provinces from that young prince, then only in his eighteenth year; but it soon appeared that the allied monarchs had relied too much for success upon his youth. Charles already united the talents of a general with the intrepidity of a warrior. Fired with indignation, and seconded by his brave Swedes, he successively overran Denmark, Saxony, and Poland, crossing rivers, capturing towns, defeating armies, and carrying everything before him. So frequent and decisive were his victories, that the king of Denmark was very soon forced to accept such conditions as it pleased Charles to impose on him; and the king of Poland, who had offered greater resistance, was compelled to resign his crown to Stanislaus Lesczinski whom the conqueror favored.

Battle of Pultawa—Charles XII.'s Death.—The exertions of the Swedish hero against the Russians were also for a long time extraordinarily successful. He defeated them in several engagements, particularly in the famous battle of Narva, where, with only eight thousand men, he destroyed an army of eighty thousand Muscovites, fifty thousand of whom were slain, drowned, or taken prisoners, and the rest dispersed. Having at last advanced too far into Russia, he lost in two hours, near Pultawa, the fruit of nine years' success (A.D. 1709). His half-famished and exhausted army being overpowered by numbers, was signally defeated, and Charles himself, wounded, and forced to leave the field, with difficulty escaped to Bender, a Turkish town in Bessarabia. There he spent a long time in endeavoring to engage the Ottoman Porte in a war with the Russians. Seeing the little success which attended his efforts, he resolved, after an absence of five years and many adventures worthy of a romantic hero, to return through Germany to Sweden, which he found in a miserable condition, without troops, without money, without resources, and attacked on all sides by her numerous enemies. Charles made desperate exertions to defend his kingdom and retrieve his losses, but he did not live to recover his former ascendancy, being killed by a musket ball at the siege of Fredericshall,

a town of Norway, in 1718. His death was the signal for a general cessation of hostilities; and Sweden hastened to conclude a peace, disadvantageous indeed, but required by the situation of her affairs.

Foundation of Russia's power.—These events allowed the Czar to execute his plans of improvement. In the course of a few years, Russia beheld with admiration the establishment in her cities, of schools, academies, manufactories, arsenals, and the rapid rise of St. Petersburg, her present capital. A powerful navy was created; harbors were opened on the Black and Baltic seas, to shelter numerous ships of the line, as well as frigates and merchant vessels; the standing army was trained and disciplined; laws were enacted and measures adopted to improve the morals and polish the manners of the people. A prudent management of the public revenue enabled Peter to accomplish his grand and extensive designs without oppressing his subjects. By these noble efforts, occasionally disgraced, however, by acts of cruelty, this prince not only laid the foundation, but also raised the superstructure of Russian greatness, and gained the surname of *Great*. He died in 1725.

WESTERN EUROPE FROM THE DEATH OF LOUIS XIV. IN 1715 TO THE TREATY OF VIENNA IN 1755.

THE other leading sovereigns in Europe at this time were: Charles VI. in Germany, Philip V. in Spain, Louis XV. in France, under the regency of the duke of Orleans, and in England, George I., a prince of the house of Brunswick, who, upon the death of Queen Anne, had been called to the throne in preference to the surviving members of the house of Stuart. Peace continued among these different courts for the space of twenty-five years (1715–1740), except during two very short wars, one in 1718, the other in 1733.

Cardinal Alberoni's political schemes.—Spain under Philip V. was governed in the beginning by Cardinal Julius Alberoni, whose bold and ambitious spirit, not satisfied with regulating the internal concerns of that kingdom, undertook also to change the whole political system of Europe. His general plan was to raise Spain

again to the pinnacle of active influence and power, in particular he intended 1°. to engage the Russians in a war against Austria, and through this powerful help, wrest from the emperor's hands that part of Italy which the treaty of Utrecht and later the peace of Radstad and Baden had allotted to him out of the Spanish possessions. 2°. His object was to dethrone the British king George I. in favor of the son of James II., called *the pretender;* and 3°. to transfer the regency of France, during the minority of Louis XV., from the duke of Orleans to the Spanish monarch. Had these projects been successful, Alberoni would have gained a reputation, if not superior, at least equal to that of Ximenes and Richelieu; but all his brilliant schemes were baffled by the vigilance and activity of his opponents. The quadruple alliance formed by Germany, England, France and Holland against Spain, compelled Philip V. to adopt views very different from those of his minister; the Spanish troops, who had already entered Sicily and Sardinia, were obliged to evacuate those islands, and Alberoni fell into disgrace (A.D. 1720).

War of the Polish succession.—Next came the war for the Polish succession, in 1733. After the death of Augustus II. Stanislaus Lesczinski, who had already, though for a short time, occupied the Polish throne under the protection of Charles XII. was a second time chosen king. But the emperor Charles VI. having, with the help of the Russians, obliged the Poles to hold a new election, the elector of Saxony his kinsman, was raised to that high dignity under the name of Augustus III., and Stanislaus again was forced to abandon his crown.

Louis XV. thought himself injured in the person of this prince, who had become his father-in-law, and he determined to be revenged on the emperor. The more surely to effect his purpose, he entered into an alliance, not only with the court of Spain, almost always hostile to the house of Austria, but also with the king of Sardinia, formerly duke of Savoy, and war was begun at the same time on the German frontier near the Rhine, and in different parts of Italy. Philipsburg was invested by a gallant army under Marshal Berwick, and although this experienced commander was killed by a cannon ball while visiting the trenches, the place was taken, not-

withstanding the presence of Prince Eugene, who lacking the energy of youth, did not dare hazard a battle, to prevent its surrender. The French were not less successful in Italy, where Marshal Villars closed his military career by the capture of Milan, and Marshal Coigny, his successor, gained the bloody victories of Parma and Guastalla. In the south, still more rapid was the progress of the Spaniards under the duke of Montemar and Don Carlos, son of Philip V.; they defeated the imperialists in the decisive battle of Bionto, and, in two campaigns, made themselves masters of the kingdom of Naples and of the island of Sicily.

Peace of Vienna, Nov. 18, 1738.—Thus defeated at every point, the emperor intimated a desire of peace, the principal terms of which were arranged at Vienna, 1738. By this treaty it was stipulated that Stanislaus, instead of the crown of Poland, should enjoy the duchies of Lorraine and Bar, under the title of king, and that, after his death, these duchies should be forever annexed to France; that the duke of Lorraine, the emperor's ally, should have Tuscany in exchange for his hereditary dominions; and that, while the king of Sardinia would gain some districts in the north of Italy, the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily should be left to the house of Bourbon represented by Don Carlos. In consideration of these cessions, Louis XV. agreed to restore to the empire his recent conquests near the Rhine, and to guarantee the so-called "Pragmatic Sanction," by which the lands belonging to Austria were declared indivisible and should, in case male heirs should fail, devolve upon the daughter of Charles VI., Maria Theresa, and her heirs.

EASTERN EUROPE.—THAMAS KOULI KHAN, OR NADIR SCHAH, THE PERSIAN CONQUEROR, ETC.,—A.D. 1736-1747.

Unsuccessful war against the Turks ended by the peace of Belgrade.—Scarcely was this peace negotiated, when a fresh war broke out between the Russians and the Turks, in which Charles VI. through his intimate alliance with Russia, found himself involved. He resolved to attack the Ottomans in the direction of Hungary, while his allies assailed them on the borders

of the Black sea; but the imperial commanders were repeatedly defeated, several important places were lost, and, as little hope remained of retrieving these disasters, the emperor had recourse to the mediation of France for the conclusion of a new treaty. Anne also, the Russian empress, though recently victorious at Chotzim, consented, from fear of being deserted by her ally, to a negotiation. The Turks, under circumstances so favorable to them, obtained an advantageous peace; the emperor ceded to them Belgrade with two provinces, and the Czarina agreed to withdraw her troops from the city and territory of Azof, so as to reëstablish the limits between the Turkish and Russian empires as they were before the commencement of hostilities (A.D. 1739).

Decline of the Ottoman power in the East.— That treaty, however glorious to the Ottomans, did not long retard their decline; the Russians soon regained the ascendancy, and even about this time, the Turks were rather unsuccessful in a war which they had against Persia. Having subdued, between the years 1723 and 1733, rich and extensive provinces, their career of success was at length stopped by the famous Nadir Shah, or Thamas Kouli Khan, who, after fighting the battles of his sovereign Schah Thamas against powerful rebels, usurped the Persian throne. He renewed the foreign war which had ceased for awhile, and, though defeated three times in succession by Topal Osman, a brave and skilful general, victory declared in his favor on every other occasion, and the Turks were compelled to give up what they had lately conquered.

After this, Nadir Schah, who seemed to have inherited the enterprising spirit of Genghis Khan and Tamerlane, turned his arms against the rich empire of Hindostan. With only sixty thousand warriors, he destroyed or dispersed an army of twelve hundred thousand Hindoos and Moguls, took Delhi, their capital city, and returned with so prodigious a quantity of pearls, gold and silver, that the amount is commonly estimated to have been upwards of a *billion* of dollars. He did not long enjoy these fruits of his insatiable avidity: not less dreaded by his subjects for his cruelty than by his enemies for his valor, he fell a victim to a conspiracy, and was assassinated in his tent (A.D. 1747). His death was followed by

a series of revolutions so bloody and destructive, that the populous city of Ispahan saw, within a few years, the number of its inhabitants reduced from a million to a few thousand persons, and a long time elapsed before Persia could even begin to recover from her astounding calamities.

WAR FOR THE AUSTRIAN SUCCESSION.—THE PRETENDER IN ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND. —A.D. 1740-1748.

The death of the emperor Charles VI. without male issue, in 1740, involved all Europe again in war. In virtue of a previous agreement called the *Pragmatic sanction*, and also by the emperor's last will, his hereditary dominions of Austria, Bohemia, and Hungary, belonged to his eldest daughter, Maria Theresa, who had lately married Francis, duke of Lorraine. Her claims were supported chiefly by England and Holland, but opposed by Spain, Prussia, and Saxony, whose sovereigns brought forward different claims to a share in that immense inheritance, and especially by the elector of Bavaria, who caused himself to be proclaimed emperor at Frankfort, under the protection of the French armies, and with the name of Charles VII.

Maria Theresa appears before the diet in Presburg.—Everything at first prospered according to his wishes, and the wishes of his allies; Austria, Bohemia and Silesia, were invaded by their troops, who forced Maria Theresa to take refuge in Hungary. She appeared amidst the Hungarian nobles in the city of Presburg, holding her young son, afterwards Joseph II., in her arms, and earnestly recommending him to their fidelity. This affecting scene moved the assembly to tears; all swore to die, if necessary, for their sovereign, Maria Theresa,* and she was instantly supplied with a fresh army zealously devoted to her interests. By a sudden change of fortune, her competitor, Charles VII., was not only deprived of his conquests, but even stripped for a

* *Moriamur pro rege nostro Mariâ Theresâ;* such was their sudden and unanimous exclamation.

MARIA THERESA WITH THE INFANT JOSEPH.

To face p. 506

time of his own hereditary dominions; he died shortly after at Munich, more of grief than of disease.

It might have been expected that his death, and the general acknowledgment, on the part of the German princes, of Francis of Lorraine as emperor, would put an end to these bloody quarrels; and in fact, some of the belligerent powers hastened to conclude separate treaties of alliance; but the extravagant claims of some others, particularly of Great Britain and of the queen of Hungary, protracted the war for three or four years longer. It was prosecuted with vigor chiefly by the English and French, who thus, from mere auxiliaries, became the principal actors.

Battle of Dettingen.—Even before the death of Charles VII., the king of England, George I., had taken the command of the British and allied forces in Germany. He was marching forward to join an additional body of auxiliary troops, when, near the village of Dettingen, he was almost surrounded by the enemy, and placed in a very critical situation. In fact by the masterly manœuvres of the French general, Marshal de Noailles, all supplies were cut off; the neighboring hills were strongly defended; and, had not the duke of Grammont's rash descent from the defiles into the plain with a portion of the army, given the allies an opportunity of fighting on equal terms, a surrender, or total destruction would, in all probability, have been the consequence. The French charged, as usual, with impetuosity; but the English, animated by the presence of their king and of his son, the duke of Cumberland, received the shock with undaunted valor. After three hours fighting, the assailants were repulsed, having lost five thousand men, killed, wounded and prisoners (A.D. 1743).

Battle of Fontenoy, May 11, 1745.—Two years after, Louis XV. and his son, the dauphin, in their turn defeated the army of the allies. The French king, having a large number of excellent troops commanded, under him, by Marshal Saxe, invested Tournay, one of the strongest towns in the Austrian Netherlands, and perhaps the most important place on that frontier. The combined forces of the British, Dutch, and Hanoverians, amounting to about fifty thousand men under the command of the duke of Cumberland, advanced to its relief,

and attacked the French, who had posted themselves on a rising ground in front of the village of Fontenoy. The battle began at nine in the morning, and lasted till three in the afternoon, being maintained all that time with equal courage by the two parties. Although the fire from the French batteries was so heavy that it swept off whole ranks at a single discharge, the British infantry, in close column, continued to advance as if they had been invulnerable, and the French began to give way. Marshal Saxe, fearing a total defeat, advised the king to provide for his safety by a timely retreat; but Louis refused to quit his post, and his firmness contributed to gain the day. At the suggestion of Marshal Richelieu, a battery was placed just opposite to the front of the English column, at the distance of a few paces only; while it fired upon them with dreadful execution, the French returned to the charge, and, after seven or eight minutes of heroic efforts on both sides, finally compelled the enemy to retreat with the loss of twelve or fifteen thousand men. The surrender of Tournay, and of many other fortified towns in the Austrian Flanders, was the fruit of this great victory.

Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, Oct., 1748.—In the following years good and evil fortune alternated. The French armies experienced signal defeats at Piacenza and Exilles in Italy, but were victorious in the great battles of Raucoux and Laufeld, which rendered them masters of the Netherlands. At last, by the skilful movements of Marshal Saxe and Count Lowendhal, they began to penetrate into Holland, carried by storm cities and fortresses that were deemed impregnable, and by this rapid success obliged the allied powers to receive the favorable conditions of peace which Louis XV. had been offering to them since the year 1744. He readily acknowledged Maria Theresa for the lawful heiress of Charles VI., willingly restored his conquests, and contented himself with securing reasonable terms for his allies, saying that he wished to treat for peace, not as a merchant, but as a king. This treaty was signed at Aix-la-Chapelle, in October, 1748.

Jacobite rebellion in England—Battles at Falkirk and Cullodon.—Some time before its conclusion, and while the British forces were still employed on the

continent, Charles Edward, the grandson of James II., the dethroned king of England, attempted to revive the claims of his family by an invasion of that country. He first landed on the shores of Scotland with one single frigate, some ammunition and a few officers. The public assertion of his rights, his promise of just government, and his brilliant qualities, soon gathered around him a little army, with which he immediately took the field. His first exploits were the capture of Edinburgh and the total overthrow of four thousand Englishmen at Preston-Pans; he was then in England, took the city of Carlisle, and advanced as far as Derby, within eighty or ninety miles of London, when the approach of the duke of Cumberland at the head of superior forces obliged him to retreat with some loss, though in good order. The victory of Falkirk, which he gained in January, 1746, revived his hopes; but his subsequent defeat at Culloden blasted them forever. Being now destitute of money and troops, without any sure asylum, constantly pursued by his enemies, always in danger of falling into their hands, and of ending his career upon a scaffold, wanting food and garments, wandering from place to place and from cavern to cavern, he exhausted, as it were, all the hardships of misfortune, and endured them with such heroic fortitude, as to gain the admiration of the whole world.

The pretender's end.—In all his calamities, and although the sum of thirty thousand pounds was offered as a reward of his capture, he had the happiness never to be betrayed by any one, not even by the poor who happened to recognize him under his various disguises. As he was once quite exhausted, and almost dying of starvation, he determined to ask some assistance of one of his enemies whose house he perceived at a distance, while wandering through the country. He went, knocked at the door, and, as soon as the owner appeared: "Behold," said the young prince, "the son of your lawful sovereign, who craves a little bread and some clothes. I know you are my enemy; but on your probity I rely enough to believe that you will not betray my confidence in you, nor take advantage of my extreme distress." The gentleman, deeply moved at the sight of such misfortune united with such courage, gave his guest all the assistance needed, and respected his secret.

At last, after five months of incredible sufferings, Edward embarked on board a French frigate, and, escaping the sight of the British vessels which were cruising along the coast, safely reached the shores of France, whence he had sailed on his adventurous expedition. He afterwards repaired to Rome, where he died at the age of sixty-eight years (A.D. 1788).

OLD FRENCH WAR, OTHERWISE CALLED WAR OF HANOVER, OR SEVEN YEARS' WAR.—A.D. 1756–1763.

THE boundaries of the French and British possessions in North America not having been definitely settled by the treaties of Utrecht and Aix-la-Chapelle, there soon arose complaints of mutual encroachments. Negotiations were again indeed opened between the courts of London and Versailles, but to no effect; hostilities followed, and after being carried on for a time without any declaration of war, at last came an open rupture in 1756.

The Seven Years' war between England and France, 1756–1763.—This new war, which, in a short time extended to all parts of the world, entirely changed, from the beginning, the political aspect of Europe. France and Austria, so long opposed to each other, now united their interests, and were joined by Russia, Sweden and Saxony. Holland and Spain preserved at first a sort of neutrality; but the English succeeded in securing a powerful ally on the continent, Frederic II., king of Prussia, who had already acquired great renown for his ability, and gained many laurels in the preceding conflict of the Austrian succession.

Frederic II. in the Silesian war—The battle of Rosbach, Nov. 5, 1757.—The first results of the war were favorable to France almost everywhere. The English and their allies were defeated in North America, on the Mediterranean sea, in the island of Minorca, where the supposed impregnable fortress of St. Philip, or Port Mahon, was taken almost at the first onset; and particularly in the north of Germany, where forty thousand men commanded by the duke of Cumberland, were compelled to surrender. Nor was Frederic II. in a better condition. After some success, he had been routed by the Aus-

trians; his kingdom was ravaged by the Russians and the Swedes, and a French army was marching from another quarter to complete his ruin. In this extremity, his courage and presence of mind did not fail him: he retreated before the French, as if frightened at their approach, and occupied at Rosbach a strong position. Here, when the enemy advanced against him, expecting a sure and easy triumph, the tents which concealed his army suddenly disappeared, and the Prussians were seen in battle array, between two hills covered with artillery. At this unexpected sight, a panic seized the assailants, and they had scarcely fought a quarter of an hour, when they fled in every direction. This brilliant exploit, which was entirely owing to the genius of Frederic, revived his declining fortunes; it enabled him to expel the imperialists from Silesia, and the French also had to give up their last conquests.

France successful on the Continent suffers defeat in the Colonies—Surrender of Quebec.—The three following campaigns were made up of a series of battles and a variety of events, which it would be equally tedious and useless to enumerate. The French now maintained their ground well enough in Germany; but on every part of the ocean, as well as in the East and West Indies, they suffered incredible and irreparable losses. Hitherto, the Marquis of Montcalm had ably and successfully defended their Canadian possessions; but, as no fresh supplies could be forwarded to him across the Atlantic, where the English everywhere prevailed, the number of his troops daily diminished, and it was not in his power to hinder a superior force under General Wolfe from reaching the vicinity of Quebec. In order, if possible, to save that capital, he ventured to give them battle. The disposition of the two armies was masterly, and the action commenced with great resolution on both sides. During the conflict, Wolfe and Montcalm, who had given equal proofs of personal courage, were both mortally wounded; the former died in the enthusiasm of victory, which he saw favoring the English, and the latter with the sad consolation of not having to witness the approaching surrender of Quebec. It took place six days later, and was followed in one year by the reduction of all Canada (A.D. 1759–1760).

The same fate befell the French settlements in the East Indies; sooner or later, all fell into the hands of the English. Nor could France prevent the astonishing series of disasters; her navy, which had severely suffered during the preceding war, was now in a wretched condition, and though privateers greatly annoyed British commerce, her weak squadrons were totally inadequate to cope with the imposing forces of England. The only ground of hope was that assistance might be obtained from the other branches of the Bourbon family, actually reigning in Spain, Naples, and Sicily. Louis requested it through his ministers, and the Spanish king, Charles III., generously consented to help him with vessels and troops. A treaty to this effect was framed under the name of *family compact;* but it was of no advantage to Louis XV. and proved most prejudicial to his ally. No sooner were the English apprised of the treaty, than they directed their efforts against the Spanish settlements in Asia and America, destroyed their commerce, and made many important captures.

Peace concluded at Paris, Feb'y 10, and at Hubersburg, Feb'y 15, 1763.—All the resources of France were now exhausted; one year had been sufficient to baffle Spain; but England herself was much weakened by the amazing efforts she had made to obtain the superiority over all her enemies. This exhaustion of the chief belligerent powers made all parties desirous of peace (A.D. 1763). While it was concluded at Hubersburg between the Prussian monarch and his numerous adversaries, the British, French, and Spanish courts signed the treaty of Paris, by which it was agreed that England, upon restoring a few of her conquests, should retain the whole of Canada, and many other valuable possessions. Thus did that mighty nation secure her maritime and commercial ascendency; though the time was not far distant when she was to be deprived, by an unexpected revolution, of her own colonies in North America.

ORIGIN AND PROGRESS OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.—A.D. 1764-1776.

Passage of the Stamp Act in March, 1765.—The great increase of power and territory just acquired by Great Britain, had not been gained without enormous ex-

penses, increased taxation, and a rapidly accumulating debt. No sooner were hostilities at an end, than the English ministry made it their chief object to find out new sources of revenue and devise means for replenishing the treasury. North America opened to their view, so they at least flattered themselves, a new and abundant field for levying taxes; and, on motion of Lord Grenville, first commissioner of the treasury, the famous act for imposing stamp duties on the colonies was passed, in 1765, by both houses of the British parliament.

Repeal of the Stamp Act, March, 1766.—This act excited serious alarm among the Americans. Without altogether contesting the power vested in parliament, to regulate trade, they sternly denied its right to impose direct revenue taxes on them without their own consent. Petitions and remonstrances drawn up in energetic language, were instantly despatched to the government; nor were there wanting in England itself men of remarkable talent and eloquence, as the celebrated William Pitt, earl of Chatham, who strenuously advocated the rights of the Colonies. All these protests, supported by the measures which the Americans took to prevent the exaction of the stamp duties, succeeded, on the accession of a new British ministry, in procuring the revocation of the obnoxious act (A.D. 1766).

The rejoicings which this repeal produced in America, were great and sincere, but they were soon silenced by Parliament's assertion of full rights to legislate for the colonies. Further restrictions, of various kinds, fostered the spirit of dread and mistrust in American hearts, and subsequent events revived all former irritation. The scheme of raising a revenue in the colonies was again practically adopted, by imposing duties on tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors imported from Great Britain. The colonists opposed these measures, which they considered as subversive of their rights and liberties, by another series of petitions, remonstrances, and protests, and chiefly by non-importation agreements: nor did their resentment stop there; an immense quantity of tea, which had been shipped for Massachusetts, not only was not suffered to land, but was even thrown into the bay by the Bostonians.

Beginning of the war of Independence.—This bold act precipitated a new and momentous crisis in the

relations between America and Great Britain. While in England bills were passed, coercive expedients adopted, and powerful reinforcements of vessels and troops despatched against Boston, the American States were not slow in espousing the cause of their sister Colony, in organizing a militia, and procuring, by every means in their power, arms, ammunition, and all necessary supplies for the defence of their rights. It was the lot of the New Englanders to begin the conflict. A party of men having been sent by General Gage, from Boston, to destroy some military stores collected at Concord by the provincials, were, on their way back, attacked near Lexington, and lost two hundred and seventy-three of their number, whereas the loss of their opponents was only ninety-three. This was the first blood spilled in battle during the American revolution.

Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17, 1775.—Two months later (June 1775), a still more memorable action took place at Bunker Hill or rather Breed's Hill near Boston, between fifteen hundred New Englanders, and three thousand British regulars. The coolness of the provincials at the approach of a veteran force double their number, was astonishing, and the order of General Putnam not to fire till they could distinguish the whites of the enemy's eyes, was scrupulously obeyed. The regulars were permitted to advance to within about sixty yards, when a deadly fire of small arms was opened upon them with such effect, that whole ranks were mowed down, and the line, wavering for a moment, at last broke, and gave way. They rallied, advanced again, and were again repulsed by the same destructive and incessant fire. A third charge, led by General Clinton, proved more successful, and the provincials, who had nearly exhausted their ammunition, were obliged to retire, but although they left the field of battle, they could justly claim the advantage of victory, their loss being only four hundred and fifty-three, that of the British one thousand and fifty-four.

Congress at Philadelphia, 1775, George Washington.—The spirit displayed by the Americans in these engagements greatly increased their confidence, and encouraged them to further efforts. In the meantime, a general Congress of the Colonies, represented by their deputies, had met in Philadelphia for the purpose of

adopting measures adequate to the important crisis. They voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, appointed the general officers, and, on motion of Mr. Johnson of Maryland, unanimously chose GEORGE WASHINGTON commander-in-chief of the American forces. The great man who thus already possessed the universal confidence and esteem of his countrymen, accepted the appointment with unfeigned modesty, and immediately took command of the army in the vicinity of Boston. Before his arrival, a plan for surrounding the royal forces in that city had already been arranged, and was about to be put in execution; Washington carried it out with such ardor and success, as to compel their immediate departure on board their vessels anchored in the harbor. Accordingly, on the seventeenth of March (A.D. 1776), the British troops, amounting to more than seven thousand men, evacuated the town, which was immediately occupied by the triumphant provincials.

Shortly after this, the English having endeavored, first to surprise New York, and then to reduce Charleston by a vigorous attack, were foiled in both attempts. The Americans, it is true, were not equally fortunate in their own attempt upon Canada, but suffered a considerable loss, in the siege of Quebec, which cost the life of General Montgomery, and reduced Colonel Arnold to the necessity of retreating; but this unhappy expedition served at least to show that the colonists were ready enough even for offensive warfare, although all their energies were required to defend themselves against a powerful enemy.

All these actions however they had performed without renouncing their allegiance to the British crown. There was indeed in the Colonies a spirit of open and unflinching resistance to what they unanimously deemed an invasion of their privileges; but the people and their representatives had, until the close of the year 1775, entertained the hope and expressed the desire of bringing their controversy with Great Britain to a speedy and amicable conclusion. Unfortunately for England, her existing ministry had determined to maintain by force the right of taxation and the legislative supremacy of parliament over the Colonies; and the Colonies were equally determined to contest the claim by force.

The indignation of the people in America rose to the highest pitch, when they were informed that further preparations for war had been made by Great Britain against them, she having gone so far as to hire multitudes of foreign troops for a more vigorous prosecution of the war. The winter and spring of 1776 were spent in arguments, appeals and publications of every sort, urging the expediency of a total separation from the mother country.

Adoption of the declaration of independence, July 4, 1776.—The momentous question was taken into serious consideration by Congress, then assembled at Philadelphia and consisting of the representatives of thirteen Colonies, *viz.:* Massachusetts including Maine, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. After long and animated debates, a Declaration of Independence, drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, was unanimously approved on the Fourth of July, a day forever memorable in the annals of America, and then solemnly proclaimed to the people. In this important instrument, the members of Congress, in the name of their constituents, after enumerating their grievances and subjects of complaint against the British government, renounced all allegiance to it, dissolved all political connection with England, and declared the United Colonies to be free, independent, and sovereign states; at the same time, mutually pledging to each other, for the support of this declaration, "their lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honor."

AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.—A.D. 1776–1783.

English efforts.—The declaration of independence was certainly of very high importance for the people of the United Colonies, but to render it efficient and irrevocable, all their energies were required in the open field; the more so, as the prospect of their affairs at that time was by no means encouraging. The British were well prepared for war by land and sea. Their army consisted of twenty-four thousand of the best troops from Europe, to whom several regiments of Hessian infantry were soon

to be added, bringing up their number to thirty-five thousand men, under the command of very able generals and experienced officers, and well supplied with everything necessary for active and successful warfare.

American patriotism.—To resist the attack, and check, if possible, the progress of these combined forces, the American general had under his command troops not only far inferior in numbers, but still more so in military discipline, and, owing chiefly to the pecuniary embarrassments of the country ill-provided with food, clothing, arms, and ammunition. It required his utmost sagacity and indefatigable efforts to train them to habits of necessary subordination and to a regular manner of fighting, and particularly to retain them in sufficient force under his banners, at a time when the ill-advised practice of short enlistments easily permitted them to withdraw from the service. Yet, under these trying circumstances, never did the great mind of Washington, even after many a defeat which neither his courage nor skill could prevent, abandon the hope of ultimate success. Never did Congress, even when surrounded by obstacles, and seeing the cause of independence on the brink of ruin, listen to any proposal of peace, except on the condition of an acknowledgment from England of the freedom of the Colonies. Like the Romans of old, who showed their contempt of the victorious host of Hannibal, by selling at a high price the field on which it was encamped near their city, so the leading American patriots, far from suffering themselves to be dejected by the gloomy state of their affairs, without wavering expressed their determination to carry on the struggle at all hazards, rather than ever return under British subjection.

America aided by European powers.—This lofty determination of Congress, in which a large majority of the people always concurred, was sustained not only by the consciousness of their own strength, but also by a well-founded expectation of foreign alliance and succors. In fact, almost from the beginning of the war, the Colonies had succeeded in obtaining from abroad supplies of arms and ammunition; and, though no foreign state had yet acknowledged their independence, such a number of able officers came over to them from Poland and France, as greatly added to the skill and strength of their armies.

In 1778, the exertions of the commissioners of Congress, and particularly of the celebrated doctor Franklin, induced the French government openly to declare in favor of the Americans. Hostilities commenced from that moment between France and Great Britain, and the contest became still more animated, when Spain in 1779, and Holland in 1780, joined in the war against England; and the league, called *the armed neutrality*, was also formed against her interests, by the northern powers of Russia, Sweden and Denmark.

To oppose this formidable array of enemies, the English nation, roused by danger to exertions worthy of her opulence and greatness, displayed a spirit of great courage, and developed astonishing resources. Her fleets covered both hemispheres, and her armies everywhere fought with a valor which challenges unqualified admiration. Still, it was easy to foresee, that, since the English were obliged to divide their forces, however successful they might be at one point and another, they would in the end lose the main thing at issue, the recovery of their Colonies. It is true, the allied European powers did not, at least in the beginning, lend to the Colonies such direct and efficient co-operation as might have been anticipated; yet, it is evident that, by compelling the presence of the immense navies of Great Britain, as well in the East and West Indies, as along the shores of Europe and Africa, they afforded, by thus preventing her from concentrating her energies, an immense advantage to the American cause. The successful result of the war of independence was, therefore, to be, and in fact was, achieved in America itself, after a long series of hardships and battles, of disasters and victories. This naturally leads us to resume the course of military events, and relate in the order of time, those which immediately followed the declaration of independence.

Battle of Long Island, Aug. 29, 1776.—Two months had not elapsed after that remarkable event, when the Colonies saw with dismay their troops signally defeated in the disastrous battle of Long Island. Washington, unable to cope with the superior forces of the English and Hessians, was obliged to evacuate, not only this island, but even a few days after, the city of New York; nor was this the end of the misfortune. At the

approach of a victorious enemy, it became urgently necessary to abandon the province of New Jersey, and cross with all speed the river Delaware. It was truly dispiriting to behold that scanty, destitute, and diminishing band, scarcely amounting to three thousand, pursued by a triumphant, well disciplined, and abundantly supplied army of thirty thousand men. About the same time, an American flotilla on Lake Champlain was entirely destroyed, and the State of Rhode Island occupied by the British.

Washington crosses the Delaware, and wins the battle of Trenton, Jan'y 3, 1777.—Of all the periods of the revolution, this was the most gloomy and disheartening. It is true, so hopeless a state of things did not last long, and Washington having received reinforcements which increased his army to about seven thousand, was enabled to raise the drooping spirits of his countrymen by a bold and successful movement. Observing the scattered and loosely-guarded positions of the enemy along the left bank of the Delaware, he recrossed that river on Christmas day, suddenly attacked the Hessian troops at Trenton, and captured about nine hundred men and officers, and all artillery and ammunition. Ten days later, he defeated three regiments at Princeton, and pursuing his advantage, skilfully wrested from the enemy almost all their conquests in the Jerseys, and to gain for himself among tacticians in Europe the surname of the *American Fabius*. At the reopening of the campaign in 1777, he was again obliged to retreat before the overwhelming force of the British, and even, in consequence of the unfavorable actions of Brandywine and Germantown, to leave Philadelphia for a time in the power of the enemy; yet, he so well handled his army, so judiciously chose the positions for his encampments, that the conquerors were unable to derive any material advantage from their victories.

General Wayne's brilliant exploit.—It was during the course of these expeditions of the commander-in-chief, that the memorable attack on Stony Point took place. The British having fortified this post and manned it with a strong garrison, Washington, whose camp was not far distant, determined to dislodge them, and despatched for that purpose General Wayne with a detach-

ment of infantry. Wayne arrived near the fort in the evening, and, dividing his men into two columns, directed them to assault it at opposite points, and, without firing, to depend entirely upon the bayonet. The assault, though extremely bold and hazardous, was executed with incredible courage. The assailants forced their way across a morass covered by the tide, and, though exposed to a galling fire of musketry and grape shot, they fearlessly went on, till they met in the middle of the fortress. They lost, it is true, ninety-eight men slain or wounded, and the general himself received a severe wound while leading his column; still, their success was complete; five hundred and forty three prisoners, fifteen pieces of cannon, the standards, and a large quantity of military stores, fell into the hands of the conquerors. This action was considered one of the most brilliant achievements of the war; it won high encomiums for Wayne and his troops, and Congress ordered a gold medal to be struck in honor of the victory.

Burgoyne's surrender to Gates, Oct. 17, 1777.— Not long before this event, and towards the close of the year 1777, the previous losses of the Americans in the north were more than made up. General Burgoyne had undertaken to effect a junction of the British troops from Canada with those stationed at New York, for the purpose of cutting off all communication between the northern and southern States. His march from Quebec into the American territory was at first successful and rapid, though it cost him much labor to make the roads passable. The fierce battles of Bennington and Stillwater checked this triumphant course, and he was still far from having accomplished his object, when desertions and scarcity of provisions increased his embarrassment. A speedy retreat towards the north might perhaps have delivered him from his perilous position; but of this last resource he was also deprived by General Gates who skilfully surrounded him. Burgoyne, thus deprived of all means of escape, opened at Saratoga negotiations with the American general, and on the seventeenth of October surrendered the remnant of his troops, now reduced from twelve to six thousand, with the whole train of artillery and an immense quantity of military stores.

The capture of Burgoyne's army was, especially in a

moral point of view and as an encouragement, of vital importance to the Americans. Still, much remained to be done and suffered before the war could be brought to a close.

Loss of Savannah and Charleston.—Defeat at Camden.—The chief theatre of hostilities was now transferred, as if by common consent of the hostile parties, from the northern to the southern States. Here the cause of liberty seemed totally lost for a long time. The capture of Savannah, and the subsequent conquest of Georgia by the British in 1779; afterwards, their success in subduing Charleston and South Carolina, with a considerable loss of men and artillery on the part of the Americans, in 1780; finally, the signal defeat of General Gates by Lord Cornwallis at Camden, opening a free road to the invasion of North Carolina and Virginia; such was, up to the beginning of 1781, the discouraging and almost desperate list of disasters throughout that extensive part of the American territory. In this extremity, the command of the republican forces just happened to devolve on two men endowed with that courage, activity, and perseverance which the emergency required; men of peculiar and fertile genius, who stimulated the spirits of the patriots, roused them to fresh exertions, and, by a series of gallant actions, not only checked the victorious career of the enemy, but even prepared the way for the final triumph of American Independence.

General Greene appointed commander of the Southern army.—Morgan's victory at Cowpens, Jan'y 17, 1781.—The first of these prominent personages was General Greene, justly called for his brilliant achievements, the liberator of the South. Being appointed to succeed Gates after the defeat at Camden, he entered the state of South Carolina with a dispirited and almost destitute army, and found the country in the possession of a mighty foe, intrenched in a long chain of well garrisoned and fortified posts. He successively broke through and captured them, and although several times defeated in the open field, he found so many resources in the energy of his character and the fertility of his genius, that he was always formidable; nor did he cease to harass his opponents, until he had driven them from their different posts throughout the State into the fortifications of the

capital. The victory of General Morgan at Cowpens opened, and the battle of Eutaw Springs won by Greene in person, closed this decisive campaign.*

Surrender of Lord Cornwallis, at Yorktown, Oct. 19, 1781,—Nearly the same success was obtained in Virginia by Lafayette, who, with only three or four thousand men, many of whom were raw levies, had to defend the country against the superior numbers and the victorious veterans of Lord Cornwallis now advancing, with full confidence, to the conquest of this important State. The French general, well taught in the school of Washington, manœuvred with so much skill, as to baffle the mighty efforts and frustrate the lofty designs of his opponent. Cornwallis, thus constantly disappointed, retired towards the coast with all his troops, and at length took a strong position at Yorktown and Gloucester Point, near the mouth of York river. Here the protracted struggle was to be finally decided.

No sooner did Washington, who was now actively occupied in the vicinity of New York, receive an exact account of the state of things in Virginia, and of the dispatch of a powerful French armament to the Chesapeake, than he resolved upon capturing the whole army of Cornwallis. This required profound secrecy, a skilful combination of means and a mighty concentration of forces near Yorktown; but the mind of the commander-in-chief was not unequal to the planning of all the parts of that complicated scheme, or to its successful execution. His first care was to conceal his real object from Sir Henry Clinton, who commanded the British army in New York, and this was easily done by feigning a serious attack on that city. He then, with the French general Rochambeau, marched rapidly through New Jersey and Pennsylvania, and crossing the Chesapeake on board of vessels prepared for the occasion, effected the junction of his army with that commanded by Lafayette on the Virginia

---

* As well in this as in other periods and theatres of the war, the officers and soldiers of the Maryland regiment highly distinguished themselves by their intrepid and gallant behavior. None fought more resolutely in the disastrous battles of Long Island and Camden; and could victory have been won, their courage would have achieved it on both occasions. See Marshall, *Life of Washington, vol.* 1., *pp.* 346–347;—Wilson, *History of the American Revolution, pp.* 160 and 306;—Frost, *History of the United States, pp.* 200 and 271.

side. The combined host amounted to nearly seventeen thousand men, twelve or thirteen thousand of whom were regulars, filled with confidence and enthusiasm and provided with all the materials necessary for a siege. Moreover, the French fleet, composed of about thirty ships of the line under the command of Count de Grasse, lay anchored at the mouth of York river and the entrance of the Chesapeake, so as to render the escape of Cornwallis impossible by sea, as his retreat was impracticable by land, in face of the superior forces of the allies.

After a council of war held on board the ship *La Ville de Paris*, the attack on the British was commenced from the land side, in the beginning of October, of the year 1781. On the tenth of the same month, the besiegers opened fire with such effect, that the enemy's cannon was silenced for a time, and the shells were thrown beyond the town as far as the ships in the harbor. It was in vain that Cornwallis endeavored to retard the progress of the assailants by a vigorous sally, and shortly after to effect his escape by Gloucester Point during the night; both attempts failed, and he was compelled to surrender unconditionally on the nineteenth of October: the whole British army amounting to seven thousand men, yielded themselves as prisoners of war, and delivered to the victorious allies their artillery, military chests, public stores, and the vessels in the harbor.

Treaty of Peace of Versailles and Paris, Sept. 9, 1783.—The victory of Yorktown, which was soon followed by the recovery of Savannah and Charleston, may be justly considered as the virtual termination of the War of Independence. Hostilities, it is true, were still carried on between the European powers with unabated vigor; but the signal defeat of the French by Admiral Rodney in the West Indies, and the total failure of the Spaniards at the siege of Gibraltar (A.D. 1782), counterbalancing the partial success previously obtained by the two nations, induced them to put an end to the contest. England too, notwithstanding her late triumphs, had no interest in continuing it, since she had now lost all rational expectation of ever recovering her colonies. Negotiations were accordingly opened, and commissioners from the interested parties assembled at Paris (or rather Versailles) to settle the terms of a general peace. After

long and animated debates, the treaty was finally signed in September (A.D. 1783), by which, besides various advantages of minor importance granted to France and Spain, the Independence of the United States was solemnly and universally acknowledged.

Evacuation of New York—Washington resigns on Dec. 23, 1783.—On the twenty-fifth of November following, the British army and fleet evacuated New York, their last remaining possession on the territory of the United States. General Washington entered the city in triumph, and, after a short stay, took an affecting leave of his officers, and set out for the purpose of resigning his office of commander-in-chief into the hands of Congress, then in session at Annapolis in Maryland. Here on the twenty-third of December, "In the presence of the representatives of the States, and a large concourse of civil and military officers, foreign agents, and citizens, he delivered his commission with a simple and moving address, in which, after congratulating the country on the successful termination of the war, and recommending the officers and the army to the justice of Congress, he concluded by bidding them an affectionate farewell. The highest testimony of popular love and admiration followed him into his retirement; and his return to the domestic shades of Mount Vernon, accompanied by the blessings and plaudits of millions whom he had guided to liberty and safety, was the closing scene of the war of the American Revolution" (Wilson, p. 372).

With this interesting event we shall also close the seventh part of Modern History. As there is no peculiar comment to be made on the discoveries of this period, their mere enumeration will find a more proper place at the end of the volume.

PART VIII.

FROM THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES, OR PARIS, IN WHICH THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES WAS SOLEMNLY AND UNIVERSALLY ACKNOWLEDGED (A.D. 1783), TO THE YEAR OF OUR LORD, 1902.

FORMATION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.—A.D. 1783-1789.

WASHINGTON, FIRST PRESIDENT.

It was not enough for the happiness of the United Colonies to have become free, independent, and sovereign States, a system of general government was moreover to be established among them, calculated at once to maintain their union, provide for their defence and ensure their prosperity. Experience had already taught, and for some years more continued to teach, that the existing loose confederation which they had adopted during the war, could by no means effect these purposes. The great difficulties which occurred in disbanding the troops and satisfying their just demands, the want of pecuniary resources in Congress, the absence of a proper system and of uniform regulations for carrying on foreign commerce, and other similar things, were serious evils, threatening still worse consequences for the future, unless checked by a speedy and powerful remedy.

Virginia and Maryland had the honor of taking the first effective steps towards the desired and so much needed measure. Their endeavors, aided by the coöperation of several other States, induced Congress to pass a resolution that a committee of delegates, invested with ample powers, should assemble for the purpose of framing a Constitution adapted to the exigencies of the country. The proposed committee, composed of the ablest men in the Union, met at Philadelphia, in 1787, under

the presidency of General Washington; after four months of discussion and labor, the important work was completed, and transmitted by Congress to the several States for their consideration and acceptance.

By the Federal Constitution, the general government is made to consist of three distinct departments, the *legislative*, *executive*, and *judicial*. The legislative department consists of a Senate and House of Representatives, collectively called the Congress. The executive is composed of a president, who, together with the vice-president, is chosen for four years by electors from all the States, and of several subordinate officers appointed by the president. And the judicial power is vested in a supreme court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The limits of each power are defined and regulated; the principal article is that which authorizes Congress to declare war, raise and support armies, provide and maintain a navy, coin money, levy taxes, regulate commerce, and provide in general for the government, welfare, and security of the nation.

No sooner was the Constitution made known to the public, than it met with earnest opposition from those who thought that it vested too much power in the general government, to the detriment of the individual States. It was very strongly supported by others; and hence arose the two opposite parties of the federalists and anti-federalists. The two great parties of to-day are divided on very different lines.

George Washington, first President.—Notwithstanding this contrariety and clashing of views, the Federal Constitution was, after some amendments, sooner or later adopted by all the States. The time being near at hand, when the newly-framed government was to be started, Washington was unanimously chosen president: he was inaugurated on the thirtieth of April (A.D. 1789), and, being reëlected after the lapse of four years, continued in office until 1797. His public conduct all that time, was marked by the same firmness and integrity which he had displayed at the head of armies. Although some of his acts did not meet with universal approbation, he never lost the esteem and affection of the great body of the people, the general merits of his administration being too evident and the purity of his motives too well

known, to permit any change of the public opinion towards him. Scarcely had he retired from office to the employments of a private life, when the votes of the nation again appointed him commander-in-chief of a provisional army, raised for the purpose of carrying on war against the leaders of the French revolutionary government. It fortunately happened that hostilities were confined to some naval engagements with privateers, as the disputes between the two powers were soon amicably adjusted; Washington, however, did not see their termination, having died almost suddenly at Mount Vernon, on the fourteenth of December, 1799, in the sixty-eighth year of his age.

There have been in the world men of more powerful genius, mightier conquerors than Washington; yet, if everything be well considered, if we call to mind the scantiness of his means, together with his undaunted and successful perseverance, few will be found who merited from their contemporaries as high encomiums as the American general did; still fewer who evinced as great magnanimity under the most distressing circumstances; and none perhaps who, placed in the same or in the like situation, ever equalled him in integrity, disinterestedness and patriotism. In this point of view, Washington seems to stand alone; in this chiefly must he appear to every one an extraordinary man; a man truly deserving of being forever called the *Father of his country*, truly worthy of the eternal gratitude of Americans, whose independence he secured by his military achievements, whose national strength he increased by his political wisdom, and whose prosperity he so successfully promoted by his unabated zeal, and the vast influence of his moral character.

FRENCH REVOLUTION—A.D. 1789-1795.

Proximate causes.—While the newly-founded republic of the United States was rapidly rising from embarrassment to wealth and greatness, one of the most ancient and powerful monarchies in Europe crumbled, as it were, to pieces, and disappeared for a time from the rank of civilized nations. France, which had been so instrumental in assisting the Americans throughout their hard-

ships and difficulties was now plunged in an abyss of confusion and anarchy unprecedented in the annals of the world. The proximate cause of this frightful revolution is generally supposed to have been the disordered state of the finances, as it could be remedied neither by the measures of a vacillating ministry, nor by the personal sacrifices of the virtuous king, Louis XVI. To this may be added the desire of imitating the example of the United Colonies in their struggle for independence; a desire conceived and cherished by those who, expecting to derive profit from a change of government, little considered that the cause of America was widely different from that of France, and that, moreover, the same course which had, from a variety of circumstances, benefited one of these countries, might, on the contrary, produce the most pernicious effects on the other.

Remote causes.—But the chief, though remote cause of the French revolution, was that spirit of irreligion and infidelity which, from the regency of the duke of Orleans (1715–1723), had made such a deplorable progress in France. This fatal seed, transplanted from England and Holland to the soil of their neighbor, received there its full growth by the wicked exertions of such men as Voltaire, Diderot, and others of the same stamp. During a weak administration, under several faithless ministers, the most violent attacks were directed with impunity against religion and all lawful authority, against the altar and the throne. The contagion rapidly spread from the capital to the provinces; and, although a multitude of excellent writers victoriously refuted the infidelity concealed under an elegant style and the assumed name of philosophy, impious and infamous productions of every description continued to be issued to destroy, in the minds of their incautious readers, the germs of piety, of respect for the laws, and of every virtue.

This anti-Christian conspiracy was carried on particularly during the latter part of the eighteenth century. Upheld by human pride and passions, it received an additional strength from its union with the Jansenists, a body of sectarians equally hostile to Church and State, who had now existed in France for upwards of a hundred years. Lastly, the evil was rendered in some measure desperate by the expulsion of the Jesuits, that society

of men so learned, so zealous, so eminently useful in defending religion, promoting piety, and training up youth in all good principles.

The States-general.—Thus, throughout a nation hitherto so universally attached to her faith as well as to her sovereigns, numbers of persons permitted themselves to be seduced into all sorts of impious beliefs, and an unbounded desire for pernicious innovations. This was unfortunately the spirit which animated most of those who composed, in 1789, the famous assembly of the States-general, convened at Versailles for the purpose of devising means and adopting measures for the improvement of the finances. Their first step, at the opening of the session, was to oppose the excellent plans of King Louis XVI.; and this was soon followed by the still bolder project of framing a new constitution for France.

The immediate effects of this illegal enactment were, the equally illegal seizure of ecclesiastical property, the tender to the clergy of an oath wholly incompatible with the laws of the Church, and finally edicts of persecution against those who should refuse to do violence to their conscience for temporal gain. Of one hundred and thirty-five bishops, only four took the unlawful oath; and but a comparatively small number of the inferior clergy imitated their example, myriads of others preferring to lose everything upon earth rather than be false to their duty. Most of those who remained thus faithful, were forced to quit the kingdom, and fly for refuge to Italy, Spain, Switzerland, Germany, or even to cross the seas, in order to reach the hospitable shores of England, Ireland or North America; while others, who stayed in France, were daily exposed to imprisonment and death.

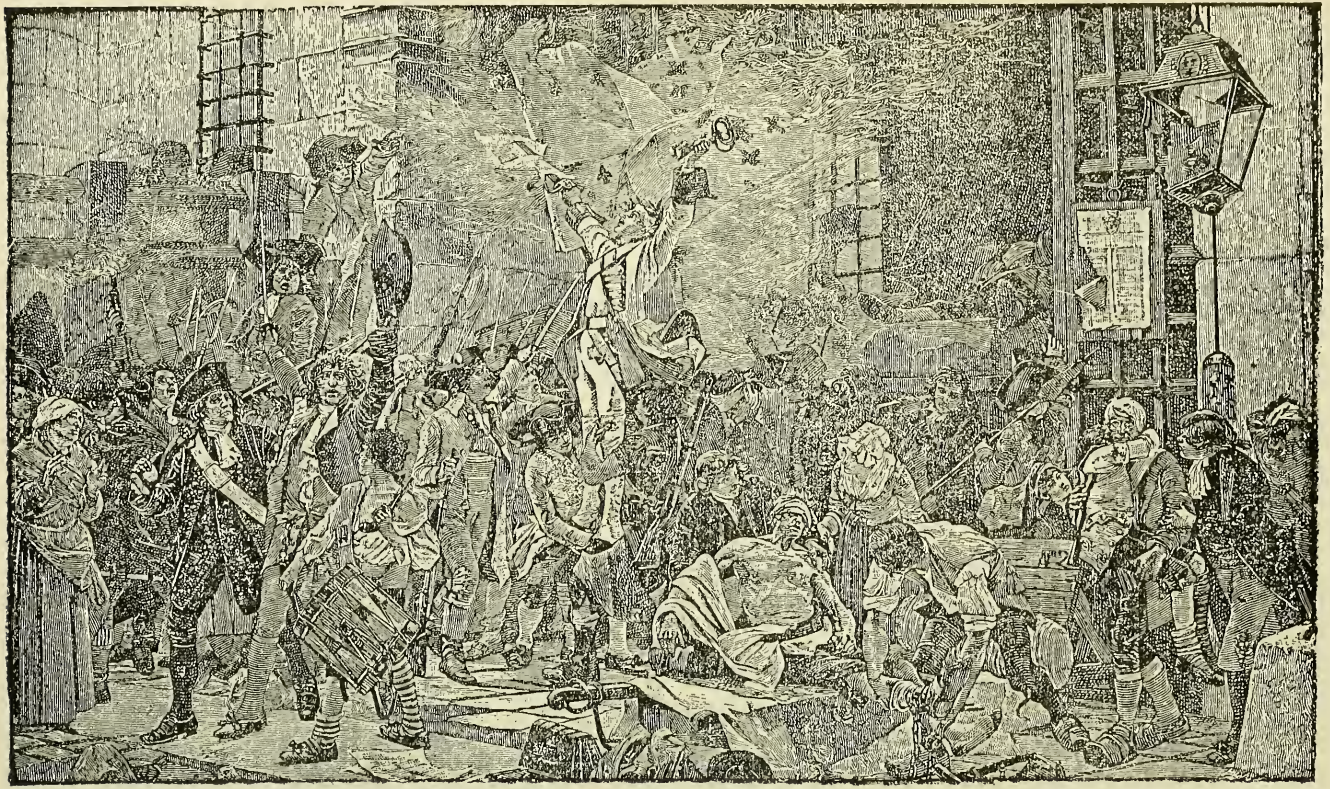
Constituent Assembly.—By the leaders of the revolution, the nobility were not better treated than the bishops and priests. An immense number of persons, from the most distinguished classes of society, emigrated to a foreign land, for the double purpose of avoiding the dangers which threatened them, and of returning with a regular force to chastise the oppressors of their unhappy country. But the storm had already burst with too much violence. After removing the supporters of the throne, whom they called the abettors of tyranny, the real tyrants of France, under the successive names of *national, constit-*

uent, legislative assembly, and of *national convention,* exerted their utmost endeavors first in degrading, and afterwards in demolishing the throne itself. They skilfully took advantage of the many concessions of Louis, gradually to limit his privileges, and of his reluctance to shed any blood in his defence, to oblige him, by the repeated and atrocious attacks of an infuriated populace, to surrender himself and his family into their hands.

Execution of Louis XVI.—This event sealed the fate of the unfortunate monarch. The tigers who thirsted for his blood, Marat, Danton, Robespierre, and others of their party, now the most powerful in the capital, lost no time in procuring his condemnation. It was in vain that Louis, brought before that iniquitous tribunal, easily refuted their absurd charges; in vain too, that eloquent advocates fully vindicated him; the death of the virtuous king was desired; capital punishment was decreed; and he met his fate on the twenty-first of January (A.D. 1793), with the magnanimity of a Christian prince and the piety of a martyr.* In the ensuing October, his royal consort, Marie Antoinette, and in May 1794, his angelic sister, Elizabeth, were also led to execution. One year later the young dauphin, Louis XVII., died in prison of a disease contracted from close confinement, and from the barbarous treatment inflicted on him by the monsters who regarded neither rank nor virtue, neither sex nor age. Of all the members of that unfortunate family whom the revolutionary storm had placed within their reach, the daughter of Louis XVI., afterwards Duchess of Angouleme, was the only one they did not think proper to sacrifice to their frantic fury.

The reign of terror.—Massacres of priests and other innocent persons had been already committed in various quarters of Paris, even before the king's execution; his death seemed to be a signal for fresh and more extensive slaughters. The levelling fury of Robespierre and his

* Everyone knows the perfect resignation of Louis XVI. to his fate; the noble tranquillity of his soul, marked by that profound sleep from which his valet-de-chambre was obliged to wake him a few hours before the execution; the pure feelings of heavenly charity expressed in his last will; the glowing fervor with which he received the last consolations of religion; and those sublime words which his confessor (Abbé Firmont Edgeworth) addressed to him at the foot of the scaffold: "Son of Saint Louis, ascend to heaven!"



INSURRECTION AT PARIS.

To face p. 537

accomplices now rapidly swept from the capital to the boundaries of the kingdom. A dark veil of terror and death covered all France; scaffolds were erected in various provinces and in almost every populous city; new tortures were devised for the defenders of religion and monarchy; and, from the year 1792 to 1794, blood continued to flow in every part of this unhappy country. Nor was this enough for the madness and impiety of the demagogues now in possession of the sovereign power in France; whatever appertained to the divine worship, became the peculiar object of their hatred; sacred things and places were either desecrated or destroyed; Sundays and festivals abolished; every mark of Christianity was obliterated; and instead of the hallowed rites and ceremonies of the Church was substituted the infamous worship of the goddess *Reason*.

Such a state of things could not fail to excite feelings of horror in the breasts of those who had not lost all sense of humanity and religion. While a kind of stupor oppressed all ranks; while millions, either destitute of sufficient energy or deprived of adequate means of resistance, silently wept over the awful scenes of impiety and bloodshed by which they were surrounded: several great cities, Lyons, Toulon, etc., made noble efforts to resist the oppressors of France, but in vain. The vigor of the national Convention, and the bravery of her armies easily baffled these ill-concerted, though generous exertions, and the result served only to expose their authors to the increased fury of the revolutionary tempest.

The conflict between the abettors and the opponents of anarchy was still more remarkable in the western provinces of the kingdom, particularly in Vendée, whose religious and brave inhabitants had unanimously risen up in arms for the support of the ancient faith and government. The astonishing exploits of these heroic countrymen more than once caused the reigning impiety to tremble; unfortunately, obstacles beyond their control impeded their progress. Their native land was given up to all the atrocities of revenge; the Vendeans fell before an enraged and constantly increasing foe; but it was only after having fought seventeen pitched battles, mostly with success, and destroyed or dispersed nearly three hundred thousand of the best republican troops.

War between France and the first coalition.—In another and more distant quarter, the French emigrants were not idle. Having formed themselves into a regular and gallant force under the command of the prince of Condé, they also evinced in various engagements that brilliant valor which always distinguished the French nobility; but their efforts, not being fully seconded by the foreign powers, proved equally unsuccessful. The Austrians and Prussians, who had first made a rapid advance and gained great advantages over the republicans, suddenly abandoned their enterprise, and, being defeated by General Dumouriez at Valmy and Jemmapes towards the close of 1792, evacuated the French territory.

The war however was not ended, but soon recommenced with still greater fury than before, when the confederacy against France, first formed by the Austrians and Prussians who, just at that time, received a vast increase of power and territory from the dismemberment of Poland, was joined by Holland, England, Spain, and afterwards by Russia, which last country the genius of the Empress Catherine II., and her recent victories over the Poles and the Turks, had now rendered most powerful. At the sight of this mighty coalition against the newly founded republic, one might naturally have anticipated her speedy downfall, and it is true that her armies occasionally experienced severe checks and defeats: still, hers generally were the honors and the advantages of the field; almost everywhere, her troops, guided by able generals, won the laurels of victory, and would have thrown imperishable glory round the French name, had they fought for a better cause.

Thus, after the defeat of Dumouriez at Nerwinde in 1793, Hoche and Pichegru succeeded in driving the allies beyond the Rhine. Jourdan overthrew another of their armies near Fleurus, after an obstinate and protracted engagement, during which he skilfully made use of balloons to discover all the movements of the ememy (A. D. 1794). Belgium, Holland, and all the left side of the Rhine, being no longer protected by a sufficient number of troops, fell under the power of the victors. Such was, in 1795, the situation of affairs, when a still greater man appeared at the head of the Republican armies, who car-

Roman Empire
Austrian
Prussian
England & Hanover
Danish
Swedish
French
Savoyard
CENTRAL EUROPE
1801.
DENMARK
SWEDEN
RUSSIA
PRUSSIA
ENGLAND
IRELAND
WALES
LONDON
FRANCE
SPAIN
AUSTRIA
BOHEMIA
HUNGARY
SAXONY
SILESIA
GALICIA
POMERANIA
HOLSTEIN
RÜGEN
BORNHOLM
Copenhagen
Königsberg
Danzig
Berlin
Hamburg
Bremen
Hanover
Amsterdam
Ghent
Brussels
Cologne
Liege
Aix-la-Chapelle
Coblence
Frankfurt
Treves
Mayence
Worms
Metz
Spiers
Strasbourg
PARIS
R. Seine
R. Loire
R. Rhine
R. Rhone
R. Danube
R. Drave
R. Save
R. Theiss
Dresden
Prague
Cracow
Breslau
Posen
Warsaw
Vienna
Budae
Pesth
Besançon
Bern
Geneva
Lyon
Chambery
Milan
Venice
Turin
Bordeaux
Avignon
Orange
Marseille
Nice
Genoa
Florence
S. Marino
Andorra
CORSICA
SARDINIA
ROME
Ragusa
Cattaro
MONTENEGRO
HELVETIC REPUBLIC
CISALPINE REPUBLIC
LIGURIC REP.
PARMA
SALZBURG
WURTEMBURG
BADEN
NASSAU
MECKLENBURG
HANOVER
BATAVIC REPUB.
R. Niemen
R. Vistula
R. Elder
NEW GALICIA
OLD
5
0
5
10
15
20
25
50
45
40

ried the military glory of France to the highest point, and, by a long series of military achievements, cast all preceding adventurers in the shade.

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE, GENERAL AND CONSUL—A. D. 1796-1804.

Napoleon Bonaparte was born at Ajaccio in Corsica, some say, in 1768, but, according to other accounts and his own opinion, on the fifteenth of August, 1769. Having gone successfully through a course of studies in the military school of Brienne, he was appointed an officer in a corps of artillery, and when the French revolution broke out, warmly espoused its cause. He distinguished himself, in 1793, at the siege of Toulon, whose capture by the republicans was owing chiefly to him; and still more so in 1795, when he made the national Convention, at the close of its career, victorious over the Parisian populace. For these services rendered to the republic, Bonaparte demanded as a reward, and obtained from the Directory which succeeded the Convention, the chief command of the army in Italy (A. D. 1796).

Brilliant campaign of Bonaparte in Italy.—In his very first campaign, he proved himself a consummate general. Finding the troops in a state of great destitution and despondent, he first endeavored to animate their courage, and succeeded in infusing his own ardor into their breasts, by pointing out to them the fertile plains of Piedmont as reward for their valor. He then opened that brilliant campaign, in which a bold natural genius, improved by a profound study of the art of war, enabled him to fight with astonishing success against the most experienced generals of the age. His peculiar mode of attacking consisted in rapidity of movement, concentration of forces and formidable charges upon a given point. Having, from the beginning, cut off all communication between the Austrian and Sardinian troops, he gained, in a few weeks, the victories of Montenotte, Millesimo, Mondovi and Lodi, conquered Lombardy, and laid siege to Mantua, the best fortified town in that part of Italy.

Peace of Campo Formio, Oct. 18, 1797.—The court of Vienna, sensible of the vast importance of that place, despatched numerous troops under able generals to its assistance; but their efforts were of no avail. One of the Austrian armies, led by the intrepid Wurmser, was signally defeated at Castiglione and Bassano; another, under the command of Alvinzi, was, after an obstinate conflict, driven from its formidable position at Arcola; and another experienced a complete overthrow in the decisive battle of Rivoli. In this series of bloody engagements Bonaparte gave numerous instances of both tactical ability and personal valor. He soon reaped the fruit of his exertions; Mantua, reduced to the last extremity, was obliged to surrender, and the French saw themselves undisputed masters of all northern Italy (A.D., 1797). The treaty of Campo Formio, concluded in the same year with Austria, secured this brilliant success; and, in virtue of other agreements, an end was put to the independence of the Venetian republic, and enormous contributions were levied on other Italian States in behalf of the conquerors.

Napoleon's expedition into Egypt.—Bonaparte now proposed a grand expedition into the East, where he would be placed beyond the reach of any superior command, and enabled to destroy the British power in India. The French Directory, who began to dread his influence in the government, and were glad to get rid of him in an honorable manner, willingly gave their consent to the projected expedition. Four hundred transports and thirteen ships of the line were assembled in the port of Toulon to convey to Egypt forty thousand warriors, together with a great number of learned men, and all the things requisite for the conquest, the exploration and the colonization of that distant country.

This powerful armament sailed on the twentieth of May (A.D. 1798), and, after taking easy possession of Malta through the treachery or cowardice of some of the knights, safely reached the Egyptian shores. The troops were landed, and began the work of conquest by the capture of Alexandria.

The battle of the Pyramids.—Their subsequent victory over the Mamelukes in the celebrated battle of the Pyramids, made them masters of Cairo and Lower

Egypt. But the fleet, under admiral Brueys, was almost entirely destroyed in the bay of Aboukir by the English admiral Nelson; and the land forces were foiled in their attempt upon Acre in Palestine. Moreover, their ranks were daily thinned by disease or excessive fatigue; and though they still performed prodigies of valor; though they extended their conquests, and gained two other signal victories, the one under Bonaparte, and the other under Kleber, his successor in command, they were at length unable to cope successfully with the combined forces of the English and Turks. A capitulation was granted, in virtue of which they were not only allowed to return, but even afforded the means of returning to their native country.

Napoleon, first Consul.—Their departure from Egypt had been preceded by that of Bonaparte, whom the course of events in France had recalled to Paris. Seeing that his arrival there was greeted with general congratulation and rejoicing, he skilfully availed himself of these favorable manifestations, to overturn the unpopular government of the Directory; and, a new form of government having been set up, he was appointed its head and sovereign leader under the title of first consul (A.D. 1799).

War of the second coalition.—During his absence, Italy had been the theatre of surprising revolutions. The French republicans, not satisfied with their recent conquests, had further indulged their ambition by invading the Ecclesiastical State, taking possession of Rome, and dragging into exile the unoffending and venerable Pope Pius VI., who soon after died at Valence in France, at the age of eighty-two years. The kings of Naples and Sardinia were likewise driven from their continental dominions; and the whole peninsula now seemed prostrate at the feet of the French; when suddenly, at the northern frontier, the hero of Russia, Suwarrow, made his appearance with an Austro-Russian army proud of fighting under such a leader, the irresistible foe of the Turks and the Poles. One campaign of this great man was sufficient to wrest from the French those fair Italian provinces, which they had acquired with so much labor and loss of life. General Moreau, who had previously won many laurels on the field of battle, and who now

commanded an army of twenty-five thousand men, was driven back into his intrenchments at Cassano; Macdonald lost twenty thousand of his soldiers in a hotly disputed battle near the river Trebia; and the entire defeat of another French army at Novi, after twelve hours of an obstinate and bloody conflict, gave the death blow to their supremacy in Italy. But the superiority of the Russians was of short duration: it seemed as if Suwarrow had come for no other purpose than to facilitate the election of a new pontiff: no sooner had he prepared the way for it by compelling the revolutionary troops to evacuate Italy, than, finding himself ill-seconded by the Austrians, he was obliged to retreat across the Alps before the superior force of General Massena; and it was only with the greatest difficulty and by incredible efforts that he succeeded in extricating the sad remnant of his once flourishing and victorious army.

Battle of Marengo, June 14, 1800.—The road into the peninsula being thus again opened to the French, Bonaparte did not fail to seize the favorable occasion for the recovery of his former conquests. Treading in the bold steps of Hannibal, he fearlessly crossed with his army the most dangerous passes of the Alps, and in a few weeks reached Marengo, where the Austrians under General Melas occupied a strong position. Here, on the fourteenth of June, 1800, a most obstinate and fierce battle was fought, which lasted from morning till night. Nearly the whole day, the French were on the point of being entirely defeated; but the timely arrival of General Dessaix with his division of fresh troops enabled them at length to gain a decisive victory, which made them once more masters of northern Italy.

Peace of Lunéville, Feb 9, 1801.—The success of their arms, about this time, was not less brilliant in Holland, where General Brune obliged the Anglo-Russian army to evacuate the country; and in Germany, where Moreau had resumed his victorious career. During the whole of this campaign (A.D. 1800), that distinguished general performed exploits at least equal to those of Bonaparte himself. The important victories of Hochstadt and Hohenlinden led him almost to the gates of Vienna; and the Austrian court, destitute of further resources, was obliged to conclude the disadvantageous peace of Luné-

ville, which ceded the whole left bank of the Rhine to the French republic. Prussia, Russia, and Spain had already laid down their arms, so that England was left alone to continue the struggle. Her navy, it is true, remained sovereign of the seas, capturing the remaining squadrons of the French and their colonies, driving them from the island of Malta, and crippling, near Copenhagen, the fleet of Denmark, which government had become favorable to the interests of France. Still, as these actions, brilliant though they were, did not strike at the continental superiority of Bonaparte, the continuation of the war seemed to be without an object. Negotiations were opened, and the two parties agreeing to restore several of their conquests, the final treaty was signed at Amiens, on the twenty-seventh of March, 1802, to the great joy of both the French and English.

Napoleon's administration.—Bonaparte spent the short interval which elapsed between the cessation and the renewal of hostilities, in vigorous and very useful administration. In compliance with a concordate agreed upon between him and Pope Pius VII., he re-established religious worship in France; reorganized public instruction; published a civil code; improved commercial facilities and greatly embellished Paris with new buildings and monuments. But he, at the same time greatly impaired his reputation by the severity with which he prosecuted as guilty of treason the two illustrious commanders Moreau and Pichegru, one of whom was sent into exile, and the other was found dead in his prison before the conclusion of the trial. Still more odious was the judicial assassination of the Duke d'Enghien, a young and hopeful prince of the Bourbon family, who, contrary to all right, was arrested upon foreign territory, hurried to Paris, and, after a mock trial, shot during the night in the ditch of the castle of Vincennes. Finally, the measures adopted by the French government to crush entirely the insurrection, which had now lasted twelve years, of the blacks against the whites of San Domingo, proved likewise the more prejudicial to the first consul's glory, as it was, if not perfidious, at least ungenerons and imprudent. The chief leader of the insurgents being, notwithstanding his previous submission, arrested and sent a captive to France, the exasperated blacks com-

pleted with fire and sword the destruction of the French colony, and on its bloody ruins erected the new republic of Hayti.

Napoleon I., Emperor of the French—Francis I., Emperor of Austria.—During all these transactions, Bonaparte was mainly intent on establishing his power on a firmer basis. After causing himself to be named consul for life, with liberty to appoint his successor, he finally resolved to assume the sceptre. Addresses were made by the civil and military bodies, offering him the imperial dignity, which he condescended to accept. He was crowned *emperor of the French,* in December 1804, by the pope himself, who, wishing to avoid the fatal consequences of a refusal, went to Paris for that purpose. Spain, Prussia, and all the other European powers, except England, accepted Napoleon's new rank, to which he soon added that of *king of Italy;* while the successor of Maria Theresa and of Charles V., Francis II., changed also his title of *emperor of Germany,* for that of *emperor of Austria.*

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE, EMPEROR. —A.D. 1804-1815.

Since the treaty of Amiens, the rival cabinets of France and England had frequently disputed, either concerning the execution of the stipulated articles, or about other more or less important matters. Napoleon was particularly offended at the delay of Great Britain in evacuating the island of Malta; the English, on their side, thought they had equal reason to complain of Napoleon's ambitious views and continual increase of power on the continent. War, therefore, was again declared; and for several years the world beheld the singular spectacle of the equally extraordinary success of the French on land, and of the English at sea.

Nelson's victory at Trafalgar, Oct. 21, 1805.—It had been, for a long time, the earnest wish of Napoleon, to obtain at least a temporary superiority by sea in order to effect a descent upon England, and it was now one of the chief objects of his policy to secure the coöperation of Spain. He succeeded so far in his projects, as to assemble thirty-three ships of the line and seven frigates,

ADVANCE OF THE GRAND ARMY.

To face p. 538.

under the command of Admirals Villeneuve and Gravina. The combined fleets sailed from Cadiz on the nineteenth of October (A.D. 1805), and on the twenty-first of the same month, met, off Cape Trafalgar, the British fleet commanded by Nelson. The English admiral had no more than twenty-seven sail of the line and four frigates; his inferiority in number of men was still more considerable; but it was amply made up for by their superior skill and experience, and by his own unrivalled talents.

As Nelson was desirous of battle, and Villeneuve unwilling to avoid it, the hostile fleets were soon engaged. The battle raged for nearly four hours with the greatest fury, the ships of the two combatants lying quite close to each other, and firing with the very muzzles of the cannon touching; yet, the superiority of the British seamen was soon made manifest: nineteen of the enemy's vessels were captured with Admiral Villeneuve, and seven others were disabled. This was a signal and important victory, as the combined fleet of the French and Spaniards was almost totally destroyed; but it was a victory too dearly bought: for, besides a considerable loss of men Nelson received a musket ball in the breast, and died two hours after the termination of the battle. His remains were honored with a magnificent public funeral, a just token of gratitude for the eminent services which he had rendered to his country.

Third coalition against France—The battle of Austerlitz, Dec. 2, 1805.—While the naval forces of France and Spain were annihilated by the great man, who thus died, like Epaminondas, in the moment of victory, Napoleon, after vainly threatening England with invasion, made a decisive campaign against the Austro-Russians, her allies. Having, by a rapid advance, moved his troops into the heart of the enemy's country, he obliged the Austrian general Mack, at Ulm, to surrender with thirty or forty thousand men. Shortly after, he entered Vienna, and, pressing forward, soon overtook the army of the confederates, whom he attacked with all his forces near the village of Austerlitz. In this memorable action, which the soldiers called *the battle of the three emperors,* the superior genius and masterly movements of Napoleon gave him one of the most brilliant victories that the annals of war can present. It was with the

greatest difficulty, that, rallying the remains of their routed armies, the two allied sovereigns effected their retreat. The Russian monarch retired towards his own dominions, and Francis of Austria was obliged to sign the treaty of Presburg, by which he lost more than twenty thousand square miles of territory, and two millions and a half of his subjects (A.D. 1805).

The Battles of Jena, Friedland, etc.—The conqueror resolved, in the ensuing year, to chastise the king of Prussia, who, both before and after the overthrow of the allies at Austerlitz, had been unfriendly to France. The battle of Jena (October, 1806), in which the Prussians lost fifty thousand men slain or taken prisoners, placed Berlin, their capital city, and nearly their whole kingdom at the mercy of the French. Bonaparte then marched a second time against the Russians, and, after the bloody and well-contested battle of Eylau, entirely defeated them at Friedland (June, 1807). This series of victories led to the treaty of Tilsit, by which the king of Prussia yielded a great part of his dominions to the victors; and both he and the emperor of Russia promised to support the favorite scheme of Napoleon, for closing the European ports against the vessels of Great Britain, and was on that account named the *continental system*.

The confederation of the Rhine.—About this time also, Bonaparte formed the confederation of the Rhine, or a coalition of German princes favorable to his interests; and he raised the duchies of Bavaria, Wurtemberg, and Saxony to the rank of kingdoms, as a reward for the services which their sovereigns had, as allies, rendered the French during the recent campaigns. In order to prevent the Danes from imitating their example, the British government compelled them to surrender their whole fleet, consisting of sixteen ships of the line and fifteen frigates, which were all conveyed to England. This high-handed act did little honor to the character of Great Britain, and, even in a political point of view, was perhaps more unfavorable than really advantageous to her cause, as it provoked the indignation and resentment of her most powerful ally, the emperor of Russia.

War with Austria, 1809—Napoleon's first defeat at Aspern and Esling, May 21, 1809.—War had scarcely ceased in one country, when it commenced in

French Empire and Dependent States
Austrian
Prussian
Swedish
Savoyard
CENTRAL EUROPE
1810.
IRELAND
ENGLAND
WALES
LONDON
FRENCH EMPIRE
SPAIN
Zaragoza
St. Sebastian
Bordeaux
Toulouse
Nantes
Napoleon Vendée
R. Loire
R. Seine
PARIS
Fontainbleau
Rouen
Boulogne
Brussels
Waterloo
Cologne
Aix la Chapelle
Hague
Amsterdam
HOLLAND
Lyon
R. Rhone
Geneva
HELVETIC REPUBLIC
Bern
Turin
Milan
Genoa
Nice
Marseille
CORSICA
KM OF SARDINIA
Florence
ROME
KM OF NAPLES
Naples
Venice
ITALY
ILLYRIAN PROVINCES
SLAVONIA
BOSNIA
SERVIA
MONTENEGRO
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Trieste
Treves
Metz
Strasbourg
Mayence
R. Rhine
CONFEDERATION OF THE RHINE
BADEN
WURTEMBURG
BAVARIA
Hohenlinden
Erfurt
Jena
SAXONY
Dresden
Prague
BOHEMIA
AUSTRIAN EMPIRE
AUSTRIA
Vienna
R. Danube
R. Wagram
Pesth
HUNGARY
GALICIA
Cracow
SILESIA
DUCHY OF WARSAW
Warsaw
R. Bug
R. Vistula
Berlin
PRUSSIA
PRUSSIA
Konigsberg
R. Niemen
Friedland
Danzig
POMERANIA
MECKLENBURG
Hamburg
Lubeck
R. Elbe
RÜGEN
SWEDEN
Copenhagen
DENMARK
RUSSIA
5
0
5
10
15
20
25
50
45
40

another. The Austrians, wishing to retrieve their recent losses, determined to oppose Napoleon again in the field. They made, for that purpose, truly gigantic exertions, raising their armies to the extraordinary number of five hundred and fifty thousand men; still, in spite of their unyielding courage and of the abilities of their chief commander, Archduke Charles, this new struggle proved fully as disastrous to their arms as any preceding conflict. The French poured with their usual rapidity over the German provinces, gained four victories within five days, and took Vienna for the second time. Their subsequent repulse at Esling cost them, it is true, thirty thousand brave soldiers with the intrepid Marshal Lannes, and exposed them to a complete overthrow; but the Austrian prince, though possessed of remarkable talents, was not as capable of improving his advantage, as his enemy was of remedying his disaster.

Battle of Wagram, July 5-6, 1809—Peace of Vienna.—By great energy, activity, and skill, Napoleon soon was in readiness to renew the attack, and, on the sixth of July, the dreadful battle of Wagram was fought, in which it is supposed that three hundred thousand men were engaged, and which terminated in the entire defeat of the Austrians. Their sovereign was compelled once more to sue for peace, nor could he obtain it except by making further concessions of a large extent of territory, and giving his daughter Maria Louisa in marriage to the victorious emperor (A.D. 1809).

Napoleon had now reached the summit of power and glory. Having reared the edifice of his greatness by continual and almost unexampled success in war; supported in that high station by formidable armies, excellent generals, and the superiority of his talents; enjoying the satisfaction of having placed his brothers, Louis, Jerome, Joseph, and his brother-in-law, Murat, upon the thrones of Holland, Westphalia, Spain, and Naples; his royal and imperial authority seemed to rest on the strongest basis that could be desired. Yet, this powerful conqueror, this mighty sovereign, was destined to experience the utmost severity of fortune, and that too, in a manner so much the more striking, as he began, just at the time of his splendid expedition of Wagram, to dig with his own hands the pit into which he was soon to fall from his elevated station.

Pope Pius VII. excommunicates Napoleon.—Elated with prosperity, and anxious to subdue all nations, Napoleon solicited the pope to close his harbors against British commerce, and become a party to the war against England and Austria. This Pius VII. positively and persistently refused; being, he answered, the Father of all Christian nations, he could not, consistently with that character, become the enemy of any one. The emperor was highly incensed by this courageous refusal, and, in order to gratify his ambition, determined on following a more audacious course. By a decree dated at Vienna, the seventeeth of May, 1809, he declared the Ecclesiastical State annexed to his empire; and, as this unwarrantable proceeding was instantly punished by excommunication, the French troops who had already taken possession of Rome, received an order to send the excellent pontiff into captivity and exile. This outrageous act filled up the measure of Napoleon's blind ingratitude, and, by provoking alike the justice of God and the indignation of all sensible men, was undoubtedly the chief among the remote causes of his subsequent downfall.

The campaign in Spain.—Equally ungrateful towards the Spaniards, his most faithful allies, Bonaparte invaded their country as well as Portugal, and, after having, partly by intrigues, and partly by compulsion, obtained the abdication of King Charles IV. and of his son Ferdinand, he placed his own brother Joseph upon the Spanish throne. The whole kingdom was overrun, and nearly all its fortified places were surprised or conquered by different bodies of the French troops under the command of Murat, Ney, Massena, Suchet, Soult, Marmont, etc., and sometimes of Napoleon himself. These able commanders, well provided with all things necessary for a vigorous warfare, and almost constantly receiving strong reinforcements, gained easy victories over the brave, but astounded and inexperienced Spaniards. Still, the conquerors did not make such rapid progress without suffering great losses, and occasionally meeting with very serious disasters. Seventeen thousand of their troops were obliged to surrender at Baylen to General Castanos; their subsequent success at Saragossa, so nobly defended during two months by the heroic Palafox, cost them an immense multitude of their bravest warriors, and they completely failed in the siege of Cadiz. Moreover, in the

midst of a courageous people, persons of all classes, of every age and condition, became soldiers for the defence of their liberties and country. Swarms of guerillas continually harassed the march of the French armies, attacking their separate detachments, intercepting the convoys, and cutting off the stragglers. The territory was occupied, but the nation was not subdued; and Spain seemed to have become a vast and profound abyss destined to swallow up the numberless troops of Napoleon, as they made their appearance.

The Duke of Wellington defeats the French troops.—Next to this unanimous effort of the Spanish population, nothing contributed more powerfully to rid the country of its invaders, than the efforts of the celebrated Arthur Wellesley, afterwards Duke of Wellington. This great man first distinguished himself at the head of the troops sent from England to the relief of the Peninsula. Being, after many exploits, appointed commander-in-chief of the Portuguese and Spanish, as he was already of the British forces, he was enabled to display his talent to greater advantage and to vigorously follow up his former success. Several times he had been compelled to retreat before the overwhelming numbers of the enemy, but he repeatedly regained the ground that had been lost, and after defeating the French at Talavera in 1809, at Busaco in 1810, and at Salamanca in 1812, he finally drove them from Spain by the signal victory of Vittoria (A.D. 1813).

War with Russia—Burning of Moscow, Sept., 1812.—Precisely at this time, northern and central Europe, uniting in one general league against Bonaparte, forever shook off his yoke. A little before, in 1812, having declared war again against the Russians, under the plea that they favored British commerce, he marched into their country with an army of nearly five hundred thousand men, French and allies, perfectly equipped and well disciplined. In the presence of such a host, the most formidable, it may be said, that the world ever beheld, the enemy, far inferior in numbers, wisely adopted the plan of acting on the defensive, and making a stand only at favorable positions. In its retreat, the Russian army laid waste all the country through which the invaders had to pass, and burnt the towns in which

they might have found shelter. Even Moscow, the ancient capital of Russia, which the French at last reached after the bloody victories of Smolensk and Moscowa, was nobly sacrificed to save the empire; during the very first night after their arrival, the city was simultaneously fired in several parts, and in a short time reduced to a heap of ruins.

Napoleon's retreat.—Thus deprived of winter quarters and of necessary provisions, surrounded by an exasperated enemy who had now collected his forces, Napoleon, after in vain offering peace to the emperor Alexander, commenced a retreat on the nineteenth of October. He had not proceeded far, when famine began to rage among his wearied troops; the Russian army, hovering around them, incessantly harassed and obstructed their march, especially at the crossing of rivers; winter set in with unusual severity; and the mortality from these various causes became so dreadful, that, when the campaign closed (on the thirteenth of December), it was found that upwards of two hundred and fifty thousand men had perished, besides nearly two hundred thousand made prisoners.

The great war of Liberation, 1813–1814.—Thus ended the memorable Russian expedition, the first of Napoleon's undertakings in which he was completely defeated, and the further consequences of which were for him of the most disastrous character. Prussia and Sweden now joined the Russians against the French emperor, and Austria with Bavaria soon imitated their example. Bonaparte, however, was not yet disposed to abate his high pretensions, and having, by astonishing exertions, recruited his army to about two hundred and eighty thousand men, he fearlessly encountered his still more numerous foes in the eventful campaign of Saxony (A. D. 1813). Such was even now the display of his military abilities and the courage of his troops, that he routed the allies at Lutzen, Bautzen, and Dresden with great slaughter, but without any permanent advantage. Their numbers always appeared the same, or rather to be daily increasing.

The great battle of Leipsic, Oct. 16, 18, 19, 1813.—They attacked him again under the walls of Leipsic with three hundred thousand troops and nine hundred

field pieces, while he could not concentrate at that point more than one hundred and seventy thousand men with seven hundred pieces of artillery. The conflict was one of the most awful during that tremendous war, and such as language cannot describe. For three days, the French maintained their position with undaunted courage, having, it is said, shot from their cannons the enormous number of two hundred and fifty thousand balls; but, on the third day, abandoned by the Saxons their allies, and overpowered by numbers, they were finally compelled to quit the field, with the dreadful loss of forty thousand men, besides a vast multitude of prisoners taken during the pursuit. Still, the vanquished preserved their usual courage, which they displayed at Hanau, by defeating the Bavarians who had dared to intercept their retreat. A free passage was thus opened for them to the French frontier; but their conquests in Germany were lost forever.

Passage of the allies across the Rhine.—Napoleon was now deserted by all his allies, and obliged to face alone the European league formed against him. The beginning of the year 1814 beheld half a million of men, Austrians, Russians, Prussians, etc., under their respective sovereigns, rush from all directions upon the French territory. They had previously issued a manifesto declaring their intention both to maintain France in all her rights as a nation, and to crush the military system of her ambitious ruler; a twofold object which their prudence and their decisive measures soon enabled them to attain. It was to no effect that Napoleon, by new examples of activity and courage, defeated the allies at Brienne, Montereau, Champaubert, and Montmirail. Having made a better arrangement of their forces, they at length moved towards Paris, and arrived near that capital before the French emperor, who was engaged elsewhere, could come to its relief.

Entrance of the allies into Paris, Mar. 31, 1814.—After a vigorous, though short and hopeless defence of the heights of Montmartre, terms of capitulation were signed; and, on the thirty-first of March, the allied sovereigns, with fifty thousand chosen troops, made their solemn entry into Paris, amidst the general and continued plaudits of the inhabitants, who received them more

as deliverers than as conquerors. A provisional government was formed, and a decree passed by the Senate, declaring that Napoleon Bonaparte had forfeited the throne. It was also decided that the Bourbon dynasty should be restored. France was allowed by the generosity of the allies not only to retain all her territory, but was given more. As to the fallen emperor, the island of Elba, in the Mediterranean, was allotted him with an annual revenue of six millions of francs.

Louis XVIII., 1814-1824.—The allied monarchs soon left Paris, where Louis XVIII., the brother of Louis XVI., arrived on the third of May, 1814, to take the throne. The pope, after five years' captivity, had returned to Rome; Bonaparte had also departed for Elba; and Europe, after so many and dreadful wars, began to enjoy a long desired and much needed repose, when the storm again burst upon it with renewed fury. The unexpected news arrived, that the dethroned emperor had escaped from his island and landed on the shores of Provence with an escort of nine hundred men. In fact, he was already on his way to Paris; the troops joined him from all quarters, and, on the twentieth of March, 1815, he triumphantly entered the capital, which Louis XVIII. had left but a few hours before for the northern frontier.

Napoleon's campaign—"The hundred days," Mar, 20 to June 29, 1815.—The intelligence of Napoleon's return quickly reached the ears of the great European potentates, then assembled at Vienna for the purpose of settling upon a sure basis the affairs of the continent. Surprised, but not dismayed, they declared that the ex-emperor of the French, by breaking the last treaty, "had placed himself without the pale of civil and social relations," and pledged themselves not to lay down their arms until he should be deprived of the power of ever again disturbing the tranquillity of the world. Bonaparte, on his side, was not idle in making adequate preparations for the approaching conflict. Having reorganized his army, he rapidly advanced towards the Belgian frontier, in order to attack the English under Wellington, and the Prussians under Blucher, before they could be joined by the Austrians and the Russians. His first operations were successful, the allies being obliged to make a retrograde movement, and the Prussians in particular having

German Confederation
Austrian
Prussian
England and Hanover
Netherlands
Danish
French
Savoyard
IRELAND
ENGLAND
WALES
LONDON
Amsterdam
Hague
Antwerp
Ghent
Boulogne
Brussels
NETHERLANDS
Copenhagen
SWEDEN
DENMARK
HOLSTEIN
Lubeck
MECKLENBURG
Hamburg
Bremen
HANOVER
Berlin
BRANDENBURG
POSEN
PRUSSIA
WEST PRUSSIA
EAST PRUSSIA
RUSSIA
Warsaw
POLAND
R. Vistula
R. Niemen
R. Bug
ISAXONY
Leipzig
WEIMAR
KM. OF SAXONY
SAXON DY.
Dresden
SILESIA
Rep. of Cracow
GALICIA
PRUSSIA
Köln
Frankfurt
Prague
BOHEMIA
MORAVIA
EMPIRE
Mainz
Luxemburg
Rouen
R. Seine
PARIS
Metz
Strasbourg
Regensbg.
CONFEDERATION
Munich
AUSTRIA
Vienna
HUNGARY
Pesth
R. Danube
R. Loire
Nantes
FRANCE
Bern
SWITZERLAND
TYROL
CARINTHIA
R. Drave
BANAT
Geneva
SAVOY
LOMBARDY
VENETIA
CARNIOLA
CROATIA
SLAVONIA
Bordeaux
R. Rhone
PIEDMONT
Turin
Milan
Venice
R. Po
Genoa
Piacenza
Parma
Modena
Bologna
Florence
Sn. Marino
PAPAL STATES
BOSNIA
SERVIA
DALMATIA
Toulouse
Nizza
Marseille
Leghorn
GD. DY. TUSCANY
ELBA
MONTENEGRO
SPAIN
CORSICA
ROME
TWO SICILIES
Naples
KM. OF SARDINIA
CENTRAL EUROPE
1815.
0
5
10
15
20
25
40
45
50

suffered a severe check in the battle of Ligny. He now directed his main efforts against the English, who had occupied a strong position near Waterloo; and, on the eighteenth of June of the same year, 1815, was fought the decisive battle on which the peace of Europe and his own fate depended.

Battle of Waterloo, June 18, 1815.—The two armies, under the command of such wonderful men as Napoleon and Wellington, presented the most imposing appearance: they were nearly equal as well in discipline, valor, and spirit, as in numbers, which amounted to about seventy-five thousand men on each side. How dreadful must have been the conflict between troops of this character, every one may easily conceive. It commenced about noon with a tremendous cannonade, and was continued many hours with almost frantic fury, the French infantry and cavalry making incessant and desperate charges, which were all met with dauntless courage. Towards seven o'clock in the evening, Bonaparte ordered another and stronger attack upon the British line; his celebrated guard resolutely advanced in double column, but was received with such a galling fire from the enemy's artillery and musketry as to be soon compelled to give way, and had now to receive in their turn a charge from the English. Just at this decisive moment, the Prussians, having by a skilful march deceived Grouchy, who was opposed to them, joined their allies, and opened a heavy cannonade on the right wing and rear of the French. It was a moment of irretrievable confusion: those brave columns of Napoleon, just before so formidable, now broken and unable to rally, at last fled from that scene of carnage where they left twenty thousand slain, and, being closely pursued by the Prussians, dispersed in every direction. Truly awful was the loss of the English also in this ever memorable battle, since it amounted to six hundred officers, eleven generals, and fifteen thousand men killed and wounded. Still, the victory of the allies was complete; all the artillery of the vanquished army, consisting of three hundred guns, fell into their hands, and the power of Bonaparte was now prostrated, to rise no more.

Second capture of Paris, July 7, 1815.—Wellington, not being opposed in his march, soon appeared with

his victorious troops in sight of Paris. That capital was again entered and occupied for a time by the confederates; while the remnant of the imperial army was obliged to retreat beyond the river Loire. The Bourbons once more recovered their throne; but France was not so advantageously treated by the allied monarchs as she had been at the time of the first invasion: besides a variety of severe and humiliating conditions to which she had to submit, she was obliged to pay about seven hundred and fifty millions of francs as an indemnity for the expenses of the war.

Napoleon transported to St. Helena.—In the meantime, Bonaparte, who had already left Paris, withdrew to Rochefort, a seaport on the western coast of France, in hopes of being able to effect his passage to America. That port was, however, too closely blockaded by English cruisers, to permit any escape; the emperor, therefore resolved at length to throw himself on the protection of the British government, and went on board their ship of the line, the Bellerophon, stationed at a short distance from the shore. It was immediately determined to send him to St. Helena, a remote island in the middle of the Atlantic, as a place where he could be kept in perfect security, without too much confinement or restraint. Here, in the society of a few devoted friends who had chosen to accompany him to the place of his exile, he lived about six years, spending much time and labor in dictating memoirs of his own life. The assistance of a priest and the consolations of religion, for which he had earnestly begged, consoled his last moments; and the fifth of May, 1821, closed the earthly career of that extraordinary man before whom Europe had so long trembled, and who, notwithstanding the sad reverses which clouded the evening of his life, is justly considered the most powerful genius and the greatest captain of the age.

SECOND AMERICAN WAR.—A. D. 1812-1815.

War declared against England.—England was still engaged in her perilous and gigantic struggle against the emperor of the French, when, by a series of violations of the rights of maritime commerce, she again provoked the hostility of the Americans. This may be called a

political fault so much the greater, as the United States had, during the recent years, rapidly increased in population, wealth, and power, both through the industry of their inhabitants, the tide of immigration, and the admission of many new states, Louisiana, Kentucky, Ohio, etc., to their confederacy. New causes of provocation occurring between the ships of the two nations, and the majority of the American people desiring war for the redress of their grievances, Congress openly declared it on the eighteenth of June (A. D. 1812).

Unsuccessful invasions of Canada—final success of the American arms.—Its commencement was very unfavorable to the arms of the United States, as all attempts then made at the northern frontier to invade Canada were not only fruitless, but also attended with considerable loss of men and ammunition. However, the spirit of the people was not subdued, nor the army disheartened, and before the close of the year 1813, they began to reap the fruit of their perseverance by capturing, under the direction of Commodore Perry, the whole British fleet on lake Erie, and gaining, under General Harrison, the victory of the Thames, by which were recovered the posts previously surrendered to the enemy. Another victory on land near the cataract of Niagara, and the destruction of another British flotilla on lake Champlain, gave the Americans a decided superiority in this region, at least with regard to the defence and protection of their own territory.

Battle of North Point, Sept. 11, 1814.—Their sea-fights were also generally successful, so much so, that almost every week brought the tidings of some brilliant capture made, or some splendid exploit achieved by the spirit and intrepidity of American seamen; but success upon the land was more equally divided. Five or six thousand troops under General Ross, having reached the vicinity of Washington, routed the American force, amounting to seven or eight thousand men, including militia. The city was abandoned by the president and the heads of departments, and soon after entered by the conquerors, who did not, however, occupy it more than one day. Elated with success, they resolved to undertake also the capture of Baltimore, intending to make this important place their winter quarters. Their landing at

North Point, on the eleventh of September, 1814, met with little or no opposition; but their general Ross being killed, on the twelfth, in his advance towards the city, and all the attacks made by his vessels and troops on Fort McHenry being bravely repulsed, they were compelled to abandon the enterprise.

Defeat of the English at New Orleans.—The English directed now their main efforts against the Southern States. New Orleans being their principal object, a powerful fleet was fitted out for an attack on this opulent city. Fortunately, an able and experienced commander, one already distinguished for his campaigns in other parts of the Union, General Jackson, was there to oppose the enemy. Besides his regular troops and the militia of the neighboring States, he required every citizen who could bear arms, to take an active part in the military operations on which the safety of all depended. The fortifications were strengthened; an extensive line of works was erected four miles below the town, well furnished with artillery; and, the better to protect his troops from the fire of the assailants, Jackson conceived the happy idea of covering the intrenchments with a great number of cotton bales. In this favorable position, he resolutely defied every attack of the enemy.

In the latter part of December, of the year 1814, the English, under the cover of their batteries, made several attempts to carry by storm the fortifications before them; but they were invariably repulsed by the superior fire of the American artillery. The final attack on the main works, was reserved for the eighth of January following. It lasted about one hour and a half, during which the valor of the assailants only served to expose them without adequate defence to the incessant and destructive fire from the artillery and musketry of the besieged; while the breast-works of cotton-bales, which no ball could penetrate, afforded them complete protection. The British were obliged to retire from the sanguinary conflict with the loss of two thousand six hundred men, wounded, captured, or slain, including their general Pakenham and their chief officers; while the victorious Americans had not lost, in this decisive action, more than six killed and seven wounded.

The news of this important victory filled the whole

country with exultation, and was the closing event of the second American war. Shortly after, intelligence was received from Europe of the peace concluded by the American and English commissioners assembled at Ghent for that purpose. The treaty, already signed by the court of England, was ratified by the President and Senate of the United States in February (A.D. 1815); and thus, in the same year, with the interval of a few months, peace was re-established in America by the treaty of Ghent, and in Europe by the second fall of Bonaparte.

VIEW OF THE CIVILIZED WORLD AFTER THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA, 1815.

It may be said that the acts of the Congress of Vienna established the basis on which the more recent events up to 1902 have to be explained and understood, so that it seems not superfluous to summarize briefly what was done by this august assembly of monarchs and prime-ministers.

1. The *Austrian* and *Prussian* monarchies were restored. The former, Austria, received besides the Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom (conferred upon her by the treaty of Campo Formio) the Illyrian provinces, viz., Illyria and Dalmatia, Salzburg and Galicia (part of the old Kingdom of Poland), while the latter, Prussia, received part of the Grand-Duchy of Warsaw, part of Pomerania with Rügen and its old possessions in Westphalia, also part of Saxony as compensation for what it ceded to Bavaria.

2. The Kingdom of the *Netherlands* was formed by uniting the republic of Holland with Austrian Belgium under the former hereditary Prince, as King William I.

3. The *German Confederacy* was created by the acceptance of the "Bundesakte" on June 10, 1815, consisting of 34 monarchical states, and the four free cities with the seat of the "Bundesrath" at Frankfort-on-the-Main.

4. Russia received the greater part of the Grand-Duchy of Warsaw as Kingdom of Poland.

5. England retained Malta, Heligoland and the Protectorate over the seven Ionian islands, which latter were ceded to Greece by the treaties of 1863 and 1864.

6. Sweden retained Norway.

7. The nineteen Cantons of Switzerland were increased to twenty-two.

8. The old dynasties were restored in Spain, Sardinia, Tuscany, Modena, and the Papal States.

The leading powers appeared generally desirous of enjoying in repose the laurels which their respective countries had won in the field, and to contend for the palm of national pre-eminence only by the arts of peaceful and prosperous industry.

To Great Britain, above all, belonged the honor of arresting the course of the French revolutionary armies and of Napoleon's ambitious career. Notwithstanding the heavy taxes laid on her citizens, and the prodigious amount of her national debt, increased already to about four billions of dollars, she seemed to have attained the height of power and political influence, chiefly by the superiority of her naval force. In 1827, the world beheld her successfully protecting the independence of Greece against the Turks, and afterwards the Turks themselves against the encroachments of the new Egyptian dynasty; defending her immense possessions in the East and West; chastising the pirates of the Mediterranean; attacking the Chinese, and compelling them to conclude a disadvantageous peace, etc. Among the most remarkable of her civil acts, was the act of emancipation from civil disabilities and persecuting laws, granted to her Catholic subjects in 1829, an example of moderation and justice, too long withheld and yet highly worthy of imitation, but which, it seems, was little valued and still less followed by the King of Prussia, Frederic William III., and especially by the Russian autocrat Nicholas.

Like Great Britain, France continued, after so many disturbances and storms, to occupy that high national rank which her advantageous position, her vast agricultural and industrial resources, and the lofty spirit of her people entitled her to hold among the European powers. Neither the clashing of parties, nor the substitution of the Orleans in the place of the Bourbon dynasty, prevented her from enhancing her military glory. Not only did she fully share with England and Russia in the victory gained at Navarino over the Turks; but the successful expedition of Spain under Louis XVIII., the still more brilliant conquest of Algiers under Charles X., the

siege of Antwerp and the capture of Vera Cruz under Louis Philippe, again showed to the world, what, even after the disasters of Napoleon's last campaigns, could be effected by French valor, skill, and discipline. Notwithstanding a thousand difficulties, Louis Philippe held the reigns of government with such firmness and prudence as to attract the admiration even of his enemies. Yet, all his talents and skill were not able to reconcile the different political parties into which the French people were divided, nor save his own government from a strong opposition that threatened a new revolution in France.

Austria, Russia, and Prussia, which had suffered most from the wars of Bonaparte, not only repaired their losses, but even acquired in the final settlement of their claims, a greater extent of territory. Among the chief European States, Spain was the most unfortunate. In consequence of the impolitic measures of King Ferdinand VII., and a variety of other causes, revolutions and civil wars continued almost without interruption, up to the downfall of the tyrannical regent Espartero (1843), to desolate that noble country, the land of chivalry and heroism, formerly so greatly celebrated for her national and political strength, and so long placed at the head of European civilization. Nor was this the only misfortune that befel the Spaniards. All their colonies in the New World, except Cuba and Porto Rico, successively threw off their allegiance to the mother country, and established independent governments, viz.: Buenos Ayres, in 1816; Chili, 1818; Peru and Bolivia, 1821–1824; Colombia, towards 1820, divided into three separate States in 183-. Guatemala and Mexico, 1820–1824. All these became so many Confederacies or Republics, from which others have sprung up since; but none of them reached a flourishing and powerful position approaching in the least to that of the United North American States.

Here, notwithstanding occasional embarrassment in the finances, the country had constantly advanced in population and importance. The number of its inhabitants, owing to the incessant influx of emigrants from Europe, had become, by 1844, five times greater than it was sixty years before, at the close of the war of independence. Thirteen new States had been added to the thirteen which first composed the Union, while their neighbors,

the Texans, had just applied to be also received into the great Union. Besides, the prosperous condition of agriculture and manufactures; the steady development of foreign commerce and inland trade, together with the extent and resources of the land, the wisdom hitherto displayed by its chief rulers, and the active, industrious and enterprising spirit of the people, left, even at that epoch, but little room to doubt that the United States were destined to possess a considerable share of influence in the future destinies of the civilized world.

ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.—MEXICAN WAR AND ITS CONSEQUENCES.—A.D. 1845-1848.

The proposed annexation of Texas to the United States had, for several years, met with little encouragement from the cabinet at Washington. The scheme, however, began to be actively advocated during the latter part of Mr. Tyler's presidency; yet, on account of new difficulties, it was not carried into effect till 1845, the first year of President Polk's administration. During the course of that year the terms of annexation were settled by both parties, and Texas was declared a State of the American union. It had won its independence from Mexico in 1836; but the boundary between them was still in dispute, and the United States sent troops to protect the claims of Texas.

This momentous transaction, irrevocably depriving the Mexicans of a vast territory, was not concluded without loud protests on their part; they naturally complained of it, through their ministers and ambassadors, as an infringement of their rights. They appealed to the treaty of friendship existing between the two nations, and openly denounced the annexation of Texas, and its occupation by an American force as a violation of that treaty. So strong, indeed, was this feeling among them, that their government, under President Herrera, having shown a disposition to settle their differences with the American government in a peaceful manner, was suddenly overthrown, to make room for the presidency of General Paredes. Troops were assembled and stationed on the frontier, to the number of about eight thousand, under the command of General Arista.

The Americans had taken similar action and their troops had already advanced to occupy the disputed territory. The first action that took place between the hostile parties, was an encounter, in which the Americans lost sixty-three dragoons, killed, wounded, or prisoners. A few days later, a body of Texans was surprised in their camp, and several were slain or wounded. These beginnings seemed very inauspicious for the American cause; but things wore a quite different aspect when General Taylor, being appointed commander-in-chief for that distant theatre of the war, appeared in person on the field, and was enabled to fight regular battles.

Battle of Palo Alto.—This able leader having, after his arrival in the Texan territory, been stationed successively in various places, finally took up his position near the Rio Grande (also called Rio Bravo del Norte), within cannon-shot of the city of Matamoras. He had not however completed his intrenchments, when he was informed that Point Isabel, where he had left a large supply of provisions and ammunition, was seriously threatened by the Mexicans. With the main part of his army, he quickly retraced his steps towards that important point, to prevent it from falling into the hands of the enemy. Having attained his object, and garrisoned the place with fresh troops, he again set out for Matamoras, and, on the second day of his march (8th of May, 1846), discovered near Palo Alto the Mexican forces drawn up in battle array, and waiting for his approach. Although his force did not exceed two thousand three hundred men, while that of the Mexicans amounted, it is believed, to nearly seven thousand, he did not decline the combat. On the side of the Americans, it was carried on chiefly by artillery, and such was the superiority of their fire that, after an action of about five hours, the enemy's columns were thrown into disorder and driven back from their position.* General Arista retreated during the night, and occupied a new and favorable position at Resaca de la Palma, a few miles distant from Palo Alto. On the following day, as the two hostile armies met again, another engagement immediately ensued.

The Mexican artillery commenced the action, and

---

* *Report of General Taylor*, dated May 9, 1846.

inflicted severe loss on the American lines. It became necessary to dislodge the enemy from the ground which they occupied; this was done by a succession of skilful movements and vigorous charges. Their artillery was silenced; La Vega, one of their best generals, was made prisoner; and their ranks now broken on all sides, were no longer able to bear the well-directed fire continually poured upon them by the American musketry and artillery. They fled from the field precipitately, and being warmly pursued, continued their flight till they placed the Rio Grande between themselves and their pursuers. No cowardice, however, no feebleness should be imputed to them. They had behaved and fought well, and they were defeated only because, in the natural course of events, mere courage must yield to at least equal valor aided by superior bodily strength, military skill, science and discipline.

"In these engagements," says a well-informed historian, "the commander of the American forces, General Zachary Taylor, displayed the utmost coolness and bravery—exposing himself in the most dangerous positions, and encouraging his troops by his heroic example. After the battles were ended, his attention to the wounded and the dying, whether friend or foe, evinced that sympathy for suffering humanity, which is ever inseparable from true courage."* To this merited praise, we must add that General Taylor, in his reports of the campaign, evinced not less modesty in speaking of himself, than sincerity in extolling the bravery of his officers and soldiers.

During these operations of the main body of the army, a detachment previously left for the defence of the field-work opposite to Matamoras, equally distinguished themselves by their gallant behavior. They lost, it is true, their intrepid commander, Major Brown; yet they successfully sustained a severe cannonade and bombardment which continued one hundred and sixty-eight hours, till at length the fort was relieved, and the siege raised, by the arrival of Taylor's army immediately after the victories of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.

Capture of Monterey.—So much success obtained

* Mansfield, *Mexican War*, ch. ii. pp. 38, 39.

within so short a time inspired the Americans not only with great joy and confidence, but also with a violent thirst for new conquests. No longer satisfied with the possession of Texas, they now prepared to penetrate into the heart of the Mexican territory, particularly as valuable reinforcements had been received, and the effective troops, independently of garrisons left in some places, amounted to nearly seven thousand men, full of hope and courage. They advanced in three divisions towards the south, and on the 19th of September, they arrived in sight of Monterey (the capital of New Leon, having met during their march no resistance except from skirmishing parties of Mexican cavalry.

Monterey is described by historians as an important place, well fortified both by nature and art. The garrison, under the command of Pedro Ampudia, consisted, it is said, of about seven thousand regular troops, and two or three thousand irregulars, being consequently more numerous than the whole besieging army. Notwithstanding these strong defences, General Taylor thought it possible to carry the city by storm, by artillery and the bayonet. His hopes were realized.

The attack began on the 20th of September, and was renewed during three successive days. The besiegers were occasionally repulsed at some points; but several divisions gained ground, till at length, they succeeded in carrying the outer posts and fortifications, and in occupying several parts of the city.

As the Mexicans, however, had offered a brave resistance, and their artillery in particular had inflicted great loss on the Americans, the final success of the latter was not obtained without considerable loss. The attack on the citadel, if attempted, threatened to cost them the lives of many other brave soldiers. This consideration, added to other cogent reasons, induced the commander-in-chief to lend a willing ear to the proposals made, on the 24th of September, by General Ampudia. This officer offered to surrender the city and the citadel, on favorable and honorable terms. They were granted, and the Mexican troops withdrew from the place with all the honors of war.

The surrender of Monterey opened a large field to the enterprising spirit of the Americans; during the next

three months they subdued a vast extent of country, and occupied the important places of Saltillo, Tampico, and Victoria. Nor was the work of conquest carried on merely in this portion of the Mexican republic. Other expeditions had, in the interim, been set on foot by the cabinet at Washington, for the purpose of detaching from the central government of Mexico its northern and north-western provinces. These expeditions were placed under the command of General Wool, on the one hand, and, on the other, of General Kearney, assisted by the intrepid Colonel Doniphan. They did not, at the time, gain any material advantage, yet they also contributed to show the power of American energy and valor, and subdued a very considerable, though almost uninhabited, territory.

Success of the American arms on the Pacific coast.—About the same time, or even before the events just related, similar events took place in California. These were accomplished through Captain Fremont, an officer equally distinguished for bold enterprise and scientific attainments. With less than two hundred riflemen, he defeated and drove before him all the Mexicans on his way, and reinforced by Commodore Stockton, entered the Californian capital in the month of August, 1846. Thus was completed in a short campaign, and almost without bloodshed, the conquest of California.

Battle of Buena Vista, Feb'y, 1847.—However surprising these exploits, still greater and more important were performed by General Taylor. He was now far advanced in his march across Mexico, when he received information of the approach of a hostile force, amounting to at least twenty thousand men. To this great number the American general could hardly oppose five thousand soldiers, as his army had been reduced by sending a very considerable portion of his forces to fight under General Scott, but, as compensation for this great disparity, he possessed brave and skilful officers, excellent artillery, and a strong position, selected by himself, on the heights of Buena Vista.

The two armies were in sight of each other on the 22d of February, 1847. The celebrated leader, Santa Anna, then at the head of the Mexican forces, was so confident of victory, that, before commencing the attack, he sent a message to General Taylor, summoning him to

surrender unconditionally. Of course no satisfactory answer was returned, and the conflict began on the same day, too late however in the evening for any material result; the decisive action was reserved for the following day, the 23d, a day forever memorable in the annals of American warfare.

The battle lasted from seven in the morning to six in the evening, which alone shows how warmly it was contested. Twice during the day, the Mexicans, by their superior numbers, their bravery, and the generalship of their commander-in-chief, obtained a considerable, although only partial and transient advantage. Marching on to the attack with determined vigor, they outflanked the left and going to the rear of their opponents, forced some regiments to fall back with great loss and in disorder, and, occupying their position, placed the whole American army in imminent peril. But the heroic calmness of General Taylor, the wisdom of his orders, their prompt execution, the steady fire of his artillery, which produced dreadful havoc among the dense masses of the assailants, and the stern intrepidity of a large number of his troops, at length won the day, and left him in possession of the field.*

The Mexicans, thus foiled in their attempt to carry the American position, retreated during the night, having lost even according to Santa Anna's account, more than fifteen hundred men killed and wounded, while the remainder, exposed to painful privations and given up to despondency scattered themselves in different directions, either following their officers, or altogether abandoning their standards. Hence the issue of the battle of Buena Vista was of immense advantage to the Americans; it left them absolute masters of the field, secured for

---

*The Mexican general, in his report of the battle of Buena Vista, repeatedly intimates that victory had been on his side; but these expressions cannot be understood to mean any thing else than the momentary successes which he obtained at different parts of the day. From his own account, the ultimate result was certainly against him. Independently of the disappointment and discontent which characterize his letter, and bespeak the vanquished rather than the victorious general, Santa Anna candidly admits, 1st, that he could not, as he intended, drive the Americans from their last intrenchment, and 2d, that no later than the ensuing night, he was compelled by circumstances to withdraw from the field of battle. Does not this amount to an implicit acknowledgment of failure on his part, and ultimate success to the Americans?

them the frontier of the Rio Grande, and while it crowned their exploits on that side, spread terror and dismay through the Mexican nation.

The war was now mainly by orders from the American government, to be carried on in another part of the country. About this time, General Scott, who had hitherto been actively engaged in making the necessary arrangements for the troops, arrived from Washington to take in person a still more active share in the war. He was not to change General Taylor's plan of operations; but he had been appointed to act as commander-in-chief, and to have the direction of the main expedition against Mexico.

Capitulation of Vera Cruz.—General Scott reached by sea the frontiers of the Mexican republic. Having collected twelve thousand men, and being provided with everything necessary for a siege, he landed them without any loss, at a short distance from Vera Cruz. The bombardment of this city began on the 22d of March, 1847, and was continued for four days in succession, with awful activity and terrible effect. All that time, the defence of the Mexicans was spirited and obstinate; but after the 26th, at the sight of the immense havoc that had been already produced, they at length, in order to avoid entire destruction, resolved to surrender. Two days later, the articles of capitulation were signed. Full protection was secured to the inhabitants; the honors of war were granted to the garrison; the Mexican troops, upon these terms, evacuated the place, and the American flag waved over the city of Vera Cruz and its renowned fortress, the Castle of San Juan d'Ulloa.

As soon as the necessary preparation could be made, the victorious army advanced into the Mexican territory, in the direction of Jalapa; but, before they reached this place, a new and formidable obstacle presented itself. It was necessary to cross a ridge of high mountains, and the almost impregnable heights of Cerro Gordo, fortified both by nature and art. Here again stood Santa Anna, ready to oppose their passage. After his repulse at Buena Vista, this general had rapidly traversed the central provinces with a considerable portion of his troops, and now, at the head of fifteen thousand men, sought to defend a position naturally so strong, with batteries and intrenchments.

Battle of Cerro Gordo.—It seemed rashness to assault a position of this kind; yet so urgent was the necessity of an attempt, and so great the confidence of General Scott in the valor of his troops, that the attack was resolved upon for the 18th of April. The orders to the several divisions of the army, and the directions for their intended movements, were given with almost prophetic exactness; and the execution on the part of the officers and soldiers was equally admirable. Those in front were, it is true, compelled, after bravely fighting, to withdraw before the Mexican batteries; but their gallant effort was not altogether fruitless, as it occupied the enemy's attention on that side. Those in flank, although likewise exposed to a murderous fire of artillery and musketry, ascended the long and difficult slope of Cerro Gordo with the utmost steadiness, reached the breastworks of that fortress, drove the Mexicans from them, planted their colors, and after some minutes more of sharp firing, finished the conquest with the bayonet.

This memorable action cost the Americans about two hundred and fifty men killed or wounded, among whom were several officers of distinction. In return for this loss, they had obtained a complete triumph; and so great a quantity of large guns, stands of arms and ammunition, fell into their hands, that they were really embarrassed by the results of victory. The Mexicans, besides, lost a great number of slain and wounded, and three thousand prisoners, together with five of their generals. The rest of their troops, eight thousand in number, under the command of Santa Anna, fled precipitately in the direction of Jalapa.

The city of Puebla entered by American troops in May, 1847.—The principal effect of the battle and capture of Cerro Gordo, very similar to that which followed the capture of Monterey, was to open for the Americans a free road towards the Mexican capital. They for some weeks advanced into the country with little or no opposition, taking possession, as they went on, of all the castles and towns in their way, among others of the ancient and populous city of Puebla, situated nearly midway between Vera Cruz and Mexico. That city was entered towards the middle of May, 1847, by the first division of the army under General Worth—a brave and

skilful officer, who, after having greatly distinguished himself under General Taylor, continued to serve under General Scott.

Thus, within the short space of two months, the city of Vera Cruz had been compelled to surrender; the famed castle of San Juan d'Ulloa was also taken; the almost impregnable tower of Cerro Gordo was carried by storm; the town of Jalapa entered; the strong fortress of Perote captured, and Puebla occupied. Ten thousand Mexicans made prisoners of war, and a vast amount of ammunition, splendid cannon and stand of arms, were the spoils of the victories won by the American troops in a campaign of only eight or nine weeks. History presents but few instances of achievements at the same time so brilliant and so rapid.

But the American army itself had met with severe losses, and its numbers were greatly reduced, not only by death on the field of battle, but also by fatigue, disease, or desertion, and by the departure of several corps, after one year of service. This obliged General Scott to reside for some months in the city of Puebla, in expectation of new reinforcements. When these arrived, and his army was again placed on a respectable footing, he resumed his march towards Mexico; on the 18th of August, his forces amounting to about ten thousand men, were concentrated near San Augustin, nine miles south of that capital.

Capture of the city of Mexico in Sept., 1847.—On the 20th of August, the Americans attacked all the fortified posts occupied by the enemy in their neighborhood, and notwithstanding the intrenchments, and the numerical superiority of the Mexicans, carried them all with the sword and the bayonet. The well-contested battle of Churubusco, fought in the evening of the same memorable day, completed the success of the previous partial actions. It lasted three hours, with terrible and incessant discharges of musketry and artillery from both sides. At last the Americans conquered, and the Mexicans were defeated in every part of the field, with the loss of several thousand men killed, wounded, or prisoners.

To prevent further bloodshed, negotiations for a capitulation were opened, but they failed, and General Scott ordered the final attack. In spite of new dangers, occasioned both by the nature of the ground and by various

fortifications in the neighborhood and at the entrance of Mexico, the American troops made their advance with but little interruption. This indeed required strenuous efforts, and cost the lives of many brave officers and soldiers, especially in the storming of the formidable defences of Chapultepec, Molino del Rey and Casa de Mata; yet every obstacle yielded to their undaunted energy, and a series of well-directed and successful attacks, during the space of forty-eight hours, at last made them masters of the great Mexican capital (September, 1847 *).

Conclusion of the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. —The Mexicans had, up to this moment, entertained the hope of driving the American forces from their territory. This hope must now have vanished before the stern evidence of facts. The federal government and General Santa Anna fled; a deputation of the city council was sent to the American leader, and negotiations were begun to treat of peace. The terms, being settled between the commissioners of each party, were forwarded to the government at Washington, and here they underwent some alterations and amendments, which the Mexican congress accepted without much difficulty. After the ratification had taken place on their part, "the American commissioners officially informed the secretary of state that the treaty was complete, and on the 19th of June, 1848, two years and two months from the commencement of the war, the American people were formally notified that there was peace between Mexico and the United States." †

The war had cost the lives of nearly twenty thousand Americans, who either fell in battle, or died of disease, while the cost amounted to upwards of one hundred and fifty millions of dollars; to which must be added the sum of fifteen millions of dollars to be paid to the Mexican republic, as an indemnification for their cession and loss of several extensive provinces. It is true that a vast territory had thus been acquired to the United States, and it cannot be denied that a surface of six hundred and thirty thousand square miles, including Upper California and New Mexico, was a valuable acquisition; yet as the

---

* See the official report of the commander-in-chief, General Scott, dated September 18, 1847, from the National Palace of Mexico.

† Mansfield, *Mexican War*, p. 332.

greater part of this immense tract of country was unproductive and uninhabited, it could scarcely have been considered a sufficient compensation for the vast expenditure of money and life, had it not been for the paramount advantages that were to arise from it, with regard to commerce and civilization. A great movement immediately took place towards these newly acquired possessions. Multitudes of emigrants hurried to the shores of the Pacific, for the purpose of working the golden mines of Upper California. Settlements were made, and the population increased, not only in California, but in New Mexico and Texas, with wonderful rapidity.

Such was the immediate effect of the Mexican treaty on the American people. As for the two distinguished men who acted the chief parts in the war, General Scott and General Taylor, they found a proper reward for their brilliant achievements in the esteem and gratitude of their fellow-citizens. The former enjoyed the honor of being considered one of the best generals of his time, and the latter, besides a similar reputation attached to his name, was raised, soon after the conclusion of the war, to the first dignity of his country, that of President of the United States. He died in the exercise of his functions, on the 9th of July, 1850.

DISTURBANCES AND REVOLUTIONS IN EUROPE.*—A.D. 1848-1850.

While the United States were thus rapidly rising in power and in extent of territory, Europe was given up to a series of political disturbances and revolutions. In various parts of the continent, either discontent under the

* The reader will easily perceive that the revolutionists of Europe are not viewed, here, in the same favorable light as they are by many persons on this side of the Atlantic. Want of sufficient acquaintance with the real state of things may be pleaded as an excuse for these persons; yet it is surprising that those European Socialists, Red Republicans, etc., should be considered the friends of liberal and free institutions, merely because they have continually in their mouths the words liberty and republicanism, while their real object, generally speaking, is no other than disorder, anarchy, plunder, and spoliation; even frequently assassination and bloodshed; in a word, oppression of others, and for themselves unrestrained license to commit every species of evil. This, in fact, is what their conduct and actions have sufficientiy given us to understand: "By their fruits you shall know them."

pressure of misery, or more frequently, a spirit of restlessness and insubordination, and an inordinate desire for social changes, gave rise to many violent outbreaks against governments. Besides several incidents of this kind that occurred in Switzerland, Germany, Prussia, etc., such was the case particularly with France, the Austrian dominions, and the different states of Italy.

France.—After the death of Louis XVIII. who was indebted for the throne to the foreign powers which had overthrown the first empire, his brother Charles X. succeeded him in 1824. The unpopularity of his government caused the so-called July Revolution in July, 1830, in consequence of which he abdicated for himself and his son, the duke of Angoulême, in favor of his grandson Henry, duke of Bordeaux (known as Count of Chambord), the son of Charles, duke of Berry, who had been murdered in 1820. The French peers, however, and the deputies had decided upon Louis Philippe, who belonged to the younger line of Orléans, who was raised to the throne as "King of the French." Neither the successful expedition against Algiers, which ended by the capture of Abd el Kadir by Lamoricière in 1847, nor the Soult-Guizot ministry was able to prevent the outbreak of the Revolution of February 22, 1848. Louis Philippe abdicated in favor of his grandson, the Count of Paris and retired to England where he died in 1850. France, being declared a second time a republic, became now the theatre of bloody barricade fights under the so-called provisional government.

The chief acts of this government were, on the one hand, an enormous increase of taxes, and on the other, the convocation of a national assembly, or congress, to be composed of representatives from all parts of France, and whose chief object was the framing of a new constitution for the country. This was accordingly done, and the session voted for a republican form of government, in which the legislative power should reside in a national assembly, consisting of seven hundred representatives elected for three years, and the executive power in a president, chosen for four years by a majority of the people.

But these regulations did not satisfy a certain class of men, who, under the name of *Red Republicans* or *Socialists*, wished to destroy every distinction of rank, every

inequality of fortune, and, contrary to all regulations of property, aimed at enriching one-half of the people, and themselves first of all, at the expense of the other half. The followers of this party resting their hopes much more on continual changes of government than on any regular state of things, prepared to make, in the very centre of Paris, a mighty effort to frustrate the plans of the national assembly, bring the city under their own control, and effect a new revolution.

Numerous and well-organized forces, supplies of guns and ammunition, a well-combined plan of attack, skilful leaders, barricades and other fortifications, all contributed to render the Parisian insurrection of June, 1848, one of the most formidable attempts that ever threatened the existence of social order. It required all the devotedness of the well-meaning citizens and troops, all the energy of General Cavaignac and other brave commanders, and three days of hard fighting and much bloodshed, to suppress entirely this terrible manifestation of the socialist party. Among all the victims of those days, the most conspicuous was M. Affre, archbishop of Paris, who, in his earnest desire to imitate the good shepherd that gives his life for his sheep, fell mortally wounded near a barricade, while endeavoring to pacify the misguided portion of his flock, and to effect a reconciliation.

The recent victory over the insurgents had done great honor to General Cavaignac, and raised him high in the esteem of the nation. Hence he appeared as a candidate for the presidency, and with great probability of success; but the tide of popular favor took another direction. Whether out of respect for the name of Napoleon, or through the hope of returning to a princely form of government, Louis Napoleon, a nephew of the great emperor of France, was elected, in December, 1848, president of the French republic.

Austria.—The revolutionary spirit pervaded, to a greater or less extent, Vienna, Prague, and other cities, together with Hungary, Lombardy, and other provinces. So violent indeed was the storm at a certain period, that the Emperor Ferdinand abdicated his crown, and executed his resolution towards the close of the year 1848, in behalf of his nephew, the Archduke Francis Joseph who ascended the throne as Emperor Francis Joseph I.

The court, however, while yielding something to the exigency of the times, did not sink under the weight of so many difficulties. With a firmness and energy worthy of the Austrian character, the government levied numerous troops, and, by persevering in their efforts, gradually succeeded in suppressing the insurrection in all the places and countries just mentioned.

The struggle was long and obstinately maintained, both in Hungary and Northern Italy. Led by the distinguished orator, Kossuth, the Hungarians had revolted, and declared their independence. A memorable struggle now followed (1848–1849), in which the patriotic Hungarians made a noble fight for freedom, but were at last overpowered and crushed by the combined Austrian and Russian armies. The Czar had been induced to aid in the suppression of the revolt, through fear that the example of successful rebellion on his frontier might be a dangerous incitement to his own discontented subjects.

The war in Northern Italy was not less decisive in favor of Austria. It seemed at first that the insurgents of Lombardy, aided by the chivalrous king of Sardinia, Charles Albert, would carry everything before them, and expel forever those whom they called *foreigners* from their terriority; but their triumph was very short, and their joy quickly taken away by subsequent reverses. Numerous armies of Austrians, pouring in from the Alps, soon restored the imperial power throughout Lombardy, and Charles Albert was not only disappointed in his lofty designs of conquest and aggrandizement, but even taught, by several defeats, to tremble for his own kingdom (A.D. 1848).

An armistice, however, was granted him by the conquerors. But as the two parties could not, in the interval, come to a settlement of their differences, preparations were made on both sides for a renewal of hostilities. There now existed a still greater disproportion between them than before, and the king of Sardinia, well aware of it, recommenced the struggle much against his own judgment, and compelled, as it were, by the earnest wishes of imprudent counsellors and subjects. The common feeling on the opposite side was quite the reverse; the armies of Austria, and their able commander-in-chief, Marshal

Radetski, were animated by the recollection of past success, and marched to the field of battle confident of future triumphs.

Radetski left Milan at the head of forty thousand men, on the 13th of March, 1849, and crossed the Ticino on the 20th, by the bridge at Vigevano. At that place he met with some slight resistance from the Piedmontese, but not of such a nature as to impede his progress; he therefore immediately advanced to Mortara, and, while with the main body of his troops he went on towards Vercelli, so disposed his left wing as to intercept one-half of the Piedmontese army. By this sudden and bold advance of their enemy, two of their divisions were separated from the rest, and Charles Albert, who commanded in person the other portion of the Sardinian army, was forced to give battle upon very unequal terms. He had scarcely any artillery, while the Austrians had upwards of a hundred field pieces, which enabled them to destroy thousands of the Piedmontese with grape-shot; hence the latter were entirely defeated, and compelled to retire precipitately towards Turin. This battle was fought on the 22d of March, nine days after the departure of Radetski from Milan.

On the following day, the two parties again met near Novara, where the Austrians gained a second victory still more signal and complete than the first. The Piedmontese made a still greater resistance than in the previous battle, and their loss was frightful, not being less, it is thought, than fifteen thousand men killed. The rest of their troops were driven in every direction; Charles Albert himself, after having during the conflict given proofs of the most determined courage, fled into Switzerland, and thence into Spain, not however till he had abdicated his crown in favor of his son Victor. Such was the result of those dreams of ambition, which had prompted him to believe that he might gain possession of all Northern Italy.

Marshal Radetski returned in triumph to Milan, after an absence of only eleven days, during which he had achieved one of the most glorious exploits of modern times. His victory proved a decisive one, and put an end to the war. In August following, a treaty was con-

cluded between the two states upon terms favorable to Austria, without, however, derogating from the honor of the Sardinian government.

Great disturbances and alarming insurrections had likewise occurred in the south of Italy, but all were also suppressed by the vigor and energy of the Neapolitan court. Indeed, the obstinate resistance of several cities especially in Sicily (for instance, Catania, Messina, and Syracuse), merely served to provoke against them measures of greater severity.

The Papal States—Owing to a variety of circumstances, affairs had not been so soon and so easily settled at Rome. Long before this, the enlightened and benevolent pontiff, Pius IX., had taken the lead of all contemporary sovereigns in granting liberal institutions to his people, and in doing for them whatever could reasonably be attempted for their prosperity and happiness. This beneficence at first excited universal applause and enthusiasm ; when, through the vile intrigues and machinations of his enemies, these just sentiments towards the pope were in a short time changed by revolt and ingratitude. There is no kind of outrage that was not perpetrated against his paternal authority by these enemies of order and virtue, whether natives of Rome or foreigners, the very dregs of European society. As their only object was to promote their own interest, even at the sacrifice of public and private tranquillity, the most abusive language, misrepresentations, calumnies, plots and assassinations, became at Rome the order of the day. Cowardice, or treason and rebellion, deprived the pope of every means of stopping these disorders; nay, his prime minister, Count Rossi, was publicly murdered, and he himself being attacked and imprisoned, as it were, in his own palace, was more and more exposed to the savage clamors and attempts of an infuriated rabble. At length, by the skilful management of the Bavarian and French ambassadors, he happily escaped from Rome, and travelling in haste, reached Gaeta, in the kingdom of Naples, where he met with the most cordial reception from both the king and the king's family and subjects (November, 1848).

The first solemn act performed by the pontiff in his exile was one of apostolic vigor. On the first of January,

1849, he excommunicated the usurpers of his power and the oppressors of his people, and, as this measure had little effect on persons who were total strangers to religion, honor, and humanity, he appealed, in order to check the course of their impious excesses, to the intervention of the Catholic powers. The appeal was readily responded to. While the Austrians, Neapolitans and Spaniards sent bodies of troops to the different provinces of the Ecclesiastical State, to re-establish in them the pope's authority, a French army, having landed at Civita Vecchia, fearlessly marched against Rome itself, defended as it was by fortifications, barricades, and, it is said, twenty-eight thousand Socialists, Romans and foreigners. The French met at first a trifling check, which merely taught them to be more cautious in their advance. The skill of General Oudinot and the bravery of his troops soon bore everything before them, and by destroying the works and carrying the strongest positions of the enemy, forced the city to an unconditional surrender, on the 29th of June, 1849. On the 2d of July, the victorious general entered it at the head of his army, and immediately proclaimed the restoration of the pontifical government; yet the pope's return to Rome was still postponed, and did not take place till the following April.

It fortunately happened in the following year, through a special intervention of the Providence of God, moved by the prayers of His people, that while another and frightful storm was gathering on all sides, the President of the French Republic, Napoleon, by suddenly concentrating the ruling policy in his hands, crippled the power of Socialism in France. Dissensions having arisen between the President and the Legislative Assembly, he suddenly dissolved that body, placed its leaders under arrest, and then appealed to the country to endorse what he had done. By a most extraordinary vote of 7,437,216, to 640,737, the nation approved of the President's *coup d'état*, and rewarded him for it by electing him President for ten years, which was virtually making him dictator. The next year (1852) he was made Emperor and took the title of Napoleon III.*

---

* The young duke of Reichstadt, son of the first Napoleon, is supposed, under the new dynasty, to have been, by right, Emperor Napoleon II.

CRIMEAN WAR.—A.D. 1854-1856.

In the year 1853, the East of Europe became again the theatre of momentous events. The Russian Czar, Nicholas, proud of his colossal power, and ill concealing his ambition under the plea of protecting the Greek subjects of the Ottoman empire,* declared war against the Turks, and himself opened the contest by invading the Danubian Provinces of the Turkish territory. Though the Russians had in the main been unsuccessful at first, and had even suffered great loss, especially at Giurgevo and before the walls of Silistria, the other great powers of Europe took the alarm, on seeing endangered the integrity of Turkey, the maintenance of which seemed necessary for the preservation of the balance of power in Europe. England and France, Prussia and Austria offered to mediate, but without success, and the war between the two empires continued. Accordingly, in the spring of the year 1854, England, under Queen Victoria, and France, under Napoleon III., espoused the cause of the Sultan.

Landing at Eupatoria—Battles of Alma—Storming of the Malakoff.—The allies having compelled the Russians to withdraw from the Danubian Provinces, began, in their turn, a war of aggression. They resolved to take possession of Sebastopol, which was the seat of the Russian power in the Crimean peninsula. On the 14th of September, the French, English and Turks landed at Eupatoria without meeting any resistance; and on the 20th, the battle of Alma opened for them the way to Sebastopol. The siege of that stronghold was one of the most memorable in history. Terrible was the attack by land and by sea, most courageous was the defence. The eyes of all Europe were turned towards Sebastopol, and all the efforts of the belligerents were concentrated at that point. The Czar sent thither constant reinforcements; the Western powers did the same. Every spot of ground in the neighborhood of the city witnessed some

* Strange to say, the emperor Nicholas pretended to vindicate the rights of his co-religionists, whom the Turkish government did not persecute, while he himself cruelly oppressed numbers of his unoffending Catholic subjects.

wonderful display of fortitude and valor. The siege in which the Sardinians took part in January, 1855, lasted, with almost daily encounters, until the beginning of September. The allies, then, thinking their work sufficiently advanced, fixed on the 8th of that month for a general assault. They opened it by a terrible bombardment, which began on the 5th, and was continued for three days and three nights. When the batteries ceased thundering, the besiegers rivalling one another in courage, precipitated themselves with astonishing intrepidity upon the defences of the enemy. Yet, it was not till after prodigies of valor, after being repulsed in six previous assaults, that the French succeeded in taking the Malakoff tower, which commanded the southern part of the city, and was the principal defence of Sebastopol. Before retiring, Prince Gortschakoff, the Russian commander, sank his fleet, blew up those portions both of the fortifications and of the town, which he was compelled to abandon, and fortified the northern part of Sebastopol. Here he continued for some time to desperately resist the most determined attacks; and when no longer able to withstand the combined efforts of his enemies, he made a skilful retreat, which enabled him to avoid a surrender.

The treaty of Paris of 1856.—Sebastopol had become by this time a heap of ruins. Her fall was the occasion first of an armistice, then of the treaty of Paris, which was signed on the 30th of March, 1856. By this treaty, the Sultan confirmed the rights of his Christian subjects; Russia renounced all protectorate over the Danubian Provinces; the navigation of the Danube was declared free from source to mouth; the Black Sea, of which Russia had been the sole mistress since the destruction of the Turkish navy at Navarino, became neutral, and was henceforth not to be entered by any vessel of war; nor could any fort be, in future, erected on its borders. Such were the conditions to which Alexander II., who had succeeded his father, Nicholas, during the siege, was forced to submit; conditions which took from Russia her most powerful means of action against Turkey, and made her lose all the advantages which it had taken her half a century to acquire. But, later on, after having terminated a terrible thirty years' war against the Circassians, utterly prostrated Poland, and

apparently formed a very close alliance with the United States, she seemed to renew the prosecution of her long meditated projects of aggrandizement at the expense of Turkey. It was doubtful whether the Western powers would ever again be sufficiently united and strong to stop the execution of an expansion so important in its results as to have elicited from Napoleon I. this noted saying: "Russia at Constantinople would become the mistress of the world."

THE ITALIAN WAR AND ITS CONSEQUENCES. A.D. 1859-1861.

Cause of the war.—The influence of Austria had become preponderant in Italy since 1849. She had a powerful army in her Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom; her troops occupied the Legations; she saw either Austrian archdukes or faithful allies in all the secular princes of the peninsula, excepting Victor Emmanuel II., King of Sardinia. Assured of the friendship of England, and trusting in the assistance of Napoleon III., Victor Emmanuel, whose policy was now directed by count Cavour, resolved to employ every means, not only to ruin the Austrian power in Italy, but also to take advantage of all the discontents, legitimate or otherwise, of the peninsula. For some time, he had been arming for this object, and had called to his aid volunteers from every other State of Italy. The emperor of Austria complained of such measures, and demanded the cessation of these preparations and the discharge of the volunteers. His protests being unheeded, he ordered his army to cross the Ticino and invaded the Sardinian territory.

Napoleon III. joins Italy against Austria.—Austria had already been advised of the consequences of this step, and Napoleon III. now marched his army into Italy, and placed himself at its head to direct the operations of the campaign. Then began a short but bloody war, in which both parties displayed the most heroic valor. The result of the great battle of Magenta, near the Ticino (June 14, 1859), was, for some time in doubt; finally the Austrians retreated and evacuated Milan. A second and more desperate engagement took place on the right bank of the Mincio, near Solferino (June 24), and lasted,

with varying success, from four o'clock in the morning till eight in the evening. The presence of their three sovereigns greatly animated the combatants. To the horrors of the conflict were added those of the elements. At four o'clock in the evening, a terrific hurricane swept over the two armies, and compelled them to suspend their bloody work. But the storm was hardly over, when the battle recommenced at all points with the same fury. At length, the Austrians who had engaged in the conflict with two hundred and twenty thousand men, and had suffered greater losses than their opponents, ceased fighting, recrossed the Mincio, and effected their retreat in good order, the enemy not daring to molest them. Though defeated, they had lost neither courage nor confidence, and they took a strong position in the vicinity of Verona.

This still formidable aspect of the vanquished, the difficulty of storming the fortresses that protected Venetia, the fear of seeing all Germany side with Austria, induced the victors promptly to make sure of Lombardy, already occupied by them, even at the price of abandoning their long-cherished plan of driving the Austrians from the whole peninsula. Therefore, on July 7, Napoleon sent an autograph letter to Francis-Joseph, and offered a truce to last till the 15th of August, which was accepted. The two emperors having met at Villafranca, resolved to conclude a peace, and agreed upon the chief points of the treaty. A more detailed discussion of these points took place at Zurich, whither the interested parties sent their plenipotentiaries. Napoleon secured the delivery of Lombardy to the King of Sardinia, and some months after, received in return Savoy and the County of Nice.

Italy's union—Spoliation of the Papal see.—But these were not the only results of the Italian war. The defeat of the Austrians had allowed the revolutionists to begin, immediately after the battle of Magenta, that transformation of Italy, which deprived several sovereigns of their dominions, and united the whole peninsula under the sway of the late King of Sardinia, now King of Italy. This unification its authors have tried to represent as the result of the free consent of the people; but it should rather be considered the work of a few men bribed by money to ask for annexation to Piedmont, while the

majority of the population were forcibly reduced to silence. The papal dominions were among the first that experienced the effect of such means, openly used or encouraged by the Sardinian government, and derisively styled moral. The Austrian garrison had no sooner withdrawn from Bologna, than the revolutionists in that city proclaimed as dictator, Victor Emmanuel, who ultimately united to his kingdom, in March, 1860, not only Bologna with all Romagna, a part of the papal territory; but, at the same time, the Duchies of Parma and Modena, and the Grand Duchy of Tuscany. Pius IX., seeing his protests against these usurpations unavailing, and his appeals to the Catholic powers for assistance unheeded, now called upon the faithful throughout Europe, to furnish him with the means of preventing any further progress of the revolution in the provinces still remaining under his authority. At his invitation, a French general of high reputation, De Lamoricière, generously undertook the difficult task of forming an efficient army. Attracted by the name of the hero and the holiness of the cause, young men of most distinguished families came in considerable numbers from all parts, to enlist under the standard of the Pope. But suddenly and without any declaration of war, a Sardinian army of sixty thousand men, well provided with artillery and headed by General Cialdini, crossed (Sept. 1860) the Roman frontiers, invaded the Marches, and at Castelfidardo, near Loretto, fell upon the heroic band of pontifical volunteers, who, overpowered by numbers, were either killed or captured. Their commander, De Lamoricière, succeeded in escaping to Ancona. But this city, deprived of all succor, and shelled by the Sardinian fleet, was forced after a few days' siege to surrender. With Ancona the Holy See lost the Marches and Umbria, that is to say, the remainder of her possessions, with the exception of a narrow territory along the Mediterranean, including the cities of Rome and Civita Vecchia with an aggregate population of about half a million of inhabitants.

The kingdom of Naples incorporated in Italy.— Meanwhile the revolution was progressing in other parts of Italy. In the beginning of May (1860,) Garibaldi, secretly assisted by England, landed in Sicily with two thousand volunteers; and secured the success of a revolt,

which had just broken out in that island. This being accomplished, he recrossed the sea to snatch from Francis II., the youthful king of the Two-Sicilies, his continental possessions. Treason, always in advance of the adventurer, opened the cities to him; and, without striking a blow, he entered Naples on the 7th of September. Then Cialdini, with the same army that had crushed the papal forces, at Castelfidardo, hastened to his assistance, and laid siege to Gaeta, which was bravely defended by Francis II. That city, however, being at length forced to surrender (13th of February, 1861,) Francis retired to Rome on board of a French vessel. A few days afterwards, the first Italian parliament, composed of deputies from all Italy, except Venetia and what remained of the States of the Church, assembled at Turin and proclaimed Victor Emmanuel II., King of Italy.

Rome becomes the Seat of the Italian Government, and the Pope a prisoner in the Vatican.— Venetia and Rome were still wanting to the new Kingdom of Italy. The efforts of Victor Emmanuel II. were therefore directed towards the acquisition of these two provinces. He accordingly joined Prussia in its war against Austria in 1866, and though himself defeated on land in the battle of Custozza on June 24, and at sea in the naval battle of Lissa on July 20, the defeat of Austria by Prussia obtained for him through Napoleon III., the province of Venetia. In 1867 Italian freebooters organized an expedition against Rome, the success of which induced Napoleon III. to send an army to Italy, where he gained a victory over them at Mentana. But the recalling of the French troops from Rome in 1870 offered to Victor Emmanuel an opportunity to annex the rest of the Papal dominions and transfer the seat of the Government to Rome. It is true a "law of guarantees" was soon enacted by which the sovereign rights of the Pope to the Vatican and Lateran Palace and also Castle Gandolfo were recognized and an annual allowance made to the Holy Father, but this unjustifiable usurpation and violation of international law has not been acceded to by Pope Pius IX., nor by his successor Leo. XIII., who continues to reside simply as a prisoner in Rome and has refused to accept the revenue which the Italian Government has been but too anxious to have him receive. Since then this abnormal state of affairs con-

tinues, but the Holy See upholds its sacred rights, and in spite of being imprisoned, the Pope has succeeded in gaining such a position of influence that the New German Empire under Prince Bismarck chose him as the arbitrator in a difficulty between Germany and Spain and has, moreover, found it to its own best interests to put an end to the "Culturkampf" by the abolition of the so-called "Falk-laws." Thus Providence preserves the See of St. Peter amidst the persecutions of every age. In 1878 Victor Emmanuel died, and his son Humbert ascended the throne. Pope Pius IX died very soon afterwards, and was succeeded by Cardinal Pecci as Leo XIII.

EUROPEAN EXPEDITIONS TO CHINA, COCHIN-CHINA, AND MEXICO.—A.D. 1857-1866.

Occupation of Canton—The treaty of Tien-Tsin.—In 1857, England and France undertook together an expedition against China, the former to avenge injuries done to her navy, the latter, the death of several of her missionaries. The capture of Canton and the threatening advance of the allies towards Pekin, forced the Chinese to sign at Tien-Tsin (June, 1858), a treaty, which gave the two Western powers the right of having an ambassador at Pekin; opened five new ports to European commerce; and guaranteed the free exercise of the Christian religion in the whole empire. In the following year, a renewal of hostilities by the Chinese once more compelled the allies to send against them considerable reinforcements. Their combined forces, triumphing over all resistance, boldly advanced under the very walls of Pekin, and entered the city on the 13th of October, 1860. The Tien-Tsin treaty was then ratified; the Chinese promised, besides, to restore to the Christians their religious establishments, to open three ports more, and pay a war indemnity of sixty millions of francs to each of the victorious powers.

The expedition against Annam ended by the treaty of Saigon, 1862.—This happy completion of the Chinese expedition enabled France to terminate another, which she had undertaken with Spain, in 1858, against Tu-Duc, emperor of Annam, in order to chastise him for his cruelties towards European missionaries,

and for insults to the French navy. The French and Spaniards had succeeded, soon after their arrival, in taking the cities of Touran and Saigon; but events in China interrupted operations. However, as soon as Napoleon could spare a part of the forces which he had sent against the Chinese, he ordered them to resume active hostilities against the Annamites. The success of his troops compelled Tu-Duc to sign the treaty of Saigon, June, 1862, which ceded three provinces to France and agreed to an indemnity for the expenses of the war, the opening of three ports in Tongking, and the free exercise of the Christian religion in the whole empire of Annam. Spain took no part in this latter expedition; but employing her energies in a field of action nearer home, and, in spite of her domestic troubles, in a short and glorious war against Morocco (1859) taught the Mohammedans to respect the life and religion of the Christians, and secured for herself pecuniary and territorial indemnities. She, moreover, in concert with England and France, sent, soon after, troops to Mexico.

The Mexican expedition and the treaty of London of 1861.—After the war between the United States and Mexico, the latter country, which had scarcely enjoyed a year of repose since the proclamation of her independence, was again greatly disturbed. Her internal dissensions were narrowed down to a fierce contest between the Church or conservative party and the liberals, whose aim was to abolish the special privileges of the clergy. A last struggle between President Miramon, chief of the conservative party, and Juarez, chief of the liberals, raised the latter to the Presidency (January 1861). Juarez immediately began to persecute the Church and organize a wholesale pillage of her properties. Without any regard for international law or previous treaties, he suspended or annulled such obligations as had been contracted by the preceding government of Mexico towards European governments. England, Spain, and France, whose honor and interests had been more particularly injured by his repeated acts of bad faith, signed a treaty known as the London Convention (30th of October, 1861), and resolved to act together against him.

The French troops in Mexico—Maximilian, Emperor of Mexico.—Before their troops had gone further

than the eastern coasts of Mexico, misunderstandings arose between the three European powers. England and Spain accepted money indemnities and withdrew their forces. Napoleon, however, persisted in carrying out unaided the original plan, reinforced his troops, and openly declared his intention of restoring order in the country and of furnishing it with the means of establishing a solid government. The French army, under General Forey, captured Puebla after a siege of two months (17th of May, 1863), and made its entrance into the city of Mexico in the following June. An assembly of Notables then convened in that capital; and at once, without debate, declared unanimously for an imperial government. The Archduke Maximilian of Austria was at the same time proclaimed emperor.

Maximilian's heroic death in 1867.—When this young and ambitious prince arrived in 1864 in Mexico, only about one half of the country had been conquered. Juarez had retired into the Northern provinces and the United States recognised the Republic under him, demanding at the same time that the French troops be withdrawn from Mexico. Emperor Napoleon III. acceded to this demand, and Emperor Maximilian, though gifted with excellent abilities, found it impossible to reconcile the claims of the liberals and conservatives, the imperial and the republican parties. With but few troops he continued the war, until surrounded in Queretaro, and by treachery captured. Juarez ordered him to be tried by a court-martial, and on June 19, 1867, the noble emperor, with two of his faithful generals, was shot in Queretaro. His body was afterward, by an Austrian squadron under Admiral Tegethoff, conveyed to Trieste, and finally interred in the vault of the church of the Capuchins in Vienna, where the members of the imperial family have been buried since 1633.

CIVIL WAR IN THE UNITED STATES. A.D. 1861-1865.

The Southern Confederacy formed under Jefferson Davis.—While the United States were advancing with rapid strides in population, wealth, and power, and presenting to the world the spectacle of a material pro-

gress truly unparalleled in history, they suddenly became the theatre of a gigantic civil war, which had its cause in the institution of domestic slavery. A large number of persons, particularly in the Northern States, had always regarded slavery as a blot on the escutcheon of the Republic, and towards the year 1832, commenced a political agitation for its abolition, which was followed by a counter-agitation for its maintenance. Two parties were thus formed; and on the election of Abraham Lincoln to the Presidency (Nov. 4, 1860), the pro-slavery party considering their interests insecure under his administration, resolved to carry out their long-threatened project of secession. Before the inauguration of the new President, and notwithstanding his promises to maintain the laws of the Union, the seven slave-holding States of South Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas (they were soon joined by the States of Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee) formed themselves into a separate CONFEDERACY, and elected Jefferson Davis, President. They hastened moreover to take possession of all the forts and public property within their limits, Major Anderson having refused to deliver up Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, was, on the 12th of April, 1861, attacked by five Confederate batteries under the command of General Beauregard. The fort surrendered on the afternoon of the 13th, and was evacuated on Sunday, the 14th. Uncontrollable excitement now filled the country, at this signal of war.

As the news flashed over the telegraphic wires, it was instantly followed by the summons of the President, "to arms." On the night of the 14th was issued his proclamation, ordering seventy-five thousand men into the field for the defence of the Union.

The battle of Bull Run.—In July, General McDowell, having command of the Federal force assembled around Washington, began to march upon Richmond, in Virginia, which had lately become the capital of the new Confederacy. He soon met with a portion of the Confederate troops, under the command of General Beauregard. On the 21st of July, a serious conflict between the two armies took place near a small creek named Bull Run, and terminated in the complete route of the Union forces. This defeat at once aroused the Northern States to more

energetic action, and to a keener sense of the magnitude of the struggle in which they were engaged. Congress immediately took efficacious measures to levy an immense army, and so great were the exertions made to promote volunteering, so liberal were the bounties offered to those who enlisted, that the number of troops in the field, by the beginning of the year 1862, exceeded four hundred and fifty thousand.* The Southerners, on their side, prepared for war with no less ardor. The success of Bull Run had awakened among them such a spirit of enthusiasm, and such confidence in the ultimate triumph of the Confederacy, that volunteers offered themselves in very large numbers. They were, however, found insufficient to resist the various corps of Federals, which operated simultaneously in Virginia, West Virginia, Tennessee, North Carolina, and Kentucky. The Confederate Congress then passed (April, 1862) an act of conscription, which declared every man, with a few exceptions, between the ages of eighteen and thirty-five years, a soldier. This measure, it was supposed would secure a sufficient number of men to repel successfully every assault of the enemy. By that time, the campaign had been fairly inaugurated and some important events had already taken place.

Surrender of Fort Donelson to U. S. Grant—Battle of Shiloh.—Fort Donelson on the Cumberland river was attacked in February by General Grant. For several days, the Confederate garrison obstinately defended every approach to the Fort. But, on the third day, the outer works were stormed by the Union troops, and the main redoubt that commanded the principal fortress, was carried. Early on the following morning, white flags of truce were discovered floating on the Confederate works. A correspondence opened between Generals Buckner and Grant. The result was the unconditional surrender to General Grant, of all the munitions of war and of thirteen thousand Confederate prisoners. Within two months of this brilliant affair, the now vic-

* The Federal forces amounted to a still greater number at the subsequent epochs, especially towards the end of the war; while it is said that the Confederates, owing to their smaller population and the embarrassed condition of their public finances, had hardly at any time more than three hundred thousand men in the field.

torious army of the North, in its turn, found itself in a very perilous situation. While it lay encamped at Pittsburg Landing, awaiting the arrival of a Federal corps under General Buell, Generals Beauregard, and A. S. Johnston resolved to profit by their present numerical superiority to fall upon the enemy, before the arrival of the expected succor. They accordingly attacked with great vigor the position of General Grant, made themselves masters of a part of his camp, and secured many prisoners. Darkness, however, by putting an end to the contest, changed the fortune of the combatants. The Union army having been reinforced by fresh troops from the army of the Ohio, recovered, on the next day, a portion of the captured artillery, and compelled the Confederates to give way and retreat. The slaughter on both sides was terrific, but the Union forces sustained the heaviest losses. A few days after this bloody battle, the country learned of the capture of New Orleans, by a combined force under Commodore Farragut and General Butler.

McClellan's Peninsular campaign.—Towards the middle of March, 1862, General McClellan, now commander of the army of the Potomac, embarked his troops at Alexandria, with the intention of making a sure and rapid movement upon Richmond. Not having the entire control of the James river, he landed his army at Fortress Monroe, and began to advance from that point towards the enemy's capital. The Confederate works before Yorktown soon arrested his march, and it was not till after the delay of a month, that he succeeded in securing that strong position. In spite of fresh obstacles, and though he had to fight for almost every inch of ground, he approached within a few miles of Richmond. But the enemy had by this time received large reinforcements, while his own army had been greatly reduced by losses during the campaign, and by sickness on the banks of the Chickahominy. Seeing himself opposed by superior numbers, he resolved by a flank movement towards the James river, to change his base of operations. For six days, the Confederates harassed his march by continual attacks, and even entertained the hope of capturing the entire Federal army. But the successful stand which

he made at Malvern Hill (July 1, 1862), a strong position under cover of the gunboats, checked all further demonstration against him on the part of the enemy, and terminated the Peninsular campaign.

The failure of this campaign induced the Confederate government to abandon their defensive policy. They resolved to invade the Union territory, in order to strike some important blow, which would enable them to dictate terms of peace. In vain did General Pope oppose the invading army under General Lee; he was compelled to retreat before the enemy, and was severely defeated at the second battle of Bull Run (30th of August, 1862). General McClellan, now recalled from Virginia, advanced with all the forces that were not required for the defence of Washington, to stop the onward march of the Confederates. He met them upon the banks of a stream in Maryland. made memorable by the bloody battle of Antietam. Each army numbered, it is said, a hundred thousand men. They began the conflict at daylight on the 17th of September, 1862, and fought with great resolution and various success, till night came on and put an end to the contest. General McClellan obtained indeed a substantial and decided success; but his own troops had suffered so severely, that it was deemed prudent to give them rest and refreshment before renewing the attack. On the night of the 18th, General Lee hastily withdrew his forces across the Potomac, and retired into Virginia.

In November, a change was made in the army of the Potomac. General McClellan was relieved of the command, and General Burnside, who was appointed to succeed him, immediately began a new advance upon Richmond. The march to the Confederate capital was to be made by the route through Fredericksburg, a city on the south bank of the Rappahannock, sixty-five miles from Richmond. General Lee occupied it with a part of his forces; the rest he had concentrated on the heights in the rear of the city. When the Federals attacked Fredericksburg, no greater opposition was made than was sufficient to tempt them to push forward with greater ardor. But as soon as they tried to storm the enemy's works on the heights, they were received with so terrific a fire of infantry and artillery, that, finding the position

too strong to be captured by assault, they gave up the attack, and profited by night to evacuate Fredericksburg (December 13, 1862).

Battle of Chancellorsville—Battle of Gettysburg.—The next advance upon Richmond was undertaken, in the following year, by the same army, now under General Hooker. Having crossed the Rappahannock with a hundred and twenty thousand men, a force far superior to that which General Lee could oppose to him, General Hooker succeeded in compelling the Confederates to quit their defences and accept the battle at Chancellorsville, Virginia, on ground of his own choice. But the result of this engagement which took place on the 2d and 3d of May, 1863, proved most disastrous to the Federals; and they were driven back beyond the Rappahannock, with a loss of eighteen thousand men. The Confederates had, on their side, to deplore the loss of their favorite General, Stonewall Jackson, whose daring, skill, and energy had greatly contributed to their past success, and especially in this last engagement at Chancellorsville. After this battle, General Lee, with the view of breaking up the Federal plan of campaign for the summer, and of transferring the scene of hostilities beyond Virginia, forded the Potomac, marched through Maryland into Pennsylvania, and concentrated his forces at Gettysburg, a county-town of the latter State. There he was met by General Meade, who drew up his troops in a strong position. On the 1st, 2d, and 3d of July, the two armies engaged in a terrible but decisive battle. On the third day, General Lee made desperate efforts to dislodge the Federals from their position; but finding it almost impregnable, and his ammunition being exhausted, he was compelled, after sustaining a loss of thirty thousand men, to retreat into Virginia with the remnants of his army.

Surrender of Vicksburg.—Two other heavy blows were at the same time inflicted upon the Confederates in the South. Thus far the navigation of the Mississippi river had remained closed between Port Hudson (Louisiana) and Vicksburg (Mississippi). General Grant, with the design of opening the river entirely, undertook an expedition against Vicksburg. But the approach to this

PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG.

To face p. 584.

place proved most difficult, owing to its position and the efforts of the enemy, under General J. E. Johnston, to retain the key of the great river. It was not till after several battles and a campaign of startling boldness, that General Grant succeeded, by the 19th of May, in investing Vicksburg. Its garrison, commanded by General Pemberton, and numbering over thirty thousand men, made a gallant defence; but their provisions becoming very scarce, and no hope remaining of receiving relief from General Johnston, they surrendered on the 4th of July, 1863.

The surrender of Vicksburg was followed by that of Port Hudson. The capture of these two strongholds entirely opened the Mississippi to navigation and commerce, greatly crippled the resources of the enemy, and broke up their facilities for communication between the States east and west of that river. Their territory was by this time well-nigh exhausted of men; and though they took every means to increase their forces; though nearly all of the male population had been called either to serve in the army or to assist in raising supplies; yet it is supposed that the whole number of men in the field at the beginning of the next campaign, did not exceed two hundred and fifty thousand. The Federal government, on the contrary, had then more than six hundred thousand soldiers. It could moreover, owing to the large population of the North and the Conscription Bill of the 3d of March, 1863, make new levies at will, and thus pour upon the now weakened Southern States any number of troops that circumstances might require.

U. S. Grant made Lieutenant-General and Commander-in-Chief.—Such was the state of affairs in May, 1864, at the renewal of hostilities. The main campaigns for that year were to be made by the armies of the Potomac, and of Chattanooga (Tennessee). The latter army, under General Sherman, was to march against Atlanta (Georgia), a town noted for its manufactures and as being an important centre of railroad communication between the Western and the Atlantic and Gulf States; the former army, under General Meade, was to march again upon the capital of the Confederacy. But General Grant, now Lieutenant-General, who superintended in person the army of the Potomac, had a plan more com-

prehensive than the mere capture of Richmond. His project was to secure the Confederate government, and, by combined movements, to destroy the forces of General Lee, and cut off all communications with Richmond. General Siegel was ordered to move up the Shenandoah Valley, and General Butler to move simultaneously with a heavy force up the James river for the purpose of capturing Petersburg, which was considered the key to the capital. The failure of these two expeditions in the west and south of Virginia, enabled the enemy to concentrate against General Grant. But in spite of their efforts, and of his own heavy losses, the Federal commander succeeded, by means of constant reinforcements of fresh troops, in pushing his way to the Chickahominy, which was the outer line of defence of Richmond, and afterwards in crossing the James river and uniting his forces with those of General Butler before Petersburg (June, 1864).

General Sherman's campaign in Georgia.—Meanwhile, events of no less importance were accomplished in Georgia. General J. E. Johnston, owing to the inferiority of his forces, was unable long to delay the advance of the Federals through the heart of the Confederacy. It was in vain that he successively occupied several strong positions on their route, hoping to decimate their numbers by successive engagements; the vigor and skill of General Sherman baffled his projects, and the Confederate government, disapproving of his defensive tactics, relieved him from the command. Nor did the impetuous bravery of his successor, General Hood, have any other effect than to precipitate the fall of Atlanta. General Sherman entered it on the 1st of September, 1864. His troops had scarcely rested from their fatigues, when they were again put in motion, and just five weeks after their departure from Atlanta, the country was amazed to learn that they had reached and occupied Savannah, on the Atlantic coast.

Lee surrenders at Appomattox Court House—Assassination of President Lincoln.—These successes hastened the downfall of the Confederacy. The field of decisive operations was now reduced to the three States of South and North Carolina and Virginia. During the winter General Sherman overran the Carolinas

with his victorious army, and thereby cut off the resources of General Lee's troops at Richmond. In Virginia, General Grant renewed active operations against Petersburg. On the first of April, 1865, was fought the bloody battle of the Five Forks, by which the possession of Richmond was finally secured. General Lee finding that he was no longer able to maintain his position, gave orders for the evacuation of Richmond and Petersburg. Pursued with great vigor, he made strenuous but fruitless efforts to extricate his troops, and, on the 9th of April, surrendered to General Grant the army of Northern Virginia. This important event was regarded by the country as a virtual end of the war. But the joy which it occasioned was soon changed into deep mourning by the assassination, on the 14th, of Abraham Lincoln, who had been recently re-elected President. This crime, however, created no public disturbance; Vice-President Johnson assumed immediately the office of President, and the government continued the work of reconstructing the country.

The successful termination of the war procured the emancipation of four millions of human beings, increased towards the country the respect of foreign nations, and displayed to the world her immense and inexhaustible resources.

The national debt, which in 1860 had amounted only to about sixty-four million dollars, had risen in 1866, to 2,773 millions. In June of the same year, the Fourteenth Amendment was proposed by Congress and declared ratified in July, 1868, by which the right of citizenship was secured to the freedmen.

During Andrew Johnson's presidency, Alaska was purchased, which increased the area of the United States by 577,340 square miles. For this, Russia received a little over seven million dollars.

U. S. Grant, President, 1869-1877.—On March 4, 1869, General Grant was inaugurated as the eighteenth president of the United States. During his administration the treaty of Washington was concluded with Great Britain, which provided for an arbitration of the dispute regarding the boundary of Oregon by the Emperor of Germany (decided in favor of the United States, on October 21, 1872), then for a settlement of the fishery dispute, and for the settlement of the Alabama claims. By the decision of the Geneva tribunal, the United States

were awarded fifteen million dollars on account of the Alabama claims. These had arisen by reason of depredations on our commerce perpetrated during the war of the Rebellion by privateering and pirating vessels fitted out in English ports and sailing under the English flag; and were so called because the *Alabama* was the name of the most formidable and destructive of these pirate ships.

The centennial year of the Declaration of Independence was celebrated by the holding in Philadelphia of a great International Exhibition of the world's industrial products and inventions. It was the first made in this country of these displays, which have since become common.

In this same year took place the first closely contested Presidential election since before the civil war. Dissatisfaction with the second Grant administration had led, for the first time in many years, to the choice in 1874 of a Democratic majority in the Federal House of Representatives. On this account both parties exerted their utmost strength in 1876, and so close was the contest that a special Electoral Commission was created to decide it.

WAR IN SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN.—WAR IN ITALY AND GERMANY.—A.D. 1863-1866.

Denmark loses Schleswig-Holstein by the peace of Vienna, Oct. 30, 1860.—New complications arose in Europe upon the death of King Frederic VII., of Denmark (November, 1863). Christian IX. succeeded him on the throne; but his right of succession to the duchies of Holstein and Schleswig was contested by the duke of Augustenburg. The German diet supported the claims of the latter to Holstein, which was a part of the Germanic Confederation, and occupied it with Federal troops. Prussia and Austria, uniting in a common cause, went still further; they marched into Schleswig and afterwards into Jutland with a formidable army, to which the Danes with all their gallantry were forced to succumb. In October, 1864, King Christian was compelled to sign the treaty of Vienna, by which he ceded to Austria and Prussia the three duchies of Lauenburg, Holstein, and Schleswig, engaging moreover to accept whatever arrangements for their government those powers might make.

It soon became evident that their friendship for the duke of Augustenburg was a mere pretext, at least on the part of Prussia. After obtaining from Austria the cession of the duchy of Lauenburg, she made the utmost efforts to induce her ally to cede, in like manner, her rights to the two other duchies. The government of Austria declared that the question of the Duchies appertained to the German Diet, which was then assembled at Frankfort (May, 1866).

Cause of the Austrian-Prussian war of 1866.—Thereupon Prussia, followed by a few other States, withdrew from the Confederation; and ordered her troops to invade Holstein, where no resistance was met with. Yielding to the ambitious views of Count Bismarck, her prime-minister, she also undertook to snatch from Austria her ascendency in Germany. Moreover, the King of Prussia, in order to divide the forces of his powerful rival, entered into a secret alliance with the King of Italy, who had always cherished the idea of conquering Venetia. War was accordingly declared against Austria, on the same day, by the two allied powers (June 18).

Austria victorious against Italy on land and sea.—The Italians having crossed the Mincio with a numerous army, were attacked by Archduke Albert, near Custozza, a spot fatal to the Italian arms in 1848. After a long and severe contest the Italians were defeated with great loss, and compelled to recross the Mincio (June 24). Their fortune was no better at sea; for their Admiral Persano, with a fleet of twenty-three vessels, was attacked by inferior forces under the Austrian admiral Tegethoff, and obliged, after the loss of several ships, to take refuge in the port of Ancona (July 20, 1866).

Prussia occupies Germany.—In the North, Prussia had so well concerted her plans of attack that, on the 18th of June, her troops entered at once Hanover, Hesse-Cassel, and Saxony, and spread themselves in every direction. Either by force of arms or by stratagem, they took possession of the three States just mentioned, occupied Frankfort, from which they exacted enormous contributions, and before the end of the campaign overran Darmstadt and Bavaria.

The campaign against Austria — Battle of Sadowa.—At the same time, the Austrian empire was

also invaded by about three hundred thousand men, in two armies, the one marching from Saxony commanded by Prince Frederick Charles, the other proceeding from Silesia under the Crown Prince of Prussia. Field-Marshal de Benedeck, commander-in-chief of all the Austrian forces engaged in the North, endeavored, but ineffectually, to prevent a junction of the enemy's forces. These met at Gitschim, where the King of Prussia now arrived to take the command in person. Benedeck, who had waited in vain for the soldiers of Bavaria, amounting to eighty thousand men, was compelled to accept a general engagement against enemies far superior in number, and to whom the *needle-gun* had given another decided advantage. The battle of Sadowa, after eight or ten hours of fearful struggle, terminated in the route of the Austrians, who retreated in confusion behind the Elbe, with a loss of forty thousand men (July 3).

The peace of Prague, August 23, 1866. and of Vienna, October 3, 1866.—The emperor of Austria, unwilling to protract so disastrous a war, ceded Venetia to Napoleon III., with a secret understanding that it should be made over to the King of Italy. At the same time, he requested the emperor of France to mediate for peace. A preliminary treaty, signed at Nicholsburg on the 26th of July, 1866, led in the following month to the treaty of Prague, of which these were the conditions: the emperor of Austria was required to ratify the cession of Venetia; to abandon all claim to form a part of the Confederation, which the King of Prussia made up of the States on the north of the Main river; to cede whatever rights the treaty of Vienna (1864) gave him on the duchies of Holstein and Schleswig. The States to the south of the Main were allowed to form an independent association, whose relations with the North were to be regulated afterwards; the kingdom of Saxony remained unimpaired, but the annexations already made by Prussia, of Hanover, Electoral Hesse, Nassau, and the city of Frankfort were to be recognized by Austria. By a special treaty made with Prussia, the kingdom of Bavaria, which had not taken an active part in the war, retained her whole territory, on condition of paying a heavy sum of money.

Thus, by the treaty of Prague Austria, once the mighty power which ruled the destinies of Germany

and Italy, had been expelled from the Germanic Confederation and humbled by the arrogant ambition of Prussia, one of its members. These great changes show that God gives the power of this world to whom He pleases, and that the most prudent combinations of human policy are baffled by the designs of his unerring Providence.

IMPORTANT EVENTS IN EUROPE BETWEEN 1866-1870.

The first parliament of the North German Confederation.—In February, 1867, King William I. of Prussia convoked a parliament in Berlin which adopted, after short deliberations, a constitution for the North German "Bund," consisting of Prussia and the twenty-one other members of the Confederacy. The first step for the unification of Germany was taken by organizing the army on one and the same basis, rendering every able-bodied man liable to military duty, and conferring upon the king of Prussia the chief command of all German forces. Count Bismarck was elevated to the position of chancellor.

Emperor Francis Joseph crowned King of Hungary.—In Austria a reconciliation with Hungary was effected by giving it a constitution of a liberal character. The Emperor was with great solemnity crowned at Buda-Pesth. Croatia, Transylvania, and the military frontier were reunited with Hungary. The Cisleithan provinces also received a constitution, which completed the transformation of the empire into two constitutional monarchies under a single monarch.

The Luxemburg question—The London Conference, May, 1867.—Napoleon III.'s desire to counterbalance the increased power of Prussia by the purchase of Luxemburg from the king of Holland, led to serious complications between France and Prussia which, however, through the labors of the London Conference and mutual concessions, were allayed for the time. Italy at this Conference was recognized as the sixth great power.

The Spanish Revolution of 1868—King Amadeus I., 1870-1873.—Queen Isabella, after the defeat of her troops in 1868 under Serrano, fled into France, and the country fell a prey to a revolution until the Cortes

declared in favor of a constitutional monarchy. The crown was offered to a prince of Hohenzollern, who at first accepted, but soon withdrew his acceptance. Then the second son of Victor Emmanuel, the duke of Aosta was called to the throne as king Amadeus I.

Opening of the Suez Canal, Nov. 16, 1869.—The great feat of engineering, conceived and carried through by Ferdinand de Lesseps, to open a direct communication between the Mediterranean and the Red Sea being completed, the formal opening took place amid imposing ceremonies in the presence of an august assemblage of European crowned heads, who were accompanied there by squadrons of their respective navies.

The Vatican council opened Dec. 8, 1869—The dogma of Infallibility.—Pope Pius IX. having convoked the Vatican Council, opened it solemnly on Dec. 8, and after the dogma of infallibility had been adopted by a vote of 547 to 2 proclaimed it to Christendom on July 18, 1870. The council adjourned on Oct. 20, 1870, after having rendered signal services to the Church and civilization.

Internal troubles in France—The "Plebiscite" of May, 1870.—The dissatisfaction with the arbitrary government of Napoleon III. led to the fall of the Prime Minister Rouher, who was succeeded by Ollivier. A new liberal constitution was introduced and ratified by a "plebiscite" with an apparently overwhelming majority. Party strife, dissatisfaction in the army and navy disclosed, however, the necessity of a diversion by means of a popular war.

THE FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR, July 19, 1870—March 3, 1871.

Immediate cause of the war.—The request of the French ambassador Benedetti, of King William of Prussia in person, that he should never agree to the acceptance of the Spanish crown by a prince of Hohenzollern, met on July 15, at Ems, with a dignified but very emphatic refusal on the part of the aged monarch. This was represented by the French Cabinet as an insult to France, and under a tremendous excitement in Paris the French government decided upon a declaration of war which was delivered on July 19, at Berlin.

Disappointed French hopes.—Contrary to the expectations of Napoleon not only the North German Bund, but also the South of Germany, namely Würtemburg, Baden and Bavaria joined Prussia and ordered the immediate mobilization of their armies.

The campaign of the German forces against the Imperial armies, Aug. 2 to Sep. 2, 1870. — The French armies were divided into four corps commanded respectively by MacMahon, Bazaine, Ladmirault and De Failly; the German armies were divided into three, one under Steinmetz, one under Prince Frederick Charles, one under the Crown Prince. King William of Prussia acted as commander-in-chief with General von Moltke as chief of staff.

The army under the Crown Prince, after the engagement at Weissenburg on Aug. 2, defeated MacMahon signally in the battle of Wörth on Aug. 4, while the first. German army under Steinmetz stormed on the 6th of August the heights of Spöcheren. The rapid advance of the German armies which left only enough troops round Strasburg and other Alsatian fortresses for the siege of these places, prevented Bazaine from retreating upon Châlons-sur-Marne, and after the bloody battle of Courcelles on Aug. 14, and the battle of Mars-la-Tour, on Aug. 16, there were fought the decisive battles of Gravelotte and St. Privat on Aug. 18, in which under the personal command of King William, the German forces after enormous losses forced Bazaine's army into Metz.

The Siege of Metz, Aug. 19 to Oct. 27.—MacMahon, after his masterly retreat from Wörth, had in the meantime reorganized his army and intended to retreat upon Paris. Under orders received from Palikao he undertook to relieve Bazaine in Metz and so to unite the two armies. Compelled by the battle of Beaumont, on Aug. 30 to retreat, and aware of the rapid approach of the German armies whose object was to surround him, he took up a strong position near the small fortress of Sedan.

The battle of Sedan—Napoleon III. surrenders himself.—Here occurred the most memorable battle of modern times on Sept. 1st. Marshal MacMahon early in the day was seriously wounded, and the French forces succumbed, in spite of their bravery, to the superior disci-

pline and tactics of the German armies, so that General Wimpfen, MacMahon's successor in command, entered upon negotiations with a view to surrender. Napoleon III. delivered his sword to King William I., and was carried as prisoner to Wilhelmshöhe. On Sept. 2 the capitulation of Sedan was signed, by which 39 generals, 2,300 inferior officers, 84,000 men, besides 25,000 captured during the battle, became prisoners of war.

Fall of the Empire Sept. 4, and proclamation of the Republic.—The news of this defeat caused the fall of the Empire. A provisional government was formed, Paris declared in a state of siege. Bazaine's efforts to join MacMahon were, in the two days battles round Noissiville on Aug. 31, and Sep. 1, also frustrated by the success of the German arms.

The Campaign against the Republican armies—The siege of Paris Sep. 19, 1870—Jan. 26, 1871.—The forward march of the German forces was now resumed, and on Sep. 19 the French capital was regularly invested. In the meantime Bazaine, owing to scarcity of provisions and after several unsuccessful attempts to effect a "sortie" surrendered on Oct. 27, whereby three Marshals, 70 Generals and 173,000 soldiers became prisoners of war. Strasburg also capitulated. The French government raised armies in the South as well as the North, but the defeat of the army of the Loire at Beaune la Rolande on Nov. 28th; the failure of Trochu and Ducrot, the commanders of the troops at Paris, to make a sortie; the defeat of the French in the battles of Orléans on Dec. 2nd and 4th; the annihilation of General Chanzy's army in the battle of Le Mans on Jan. 12, 1871; General Bourbaki's defeat in the battle of Belfort, Jan'y. 15 to 17; finally the failure of Trochu to evacuate Paris on Jan. 19, and the victory at St. Quentin over the last French army, together with the bombardment of Paris since Dec. 27, brought about the capitulation of Paris on Jan. 28.

Restoration of the German Empire at Versailles Jan'y 18, 1871.—The success of the German forces under the leadership of the aged King of Prussia led, on Jan'y 18, to the restoration of the German Empire and the unification of North and South Germany.

BOMBARDMENT OF ST. DENIS.

To face p. 594.

On the day of the capitulation of Paris Jules Favre on behalf of the French government arranged an armistice of twenty-one days. This was followed by prolonged negotiations for peace which led to the treaty of Frankfort, concluded on May 10, 1871. Its principal provisions were that nearly all of Alsace and fully half of Lorraine were to be ceded to Germany, which soon organized them into a distinct imperial province; that France should pay within three years a war indemnity of five milliards of francs (one billion dollars), and that meanwhile German troops should remain on French territory.

FRANCE SINCE 1871.

Communist Insurrection in Paris.—While these negotiations were in progress, Paris was the theatre of perhaps the most deplorable outbreak of disorder in its history. This was the insurrection of the Commune, which began open hostilities on March 18 with the murder of two generals in the Montmartre section. The whole city was soon in the power of the insurgents and its prisons were filled with prominent citizens held as hostages, among them the Archbishop, Mgr. Darboy, and fully one hundred priests. This state of affairs lasted more than nine weeks, the city being meanwhile besieged by the French army under Marshal MacMahon. On May 23 the troops effected an entrance, and on that and the following day fought their way slowly through the barricaded streets. It was on these days that the Communists destroyed the palace of the Tuileries, the Hôtel de Ville (City Hall), and many other public buildings, and murdered many of the hostages, among them Mgr. Darboy, the Abbé Degnary, pastor of the Madeleine, and several Jesuits and Dominicans. Thousands of the insurgents perished. Complete order was restored in a few days.

Establishment of the Third Republic.—The provisional government, which had ruled since the fall of Napoleon, issued a proclamation ordering the election of a National Assembly. The new parliament thus constituted met at Versailles in August, and, though a large majority of its members were monarchists of various affiliations, set up a republic and on August 31, elected as its

first president Adolphe Thiers, the famous historian and minister of State under Louis Philippe. He held the office less than two years. A free-thinking Liberal, he was constantly at odds with the Conservative Assembly, and frequently threatened to resign. That body took him at his word on May 24, 1873, and chose Marshal MacMahon as his successor. Intrigues were set on foot to restore royalty, first in the person of the Count de Chambord, grandson of Charles X. and the last of the elder Bourbon line, and then in that of the Count de Paris, grandson of Louis Philippe and head of the Orleans or younger branch of the Bourbons ; but these efforts failed, because the former refused to accept the tricolor, the flag of the Revolution, and it was too late when the latter became reconciled with and acknowledged as heir by the Count de Chambord the character of the legislature has changed.

In 1875 the National Assembly adopted a constitution providing for a president and a legislature with two branches, a senate of three hundred members and a chamber of deputies of nearly twice that number. The president was to be chosen by the chambers in joint session. In the elections that immediately followed the royalists lost control of the lower house of parliament, and three years afterwards of the Senate also. The chambers thus becoming antagonistic to the President, Marshal MacMahon resigned on January 30, 1879, and Jules Grévy, was elected to succeed him. Then, under the leadership of Léon Gambetta and Jules Ferry, began a campaign of persecution against the Church that has not yet ceased, notwithstanding the frequent change of ministry, averaging more than one a year since the foundation of the republic. Gambetta met a violent death on the last day of 1882 ; he was, it is generally believed, murdered by a jealous mistress. Soon after Ferry, the author of the first proscription law against the religious teaching orders, and especially the Jesuits, fell into disgrace and forced retirement on account of the mismanagement of affairs in Tonquin, recently conquered and made a French province. The other sections of the Indo-Chinese peninsula south and east of Siam had already been acquired by France at various times.

An Era of Scandals and Agitations.—Grévy, so

SOUTH EASTERN EUROPE
According to the Treaty of Berlin. 1878.
Slaves
Austrian
Greek
Roumanian
Bulgarian
Ottomans
English
Prague
Cracow
Olmutz
Lemberg
Kamienetz
Kief
Pressburg
Komorn
Buda
Pesth
Innsbruck
Vienna
Trieste
Agram
Ravenna
Polo
Zvornik
Belgrade
Orsova
Krajova
Bucharest
Sarajevo
Mostar
Widin
Silistria
Rustchuk
Nissa
Plevna
Shumla
Varna
Sofia
Pristina
Burgas
Uskub
Philippopolis
Monastir
Seres
Hadrianople
Enos
Gallipoli
Constantinople
Ismid
Broussa
Angora
Smyrna
Konia
Kaisariyeh
Amasia
Tokat
Sinope
Samsoun
Trebizond
Batoum
Ardahan
Kars
Erivan
Tiflis
Erzeroum
Bayazid
Diarbekir
Urfa
Mosul
Aleppo
Antioch
Adana
Tarsos
Adalia
Beyrout
Damascus
Bagdad
Tripoli
Nikosia
Famagusta
Cyprus
Rhodes
Candia
Retimo
Kanea
Athens
Corinth
Navarino
Coron
Sparta
Kythera
Missolonghi
Larissa
Lamia
Arta
Prevesa
Parga
Janina
Durazzo
Avlona
Scutari
Cattaro
Ragusa
Spizza
Antivari
Dulcigno
Rome
Gaeta
Naples
Benevento
Bari
Tarento
Messina
Palermo
Catania
Malta
Sicily
Corsica
Kephallenia
Zakynthos
Leukas
Kerkyra
Ithaca
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Persia
Euxine
Danube
Theiss
Drave
Save
Maros
Dniester
Pruth
Bug
Dnieper
Don
Volga
Manitch
Kuban
Crimea
Kaffa
Sebastopol
Balaklava
Akerman
Odessa
Ocszakof
Cherson
Kertch
Bessarabia
Roumania
Russia
Turkey
Austria
Hungary
Italy
Bosnia
Herzegovina
Croatia
Servia
Montenegro
Albania
Thessaly
Epirus
Macedonia
Roumelia
Bohemia
Moravia
Galicia & Lodomiria
Transylvania
Tyrol
Styria
Carinthia
Carniola
Dalmatia
Hermanstadt
Semlin
Passarovitz
Zara
Spalato
Trieste
Venice
Po
Tiber
Arno
Pisa
Florence
Leghorn
Siena
Perugia
Ancona
Rimini
Ferrara
Bologna
Modena
Parma
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Nice
Marseilles
Toulon
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Corfu
Zante
Cerigo
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Malta
Sicily
Tunis
Algiers
Oran
Gibraltar
Tangier
Fez
Morocco
Mediterranean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Euphrates
Tigris
Arabia
Egypt
Nile
Cairo
Alexandria
Suez
Jerusalem
Mecca
Medina
Yemen
Abyssinia
Nubia
Khartoum
Sahara
Libya
Barbary
Algeria
Tripoli
Tunis
Gibraltar
Portugal
Spain
Madrid
Lisbon
Seville
Cadiz
Valencia
Barcelona
Saragossa
Bilbao
Biscay
Pyrenees
France
Paris
Lyons
Marseilles
Bordeaux
Nantes
Brest
Calais
Dover
London
Channel
Ireland
Dublin
Belfast
Scotland
Edinburgh
Glasgow
Aberdeen
North Sea
Norway
Christiania
Bergen
Trondhjem
Sweden
Stockholm
Gothenburg
Malmo
Denmark
Copenhagen
Jutland
Baltic Sea
Gulf of Bothnia
Finland
Helsingfors
Abo
Russia
St. Petersburg
Moscow
Riga
Reval
Libau
Memel
Dantzic
Konigsberg
Stettin
Berlin
Hamburg
Bremen
Frankfort
Cologne
Coblentz
Mayence
Strasburg
Metz
Nancy
Dijon
Lyons
Geneva
Basle
Zurich
Berne
Lucerne
Switzerland
Germany
Prussia
Saxony
Bavaria
Wurtemberg
Baden
Hesse
Hanover
Brunswick
Mecklenburg
Pomerania
Silesia
Posen
Galicia
Bohemia
Moravia
Austria
Hungary
Vienna
Pressburg
Komorn
Buda
Pesth
Innsbruck
Salzburg
Linz
Prague
Olmutz
Cracow
Lemberg
Kamienetz
Jassy
Roumania
Bucharest
Servia
Belgrade
Bosnia
Herzegovina
Croatia
Trieste
Agram
Fiume
Venice
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Nice
Marseilles
Toulon
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Rome
Naples
Gaeta
Benevento
Bari
Tarento
Brindisi
Otranto
Corfu
Zante
Cerigo
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Malta
Sicily
Tunis
Algiers
Oran
Gibraltar
Tangier
Fez
Morocco
Mediterranean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Persia
Euxine
Danube
Theiss
Drave
Save
Maros
Dniester
Pruth
Bug
Dnieper
Don
Volga
Manitch
Kuban
Crimea
Kaffa
Sebastopol
Balaklava
Akerman
Odessa
Ocszakof
Cherson
Kertch
Bessarabia
Roumania
Russia
Turkey
Austria
Hungary
Italy
Bosnia
Herzegovina
Croatia
Servia
Montenegro
Albania
Thessaly
Epirus
Macedonia
Roumelia
Bohemia
Moravia
Galicia & Lodomiria
Transylvania
Tyrol
Styria
Carinthia
Carniola
Dalmatia
Hermanstadt
Semlin
Passarovitz
Zara
Spalato
Trieste
Venice
Po
Tiber
Arno
Pisa
Florence
Leghorn
Siena
Perugia
Ancona
Rimini
Ferrara
Bologna
Modena
Parma
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Nice
Marseilles
Toulon
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Corfu
Zante
Cerigo
Crete
Rhodes
Cyprus
Malta
Sicily
Tunis
Algiers
Oran
Gibraltar
Tangier
Fez
Morocco
Mediterranean Sea
Adriatic Sea
Ionian Sea
Aegean Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Euphrates
Tigris
Arabia
Egypt
Nile
Cairo
Alexandria
Suez
Jerusalem
Mecca
Medina
Yemen
Abyssinia
Nubia
Khartoum
Sahara
Libya
Barbary
Algeria
Tripoli
Tunis
Gibraltar
Portugal
Spain
Madrid
Lisbon
Seville
Cadiz
Valencia
Barcelona
Saragossa
Bilbao
Biscay
Pyrenees
France
Paris
Lyons
Marseilles
Bordeaux
Nantes
Brest
Calais
Dover
London
Channel
Ireland
Dublin
Belfast
Scotland
Edinburgh
Glasgow
Aberdeen
North Sea
Norway
Christiania
Bergen
Trondhjem
Sweden
Stockholm
Gothenburg
Malmo
Denmark
Copenhagen
Jutland
Baltic Sea
Gulf of Bothnia
Finland
Helsingfors
Abo
Russia
St. Petersburg
Moscow
Riga
Reval
Libau
Memel
Dantzic
Konigsberg
Stettin
Berlin
Hamburg
Bremen
Frankfort
Cologne
Coblentz
Mayence
Strasburg
Metz
Nancy
Dijon
Lyons
Geneva
Basle
Zurich
Berne
Lucerne
Switzerland
Germany
Prussia
Saxony
Bavaria
Wurtemberg
Baden
Hesse
Hanover
Brunswick
Mecklenburg
Pomerania
Silesia
Posen
Galicia
Bohemia
Moravia
Austria
Hungary
Vienna
Pressburg
Komorn
Buda
Pesth
Innsbruck
Salzburg
Linz
Prague
Olmutz
Cracow
Lemberg
Kamienetz
Jassy
Roumania
Bucharest
Servia
Belgrade
Bosnia
Herzegovina
Croatia
Trieste
Agram
Fiume
Venice
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Nice
Marseilles
Toulon
Corsica
Sardinia
Elba
Rome
Naples
Gaeta
Benevento
Bari
Tarento
Brindisi
Otranto

far the only President of France who has served a full term, was reëlected in 1886. In less than two years, however, he was forced to resign because of his having connived at a scandalous traffic, namely, the sale of badges of honor (decorations) and other favors, carried on by his son-in-law, M. Wilson. He was succeeded by M. Sadi-Carnot, the years of whose incumbency are unexampled even in France for bitterness of political rancor and ferocious license on the part of the press. All the elements of discontent were for a time united in clamorous demonstration under the leadership of General Boulanger, who was twice elected deputy from Paris by overwhelming majorities. Had he been but half a Napoleon, he might have overthrown the republic, but, being proscribed, he took fright and fled to Belgium (1889), where he committed suicide (1891). The holding of a great World's Fair in Paris that year, as a centennial commemoration of the French Revolution, also aided in saving the republic.

Under the guidance of the famous M. de Lesseps, the engineer of the Suez canal and other great works, a tide-water passage through the isthmus of Panama had been projected in 1879, and in the next few years $251,000,000 were subscribed to carry out the undertaking. In 1892 it was discovered that most of this money had disappeared, though but a very small portion of the work had been accomplished. Talk of bribery of newspapers and legislators followed, and threats of exposure were freely made. Some indeed were exposed, tried and convicted, while others fled the country; but it was then and still is the general belief that the chief culprits were not molested. In their interest the affair was hushed up as speedily as possible. In 1897 an effort was made to reopen the case, but was rendered futile by the public prosecutor.

It was in 1892 also that, notwithstanding the exclusion of religion from the schools and charitable institutions, and the constant interference of the State in the affairs of the Church, the Pope issued his famous Encyclical exhorting French Catholics to accept the republic loyally and abstain from enrolling themselves among its enemies. "The men," said His Holiness in a subsequent letter, "who would subordinate everything to the previous triumph of their respective parties, even on the plea that that triumph is fittest for the defence of religion, would,

by a perilous perversion of ideas, place politics, which divide, before religion, which unites." So large in consequence was the secession from the monarchists to the moderate republicans that a restoration of royalty has since seemed highly improbable. At the same time, however, anarchism became rampant, especially in the manufacturing centres.

Intense excitement was caused in France, and considerable interest all over the world, by the visit in 1893 of the Russian fleet to Toulon, in return for that of the French fleet to Cronstadt two years before. It was said to mark a dual alliance between France and Russia, in opposition to the triple alliance of Germany, Austria and Italy.

From the Death of Carnot to that of Faure.—Towards the close of 1893 there began an outbreak of anarchist outrages. These culminated, on June 24, 1894, in the assassination of President Sadi-Carnot while visiting an exhibition at Lyons. He died early the following morning less than six months before he would have completed his term of office. The National Convention, as the joint session of the two legislative chambers is called, chose Casimir-Périer to succeed him. But the new president was so harassed by the bitter attacks of a low scurrilous press that he resigned on January 15 following, and two days later Felix Faure was chosen as his successor. Ere long he too was similarly treated from the same quarter, but was able to refute the slanders successfully.

In the first year of his administration a French force invaded and conquered Madagascar. Having to suppress an uprising the year following, the native government was abolished and the last monarch of the Hovas, Queen Ranovalona, exiled first to the island of Reunion and afterwards to Algiers. Thus the great island became a French possession. At the same time French expansion was going on in western and central Africa, until Algeria and the Senegambia and Niger colonies were united across the Sahara, even the mysterious city of Timbuctoo falling under French sway. A French expedition from West Africa under Major Marchand even reached the White Nile and set up a post at Fashoda in 1898. News of this adventure having reached Europe, England protested on the ground of a long prior claim, and Fashoda was given up in exchange for concessions in the Niger region.

30 Longitude 20 West 10 0 10 Long. 20 East 30 from 40 Greenw. 50 60 70
EUROPE
1880.
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 300 500
ARCTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
JAN MAYEN I.
North Cape
ICELAND
REYKJAVIK
HECLA
ARCTIC CIRCLE
FARGE IS.
SHETLAND IS.
C. Wrath
Christiansund
Bergen
CHRISTIANIA
STOCKHOLM
L. Malar
Umea
Torneo
Gulf of Bothnia
Gulf of Finland
Cronstadt
ST. PETERSBURG
Pskov
Moscow
Kola
Archangel
Dwina R.
Onega
L. Onega
Vyatka
Kungur
Perm
Obi R.
Tobolsk
Orsk
Orenburg
Saratov
R. Volga
Bolkhev
Kursk
Minsk
Grodno
Warsaw
Konigsberg
Dantzic
Khárkov
R. Don
R. Dnieper
Astrakhan
N. Alexandrovsk
Stavropol
Petrovsk
Krasnovodsk
Odessa
Sea of Azov
Sebastopol
Sinope
Kars
TRANS CAUCASIA
PERSIA
Hamadan
Diarbekir
ARMENIA
MESOPOTAMIA
Bagdad
ALGEZIRAH
SYRIA
Smyrna
CONSTANTINOPLE
Adrianople
TURKEY
ROUMELIA
BULGARIA
Widdin
Belgrade
SERVIA
BOSNIA
Bosna Serai
CROATIA
HUNGARY
Pesth
Buda
VIENNA
Austerlitz
Presburg
Gratz
Trieste
Venice
Milan
Turin
Genoa
Florence
Bologna
Ancona
ROME
Naples
MT. VESUVIUS
Brindisi
Palermo
SICILY
CORSICA
Gulf of Genoa
Gulf of Lyons
Marseilles
Barcelona
BALEARIC IS.
Murcia
Seville
Cadiz
Str. of Gibraltar
Malaga
MADRID
Oporto
Leon
C. St. Vincent
C. Ortegal
LISBON
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
Bordeaux
BAY OF BISCAY
Nantes
Loire R.
Tours
PARIS
Seine R.
Rouen
Havre
English Channel
Land's End
Brest
Cherbourg
Jersey
Guernsey
C. Clear
Dublin
Irish Sea
Belfast
Glasgow
Edinburgh
Stirling
Falkirk
Liverpool
Manchester
Birmingham
LONDON
Amsterdam
Rotterdam
The Hague
Utrecht
Arnhem
Brussels
Waterloo
Ostend
Calais
Dover
Strasburg
Metz
Nancy
Frankfort
Mayence
Cologne
Aix-la-Chapelle
Coblentz
Bonn
Hamburg
Bremen
Hanover
Leipzic
Dresden
Breslau
Prague
BOHEMIA
Sadowa
BERLIN
Jena
Weimar
Eisenach
Cassel
Wurtzburg
Nuremberg
Ratisbon
Augsburg
Munich
BAVARIA
Ulm
Stuttgart
WURTEMBERG
Carlsruhe
Baden
Strasburg
BERNE
SWITZERLAND
Lyons
Mt. Cenis
Turin
Milan
Verona
Mantua
Modena
Parma
Genoa
Florence
Solferino
Bologna
Ancona
Trieste
Venice
Gratz
Presburg
Pesth
Buda
VIENNA
Austerlitz
Prague
Dresden
Breslau
Leipzic
Frankfort
Jena
Weimar
Eisenach
Cassel
Hanover
Bremen
Hamburg
Altona
Flensburg
SCHLESWIG
HOLSTEIN
Copenhagen
DENMARK
Elsinore
Christiansand
Stavanger
Lister
Farsund
Skagerrak
Kattegat
Cape Skagen
Aalborg
Limfjord
Thisted
Viborg
Aarhus
Randers
Veile
Odense
Nyborg
Korsor
Zealand
Roeskilde
Gulf of Finland
Helsingfors
Abo
Aland Is.
Gulf of Bothnia
Wasa
Uleaborg
Tornea
Gefle
Upsala
Orebro
Carlstad
Gothenburg
Christianstad
Carlscrona
Malmo
Ystad
Trelleborg
Bornholm
Memel
Libau
Windau
Mitau
Riga
Gulf of Riga
Pernau
Reval
Narva
Pskov
Lake Peipus
Dorpat
Wesenberg
Wiborg
Kexholm
Lake Ladoga
Lake Onega
Petrozavodsk
Kem
Kola
Archangel
Dwina R.
Vologda
Yaroslav
Nijni Novgorod
Kazan
Samara
Simbirsk
Penza
Tambov
Voronezh
Kursk
Orel
Tula
Kaluga
Smolensk
Vitebsk
Polotsk
Witepsk
Mohilev
Minsk
Grodno
Bialystok
Brest Litovsk
Volhynia
Podolia
Kiev
Dnieper R.
Tchernigov
Poltava
Kharkov
Ekaterinoslav
Taganrog
Sea of Azov
Crimea
Simferopol
Sebastopol
Odessa
Kherson
Nikolaev
Bessarabia
Kishenev
Jassy
Galatz
Ismail
Danube R.
Dniester R.
Pruth R.
Bucharest
WALLACHIA
Rustchuk
Varna
Shumla
Silistria
Widdin
Belgrade
SERVIA
Nissa
Sofia
Philippopolis
Adrianople
Gallipoli
Dardanelles
Sea of Marmora
Constantinople
Nicomedia
Brusa
Smyrna
Sea of Marmora
Gulf of Smyrna
Scio
Mytilene
Lesbos
Gulf of Adramyti
Adramyti
Gulf of Salonica
Salonica
Monastir
Ochrida
Lake Ochrida
Janina
Prevesa
Gulf of Arta
Arta
Patras
Gulf of Lepanto
Corinth
Athens
Sparta
Argos
Navarino
Modon
Coron
Cape Matapan
Cape Malea
Gulf of Nauplia
Nauplia
Tripolitza
Thebes
Lamia
Volo
Gulf of Volo
Larissa
Pharsalia
Trikkala
Janina
Durazzo
Scutari
Cettine
Ragusa
Cattaro
Spalatro
Zara
Fiume
Carlstadt
Agram
Essek
Peterwardein
Semlin
Belgrade
Widdin
Rustchuk
Giurgevo
Turnu Severin
Orsova
Temesvar
Arad
Debreczin
Grosswardein
Kaschau
Tokay
Miskolcz
Erlau
Gran
Comorn
Raab
Oedenburg
Neustadt
Wiener Neustadt
Vienna
Austerlitz
Olmutz
Brunn
Iglau
Budweis
Prague
Pilsen
Eger
Carlsbad
Leitmeritz
Josephstadt
Reichenberg
Zittau
Bautzen
Dresden
Meissen
Leipzic
Weimar
Jena
Eisenach
Cassel
Hanover
Brunswick
Magdeburg
Potsdam
BERLIN
Frankfort
Posen
Thorn
Dantzic
Konigsberg
Memel
Tilsit
Insterburg
Gumbinnen
Lyck
Augustowo
Suwalki
Grodno
Bialystok
Brest Litovsk
Pinsk
Volhynia
Podolia
Zhitomir
Kiev

In October, 1896, France produced another frenzied outburst of attachment to Russia. It was occasioned by the visit of the young Czar Nicholas II., and his wife shortly after his coronation, in the course of a tour the imperial pair then made of Europe. This visit is said to have cemented the alliance the first steps towards which had been taken three years before.

During the last two years of his incumbency President Faure was harassed by the agitation of a question that will be mentioned in the next section. Worn out with anxiety and overwork, he died suddenly in his official palace, the Elysée, on February 16, 1899. The next choice of the National Convention fell upon Émile Loubet, the seventh of the French presidents, all of whom since Marshal MacMahon have been Moderate Republicans.

The Dreyfus Case.—In 1894, during the presidency of Casimir-Périer, a captain in the French army, an Alsatian Jew from Mulhouse, named Alfred Dreyfus, was accused, tried by court-martial and convicted of having sold military secrets to Germany, and conducted to penal servitude on Devil's Island, off the coast of French Guiana. Many at the time believed he was innocent and the victim of a plot. In his behalf a movement was started that assumed formidable proportions in 1897, and for maintaining it several of its promoters, among them army officers who had changed their minds, were put on trial, convicted and disciplined. The political, military and civil authorities refused to reopen the case until after the change of administration consequent upon President Faure's death. But the first important act of President Loubet and his cabinet, of which M. Waldeck-Rousseau, also an Alsatian, soon became Prime Minister, was to refer the matter to the Court of Cassation (appeals), which ordered a new trial that was to be conducted in public. The accused was brought back to France, which he reached on July 1, 1899, and the new trial was begun at Rennes on August 7 following. Never has such a case excited such universal interest. Really it was now the clique in control of the army that was on trial. The ablest counsel were engaged on both sides, and the judges were seven fellow-officers of the accused, who possibly had to choose between justice on the one side and the displeasure and vengeance of their military superiors on

the other. The verdict, "guilty, with extenuating circumstances," was rendered on September 8, by a vote of five to two. Everything considered, this was equivalent to acquittal, and that effect was soon given to it by an executive pardon and the conduct of the Minister of war, General de Gallifet, who disciplined Dreyfus's most pronounced enemies and rewarded his friends in the army.

The Republic and the Church.—Thus another great crisis in the history of the Republic, perhaps more dangerous than the Boulanger excitement, had been safely passed. And the ministry under which it occurred, assuming office on June 12, 1889, as a makeshift and a compromise, has held office longer than any of its predecessors. During 1899 and 1900 it was generally said that it was only the Paris World's Fair of the latter year that kept it together. That event passed into history, but it remained, with only one modification, the retirement of General de Gallifet on account of ill health. But the consequences of the Dreyfus incident did not disappear with him. Mistaken religious zeal was associated with the affair, which the Assumptionist Fathers turned to account to propagate monarchism in a newspaper published by them. Though the publication was discontinued by order of the Pope, yet the resentment of the Republican leaders was so aroused as to lead to the enactment of more anti-Catholic legislation in 1901. A law was passed suppressing all religious orders not receiving the sanction of the government. Thus not only the Assumptionists, but once more the Jesuits, and some other orders, have had to dissolve their communities in France. Even after that the Radicals, indeed, endeavored to have more drastic measures taken against the Church. They aimed at the repeal of the Concordat, or agreement of the first Napoleon with the Pope by which the government pays salaries to the clergy as a partial restitution for the Church property confiscated by the Revolution, and at the withdrawal of French protection from the Catholics of the Turkish and Chinese empires. But this the Ministry vigorously opposed, in the face of a general election to be held in the spring of 1902. It even took occasion of a naval demonstration against Turkey, made near the close of 1901 to enforce the payment of certain claims, to

reassert the traditional policy of France in Palestine, Syria and Asia Minor.

ENGLAND UNTIL 1902.

With the exception of petty expeditions against barbarian tribes in southern Asia and in Africa, and the extension of her colonies in these countries, the history of England for forty-three years was that of her Parliament and her foreign diplomacy. From the close of the Crimean war her military strength was not again seriously tested until 1899. In 1857 she crushed with terrible vindictiveness and severity a mutiny of her native mercenaries in India, known as the Sepoy rebellion. Ten years later, she sent an expedition into the ancient kingdom of Abyssinia to punish its king, Theodore, for his treatment of English subjects living in his dominions, and left that country in a state of anarchy. In 1873 she conquered the native kingdom of Ashantee, on the gulf of Guinea, and suppressed rebellions there in 1895 and 1900. She became involved in two wars in 1878, one against the Zulus adjoining her African colony of Natal, and the other in Afghanistan, on her northwestern Indian border, and was successful in both. In the former Prince Napoleon, the only child of Napoleon III., who had died in England in 1873, lost his life on January 1, 1879. The latter grew out of a civil war fomented by Russia, which supported the claim of Yakoub Khan to be the Ameer or ruler of that country, but abandoned his cause in the face of English protest and success. After a two years' struggle the English placed Abdurrahman Khan upon the throne. It was in this war that General Sir Frederick Roberts won such renown and elevation to the peerage by his famous march to the relief of the English garrison in Candahar. Soon after the close of this war England interfered in the affairs of Burmah, on the other side of India, and in 1885 deposed its besotted and brutal king, Thebaw, and annexed his kingdom. When, afterwards France added to her Indo-Chinese possessions the Shan country of the old Kingdom of Siam, England and France met on the Mekong river. In 1895 England became involved in disputes with the hill tribes in northwestern India, and has since pushed her possessions to the

plateau of the Pamirs, where she comes in direct contact with Russia. For many years past India has suffered severely from famine and plague, which have carried off many millions of her population.

Parliamentary Measures and Irish Agitation.— The political changes effected in England since the great Liberal victory of 1868 amount almost to a revolution. In the following year the Gladstone Ministry disestablished the Anglican church in Ireland, and passed the first Irish Land act in 1870. This measure was followed by further concessions to the Irish tenant farmers in 1881 and 1891; and in the speech from the throne at the opening of Parliament in 1902 it was announced that a new measure was about to be introduced that would practically abolish landlordism in Ireland. It was during the first Gladstone administration, too, that the first Irish Home Rule party was organized under the leadership of Isaac Butt. Upon his death the movement was led by William Shaw, but in such a lukewarm manner as to dissatisfy his more radical followers. Of these, Charles Stewart Parnell and Joseph Bigger began the policy of Parliamentary obstruction in 1877. Two years later the failure of the potato crop led to great distress in Ireland. The Land League was then organized by Michael Davitt, and Parnell and others visited America in the interest of relief and Parliamentary funds. He was chosen as the leader of his party in 1881. The Irish movement received a severe blow in 1882, by the murder, in Phoenix Park, Dublin, of the Chief Secretary for Ireland, Lord Frederick Cavendish, and the Under-Secretary, Mr. Burke, by members of a secret Society called the Invincibles. The Land League was suppressed, but next year reappeared under the name of the Irish National League. Public meetings, however, continued to be forbidden and the jails to be filled. The old Land League excitement had culminated in 1881 in the issuing of the "No Rent Manifesto," which did far more harm to the movement than all the government coercion.

Meanwhile, however, other great political changes were in preparation, though the Conservative (Disraeli, afterwards Lord Beaconsfield) Cabinet has done little more than, in 1876, add to the title of the Queen of Great Britain and Ireland that of the Empress of India. Glad-

stone returned to power in 1880, and before the close of his second term Parliament passed the two most drastic measures known in its history, namely, the Extension of the Franchise and the Redistribution of Seats Acts of 1884 and 1885. To carry these measures into immediate effect, Parliament was dissolved in the latter year. In the new Parliament the Irish Home Rule party, with eighty-six members, held the balance of power. Now, yielding to the practically unanimous demand of the Irish people, Gladstone introduced his first Home Rule bill. By the defection of seventy Literals it was defeated. Hereupon a new general election was held, and the Conservatives and Liberal Unionists, as the seceders were now called, obtained an overwhelming majority. Three years later Parnell obtained a Parliamentary Commission to investigate charges made against him by the *London Times*. He won his case, but was soon afterwards deposed from the Irish leadership on account of a divorce scandal in which he was involved. This led to a split in the Irish party which continued to distract it for eleven years, though he died in 1891. In the general election of 1892 Gladstone again obtained a majority. He then introduced another Home Rule bill, which was passed by the House of Commons, but was defeated by that of the Lords. He resigned in 1894 and was succeeded as Premier by the Earl of Rosebery, who was defeated the following year. The Conservative party, in the summer of 1898, enacted a revolutionary Irish Local Government bill which went into effect the following April. It is more than half of Home Rule, and along with the land laws, has shorn the Irish landlords of nearly all their power.

England in Egypt and the Soudan.—The greatest feat of modern engineering was completed in 1869, when the Suez Canal was opened. The expense had been borne mainly by France and the Khedive of Egypt, Ismail Pasha. The latter, in 1875, sold his shares to England, but the proceeds did not extricate him from the financial difficulties into which he had fallen through his extravagance and incompetence. In consequence, England and France assumed joint control of his business affairs in 1878. Many of the natives resented this foreign influence, and a formidable rebellion, led by Arabi Bey,

consequently broke out in 1881. The rebels in 1882 murdered many foreigners in Alexandria. England asked France to co-operate in armed interference ; but the latter, then embroiled in Tunis and Tonquin, declined. Thus England alone undertook to quell the rebellion. She began operations in 1882 with the bombardment and occupation of Alexandria. Soon afterwards the rebels were completely defeated in the battle of Tel-el-Kebir. England then became the sole administrator of the affairs of Egypt.

Soon afterwards General Charles G. ("Chinese") Gordon was sent to aid in the effort to bring back the Soudan under Egyptian subjection. With a small force he made his headquarters at Khartoum. Here he was hard pressed by the Soudanese under the leadership of a very able and more savage fanatic who styled himself El Mahdi (the Prophet.) Before a relief expedition sent to his assistance could reach him he was overwhelmed and slain, and most of his companions met the same fate (January 11, 1885). The rest were condemned to the most abject slavery. Some of these escaped from time to time and brought most harrowing details of the hardships the prisoners had to endure. The Mahdi died in 1885, and was succeeded by an even worse tyrant, the Khalifa Abdullah. Nothing was done to avenge the Khartoum massacre until 1896, when General Sir Herbert Kitchener was sent up the Nile at the head of a large force. His progress was slow. It took him two years to reconquer the Soudan after many encounters with the natives. In the last battle of Omdorman (the capital which the Mahdi had built on the opposite side of the Nile from Khartoum, which he had destroyed), he took a terrible revenge. The Soudanese were slaughtered without mercy or quarter. Of their myriads only a mere handful escaped, among them the Khalifa who fled to a tribe in the interior. He was afterwards given up. For his services in this campaign General Kitchener was raised to the peerage.

The War in South Africa.—This struggle, the most wantonly undertaken, has been the most costly in both men and money in which England has been engaged since her Napoleonic wars. At the same time it has been the most damaging to her military prestige. Let us glance at the cause of it.

The Cape Colony, founded by the Dutch in 1652, was seized by England in 1796, restored to the Netherlands in 1803, again occupied by England in 1806, and formally ceded to her in 1815. The discontent of the Dutch colonials with their new masters was intensified by England's abolition of slavery in 1834. A migration northward, begun the previous year, then received an impetus, and was continued for several years. A section of these emigrants formed the Orange Free State, between the Orange and the Vaal rivers, and another that of the Transvaal, between the latter stream and the Limpopo, whose independence was acknowledged by England in 1852 and 1854. The Transvaal was badly governed, and in 1877, bankrupt and unable to protect itself against the neighboring native tribes, the more influential section of its citizens asked for the protection of England. This was afforded in 1878; but the British authorities having exceeded the powers agreed to, the Dutch or Boers (Farmers) rose in armed rebellion in 1880. After their victory at Majuba Hill (February 27, 1881) England acknowledged the independence of the Transvaal in all things except foreign relations with any country but the Orange Free State. The discovery of gold at Johannesburg in 1885 brought a great influx of foreigners, mostly English, who in time became dissatisfied with the restrictions to which they were subjected, and demanded naturalization. Meanwhile all the country west and north of the two republics had been annexed by England. In this new western region and in Johannesburg a conspiracy was hatched in 1895 to overthrow the government of the Transvaal, officially known as the South African Republic since 1884. The outcome was the abortive Jameson raid, which met with disastrous failure on January 1, 1896. The naturalization agitation was continued, and, supported by the English Government, reached a crisis in the summer of 1899. The Transvaal refusing to make the concessions demanded, England, now bent on the annexation of the country, began to mass troops on its eastern border. On October 9 President Kruger notified England that if these were not removed in forty-eight hours he would declare war. This demand not being complied with, the war threatened was officially begun on the 11th, the Orange Free State having previously formed

an alliance, offensive and defensive, with the South African Republic.

The armies of both countries at once invaded Natal. The first battle was fought at Glencoe on Oct. 20. Here, and within the next ten days at Elandslagte, Dundee and Nicholson's Neck, the English were defeated with the loss of many killed and wounded and a larger number made prisoners. All their soldiers in Natal were now congregated at Ladysmith, where they were completely hemmed in by the Boers on Nov. 7th. This investment and bombardment lasted until Feb. 28, 1900. At the same time another Boer army crossed the border in the west, and laid siege to Mafeking, Kimberly and Vryburg. Meanwhile General Sir Redvers Buller had been appointed commander-in-chief of the English armies in South Africa, which he reached late in November. Before leaving England he had boasted that he would eat his Christmas dinner in Pretoria. He was doomed to bitter disappointment. Entrusting operations in the west to Generals Gatacre and Lord Methuen, he marched at the head of a large force to the relief of Ladysmith, and on December 15 met his first check at Colenso on the Tugela river, which the Boers had seized and fortified. More serious reverses befell him in the same region during the ensuing two months, the most disastrous taking place at Spion Kop on Jan. 19. In the west the campaign was faring no better. Marching to the relief of Kimberly, Lord Methuen was victorious at Belmont and Gras Pan on Nov. 23 and 25, but on December 10 was utterly defeated at Magersfontein on the Modder river, as was General Gatacre at Colesburg about the same time. In London the greatest alarm was felt, and Lord Roberts was asked to take the chief command in the field. On Dec. 18 he accepted on condition that his plans would not be overruled by the War Office and that he would have Lord Kitchener as his chief of staff. The two generals reached Cape Town on December 27, and Lord Roberts went at once to join Lord Mathuen, while Lord Kitchener stayed behind to prepare and forward re-inforcements and supplies to him. The fortune of war soon changed. Kimberly was relieved by General French on Feb. 16, and Cronje, the Boer commander in the west, had to abandon his strong position on the Modder. Then, in

order to save him if possible, the troops besieging Ladysmith hastily retired westward, and that place was entered by Lord Dundonald on Feb. 28 and by Buller's whole force three days later. It was only now that the scene of war had been changed to Boer territory, the first English soldiers to tread it being General French's force on its way to Kimberly, the great diamond mining centre. General Cronje retreated northward, but was halted at Pardeeburg, where, in a hastily fortified camp in the bank of a river, he waited in vain for assistance from the east. The promised relief had been intercepted; and here, on February 27, he surrendered unconditionally to Lord Roberts. From that time until its close in 1902, the struggle was only a guerilla warfare. The two republics were soon overrun. On March 13 Lord Roberts entered Bloemfontein, the Orange Free State capital. That country was then annexed by England under the name of the Orange River Colony. Soon afterwards President Kruger fled through Portuguese territory to Europe. His capital, Pretoria, was occupied by the British on July 16, and ere long the name of his republic was changed to the Transvaal colony. But so enormous was the cost of this war, nearly a billion dollars and almost as many men as England had engaged in the battle of Waterloo, as to make one wonder what she has gained by it, and whether the annexation of the two Boer states will compensate for her loss of military prestige before the world.

Change of Sovereigns.—Queen Victoria did not long survive the formal announcement of these additions to her vast empire. In the spring of 1900 she visited Dublin, where she spent three weeks, to show, she said, her gratitude for the services rendered by Irish soldiers in South Africa. She died on January 22, 1901, in her eighty-second year, and her eldest son succeeded as King Edward VII.

RUSSIA, TURKEY AND GREECE SINCE THE CRIMEAN WAR.

NOTWITHSTANDING the promise of moderation made by Abdul Medjid to his allies in the war against Russia and the issuing by him of a liberal statute in 1856, it was not long before his Christian subjects had again to suffer out-

rages. There was a fearful massacre of Christians in the Libanus region and in Damascus in 1860, which was ended only by a French force occupying Syria, over which a Christian governor was appointed the following year. In this year also, that of Abdul Medjid's death, there was an insurrection in Herzegovina, supported by the Montenegrins, and under the name of the Principality of Roumania, Prince Cusa proclaimed the union of Moldavia and Wallachia, which had until then been separate tributary states of the Turkish empire with Christian governors. About the same time the Czar proclaimed the emancipation of the serfs in his realm. In 1862 the Montenegrins were vanquished by Omer Pasha, and had to submit to a disadvantageous peace. There was a bloody conflict between the Christians and the Turks in Belgrade, the capital of Servia, also a country tributary to the Sultan. This same year witnessed a revolution in Greece, when King Otho (a Bavarian prince) was deposed. Six months later (in March, 1863), the Greeks conferred the royal crown on a son of Prince Christian of Sonderburg-Glücksburg (soon afterwards King of Denmark), who assumed the name of George I. Then Great Britain renounced her protectorate over the Ionian Islands, which she handed over to Greece. In January a rebellion against Russia had broken out in Poland, and was suppressed with merciless severity early in the following year. Prince Cusa of Roumania was deposed in 1866, and Prince Charles of Hohenzollern (of the Catholic branch) was elected as his successor. Goaded by cruel tyranny, the Christians of Crete rose in rebellion and inflicted heavy losses on the Turks, but were not successful in getting rid of their masters. In the following year the Turkish garrisons were withdrawn from Servia, whose prince, Michael Obrenovitch, was assassinated in 1868 and succeeded by his son Milan. Russia took advantage of the Franco-German war, in October, 1870, to announce to the world her refusal to be bound any longer by the terms of the treaty of Paris respecting the Black Sea ; and in January, 1871, a conference was held in London for the settlement of the question, the outcome of which was the abrogation of the provisions of the treaty respecting neutralization. Russia had meanwhile been extending her conquests in Asia, to which she added Khiva in 1873 and

Khokan in 1878. But ere this she had been making history in Europe.

The Russo-Turkish War, 1877–8.—Fomented by Russian agents, insurrections broke out in Herzegovina and in Bosnia in July and August, 1875. Before the end of the year the Turks were almost entirely driven out of these provinces, and there was a revival of Moslem fanaticism in Constantinople. On January 31, 1876, the great powers addressed what is known as the Andrassy note to the Porte, demanding reforms. The immediate answer was the invasion of Herzegovina by Mukhtar Pasha. The Bosnians rose again in April, and the Bulgarians in May. On the 6th of this month the French and German consuls at Salonica were murdered, and before its end the Turks had begun the atrocious massacres in Bulgaria so eloquently and vehemently denounced by Gladstone. Meanwhile there was a revolution in Constantinople, where the grand vizier Mohammed Pasha had fallen. Then Gortchakoff, Andrassy and Bismarck drew up another note of protest to the Sultan known as the Berlin Memorandum, which had no result. The Sultan, Abdul-Aziz, worn out with excesses, was deposed, and his imbecile brother, Murad V., elevated to the throne, on the night of May 29-30. The former was murdered on June 4. On July 2 Servia and Montenegro declared war against Turkey, and were at first victorious. The new Sultan was deposed and imprisoned on August 31, and his younger brother, Abdul Hamid II., who has proved one of the worst tyrants of his race, elevated in his stead. The Turkish fortune of war revived, and before the end of October, Servia was almost completely subdued, Montenegro hard pressed, and Bulgaria laid waste with fire and sword. Then came a Russian ultimatum and the conclusion of a general armistice on October 31. In December Midhat Pasha was appointed grand vizier, and a constitution for the Turkish empire was proclaimed. A conference of the great powers was opened at Constantinople on December 23. But its propositions respecting reforms were rejected by the grand council of the Turkish empire, and it closed its sessions on January 20, 1877. Midhat Pasha fell from power two weeks later, and peace was concluded between Turkey and Servia on March 1. On March 19 a Turkish parliament was opened, and to it

on the 31st an address was sent, known as the London Protocol of the Great Powers, which was rejected by the Porte. Then, on April 16, Russia and Roumania entered into an agreement, and eight days later Russia declared war against the Porte, her armies invaded Armenia and entered Roumania the same day. Early in May Roumania joined in the war, and a little later declared her independence. On May 17 the Russians stormed Ardahan in Armenia, but General Louis Melikoff was repulsed at Zevin on June 25, and Mukhtar Pasha forced the Russians on July 9 to raise the siege of Kars. He was completely defeated, however, at Aladja Dagh on October 15, and retreated to Erzeroum, behind whose fortifications he was forced to withdraw on November 4. Two weeks later Kars was taken by storm. Meanwhile the Russians had suffered severe reverses in Europe. A portion of their forces crossed the Danube at Galatz on June 22, and their main army at Sinvitza on June 27. On July 13 and 14 General Gourko crossed the Balkans, and then from the south occupied and fortified the Shipka pass. Nicopolis fell on July 16. Four days later Osman Pasha won his first victory at Plevna, and at the same place on July 30, a portion of the army under the grand duke Nicholas suffered a great defeat, as did General Gourko the next two days at Eski Zaghra at the hands of Suleiman Pasha, who, in vain, however, attacked the Russian positions in the Shipka pass on August 21. In August and September Mehemet Ali, a Prussian renegade, carried on successful operations against the Russian crown prince. On September 3, Lovatz was stormed by the Russians, and on the 8th Niksitch surrendered to the Montenegrins. During this month the Russians made renewed attacks on Plevna, which they and the Roumanians desperately assaulted on the 11th. General Gourko stormed Gorni Dubnik on October 24, and on the 28th took Telish. On November 23 Mehemet Ali was forced from his positions at Pravetz, but Suleiman Pasha's forces captured Elena on December 4. On December 10 Osman Pasha attempted to break through the Russian lines at Plevna, but was forced to surrender. Two days later Suleiman Pasha was defeated at Metchka, and on the 14th Servia declared war against the Porte. At this time also General Gourko advanced across the Balkans, and entered Sofia

on January 4. On the 7th General Kartzoff forced the Troyan pass, on the 9th Generals Mirski, Skobeleff and Nadetzky captured the Turkish forces in the Shipka pass, and on the 10th Nish surrendered to the Servians and Antivari to the Montenegrins. From the 15th to the 17th Suleiman's army was destroyed near Philippopolis, and the Russians entered Adrianople on the 20th. Thence they advanced to within sight of Constantinople, which they had pledged England not to attack. An armistice was concluded on the 31st. On February 17 the British fleet entered the Sea of Marmora to see that the Russians kept their word and the British government embarked a force of Sepoys at Bombay so as to be ready to make war against Russia in case of emergency. On March 3 Russia and Turkey concluded the treaty of San Stefano, by which the complete independence of Roumania, Servia and Montenegro, under Russian protection, was acknowledged. Bosnia, Herzegovina and Novi Bazar, and Bulgaria, with Eastern Roumelia and Macedonia were erected into principalities vassal to Turkey, but with Christian princes, and a large part of Armenia was ceded to Russia. England, highly dissatisfied with these terms, entered into a secret treaty with Turkey, engaging to maintain the integrity of the Turkish dominions in Asia, and receiving the island of Cyprus in return. Then she called a congress of the powers to revise the treaty of San Stefano. This congress met at Berlin on June 13, and drew up and ratified a new treaty. By this instrument Roumania, Servia and Montenegro became independent principalities, Russia retained her conquest in Armenia and received a portion of Bessarabia, giving the Dobrudsha to Roumania in return, large additions were made to Servia and Montenegro, Bulgaria was made a Christian principality tributary to the Porte, Eastern Roumelia a province to be ruled by a Christian governor, Macedonia was ceded back to Turkey and Bosnia, Herzegovina and Novi Bazar were placed under the protection of Austria. Besides civil rights were guaranteed to non-Mohammedans in the Turkish empire.

Subsequent Events in the Balkan Peninsula, etc.—Greece had been demanding the addition of Thessaly, Epirus and Crete to her domain, and her demands the Berlin conference left open for future settlement.

Before the end of July Austrian forces entered Bosnia and Herzegovina. Though the Mohammedans offered a desperate resistance, the subjugation of the provinces was completed within three months. There was a more prolonged opposition to the expansion of Montenegro, to procure which and to consider the demands of Greece a supplementary conference of the powers was held at Berlin in 1880. They had to make a naval demonstration off the coast of Albania before Turkey exerted itself to expel the Albanians from Dulcigno. In May of the following year the Turkish government was forced to cede nearly all of Thessaly and a small part of Epirus to Greece. Alexander of Battenburg had been chosen as prince of Bulgaria in the spring of 1879, Roumania became a Kingdom in March, 1881, and Servia soon afterwards. While Russia, disgusted with the turn affairs had taken in the Balkan peninsula and troubled with Nihilist conspiracies at home, was pushing her conquests in central Asia, her Czar, Alexander II., just after he had prepared and was about to promulgate a liberal constitution, was assassinated, on March 13, 1881. During the following month, under his son and successor, Alexander III., a violent persecution of the Jews was begun. In the following year Austria had to suppress insurrections in Dalmatia and Herzegovina. In 1885, while Russia and England were rearranging the northern boundary of Afghanistan, there was a revolution in Eastern Roumelia, which annexed itself to Bulgaria. Soon afterwards the latter country made war on Servia, but was completely defeated. Next year its prince, Alexander, was recognized as governor of Eastern Roumelia. During the summer a conspiracy, instigated by Russia, was formed against him, and he was kidnapped ; but a counter revolution brought him back in a few days. In consequence of the attitude of the Czar he abdicated on September 7. Nearly a year later Prince Ferdinand of Coburg, notwithstanding the protest of Russia, was elected to succeed him. Meanwhile Greece had threatened to invade Turkey, but was prevented by the intervention of the great powers. In March, 1889, owing to internal troubles in his realm, King Milan of Servia abdicated in favor of his son, Alexander. In Russia, which suffered severely from famine in 1891, there was no event of importance until 1894, when Czar Alexander III., died and

was succeeded by his son, Nicholas II. Turkey again put civilization to the blush in 1895, when her soldiers, along with Kurdish freebooters, began in Armenia a series of frightful massacres of Christians which lasted into the following year. Before these outrages ceased, her misrule had again goaded the Christians of Crete into rebellion. Greece, having resolved to annex the island, sent in February, 1897, an armed force to take possession of it. The powers then decreed its erection into an autonomous province, and called upon Greece to withdraw her troops. On her refusal they blockaded the island. Greece then, early in April, made war on Turkey, but was disastrously defeated in several battles in Thessaly, which province she would then have lost but for intervention of the powers. In October, 1898, the powers compelled Turkey to evacuate Crete and appointed Prince George of Greece as its governor. It was annexed to Greece in 1902. Turkey, being bankrupt, has long been on the verge of dissolution. Countries having claims against her are obliged to use force to have them recognized. Such a course was adopted by the United States in 1900 and by France at the close of 1901. Russia, whose Czar, in August, 1898, called a famous peace congress that met at The Hague the following year, seems to have lost interest in the affairs of the Bosphorus; but she has more than made up for this by her vast acquisitions in central and eastern Asia.

OTHER EUROPEAN COUNTRIES SINCE 1870.

Germany.—While Austria seems to be on the verge of disintegration, owing to the rivalries and antipathies of the many different peoples composing that empire, the new empire of Germany has been consolidated and strengthened. This was the work of the great and unscrupulous statesman, Prince Bismarck. For years after its formation it was disgraced by persecution of the Catholic Church. In 1872 the houses of the Jesuits and some other orders were suppressed in Prussia, and a year later came the anti-Catholic legislation known as the Falk laws. Several bishops and hundreds of priests were imprisoned or fled from the country because they opposed the subserviency of the Church to the State. Notwithstanding the failure of these penal laws, they were enforced

even long after the accession of Pope Leo XIII. His policy, however, and that of a strong and thoroughly organized Catholic party in the German parliament, known as the Centre, at last forced Bismarck to go to Canossa. The persecution came to an end in 1887. The history of Germany is mainly that of legislation and the fostering of industrial prosperity. For years a vigorous campaign was carried on against socialism, which is very strong in the cities. The chancellor "of blood and iron," Bismarck, negotiated secret treaties with both Russia and Austria in 1879, and four years later brought about the famous Triple Alliance between Germany, Austria and Italy, which has been renewed every four years since. It was only in 1884 that Germany began to establish colonies abroad. Since then she has acquired three large regions in Africa, one in the equatorial west, one in the southwest, and the other in the east. She has also seized a small portion of China, south of the Yellow Sea. The first emperor, William I., died in March, 1888. His son and successor, Frederick I., reigned only three months, when the latter's son, William II., ascended the throne. Wishing to be his own master, he forced Bismarck to resign in 1890, and the latter smarted publicly under the blow until his death eight years later.

Italy since 1878.—The relations between this Kingdom and the Church were not sensibly improved by the change, at the beginning of this year, of rulers over both. The financial condition of the former kept on growing from bad to worse, until the Italian people became by far the most heavily taxed in the world. But for this condition Italy might have gone to war with France in 1881, on account of the latter's occupation of Tunis, to which the former laid claim. The next year Italy established a trading post at Massowah, on the Red Sea, near Abyssinia, and began a colony there in 1884. In January, 1887, her troops suffered a bloody defeat near Massowah at the hands of King John of Abyssinia. After his death in battle with the Soudanese, two years later, Italy took advantage of the ensuing confusion to claim a protectorate over the Abyssinian province of Tigré. This action led to war in 1895 with the new King Menelek II., who, after several minor engagements, utterly defeated the Italians at Adowah on March 1, 1896. The Italian premier, F.

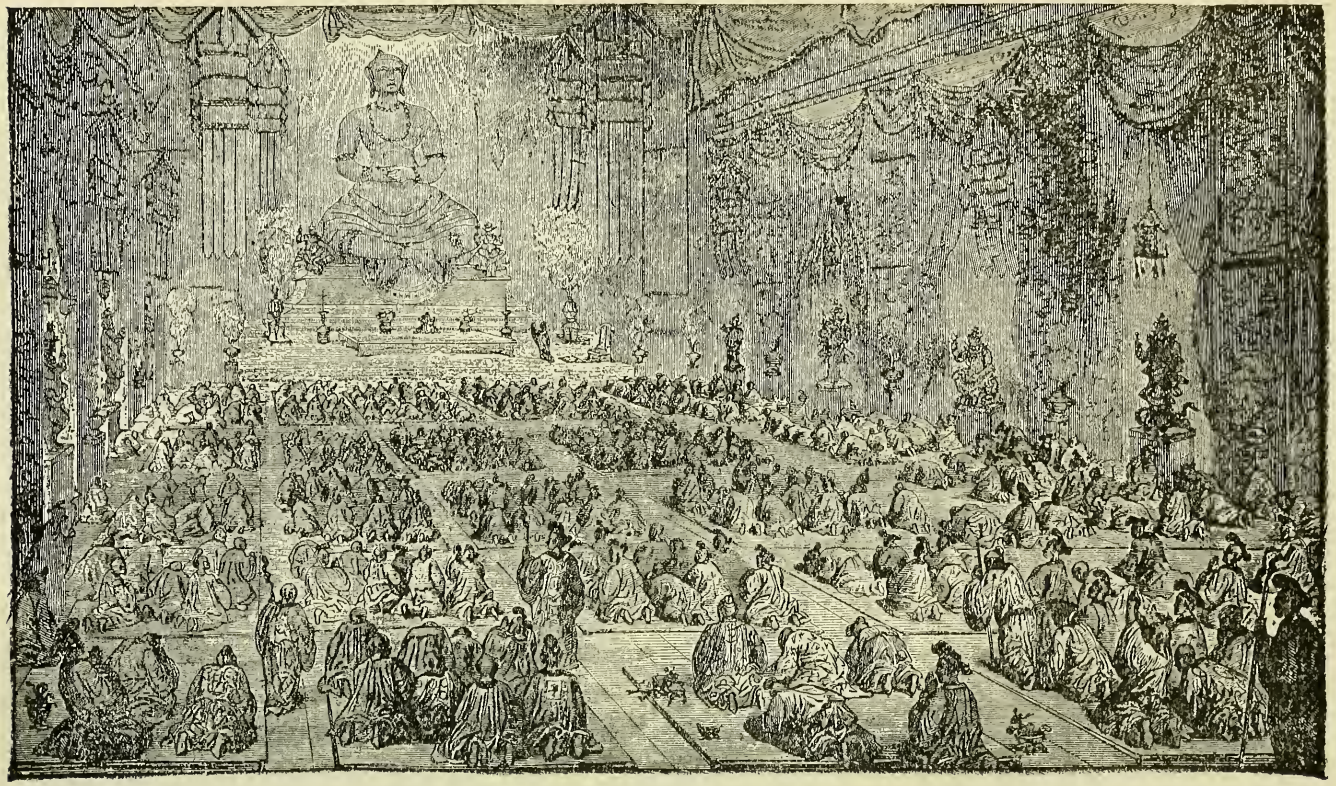
Crispi, was at once driven from office amid wild scenes of excitement, and spent the remaining five years of his life in disgrace. By a treaty concluded eight months later, Italy renounced her claim to a protectorate over Abyssinia. On July 19, 1900, King Humbert I., was assassinated by an anarchist, and was succeeded by his son, Victor Emmanuel III. In 1901 an agreement was reached between France and Italy that the latter is to seize the coast portion of Tripoli at the earliest opportunity, the interior to go to the former.

Spain Since 1870.—We left the Spanish throne in possession of Amadeo, Duke of Aosta, second son of Victor Emmanuel II., of Italy. He found it anything but a bed of roses. Not only was the country divided into jarring factions, but in 1872 a Carlist insurrection broke out in the northern provinces and soon made rapid progress. In February, 1873, he abdicated in disgust, and a republican government was established. A month later slavery was abolished in Porto Rico. Cuba had been in rebellion since 1868. In addition to the Carlist war, radical republicans and socialists rose in rebellion in the south and east in the summer of 1873. Then the quasi-government committed horrible excesses, and the Carlists gained rapidly. In September Emilio Castelar was chosen president, but with no better result. On October 31 the Spaniards seized the American steamship "Virginius"; but Spain, yielding to the demands of the United States, gave her up on December 16. A year later a military conspiracy headed by General Martinez de Campos called to the throne Alfonso XII., son of the exiled Isabella II. Pending his arrival a regency ministry was established under the Conservative leader, Canovas del Castillo. The new King reached Spain on January 9, 1875. Then the Carlist movement gradually grew weaker, and the civil war was ended in February, 1876. After that, from time to time, there were fitful disturbances in various parts of the country, especially in Andalusia and Catalonia. The ten years' war in Cuba was ended by Martinez Campos in 1878. In 1880 the gradual abolition of slavery in Cuba was begun. Spain was again disturbed by military revolts in 1883. The King died on November 25, 1885, and his widow, Christina of Austria became regent for his posthumous son, Alfonso XIII. In addition to a war with the

Riff pirates of Morocco in 1893, Spain had to encounter an uprising in the Philippines in 1894, and a fresh rebellion in Cuba the following year. How she has lost both of these possessions and Porto Rico is told elsewhere. In 1900 and 1901 there were anti-Catholic outbreaks in Madrid and other cities.

OUTLYING COUNTRIES IN RECENT TIMES.

Japan and China.—The events of general interest in these ancient empires are very few before the Yellow War between them (1894–5). Through the intermediation of the American Commodore Perry, Japan inaugurated a policy of commercial intercourse with the outside world in 1854. The emperor (mikado) was a mere figurehead until 1867, when the shogunate was abolished. In the following year the last shogun (commander in chief) made an unsuccessful effort to regain his power. From that time Japan has made rapid strides in adopting the ways of European civilization. Parliamentary government was established there in 1889. China, after the suppression with foreign aid of the great Taiping rebellion (1850–64), had a war with France in 1884–5 over Tonking, and was worsted. Disturbances in Corea, over which both China and Japan claimed suzerainty, brought these two powers into conflict in the summer of 1894. Hostilities began in July at Seoul, the Corean capital, and in a short time the Chinese were driven out of the country. Soon after this the Japanese gained a great victory at Ping Yang (Sept. 16), and won an even more important naval engagement the following day at the mouth of the Yalu River, where the Chinese fleet met with a great disaster. Then the Japanese invaded Manchuria and attacked and captured Port Arthur (November 20–22.) In January and February following they took the forts at Wei-Hai-Wei and destroyed or captured the Chinese vessels. After they had taken Niuchuang in March, China sued for peace, which was concluded by the treaty of Shimonoseki in April. China then recognized the independence of Corea and ceded the island of Formosa and the Liao-Tung peninsula to Japan; but the threats of the European powers, especially Russia, compelled Japan to relinquish the latter. Soon afterwards she had to encounter serious resistance in the island.



RELIGIOUS CEREMONY IN CHINESE TEMPLE.

To face p. 616.

In China, when the young emperor showed a disposition of friendliness to foreigners and their ways, he was deposed by the Empress Dowager (1898). From that time the anti-foreign feeling grew stronger until it broke out in armed violence in May, 1890. This movement was especially strong in the northeastern provinces, where many Europeans, Christian clergymen, and their native converts were murdered. The Christians in Pekin were hemmed in and besieged for over two months. A relief expedition of Japanese, English, Russia, German and American soldiers had great difficulty in rescuing them, and were able to advance only after having almost destroyed Tientsin. When they approached the capital the Court fled westward. On August 13 the beleaguered Christians were released. Large indemnity claims were made by Japan and the other powers, and an agreement regarding them was not reached for a year. This done, the Imperial Court returned. Peace was thought to have been restored throughout the empire when, in February, 1901, another rebellion broke out in the southern provinces.

Australia.—The first Europeans to visit this great island, or rather continent, were the Portuguese (1601). Nearly half a century later the Dutch navigator, Van Diemen, sailed around it. Tasman, another Hollander, in 1642 discovered the island south of it that still bears his name. But the first European nation to make a settlement there was England, and the initial colony was the penal one of Botany Bay (1788). Ten years later most of the convicts sent there were Irish '98 rebels, among them the first priests in the country. From this beginning grew the now flourishing colony of New South Wales. Then followed Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, West Australia, North Australia, all along the coast, and Alexandraland, in the centre. The discovery of rich deposits of gold, in 1851, gave a great impetus to immigration. Tasmania, long called Van Diemen's Land, was also originally a penal colony. New Zealand, discovered by Tasman in 1642, was made a British colony in 1840. Early in the latter half of the nineteenth century these colonies began to receive each a local parliament. A federation of them had been agitated for some years, and a plan was at last adopted which went into effect on

January 1, 1901. It partakes somewhat of the nature of the Constitution of the United States and of that of the Dominion of Canada.

The Canadian Federation.—The privileges granted to the Catholics of Canada at the time of its cession to England (1763) and by the Quebec Act (1774), which extended the province towards the southwest, were one of the causes of the American Revolution. Canada was first divided in 1791 into Lower (Quebec) and Upper (Ontario). England learned but little in the art of government from her experience with the Thirteen Colonies. Her tyranny caused a rebellion of the French, under Louis Joseph Papineau, in 1837. The Earl of Durham was sent out in 1840 to investigate the condition of affairs, and the report he made led to the granting of home rule and to himself being relegated to private life, so distasteful were his views to the British government, Nova Scotia (Acadia) has been an English possession since 1713. Cape Breton Island was added to it in 1763. In 1784 it was divided, and the part north of the Bay of Fundy was then called New Brunswick. Prince Edward Island was also ceded to England by France in 1763. Manitoba was organized as a province out of the Northwest Territories in 1870. The first settlement in British Columbia was made in 1806, but there were not many settlers in it until the great rush to its gold fields began in June 1856. The colonization of Newfoundland, to which Labrador is politically united, was begun by the English in 1610. France subsequently disputed its ownership, but without success.

By a Confederation Act of the British Parliament the provinces of Ontario, Quebec, which had been again united since 1841, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia were joined together in 1867 as the Dominion of Canada. They had a common Parliament elected by the people and a governor general appointed by the Crown. Manitoba came into the Dominion in 1870, British Columbia in 1871, and Prince Edward Island in 1873. Newfoundland has never belonged to it. The District of Kewatin was formed in 1876 by the Dominion Parliament, out of the Northwest Territories and so were Assiniboin, Saskatchewan, Alberta and Athabasca in 1882.

The Latin-American States.—With the exception

of Brazil, all these so-called republics, but real oligarchies and despotisms, were Spanish colonial possessions. Mexico first revolted in 1810, but failed. It tried again in 1821, and secured independence. Then for a little while (1822-3) it was an empire under Iturbide, who was deposed and shot, when (1824) it became a federal republic. It was reorganized into a centralized state in 1835. Against this course Texas rebelled (1835) and secured its independence the following year. When Texas became a State of the Union (1845), it brought with it a dispute about its southwestern boundary, and this led to our Mexican War, in consequence of which Mexico lost the greater part of its territory (1848). On account of internal turmoil, France, England and Spain interfered in 1861, and the Spaniards occupied Vera Cruz. France brought the Grand Duke Maximilian of Austria and set him up as emperor (1862-67). When France withdrew her aid in consequence of the protest of the United States, the empire fell and the emperor was executed. There was more turmoil until 1876, when Porfirio Diaz organized a revolution and made himself President. He has been ruler ever since except during one term (1880-84), and the country has enjoyed comparative peace and prosperity under him.

Central America, in colonial times the vice-royalty of Guatemala, declared its independence of Spain in 1821, and two years later set itself up as a federal republic. This confederacy was dissolved in 1839, the result being the five independent states of Guatemala, San Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua and Costa Rica. Several attempts have since been made to reunite them, but have always failed. It is tedious to follow their mutual quarrels and internal turmoils. We have been most interested in Nicaragua, in the first place because of the filibustering expedition of the American, William Walker, who set up an arbitrary rule there in 1856, and got shot for his pains in 1860; and secondly, because of the recent negotiations for an interoceanic canal through the southern part of its territory.

Columbia or New Granada (including Ecuador) united in 1810 with Venezuela in throwing off the Spanish yoke, and next year they declared themselves independent. The leader of this movement was the young Venezuelan,

Simon Bolivar, surnamed "the Washington of South America," who received the title of *Libertador* in 1813. In 1819 all the territory was constituted as the Republic of Columbia, with Bolivar as president. Spanish power was destroyed in 1821, except in the province of Quito (Ecuador), which was liberated the following year. Venezuela became a separate republic in 1829, and Ecuador in 1830. Then the name New Granada was limited to only the northwestern part of its original territory; and this name was changed to Colombia in 1861. All three republics have had a stormy history, changes of government being frequently effected by revolution. Even the year 1902 opened with formidable rebellions in both Colombia and Venezuela.

Peru was a little later than her neighbors in seeking and achieving independence. It was proclaimed only when General San Martin entered Lima in 1821. Bolivar came to the same city two years later, overthrew the Spaniards at Ayacucho in 1824, and was then made dictator. The Spaniards evacuated Callao in 1826. In 1825 Bolivia seceded from Peru, so there were two republics that, like those north of them, have had a stormy time almost ever since. Spain waged an unsuccessful war on Peru in 1866. Both Peru and Bolivia were almost ruined in a war they waged against Chili (1879-83), the results of which have not yet been settled.

Chili has had the most peaceful history and the most uniformly prosperous career of any of the former Spanish possessions in America. Its revolution began in 1810, and in 1818 its freedom was secured by the battle of Maypú. Like Peru, it had a war with Spain in 1865-6. The most famous epoch in its history since independence is its war with Peru and Chili (1879-83). The latter began the contest. On May 21, 1879, two Peruvian ironclads attacked two Chilian men-of-war at Iquique and sank one of them; but while pursuing the other, one of the Peruvian vessels ran on a shoal and foundered, and the second was captured by the Chilians on October 8. They occupied Pisagua on November 2, defeated the combined Peruvians and Bolivians on November 19, occupied Iquique on the 23d, and won a decisive victory at Tarapacá on the 27th. Thereupon, in December, President Prado fled from Peru and Pierola proclaimed

himself dictator. On February 27, 1880, the Chilians made an unsuccessful attack on Arica by sea; but on March 20 and 21, they entered Moquegua and stormed the heights commanding it. They began the blockade of Callao in April, and on May 26 stormed the positions of their opponents at Tacua. Less than two weeks later they made themselves masters of Arica. They defeated the Peruvians at Chorillos on January 13, and at Miraflores on January 15, 1881. Though they entered Lima on the 17th, Pierola continued the war in the provinces. A provisional government, under President Calderon, was set up in Peru in March; but, by orders of Admiral Lynch, he was seized in the following November. All through 1882 bands of Peruvians kept up a guerilla warfare. Next year the Iglesias government in Peru accepted Chili's terms of peace, and in October the Chilian forces evacuated Lima. Chili gained provisional possession of the provinces of Tacua and Arica, which she now holds in violation of the treaty ceding them. In 1891 she had her one great internal disturbance. A conflict between Congress and President Balmaceda culminated in civil war, which began in January with the revolt of the greater part of the fleet. This enabled Colonel Canto to land near Valparaiso an army he had organized in the north. In August this force vanquished the Balmacedists in the outskirts of Valparaiso, captured that city, and then marched on Santiago, which it entered almost without opposition. The deposed dictator fled to hiding, where he committed suicide in September. Subsequently difficulties arose with the United States on account of a murderous assault on American seamen at Valparaiso in October. In November the government was reorganized, and peace has since prevailed.

Argentina, after the beginning of the revolutionary struggle in Buenos Ayres in 1810, was for a very long time one of the most active of the American political volcanoes. A congress held at Tucuman proclaimed the independence of the Plata provinces in 1816. After much disturbance Rosas attained to supreme power in 1829, and maintained it, frequently by force, until he was overthrown in 1852. At this time the province of Buenos Ayres seceded, and was brought back into the confederation by force only in 1859. It revolted again in 1861,

but reunion was effected the following year. There was war with Paraguay between 1865 and 1870. In 1890 a a financial panic completely upset the country. In recent years there has been comparative tranquility.

In Paraguay, the paradise of dictators, the revolutionary struggle was begun in 1881. Scarcely was independence won when Francia made himself dictator in 1814 and held power until 1840. C. A. Lopez maintained the same position from 1844 until 1862, and F. S. Lopez from the latter year until 1870. In this year was ended a war against Argentina, Brazil and Uruguay that was disastrous to Paraguay. The country has since made but little progress, even in its political methods.

Uruguay, which was recognized as an independent republic in 1828, has had not only its internal troubles down to very recent times, but in its early history with both Argentina and Brazil also.

This last-named country, if we except the two fitful experiments in Mexico and two in Hayti, was the only monarchy in America. It was a Portuguese possession from 1500 until 1822, when it was separated from the mother country and set up as a monarchy with Dom Pedro I. as emperor. Its independence was recognized in 1825. In 1831 the first emperor abdicated in favor of his son, Dom Pedro II., who was deposed in 1889, when a republic was established. The abolition of slavery was begun in 1871 and completed in 1888. The provisional government came to an end in February, 1891, when the constitution of the United States of Brazil was proclaimed. In the following November President Fonseca attempted to usurp dictatorial power. Then there was a formidable revolt in the province of Rio Grande do Sul, and at the same time a revolutionary movement in Rio Janeiro that forced Fonseca to resign. The Vice-President, Peixoto, succeeded him. In 1893 the navy revolted and the insurgents blockaded and subsequently bombarded Rio Janeiro. At the same time there were insurrections in various provinces. Peixoto fitted out a fleet. Under his able direction the naval rebellion collapsed in March and April, 1894. In November he was succeeded by Moraes Barros.

Hayti (Hispaniola) was Spain's first colony in America, and was also the first she was to lose. The western part

of the island was occupied by the French in the seventeenth century and against this domination the negroes rebelled in 1791. Two years later the French Convention proclaimed their freedom. With Toussaint l'Overture as leader, they joined the French against the English and Spaniards in 1794. Next year Spain ceded her portion of the island to France, and Toussaint became governor of the whole of it. In 1802 Napoleon made war on him and perfidiously seized him. The French were expelled in 1803, and Dessalines became emperor (1804-6). Independence was recognized by France in 1825. In 1844 the republic of San Domingo was constituted. Soulouque was proclaimed emperor of Hayti in 1849, but a revolution restored the republic in 1858. The government of San Domingo was transferred to Spain by Santana in 1861; but a rising in 1863 regained independence, which was recognized by Spain in 1865. Between 1869 and 1871 a scheme was set on foot to annex it to the United States. Both republics have been much troubled with insurrection and revolution.

THE UNITED STATES SINCE 1876.

The Hayes and Garfield-Arthur Administrations.—Our country entered upon its second century with its credit as well as its union restored. Scarcely had President Hayes assumed his office when he wiped out almost the last trace of rebellion and reconstruction in the South by removing United States troops from South Carolina and Louisiana; and he had appointed an ex-Confederate officer as a member of his cabinet. An act of Congress passed in 1875 had fixed upon January 1, 1879, as the date for the resumption of specie payments, and it took effect without the least trouble. The premium on gold, lessening for years, had disappeared some months before, and silver, demonetized in 1873, was remonetized by the Bland-Allison act early in 1878. United States bonds, selling at this time only at a trifle over par, in a couple of years commanded a very high premium. Thus the Government's credit was completely restored.

In the Presidential election of 1880 James A. Garfield, of Ohio, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, were successful over General W. S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania,

and William H. English, of Indiana, the Democratic nominees for President and Vice-President. On July 2, 1891, President Garfield, as he was boarding a train in Washington, on his way to attend the commencement exercises of Williams College, his Alma Mater, was shot by Charles J. Guiteau, a disappointed office-seeker. He died of his wound at Elberon, N. J., on September 19, six and a half months after he had been inaugurated, and then General Arthur became President. By the succession act of 1792 the next in succession were the President *pro tem.* of the Senate and then the Speaker of the House of Representatives. As the Forty Seventh Congress had not yet met, these offices were vacant and there was no one to succeed in case of the death or disability of the new President. Yet the defect was not to be remedied for nearly five and a half years. During Arthur's administration, Congress, in 1882, prohibited polygamy in Utah and placed that Territory under five commissioners. On May 6, of the same year the President signed a bill excluding Chinese immigration for ten years. In January, 1883 Congress passed the Pendleton Civil Service Act, which has since been amended and extended so as to cover by far the greater number of the Federal Government's employees. In this year also most of the internal revenue taxes remaining from the Civil War time were either abolished or greatly reduced.

The Cleveland and Harrison Administrations.—The election of 1884 effected the first change of political party in the National administration since 1860. Grover Cleveland, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, the Democratic candidates, were successful over James G. Blaine, of Maine, and John A. Logan, of Illinois, and were duly inaugurated on March 4, 1885. One of the leading men in the Civil War, General Grant, died on July 5, following, and Democrats and Republicans, North and South, united in mourning at his tomb. The death of Vice-President Hendricks before the end of the year led to the passage, in January, 1886, of a new Presidential succession act. This measure provides that, in case of the death or disability of both the President and the Vice-President, the succession shall pass to the members of the Cabinet in the order in which their offices were created. The counting of the electoral vote was

regulated by a law enacted on January 18, 1887. An act passed on February 4, following, known as the Interstate Commerce Law, regulated freight charges on goods passing from State to State. In May, 1888, Congress authorized the President to arrange for a conference, mainly for trade purposes, between the United States and the Latin-American governments. He did so, and sixteen nations sent delegates to a congress held at Washington in 1889. Then was established the Bureau of American Republics.

The Republican party was again successful in the national campaign of 1888, when Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, and Levi P. Morton, of New York, defeated President Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio. Besides, both houses of the newly elected Congress were Republican. At the close of April, 1889, both the late and the new Presidents attended a splendid celebration in New York of the centenary of Washington's inauguration. In September, nearly two years before, there had been held in Philadelphia an equally elaborate commemoration of the adoption of the United States Constitution. On June 27, 1890, Congress passed the Dependent Pension Law, under which pensions have risen to nearly $160,000,000 a year. At the same time an Anti-Trust law was enacted which has been far from being so effective in its purpose of limiting great trade combinations. About this time six new States were admitted into the Union, namely, North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana and Washington, in November, 1889, and Idaho and Wyoming in July, 1890. In the latter month and year were passed the Sherman Act for increasing the circulation of silver and the McKinley Tariff Act for rearranging import duties on a protection basis. Lotteries were driven out of the country by a bill passed on September 27, and two days later Congress declared forfeited all lands held by corporations the grants for which had not been complied with.

In the House of Representatives elected in 1900 the Democrats had an overwhelming majority, and equally decisive was their victory two years later, when Cleveland was again chosen as President over Harrison. His colleague on this occasion was Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois. Congress was now Democratic in both branches

after March 4, 1898. On the preceding February 15, President Harrison had sent to the Senate a treaty for the annexation of the Hawaiian Islands, where a revolution had just abolished royalty. Five days after his inauguration President Cleveland recalled the treaty, and a provisional republic was set up in the Islands. In the spring a panic broke out that kept the United States in business depression for some years. The President, attributing the panic to the Sherman Act, called Congress to meet in extra session on August 7 to repeal that measure and to amend the Tariff laws. The silver repeal bill was not passed until November 1, and the Tariff measure was not taken up until Congress met in regular session in December. It provided for a general reduction of duties. Known as the Wilson bill, it became a law without the President's signature on August 27, 1894. To it was annexed a provision imposing a tax on incomes of over $4,000. In the following year this clause of the law was declared unconstitutional by the Supreme Court. The new tariff measure caused such a reduction of revenue that Congress had to authorize several issues of bonds, all of which were at once taken up at a high premium. Utah was admitted to Statehood in January, 1896.

A very important episode in our foreign relations began in 1895. Between England and Venezuela there had been a long-standing dispute about the western boundary of British Guiana. This had become so bitter that diplomatic relations were broken off, and the latter country appealed to the United States for aid. After the State department in Washington had communicated with the British government to no purpose, President Cleveland, on December 17, sent a strong special message to Congress discussing the case in behalf of the sister republic and reasserting the Monroe Doctrine against its real author, who now bluntly refused to submit the case to arbitration. On the contrary, she assumed a tone of defiance, and for a time it looked as if war would ensue. The President then suggested that Congress provide for a boundary commission, which it did promptly. In a little while England began gradually to recede from her defiant position, and at last, on November 12, 1896, concluded an arbitration treaty with Venezuela. Ultimately the territory in dispute was divided between the contest-

ants. The great non-political event of Cleveland's second term was the Columbian World's Fair held at Chicago in 1893. It was the most brilliant international exposition that had been seen until that time. Catholics took a prominent part in it, and their educational exhibit attracted universal attention and admiration. They were represented by Cardinal Gibbons, Mgr. Satolli, and others in a Congress of Religions. They also held there a Lay Congress of their own, the second of the kind in this country. The other had been convened in Baltimore on the occasion of the celebration in that city, four years before, of the founding of the Catholic hierarchy in the United States. That event marked an epoch in our Church history, and was supplemented on the fourth day of the festivities, November 13, 1889, by the opening of the Catholic University of America at Washington, The Holy See was represented on these occasions by Mgr. Satolli, who came to this country again on a special mission in 1892, and was soon thereafter made the first head of a permanent Apostolic Delegation in the United States, with residence in Washington. In 1896 he was raised to the cardinalate and was succeeded here by Mgr. Martinelli, who also became a Cardinal in 1901.

President McKinley. The Spanish-American War.—For years prior to the National Campaign of 1896 the free silver agitation had been leavening the Democratic party, and was now made its rallying cry. But its candidates, William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, and Arthur Sewall, of Maine, were defeated in the election by those of the gold-standard Republicans, William McKinley, of Ohio, and Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey. The new Congress was also Republican in both branches. Almost immediately after his inauguration President McKinley called an extra session of Congress, which enacted a new protective tariff law, the Dingley bill of July 24, 1897.

Early in 1895 an insurrection against Spanish rule broke out in Cuba, the third great rebellion in that island. Conditions kept on growing worse there, and American trade interests, as well as American citizens, were suffering. Public opinion in the United States, irrespective of party, was aroused. On December 21, 1896, the Senate recognized the Republic of Cuba, but President Cleveland insisted on observing strict neutrality. President

McKinley, in March, 1897, demanded the release of all Americans who were prisoners, and before the end of April the last of them was free. The belligerent rights of the Cubans were recognized by the Senate on May 20, and the House soon indorsed this action, as well as granted supplies for suffering Americans in Cuba. At the same time pressure was brought to bear on Spain for a peaceful solution of the trouble, but to no avail. In January, 1898, our government decided to send a war vessel to Havana to watch our interests there, and accordingly the battleship "Maine" reached that destination on the 24th. On February 9 the Cuban insurgent Junta, published a letter from the Spanish minister at Washington, Senor Dupuy de Lome, containing abuse of President McKinley. Its author was at once ordered to resign. On the 15th the "Maine" was blown up at her anchorage in Havana harbor, but by whom has never been determined. Two officers and 264 men were killed.

This tragedy caused intense excitement in the United States, and war would probably have been declared at once had our government been ready for it. On April 11 the President sent a special message to Congress, asking for power to but an end to hostilities in Cuba. Two days later the House adopted a resolution authorizing him to intervene, and on the 19th both Houses agreed to a resolution that Cuba ought to be free and independent. The new Spanish minister at once demanded his passports, and the American minister in Madrid was dismissed. On the 21st Admiral Sampson was sent with a fleet to Havana and the blockade of that and the neighboring ports was begun. On the 25th Congress declared that war had existed with Spain since the 21st. Admiral Dewey, in charge of the Pacific squadron of six vessels, was ordered to Manila Bay, which he entered on May 1, and there destroyed a Spanish fleet of ten ships without losing a boat or even a man. He then blockaded the city of Manila, which was soon besieged by an insurgent army under General Aguinaldo. Another Spanish fleet under Admiral Cervera had sailed from the Cape Verde Islands on April 29, and had stolen its way unobserved into Santiago harbor, where it was blockaded by Admiral Schley before the end of May. Here Admiral Sampson took chief command on June 1. On the 3d Lieutenant Hobson

sank the collier "Merrimac" in the narrow mouth of the harbor. Ere this Sampson's squadron had been joined by the new battleship "Oregon", which had made the voyage of 14,000 miles from San Francisco to Florida between March 19 and May 24. The cutting of submarine cables leading from Cuba had been begun at Cienfuegos on May 11 by men from the "Nashville".

A hastily-organized army of raw recruits, under General Shafter, began landing on June 20, some distance east of Santiago. This force had its first fight with the Spaniards at Siboney on the 22-3, when Colonel Roosevelt's "Rough Riders" distinguished themselves. On the 30th the battle of San Juan Hill was fought, and on July 1 that of El Caney. There was further fighting, with another victory, next day. In consequence, on Sunday morning, July 3, Cervera's fleet made a bold dash for liberty, emerged from the harbor and turned westward along the coast, where it was utterly destroyed by the American squadron. The army then laid siege to Santiago, which surrendered on the 16th. Another army, under General Miles, invaded Porto Rico on July 25, and had almost completed the subjugation of the island when, on August 13, news arrived that a peace protocol had been signed. On the same day Manila surrendered. In due course of time a treaty of peace was concluded. By this instrument the independence of Cuba was recognized, Porto Rico was ceded to the United States, and the Philippine Islands sold to our government for $20,000,000. In addition to this sudden acquisition of nearly 120,000 square miles of territory and about 8,000,000 of population, the Hawaiian Islands had been annexed by Congress on July 7.

Independent Cuba has since remained under our protection, for the first two years with a military, then with a civil government. In the summer of 1901 it adopted a conservative republican constitution, and in the following November held its first election under that instrument. In 1903 Congress passed a special tariff act in its behalf. Porto Rico also began its change of masters with military rule, for which the civil, with a nominal tariff, was substituted. The tariff was abolished in 1901. The Filipino insurgents, disappointed at not acquiring independence, rose in rebellion against the United States on the night of February 4, 1899, and this rebellion remained formidable

for nearly two years. Its smouldering embers, indeed, did not die out until 1902. Aguinaldo, its leader, was captured in the Summer of 1901. Then the experiment of civil rule was begun there. Since then a dispute with the church about the property of the friars has been satisfactorily settled.

In home affairs, Congress passed a gold standard currency bill, which became a law on March 15, 1900. The census of that year showed a population of about 85,000,000 in all our States, Territories and possessions, and the area these people inhabited was more than six times as large as the thirteen states that achieved independence with probably only half of their population of 2,500,000. Our export trade had enormously increased, and showed that the United States was fast taking the lead among the manufacturing nations of the world.

The Republican national convention of 1900 renominated President McKinley for a second term, with Theodore Roosevelt, Governor of New York, as his colleague, and the Democrats again chose Mr. Bryan and Ex-Vice-President Stevenson. The former were elected by an increased majority, and with a great preponderance in both branches of Congress. While holding a reception at the Pan-American Exposition in Buffalo, President McKinley was shot by an anarchist of Polish extraction on September 6, 1901, and died on the 14th. A fitting tribute to his memory was paid by his successor, Mr. Roosevelt, in his first message to Congress when it met in the beginning of December. Soon afterwards the Senate ratified a treaty with England regarding the influence of the United States in Central America. Under the Clayton-Bulwer treaty of 1850 England claimed certain privileges that were in conflict with this country's interests. These, after years of negotiation, she now abandoned, as that instrument is expressly abrogated in the new arrangement.

NOTES.

NOTE A.—PAGE 33.

CHARACTER AND DEATH OF SENECA, LUCAN, ETC.

This Seneca, surnamed *the Philosopher*, to distinguish him from his father Seneca, called *the Orator*, was a man of great genius and learning. He left a great number of moral treatises, which contain beautiful maxims mingled with many errors, and the style of which, labored and refined, greatly contributed to the decline of good taste and true eloquence in Rome. As to his character, although he was possessed of many moral virtues, his weak connivance at several vices and crimes of Nero, his vanity, his usuries and immense riches, showed that his boasted philosophy consisted more in theory than in practice. In compliance with the orders of Nero, he died by taking poison and opening his veins.

The death of Lucan the poet, his nephew, was very similar: in obedience to the same tyrannical orders, he also caused his veins to be opened. After having lost a great quantity of blood, finding his hands and feet grow cold, and the extremities of his body almost dead, while the parts nearer the heart still retained their natural warmth; he recollected the description he had given in his Pharsalia of a death very like his own, and recited from it the following lines, which were his last words:

Scinditur avulsus, nec, sicut vulnere, sanguis
Emicuit lentus: ruptis cadit undiquè venis.
* * * * * Pars ultima trunci
Tradidit in letum vacuos vitalibus artus.
At tumidus quà pulmo jacet, quà viscera fervent,
Hæserunt ibi fata diù; luctataque multùm
Hâc cum parte viri vix omnia membra tulerunt.

Lucani, Pharsalia, III.

* * * * Asunder flies the man.
No single wound the gaping rupture seems,
Where trickling crimson wells in slender streams;
But from an opening horrible and wide,
A thousand vessels pour the bursting tide.
* * * * * * * *
Soon from the lower parts the spirits fled,
And motionless th' exhausted limbs lay dead,

Not so the nobler regions, where the heart
And heaving lungs their vital powers exert:
There lingering late and long conflicting, life
Rose against fate, and still maintained the strife.
Driven out at length, unwillingly and slow,
She left her mortal house, and sought the shades below.
Rowe.

Many others, in the same corrupt age, either anticipated by a voluntary death, or consented to execute upon themselves the sentence of their condemnation: and it is worthy of remark, that the frequency of suicide always bears a proportion to the depravity of the time and country in which it is practised, it being one of the basest and most heinous crimes that can be committed. *One of the basest*, because, far from being a mark of true fortitude, it is, on the contrary, a sure mark of pusillanimity, and of a mind easily overcome by misfortune; as Martial the poet has said: "Fortiter ille facit, qui miser esse potest—*he* is truly courageous, who can bear to be unfortunate." *One of the most heinous*, against God, whose sovereign dominion over life and death it violates by a bold usurpation; against society, which it unjustly deprives of its members; and against the perpetrator himself, whom it consigns to everlasting misery, in exchange for a temporal evil: for such, and no other, must be the result of suicide, not only on the principles of divine revelation, but even on those of reason and natural light. Whence Virgil, in his Æneid, speaking of the place of torments appointed in Tartarus for those who have committed suicide, very justly exclaims:

* * * * * Quàm vellent æthere in alto,
Nunc et pauperiem et duros perferre labores!—*Æneid*, VI.

The whole passage stands thus in Dryden:

The next in place, and punishment, are they
Who prodigally threw their souls away;
Fools, who repining at their wretched state,
And loathing anxious life, suborn'd their fate.
With late repentance now they would retrieve
The bodies they forsook, and wish to live;
Their pains and poverty desire to bear,
To view the light of heaven, and breathe the vital air.
But fate forbids; the Stygian floods oppose,
And, with nine circling streams, the captive soul enclose.

Thus the guilt and folly of suicide were acknowledged by the wisest of Pagans; and if the contrary opinion was more prevalent among them, it must be ascribed to the depravity of the times, and to that almost universal darkness which an absurd polytheism had spread over the principles of morality; a circumstance this, which renders the admission of suicide among Christians still more unjustifiable. As to the equally criminal and brutal practice of duelling, so common in our days, it was totally unknown to the civilized nations of antiquity, and originated in the ferocity of those barbarians of Northern Europe, who, in the fifth century, overthrew the Roman empire.

NOTE B.—PAGE 44.

THE HISTORIAN JOSEPHUS.

NEARLY all that we relate concerning the Jewish war, being taken from Josephus, it will not be amiss to make some remarks respecting that great historian; referring, for a fuller account of his life, to his own writings.

Josephus was born of an illustrious Jewish family. From his youth, he appeared still more remarkable for the qualities of his mind than for the nobleness of his extraction, and showed so accurate a knowledge of the Mosaic law, that, even at the age of fourteen years, he was consulted on important matters by the doctors themselves. Having, in course of time, acquired more and more credit and authority among his countrymen, he made every effort to prevent them from rebelling against the Romans; and, when he found his endeavors of no avail, he resolved at least to retard, as long as possible, the moment of their ruin. He was appointed by them governor of Galilee, one of the Jewish provinces most exposed, from its position, to the attacks of the enemy.

Notwithstanding many obstacles, Josephus, by his ability, prudence and firmness kept that province in good order for some time; but the approach of a powerful army commanded by Vespasian, compelled him to retire into Jotapat, the best fortified town in the country. Though pursued and besieged by the Romans, he defended the town, with astonishing skill and valor during forty-seven days, at the end of which, Jotapat was taken by surprise, and its inhabitants were put to the sword, with the exception of some hundred women and children. Josephus took refuge in a deep cavern, where he concealed himself with forty of his soldiers. Three days after, the place of his retreat having been discovered by the conquerors, he would have immediately intrusted himself to the generosity of Vespasian, had he not been prevented from surrendering by the threats of his companions. These furious men, to avoid falling into the hands of a victorious enemy, resolved to kill themselves with their own swords; Josephus prevailed on them rather to die by the hands of others, proposing to them to decide by lot who should be first killed by his companion, who should follow next, and so on to the last: a proposal, after all, not less exceptionable than their first design. They followed it however, till Josephus, most fortunately, remained, with only one man, whom he persuaded to surrender with him to the Romans (see Josephus himself, *De Bello Judaico*, *lib.* III. *c.* 7 and 8).

He was kindly treated by Vespasian, and still more so by Titus, who had conceived a great esteem for his merit. He afterwards followed this prince to the siege of Jerusalem, where he repeatedly exhorted his countrymen to imitate his example, and to deserve the clemency of the Romans by an entire submission: but, far from being successful in the attempt, he was insulted, and, on one occasion even wounded; he would have been either slain or taken prisoner, had not Titus speedily sent a body of soldiers to his assistance, who succeeded in carrying him back to the

camp. After the destruction of Jerusalem, he went with the same prince to Rome, where he continued to be much honored by him and his father Vespasian.

It was during his residence in Rome, that Josephus finished his many historical works, which display a talent for narrative, a warmth of imagination and a beauty of style, that have gained for him the surname of the *Grecian Livy*. The most celebrated of his writings is the "History of the Jewish War" in seven books. It obtained the unqualified approbation of Vespasian, Titus, and King Agrippa, who were all perfectly acquainted with the facts there mentioned.

Indeed nothing is wanting to render that work both highly interesting and credible. It is the history of a war unparalleled in the annals of nations, a narrative of notorious as well as extraordinary events, written by one who had been an eye-witness, and even one of the chief actors in them: a narrative published at a time when it could have been easily contradicted by a thousand other witnesses, had it been deemed at variance with facts—far from being thus contradicted, it met with universal admiration and praise. It is a history, the author of which Almighty God saved by a special protection from innumerable dangers, that we might have in him an unexceptionable witness of the entire fulfilment of the divine prophecies concerning the temple and city of Jerusalem. In a word, it is both an authentic and admirable record, which, though very favorable to the cause of Christianity, cannot in the least be suspected of partiality for the Christians, since the writer was not a Christian, but a Jew constantly attached to his religion, his nation, and his country.

NOTE C.—PAGE 99.

NUMBER OF MARTYRS DURING THE GENERAL PERSECUTIONS OF THE CHURCH.

WHAT we have related of the persecutions of the church during the first ages, plainly shows that the multitude of those who were put to death for the cause of the Christian faith, was immense. Still Gibbon, in his "*Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*," *ch.* XVI., maintains that the number of martyrs was not considerable, nor their courage astonishing. The following additional quotations from ancient sources, will show at once, it is hoped, the falsity of his assertions, and the accuracy of our statement. For the sake of brevity, we shall confine our remarks to the first, fifth and tenth persecutions.

For the first persecution, besides Tertullian and other ecclesiastical writers, we have the grave and contemporary pagan historian Tacitus, who writes thus: "An immense multitude (*multitudo ingens*) of Christians were condemned, not, indeed, upon evidence of their having set the city (of Rome) on fire, but rather on account of the hatred of the whole human race. To their sufferings Nero added mockery and derision. Some were covered with the skins of wild beasts, to make dogs devour them; others were crucified, and many, covered over with inflammable matter, were lighted up, when the day declined, to serve as torches during the night." (Tacit, *Annal.*, *lib.* XV, *n.* 44.)

With regard to the fifth persecution (which Gibbon modestly calls *a mitigated* one), merely to mention the martyrs of Lyons; Ado of Vienne says in his martyrology (28th of June), that St. Irenæus, bishop of that city, suffered martyrdom with an exceedingly great multitude. An ancient epitaph, inscribed on a curious mosaic pavement in the great church of St. Irenæus at Lyons, says that the number of the martyrs who died with him amounted to the number of nineteen thousand, besides women and children. St. Gregory of Tours writes that St. Irenæus had, in a very short time converted to the Christian faith nearly the whole city of Lyons, and that with him were butchered almost all the Christians of that populous town; in so much that streams of blood flowed through the streets: *Tanta multitudo Christianorum jugulata est, ut per plateas flumina currerent de sanguine Christiano*; (*Hist. Franc. lib.* I. *c.* 29.) St. Eucherius writes on the martyrs of Lyons in the like manner; and Eusebius, speaking in more general terms of the same persecution, says: "When Severus raised a persecution against the Church, there were illustrious testimonies given by the combatants of religion in the various churches everywhere" (*Eccl. Hist. lib.* VI. *c.* 1). So much for the *mitigated* persecution of Septimius Severus.

The same Eusebius relates more at large the tenth persecution, the atrocities of which he had witnessed with his own eyes. To the texts and facts which we have quoted from him, page 94, we will subjoin the following, also taken from his *Ecclesiastical History, book* VIII, according to the English edit. Philad. 1834.

Ch. 6 "Innumerable multitudes were imprisoned in every place, and the dungeons formerly destined for murderers and the vilest criminals, were then filled with bishops, and presbyters (priests), and deacons, readers, and exorcists; so that there was no room left for those condemned for crimes. But, when the former edict was followed by another, in which it was ordered that the prisoners should be permitted to have their liberty if they sacrificed, but persisting, they should be punished with the most excruciating tortures, who could tell the number of those martyrs in every province, and particularly in Mauritania, Thebaïs, and Egypt, that suffered death for their religion?"

Ch. 8. "In Egypt thousands, both men and women, and children, despising the present life for the sake of our Saviour's doctrine, submitted to death in various shapes. Some, after being tortured with scrapings and the rack, and the most dreadful scourgings, and other innumerable agonies, which one might shudder to hear, were finally committed to the flames; some were plunged and drowned in the sea; others voluntarily offered their own heads to the executioners; others died in the midst of their torments, some wasted away by famine, and others again fixed to the cross. Some, indeed, were executed as malefactors usually were; others, more cruelly, were nailed with the head downwards, and kept alive until they were destroyed by starving on the cross itself."

Ch. 9. "But it would exceed all power of detail to give an idea of the sufferings and tortures which the Martyrs of Thebaïs endured . . . . . And all these things done not only for a few days, or some time, but for a series of whole years. At one time,

ten or more ; at another, more than twenty, at another time, not less than thirty, and even sixty ; and again, at another time, a hundred men with their wives and little children were slain in one day, while they were condemned to various and varied punishments. We ourselves have observed, when on the spot, many crowded together in one day, some suffering decapitation, some the torments of flames ; so that the murderous weapon was completely blunted, and having lost its edge, broke to pieces ; and the executioners themselves, wearied with slaughter, were obliged to relieve one another. Then also, we were witnesses to the most admirable ardor of mind, and the truly divine energy and alacrity of those that believed in Christ. For, as soon as the sentence was pronounced against the first, others rushed forward from other parts to the tribunal before the judge, and, most indifferent to the dreadful and multiform tortures that awaited them, openly declared that they were Christians."

Ch. 12. "In Pontus and other countries of Asia, the martyrs endured torments that are horrible to relate. Some had their fingers pierced with sharp reeds thrust under their nails. Others were roasted by masses of melted lead . . . . Some were suspended by the feet, and a little raised from the ground with their heads downward, were suffocated with the ascending smoke of a gentle fire kindled below . . . . Others were roasted on grates of fire, not to kill immediately, but torture them with a lingering punishment . . . . It is impossible to tell the great and incalculable number of those that had their right eye dug out with the sword, and then seared with a red hot iron ; those too, whose left foot was maimed with a searing iron : after these, those who in different provinces were condemned to the copper mines, not so much for the service, as for the contumely and misery they should endure. Many, also, endured conflicts of other kinds, which it would be impossible to detail ; for their noble fortitude surpasses all power of description. In this, the magnanimous confessors of Christ that shone conspicuous throughout the whole world, everywhere struck the beholders with astonishment, and presented the obvious proofs of our Saviour's divine interposition in their own persons."

Is not all this more than sufficient to overthrow at once the whole system of Gibbon concerning the Christian martyrs ? The sceptical author has himself perceived it very well ; and hence his anger against Eusebius.

Lactantius has fewer words, but is not less positive than Eusebius on the excessive cruelties and ravages of the persecution of Diocletian. "Though I had," says he, "a hundred mouths and tongues, with an iron breast, it would be impossible for me to describe the various and horrid tortures that were inflicted on the guiltless Christians, throughout the provinces of the empire." (*De Morte persec. n.* xvi.)

Sulpicius Severus, who lived in the same century, though a little later, expresses himself in the same manner on the present subject. The following are his words, in the 2d book of his *Hist. Sacr. :* "Under the empire of Diocletian and Maximian, a most rigorous persecution arose, which made frightful ravages in the church for ten years in succession. During that period, nearly

the whole world was stained with the blood of the holy martyrs. Never was the earth more depopulated by any war, than by this persecution ; nor did the church ever obtain a greater triumph, than when it could not be conquered by a continual slaughter which lasted ten years."..*Diocletiano et Maximiano imperantibus, acerbissima persecutio exorta, quæ per decem continuos annos plebem Dei depopulata est. Quâ tempestate omnis ferè sacro martyrum cruore orbis infectus est . . . Nullis umquàm magis bellis mundus exhaustus est: neque majore unquàm triumpho vicimus, quàm quùm decem annorum stragibus vinci non potuimus.*

There is yet extant a medal of Diocletian with this inscription : "The name of Christians being annihilated ;" *Nomine Christianorum deleto.* This indeed was asserting what had never happened ; still, what an immense quantity of blood must have been shed, to make the persecutors believe that they had obliterated the Christian name, and destroyed a religion which filled the whole empire !

After such unexceptionable testimonies, which certainly suppose the number of martyrs to have amounted to millions, how ridiculous and absurd must the assertions of Gibbon appear, when, besides frequently contradicting himself, he maintains : first, that there were not more than fifteen hundred or two thousand martyrs in the persecution of Diocletian ; secondly, that their sufferings ought to be ascribed to a cause different from that of religion, and their fortitude to mere human motives, such as pride, ambition and desire of glory ; thirdly, that their tortures only existed in the imagination of the monks of latter ages ! Indeed, was Gibbon serious, when writing these things, or did he not rather intend to trifle with his readers ? In how deceitful and shameful a manner does he endeavor to answer and oppose the most authentic monuments of antiquity !

1st. He conceals, omits, alters, or calls in question the strongest passages of ancient historians, which are contrary to his system ; a commodious way indeed to get rid of the most forcible proofs, when they cannot be met with solid argument!

2d. He impeaches the veracity, or at least the accuracy of Tacitus in the passage above quoted, under the pretence that Tacitus had not seen what he relates: as if ocular demonstration were the only means of acquiring the knowledge of facts, and as if Tacitus could not be perfectly acquainted with an event quite notorious in its nature, which happened in Rome where he wrote his Annals, and a few years only before he began to write ! But, if the principle be true, that the testimony of the eyes is requisite to know and surely transmit historical events, what credit, we ask, can possibly be given to any part of Gibbon's work, since the facts there recorded, are supposed to have happened many centuries before Gibbon was born ? What right has an inconsistent and infidel author to claim the least reliance on his word, while he himself so boldly discredits the testimony of a grave, judicious, and renowned historian ?

3d. He appeals to the well known moderation of Trajan, Marcus Aurelius, and other such princes, to exculpate them from the guilt of having been persecutors. Some of those emperors, we admit, did not enact laws against Christianity ; but they at least suffered the ancient laws to be executed, and themselves

sometimes carried on the persecution, as we learn from Eusebius (*Eccl*; *Hist. lib.* III. IV. and V.), St. Justin and Meliton (in their *Apolog.*), and Pliny the Younger (*Epist. ad Traj.*). Moreover, what does their supposed moderation prove against the violence of the persecutions raised by Nero, Septimius, and others?

4th. Gibbon insists on the small number of Christians who were juridically condemned. Small it may have been, but how many, how very many more perished everywhere, without the formality of a judicial sentence, as ancient historians testify!

5th. He emphatically adduces a sentence of Origen, which says that the number of martyrs was inconsiderable (*Contrà Celsum, lib.* III. *n*, 8). But he ought to have added likewise what comes next in Origen, and shows his true meaning, *viz.* that there always remained more Christians alive, than had perished during the persecution, "God being unwilling," says he, "that the Christian society should be destroyed." Hence the small number of martyrs spoken of by this Father, is to be understood relatively to the number of the survivors; which does not favor the system of Gibbon, nor contradict our statement; the less so, as Origen wrote this before the persecutions of Decius, Valerian, and Diocletian, the most cruel and bloody of all.

6th. Eusebius positively testifies that he was an eye-witness to the multitude, the sufferings, and the constancy of the martyrs of Thebaïs and Egypt;* Gibbon calls the fact in question—which of the two ought to be believed?

---

* Gibbon, to elude the difficulty, contents himself with saying that the term used by Eusebius may signify either that he *had seen* or that he *had heard*. We will give the original text, and place by its side the Latin translation of the learned Henry de Valois who will be acknowledged to have known Greek as well as Gibbon, and who translates another word of the context by the very strong expression, *oculis nostris conspeximus:*

"Ιστορήσαμεν δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τόπων γενομενοι, πλείους ἀθρόως κατὰ μίαν ἡμέραν· τοὺς μὲν τῆς κεφαλῆς ἀποτομὴν ὑπομείναντας, τοὺς δὲ τὴν διὰ τυρὸς τιμμωρίαν . . . . . "Οτε καὶ θαυμασιωτάτην ἐριμὴν, θείαν τε ὡς ἀληθῶς δύναμιν καὶ προθυμίαν τῶν εἰς τὸν Χριστὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ πεπιστευκότων συνεωρῶμεν. —*Lib.* VIII *cap.* 9.

Nos quoque, cùm in illis partibus degerèmus, quàm plurimos acervatim uno die: alios quidem capite truncatos, alios verò flammis traditos *vidimus* . . . . . Quo quidem tempore mirabilem imprimis animi ardorem, verèque divinam virtutem et alacritatem eorum qui in Christum Dei crediderant, *oculis nostris conspeximus.*

In the two following passages, Eusebius has employed the term of which we are speaking. The candid reader will decide on the meaning of the author.—In the first, speaking of the statue erected in Cæsarea Philippi to our Saviour by the woman mentioned in the Gospel, he says:

"Εμεινε δὲ καὶ εἰς ἡμᾶς, ὡς καῖ ὀψει παραλαβεῖν ἐπιδημήσαντας αὐτοὺς τῇ πδλει. Καὶ θαυμαστὸν οὐδὲν τοὺς πάλαι ἐξ ἐθνῶν εὐεργετηθέντας πρὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἡμῶν, ταῦτα πεποιπκέναι· ὅτε καὶ τῶν 'Αποστόλων αὐτοῦ τὸς εἰκόνας Παύλον καὶ Πέτρου, καὶ αὐτοῦ δὴ τοῦ Χριστοῦ, διὰ χρωμάτων ἐν γραφαῖς σωζοαένας ἱστορήσαμεν.— *L.* VII *cap.* 18.

Mansit porro (the statue) ad nostra usque tempora: nosque adeò urbem illam ingressi, *ipsam conspeximus.* Nec verò mirandum est Gentiles à Servatore nostro beneficiis affectos hæc præstitisse: cùm et Apostolorum Petri ac Pauli, Christique ipsius pictas imagines, ad nostram usque memoriam servantas *in tabuiis viderimus.*

7th. In order to weaken the overwhelming authority of the same Eusebius, and also of Lactantius, the English sophist calls the former a courtier, and the latter a rhetorician; as if rhetoric or the court had any thing to do with the present subject, and could have deprived these illustrious writers of their ears, eyes, learning and judgment. Assuredly if such angry and preposterous accusations be once admitted, there is at once an end of historical knowledge. The truth is, that Gibbon, being an enemy to the Church of Christ, chose rather to fall into absurdities, than permit her quietly to enjoy the lustre thrown around her by the multitude and constancy of her martyrs.

Many other reprehensible assertions against the Christian Religion, her tenets and her ministers, are to be found in the work of Gibbon: although they are equally destitute of proof, it is not our object here to discuss them. We have said enough to show that this author is, at least in what regards Christianity, unworthy of credit, and a real infidel, who covers, but cannot conceal his hatred against our holy religion with the veil of affected moderation and learning. Hence it is most deplorable, that a work so well calculated to instil the poison of scepticism and infidelity, should be so much read, praised, and recommended in Christian and enlightened countries. Will any literary advantage, derived from some beauties of style, ever compensate so pernicious a result?

NOTE D.—PAGE 119.

ATTEMPT OF THE EMPEROR JULIAN TO REBUILD THE TEMPLE OF JERUSALEM.

That this attempt entirely failed, and that its failure was not a natural event, is so certain, and so well proved, that it can be denied only by one who is ready to deny everything. In the first place, the fact is related by a great number of contemporary writers, *viz:* St. Gregory Nazianzen, in the year immediately following the event (*Orat.* v. *contr. Julian.*); St. John Chrysostom, in several parts of his works, especially his first, fifth and sixth Discourses on the Jews, where he appeals to eye-witnesses yet living; St. Ambrose, in his 40th Epistle, written A.D. 388, to the emperor Theodosius; Rufinus, in his Eccles. Hist. (*b.* I. *c.* 37, etc.); Philostorgius, the Arian (*b.* VII. *c.* 14); Theodoret, the celebrated bishop of Cyra (*b.* III. *c.* 20); Socrates, (*b.* III. *c.* 20); Sozomen, who says that many were still alive who had seen the splendid prodigy (*b.* V. *c.* 22); etc.

The second passage is still more to the point: relating the sufferings of certain martyrs in Phœnicia, Eusebius uses the following words:

. . . . Οἷς γιγνομένοις καὶ αὐτοὶ σαρῆμεν, ἐπηνίκα του μαρτυρουμένου Σωτῆρος ἡμῶι αὐτοῦ δὴ Ἰησοὺ Χριστοῦ τὴν θείαν δύναμιν ἐπιπαροῦσαν, ἐναργῶς τε αὐτὴν τοῖς μάρτυσιν ἐπιδεικνὺσαν δστορήσαμεν.—*Lib.* VIII. *cap.* 7.

Quæ cum gererentur, *nos ipsi præsentes aderamus:* ubi et divinam potentiam Servatoris nostri Jesu Christi, cui nunc martyres testimonium perhibebant, præsentem et semetipsam manifestè martyribus exhibentem *perspeximus* . . . . . .

This unanimous testimony of the Ecclesiastical historians is corroborated by that of the Jews and gentiles. Rabbis Gans-Zemach and Gedaliah relate the fact with its principal circumstances; the latter especially, is clear, positive, and the more deserving of credit, as he transcribed what he wrote from the annals of his nation. Libanius, a friend and perpetual admirer of Julian, speaks in two places of earthquakes and dreadful accidents which had lately happened in Palestine. Julian himself, in one of his letters, confesses that he attempted to raise the Temple of the Jews from its ruins, and cannot help insinuating the insurmountable obstacles he met with, which obliged him to give up the enterprise.

Above all, we have the express testimony of Ammianus Marcellinus, another heathen and contemporary author, who writes thus in the 23d book of his History.: "While Alypius, assisted by the governor of the province, urged with vigor and diligence the execution of the work, fearful balls of fire frequently breaking out near the foundations, several times burned or scorched the workmen, and rendered the place inaccessible. The terrible element *continuing in this manner obstinately* to repel every effort, the undertaking was abandoned." Cùm itaque rei fortiter instaret Alypius, juvaretque provinciæ rector, metuendi globi flammarum propè fundamenta crebris assultibus erumpentes fecêre locum, exustis aliquotiès operantibus, inaccessum; *hocque modo elemento destinatiùs repellente,* cessavit inceptum.—Amm. *lib.* XXIII. *c.* 1.

To such a mass of evidence what can be opposed, and what is really opposed by Gibbon and other infidels? Do they adduce against the fact just related, anything, I do not say evident, but even plausible; for instance, the contradictory statement of some historians worthy of credit? By no means; they merely appeal to the silence of some ancient authors who thought it unnecessary to mention the wonderful event. But, when was it ever admitted that the silence of a few, and even of many, could destroy or even weaken the positive asseveration of others among whom collusion was utterly impossible, of numerous and learned, contemporary and unexceptionable vouchers? What can we believe in the annals of nations, in the transactions of human life, in courts of judicature, etc., if in order to obtain sufficient evidence of a fact, the express attestation of innumerable persons is required? This is certainly a strange rule of criticism. Nor is there less fallacy and absurdity in the affected doubts of our modern infidels, in their usual resource of a *maybe* or *perhaps*, in their vague charges of exaggeration, fanaticism, Christian credulity, and the like:—what have such charges to do with an event equally important and notorious, with a fact openly proclaimed and recorded by a multitude of writers, at a time when innumerable witnesses were still alive, and when, had it not really taken place, it would have been related by none, by none have been believed?

Let us then conclude, with the learned Warburton, in his dissertation on this subject, that the defeat of Julian's attempt by fire and earthquakes, stands forth in a full blaze of evidence, and is as incontestable as any event mentioned in history. Either it

must be admitted, or we must fall into the most extravagant scepticism, and reject altogether the exploits and conquests of Alexander, Julius Cæsar, Charlemagne, etc., which indeed are not so well substantiated as the event in question.

But if, admitting the existence of the fact, infidels deny, or like the same Gibbon, call in question its being a real miracle, this new paradox is as easily refuted as the former. For it is impossible that any sincere mind should not perceive a supernatural intervention of God, and a derogation from the ordinary laws of this visible world, in the event now before us, whether we consider it in its moral or in its physical circumstances.

In the first place, it is true that earthquakes and the eruption of volcanic fire are commonly the mere consequences of the ordinary laws of nature and do not, *of themselves*, suppose or demonstrate any particular design of the providence of God. But, when these various phenomena come all together and unexpectedly, just at the moment in which a great and religious object is to be obtained, or an impious attempt to be defeated, there can be no doubt that they are a special manifestation of the divine will and power, expressly made by the Almighty for the above purposes. To deny this, would be to deny the wisdom and providence of God in the moral government of the world, and, with equal impiety and absurdity, to substitute in their stead a ridiculous chance or a blind necessity.

These evident truths being presupposed, let us examine the peculiar tendency and circumstances of Julian's exertions toward *the rebuilding of the Jewish Temple.* Since its irreparable and entire overthrow had been foretold both in the Old and New Testament, Julian, by undertaking to rebuild it, bade defiance to Heaven itself, and was inclined, could he once succeed, to bring the charge of falsehood and imposture on those sacred prophecies. If then Almighty God, just at the moment when the intended work was to be begun, prevented it by awful earthquakes and eruptions of fire, though these effects might, to some appear natural in themselves, who can doubt but that so singular a concurrence of the malicious attempt and the obstacles opposed to it, should be attributed to a supernatural intervention? What sincere mind will not, on beholding the Christian religion, as it were, protected by the very elements, conclude that the Sovereign Lord of nature is also the founder and preserver of Christianity?

Moreover, all the physical circumstances which accompanied the event, concurred to prove it a real and most splendid miracle. Independently of the fact that there had never been a volcano in Palestine, we learn from Ammianus Marcellinus that the balls of fire came out of the earth near the foundations of the Temple—at repeated times—with a sort of deliberate intention to subdue the persevering obstinacy of the workmen, and, after consuming several of them, rendered the place inaccessible. According to Rabbin Gedaliah, a great earthquake took place, and a terrible fire melted the iron instruments, and burned a great number of Jews. According to Rufinus and Theodoret, porticos under which the workmen retired, fell by the violence of the earthquake, and crushed them to death, while others were devoured

by fire on the site of the Temple. According to St. Gregory Nazianzen, Socrates, Sozomen, etc., a brilliant cross appeared in the sky, and smaller crosses were imprinted on the garments of the spectators, etc.

Who will not acknowledge in all this something manifestly above the laws of nature! Who can explain, by those laws, why the balls of fire burst forth from the foundations, at the very moment when the work was begun, and whenever it was resumed; why the destructive element directed its whole fury against the workmen and the Jews, and not against other persons; and why it did not cease its attacks, until the enterprise was entirely abandoned? How did it happen that the shaking of the earth overthrew the porticos, where many workmen were assembled, and not other buildings in the city? Why no fissures and chasms were left in the ground, like those formed by natural earthquakes and volcanoes? Why those crosses, great and small, etc. etc.? Did nature ever produce effects like these? Was not the finger of God visible in every circumstance of this awful event; and does not the man who voluntarily shuts his eyes against such light, deserve to be abandoned with the Apostate Julian to his own obduracy, as to an equally just and rigorous punishment?

NOTE E.—PAGE 184.

MOHAMMED'S PRETENDED MIRACLES.

Although Mohammed, on several occasions, disclaimed the power of working miracles, he maintained that Almighty God did wonderful things in his favor, and his followers also ascribe to him a great number of prodigies of the most extraordinary nature; for instance, that the moon was divided into two parts, one of which came down into the sleeve of the prophet, by whom it was sent back to heaven;—that fountains sprang forth from his fingers, etc.; but, who does not see that all these things are mere stories, unworthy of having the God of majesty for their author, besides being totally unsupported by credible testimonies or by any proof whatever? For, they were either blindly adopted upon the bare word of Mohammed, or forged only after his death; most of them not being found even in the *Koran*, but in the *Sonna*, a fabulous and ridiculous record of somewhat later date, which holds among the Mussulmans the same standing that the *Talmud* holds among the Jews.

The most famous of those prodigies is the voyage of Mohammed to the highest heaven. Of this he continually boasted; this he adduced as the strongest proof of his favor with God, and, after his example, several Arabian authors related it with the utmost gravity.

They say that, during a certain night, the wonderful mare Al-Borak upon which the ancient prophets usually rode transported Mohammed from Mecca to Jerusalem, whence he was, by the help of the Archangel Gabriel and of a ladder of light, taken up, through an immense distance, to the summit of heaven, before the throne of the Almighty, there to receive his instruc-

tions from God Himself. Most admirable were the things which he saw in his journey thither, and on his way back; among others; 1st, the stars as big as the mountains of Arabia, and fastened to the first heaven by golden chains (which shows, by the bye, how learned a scholar and astronomer Mohammed was!) 2d, a cock, whose head reached the second heaven, though distant from the first, where the cock stood, about ten or twelve times the distance from the moon to the earth; 3d, an angel so tall and large that it would have taken seventy thousand days to walk from one of his eyes to the other; 4th, another angel who had seventy thousand heads, each head having seventy thousand faces, each face seventy thousand mouths; each mouth seventy thousand tongues; and each tongue being able to speak seventy thousand languages, of which he made use to praise Almighty God, etc. Mohammed returned in the same manner, and with the same rapidity in which he had gone to heaven, the whole voyage having been completed in the short space of a few hours. (See *Univers. Hist.* composed by a body of learned Englishmen, *Paris edit.* 1782, *vol.* XLI. *pp.* 92–116, where are found references to numberless writers, Abulfeda, Gagnier, Prideaux, etc.—Anquetil, *Précis de l'Histoire Univers., vol.* IV. *in* 8*vo. pp.* 249–253).

Tales not only so unworthy in every respect of being compared with the miracles of Christ and His disciples, but even so ridiculous and absurd, found admirers among the enthusiastic Arabs. Still, it must be observed that they were not believed by all the Mohammedans; nor did the followers of Mohammed support their preaching by the authority of his pretended miracles, but by force of arms. The use of their swords, aided on one side by the impulse of ambition, corrupt nature and fanaticism, on the other, by the weakness of the Greek and Persian empires at that period, was the real and only cause of the rapid progress of their religion. (See again *Univers. Hist. same vol.* XLI. *pp.* 45, 46:—*Annales du moyen age vol.* IV. *last pages*;—Lebeau *Hist. du Bas Empire. b.* 58. *n* 31, 32; Bergier, *Diction. de théol. art. Mahométisme*).

As to the Koran, which the Mussulmans give also as a proof of the divine mission of their prophet, we have already observed that, with the exception of a glowing style and some beautiful moral maxims, it is, according to all persons of good sense, nothing but a miserable rhapsody. The Mohammedan doctors themselves confess that it is full of perplexing difficulties and contradictions, which they endeavor to reconcile by admitting a distinction between its various articles, some, they say, being abrogated, and some being destined to abrogate the others; but, unfortunately for their purpose, the *abrogating* articles, instead of being, as they certainly ought to be, later, are on the contrary more ancient *than those to be abrogated.*

NOTE F.—PAGE 206.

ANSWER OF POPE ZACHARY TO A CONSULTATION OF THE FRENCH.

By some authors and critics of later times (Le Cointe, *Ann. Francor.;*—Feller, *art. Childeric III.;*—Bérault-Bercastel, *ad.ann.* 752, *etc.*), the fact of Pope Zachary being consulted about the accession of Pepin, has been called in question, but we think without sufficient reason. It is thus related by Eginhard, an almost contemporary writer: "Burcard (a bishop) and Fulrad (first chaplain of the palace), were sent to Rome, for the purpose of consulting Pope Zachary concerning the kings who were then in France, and who, having merely the name of kings, did not enjoy any portion of the royal power. The answer was: 'It were better that *he* should be king, in whom the sovereign authority resided.'—Missi sunt Burcardus et Folradus Roman ad Zachariam, ut consulerent Pontificem de causâ regum qui illo tempore fuerunt in Franciâ, qui nomen tantùm regis, sed nullam potestatum regiam habuerunt; secutum est responsum: meliûs esse illum regem, apud quem summa potestatis consisteret." Eginhard. *Annal. Franc.* The same is recorded in substance by the authors of many annals of those times, *Fuld.*, *Metens.*, etc.; by the continuator of Fredegaire and others (*apud* Duchesne, *vol.* I. *pp.* 773, 796). From these it plainly appears that the fact in question is expressly asserted by a great number of contemporary or nearly contemporary writers. To reject the unanimous testimony of so many and so respectable annalists, seems to be rather unreasonable criticism, there being no certain proof of their having wanted either sincerity or correct information on that point.

This being presupposed, it would be still more unjust to blame the answer of Pope Zachary. In fact, no one can fairly doubt that, among the northern nations of Europe, the crown was originally elective, as Robertson has well proved in his preliminary discourse on the history of Scotland. It had indeed become hereditary among the French, owing to the uncommon ability of their first leaders; but, since the last kings of the family of Clovis had, by their indolence and incapacity, brought contempt upon themselves, it was natural to expect that the French lords, in order to procure a worthy sovereign to the nation, would revive the ancient mode of succession to the throne.

On the other hand, the exercise of the royal authority had, for a long series of years, entirely devolved on the French dukes of Pepin's family: they alone carried the whole burden and discharged all the duties of sovereignty at home and abroad; whereas the last Merovingian kings had accustomed themselves, generally speaking, to be satisfied with the easiest duty of managing their private household. This was an excellent reason for the French to resume, under these circumstances, the ancient mode of electing their sovereigns which had not yet suffered a very long interruption, and, by a very proper use of their right, to confer the

royal title and prerogatives on such persons among them as exercised the royal power with so much glory and utility for the state. Since, moreover, the whole nation professed an explicit attachment and respect for the Apostolic See, it was likewise the duty and the interest of Pepin to have his election confirmed by the Pope.

Zachary, in his answer, did not endanger the laws of wisdom and justice. In declaring that it was better to confer the title of king on that person who was already in possession of the sovereign authority, he merely expressed a fact and a maxim which, far from disturbing the good order of the state, tended to re-establish it by the adoption of a measure equally prudent and decisive: "*melius esse illum* (vocari) *regem, apud quem summa potestatis consisteret.*" Had the decision of the Pope and the conduct of Pepin left everything as before, there would have remained in France, two sovereigns, the one nominal, the other real, contrary to the fundamental laws of that kingdom and to the just wishes of the nation.

NOTE G.—PAGE 208.

TEMPORAL DOMINION OF THE POPE.

Among the different temporal sovereignties which exist in the world, there is none so evidently irreproachable in its origin and formation, as that of the Pope. Here we see neither artful intrigues, nor sedition and revolt, nor unjust attacks and usurpation; but we behold the liberality of Christian kings and emperors, united with a series of singular events, whose coincidence led the way to the addition of temporal power to the spiritual authority which the Sovereign Pontiff had always exercised.

It is a fact of public notoriety, and placed beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the Popes, for many years, and especially in the first part of the eighth century, made every exertion to preserve to the court of Constantinople its possessions in the West (see Anastasius, *in Pap. Greg. II. et Steph. II.;* Thomassin, *Discipl. de l'Egl. part* III. *book* I. *c.* 29, *vol.* III. *pp.* 199, *et seq.*) They incessantly endeavored, by the exercise of their great influence, to maintain the Italians in their allegiance to the Greek emperors, and, by embassies and entreaties, to procure from the Greek emperors the assistance which the Italians needed in order to repel the repeated attacks of the Lombards. But those blind and wicked princes, instead of affording the relief so much desired, rather increased the public misery by tyranny and oppression.

Thus, finding implacable enemies both in the barbarians and in their own sovereigns, the people, driven almost to despair, began to sigh ardently after a new and better order of things. The eyes of all were turned towards the Pope, as their only refuge and the common father of all in distress. In this state of desolation, the Sovereign Pontiffs, unable any longer to resist the eagerness of multitudes flying into their arms for protection and refuge, and destitute of every other means, applied to the French, who alone were both willing and able to defend them against the Lombards.

The sequel is known; and we shall not repeat here what Pepin and Charlemagne did for the people of Rome, and especially for the Pope with regard to his temporal dominion; but we will ask, what can we find to censure either in the conduct of the French monarch, or in that of the Roman people? It is a principle laid down by civilians, and founded on the law of nations, that he who conquers a country in a just war not undertaken for the former possessors nor in union with them, is not bound to restore to them what they would not, or could not, protect and secure. Such exactly was the case with Italy at that time. The Greeks had lost their right to their possessions in that country, by suffering them to be taken or laid waste by the Lombards, without sending succor to defend and protect them. Those countries, therefore, by the claim of conquest in a just war, belonged to Pepin and Charlemagne, who bestowed them on the Popes. On the other hand, the Roman people, abandoned to barbarians, had a right, when the Greeks refused to afford them relief, to seek it from others, and form themselves into a new form of government. This they did, by choosing, under the protection of the French, to be governed by him who, besides being the common father of the faithful, had been their only support in their distress.

"Il n'y a rien," says Count de Maistre, "de si évidemment juste dans son origine que cette souveraineté extraordinaire. L'incapacité, la bassesse, la ferocité des souverains qui la précédèrent; l'insupportable tyrannie exercée sur les biens, les personnes et la conscience des peuples; l'abandon formel de ces mêmes peuples livrés sans défense à d'impitoyables barbares; le cri de l'occident qui abdique l'ancien maître; la nouvelle souveraineté qui s'élève, s'avance et se substitue à l'ancienne sans secousse, sans révolte, sans effusion de sang, poussée par une force cachée, inexplicable, invincible, et jurant foi et fidélité jusqu'au dernier instant à la faible et méprisable puissance qu'elle allait remplacer; le droit de conquête enfin, obtenu, et solennellement cédé par l'un des plus grands hommes qui aient existé, par un homme si grand que la grandeur a pénétré son nom, et que la voix du genre humain l'a proclamé *grandeur* au lieu de *grand:* tels sont les titres des Papes, et l'histoire ne présente rien de semblable." (*Du Pape, vol.* I. *liv.* II. *ch.* VI).

This truth is expressed in a recent history of the Greek empire, with the same elegance, perspicuity and energy of style, as follows: "A quel titre Copronyme revendiquait-il une souveraineté abandonnée, ou quels droits prétendait-il conserver sur des peuples délaissés, qui des longtemps ne connaissaient plus l'autorité impériale ni par sa protection ni par ses bienfaits? Les empereurs avaient abandonné Rome aux barbares; et qui l'avait defendue, qui l'avait sauvee? L'histoire nomme Léon, Grégorie, ou quelqu'autre de leurs successeurs; et les peuples avaient reconnu pour maîtres ceux qui s'etaient montres leurs peres. La puissance des Papes était un fait, quand Pépin la reconnut comme un droit; et jamais souveraineté n'eut une origine plus juste et plus sainte." (*Hist. du Bas-Emp. Paris,* 1838. *vol.* I. *pp.* 272, 273).

NOTE H.—PAGE 289.

POPES OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

NOTHING in the history of the Middle Ages has been more frequently misrepresented and more grossly calumniated, yet nothing is more worthy of admiration, than the conduct of the Popes in the long struggle which they maintained against the depravity and tyranny of princes, in defence of religion and social order. It was truly the struggle of virtue against vice, of civilization against barbarism, of Christianity against the powers of darkness. At that time, whether the evil was owing to the invasions of new barbarians, to the feudal system, or to other causes, national and civil wars scarcely ceased one moment to lay waste the whole face of Europe. Nations oppressed by their sovereigns had no other resource than the protection of the Pope, and sovereigns who wished to act as tyrants, had no other check than his authority, which they generally acknowledged, not only in spiritual, but also in temporal concerns. The Pope then, in his proceedings against several emperors of Germany and some other princes, besides acting conformably to the common jurisprudence of those times, merely did what the state of society and the circumstances in which he was placed, evidently required of him as the head of the Christian family, and the common father of all the faithful.

The better to understand this, we should revert to the epoch in which these important transactions took place. At a time when the nations of Europe closely adhered to the ancient faith, and preferred it to everything else, the profession of Christianity and submission to the Roman Church were conditions absolutely requisite in sovereigns, to exact and enforce obedience from their subjects. If a prince happened to revolt openly against the Catholic religion, or to incur, by his crimes, the penalty of excommunication it was the prevailing opinion that the oath of allegiance taken to him was no longer binding, since he had ceased to be the religious prince whom the nation had intended to acknowledge for its monarch.* "Thus," says Schlegel, "we hear the Saxons declare to the emperor Henry IV., that, the Christian name being profaned by him, they were unwilling to disgrace themselves by having intercourse with a prince who

---

* This is very well explained by Fenelon, who says: "Sensim Catholicarum gentium hæc fuit sententia animis altè impressa, scilicet, supremam potestatem committi non posse nisi principi Catholico, eamque esse legem sive conditionem appositam populæ inter et principem, ut populi principi fideles parerent, modò princeps ipse Catholicæ religioni obsequeretur. Quâ lege positâ, putabant omnes solutum esse vinculum sacramenti fidelitatis à totâ genta præstitum, simul atque princeps, eâ lege violatâ, Catholicæ religioni contumaci animo resisteret."

Again: "Nihil est mirum si gentes Catholicæ religioni quam maximè addictæ, principis excommunicati jugum excuterent. Eâ enim lege sese principi subditas fore pollicæ erant, ut princeps ipse Catholicæ religioni pariter subditus esset. Princeps verò qui, ob hæresim, vel ob facinorosam et impiam regni administrationem, ab Ecclesiâ excommunicatur, jam non censetur pius ille princeps, cui tota gens sese committere voluerat: unde solutum sacramenti vinculum arbitrabantur." (*Fenelon, Dissert. de auctoritate Summi Pontificis*, c. XXXIX).

insulted and despised the religion of Christ; and since they had sworn fealty to him, on condition that he should reign for the edification and not for the destruction of the Church, were he to infringe this duty, they would think themselves no longer bound by their oath of allegiance to him. Shortly after, the same Saxons wrote to the Pope, to lay before his tribunal both their grievances and the crimes of Henry and concluded their letter by saying that such a prince being unworthy of the throne, they therefore requested the Sovereign Pontiff to make use of the authority which he had over the empire, and, through an assembly of the princes, to procure for them a worthier and better monarch."

"Not long before this, the emperor Henry III. had expressly acknowledged the Church jurisdiction, even in temporal affairs, when he wished to oppose the rising pretensions of the king of Castile to the title of emperor. He referred the case to a council in which the legate of Pope Victor II. presided (A. D. 1055). The result of the consultation being sent to Rome, a sentence was passed; and King Ferdinand declared, in presence of the papal envoys, that he submitted to the decision of the Roman Pontiff. Hence, the high authority which Rome then exercised over kings and emperors, was grounded, first, on a political claim growing out of the circumstances which accompanied the revival of the western empire; and secondly, on the general opinion of that time respecting the subordination of the temporal to the spiritual power." (Schlegel, *Philos.* II. *p.* 137; *Théorie sociale d l'Evangile; Mémorial Cathol. vol.* II. *p.* 375).

"This doctrine," says Dr. Lingard, "hostile as it might be to the independence of sovereigns, was often supported by the sovereigns themselves. Thus, when Richard I. was held in captivity by the emperor, his mother, Eleanor, repeatedly solicited the Pontiff to procure his liberation by the exercise of that authority which he possessed over all temporal princes. Thus, King John Lackland (whose excesses afterwards provoked against himself the animadversion of the Church) invoked the aid of the same authority to recover Normandy from the king of France. At first, indeed, the Popes contented themselves with spiritual censures: but in an age, when all notions of justice were modelled after the feudal jurisprudence, it was soon admitted that princes by their disobedience became traitors to God; that as traitors they ought to forfeit their kingdoms, the fees which they held of God: and that to pronounce such sentence belonged to the Pontiff, the vicegerent of Christ upon earth." (Lingard's *Hist. of Eng. vol.* III., of the third London edition, *p.* 35, *note*).

It was in virtue of these and the like principles, as the same historian relates, that Pope Innocent III. did against King John Lackland what St. Gregory VII. had done against the Emperor Henry IV., when, solicited by Englishmen themselves, and moved by the recital of the repeated crimes and enormities of their sovereign, he absolved them from their oaths of fealty. This he did however, as the sequel showed, rather with the secret intention of terrifying the king, and bringing him back to a sense of his duty, than with a real determination to ruin him forever.

From these examples and testimonies, to which others might

be added, we may form an accurate idea of the temporal power occasionally exercised by the Popes during the Middle Ages. They exercised it with the implicit consent of the sovereigns themselves, who frequently appealed to the decisions of Rome in their temporal debates, and none of whom scarcely ever complained, except (as was natural) the individual affected by the sentence. They exercised it only against sovereigns who depended more or less, on the free choice of their nation and the acknowledgment of the Holy See as was particularly the case with the German emperors. They exercised it only in cases of paramount necessity, and after every other means, such as exhortations and remonstrances, had proved fruitless. They exercised it for the interest of the people and of society, at the request of the people themselves, and upon their earnest entreaties to be delivered from the sway of wicked, impious and tyrannical princes; but never through caprice, nor for personal interest: on the contrary, those courageous and zealous Pontiffs,a Gregory, an Alexander, an Innocent, etc., saw before them the prospect of sufferings, and of every kind of obstacles and dangers which they had to encounter for the faithful discharge of their duty.

Some Popes, it is true (though few in number), went farther, and acting in their secondary quality of temporal princes, raised troops, and took a more or less active share in the military operations of other sovereigns. But, even that step was taken by them for laudable,. nay, for necessary purposes; viz., to recover or defend their own provinces, to repel unjust attacks, to support the independence of the Italian republics, and particularly to check the alarming progress of the Mussulmans. Can any fault be found with such conduct; and does it not rather afford a new proof of the truth, that the Popes have been the preservers of civilization and social order, as well as of religion, in Europe? This indeed was the grand object which they had in view, and the end at which they continually aimed in the exercise of both their temporal and spiritual power. Having well understood the sublime office which they were called to perform, they discharged it with wonderful zeal and fidelity for the advancement of moral and religious principles. They protected the weak against their oppressors; they restored peace and tranquillity among nations; and, preventing the execution of wicked designs, they saved rising states and societies from the attacks of ambition, barbarity, and licentiousness. Hence, in reading the history of the Middle Ages, it is impossible for a reflecting mind not to be struck with admiration at the sight of Christian Europe devoted to *one* form of worship, ruled by *one* grand principle, forming, as it were, but *one* empire, and acknowledging *one* supreme head whose exalted duty it was to promote the reign of the Gospel upon earth. (See Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades*, *vol.* IV. *pp.* 98, 99;—Count de Maistre, *Du Pape*, *part* II. *c.* V. X).

Not bitter censure, therefore, but real praise is due to the exertions of the Popes, and to their acts of authority, with regard to temporal princes. This is at length candidly acknowledged by different writers of the Protestant communion, after the example of Leibnitz in several of his works, especially in his first dissertation *De Actorum Publicorum Usu*. Very lately, two Protestant

German authors, Hurter and Voigt, have published their excellent lives of Innocent III. and Gregory VII., in which the character and the conduct of these great Popes are powerfully vindicated, and held up to the unqualified admiration of posterity. Let us hope that the clouds which have so long obscured this part of history, will be entirely dispelled by impartiality and truth; and that full justice will at last be rendered to the Roman Pontiffs, for their noble efforts to promote the spiritual and temporal welfare of society.

There is another charge to be examined with regard to the Popes of the Middle Ages. We allude, not to the ridiculous tale of the pretended *Popess* Joan, which is now rejected by all learned critics, whether Catholic or Protestant, but to the more serious charge of the vices of some Roman Pontiffs. It is true, a few among them gave great scandals to the Christian world in their private character and conduct; but it ought to be remembered, at the same time, that, through a special protection of Divine Providence, the irregularity of their lives did not interfere with their public duty from which they never departed. The beneficial influence of sacred jurisdiction does not depend on the private virtue of the persons invested with it, but on their divine mission and appointment to feed the Christian flock. Christ did not say that there would never be scandals nor abuses, but that no power of darkness would ever prevail against His Church: nor did He promise personal sanctity to its chief pastors, but gave to them authority to teach and govern the faithful; and to the faithful, a command to follow their injunctions, without blindly imitating the bad example of a small number of them, whose conduct might not be edifying.

It is moreover certain that the number of bad Popes has been, by some writers, greatly exaggerated. There were but few of this character, and those few lived, nearly all, in the tenth and part of the eleventh century, during which time the prevalence of civil factions in Rome obstructed the freedom of canonical election. Even during that period, there existed many excellent Popes; men distinguished by their exalted virtues and intellectual endowments, patrons, in an eminent degree, of science, letters and the arts. Roscoe himself, though a Protestant, does not hesitate to say in his life of Leo the tenth (*vol.* I. *p.* 53), that "the Popes may in general be considered as superior to the age in which they have lived;" and an American editor of statistics has lately confessed that "most of the Popes were excellent men." These, however, are the sovereigns, whom a recent and elementary author has, in his profound wisdom, thought proper to compare with the Mussulman caliphs, namely, with men who were either the most unjust conquerors, or the most indolent and insignificant monarchs that the world ever saw; whereas the greatest enemy of the See of Rome might be boldly challenged to show anywhere in history a succession of princes, who have been half as eminent for their virtues and piety, for their talents and learning, and for their benefits to the great family of mankind, as the Roman Pontiffs.

NOTE I.—PAGE 299.

CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

BEFORE we pass any judgment and censure upon past events, we should invariably weigh with great attention their causes, their nature and their real character, and also take into serious consideration, the manners, customs, and opinions of the age in which they happened. Had this equitable rule been constantly adhered to in historical composition there would have been an end to those false assertions and unjust remarks which fill up the pages of Hume, Voltaire, and other equally bold and superficial writers. For want of this rule's being followed in the particular point of which we intend to treat in this note, "the conquest of Ireland," we shall find, upon diligent inquiry, that the conduct of Pope Adrian IV. in this affair has been, in latter times, neither duly appreciated nor sufficiently understood.

It was formerly a common opinion, that not only Ireland, but also every Christian island, was the property of the Holy See. "There is no doubt, as you yourself acknowledge," wrote the Pontiff to King Henry II., "that Hibernia and all the islands to which the sun of justice, Christ, has shone forth, belong to St. Peter and to the holy Roman Church;" (*Epist.* I. *Adr. papæ* IV. *in collect. Conc. vol.* X. *Col.* 1143). This belief, as we learn from John of Salisbury, who acted as negotiator between the king and the Pope, was founded on a certain donation of Constantine the Great, the authenticity of which was never questioned by the critics of those ages: "All islands," says that author (*Metalog.* IV.), "by ancient right and from a donation of Constantine, are said to belong to the Roman Church." This having been the case, it is hard to conceive why Adrian IV. should be blamed for having performed (if he did perform), an act of high temporal jurisdiction over Ireland; since in doing so, he merely acted up to the tenor of an instrument which all believed to be authentic, and he merely exercised, over Christian islands, that right of sovereignty which was conceded to him by the general opinion of his age. To find a real fault in his conduct, would be preposterously to require that the Popes of the Middle Ages should have divested themselves of the feelings common to their contemporaries, should have rejected the opinions which were then prevalent about temporal sovereignty, and, through an anticipation of several centuries, should have followed our own views and modern political discoveries of which there was no idea in their time.

It would be equally wrong to assert, that Adrian IV. was led, in this transaction, by human considerations, and that, being an Englishman by birth, he did not hesitate to sacrifice the interests of Ireland to those of his own country. This charge, if seriously made, would involve a complete injustice against the well known character and uncommon virtue of that Pope. For, how can such base motives be fairly attributed to a Pontiff whose whole life exhibited a perfect model of piety, whom personal merit alone raised from the lowest rank in the world to the highest dignity in

the Church, and who constantly distinguished himself by the nobleness of his sentiments, as historians unanimously testify? So great indeed was his disinterestedness and delicacy of conscience, that he preferred to leave his mother in a state of indigence, rather than do anything for her through private affection; and he even contented himself, before dying, with recommending her to the charity and alms of the Church of Canterbury; (see Fleury, *Hist. Eccles., ad ann.* 1159). Is it credible then, is it even possible, that a Pontiff, so remarkable for the sanctity of his life and the purity of his views, who scrupled to raise his nearest and dearest relatives ever so little above their distressed condition, should have betrayed his duty and conscience in order to gratify the ambition of a monarch from whom he had received nothing, and had nothing to apprehend ?

Nothing then but pure and disinterested views guided Pope Adrian IV. in his share of the transaction which regarded Ireland, even in admitting the supposition which presents the less favorable side, viz: that he made a grant of that country to the British monarch. But, is it true after all, at least is it certainly proved, that he did so, and thus authorized the king to invade and conquer Ireland, as we find it almost everywhere asserted ? We rather think not, and this is the reason why, in relating the fact (*p.* 299), we made use of expressions somewhat different from those in which it is mentioned by the generality of historians. It appears indeed certain, that the intention of Henry was, from the beginning of his reign, to add this important island to his dominions; and it is probable, likewise, that the Pope suspected his real design. Yet, it is not from half-concealed views or probable suspicions, that we should judge of the nature of the concession made to Henry; but from the manner in which the whole affair was conducted, and from the authentic words in which both the request of the king and the grant of the Pope were expressed.

Now, we do not see that the English monarch asked the Pontiff's approbation of his design to conquer Ireland and to occupy it for his own advantage; but he requested Adrian to consent that he might enter that country for the purpose of subjecting its inhabitants to the laws, and repressing vice and disorder, *ad subdendum illum populum legibus, et vitiorum plantaria indè extirpanda.* The ambassador whom he sent to the Pope, was charged to assure his Holiness that Henry's principal object was to provide instruction for the Irish people, to extirpate abuses from the Lord's vineyard, etc., "but that, as every Christian island was the property of the Holy See, he did not presume to make the attempt without the advice and consent of the successor of St. Peter." (Dr. Lingard, *Reign of Henry II.*).

On the other hand, it is very remarkable that Adrian, in the instrument of concession which he addressed in answer to the king does not mention any absolute grant of possession and sovereignty; much less by sword and conquest: he merely signifies his acquiescence in the king's project, he is willing that Henry should enter Ireland for the zealous purposes above mentioned, and that he should be honorably received and acknowledged as lord by the natives: "Gratum et acceptum habemus ut. . . insulam illam ingrediaris, et quod ad honorem Dei et salutem illius

terræ spectaverit, exequaris, et illius terræ populus honorificè te recipiat, et sicut dominum veneretur" (in Epist. citatâ, *collect. concil. vol.* x. *Col.* 1143). Hence, in the expressions and intention of the Pontiff, the whole concession made to the king consisted in approving the laudable views which that prince had manifested through his ambassador, and his future right of sovereignty over Ireland depended on the free acknowledgment of the natives. John of Salisbury, who negotiated the affair at the court of Rome, calls, it is true, this concession a grant of inheritance, "dedit Hiberniam hæreditario jure possidendam:" but, as the same author, in proof of his assertion, refers to the rescript of the Pope, by immediately adding, "sicut litteræ ipsius testantur;" his words, consequently, must be understood, like those of Adrian, to imply as a previous condition of the grant, the voluntary agreement and consent of the Irish people. At all events, we should always prefer the obvious meaning of the pontifical rescript to every other record of the transaction; for, if any one understood well the real intention of the Pope, it must certainly have been the Pope himself.

The truth of these observations is supported by the conduct of the English monarch, both before and after the conquest of Ireland. The answer of Adrian to his request, had been obtained in the year 1156, and it was not till after the lapse of almost twenty years, and when a great part of Ireland had already submitted to the British, that Henry thought of producing the letters of the Pope, and presented them to be read in a synod of Irish bishops. Now, is it reasonable to suppose that, if these letters had contained a real and absolute grant of sovereignty, he would have kept them in oblivion all that time, and deferred so long to enforce their execution? Would he not, at least, have exhibited them when the first English troops entered the island (A.D. 1169), in order to justify himself before the natives and gain them over to submission? Since, then, he did not do so, but postponed the exhibition of the important instrument till three or four years later, and even then directed it solely to an assembly of prelates; are we not entitled to conclude that, ambitious and interested as he was, he saw little in the concession of the Pope of which he might boast as giving him a claim to rule over the Irish, independently of their own consent?

Thus the manner in which the affair was conducted, the expressions of the king and of the pontiff, the conduct of Henry both before and after his attempt upon Ireland; everything tends to prove or to render it at least probable, that he received indeed an approbation of his zealous designs for the good of that country, and a wish that he might carry them into effect but no right to force the submission of the natives by invasion and conquest.—Let us add to this, that Adrian very probably was not ignorant of the project which had been already formed by several of the English monarchs, viz: Henry I. and William the Conqueror, to subdue Ireland. In this critical situation of the Irish, continually exposed to the attacks of a formidable enemy, and divided among themselves, the best that could be done for them, since Henry II. seriously entertained the same project and prepared to enter their country, was to procure that he should enter it with views

the most favorable to the religion, the liberty, and the improvement of the natives. This is exactly what the Pope did, by the manner in which his letters of concession, or approbation of Henry's design, were written, discarding all notion of military conquest and absolute right of sovereignty, but exhorting the king always to bear in mind the laudable purposes and conditions which he himself had proposed. No blame therefore, can be attached to the conduct of this virtuous Pontiff; nor was it his fault if his excellent and sincere intentions to procure the greater good of the Irish, were in subsequent ages so wofully frustrated.

NOTE J.—PAGE 352.

PROSECUTION AND ABOLITION OF THE KNIGHTS-TEMPLARS.

THE authentic acts of the whole trial of the Knights-Templars, are still extant (*apud* Natal. Alexand. *Dissert* x. *in Sec.* XIV. *Quæst.* II. *Art.* I.;—Brumoy, *Hist. de l'Eglise Gall., l.* XXXVI, *ad ann.* 1307-1312;—Dupuy,—Baluze, etc). From those documents, it is manifest that the royal commissaries, men of exemplary virtue and probity, examined a vast number of Templars in the different parts of France, viz: one hundred and forty at Paris, one hundred and eleven at Troyes, eleven at Caen, ten at Pont-de l'Arche, fortyfive at Beaucaire and in the neighboring places; and that all, except three, acknowledged themselves guilty of the denial of Christ, of sacrilege, and other abominable crimes.

We have moreover the acts of the Council of Vienne (Labbe, *Collectio Conciliorum, vol.* XI. *part* II. *Col.* 1557-1560), and the letters of Pope Clement V. (*ibid. Col.* 1559 and 1572) concerning this affair. In one of these, addressed to all the Christian princes in Europe, the Pontiff declares that, when he himself examined at Poitiers seventy-two Templars on the charge of apostacy, sacrilege and other crimes, they *expressly*, *spontaneously*, and *repeatedly* acknowledged the justice of the charges; and that the same *free and spontaneous* acknowledgment was made, in presence of his delegates, by the grand-master and other chief personages of the Order. Nor was this depravity, although more common among the Templars in France, confined to that country; several others were found guilty of the same enormous crimes in Tuscany, Lombardy, England, etc. (Natalis Alexander, in *Dissertatione citatâ vol.* VII. *pp.* 505 *and* 512;—*Hist. de l'Egl. Gall vol.* XII. *pp.* 431 *and* 433). The Pope, therefore, with the approbation of the general council then assembled at Vienne, published his bull suppressing the institute, on account of the infamy of so many among its members, which had made it an object of contempt and scandal; and decreed that their property should be given for ever to the Knights Hospitallers of St. John of Jerusalem.

The whole transaction being thus stated from original and authentic sources, it is impossible for any reflecting mind to consider the series and duration of the inquiries: the fair manner in which they were conducted; the great number of witnesses that were heard; the perfect agreement in the avowals made by the accused in so many different parts of Christendom; the high

standing and character of their judges, who were the first and most commendable personages of Church and State, in fine, the deliberations and unanimous decision of the Pope and of three hundred prelates assembled in the council of Vienne : it is, I say, impossible to take all these circumstances into consideration, without being at once fully convinced that the Templars deserved to be suppressed, and that the sentence pronounced against their Order, in the council of Vienne, was not only proper and just, but even, being the only sure means to remove a shameful scandal, ought to be considered as a very signal service rendered by Pope Clement V. and King Philip, to religion and society.

Who will not, after this, feel astounded and indignant at the following narrative of Hume, when, having stated the indolence and degeneracy of the Templars, he adds, in his usual positive manner :

"But, though these reasons had weakened the foundations of this Order once so celebrated and revered, the immediate cause of their destruction proceeded from the cruel and vindictive spirit of Philip the Fair, who, having entertained a private disgust against some eminent Templars, determined to gratify at once his avidity and revenge, by involving the whole Order in an undistinguished ruin. On no better information than that of two Knights, condemned by their superiors to perpetual imprisonment for their vices and profligacy, he ordered on one day all the Templars in France to be committed to prison, and imputed to them such enormous and absurd crimes, as are sufficient of themselves to destroy all the credit of the accusation. Above a hundred of these unhappy gentlemen were put to the question, in order to extort from them a confession of their guilt. The more obstinate perished in the hands of their tormentors : several, to procure immediate ease in the violence of their agonies, acknowledged whatever was required of them : forged confessions were imputated to others ; and Philip, as if their guilt were now certain, proceeded to a confiscation of all their treasures."

The writer then proceeds to relate, at great length, the punishment inflicted on the Templars, which indeed he does with affected pathos, but not without several inaccuracies ; and at last concludes thus :

"In all this barbarous injustice, Clement V., who was a creature of Philip, and then resided in France, fully concurred; and, without examining a witness, or making an inquiry into the truth of facts, he summarily, by the plenitude of his apostolic power, abolished the whole Order. The Templars, all over Europe, were thrown into prison; their conduct underwent a strict scrutiny; the power of their enemies still pursued and oppressed them; but nowhere, except in France, were the smallest traces of their pretended guilt to be found. England set an ample testimony of their piety and morals; but, as the Order was now annihilated, the Knights were distributed into several convents, and their possessions were, by command of the Pope, transferred to the order of St. John." (*History of England, reign of Edward* II.).

Such is, concerning the affair of the Knights-Templars, the narrative of Hume, which evinces indeed much of the inventive imagination of an orator, but very little of the exactness and sincerity of an historian. Here we see an almost uninterrupted series of inaccuracies and falsehoods blended with some true statements, a violent spirit of rancor against one of the two interested parties, scarcely concealed under the veil of affected compassion for the other, and an inveterate desire of finding fault with the conduct of the Pontiff and the King. Throughout the whole of his narrative, the author takes little care to relate facts in the order in which they happened, and does not even know the names of several among the chief personages of whom he speaks, calling the grand-master *John* instead of *James* de Molay; and the companion of his punishment, *a brother to the sovereign of Dauphiny*, instead of *a brother to the Dauphin of Auvergne;* mistaking likewise the place in which they underwent their last trial, for that in which they suffered death. These blunders, however, are mere trifles, compared with the calumnious charges of precipitancy and want of investigation; of violence employed to extort a confession of guilt; of avarice and revenge; of injustice and barbarity; which he so readily lavishes on King Philip the Fair and Pope Clement V., and which we will now successively examine.

1st. It is wrong to state that King Philip ordered the imprisonment of all the Templars in France on the mere deposition of two Knights. Before issuing this order, he had instituted new inquiries which gave additional strength to the former charges. Hence it is manifest that the imputation of enormous crimes to the Order of the Templars did not proceed from that monarch, as Hume asserts, but from the very members of the Order; it being, moreover, justified by their proverbially bad character, which gave rise to the expression, *boire comme un Templier.*

2d. It is equally false that the confessions of the Templars with regard to the crimes imputed to them, were forged, or wrung from them by the violence of torture. The one hundred and forty knights who were tried by the royal commissaries at Paris, and the seventy-two others whom the Pope himself examined at Poitiers, were not tortured, but voluntarily and freely confessed their guilt (see again Brumoy;—Natalis Alexander;—especially the letters of Pope Clement V., quoted above;—also Bergier, *Diction. Théolog.* art. *Templiers*). The grand-master and the chief commanders did the same, without any constraint whatever: *liberè ac sponte, absque coactione quâlibet et timore.* Most of them persevered in their avowals; and, if several afterwards retracted what they had said, this circumstance may prove indeed that they could no longer bear to see themselves the object of public scorn, but not that they were sincere in their retraction. For, how many culprits are there, who obstinately maintain their innocence, notwithstanding the clear evidence of the crime laid to their charge; or, changing their plan of defence, deny what they had previously confessed, and *vice versâ.*

3d. Notwithstanding the peremptory assertion of Hume, that nowhere but in France were there to be found the smallest traces of what he calls the pretended guilt of the Templars, the contrary

is certain from various testimonies concerning the Templars of Tuscany, Lombardy, and even England, as Walsingham relates (*Hist. Angl. in vitâ Edward* II.), and Dr. Lingard acknowledges with regard to a few individuals (*Hist. of Engl. vol.* III., *p.* 472). It appears, indeed, that in several countries, most of the accused were acquitted; but this only proves what we before said, that the Order was not equally corrupt everywhere, and that the poison of impiety and vice had not infected the whole body of the Knights-Templars, although it had tainted many of its members.—It was also incumbent on Mr. Hume to furnish some proofs of the reality of that *violent and universal persecution* which, he supposes, was carried on against the Templars, after the suppression of their institute: he probably thought it, as usual, an easier task to assert boldly than to prove. The truth is, there is no trace of such a persecution to be found in history.

4th. Groundless too is the assertion made by the same author, that King Philip acted as a vindictive and avaricious tyrant. That prince may have been eager and hasty in his proceedings, at least with regard to the chief personages of the Order; still, it ought to be observed that, in inflicting the rigorous punishment of death by fire, he merely followed the jurisprudence commonly adopted in those ages against heinous crimes. With regard to the confiscation of the property of the Templars in France, there are undeniable proofs of the disinterestedness of Philip in this transaction: all that he did, had for its object to preserve that property for the public utility of Christendom, as the Pope and the general council should deem advisable; nor did any portion of it pass into his own hands, except what was requisite to defray the expenses which he had incurred in so long and so complicated a suit. The immense possessions of the Templars (except those situated in Spain and Portugal), were, as is well known, and as Hume himself acknowledges, transferred to the Order of St. John of Jerusalem.

5th. Still more iniquitous and atrocious than the preceding, is the charge of violence, injustice and barbarity directed against Pope Clement; who far from acting as the faithful historian assures us he did, adopted the diametrically opposite course, as all the monuments and authentic acts of this important affair invariably testify. He continually endeavored to temper the zeal of Philip; he constantly recommended equity and prudence to the commissaries appointed to preside in this complicated trial: neither he nor his legates had anything to do with the precipitate condemnation of the grand-master. While the papal commissaries heard upwards of two hundred witnesses either for or against the accused Order, Clement himself tried and examined seventy-two knights, with equal impartiality and care he took all possible means to know the truth, and had recourse to all possible sources of information; in a word he continued the inquiries with indefatigable patience during five years, before he would come to a decision respecting the Order, the persons, and the property of the Templars. Is there, in such conduct, anything that savors in the least of *violence, injustice, and barbarity?*

6th. Moreover, what can be more equitable, prudent, and wise than the decision which the Pontiff, after long deliberation, and

many conferences with the cardinals and other prelates, published in the second session of the council of Vienne, on the third of April, 1312? In that document, he did not pronounce the whole Order guilty of the horrid crimes which had been the object of so many inquiries; but, considering the state of acknowledged degeneracy into which it had fallen, the infamy with which it was loaded by the mere imputation of such disorders, and the well ascertained guilt of many of its members, he abolished it as having become not only useless, but even an object of scandal to all Christendom.

Such was the dignified conduct which Hume has dared to brand with the appellation of *barbarous injustice*, and which another equally bold and superficial writer has presumed to call an *infamous proscription*. If there is, on this subject, anything calculated to provoke the feelings of a just indignation, let the reader judge on which side it stands: on that of a Pontiff and a prince whose proceedings, throughout the whole of this grand affair, were marked with so much equity and disinterestedness; or on that of two unfaithful authors, who, careless about historical truth and justice, have ventured, without proof, and against all reason, to paint the important transaction in such sombre colors?

NOTE K.—PAGE 405.

INQUISITION.

WHAT has not been said about, or rather against, the Spanish Inquisition? We everywhere see it depicted in the blackest colors, and represented as the offspring of papal ambition and ecclesiastical tyranny; as a bloody tribunal, condemning innocent persons to death for mere thoughts and opinions; an institution, whose proceedings are the most terrific that human bigotry and malice could suggest; etc.

In answer to these charges we will remark, in the first place, that the Inquisition forms no part of the Catholic creed and of the obligatory discipline of the Church. We find, it is true, that it was established in some Catholic states as a political means to maintain the unity of religion within their limits, and remove from them the disturbances occasioned by newly invented systems; but this was commonly done, either at the request, or by the authority of the sovereigns themselves, *e. g.*, of King Ferdinand in Spain (A.D. 1480), of John III. in Portugal (A.D. 1557). This Inquisition therefore, besides being a local and temporary institution, was rather *civil* than *ecclesiastical* in its origin. Its chief members, particularly in Spain, were indeed selected from the ecclesiastical order, but they always remained under the authority of the king, without whose previous consent their decrees could be neither executed nor even published.

In the second place, the Inquisition, far from being as bloody and inexorably severe as is commonly imagined, far from inflicting capital punishment even for mere thoughts and opinions, on the contrary never inflicted it even for open and atrocious crimes, the tribunal having never been authorized to pass sentence of death or of mutilation upon any person: this power resided en-

tirely and solely in the civil authority. All that the council of the Inquisition had to do, was to pronounce the individual arraigned before them guilty, on the clearest evidence, of a crime declared capital by the law of Spain. There they stopped; and, instead of prosecuting to death, they rather displayed a degree of indulgence and clemency seldom witnessed in any other tribunal. If the culprit manifested sincere repentance, he was immediately screened from capital punishment, and condemned merely to undergo temporary and trifling penances. If, notwithstanding the convincing proofs of his guilt, he remained obstinate and impenitent, then, and not till then, was he delivered over to the civil power to be dealt with according to law; and, even in this case, the inquisitors recommended the wretched individual to the mercy of the secular judge.* They had nothing to do with his death; and, when, at the moment of execution, the priest appeared by the side of the guilty man, it was only to inspire him, if possible, with sentiments of repentance, to soothe his agony by words of consolation, and to prepare him for eternity.

Even admitting that some inquisitors, from time to time, acted with excessive rigor, which led to certain abuses and unjustifiable conclusions, still it is true that these proceedings should be charged only to the individuals in question, but not to the tribunal itself fairly considered in its nature, its end and its regulations, nor to the generality of its members, whose prudence, justice and integrity have elicited the admiration of all attentive and impartial travellers (v. g., Abbé de Vayrac, in his *Voyage en Espagne et en Italie*, 1731; Bourgoing, *Nouveau Voyage en Espagne;* and *Journal de l'Empire*, 1805). Again, these abuses, whatever they were, might be ascribed to the civil, but not to the ecclesiastical power, as is well explained by Count de Maistre in his two first letters on the Spanish Inquisition; much less could they be imputed either to the Catholic Church at large, of which the Church of Spain is but a portion, or to the Roman See in particular, since the Inquisition at Rome greatly differed from that of Spain, and always displayed such moderation, indulgence and meekness as to astonish the French infidels themselves (*Encyclop. art. Inquisition*).

With regard to the awful and terrible forms which the Inquisition is said to have adopted, the charge may be partly admitted without furnishing any ground for invective; nor is it at all surprising that a tribunal should make an exterior show of rigor, the better to strike the minds of the people, and the more surely to prevent the perpetration of crime. It is, however, certain that, on this point also, there have been many exaggerations and

---

* The case of the famous heresiarch John Huss, in 1415, was conducted in the same manner. The council of Constance, not having been able, by remonstrances and exhortations, to overcome his obstinacy and bring him to a retractation of his errors, handed him over to the civil power, without however soliciting his punishment. The secular court was not so indulgent: the emperor Sigismond thought it his duty to punish the man who, besides repeatedly infringing the conditions of the safe-conduct he had received, everywhere preached seditious doctrines; accordingly, John Huss was placed under the custody of the magistrate of Constance, who, following the jurisprudence of the age with regard to such trespasses, consigned him to the flames.

slanderous reports. Thus, as Count de Maistre observes (*lett.* II.), it is by no means true that the most trifling charge was sufficient to cause a man to be arrested; that the accused remained unacquainted with the reasons of his confinement, and was not allowed the privilege of a lawyer to defend his cause. The punishment of burning, too, far from being, as it is commonly supposed, the ordinary one to which the convicted persons were condemned, was, on the contrary, very seldom employed, and that by the civil power only, and against such enormous crimes, sacrilege, apostacy, and the like, as were not more mildly treated by the other European nations. Faults of a less grievous nature were punished merely by exile or imprisonment, sentence of death being very rare, especially in latter times, when, as well natives as foreigners, who did not attempt to disturb religious or social order, could live with as much tranquillity and security in Spain as in any other country.

When the Spaniards are reproached with the rigors, real or pretended, of this famous tribunal, their answer is, that, by punishing a few obstinate individuals, it saved their monarchy from the awful disturbances and civil wars which desolated Switzerland, Germany, Holland, France, etc., in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries; and did not, after all, cause so much blood to flow in all their dominions together, as the Calvinian reformation did in the single kingdom of France.

NOTE L.—PAGE 417.

BULL OF ALEXANDER VI., CALLED THE BULL OF PARTITION.

"WRITERS," says Dr. Lingard, "have not always sufficiently appreciated the benefits which mankind derived from the pacific influence of the Roman Pontiffs. In an age which valued no merit but that of arms, Europe would have been plunged in perpetual war, had not Pope after Pope labored incessantly for the preservation or restoration of peace. They rebuked the passions, and checked the extravagant pretensions of sovereigns: their character, as the common fathers of Christians, gave to their representatives a weight which no other mediators could claim: and their legates spared neither journey nor fatigue to reconcile the jarring interests of courts, and interpose the olive of peace between the swords of contending armies" (*Histor. of Engl. vol.* IV. *p.* 80).

These general remarks on the happy influence exercised at different times by the Sovereign Pontiffs, are particularly applicable to the conduct of Pope Alexander VI. with regard to the Spanish and Portuguese sovereigns. He had to settle between them, by a solemn decision, the respective boundaries of their foreign possessions, and, by so doing, prevent the endless and sanguinary contests that might have otherwise followed; this the Pontiff did by issuing the famous bull *Inter cætera:* he, at the same time, improved the opportunity of benefiting the natives of the newly discovered countries, by requiring of their conquerors that they should procure for them religious and Christian in-

struction.* Had he refused to listen to the appeal of the interested parties, he might indeed have removed the danger of being charged with entertaining ambitious views; but would he not have incurred the guilt of unjustifiable want of zeal and care, both to prevent the effusion of human blood, and to promote the advantage of the defenceless Indians? For, it should ever be remembered that the kings of Spain and Portugal would, in any hypothesis, have taken and kept possession of the lands lately descried by their navigators, this having been their full determination from the beginning; hence, there would have existed, on one side, a continued subject of quarrels between the two nations for the determination of their foreign limits, and, on the other, there would have been no condition imposed on them to better the fate of the Indians. The decision, therefore, of Alexander VI. was not only conducive to the preservation of peace among the conquerors, but highly advantageous to the vanquished themselves, for whom it secured the blessings of civilization and Christianity.

"Ferdinand," says the elegant historian of Columbus, "had despatched ambassadors to the Court of Rome, announcing the new discovery as an extraordinary triumph of the faith . . . . At least as politic as he was pious, he insinuated a hint at the same time, by which the Pope might perceive that *he was determined, at all events, to maintain his important acquisitions.* His ambassadors were instructed to state that, in the opinion of many learned men, these newly discovered lands, *having been taken possession of by the Catholic Sovereigns*, their title to the same did not require the papal sanction; still, as pious princes obedient to the holy chair, they supplicated His Holiness to issue a bull, making a concession of them, and of such others as might be discovered, to the crown of Castile" (Irving's *Columbus, b.* v. *ch.* VIII).

From this it manifestly appears that the Spanish Sovereigns had not waited for the grant of the Pope, to take possession of the West Indies. "The question," says a learned critic (Bergier, art. *Démarcation*), "was not to decide whether their conquests, and those of the king of Portugal, were lawful or not, but to remove, by the fixation of their limits, the evils of war which would have visited the European discoverers, without rendering the fate of the Indians better." Hence, it is useless to ask what right the Pontiff had to give lands and countries which did not belong to him, since his solemn award, although it seemed to contain a real grant, was simply a measure tending to prevent bloody quarrels between two jealous and powerful monarchs; while it also provided for the civil and moral improvement of their new subjects. To act the part of an authoritative arbitrator, does not require to have jurisdiction over the object of

* The words of the Pontiff are these: "Insuper mandamus vobis in virtute sanctæ obedientiæ (sicut pollicemini, et non dubitamus pro vestrâ maximâ devotione et regiâ magnanimitate vos esse facturos) ad terras firmas et insulas prædictas viros probos et Deum timentes, doctos, peritos et expertos, ad instruèndum incolas et habitatores præfatos in fide Catholica, et bonis moribus imbuendum, destinare studeatis, omnem debitam diligentiam in præmissis adhibentes."—Bulla *Inter Cœtera, n.* 7.

the debate, but over the contending parties; especially, if they themselves have referred the case to their common acknowledged superior, and have asked his decision.

Instead then of inveighing against the bull of Alexander VI., it would be better as Feller and Count de Maistre observe, to regret that the time has passed, when a single word from the Roman Pontiff was sufficient to maintain peace among kings and nations and when his impartial voice and universally revered influence easily removed the danger of obstinate dissensions and sanguinary conflicts.

NOTE M.—PAGE 429.

INFLUENCE OF THE ROMAN CHURCH ON THE IMPROVEMENT OF SCIENCE.

AFFAIR OF GALILEO.—THE CALENDAR.

The Roman Church, as we have already noticed in several parts of this work, has rendered multiplied and signal services to the arts, sciences, and belles lettres. Still, it is often said that she has, within the last ages, rather opposed their improvement; and were we to believe certain authors in their political, astronomical, and geographical descriptions, the very land and city in which there has always been found, to the present day, a greater share of true taste and solid learning than anywhere else, should be considered a half barbarous and hardly civilized region. The principal fact adduced to support this unjust charge, is the affair of Galileo, whom a multitude of writers represent as having been persecuted on account of his astronomical discoveries, and condemned by the Roman inquisitors merely for teaching, according to the opinion of Copernicus, the true system of the world. But it is now well proved, from the letters of Guicciardini and of Marquis Nicolini, both of them disciples, friends and protectors of Galileo, from the letters and writings of Galileo himself, that, for a long time, the public has been grossly imposed upon with respect to this point of history.

This celebrated man was not arraigned as an astronomer, but as a bad theologian, and for having pretended to impute to the Bible dogmas of his own invention. His great discoveries, it is true, provoked envy against him, but his pretension to prove the Copernican system from the Bible was the real cause of his being summoned before the inquisitors at Rome; and the restlessness of his mind, the only source of the troubles which he underwent on that account.

In his first journeys to Rome (1611, etc.), Galileo found only admirers among the cardinals and other distinguished personages. The Pope himself granted him a favorable audience, and Cardinal Bellarmin merely forbade him, in the name of His Holiness, to blend in future the Bible with his astronomical systems. Other learned prelates equally pointed out to him the course of prudence to be observed by him on this point; but his obstinacy and vanity did not permit him to follow their advice.

Some years after, he published his "Dialogues and Memoirs,"

in which he again took upon himself to raise the system of the rotation of the earth to the dignity of a dogmatical tenet. Being summoned before the tribunals of Rome, the lodging assigned to him in that city was not a gloomy prison, not a frightful dungeon, but the palace of Tuscany, and, for eighteen days, the apartments of the attorney-general, where he had every facility to take exercise and carry on his correspondence. During the trial, the main object of his answers was not the scientific view of the question, since he had been allowed to defend his system as an astronomical hypothesis, but its pretended association with the Bible. Not long after having received his sentence and made his recantation, Galileo obtained leave to revisit his native country, and, far from being persecuted, was dismissed with new marks of esteem for his talents and of regard for his person.

For these interesting documents respecting the affair of Galileo, we are indebted to the researches of an impartial Protestant, Mr. Mallet Dupan of Geneva, who wrote a dissertation on the subject, in the *Mercure de France*, 17 *Juillet* 1784, *n.* 29—see Bérault-Bercastel, *Histoire de l'Eglise* ad ann. 1634; and Bergier, *Diction. de théol.*, art. *Monde*, and *Sciences*.

The Roman Church, far from impeding the progress of astronomy or of other sciences, on this or any other occasion, has on the contrary rendered even in that respect, the most undeniable and signal services. We allude chiefly to the reformation of the calendar, an event which took place under Pope Gregory XIII., some years before the time of Galileo, and which is well deserving of notice.

By *calendar* is meant a certain distribution of time adapted to religious and civil purposes, and pointing out the order and succession of the days, weeks, months and festivals of the year. All civilized nations have ever felt the necessity of having such a regular distribution of time; but it required a long series of ages, a deep study of astronomy, and innumerable calculations, to contrive a good and exact calendar.

In former times, the year was believed to be eleven minutes longer than it is in reality. This difference, though apparently trifling, had become, by being repeated from year to year during the course of many centuries, so very sensible and material, that in the year 1582, the vernal equinox fell on the eleventh of March, whereas the calendar marked it on the twenty-first of the same month; a day which had been assigned to it by the astronomers of Alexandria, in 325. The consequence was, that festivals were no longer celebrated in their proper time; and Easter, in particular, which depends on the full moon of March, would, in the course of ages, have been successively found in Summer, Autumn and Winter.

To remedy this confusion, Gregory XIII. suppressed at once from the year 1582 ten entire days (those between the 4th and 15th of October), by which the real equinox was in advance of the equinox of the calendar; thus making them again coincide, and restoring all Christian festivals to their proper epoch throughout the year. Moreover, measures and precautions, suggested by skilful mathematicians and astronomers, were taken to

prevent the like confusion in future, and the whole work being completed, received the solemn sanction of the Pope, in his bull of the same year, 1582.

These corrections in the calendar were successively adopted by nearly all Christian nations, even those separated from the See of Rome; e. g., by the English, in 1752; by the Swedes, in 1753; by the German States, in 1776. The Russians are the only civilized people in Europe, who have hitherto refused to admit the important improvement, and still adhere to the old style; the consequence of which is that they are now, in their computation of the year, twelve days behind the real time; thus preferring, as a judicious author pointedly remarks, rather to be at variance with the heavens and the stars, than to agree with the Roman Pontiff.

NOTE N.—PAGE 467.

MASSACRE OF ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S DAY.

NOTHING perhaps is more common, and yet nothing can be more unjust, than to take advantage of the Massacre of St. Bartholomew's day, to inveigh against the Catholic community and the Catholic principles, as if the awful deed had proceeded from their influence.

If we consult the authentic and contemporary documents collected and adduced by those persons who have made a deep and impartial study of the whole transaction e. g., Caveirac, *Dissert. sur la St. Barthelémi;* —Lingard, VIII. Note T.;—Daniel, *Hist. de France,* ad ann. 1572), we shall find that religion had nothing to do with it, except to check its course as much as possible, and to weep over the devoted victims of the massacre; that the whole affair was merely the effect of political resentment and of a sudden ebullition of anger; in fine, that a much smaller number of persons perished on the occasion than is commonly believed.

The series and close connection of the events immediately preceding the massacre, are sufficient to show that it originated in the animosity of the French court against the Protestant party, and was dictated by a violent desire of revenge. The mind of the young king, Charles IX., had been frequently harassed and exasperated by the repeated attacks of the Huguenots against his authority, and by the report of the many cruelties which they had committed throughout the kingdom during the last civil wars. Notwithstanding these causes of provocation he would not have adopted the dreadful measure, had it not been for the positive assertion of his mother and chief counsellors, that he could no longer escape the plots of that party, without putting to death or in confinement its chief leaders, and that, were he to wait till next morning, his most faithful officers, his family, perhaps himself, would be sacrificed to their vengeance. The king then gave his consent to the projected massacre; the time was appointed, and the execution took place during a considerable part of the following day, the twenty-fourth of August, 1572.

Thus, the odious deed was not the result of a long premedi-

tated and general plot, but the effect of a sudden fit of anger and revenge; it was, moreover, projected against the leaders only of the Huguenot party, and intended to have taken place only in Paris. If the example of the capital was followed in many other cities, e. g., Lyons, Rouen, Toulouse, Bordeaux, etc., this was owing chiefly to the violent excitement which the conduct and cruelties of the Calvinists, during the preceding insurrections, had produced in the minds of the Catholics. Far from sending orders to the provinces against Protestants, Charles IX., on the contrary, both in writing and by word of mouth, frequently expressed his intention that the bloody scene should not be repeated, nor extended beyond the limits of Paris. And indeed, the great difference of the epochs at which the massacres were committed in the cities just mentioned, also shows that they ought to be attributed rather to sudden ebullitions of popular vengeance, than to any previously concerted and general plan. Every one may see the detailed proofs of these assertions in the two first authors above mentioned.

Of the number of victims in all those towns, including the capital, it is impossible to speak with certainty. Among the Huguenot writers, some reckon seventy thousand; others, thirty or twenty or fifteen thousand: but all these amounts seem to be exaggerated. "The reformed martyrologist adopted a measure of ascertaining the real number, which may enable us to form a probable conjecture. He procured from the ministers in the different towns where the massacres had taken place, lists of the names of the persons who had suffered, or were supposed to have suffered. He published the result in 1582; and the reader will be surprised to learn that in all France he could discover the names of no more than seven hundred and eighty-six persons Perhaps, if we double that number, we shall not be far from the real amount." (Lingard *in loco cit.*)

Above all, it is certain that religion had nothing to do with the massacre, whether as a motive or an encouragement. In the contriving of the wretched scheme, the passions of the French court, jealousy, animosity, revenge, were the real and only cause; and the pretence was a supposed conspiracy of the Protestant leaders against the king, his servants and his family. No clergymen were consulted about the adoption of the awful measure; and, when they heard of it after its execution, far from obtaining their approbation, it rather excited in their bosoms feelings of horror for the deed, and of commiseration for its victims. The only share which bishops, priests, and monks took in it, was to save as many as they could of the Protestants, who, in many towns, e. g., Lisieux, Toulouse, Lyons, Bordeaux, had taken refuge in their hospitable dwellings.

It is objected that Pope Gregory XIII. publicly returned thanks to God on that occasion;—but what was the real object of this rejoicing? Charles IX., in order to palliate the shame of his murderous edict against the Parisian Huguenots, wrote to every court in Europe, that having just detected their horrid plots against his authority and person, he had been fortunate enough to escape from the imminent danger, by putting the conspirators to death without delay. The Pope then, under that impression,

rejoiced, not for the death of the supposed traitors, whose rigorous punishment he on the contrary deplored, but for the preservation of the French monarch and of his kingdom from utter ruin: exactly, as in a case of war, and of a signal victory against invaders, public rejoicings would take place, and every sensible person would willingly share in them, not indeed at the blood shed in battle, but at the advantages gained over an unjust enemy; and who could dare to find a fault in such conduct?

NOTE O.—PAGE 488.

REVOCATION OF THE EDICT OF NANTES.

Before attempting to present a vindication of this famous revocation, we will quote the words in which it is recorded by Hume, in the eighth volume of his History. "Louis XIV," says he, "having long harassed and molested the Protestants, at last entirely revoked the Edict of Nantes, which had been enacted by Henry IV. for securing them the free exercise of their religion; which had been declared irrevocable; and which, during the experience of near a century, had been attended with no sensible inconvenience. All the iniquities inseparable from persecutions were exercised against those unhappy religionists, who became obstinate in proportion to the oppressions which they suffered, and either covered under a feigned conversion a more violent abhorrence for the Catholic communion, or sought among foreign nations for that liberty of which they were bereaved in their native country. Above half a million of the most useful and industrious subjects deserted France, and exported, together with immense sums of money, those arts and manufactures which had chiefly tended to enrich that kingdom. They propagated everywhere the most tragical accounts of the tyranny exercised against them, and revived among the Protestants all that resentment against the bloody and persecuting spirit of popery, to which so many incidents in all ages had given too much foundation."

Such is, without the change of a single word, the language of Hume concerning the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. That it is, in most points, and especially in the conclusion, the language of virulence, untruth, and calumny, will appear manifest from the bare recital, in this and the following note, of the facts connected with the important subject now before us, and of such notorious facts, too, as the most envious criticism cannot rationally deny.

Previously to the reign of Louis XIV., the Huguenots by their threats and violence had extorted from the French kings, particularly from Henry IV. in 1598, innumerable privileges, and a sort of separate government in the very heart of the kingdom. Their repeated insurrections under Louis XIII. were checked, and their military forces annihilated by the genius of Richelieu: still they continued, even under this powerful minister, to possess a legal existence, and to enjoy the free exercise of their religion. Unfortunately, their spirit of rancor and animosity always continued the same; they constantly manifested the most

shameful opposition to the interests of their own country, repeatedly endeavored to overturn her constitution and government, always favored her foreign foes, as was manifest from their authentic acts and writings, and carried so far their hostile designs, as to open, as far as they were able, her frontiers to the Germans and the Dutch, and her maritime towns, Le Havre and La Rochelle, to the English, the greatest enemies of France; in a word, so multiplied were their infractions of several articles of the Edict of Nantes, that it required no fewer than two hundred decrees of various courts of justice to check these new encroachments, as may be seen in the work of Abbé Caveirac on this subject, pp. 195–246, and LXI.–LXIII. of the notes.

Moreover, the bloody civil wars formerly excited by the Huguenots, were not yet forgotten, and the fresh remembrance of past evils inclined the nation to adopt measures calculated to prevent their repetition. "I do not speak," says the illustrious pupil of Fenelon, the duke of Burgundy, in his memoirs, "of the calamities produced by the new doctrines in Germany, England, Scotland, Ireland, etc.; I speak of France only. Nor shall I enumerate one by one, the evils of which it was the theatre, and which are recorded in so many authentic documents; the secret assemblies; the leagues formed with foreign enemies; the attempts against the government; the seditious threats, open revolts, conspiracies, and bloody wars; the plundering and sacking of towns; the deliberate massacres, and atrocious sacrileges: suffice it to say, that, from Francis I. to Louis XIV. during seven successive reigns, all these evils and many others, with more or less violence, desolated the French monarchy. This is a point of history which, although it may be variously related, can neither be denied nor called in question; and it is from this capital point that we should start in the political examination of this great affair."

Under the fresh recollection of so many trespasses and obnoxious deeds of the Huguenots, an intimate persuasion, founded on the natural rights of nations and the security of governments, had pervaded all classes of people, that the king was justifiable in adopting vigorous measures for the purpose of checking this ill-affected portion of his subjects. It was the general opinion, that the Edict of Nantes, both from its nature and on account of its numerous violations by the very party whom it favored, might be revoked, since the good and tranquillity of the state called for its revocation. So little doubt did there exist concerning this right of repeal, that even Arnauld, a Jansenist, and Grotius, a Protestant, openly acknowledged it in their writings;* nor indeed could it be denied without unjust partiality, since there was not, at this period, a single Protestant government in Europe, which, notwithstanding much more sacred ties or contracts, did not act more severely against their peaceful Catholic subjects, than the French court prepared to do against the restless and ever disaffected Huguenots.

---

* The following are the words of the latter: "Norint illi, qui Reformatorum sibi imponunt vocabulum, non esse illa fœdera, sed regum edicta, ob publicam facta utilitatem, et *revocabilia*, si aliud regibus publica utilitas suaserit.—*Rivetiani apologetici discussio*, p. 22.

Moved by these considerations, the ministry under Louis XIV. employed itself in gradually undermining their party, and taking away from them the power and opportunities of exciting new disturbances in France; still nothing appeared to threaten the entire abolition of their privileges, when, alarming symptoms of insurrection manifested by them throughout the southern and western provinces, caused it to become a matter of serious debate in the council of the king. The proposed measure passed by the unanimous vote of the counsellors and ministers; the Edict of Nantes was revoked; and, as the factious and hostile spirit of the Huguenot ministers was too well known to be safely tolerated, such *of their number* as refused to abjure their tenets within the space of two months, were commanded to quit the kingdom. As to the other Protestants, they were not only allowed, but even encouraged to remain in France, where they might freely carry on their business and commerce as before, and enjoy their property and their civil rights under the protection of the law, "without being troubled and vexed on account of their religion." These are the very terms of the repealing statute.

It is, therefore, a gross inaccuracy to assert or suppose that the French Huguenots were promiscuously condemned to banishment, or doomed to oppression and all the iniquities inseparable from persecution in their native country. Many of them, it is true, preferred to follow their ministers into exile; but this was a mere effect of their own choice, which the government never intended nor encouraged. It is true also that, in several places, acts of rigor, owing to unforeseen incidents, were exercised against them; but this happened only in the places where the religionists, misunderstanding the moderate views of their sovereign, provoked his justice by their excesses and revolts. As to the acts of violence which some individuals occasionally recommended or practised, they were entirely repugnant both to the character and intentions of the monarch, who bitterly complained of this criminal abuse of his authority.

He not only published new enactments to check these disorders, but also endeavored to remove from the attendance of Protestants at religious instructions even the appearance of constraint; following in this the advice of Bossuet, Fenelon, and other distinguished persons of the clergy, as Cardinal de Bausset relates in the lives of these two illustrious bishops. Even before this, so remote were the ideas of the king from any thing like persecution, that, in a letter to the Intendants of the provinces, he said in express terms, that he recommended to them *above all* to treat the Protestants with mildness, *je vous recommande surtout de ménager avec douceur les esprits de ceux de ladite religion;* and, when information was given him that two of these governors had followed a different course, he severely reprimanded one, and recalled the other.

But did not Louis XIV. at least commit a great political fault, or, as some call it, *a suicidal act* against France, by giving occasion to so many industrious and useful subjects to leave the kingdom?—So indeed it seems to several persons, but on what grounds does not appear. Even supposing the commercial and pecuniary disadvantage for some parts of France to have been as

great as is commonly supposed, Louis XIV. may have justly considered it a mere trifle, when weighed in the balance against the security and tranquillity of the whole kingdom. After all, there has evidently been much exaggeration in estimating the loss which France may have suffered on that occasion. Whatever were the complaints issued by some interested individuals, time and experience showed that arts, manufactures, and trade had scarcely suffered any sensible detriment; or it was, at least, quickly repaired, since from nearly that period, commerce and industry became more and more flourishing in France, and no later than two years after the Edict of Revocation, the revenues of the crown, without any harsh or oppressive measure, were augmented. Nor is it at all true that the French refugees exported much money; the richest among them had remained in France, and those who freely chose to emigrate were mostly workmen and laborers, rather requiring support from the countries which received them, than capable of enriching their benefactors, as their own historians confess (apud Caveirac, pp. 93–97). Nor, in fine, did they materially contribute, except perhaps in Prussia, to the splendor of foreign manufactures, which were flourishing and prosperous before their arrival.

As to the number of the emigrants, it is difficult to ascertain it, though we may be assured that there is another gross exaggeration in the amount of *above half a million* asserted by Hume. Larrey and Benoit, two Protestant authors, admit it to have been of about two hundred thousand persons; but several critics think that it ought to be reduced, upon fair calculation, to one-fourth or at least one-third of that amount. Among others, the Duke of Burgundy, whose candor and sincerity, as well as means of research, cannot be doubted, assures us that the French refugees were not more than sixty-eight thousand in all; a number less than was carried off by a single civil war.

So little injury was thought at the time to result to France from the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, that Louis XIV. received innumerable congratulations on this account. Both subjects and foreigners appeared more surprised at the rapid execution of the measure, than at the measure itself; even the famous Bayle proved to his fellow exiles that it was their own conduct that had forced the king to revoke their privileges, and that, after all, the laws enacted in most Protestant countries against Catholics were more stern and rigorous than any published by Catholic princes against Protestants (*Avis aux Réfugiés*, etc.). If then the Huguenots filled the world with their invectives against the French government, no reasonable man will refuse to ascribe their conduct rather to the dictate of passion, than to their love of truth and justice. For, who does not know that the guilty commonly complain of the tribunal by which they were condemned? And who will ever consider as worthy of credit the historian who, lending an attentive ear to these complaints and invectives of one party, sets aside the victorious defence and the unexceptionable reasons of the other?

NOTE P.

ON RELIGIOUS PERSECUTION.

To all persons ever so little acquainted with the history of the last ages, it must be matter of the greatest surprise to see the charge of *bloody and persecuting spirit* so incessantly urged against the Catholic Church by those against whom it may be so easily and so victoriously retorted. Without mentioning the rigors exercised by Frederic William III., King of Prussia, the oppressive yoke laid over Catholic Poland by the Czar Alexander II. of Russia and his father, Nicholas, and the inhumanity of the former penal laws of England, etc., what violence and persecution did not the Catholics of the sixteenth century suffer in Denmark, Sweden and Scotland, although *theirs* was the ancient and established faith, while the doctrines of their persecutors were novelties both in Church and State! What cruelties were not committed against them in different parts of Germany, where it may be said that streams of blood marked the progress of the reformed religion;—in Holland, where the sanguinary Vandermerk slaughtered more unoffending Catholic persons in the year 1572, than the severe Duke of Alva executed Protestant insurgents during his whole government;—in France, where the fury of the Huguenots, besides many particular atrocities, burnt nine hundred towns and villages in the province of Dauphiné alone, and excited nine or ten civil wars, which cost the lives of more than two millions of men; and that, too, upon avowed principle, and according to the maxims laid down by the very authors of the reformation, Luther, Calvin, Beza, etc.

On the contrary, we have proved, in different Notes, that neither the pastors, nor the tenets and principles of the Catholic Church, had any share in the Massacre of St. Bartholomew's Day, in the Gun-powder Plot, in the abuses which may have accidentally taken place in the Spanish Inquisition, or in the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. Sometimes, indeed, when there have existed sectarians, like the Albigenses, implacable disturbers of the public peace, and enemies of all social and religious order, the Church exhorted and requested the civil power to repress their excesses: but this surely cannot, without a manifest abuse of language, be termed *persecution;* otherwise we ought to call by the same name all civil laws enacted against robbers and murderers. As to the acts of real persecution, cruelty, and violence of which some Catholics may have occasionally been guilty, they not only never met with any kind of encouragement or approbation from her; but she rather endeavored, as much as lay in her power, to prevent or check those ebullitions of individual and popular fury; and, however zealous to propagate the Christian faith, she always inculcated that principle, which has even become a part of the Canon Law, that no one should embrace it by force. That this has been constantly, from the primitive ages down to the present time, her true spirit and the rule of her conduct, may be easily shown from a great

variety of facts and testimonies, even confining ourselves to such as are connected with the events and personages mentioned in the course of this history.

The first Christian emperor, Constantine the Great, was far from retaliating upon the heathens the rigor which his predecessors had exercised against the Christians. However great was his zeal for the diffusion of the true religion, in which he had been instructed by Catholic bishops, he did not so much as attempt to compel, but contented himself with mildly exhorting his subjects to embrace it, and even gave orders that no one should be in the least annoyed on account of his religion. See *his life* by Eusebius, *b.* II. *ch.* 47, 48, etc.

Another Christian emperor, Honorius, having in 410 passed very severe edicts to repress the horrid excesses and cruelties of the Donatists in Africa, St. Augustine and other orthodox prelates exerted all their influence to mitigate in favor of these wretched people the severity of the law, and to procure their conversion by instructions and conferences, rather than let their bodies perish by capital punishment. We learn from Possidius, the disciple and friend of St. Augustine, in the life of this holy doctor (*n.* 14), that they had the satisfaction to succeed in their charitable undertaking.

Pope St. Leo the Great, who lived at a time when the Church was attacked by very dangerous heretics, speaking of the Manicheans, the worst of all, says that "the ecclesiastical lenity was content, even in this case, with the sacerdotal judgment, and avoided all sanguinary punishments." A remarkable fact had recently proved the truth of his assertion. It was against a branch of these sectarians, the Priscillians, that the secular arm first exerted its severity, at Triers under the emperor Maximus, about the year 385. This event served to show how adverse the Catholic Church is to the bloody spirit of persecution: Pope St. Siricius, and the most holy prelates of the West, blamed the rigor that had been exercised against the Priscillians, and the two bishops Ithacius and Idacius, who had obtained their condemnation in a civil court, were themselves condemned for that very reason in the councils of Milan (A.D. 390) and of Turin (401).

When Ethelbert, King of Kent, was converted to the true religion by the apostle of England, St. Austin, he had a great desire that all his subjects should like him embrace Christianity; but, as venerable Bede relates, he did not compel any one to do so, because *he had learned from the Roman missionaries* that the service of Christ ought to be voluntary.—Pope St. Gregory the Great, by whom these holy missionaries were sent to England, evinced on many other occasions his firm adherence to this mild spirit of Christianity. Writing to the bishop of Terracina, who had used some violence against the Jews, he said: "It is by mildness and exhortations, not by threats and terror, that the infidels must be induced to become Christians;" and again, to a patriarch of Constantinople: "This is indeed a very strange way of preaching, which enforces the true faith by ill-treatment!" Such were the principles and the constant doctrine of that holy pontiff.

St. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux and the brightest ornament of his age, having learned that a fanatical preacher exhorted the people to murder the Jews as enemies of Christianity, rose against him with all the force of his eloquence, and rescued these devoted victims from the danger which threatened them. Pope Clement VI., in a similar ebullition of popular fury, hastened to forbid, even under penalty of excommunication, any violence to be offered to them either in their persons or in their property; and it is well known in general that the Jews never enjoyed greater protection than under the Roman Pontiffs; so much so, that the city of Rome, where they occupy a separate quarter, with mere precautions of police, has been proverbially called *the Paradise of the Jews.*

Robertson, in his *History of America,* renders full justice to the zeal and charity of the Spanish ecclesiastics in favor of the Indians of San Domingo, at the time when these unhappy people were harshly treated by their conquerors. "The missionaries," says he, "in conformity to the mild spirit of that religion which they were employed to publish, early remonstrated against *this conduct.*" Besides the Dominican fathers, and the zealous Bartholomew Las Casas whose exertions in that noble cause are so justly renowned, the monks of St. Jerome also "neglected no circumstance that tended to mitigate the rigor of the yoke; and by their authority, their example and their exhortations, they labored to inspire their countrymen with sentiments of equity and gentleness toward the Indians." (*b.* III, *ad ann.* 1517.)

In the fifth book of his work, the same historian relates that Cortez having resolved, in his march towards Mexico, to destroy by open force the altars and the idols of the Tlascalans, was checked in his inconsiderate design by Father Olmedo, a chaplain to the expedition. This venerable man "represented that religion was not to be propagated by the sword, or infidels to be converted by violence; that other weapons were to be employed in this ministry, namely, patient instruction and pious example. . . . . The remonstrances of an ecclesiastic no less respectable for wisdom than virtue, had their proper weight with Cortez: he left the Tlascalans in the undisturbed exercise of their own rites, requiring only that they should desist from their horrid practice of offering human victims in sacrifice."

We have already noticed the charity and mildness displayed by the French clergy in favor of Protestants, at the time of the Massacre of St. Bartholomew's day and the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. We may now make a similar remark concerning the penal statute passed, under the reign of Queen Mary, against her Protestant subjects, in consequence of the provocations which she had often experienced from their inordinate zeal. Motives of state policy actuated, indeed, the abettors of that rigorous measure; but, far from being supported by any argument from ecclesiastical authority, it was on the contrary powerfully opposed by Cardinal Pole in the cabinet council, and even by King Philip's chaplain from the pulpit. When likewise, Emmanuel, king of Portugal, ordered some violent measures to be resorted to, apparently for the good of religion, the celebrated

Jesuit and historian Mariana observed, that the edict was most repugnant to the laws and statutes of the Christian Church, *decretum à legibus et institutis Christianis abhorrens maximè.*

It was from these sacred statutes and laws, still more than from his own benevolent heart, that Fenelon drew the following beautiful maxims and counsels which he addressed to the son of King James II., called the *Pretender:* "Above all, never force your subjects to change their religion. No human power can reach the impenetrable recess of the free will of the heart. Violence can never persuade men; it serves only to make hypocrites. . . . . Grant civil liberty to all, not in approving everything as good, nor regarding everything as indifferent, but in tolerating with patience whatever Almighty God tolerates, and endeavoring to convert men by mild persuasion." "Sur toutes choses, ne forcez jamais vos sujets à changer de religion. Nulle puissance humaine ne peut forcer le retranchement impénétrable de la liberté du cœur. La force ne peut jamais persuader les hommes; elle ne fait que des hypocrites. . . . . Accordez à tous la tolérance civile, non en approuvant tout comme indifférent, mais en souffrant avec patience tout ce que Dieu souffre, et en tâchant de ramener les hommes parune douce persuasion." (*Vie de Fénélon, par* Ramsay, *p.* 176; or by Cardinal Bausset, *vol.* III. *p.* 208).

The same benevolent and mild spirit of Catholicity has been also strikingly displayed on this side of the Atlantic. To prove this, we need merely refer to the history of the settlers of Maryland, the only one of the early British colonies that was founded by a body of Catholics. "Its history," says Bancroft (*vol.* I. *p.* 268), "is the history of benevolence, gratitude, and toleration. . . The Roman Catholics, who were oppressed by the laws of England, were sure to find a peaceful asylum in the quiet harbors of the Chesapeake; and there, too, Protestants were sheltered against Protestant intolerance." (See also Wilson, *Amer. Revol. ch.* II, *p.* 21.) While the Episcopalians of Virginia would suffer no other form of worship than their own; while the Puritans of New England punished with exile, fines, or tortures, the dissenters from their creed, the Catholics of Maryland alone, instead of imitating the example, invited the sufferers to come among them, and kindly received into their hospitable colony the victims of intolerance from the other settlements.

Nor has the American Catholic of the present day degenerated from the maxims of his ancestors. However ready to defend his just rights against all illegal attacks and actual violence, he is equally disposed never to attempt the least unjust aggression against persons of a different creed. How strongly soever attached to his faith, it is only by a fair and mild exposition of his doctrines that he seeks to vindicate them; being satisfied that the true religion neither needs nor requires to be defended or promoted by plots and associations, riots, and conflagrations, misrepresentations and calumny; he would be ashamed to use, and he is, above all, careful not to employ such unworthy weapons for the support of so sacred a cause.

How falsely, then, do the enemies of the Catholic Church ascribe to her *a bloody and persecuting spirit*, than which nothing

is more contrary to her constant maxims and conduct! Is it not rather evident that the same society to which we are indebted for the preservation of religion, civilization, literature, and learning; for the complete revival of sciences and belles-lettres in the age of Leo X., and their greatest splendor in the age of Louis XIV.; for the most successful exertions in repelling the invasion of barbarians and saving the liberty of our European ancestors ; for the most useful institutions; for the most important discoveries; etc., enjoys also the honor of having always maintained the true spirit of Christianity upon earth, and ever practised, together with unshaken adherence to the deposit of faith, that effectual benevolence and genuine charity which is so much recommended in the Gospel? Wonderful Providence of God toward mankind in the institution of his Church, that, while she seems to have been established only to promote our spiritual and eternal welfare, she has, moreover, been rendered so zealously active and so vitally instrumental in procuring even our temporal happiness!

TABLES

OF

CONTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS.

N.B. THE DATES MARK THE BEGINNING OF EACH REIGN.

TABLE I.

B. C.	ROMAN EMPERORS.	PARTHIAN KINGS: ARSACIDES.
31	Cæsar Augustus.	Phraates.
A.D.		
14	Tiberius.	
18	.....	Artabanus I.
37	Caligula.	
41	Claudius.	
50	.....	Vologeses I.
54	Nero.	
68	Galba.	
69	Otho.	
69	Vitellius.	
69	Vespasian.	
79	Titus.	
81	Domitian.	
90	.....	Pacorus.
96	Nerva.	
98	Trajan.	
107	....	Chosroes.
117	Adrian.	
133	.....	Vologeses II.
138	Antoninus Pius.	
161	Marcus Aurelius.	
180	Commodus.	
189	....	Vologeses III.
193	Pertinax.	
193	Didius Julianus.	
193	Septimius Severus.	
211	Caracalla.	
214	....	Artabanus I.
217	Macrinus.	
218	Heliogabalus,	*Empire of the Parthians destroyed in* 226.
222	Alexander Severus.	

TABLE II.

A. D.	ROMAN EMPERORS.	PERSIAN KINGS: SASSANIDES.
235	Maximin.....	226 Artaxerxes I.
238	Gordion	Sapor I.
244	Philip.	
249	Decius.	
251	Gallus.	
253	Æmilian.	
253	Valerian.	
260	Gallienus.	
268	Claudius II.	
269	.....	Hormisdas I.
270	Aurelian.	
273	....	Varanes I.
275	Tacitus.	
276	Probus.	Varanes II.
282	Carus.	
284	Carinus and Numerian.	
284	Diocletian and Maximian.	
294	... .	Narses.
305	Constantius Chlorus and Galerius.	Hormisdas II.
306	Constantine the Great.	
310	.....	Sapor II.
337	Constantine II. Constans and Constantius.	
361	Julian.	
363	Jovian.	
364	Valentinian and Valens.	
379	Gratian, Valentinian II. and Theodosius the Great. *The empire is divided.*	Artaxerxes II. Sapor III. Varanes III.
	In the West.	
395	Honorius.	
424	Valentinian III.	
455	Eight short reigns (*see p.* 133).	*For the continuation see table III.*
475	Romulus Augustulus. Fall of the Western empire in 476.	

TABLE III.

A. D.	EASTERN OR GREEK EMPERORS.	PERSIAN KINGS: SASSANIDES.
395	Arcadius.	
399	....	Isdegerdes I.
408	Theodosius II.	
420	....	Varanes IV.
440	....	Isdegerdes II.
450	Marcian.	
457	Leo the Thracian.	Peroses.
474	Zeno.	
488	.....	Balasces.
491	Anastasius I.	Cabades.
518	Justin I.	
527	Justinian I.	
531	.....	Chosroes I.
565	Justin II.	
578	Tiberius II.	
579	....	Hormisdas III.
582	Mauritius.	
590	....	Chosroes II.
602	Phocas.	
610	Heraclius.	
628	.....	Siroes.
632	.....	Isdegerdes III., the last of the Sassanides.
		———
		Mohammed, the false prophet.
		Arabian Caliphs.
632	....	Abu-Bekr.
634	....	Omar.
641	Constantine III. Constans II.	
644	.....	Othman.
656	.....	Ali.
		Ommiades.
661	.....	Moavias.
668	Constantine IV., or Pogonatus.	After his death there was a rapid succession of twelve caliphs during the space of sixty-four yrs., terminating in
685	Justinian II.	
711	Philippicus.	
713	Anastasius II.	
716	Theodosius III.	
717	Leo the Isaurian.	
741	Constantine V. or Copronymus.	
744	....	Mervan, the last of the Ommiades.

TABLE IV.

A. D.	EASTERN OR GREEK EMPERORS.	ARABIAN CALIPHS: ABASSIDES.
750	.....	Abul-Abbas.
754	.....	Abu-Giafar Almanzor.
775	Leo Chazarus.	Mohammed Mahadi.
780	Constantine VI. and Irene.	
785	....	Hadi.
786	.....	Haroun-Al-Raschid.
802	Nicephorus.	
809	....	Amin.
811	Michael I.	
813	Leo the Armenian.	Al-Mamon.
820	Michael II. the Stammerer.	
829	Theophilus.	
833	.....	Mutasem.
842	Michael III.	
867	Basil the Macedonian.	
886	Leo the Philosopher.	The succeeding caliphs, devoid of personal merit, lost an immense portion of their power, and retained little more than a certain preëminence of honor.
911	Alexander.	
912	Constantine VII. or Porphyrogenetes.	
919	Romanus I. Lecapenes; and Constant. VII. continued.	
959	Romanus II.	
963	Nicephorus Phocas.	
969	John Zimisces.	
976	Basil II—till	
1025	Then, after a series of fifteen emperors, who just appeared and disappeared, came	
1081	Alexius Comnenus, whose long reign belongs also to the epoch of the Crusades.	

TABLE V.

A. D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY FROM THE REVIVAL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE.	KINGS OF ENGLAND FROM THE END OF THE HEPTARCHY.
	House of France.	*Anglo-Saxon Kings.*
800	Charlemagne.	
814	Louis I., the Debonnaire.	
827	.....	Egbert.
836	....	Ethelwolf.
840	Lothaire I.	
855	Louis II.	
857	.....	Ethelbald.
860	.....	Ethelbert.
866	....	Ethelred I.
871	.....	Alfred the Great.
875	Charles the Bald.	
	Interregnum of three years.	
880	Charles the Big.	
887	Arnold.	
889	Guy.	
894	Lambert.	
900	Louis III.	Edward the Elder.
	House of Franconia.	
912	Conrad I.	
	House of Saxony.	
919	Henry I., the Fowler.	
924	.....	Athelstan.
936	Otho I., the Great.	
940	....	Edmund.
946	....	Edred.
955	.....	Edwy.
959	... .	Edgar.
973	Otho II.	
975	.....	Edward the Martyr.
978	.....	Ethelred II.
983	Otho III.	

TABLE VI.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS OF ENGLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE *from the beginning of the Capetian dynasty.*	KINGS OF SPAIN, *from the time when Castile was erected into a kingdom.*
	House of Bavaria.	*Anglo-Saxons, Continued.*		
987	.....	.....	Hugh Capet.	
996	.....	.....	Robert.	
1002	Henry II. the Saint.			
1016	.....	Edmund Ironsides.		
	House of Franconia.	*Danish Kings.*		
1017	.....	Canute the Great.		
1024	Conrad II.			
1031	.....	.....	Henry I.	
1035	.....	Harold I.	.....	Ferdinand I.
1039	Henry III.	Hardicanute.		
		Saxon line restored.		—
1042	.....	Edward the Confessor.		
1056	Henry IV.			
1060	.....	.....	Philip I.	
1065	.....	.....	.....	Sanchez.
1066	.....	Harold II.		
		Norman dynasty.		
1066	.....	William I the Conqueror.		
1072	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso I., in Castile, and VI., as king of Leon.
1087	.....	William II. the Red.		

TABLE VII.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF CONSTANTINOPLE.	KINGS OF JERUSALEM.
	Alexius Comnenus.	
1099	.....	Godfrey of Bouillon.
1110	.....	Baldwin I.
1118	John Comnenus.	Baldwin II.
1131	.....	Foulques of Anjou.
1142	.....	Baldwin III.
1143	Manuel Comnenus.	
1152	.....	Almeric or Amaury.
1173	.....	Baldwin IV.
1180	Alexius II.	
1183	Andronicus I,	
1185	Isaac Angelus.....	Baldwin V.
1186	.....	Guy of Lusignan.
1195	Alexius III.	
1203	Isaac and Alexius IV. Angelus.	*Fall of the kingdom of Jerusalem.*
1204	Alexius V Ducas, or Murzuphlis.	
	Constantinople taken by the Latins.	*Greek Emperors at Nice.*
1204	Baldwin I.....	Theodorus Lascaris I.
1206	Henry.	
1206	Peter de Courtenay.	
1219	Robert de Courtenay.	
1222	.....	John Ducas Vataces.
1228	John of Brienne. Baldwin II.	
1255	.....	Theodorus Lascaris II.
1259	.....	John Lascaris. Michael Paleologus.
	Constantinople recovered by the Greeks.	
1261	Michael Paleologus.	
1282	Andronic II.	

TABLE VIII.

A D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS OF ENGLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE.	KINGS OF SPAIN.
	House of Franconia.	*Norman dynasty.*	*Capetian dynasty.*	*House of Bigorre.*
1100	.....	Henry I.		
1106	Henry V.			
1108	.....	.....	Louis VI. the Big.	
1109	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso VII.
1125	Lothaire II. the Saxon.	*House of Blois.*		*House of Burgundy.*
1126	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso VIII.
1135	.....	Stephen.		
1137	.....	.....	Louis VII. the Younger.	
1138	Conrad III.	*Plantagenets undivided.*		
	House of Suabia			
1152	Frederic I. Barbarossa.			
1154	.....	Henry II.		
1157	.....	.....	.....	Sanchez III. and Ferdinand II.
1158	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso IX.
1180	.....	.....	Philip II. Augustus.	
1189	.....	Richard I. Cœur de Lion.		
1190	Henry VI.			
1198	Philip. Otho IV.			
1199	.....	John Lackland.		
1214	.....	.....	.....	Henry I.
1216	.....	Henry III.		
1217	.....	.....	.....	Ferdinand III. St.
1218	Frederic II.			
1223	.....	.....	Louis VIII. Lion-hearted.	
1226	.....	.....	Louis IX. or St. Louis.	
1250	Conrad IV. William of Holland.			
1252	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso X. the Wise.
1256	*Interregnum. Anarchy.*			
1270	.....	.....	Philip III, the Bold.	
1272	.....	Edward I.		
1273	Rodolph I. of Hapsburg.			
1284	.....	.....	.....	Sanchez IV.
1285	.....	.....	Philip IV. the Fair.	
1292	Adolph of Nassau.			
1295	.....	.....	.....	Ferdinand IV.

TABLE IX.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF CONSTANTINOPLE.	OTTOMAN SULTANS.
1300		Othman.
1326		Orcan.
1328	Andronicus III.	
1341	John Cantacuzene and John Paleologus I.	
1360		Amurat I.
1389		Bajazet I., Ilderim.
1391	Manuel Paleologus.	
1402		Soliman I.
1406		Musa.
1413		Mahomet I.
1421		Amurat II.
1425	John Paleologus II.	
1448	Constantine Paleologus, or Dragazes.	
1451		Mahomet II.
	Fall of the Greek Empire.	
1481		Bajazet II.
1512		Selim I.
1520		Soliman II., the Magnificent.
1566		Selim II.
1574		Amurat III.
1595		Mahomet III.
1603		Achmet I.
1617		Mustapha I.
1618		Osman I.
1623		Amurat IV.
1640		Ibrahim.
1648		Mahomet IV.
1687		Soliman III.

TABLE X.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS OF ENGLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE.	KINGS OF SPAIN.
1298	Albert I. of Austria.	*Plantagenets.*	*Capetians.*	*House of Burgundy.*
1307	.....	Edward II.		
1308	Henry VII. of Luxemburg.			
1312	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso XI.
1314	Frederic of Austria. / Louis of Bavaria.	.....	Louis X.	
1316	.....	.....	John I., Philip V.	
1322	.....	.....	Charles IV.	
1327	.....	Edward III.	*House of Valois.*	
1328	.....	.....	Philip VI.	
	House of Luxemburg.			
1347	Charles IV.			
1350	.....	.....	John II.	Pedro the Cruel.
1364	.....	.....	Charles V., the Wise.	
1368	.....	.....	.....	Henry II., Trastamare.
1377	.....	Richard II.		
1378	Wenceslaus.	*House of Lancaster.*		
1380	.....	.....	Charles VI.	Juan I.
1390	.....	.....	.....	Henry III.
1399	.....	Henry IV.		
1400	Robert, Count Palatine.			
1406	.....	.....	.....	Juan II.
1410	Sigismund.			
1413	.....	Henry V.		
1422	.....	Henry VI.	Charles VII.	
	House of Austria.			
1438	Albert II.	*House of York.*		
1440	Frederic III.			
1454	.....	.....	.....	Henry IV.
1461	.....	Edward IV.	Louis XI.	
1474	.....	.....	.....	Isabella and
1483	.....	Edward V. / Richard III.	Charles VIII.	Ferdinand V.
		House of Tudor.	*Valois-Orléans.*	*Castile and Arragon united.*
1485	.....	Henry VII.		
1493	Maximilian I.			Philip I. of Austria, and Ferdinand V. of Arragon.
1498	.....	.....	Louis XII.	
1504	.....	.....	.....	
1509	.....	Henry VIII.		

TABLE XI.

A.D.	OTTOMAN SULTANS.	EMPERORS AND EMPRESSES OF RUSSIA.	KINGS OF PRUSSIA.	PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.
1689	.....	Peter I. the Great.		
1691	Achmet II.			
1695	Mustapha II.			
1701	.....	.....	Frederic I.	
1702	Achmet III.			
1713	.....	.....	Frederic William I.	
1725	.....	Catherine I.		
1727	.....	Peter II.		
1730	Mahomet V. or Mahmoud I.	Anne.		
1740	.....	Iwan.....		
1741	.....	Elizabeth.	Frederick II. the Great.	
1754	Osman II.			
1757	Mustapha III.			
1762	.....	Peter II.—Catherine II. the Great.		
1774	Abdul-Hamid.			
1786	.....	.....	Fred. William II.	
1789	Selim III.	.....	.....	Washington, first president
1796	.. ..	Paul.		
1797	.....	.....	Fred. William III.	John Adams.
1801	.....	Alexander.	.....	Jefferson.
1807	Mustapha IV.			
1808	Mahmoud II.			
1809	.....	.....	.....	Madison.
1817	.....	.....	.....	Monroe.
1825	.....	Nicholas.	.....	John Q. Adams.
1829	.....	.....	.....	Jackson.
1837	.....	.....	.....	Van Buren.
1839	Abdul Medjid.			
1840	.....	.....	Frederic William IV.	
1841	.....	.....	.....	Harrison, Tyler.
1845	.....	.....	.....	Polk.
1849	.....	.....	.....	Taylor, Fillmore.
1853	.....	.....	.....	Pierce.
1855	... .	Alexander II.	.....	
1857	.....	.....	.....	Buchanan.
1861	Abdul Aziz.	.....	William I.	Lincoln.
1865	.....	.....	.....	Johnson.
1869	.....	.....	.....	Grant.
1876	Amurath V. / Abdul-Hamid II.			
1877	.....	.....	.....	Hayes.
1881	.....	Alexander III.	.....	Garfield, Arthur.
1885	.....	.....	.....	Cleveland.
1888	.....	.....	Frederick III.	
1889	.....	.....	William II.	B. Harrison.
1893	.....	.....	.....	Cleveland.
1894	.....	Nicholas II.	.....	
1897	.....	.....	.....	McKinley.
1901	.....	.....	.....	Roosevelt.

TABLE XII.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS AND QUEENS OF ENGLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE.	KINGS OF SPAIN.
	House of Austria, continued.	*House of Tudor, continued.*	*Valois—Angoulême.*	*House of Austria.*
1515	.....	.....	Francis I.	
1516	.....	.....	.....	Charles I ; same as Charles V. in Germany.
1519	Charles V.			
1547	.....	Edward VI.....	Henry II.	
1553	.....	Mary.		
1556	Ferdinand I.	.....	.....	Philip II.
1558	.....	Elizabeth.		
1559	.....	.....	Francis II.	
1560	.....	.....	Charles IX.	
1564	Maximilian II.			
1574	.....	.....	Henry III.	
1576	Rodolph II.	*House of Stuart.*	*House of Bourbon.*	
1589	.....	.....	Henry IV. the Great.	
1598	.....	.....	.....	Philip III.
1603	.....	James I.		
1610	.....	.....	Louis XIII.	
1612	Matthias.			
1619	Ferdinand II.			
1621	.....	.....	.....	Philip IV.
1625	.....	Charles I.		
1637	Ferdinand III.			
1643	.....	.....	Louis XIV. the Great.	
1649	.....	*Commonwealth.* Cromwell, protector.		
1658	Leopold I.			
1660	.....	*Restoration.* Charles II.		
1665	.....	.....	.....	Charles II.
1685	.....	James II.—*Revolution.*		
1689	.....	Mary and William III.		*House of Bourbon*
1700	.....	.....	.....	Philip V.
1702	.....	Anne.		
1705	Joseph I.	*House of Hanover or Brunswick.*		
1711	Charles V.			
1714	.....	George I.		
1715	.....	.....	Louis XV.	
1727	.....	George II.		
1740	Charles VII. of Bavaria.			

TABLE XII.—CONTINUED.

A.D.	EMPERORS OF GERMANY.	KINGS AND QUEENS OF ENGLAND.	KINGS OF FRANCE.	KINGS AND QUEENS OF SPAIN.
	House of Lorraine.	*House of Hanover or Brunswick.*	*House of Bourbon.*	*House of Bourbon.*
1745	Francis I.			
1746	.....	.....	.....	Ferdinand VI.
1759	.....	.....	.....	Charles III.
1760	.....	George III.		
1765	Joseph II.			
1774	.....	.....	Louis XVI.	
1788	.....	.....	.....	Charles IV.
1790	Leopold II.	.....	*Revolution.*	
1792	Francis II.	.....	*Republic.*	
1793	.....	.....	Louis XVII.	
1799	.....	.....	Napoleon, *First Consul.*	
1804	*Empire of Austria.*	.....	Napoleon, *Emperor.*	
1806	Francis.			
1808	.....	.....	.....	*Forced abdication*
			Restoration.	*Spain Invaded,*
1814	.....	.....	Louis XVIII.	Ferdinand VII.
1820	.....	George IV.		
1824	.....	.....	Charles X, *Branch of Orléans.*	
1830	.....	William IV.....	Louis Philippe.	
1833	.....	.....	.....	*Civil war and Revolutions.*
1835	Ferdinand.			
1837	.....	Victoria.....	.....	*Regency of Queen Christina—Then, of Espartero.*
1843	.....	.....	.....	Isabella.
1848	Francis Joseph.	.....	*New Revolution and Republic.* Louis Napoleon, *President.*	
1852	.....	.....	Louis Napoleon, or Napoleon III., *Emperor.*	
1869	.....	.....	.....	*Republic.* Marshal Serrano, *Regent.*
1870	*German Emperors.*	.....	.....	*House of Savoy.* Amadeus.
1871	William I.....	.....	*Republic,* M. Thiers, *Pres.*	
1873	.....	.....	Mar'l. MacMahon.	
1874	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso XII.
1879	.....	.....	M. Grévy.	
1886	.....	.....	.....	Alfonso XIII.
1887	.....	.....	Sadi-Carnot.	
1888	Frederick I. / William II.	.....		
1894	.....	.....	Casimir-Périer.	
1895	.....	.....	M. Faure.	
1899	.....	.....	M. Loubet.	

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

OF

MEMORABLE EVENTS AND REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.

N. B. The dates in the first column denote the years in which the events happened;—those placed in the second column mark the years in which the persons mentioned there died.

PART I.

B.C.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.
31	Battle of Actium.
29	Change of the Roman Republic into an Empire.
20	Roman Ensigns recovered from the Parthians.
8	Temple of Janus shut. BIRTH OF CHRIST.
A.D.	
4	Conspiracy of Cinna.
9	Defeat of Varus in Germany.
15	German War.
31	Conspiracy of Sejanus.
33	Passion of our Saviour—Descent of the Holy Ghost—Foundation of the Church.
43	Invasion of Great Britain.
60	Conquest of Armenia.
64	First persecution against the Church.
70	Siege and destruction of Jerusalem.
79	Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius.
93	Second persecution.
106	Third persecution. [Jews.
136	Final overthrow of the

B.C. REMARKABLE PERSONAGES

Cicero—Sallust—Varro—Cornelius Nepos, died about this time, or a little before.

Young Marcellus died, B. C. 23—Virgil, poet, 19—Agrippa, general, 12—Drusus, general, 9—Horace, poet, 8—Mæcenas, statesman, 8.

A.D.

Livy, historian, died A. D. 17—Ovid, poet, 17 — Arminius, general, — Germanicus, 19—Strabo, geographer, 25—Livia, empress, 29—Velleius-Paterculus, historian, 31—Phædrus, fabulist.

. . .—Quintus Curtius, historian.

. . .—Philo. Jewish doctor .

Perseus, poet, 62—Lucan, poet, 65— Seneca, philosopher, 65—Corbulo, general, 66—Suetonius-Paulinus.

. . . .—St. Peter and St. Paul, Apostles, 67.

Pliny, the Elder, naturalist, 79—Agricola, general, 93—Josephus, historian, ...—Quintilian, rhetorician. . . . — St.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
162	Fourth persecution.	John, the Evangelist, 101—St. Ignatius, bishop and martyr, 107—Tacitus, historian....—Pliny the Younger . .—Juvenal, poet, 128—Plutarch, historian, 140—Justin, historian....
174	Miracle of the Thundering Legion.	
193	The empire put up at auction.	
197	Battle of Lyons between Severus and Albinus.	
202	Fifth persecution.	
226	Fall of the Parthian empire —New kingdom of Persia.	
235	Sixth persecution.	St. Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna and martyr, 166—St. Justin, martyr, 167.
249	Seventh persecution.	
257	Eighth persecution.	
260	Captivity of Valerian.	Between 140 and 180, died Ptolemy the astronomer—Arrian, the historian, and Lucian, the satirist.
262	Universal and dreadful pestilence.	
273	Destruction of Palmyra.	Galenus, physician, about 200.
275	Ninth persecution.	St. Irenæus, bishop of Lyons, 202—Clement of Alexandria, doctor, 216—Tertullian, about 220.
286	Martyrdom of the Theban Legion.	
303	Tenth and last general persecution, the most bloody of all.	Dio-Cassius, historian, about 230.
		St. Cornelius, pope and martyr, 252—Origen, 253—St. Cyprian, archbishop of Carthage, 258—St. Lawrence, martyr, 258.
		Plotinus, philosopher, 270—Longinus, rhetorician, 273—Zenobia, queen.

PART II.

312	Victory of Constantine over Maxentius — Triumph of Christianity.	Arnobius, rhetorician and doctor, about 320.
323	Licinius repeatedly defeated and finally overthrown by Constantine.	Lactantius, historian and doctor, about 328.
325	First General Council, at Nice.	Eusebius, historian and controversialist, 338 or 339.
330	Foundation of Constantinople.	
351	Battle of Mursa.	St. Hilary, bishop of Poitiers, 368—St. Athanasius, Patriarch of Alexandria, 373—St. Basil, archbishop of Cæsaréa, 379.
363	The attempt of Julian to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem, defeated by a splendid prodigy—His campaign and death in Persia.	
378	Battle of Adrianople.	Between 364 and 394, died the historians Eutropius, Ammianus Marcellinus and Aurelius Victor.
381	Second General Council at Constantinople.	

A. D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
388	Defeat and death of the usurper Maximus.	St. Cyril, archbishop of Jerusalem, 386—St. Gregory Nazianzen, archbishop of Constantinople, 389 — St. Gregory, bishop of Nyssa, 396.
390	Fault and repentance of Theodosius.	
394	Miraculous victory of Theodosius over Eugenius and Arbogastes.	Rufinus, statesman, 395—St. Ambrose, archbishop of Milan, 397—St. Epiphanius, archbishop of Salamis, 403—St. John Chrysostom, archbishop of Constantinople.
395	Final division of the empire.	
402–5	Defeat of the Goths in Italy.	407—Stilico, general and statesman, 408.
406–9	Gaul and Spain invaded by the Vandals and other barbarians.	
410	Rome taken and plundered by the Goths.	Alaric, king of the Goths, 410—Rufinus of Aquileia, historian, 410—Prudentius, poet, 410—Claudian, poet, and Macrobius, historian, about 415.
418	They settle in the Southern provinces of Gaul.	Sulpitius Severus, historian, 420
420	Beginning of the French monarchy.	St. Jerome, doctor of the Church, 420,—Constantius, general and statesman, 421—St. Augustine, bishop of Hippo, 430.
421	Roman troops entirely withdrawn from Great Britain—Inroads of the Picts and Scots.	Count Boniface, General, 432.
430	Africa subdued by the Vandals.	Socrates, historian, about 440—St. Cyril, patriarch of Alexandria, 444—St. Peter Chrysologus, archbishop of Ravenna, 450——Sozomen, historian, about 450.
431	Third General Council at Ephesus.	
438	Publication of the Theodosian code.	
451	Ravages of the Huns—Battle of the Catalaunian plains.	St. Pulcheria, empress, 453—Attila, king of the Huns, 453—Ætius, general, 454.
451	Fourth General Council, at Chalcedon.	St. Patrick, apostle of Ireland, about 460.
452	Pope St. Leo before Attila —Foundation of Venice.	
455	Rome plundered by the Vandals.	Theodoret, bishop of Cyra, 458—St. Leo the Great, pope, 461.
455	First establishment of the Anglo-Saxons in Great Britain.	Ricimer, general and statesman, 472.
472–3	Spain conquered by the Visigoths.	Gaiseric, king of the Vandals, 477.
476	Fall of the Western empire.	

PART III.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
486–96	Conquests of the Franks in Gaul—Their conversion to Christianity.	St. Sidonius Apollinaris, bishop of Clermont, 482—Evaric, king of the Visigoths, 484—Odoacer, king of Italy, 493.
489–93	Ostrogoths in Italy.	
526	Tremendous earthquakes—Overthrow and rebuilding of Antioch.	Clovis, king of the Franks, 511—Boethius, philosopher and statesman, 524—Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, 526—Amalasontha, queen, 535.
529	Justinian code.	
532	First use of the Christian era in Italy.	St. Fulgentius, bishop of Rusp. 533.
534	Kingdom of the Vandals destroyed.	
551	Silk manufacture brought from India to Europe.	Dionysius Exiguus, the monk, 540—St. Benedict, founder of the Benedictine order, 543.
553	Fifth General Council at Constantinople.	
553–4	Kingdom of the Ostrogoths destroyed—Battle of Casilino.	Totila and Teias, kings of the Ostrogoths, 553–54.
568	The Lombards in Italy—Exarchate of Ravenna remains to the Greeks.	Cassiodorus, statesman and doctor, 562—Procopius. Historian; Belisarius, general, 565—Narses, general, 568.
576	Battle of Melitene—Signal defeat of the Persians.	Alboin, king of the Lombards, 574.
584	Extraordinary inundations in Italy.	
587	Conversion of the Visigoths to the true faith.	
592	Bloody revolutions in Persia.	
597	Anglo-Saxons begin to embrace Christianity.	Evagrius, historian—St. Gregory of Tours, historian, 595—St. Gregory the Great, pope, 604—St. Augustine, first archbishop of Canterbury, 607.
602	Tragical end of the emperor Mauritius and his family.	
614–15	Ravages of the Persians in Syria and Palestine.	Fortunatus, poet, 609.
622 *et seq.*	Exploits of Heraclius against the Persians.	
622	Rise of Mohammedanism.	St. Isidore, archbishop of Seville, 636—St. Sophronius, patriarch of Jerusalem, 638.
634	Saracens invade Syria.	
636	..... Persia.	
637	..... Palestine.	
639	..... Mesopotamia.	About the middle of the 7th century, four celebrated Mussulman generals, Abu-Obeyda, Kaled, Amrou, Saad.
640	..... Egypt.	
641	Burning of the Alexandrian library.	Shortly after, four others, Moavias, Oucba, Zuheir, Assan.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
651	Extinction of the second Persian monarchy.	
673	Invention of the Greek fire—Siege of Constantinople during seven years.	Callinicus, chemist, about 675.
680	Sixth General Council, at Constantinople.	
697	Northern Africa, subjugated by the Saracens—Destruction of Carthage.	
711	Invasion of Spain—Battle of Xeres, which put an end to the kingdom of the Visigoths.	Pepin of Heristel, statesman and general, 714.
718	Saracens defeated by land and sea, near Constantinople.	
732	Battle of Tours—New defeat of the Saracens—Germany receives the light of the Gospel.	Venerable Bede, doctor and historian, 735—Charles-Martel, duke of France, 741 — Luitprand, king of the Lombards, 743—St. Zachary, pope, 752.
752	Merovingian family succeeded on the throne of France by the Dynasty of Carlovingian kings—Exarchate of Ravenna conquered by the Lombards.	
755	Temporal dominion of the Popes.	St. Boniface, apostle of Germany, 755.
756	Foundation of the kingdom of Cordova in Spain.	
763	Excessive cold and heat.	Pepin, king of France, 768.
774	Extinction of the kingdom of the Lombards.	
787	Seventh General Council, at Nice.	St. John Damascene, doctor of the Church, 780.
796	The Saxons subdued, and the Avari prostrated by the arms of Charlemagne	Adrian I., pope, 795.
800	Charlemagne crowned emperor of the West.	Witikind, Saxon general, about 800.

PART IV.

811	The emperor Nicephorus defeated and slain by the Bulgarians.	Paul of Aquileia, historian, 801. Alcuin, doctor, 804.
827	End of the English Heptarchy.	

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
841	Battle of Fontanet.	Eginhard, historian, about 842.
857	Commencement of the Greek schism.	Rabanus, archbishop of Mentz, 856—Lupus, abbot of Ferrieres, doctor, 862—Paschasius Radbertus, doctor, 865.
869	Eighth General Council, at Constantinople.	Anastasius, the librarian, 880.
878	King Alfred compelled to take refuge in a small island; then defeats the Danes, and recovers his kingdom.	Photius, first author of the Greek schism, about 892—Alphonso III., king of Oviedo in Spain, 912.
912	Imperial crown transferred from the French to the German princes — Normans take possession of Neustria.	
921	Battle of Jonquera—Christians of Spain defeated by the Moors.	
939	Battle of Simancas—Moors defeated by the Christians.	Rollo, Norman chieftain, 932.
955	Battle of Mersburg; Hungarians completely defeated by Otho I.	Abderahman, III., king of Cordova, 961—St. Bruno, archbishop of Cologne and statesman, 965—Flodoardus, historian, 966.
971	Tremendous battle of Drista between the Greeks and the Russians.	
972	Fatimites in Egypt.	Fernando Gonzalez, count, sovereign of Castile, 979—Mahomet Almanzor, Saracen general, 998.
987	Capetian kings in France. —Invention of clocks with balance.—Gothic Cathedrals.	
1018	Normans in Italy.	Sylvester II. (Gerbert), pope, 1003.
1022	Invention of the Gamut, or scale of musical notes.	Guy, monk of Arezzo, about 1025.
		Fulbert, bishop of Chartres, 1029.
1030	First conquests of the Seljukian Turks.	
1035	The kingdoms of Castile and Arragon begin.	
1053	Renewal of the Greek schism by Michael Cærularius.	
1066	Battle of Hastings; England conquered by the Normans.	St. Peter Damian, cardinal and doctor, 1072.
1085	Toledo taken from the Saracens.	St. Gregory VII. (Hildebrand), pope 1085—Lanfrancus, archbishop of Canterbury, 1089.
1095	Rise of the kingdom of Portugal.	Rodriguez Diaz de Bivar (El Cid), general, about 1095.

PART V.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1095	Council of Clermont—First Crusade.	
1097	Siege of Nice, and battle of Dorylæum.	
1098	Siege of Antioch, and battle of Orontes.	Adhémar de Monteil, bishop of Puy, A.D. 1098.
1099	Siege of Jerusalem, and battle of Ascalon. Kingdom of Jerusalem. Knights Hospitallers of St. John.	Urban II, pope, 1099.—St. Bruno, founder of the Carthusian Order, 1101.—Raymond, count of Toulouse, 1105.—Robert, earl of Flanders; and Bohemond, Prince of Tarentum and Antioch, 1111.—Tancred, warrior, 1112.—Peter the Hermit, 1115.—Robert, duke of Normandy, 1134.
1118	Knights-Templars.	
1147	Second Crusade.	
1169	British enter Ireland.	
1170	Military order of St. James.	
1187	The Christians defeated by Saladin in the battle of Tiberias. Fall of the Kingdom of Jerusalem.	William of Malmesbury, historian, towards 1150.—Suger, abbot of St. Denis, 1152.—St. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux, 1153.
1188	Third Crusade.	Nouradin, conqueror, 1174.—Alexander III., pope, 1181.—William, archbishop of Tyre, historian, about 1191.—Saladin, conqueror, 1193.—Dandolo, doge of Venice, 1205.—Averroes, Arabian philosopher, 1206.
1190	Teutonic Order.	
1196	Fourth Crusade.	
1200	Fifth Crusade.	
1204	Latin empire of Constantinople.	
1212	Prodigious victory of the Christians of Spain over the Moors at Murandal.	Maimonides, Jewish rabbi, 1209.
1214	Battle of Bouvines, in which Philip Augustus conquers all his enemies.	Villehardouin, historian, 1212. Innocent III., pope, 1216.
1217	Sixth Crusade.	Simon de Montfort, general, 1218.
1220	Battle of the Jaxartes, between Genghis-Khan and Sultan Mohammed.	St. Dominic, founder of the Dominicans, 1221. St. Francis of Assisium, founder of the Franciscans, 1226. Genghis Khan, Mogul conqueror, 1227.
1230	Opposite parties of the Guelfs and Ghibelines in Italy.—Mariner's compass, invented some time before, began to be used.	
1248	Seventh Crusade.	
1250	Captivity of St. Louis.	Blanche of Castile, queen, 1252.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1258	Bagdad taken by the Moguls; end of the Arabian Caliphate.	Matthew Paris, historian, 1259
1261	Fall of the Latin Empire of Constantinople.	
1268	Eighth and last Crusade.	
1270	Death of St. Louis.	

PART VI.

1291	Final overthrow of the Christian power in Syria —Invention of gunpowder about this time;—also, according to many, of the magnifying glass and spectacles.	St. Thomas Aquinas and St. Bonaventure, doctors of the Church, 1274. Charles of Anjou, conqueror of Naples and Sicily, 1285. Roger Bacon, mathematician, astronomer, etc., 1294.
1300	Rise of the Ottoman Empire.	
1308	Commencement of Swiss independence.	
	Conquest of Rhodes by the Knights of St. John.	
1312	Suppression of the Knights Templars.	
1313	Battle of Bannockburn, in which the Scots signally defeated the English.	
1315	Battle of Morgarten, which secured the independence of Switzerland.	Joinville, historian, 1318—Dante poet, 1321—Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, 1329.
1340	Awful and complete overthrow of the Moors at Tarifa.	
1348	Universal and dreadful pestilence.	
1340	Battles of Sluys,	Won by the English.
1346	Crécy, Nevil's Cross,	
1356	Poitiers,	
1367	Navarrete	
1372	English fleet destroyed by the Spaniards near La Rochelle.	
1396	Signal defeat of the Christians, at Nicopolis.	Petrarch, poet, 1374—Edward, prince of Wales, 1377—Bertrand du Guesclin, general, 1380.
1397	Treaty of Calmar for the union of Denmark, Sweden and Norway.	
1402	Tremendous battle of Ancyra between Sultan Bajazet I. and Tamerlane.	Tamerlane, the Tartar conqueror, 1405.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1429	Siege of Orleans.	Margaret, queen of Sweden and Denmark, 1412.
1440	Invention of the art of printing.	
1450-1453	The English defeated at Fourmigny and Chatillon — Lose their possessions in France.	Joan of Arc, the maid of Orleans, 1431.
1453	Fall of Constantinople.	Hunyadis, general, 1456.
1456	Siege of Belgrade—Mahomet repulsed with great loss.	Scanderbeg, prince of Albania, 1467.
1461	Destruction of the empire of Trebizond.	Guttenberg, Faust, Shœffer, first printers.
1480	First siege of Rhodes.	Thomas à Kempis, 1471.
1492	Extinction of the power of the Moors in Spain.	Warwick, general, 1471—Margaret of Anjou, queen of England, 1482.
		Matthias Corvinus, king of Hungary, 1490.

PART VII.

1492	Discovery of America.	Picus, prince of Mirandola, 1494—Peter d'Aubusson, grand-master of the Order of St. John, 1503—Christopher Columbus, 1506—Gonzalez of Cordova, general, 1512—Bramante, architect, 1514—Albuquerque the Great, conqueror of the East Indies, 1515—Ximenes, cardinal and statesman, 1517—Magellan, 1520—Leo X (Medicis) Pope, 1521—Emmanuel the Great, King of Portugal, 1521, Bayard, warrior, 1524—Vasco da Gama, 1525.
1497	Discovery of the Northern American continent.	
1497	Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope.	
1509	League of Cambray.	
1515	Battle of Marignano.	
1517	The Protestant Reformation.	
1517	Egypt subdued by the Turks.	
1519	First circumnavigation of the globe.	
1521	Conquest of Mexico.	
1522	Second siege of Rhodes.	
1525	Battle of Pavia; Francis I. taken prisoner.	
1529	First siege of Vienna by the Turks.	
1530	Malta ceded to the Knights of St. John.	
1531	Conquest of Peru.	
1534		
1534	England separates from the See of Rome.	Zuinglius, 1531—Ariosto, poet, 1533—Wolsey, cardinal, statesman, 1533—Villiers d'Isle Adam, grand-master of the Order of St. John, 1534—Cajetan, cardinal, divine, 1534—Fisher, bishop of Rochester, and Thomas More, chancellor, 1535—Erasmus, divine, 1536—Garcilaso de la Vega, poet, 1536—Guicciardini, historian, 1540.
1534	Foundation of the Order of the Jesuits.	

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1545	Opening of the Council of Trent, the last but one general council.	Francis Pizarro, conqueror, 1541—Copernicus, astronomer, 1543—Luther, 1546—Hernando Cortez, conqueror, 1547—St. Francis Xavier, the apostle of East Indies and Japan, 1552—St. Ignatius of Loyola, founder of the society of Jesus, 1556—Pole, cardinal, 1558—Julius Scaliger, physician, philosopher, etc., 1559—Cranmer, 1556—Robert Stephen, printer, 1559—Calvin, 1564.
1556	Abdication of Charles V.	
1557	The French defeated by the Spaniards, at St. Quentin.	
1558	The French recover Calais from the English.	
1565	Siege of Malta.	Michael Angelo, painter and architect, 1564—Vida, poet, 1566—John la Valette, grand-master of St. John, 1568—S. Pius V., pope, 1572—D. Juan of Austria, general, 1578—Camoëns, poet, 1579—Ferdinand Alvarez, duke of Alva, general, 1582—St. Teresa, foundress of the Carmelites, 1582—St. Charles Borromeo, archbishop of Milan, 1584—Gregory XIII., pope, 1585—F. Louis Granada, divine, 1588—Sixtus V., pope, 1590. Alexander Farnese, duke of Parma, general, 1592—Tasso, poet, 1595—Drake, admiral, 1596.
1571	Battle of Lepanto.	
1572	Massacre of St. Bartholomew's day.	
1580	Portugal annexed to Spain.	
1581	Republic of Holland proclaimed.	
1582	Reformation of the Calendar.	
1587	Unjust execution of Mary Stuart, queen of Scotland.	Tycho-Brahe, astronomer, 1601—Baronius, cardinal, historian, 1607—Joseph Scaliger, historian, poet, etc., 1609—Casaubon, historian, divine, etc., 1614—F. Alfonso Rodriguez, divine, 1616—Shakspeare, dramatic poet, 1616—Cervantes, Spanish writer, about the same time—Suarez, divine, 1617—Duperron, cardinal, controversialist, 1618—Bellarmine, cardinal, controversialist, 1621—St. Francis de Sales, founder of the Visitation, 1622—Mariana, historian, 1624. Herrera, historian, 1625—Bacon, philosopher, jurist, 1626.
1588	Defeat of the Spanish Armada.	
1590	Invention of the telescope by Jansen.	
1610 / 1620	Invention of the thermometer and the microscope by Drebbel.	
1626	Invention of the barometer by Torricelli.	
1607 / 1608	Beginning of the English and French settlements in North America.	
1613	Foundation of New Amsterdam, or New York.	
1630	Foundation of Boston.	

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1634	Foundation of the colony of Maryland.	
1648	Treaty of Westphalia.	Kepler, astronomer, 1630—Spinola, general, 1630—Tilly, general, 1632—Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, 1632—Walstein, general 1634.
1649	King Charles I. beheaded.—Commonwealth in England.	Cornelius à Lapide, divine, 1637—Jansenius, 1638—Rubens, painter, 1640—Sully, statesman, 1641—Richelieu, cardinal, statesman, 1642—Galileo, astronomer, 1642—Bentivoglio, historian, 1644—Grotius, civilian, divine, 1645—Gerard Vossius, historian, 1649—Descartes, metaphysician, philosopher, 1650—Montrose, general, 1650—Petavius, divine, historian, etc., 1652—Van-Tromp, admiral, 1653—Usher, historian, 1655—Gassendi, mathematician, philosopher, 1655—Blake, admiral, 1657—Harvey, physician, 1657—St. Vincent de Paul, founder of the Lazarists, and of the Sisters of Charity, 1660—Mazarin, cardinal, statesman, 1661—Pascal, mathematician, etc., 1662—Bollandus, historian, 1665—Anne of Austria, queen, 1666—Molière, dramatist, 1673—Milton, poet, 1674—Turenne, general, 1675—Kiuperli, general and statesman, 1676—Ruyter, admiral, 1676—Monk, general, 1679—Montecuculli, general, 1680—Bernini, architect and sculptor, 1680—Colbert, statesman, 1683—Corneille, dramatist, 1684—Prince of Condé, general, 1686—Solis, historian, 1686—Isaac Vossius, historian and philosopher, 1688—Ducange, historian, 1688—Duquesne, admiral, 1688, —Lebrun, painter, 1690—Charles, duke of Lorraine, general, 1690—Boyle, philosopher and divine, 1691.
1658	Battle of Dunes.	
1659	Treaty of Pyrenees between France and Spain.	
1669	Conquest of Candia by the Turks.	
1672	Invasion of Holland by the French.	
1674	Battle of Senef.	
1674–1675	Brilliant campaigns of Turenne in Alsace and Germany.	
1676	Sea-fights near Messina between the French and the Dutch.	
1679	Peace of Nimeguen.	
1680	Foundation of Charleston.	
1682	Foundation of Philadelphia.	
1683	Second siege of Vienna; Turks repelled with immense loss.	
1685	Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.	
1686	League of Augsburg.	
1688	Revolution in England.	
1690	Battle of Boyne in Ireland.	
1690–1692	Naval battles of La Manche and La Hogue; French victorious in the first, defeated in the second.	
1692–1693	Splendid victories of Marshal Luxembourg over the allies at Steinkirk and Nerwinde.	

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1697	Peace of Ryswick between France, England, Germany and Spain.	Puffendorf, civilian, 1694—Arnauld, controvertist, 1694.
1697	Decisive battle of Zenta in favor of the Austrians against the Turks.	Tillotson, orator, 1694 — Huygens, mathematician, astronomer, 1695—Nicole, controversialist, 1695—Thomassin, divine, 1695—Luxembourg, general, 1695—La Fontaine, poet, 1695—Domat, civilian, 1696—Madame de Sévigné, 1696—Sobieski, king of Poland, 1696—Tillemont, historian, 1698—D'Orleans, historian, 1698—Racine, dramatist, 1699.
1699	Peace of Carolowitz, between the Ottoman Porte, Austria, Venice and Poland.	
1700	Eight thousand Swedes defeat eighty thousand Muscovites near Narva.	Tourville, admiral, 1701—Dryden, poet, 1701.
1701	War for the succession of Spain.	Bossuet, bishop of Meaux, 1704—Bourdaloue, orator and divine, 1704—Locke, philosopher, 1704—Bayle, 1706—Marshal Vauban, 1707—Aurengzeb, Mogul emperor, 1707—Mabillon, historian, divine, etc., 1707—Flechier, bishop of Nismes, 1710—Boileau, poet, 1711—Dominic Cassini, astronomer, 1712—Malebranche, philosopher, metaphysician, 1715—Fenelon, archbishop of Cambray, 1715.
1704	The French and their allies defeated at Hochstadt.	
1706	.....Ramilies and Turin.	
1708	.....Oudenarde.	
1709	.....Malplaquet.	
1707	Victorious at Almanza.	
1710	..... Villa-Viciosa.	
1712	.....Denain.	
1713	Peace of Utrecht.	
1715	Regency of the Duke of Orleans.	
1716	Turks signally defeated at Peterwaradin and	Leibnitz, mathematician, divine, etc., 1716—Charles XII., king of Sweden, 1718 — Addison, poet, etc., 1719—Madame de Maintenon, 1719 — Marlborough, general, 1722—Kang Hi, Chinese emperor, 1722—Prideaux, historian, 1724—Newton, astronomer, 1727—Daniel, historian, 1728—Scheffmacher, controversialist, 1733 — Villars, general, 1734—Ferreras, historian, 1735 Prince Eugene of Savoy, general, 1736—Boerhaave, physician, 1738—Polignac, divine and statesman, 1739.
1717	Belgrade by prince Eugene of Savoy.	
1718	Treaty of Passarowitz.	
1734	Naples and Sicily gained to the house of Bourbon.	
1736	Voyages of the French mathematicians to the North and to the Equator, for the purpose of ascertaining the true figure of the earth.	
1739	Capture and plunder of Delhi, by Thamas Kouli Khan.	
1740	War for the succession of Austria.	Rollin, historian, 1741—J. B. Rousseau, poet, 1741—Montfaucon, historian and divine, 1741—Halley, astronomer, 1742
1745	Battle of Fontenoy.	
1746	The Pretender in England and Scotland.	

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1748	Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.	—Massillon, bishop of Clermont, 1743—Pope, poet, 1744—Thamas Kouli Khan, the Persian conqueror, 1747—Bernouilli, mathematician, 1748—Thomson, poet, 1748—Count Saxe, general, 1750—Calmet, divine, 1757—Benedict XIV., pope, 1758—Wolf, Montcalm, generals, 1759.
1752	Identity of lightning and electricity ascertained by Franklin, at Philadelphia.	
	About the same time, invention of the achromatic telescope.	
1755	Lisbon laid in ruins by an earthquake.	
1757	The French are defeated at Rosbach.	
1759 } 1760 }	The French lose Quebec and all Canada.	Clairaut, mathematician, 1765.
1765	Stamp act, the first cause of the American revolution.	Goldsmith, historian, poet, etc., 1776—Hume, 1776—William Pitt, Lord Chatham, statesman, 1778—Lebeau, historian, 1778—Voltaire—J. J. Rousseau, 1778—Linnæus, naturalist, 1778—Warburton, divine, 1779—Cook, the navigator, 1779—Maria Theresa, empress, 1780—Blackstone, civilian, 1780—Alban Butler, biographer, 1782—Berthier, historian, divine, 1782—Euler, mathematician, 1783.
1775	Battles of Lexington and Bunker-Hill.	
1776	Declaration of Independence.	
1777	Surrender of Burgoyne.	
1781	Surrender of Cornwallis.	
1783	Treaty of Paris or Versailles. British troops evacuate New York—General Washington resigns his commission into the hands of Congress.	

PART VIII.

1783	Balloons invented by Montgolfier.	
	During the following years of this and the next century, great progress of the *natural* sciences, chemistry, mineralogy, geology, natural history; invention of railroads, steamboats, etc.	Dr. Johnson, 1784—Greene, general, 1786.
1787	Formation of the Federal Constitution of the United States.	
1789	Federal government carried into operation—Washington unanimously elected president.	Buffon, naturalist, 1788. Franklin, philosopher and statesman, 1790—Bergier, divine, 1790—Laudon, general, 1790—Romanzow, general, 1790.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1787–1793	Turkey and Poland humbled and almost prostrated by the arms of the Russians.	
1789–1792	French revolution—Persecution against the clergy and nobles—Emigration.	
1792	Battles of Jemmapes and Valmy; the Austrians and Prussians repelled from the French territory.	Rodney, admiral, 1792—Mozart, musical composer, 1792—Robertson, historian, 1793—Gibbon, 1794—Lavoisier, chemist, 1794.
1793	Death of Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette on a scaffold.	
1793	The first general coalition against France.	
1794	Battle of Fleurus—Fall of the tyrant Robespierre.	
1795	Total dismemberment of Poland—Holland conquered by the French—The Directory—Rise of Napoleon Bonaparte.	
1796–1797	Brilliant campaign of Bonaparte in Italy—Victories of Lodi, Arcola, Rivoli—Capture of Mantua—Treaty of Campo-Formio—Extinction of the Venetian republic.	Wayne, general, 1796—Burke, statesman, 1797.
1798	Ecclesiastical State occupied by the French—Pope Pius VI. dragged into captivity and exile.	
	Second coalition against France.	
	Expedition of Bonaparte in Egypt—Battles of the Pyramids and Aboukir.	
1799	Bonaparte, on his return to Paris, becomes the head of government under the title of Consul—Kingdom of Naples subdued by the French, who are soon after driven from Italy by Suwarrow.	Pius VI., pope, 1799—Washington, first president of the United States, 1799—Patrick Henry, statesman, 1799—Saussure, naturalist, 1799.
1800	Election of a new pope—Sitting of the American Congress at Washington	Suwarrow, general, 1800—Blair, rhetorician, 1800.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
	for the first time—Invention of the Galvanic battery—Battle of Marengo—Exploits of General Moreau in Germany—Malta surrenders to the English.	
1801	French evacuate Egypt—Peace of Lunéville between France and Austria.	
1802	Treaty of Amiens between England and France—Re-establishment of the Catholic worship in France, in virtue of a concordat passed the year before.	Feller, biographer, 1802—O'Leary, controversialist, 1802—Gerdil, cardinal, metaphysician, divine, etc., 1802.
1803	San-Domingo entirely lost to the French—Republic of Hayti.	Pichegru, general, 1804—Priestley, chemist, 1804.
1804	Napoleon crowned emperor.	
1805	Third coalition—French and Spanish fleets destroyed at Trafalgar by Admiral Nelson.	
	Signal victories of the French.	Nelson, admiral, 1805.
1805	At Austerlitz, over the Austrians.	William Pitt, the younger, and Charles J. Fox, orators and statesmen, 1806—Walker, 1807—Lalande, astronomer, 1807.
1806	...Jena, over the Prussians.	
1807	...Friedland, over the Russians.	
1807	Treaty of Tilsit.	
1807 } 1808 }	Invasion of Portugal and Spain by the French—Their defeat at Baylen—Siege of Saragossa.	Haydn, musical composer, 1809.
1809	Fourth coalition—Prodigious efforts of the Austrians rendered unavailable by the courage and activity of Napoleon—Battle of Wagram terminates the war—Peace of Vienna—Attempt of the French emperor on the Ecclesiastical State—Pope and cardinals persecuted.	Lannes, general, 1809.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1812	America declares war against England—Disastrous campaign of Napoleon in Russia.	
1813	Fifth coalition — Campaign of Saxony—French victorious at Lutzen, Bautzen and Dresden, are entirely defeated at Leipsic, and lose all their conquests in Germany — Driven also from Spain by Wellington; battle of Vittoria—A British flotilla on Lake Erie all captured by the Americans.	Koutousoff, general, 1813—Moreau, general, 1813—Prince Poniatowski, 1813.
1814	New defeat of the English on Lake Champlain—Victorious at Washington, they are foiled in their attempt on Baltimore.	
	Allies enter France—Abdication of Napoleon.	
1815	Second American war closed by the signal victory of New Orleans.	Berthier, general, 1815—Ney, general, 1815—Murat, king of Naples, 1815—Robert Fulton, the inventor of steamboats, 1815.
	Return of Napoleon from Elba—Sixth coalition against France—Decisive battle of Waterloo, which prostrates the power of the French emperor—His second fall, and exile to St. Helena.	John Carroll, first archbishop of Baltimore, 1815.
		Sheridan, orator and poet, 1816.
1816	Independence of Buenos-Ayres.	Kosciusko, general, 1817—Massena, general, 1817 — Blucher general, 1819—Count Stolberg, historian, controversialist, 1819—Count de Maistre, statesman, controversialist, 1821 — Napoleon Bonaparte, the fallen emperor of the French, 1821 — Castlereagh, statesman, 1822 — Herschel, astronomer, 1822—Pius VII., pope, 1823.
1818	Independence of Chili.	
1820	.....Columbia.	
1820	.....Boliva.	
1824	.....Peru.	
	.....Mexico.	
1820	Discovery of Electro-Magnetism.	
1823	Civil war in Spain—Successful exertions of the French in favor of Ferdinand VII.	
		Milner, controversialist, 1826.
1827	Naval battle of Navarino, which secured the independence of Greece.	Fifty years exactly after the declaration of independence, Thomas Jefferson and John

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
		Adams, its chief supporters in Congress, die both on the fourth of July, 1826—Laplace, astronomer, 1827 — Davy, chemist, 1829.
1829	Emancipation of the British Catholics.	
1830	Conquest of Algiers by the French—Revolution of July.	Bolivar, general, 1830—Cuvier, naturalist, 1832—Lafayette, general, 1834—Humboldt, geographer, 1835 — Marshall, chief justice, historian, 1835—Bowditch, astronomer, 1838—Talleyrand, statesman, 1838—Moehler, controversialist, 1838.
1833	New disturbances in Spain after the death of Ferdinand VII.	
1836	Formation of the Republic of Texas.	
1840	Intervention of England, Russia, Austria and Prussia, in favor of the Turkish sultan against the encroachments of the pacha of Egypt.	
1840–1842	War between China and G. Britain terminates to the advantage of the English.	
1843	Fall of the Regent of Spain, Espartero.	John England, bishop of Charleston, 1842.
1844	Petition for the annexation of Texas laid before the American Congress.	Bernadotte, king of Sweden, 1844—Cardinal Pacca, statesman, historian, 1844—Thorwalsden, sculptor.
1845	Annexation of Texas.	Jackson, general, and former president of the United States, 1845.
1846–1847	Mexican War—Victories of the Americans at Monterey, Buena Vista, Churubusco, etc.—Capture of Vera Cruz and Mexico.	
		O'Connell, statesman and orator, 1847.
1848	Peace between Mexico and the United States.	Vico, astronomer, 1848.
		Berzelius, chemist.
	Great disturbances in Europe, especially in France, Italy, and Germany.	Chateaubriand, prose writer and statesman.
	France, a Republic.	
1849	Signal victories of the Austrians in Italy and Hungary.	
	Intervention in the affairs of Rome—The factions conquered by the French—Restoration of the Papal government.	
1850	Return of Pope Pius IX to Rome.	Calhoun, statesman, 1850.
		Wordsworth, poet.
1851	*Coup d'état* of Louis Napoleon—End of the French republic.	Taylor, general, and president of the United States.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1854	War between the Russians and the Turks—England and France declare against Russia. Battles of Alma, Balaklava and Inkerman.	Louis Philippe, ex-King of the French. Lingard, historian, 1851—Duke of Wellington, 1852—Thomas Moore, poet—Daniel Webster, statesman and orator—Pugin, architect—Arago, astronomer, 1853.
1855	Capture of Sebastopol.	
1856	The vice-roy of Egypt authorizes the opening of a canal from Pelusium to Suez.—Oude annexed to British India.	
1857	Dreadful mutiny of the Sepoys in India.	Cavaignac, general, 1857—Cauchy, mathematician—Radetzky, general, 1858—Ravignan, orator, divine.
1858	Commercial treaty between Japan and the United States.	
1859	War and revolutions in Italy—Battles of Magenta and Solferino—Peace of Villafranca.	Hallam, historian, 1859. Irving, writer—Prescott, historian.
1860	Savoy and Nice annexed to France—Treaty of peace between Spain and Morocco, and also between France and England, and the Chinese emperor—Battle of Castelfidardo.	Hurter, historian, 1860. Macaulay, essayist, historian.
1861	Bombardment of Fort Sumter—Civil war in the U. States—Victor Emmanuel proclaimed King of Italy—Expedition of the English, French and Spaniards against Mexico—Decree of the Czar emancipating the serfs in Russia—City of Mendoza in the Argentine Confederation entirely destroyed by an earthquake.	Count Cavour, statesman, 1861. Lacordaire, orator and divine.
1862	Revolution in Greece—King Otho's abdication—Surrender of New Orleans—Battle of Antietam—Treaty of Saïgon between France and the emperor of Annam.	Nesselrode, statesman, 1862. Knowles, dramatist—Scheffer, poet.
1863	Proclamation of the President emancipating the slaves in the United	Kenrick, archbishop of Baltimore, 1863—Meyerbeer, composer.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
	States—Battle of Gettysburg — Surrender of Vicksburg — Insurrection in Poland and destruction of the last remnants of her nationality —Ionian Islands annexed to the Kingdom of Greece—Prince George of Denmark inaugurated King of Greece.	Delacroix, painter—Vernet, painter.
1864	War in Schleswig-Holstein—Emperor Maximilian at Mexico—Capture of Atlanta and Savannah.	Taney, chief-justice of the United States, 1864—Hughes, archbishop of New York—Silliman, chemist—Pelissier, general—Wiseman, cardinal, orator and divine, 1865—Lord Palmerston, statesman—Leopold I., first King of Belgium —Lamoricière, general.
1865	Surrender of Gen. Lee—Close of the civil war in the United States—Assassination of President Lincoln—Paraguay at war against Brazil, the Argentine Confederation and Uraguay.	
1866	Chili and Peru declare war against Spain—Prussia and Italy at war with Austria—Germany overrun by the Prussians—Battles of Custozza, Sadowa and Lissa—Annexation of several German provinces to Prussia and also of Venetia to the Kingdom of Italy—Submarine electric telegraph across the Atlantic—Famine in India.	Scott, general of the U. S. army, 1864—Delaroche, painter.
1867	Confederacy of the British Provinces of America—Russian America purchased by the United States—The emperor Maximilian made prisoner by Juarez and executed.	Cousin, philosopher, 1867.
1868	President Johnson impeached — Insurrection in Spain.	Lord Brougham—Rossini.
1869	Suez Canal opened—Irish Church Disestablishment Act passed.	Lamartine—Sainte-Beuve.

A. D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1870	The Vatican Council adopts the dogma of the infallibility of the Pope —France declares war against Prussia—Battle of Sedan.	Charles Dickens—General R. E. Lee—Alexander Dumas.
1871	Capitulation of Paris—Restoration of the German Empire—Peace of Frankfort.	Sir John Herschel, astronomer.
1872	Great eruption of Mt. Vesuvius.	Archbishop Spalding—H. Greeley, journalist.
1873	England pays the Alabama indemnity.	Dr. Livingstone, explorer—Agassiz, scientist—Thierry, historian,—Napoleon III.
1874	*Coup d'état* at Madrid.	Guizot, historian—Chas. Sumner, statesman.
1875	Arctic expedition—*Alert* and *Discovery* sail from Portsmouth.	
1876	Centennial exhibition of the United States at Philadelphia.	Harriet Martineau, authoress.
1877	Great railroad strike in the United States—Russia declares war against Turkey.	Motley, historian—Semmes, admiral—Thiers, statesman and historian.
1878	Paris international exhibition—Meeting of the Congress of Berlin.	Pius IX.—Bryant, poet—Victor Emmanuel.
1879	Zulus defeat English forces in South Africa.	Marshall Von Roon.
1880	Work of tunneling Mont St. Gothard completed.	George Eliot, novelist.
1881	Alexander II. of Russia assassinated—President Garfield shot.	Carlyle, author—President Garfield.
1882	Alexandria bombarded by the British fleet—Arabi Pasha defeated by Gen. Wolseley at Tel-el-kebir.	Longfellow, poet—Darwin, scientist—Emerson, poet and essayist.
1883	Great floods in the valley of the Rhine—Vienna inundated.	Gustave Doré, painter—Wagner, composer—Louis Veuillot, journalist.
1884	Christians captured in the Soudan, Gen. Gordon and 3500 people massacred.	
1885	British victory at Abu Klea in the Soudan—Withdrawal of British troops from the Soudan.	Victor Hugo, author—Ex-President U. S. Grant—Cardinal Schwarzenberg.

A.D.	MEMORABLE EVENTS.	REMARKABLE PERSONAGES.
1886	Archbishop Gibbons of Baltimore raised to the cardinalate—Ludwig II. King of Bavaria, commits suicide by drowning himself in Starnberg lake.	Von Ranke, historian — A. J. Ryan, poet, priest — Cardinal Jacobini.—Samuel J. Tilden, American statesman.
1887	Leo XIII. celebrates the fiftieth anniversary of his ordination to the priesthood.—End of Kulturkampf in Germany. — Kiel and Manchester canals begun. — Italians defeated by Abyssinians at Massowah.	H. W. Beecher, pulpit orator—Henry Stafford Northcote, Lord Iddesleigh. Kraszewski, Polish writer.—Kirchoff, German scientist.
1888	Boulangist agitation in France. — Slavery abolished in Brazil. Soudanese under Osman Digna defeated near Suakin.—Stanley finds Emin Pasha on Lake Albert Nyanza.	William I. and Frederick I. Emperors of Germany.—Gen. P. H. Sheridan, American soldier. —Asa Gray, American botanist. —Matthew Arnold, English poet.
1889	Boulanger, tried and condemned, flees to Belgium.—Military revolution in Brazil; empire overthrown and republic established.—Parliamentary government established in Japan.—International exposition in Paris.—Johnstown, Pa., destroyed by flood.—Centennial of U. S. Catholic Hierarchy and Catholic Congress in Baltimore; Catholic University, Washington, opened.	Louis, King of Portugal.—John, King of Abyssinia, killed in battle. — Ericsson, American naval engineer.—Jefferson Davis. — John Bright, English statesman.—Robert Browning, English poet.—M. E. Chevreul, French chemist. — Emile Augier, French dramatist.
1890	Bismarck deposed from chancellorship of German Empire.—Fall of Parnell; Irish party split.—Unsuccessful insurrection in Buenos Ayres. — Completion of new Croton Aqueduct in New York and Forth railway bridge in Scotland.	Sitting Bull, Sioux chief, killed. —Willian III., King of Holland. —Dr. Döllinger, Church historian and apostate to Old Catholicism.—Count Andrassy, Austro-Hungarian statesman. —Marquis Tseng, Chinese diplomatist.—Gen. J. C. Fremont, American explorer.—H. Schliemann, German archæologist.—Cardinal Newman, the famous English convert.
1891	Indian uprising in Northwest quelled by Gen.	Charles Stewart Parnell, Irish political leader.—Dom Pedro II.,

	Miles.—Italians lynched in New Orleans.—Osman Digna completely defeated at Suakin.—Civil war in Chili; President Balmaceda, overthrown, commits suicide; murderous assault on American seamen in Valparaiso.—Constitution of the United States of Brazil promulgated; revolts in Rio Janeiro and Rio Grande do Sul.—Famine in Russia. — Trans-Siberian railway begun.	ex-emperor of Brazil.—Field-Marshal von Moltke, German strategist. — Jules Grévy, ex-President of France.—Prince Napoleon Bonaparte, philologist and chemist.—J. L. E. Meissonnier, French painter.—Earl Lytton, English statesman.—Gen. W. T. Sherman, American soldier.—Gen. J. E. Johnston, American Confederate officer.—George Bancroft, American historian.—J. R. Lowell, American poet.—General Boulanger, by suicide.—Sir J. A. MacDonald, Canadian statesman.
1892	Behring sea arbitration between England and Russia.—Panama canal scandal in France.—French war in Dahomey.—Lieut. Peary crosses great ice cap of Greenland.	Tewfik Pasha, Khedive of Egypt.—Alfred Tennyson, English poet-laureate.—E. A. Freeman, English historian.—E. W. Siemens, German physicist. — Cardinal Lavigerie, African missionary.—E. Renan, French anti-Christian writer. —J. G. Whittier, American poet. — Cardinal Manning, Archbishop of Westminster.
1893	Great World's Fair and Catholic Congress in Chicago.—Permanent papal delegation to United States established.—Revolution in Hawaii.—Great financial panic in United States. — Gladstone's second Irish Home rule bill defeated in House of Lords.—English conquest of Matabeleland in Africa.—Revolt of navy and provincial insurrections in Brazil.	Marshal MacMahon, Ex-President of France.—H. A. Taine, French historian, etc.—Gounod, French composer.—John Tyndall, British physicist. — Charles Merivale, English historian.—Benjamin Jowett, English scholar.—Francis Parkman, American historian.—James G. Blaine, American statesman. — Jules Ferry, French politician.
1894	Great railroad strikes in Chicago, California, etc.—Gladstone resigns premiership. — Hungarian Diet passes Civil Marriage bill.—War between China and Japan over Corea; the latter victorious. — Insurrection in Philippines against	Alexander III., Czar of Russia.—President Carnot of France, assassinated. — Muley Hassan, emperor of Morocco.—Louis Kossuth, Hungarian patriot and exile. — Count de Paris, French pretender.—Sir A. H. Layard, English archæologist.—H. K. Brugsch, German Egyptologist.—O. W. Holmes, Amer-

	Spain.—Manchester and Kiel canals opened.	
1895	End of China-Japan war.—Massacres of Christians by Mohammedans in Armenia.—Last rebellion in Cuba against Spain. — Interference of United States in dispute between England and Venezuela. — French conquest of Madagascar.—Nansen's famous North Pole Expedition. — Discovery of Argon and of Röntgen rays.	
1896	Jameson raid into Transvaal.—British again conquer Ashantee.—General Kitchener begins his expedition against the Soudanese.—Rebellion of Christians in Crete. — Italians overwhelmed by Abyssinians in battle of Adowa.—Fall of Crispi, Italian premier.—Millennial Exposition at Buda Pesth.	Nasr-ed-Din, Shah of Persia, assassinated.—J. E. Millet and F. Leighton, English painters.—W. R. Grove, English scholar.—W. Morris, English poet.—E. Curtius, German historian.—E. Du Bois-Reymond, German physiologist. — L. J. Trochu, French general.
1897	Formation of the Municipality of Greater New York.—Greece wages unsuccessful war against Turkey about Crete.—Queen Victoria's Diamond Jubilee.-Germany occupies Kiao-Chow in China.—Discovery of gold in the Klondike region.	Canovas del Castillo, Spanish premier, assassinated.—J. Brahms, German composer.—Jean Ingelow, English poet. — Sir John Gilbert, Irish antiquarian.—Henry George, American agitator.
1898	Destruction of United States battleship *Maine* in Havana harbor, subsequent war between United States and Spain. Liberation of Cuba, acquisition by United States of Porto Rico and Philippine Islands.—Hawaiian Islands annexed by United States.—Soudanese overwhelmed in battle of Omdurman.—Turkey compelled to evacu-	Prince Bismarck, German statesman.—W. E. Gladstone, English statesman.—Sir H. Bessemer, steel manufacturer and inventor.—Sir E. Burne-Jones, English painter. — Sir John Fowler, English engineer. — Pierre Puvis de Chavanne, French painter.

	ate Crete.—Russia issues call for peace conference at The Hague.—Revision of Dreyfus case in France.	
1899	Insurrection of Filipinos against United States.—Anglo-Boer war in South Africa. Boer successes.—Marconi's wireless telegraphy first tried successfully.—Russia robs Finland of its ancient liberties.—Peace congress at The Hague.—British Guiana.—Venezuela Commission meets in Paris.	Felix Faure, President of France.—Count von Caprivi, ex-Chancellor of Germany.—William Stubbs, English Anglican prelate and historian.—Emilio Castelar, Spanish orator and politician.—Garret A. Hobart, Vice-President of United States.—O. Mergenthaler, American inventor.—Cardinal Krementz, Archbishop of Cologne.
1900	Boer war continued; British successes; Boer republics annexed by England.—Boxer uprising in China; Christian missionaries and converts massacred; European, American, and Japanese soldiers seize Tien-Tsin and Pekin; Chinese court escapes to Tsingan.—Russia assumes control of Manchuria.—American civil government in Porto Rico.	Humbert I. King of Italy assassinated.—Cardinals D. Jacobini and Mazzella.—John Ruskin, English writer on art. Sir Arthur Sullivan, composer. Lord Charles Russell, Chief Justice of England.—Duke of Argyle, political writer.—Dr. Paul Falk, author of Prussian "May" laws.—Munkacsy, Hungarian painter.—Martinez de Campos, Spanish general.—Osman Pasha, Turkish general.—John Sherman, American statesman.
1901	Nicaragua treaty between United States and England.—Cuban republic organized.—American civil government established in the Philippines.—French Naval demonstration against Turkey.—Rebellions in Colombia and Venezuela.—Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo.—Pan-American Congress in Mexico.—Jacksonville, Florida, destroyed by fire.—General strike of iron and steel workers in United States.	President William McKinley assassinated.—Ex-President Benjamin Harrison.—Queen Victoria.—Ex-King Milan, of Servia.—Li Hung Chang, Chinese statesman.—Prince von Hohenlohe, Ex-Chancellor of Germany.—F. Crispi, Ex-Premier of Italy.—Giuseppe Verdi, Italian composer.—General Gourko, Russian soldier.—Due de Broglie, French Statesman.—Baron Nordenskjold, Arctic explorer.

TABLES OF THE AUTHORS AND WORKS,

CHIEFLY USED IN THE COMPOSITION OF THIS HISTORY.

ALEXANDER (NATALIS): *Historia ecclesiastica,* 8 vols. folio, Paris 1699;—the 6th and 7th vols. have been used.

ANQUETIL: *Histoire de France,* 6 vols. 8vo; or 14 vols. 12mo.

. . . . . *Précis de l'histoire universelle;* Paris edition, 1818, 8 vols. 8vo.

AUGUSTINE (ST.): *De civitate Dei,* 7th vol. of the Benedictine edition, folio and 4to. Paris, 1679 and 1838.

BALDASSARI: *Histoire de l'enlevement et de la captivité de Pie VI.,* translated from the Italian, 1 vol. 8vo.

BANCROFT: *History of the United States,* 3 vols. 8vo. 3d edition, Boston, 1838.

BERAUT-BERCASTEL: *Histoire de l'Eglise,* 12 vols. 8vo. edition of Pélier de Lacroix, Paris, 1830;—Nearly all the volumes have been used, especially the notes of the editor, and *Discours sur le second âge de l'Eglise,* at the end of the 12th vol.

BLETTERIE (LA.): *Histoire de Julien l'Apostat,* 1 vol. 12mo.

. . . *Histoire de l'Empereur Jovien,* 1 vol. 12mo.

BOSSUET: *Discours sur l'histoire universelle,* avec la continuation, 2 vols. 12mo.

BOUGEANT (F.): *Histoire du traité de Westphalie,* 6 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1744; a master-piece in almost every respect.

BUTLER (ALBAN): *Lives of the Fathers, Martyrs, and other principal Saints,* the notes having been particularly useful; London edit. 1756, 4 vols. 8vo., bound in 6—and French edit., translation of Abbé Godescard, 16 vols. 12mo. Lille, 1824.

CAVEYRAC: *Apologie de Louis XIV. et de son Conseil sur la révocation de l'édit de Nantes,* and *Dissertation sur la journée de la St. Barthèlemi;* 1 vol. 8vo.
CLEMENCET: *Art de vérifier les dates,* folio, Paris, 1770.
COYER: *Histoire de Jean Sobieski, roi de Pologne,* 3 vols. 12mo. Warsaw, 1761.
CREVIER: *Histoire des Empereurs Romains,* 12 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1763.
DANIEL (F): *Histoire de France,* 3 vols. folio, Paris, 1713.
. . . . . *Abrégé de l'histoire de France,* 12 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1751.
DESORMEAUX: *Albrégé chronologique de l'histoire d'Espagne,* 5 vols. 12 mo. Paris, 1759. This author, generally exact in the historical part, is frequently wrong and unjust in his remarks.
ESPAGNAC: *Histoire de Maurice, Comte de Saxe,* 2 vols. 12mo. Toulouse, 1789.
EUSEBIUS: *Ecclesiast. History,* translated by C. F. Cruse, 1 vol. 8vo. Philadelphia, 1834; and also, together with the *Life of Constantine the Great,* edit. of Henri de Valois (Greek and Latin), 1 vol. folio, Paris, 1659.
FELLER: *Dictionnaire historique, ou Histoire abrégée des hommes célèbres.* The text of Feller being sometimes altered in the latest editions, those who desire to have it pure and untouched, should have recourse to the more ancient ones; *v.g.* to that of Lyons. 1821, 12 vols. 8vo.
FLECHIER: *Histoire de l'Empereur Théodose-le-grand,* 1 vol. 12mo.
FLEURY: *Histoire Ecclésiastique,* 25 vols. 8vo. Nismes, 1779.
FRANTIN: *Annales du Moyen âge,* 8 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1825.
FROST: *History of the United States,* 1 vol. 12mo. Philadelphia, 1841.
G.*** (M.): *Pouvoir du Pape au moyen âge,* 1 vol. 8vo. Paris, 1839.
GAHAN: *History of the Church,* 1 vol. 12mo.; short, and having some little inaccuracies, yet generally full of sound information.
GREGORY OF TOURS (ST.): *Historiæ Francorum Libri decem,* 1 vol. small 8vo. Paris, 1561.

GUYARD DE BERVILLE: *Histoire de Bertrand Dugueselin,* 2 vols. 12mo.

Histoire de la Révolution Française, 1 vol. 12mo. Paris, 1838.

Histoire de l'Eglise Gallicane, remarkable for soundness of criticism and purity of style; 18 vols. 8vo. Nismes, 1780–81.

Histoire de Venise, 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1839.

Histoire du Bas-Empire (A. M. SS. C. G.): 2 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1838.

Histoire Universelle (translated from the English), 125 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1779. The volumes containing the history of the Arabs, the Tartars, the Ottomans, America, Spain, England, France, and Germany, have been particularly useful.

History of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, 2 vols. 12mo. Cork, 1815.

HURTER: *Histoire du Pape Innocent III.,* translated from the German by Alexandre de St. Chéron, 3 vols, 8vo. Paris, 1838.

IRVING (WASHINGTON): *History of the Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus,* 2 vols. 8vo. New York, 1831.

IRVING (WASHINGTON): *Conquest of Granada,* 2 vols. 12mo. Philadelphia, 1839.

JOSEPHUS, the Jewish historian: last book of his *Antiquities,* and the seven books of his *Jewish War;* English translation of Whitson, or French of Arnaud d'Andilly.

KENT (CHANCELLOR): vol. 1. of his *Commentaries on Law,* 2d edition, 4 vols. 8vo. New York, 1832.

LABBE: *Sacrosancta Concilia,* vols. x and xi.

LACROIX: *Géographie,* 2 vols. 12mo.; too old as a geographical work, yet full of information.

LACTANTIUS: *De morte Persecutorum;* to be found in the end of the 16th and last vol. of the *Lives of the Saints,* Lille, 1824.

LADVOCAT: *Dictionnaire historique,* 2 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1755.

LAHARPE: *Albrégé de l'histoire des voyages,* continued by Baron de Roujoux; 30 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1830.

LEBEAU: *Histoire du Bas-Empire,* 29 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1757. This work, and that of Frantin, mentioned above, although generally excellent and very well written, are not to be implicitly relied on in the remarks

and judgments which they contain about different transactions and personages; their authors having too easily followed the prejudices of their time concerning certain historical points of great importance.

LEBRUN: *Aventures et conquêtes de Fernand Cortez,* 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1839.

. . . *Conquête du Pérou et Histoire de Pizarre,* 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1840.

LEFRANC: *Histoire du Moyen âge,* 1 vol. 12mo.

. . . . . *Histoire Moderne,* 2 vols, 12mo. Lyons, 1840.

. . . . . *Histoire de France,* 2 vols. 12mo. Lyons, 1838.

LENGLET DU FRESNOY: *Tablettes chronologiques de l'histoire universelle,* 2 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1744.

LINGARD: *Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church;* either the London edition, 1810, or the first American edition, Philadelphia.

. . . . . *History of England,* 14 vols. 8vo. London, 1825.

LORIQUET (F.): *Histoire de France,* 2 vols. 12mo.

MAISTRE (COUNT DE): *Du Pape,* 2 vols. 8vo. Lyons, 1819.

. . . . . *Lettres sur l'Inquisition Espagnole,* 1 vol. 8vo. Paris, 1822.

MARLES: *Histoire de Marie Stuart, Reine d'Ecosse,* 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1840.

MARSHALL: *Colonial History,* 1 vol. 8vo. Philadelphia, 1824.

. . . . . *Life of Washington,* 2 vols. 8vo. Philadelphia, 1832.

MARSOLLIER: *Histoire du ministère du Cardinal Ximénès,* 2 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1704.

MICHAUT: *Histoire des Croisades,* 4th edition, 6 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1825.

MIGNOT: *Histoire de l'empire Ottoman,* 1 vol. 4to, or 4 vols. 12mo. 1771.

AME. edit. *Histoire de. l'empereur Charles-Quint,* 1 vol. Tours. 12mo. 1738.

MOORE: *History of Ireland,* 1 vol. 8vo.

MYLIUS: *History of England,* 1 vol. 8vo.

NONNOTTE: *Erreurs de Voltaire,* 2 vols. 12mo. Besançon, 1818.

ORLEANS (F. D'): *Histoire des Révolutions d'Angleterre,* 4 vols. 12mo. Amsterdam, 1766.

. . . . . *Histoire des Révolutions d'Espagne,*

from the best Spanish historians, MARIANA and others; 3 vols. 4to. Paris, 1734.

PACCA: *Mémoires du Cardinal Pacca sur la captivité du Pape Pie VII.*, translated from the Italian, 2 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1833.

PEREFIXE: *Histoire de Henri le Grand, roi de France et de Navarre*, 1 vol. 12mo.

PETAVIUS: *Rationarium Temporum*, 2 vols. 12mo. Paris, 1703.

PROYART: *Vie du Dauphin* (Duke of Burgundy), *père de Louis XV.*, 2 vols. 12mo.

. . . . . *Histoire de Stanislas, roi de Pologne, duc de Lorraine et de Bar*, 1 vol. 12mo.

RAGUENET: *Histoire du Vicomte de Turenne*, 1 vol. 12mo.

ROBERTSON: *History of America*, 2 vols. 4to. London, 1777.

. . . . . *of the reign of the emperor Charles V.* 3 vols. 8vo. 2d American edition, Philadelphia, 1812.

ROSCOE: *The life and pontificate of Leo X.*, 4 vols. 8vo. Philadelphia, 1805.

ROY: *Histoire de Charlemagne*, 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1838.

. . . . . *de Jeane d'Arc*, 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1840.

SADLER: *Lingard's Historg of England continued*, 1 vol. 12mo, Paris, 1836.

SIDONIUS APOLLINARIS: *Epistolæ et Carmina*, edit. Sirmondi, Paris, 1614.

SOCRATES and SOZOMENES, Greek historians, edit. of Henri de Valois, 1 vol. folio, Paris, 1668.

SOLIS: *Conquista de la Nueva Espana*, 1 vol. 4to.

SUETONIUS: *Duodecim Cæsares*, 2 vols. 8vo. which are the 98th and 99th of the Collection of Classics, or *bibliotheca Latina Classica*, Paris, 1828.

SULPITIUS SEVERUS: *Historiæ Sacræ libri duo*, 1 vol. 18mo. edit. of Mercier, Paris, 1659.

TACITUS, the gravest, the most concise, and energetic of historians. 1 vol. 12mo., in the edition of Lallemant —4 vols. 8vo. in the Collection of Classics, from vol. 100 to 104.

TERTULLIAN: *Apologeticus adversùs gentes et de Præscriptionibus adversus hær.;* 1 vol. 8vo. Paris, 1828.

THEODORET, Greek historian, edit. of Henri de Valois, Paris, 1673.

THOMASSIN: *Discipline de l'Eglise,* 3 folios, Paris, 1725; particularly the first book of vol II., ch. xcii–cii.

TILLEMONT (LE NAIN DE): *Histoire des Empereurs,* 6 vols. 4to. Paris, 1690; so learned, and so exact in his continual quotations of ancient authors, that, for the historical parts of which he treats, he can supply the deficiency of all other historians.

VELLEIUS PATERCULUS: *Historiæ libri duo;* 1 vol. 12mo. edit of Abbé Paul, or the 125th vol. 8vo. in the Collection of Classics.

VERTOT: *Histoire des Révolutions de Portugal,* 1 vol. 12mo.

. . . . *des Chevaliers de Malte, abrégée en* 1 vol. 12mo. Tours, 1837.

VOIGT: *Histoire du Pape Grégoire VII.,* translated from the German by Abbé Jager, 2 vols. 8vo. Paris, 1838.

VOLTAIRE: *Histoire de Charles XII.,* 1 vol. 12mo.

WALTER SCOTT: *The life of Napoleon Bonaparte,* 2 vols. 8vo. Exeter, 1839.

WILSON: *History of the American Revolution,* 1 vol. 12mo. Baltimore, 1834.

Many other works have been occasionally resorted to and consulted, which we purposely omit mentioning, because their enumeration would be of little or no utility to the reader.

It is almost superfluous to observe, that several of the authors here mentioned, *v. g.* Roscoe, Walter Scott, Robertson, etc., have been resorted to, *as historians,* but not as politicians or philosophers; and have been followed when they relate well-substantiated facts, but not when they bring forward their own private views and religious prejudices.

THE END.

QUESTIONS

TO

FREDET'S MODERN HISTORY.

N. B. The order and number of the Questions are made to answer exactly the order and number of the paragraphs belonging to each successive page of the volume.

PART I.—*From the Battle of Actium to the Accession of Constantine.*

THE ROMAN EMPIRE.—AUGUSTUS.

PAGE.

1 What were the thoughts of Augustus after the battle of Actium?
Whom did he consult about his future conduct?
What was the opinion of Agrippa?

2 What was the opinion of Mæcenas?
Whose advice did Augustus follow, and under what restrictions?
What were the happy fruits of his government?

3 What blessings did he confer on the various parts of the empire?
What was one of the principal objects of his attention? Who were some of the distinguished literary men in his reign?

4 When and where did Virgil die? What did he command just before his death? What did Augustus do? What was the character of the public administration of Augustus?

5 How did he behave towards private persons?
What specimens did he give of his moderation?

6 What care did he take of his reputation?
What is to be thought of the change in his character and conduct?
What influence had this change on the duration of his power?
In what manner did he receive the title of *Father of his Country?*

7 To what danger was he exposed from secret conspirators?
What were his feelings, when he had detected the conspiracy of Cinna?
How did he act towards Cinna?

8 What was the result of his clemency?
What was the greatest event that took place during the reign of Augustus?
What uncommon circumstance coincided with the birth of our Saviour?
With what dislike did Augustus consider warfare?

PAGE.

9 Was he not however engaged in several wars, and with what success did he conduct them?
What disaster happened to the Roman troops in Germany?
10 What impression was produced on Augustus's mind by the defeat of Varus?
What other subjects of grief did the emperor find in his own family?
What were the chief qualifications of Agrippa?
What intimacy existed between Augustus and Agrippa?
What must be said to the praise of Mæcenas?
11 What must be said to the praise of Drusus?
What must be said to the praise of young Marcellus?
In whom did the emperor now centre his expectation?
12 How did he continue in the cares of government? What was the manner of his death?
What opinion is to be had of the public character of Augustus?
What was, at this period, the number of the Roman citizens, and the population of Rome?
13 Who succeeded Augustus in the imperial dignity?

TIBERIUS.

What inclinations did Tiberius begin to manifest?
How did he take the jest of a certain wag?
14 Was his reign altogether inglorious?
What had happened, by this time, to the legions of Pannonia and Germany? How was the sedition of the former quelled?
15 By what exertions did Germanicus stay the revolt of his troops?
How did they endeavor to atone for their fault?
How were the Germans repeatedly defeated?
What were the feelings of Tiberius at the news of these events?
16 What plan of operations was contrived by Germanicus for the ensuing summer?
How were the remains of the soldiers of Varus found?
What grief did the Roman soldiers experience at this sight?
17 What did the Romans do after they buried the remains of their countrymen? Describe the battle that followed?
What is said of Germanicus?
How did he behave towards his soldiers, and towards the hostile Germans?
18 How did he proceed into the enemy's country?
Describe the battle fought between him and Arminius?
What is said of the victory?
Were the Germans dispirited by their defeat?
19 What happened to the Roman troops on their return?
How did Germanicus repair the disaster of his fleet?
How did he counteract the designs of the Germans?
Why and how was he recalled to Rome?
20 What were the subsequent events in Germany?
What became of Arminius?

PAGE

21 What was the chief desire and aim of Tiberius?
What instances did he afford of his liberality?
22 What was the real bent of his character?
What commission was given to Germanicus, and how did he execute it?
How did Germanicus close his career?
23 What was the grief occasioned by his death?
How did Tiberius act towards Germanicus's enemies, and how did he treat the persons of his own family?
Who was Sejanus; how did he rise in favor, and what was the cause of his subsequent downfall?
24 What events were then accomplished in Judea?
How was the Christian Church founded?
25 How did Tiberius exercise his tyranny?
Where did he retire, and to what excesses did he abandon himself? When and how was his life ended?
What gradation with regard to vice is to be remarked in that emperor?
26 What celebrated authors flourished under Tiberius?

CALIGULA.

Who was Caligula, and in what manner did he begin his reign?
What change took place in the conduct of Caligula?
How did he indulge his prodigality and rapacity?
27 What cruelties and barbarities did he exercise against men?
How partial and kind was he to beasts, especially to his horse?
28 How did he conduct the war against the Germans?
What ridiculous exploits did he perform?
How far did he carry his pride and impiety?
What was the end of his life?
29 What happened in Rome after the assassination of Caligula, and who was proclaimed emperor in his place?

CLAUDIUS.

What was the character of Claudius?
What was the most important event of his reign?
What conquests were achieved by Plautius and Vespasian in Great Britain?
30 Who were left to continue the war in Britain?
How were the Silures subdued by the Romans?
31 How did Caractacus behave himself, and how was he treated in Rome?
What were the other events of Claudius' reign?
By whom was he poisoned?

NERO.

32 Who was Nero, and how did he begin to govern the empire?
What was his real character?
How did he dispose of his young brother Britannicus?
How did he put his mother to death?

PAGE

33 How did he treat his tutors and wives?
Who was sent against the Parthians?
What manner of warfare was adopted by Corbulo?
What was the final result of the Parthian war?
34 What insurrection arose in Great Britain against the Romans?
How did Suetonius Paulinus prepare to check the insurgents?
How did he fight them, and with what success?
35 How did Nero degrade the majesty of the empire?
What were his daily expenses?
36 How far did he carry the luxury of his table, dress, etc.?
By what means did he supply himself with money?
What was the course of his cruelties?
What does Tacitus say of him?
37 Who was commonly believed to have set Rome on fire?
What gave occasion to the first general persecution against the Church, and how were the Christians tormented?
38 Who raised first the standard of insurrection against Nero?
39 How did Nero terminate his life?
What rank does he occupy among wicked princes?

GALBA, OTHO, VITELLIUS.

What was the character and the duration of the reign of Galba?
Who was Otho, and how long did he reign?
40 In what did the chief merit of Vitellius consist?
By whom was Vespasian elected emperor, and who contributed most to his success?
41 How did Antonius Primus open the campaign against the Vitellians?
How did he prepare for a general engagement?
42 What singular circumstances accompanied the battle?
How were the exertions of Primus rendered successful?
How were the Vitellians again defeated?
Describe an attack on the camp?
43 What is said of these victories? of the city of Cremona?
How was Rome taken and entered by the victorious army?
What became of Vitellius?
44 How was he put to death? How many Emperors reigned in the year A.D. 69?

VESPASIAN.

What memorable event took place in the year 70?
When did the Jews revolt against the Romans?
What were the first events of the Jewish revolt?
45 What was the situation, both physical and moral, of Jerusalem?
How long did the siege of Jerusalem last, and how was it conducted?
To what excess of famine were the besieged reduced?
46 To what crimes did this plague give rise, and what was the number of its victims?
By what feelings were the Romans actuated towards the Jews?

PAGE

47 How was fire set to the temple of Jerusalem? Describe its destruction.

What coincidence rendered the burning of the temple more remarkable?

48 How was the reduction of Jerusalem completed, and how many Jews had perished during the siege?

What predictions were fulfilled by the destruction of Jerusalem?

What prodigies had foretold its ruin?

What had taken place in the year which preceded the beginning of hostilities?

What voice was heard issuing from the sanctuary of the temple on the day of Pentecost?

49 What does Josephus relate of a certain countryman who lived at that time?

50 Where did Titus go after the destruction of Jerusalem?

What was done by Vespasian to restore the splendor of the empire?

How did he check luxury and effeminacy?

How did he promote justice, and practise beneficence and kindness?

On what occasion did his usual clemency disappear?

51 Of what other fault is he accused, and with what justice and truth?

In what manner did he close his life?

What is to be remarked of the census taken under Vespasian?

TITUS.

52 Who succeeded Vespasian?

What was the benevolence of Titus?

How did he endeavor to repair public disasters? what was the most dreadful of these calamitous events?

How did Pliny the elder perish?

53 To what dangers was Pliny the younger exposed?

What were the sad effects of the eruption of Mount Vesuvius?

54 How did Titus behave in the midst of these calamities? How long did he reign?

DOMITIAN.

What contrast did there exist between Titus and Domitian?

Who had first to suffer from the suspicious policy of Domitian?

55 What was the success of Domitian's wars?

What was the tyranny of Domitian, and how did he excite the second general persecution against the Christians?

56 What honors did he require? Relate an instance of his love of cruelty?

What fears did he entertain, and by whom was he murdered?

57 With whom can Domitian be justly compared?

Who was chosen emperor after Domitian?

Who succeeded Nerva?

NERVA AND TRAJAN.

PAGE

What did he possess? How did he receive the news of his election? How did he seem to reign?

58 How did he embellish the capital?

How did he live with his people?

In what rank ought he to be placed as a general?

What conquests did he achieve?

59 What reputation did Trajan leave behind him? How did he act towards the Christians? What was his private life?

Who were the chief authors that flourished under his reign, or thereabouts?

What intimacy existed between Tacitus and Pliny the younger?

60 Who, in their time, gained the premium of poetry?

HADRIAN.

Did Hadrian follow the footsteps of his predecessor in everything?

What means did he employ to preserve a constant peace?

How did he revive the strictness of military discipline?

61 What kindness did he show to the soldiers?

What attention did he pay to civil affairs?

What was his conduct towards the senate and the people? What particular instances are recorded of his clemency and regard for truth?

62 Were the talents of Hadrian quite remarkable? What is related of his memory?

To what undertakings did his genius prompt him?

What revolt disturbed the tranquillity of Hadrian's reign?

63 How did the Roman generals fight and prostrate the revolted Jews?

What has been, ever since that time, the situation of the Jews?

How did Hadrian spend the last part of his life?

64 What opinion must be entertained of his public character?

What was the state of literature under Hadrian?

ANTONINUS.

Who was Antoninus Pius?

65 How did Antoninus conduct himself on the occasion of a conspiracy?

What kindness did he show to a Grecian philosopher?

66 What other instances may be adduced of his meekness and generosity?

How did he govern the state?

How was Antoninus disposed towards the Christians?

67 What influence did his moderation secure him over foreign nations?

How long did he live, and what was the public feeling in his regard?

MARCUS-AURELIUS.

PAGE

68 How far did Marcus-Aurelius imitate the example of his predecessor?
Who checked the progress of the Parthians, and by what plague was the victory of the Romans followed?
What occurred most remarkable in the expedition of Marcus Aurelius against the Marcomans?
What were the circumstances that acquired for the 12th legion the name of *thundering?*
69 What credit does Marcus-Aurelius deserve as an author?
How did Commodus imitate the worst of tyrants?
What advantages did the short reign of Pertinax procure to the state?
70 How was the empire put up at auction?
How did Severus succeed in quickly overthrowing Didius Julianus?

SEPTIMUS SEVERUS.

Who were the other competitors of Severus?
71 By what series of defeats was the power of Niger destroyed?
What penalties were inflicted on the vanquished party?
What were the opposite views of Severus and Albinus?
How did they come to an open rupture?
72 Where did Albinus intend to go, and how did Severus march against him?
Where and how was a decisive battle fought between them?
73 By what exertions did Severus revive the courage of his troops?
Who decided the fate of the day?
What use did Severus make of his prosperity?
How did he reward his soldiers, and punish his enemies?
74 What lesson did he then receive from his younger son Geta?
Who was Plautian, and what was his fate?
What was the situation of the Christians, and how were they treated by Severus?
75 How did they bear the persecution and endure torments?
76 What else concurred in the vindication of Christianity? Who wrote in its favor?
Is Severus to be reckoned among the most wicked princes?
77 What was his distinguishing feature?
Against whom did he perform his last military expedition?
What sad event did then happen to him?
How did he reproach Caracalla with his detestable design?
78 Where was Severus taken ill, and how did he settle the succession of the empire?
What were his last words and actions?
What comparison may be established between him and Napoleon Bonaparte?

CARACALLA, MACRINUS, HELIOGABALUS.

PAGE

79 How did Caracalla begin and prosecute his reign? By whom was he murdered and succeeded on the throne?
What new revolution overthrew Macrinus?
80 How were all the worst tyrants revived in Heliogabalus?
How did he perish, and who succeeded him?

ALEXANDER SEVERUS.

What were the inclinations and favorite virtues of Alexander Severus?
81 How old was Alexander? For this to whom was he indebted?
How did he reform the various orders of the state?
What criminals did he punish with the greatest severity?
How did he treat those who abused their favor near him, and betrayed his confidence?
82 With what attention did he proceed to the choice of governors and magistrates?
What clemency did he use towards Ovinius Camillus?
83 What was his conduct towards the soldiers?
What influence did he acquire over them?
With what care did he manage the public treasury, and provide for the poor and the distressed?
84 What was the love and veneration of the Romans for Alexander?
What happened in Persia, which obliged Alexander to leave Rome for a time?
85 How did his troops conduct themselves?
What were the sad results of Alexander's attempt to re-establish order among the legions of Gaul and Germany?
What judgment is to be passed on Alexander Severus, and by what calamities was his death followed?

MILITARY USURPERS.

86 Who was Maximin?
What had the Romans, and particularly the Christians, to suffer from Maximin?
What was the end of Maximin's life?
Of whom was young Gordian a living copy?
87 How did Philip acquire, govern, and lose the empire?
What is said of Decius? What persecution was excited by him?
How long did Gallus and Æmilian reign, and how did they perish?
What were the qualifications of Valerian? How was he taken prisoner, and how treated by the Persians?
88 What had induced him to declare war against the Christians and who were the chief victims of this new persecution?
How was the whole empire also visited by various chastisements from the divine justice?
What saved the state from utter ruin?

CLAUDIUS II.

PAGE

What virtues did Claudius II. display after his accession to the throne?

89 Describe his exploits against the Goths?

What became of the Gothic fleet and army?

90 Where and of what disease did Claudius die?

AURELIAN.

What were the first exploits of Aurelian?

What new monarchy had been lately founded in the East?

By what means did Zenobia render herself conspicuous and powerful?

91 With what celerity and success did Aurelian march against her?

What did Zenobia do?

Describe the battle under the walls of Emesa?

92 What was the antiquity and the situation of Palmyra?

How did Zenobia sustain the siege of her capital? How did she behave herself on being taken prisoner?

What caused the ruin of Palmyra and of its inhabitants?

93 What became of Zenobia?

What other provinces did Aurelian cover?

How did he govern the empire? What was the occasion of his death?

What had been his conduct towards the Christians?

TACITUS AND PROBUS.

94 What dispute of mutual deference took place between the army and the senate?

Whom did the senate appoint emperor?

How was Probus peculiarly fitted for the time in which he lived and reigned? What losses did he inflict on the Germans?

95 How did he also check the pride of the Persians?

What crime deprived the state of so great a prince? What rank does Probus hold among the Roman emperors?

96 Who was the successor of Probus?

What happened to Carinus and Numerian?

DIOCLETIAN AND MAXIMIAN.

How did Diocletian ascend the throne, and whom did he choose for his colleague?

97 What further measures were taken to assist the two emperors? Who was Constantius-Chlorus?

How fully could this prince rely upon the affection of his subjects?

Who was Galerius?

98 How did Galerius defeat the Persians?

By what means did he excite the tenth general persecution against the Church?

What was the rigor of this persecution, and how great the number of its victims?

PAGE

99 Did the persecutors obtain the object of their desire?
What misfortunes fell upon Diocletian?
100 Where and how did he spend the last years of his life?
What was the fate of Maximian?
Upon whom was the justice of God more strikingly displayed?
101 Was not Constantius-Chlorus saved from the like disasters?
How had he favored the Christians?
What was the only subject of uneasiness he had?
102 What consolation did he enjoy at his last moments?

PART II.—*Accession of Constantine—Downfall of the Roman Empire.*

CONSTANTINE THE GREAT.

103 What brilliant qualities appeared in Constantine from the beginning of his reign? How was the Roman empire then divided?
What were the victories of Constantine over the Franks?
Against whom did he prepare next to wage war?
104 With what vision was he favored?
How did he penetrate and advance into Italy?
105 Whom was he obliged to fight near Verona, and how did he behave in the battle?
What was the result of the battle?
How signal and important was his victory?
How did he conquer his rival Maxentius in a still more important engagement?
106 What honors were paid to Constantine at and after his entry into Rome?
What inscription was on his statue?
How did he use his power, and when did he begin to make an open profession of Christianity?
107 How was Asia rescued from her tyrant Maximin II.?
What gave rise to hostilities between Constantine and Licinius? Where did the two emperors meet? What was the result of the battle? Where was another battle fought, and with what result?
108 Was peace of long duration, and when did a new contest arise between them?
What was the number of the forces on either side? Where did the armies meet? Describe the stratagem and the battle that followed?
109 Who was victorious at sea?
What new defeat did Licinius experience near Chalcedon, and how was he treated by his conqueror?
What was the clemency shown to the partisans of Licinius, and what laws were enacted by Constantine?
110 What care did he take to maintain good order among the troops?
How did he love letters and provide for the good education of his children?

PAGE

111 What was his zeal for religion, and what celebrated council was held under his reign?
What are the faults with which Constantine is reproached, particularly with regard to his son Crispus?
112 Why and when did he build Constantinople?
What is said of his faults? Of his piety, benevolence, alms to the poor, etc.?
113 What reputation did he acquire, even among foreign nations?
What were his last military exploits?
When did he die, and what grief was everywhere displayed at the news of his death?

CONSTANTIUS, CONSTANTINE II., AND CONSTANT.

114 How was the empire divided between the three sons of Constantine? What dispute soon broke out between two of them?
What was the character and the chief occupation of their brother Constantius?
115 How did he destroy the usurper Magnentius?
Whom did Constantius appoint his colleague, and what violence did he exercise to promote the cause of Arianism?
116 How did the Cæsar Julian discharge his duty in Gaul?
What revolution placed Julian on the throne?

JULIAN.

117 What method did Julian adopt in regulating the state, and in persecuting the Christian religion?
What were the views of Julian in attempting to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem?
118 With what readiness did the Jews set to the projected work?
By what prodigies were their endeavors defeated?
119 What circumstances concurred to render this event most incontestable?
What is observed of this event?
Against what enemy did Julian now prepare to fight?
How did he advance with his army through Mesopotamia and Assyria?
How did his fleet pass from the river Euphrates to the Tigris, and how was the Tigris itself crossed?
120 Upon what considerations, and what advice, did he alter his plans?
What dangers and attacks had the Romans to encounter in their march? How did Julian himself receive a deadly wound? How did he die according to some?
121 What can be said of Julian's character?
What peculiar talent and quality did he certainly possess?

JOVIAN.

Who was appointed his successor, and what was the sad result of Julian's expedition?
122 What were the transactions of Jovian's reign?
Who was next elected emperor?

VALENTINIAN AND VALENS.

PAGE

123 Whom did Valentinian declare his colleague?
How did Valentinian govern his portion of the empire?
How did his irascible temper become fatal to himself?
What were the good and the bad qualities of Valens?
124 What military achievements were performed by his generals?
125 What was the situation of the empire after the battle of Adrianople until the accession of Theodosius?

THEODOSIUS I., GRATIAN, AND VALENTINIAN II.

How was Valens signally defeated by the Goths?
Who was Theodosius?
126 What change took place in the state of affairs?
What laws were enacted by Theodosius?
What zeal did he show for religion?
127 What was the conduct and the sad fate of the emperor Gratian?
What were the further views of the usurper Maximus, and how were they defeated?
128 What sedition took place in Antioch?
How did Theodosius first punish, and then forgive its authors?
129 What excess of severity did he exercise against the inhabitants of Thessalonica? By whom was he induced to repent of his fault?
What is said of the young emperor?
130 What happened to the emperor Valentinian II.?
What was the affliction of Theodosius for the death of that prince?
What battle was fought near Aquileia?
How did heaven declare for Theodosius?
131 How long did he live after his victory, and what honors were paid to his memory?
132 What were the public achievements of Theodosius?
What were his private qualities and Christian virtues?

HONORIUS AND ARCADIUS.

133 Who succeeded Theodosius on the throne?
What can be found worthy of remark in the reign of Arcadius?
To whom are attributed chiefly the disasters of Honorius' reign?
134 What were the views of Stilico, and what punishment was inflicted both on him and his partisans?
What provinces of the empire were invaded by the barbarians?
How was Rome itself besieged and taken by Alaric?
135 What were the chief effects of the fall of Rome?
What was the further progress of Alaric? How was his career closed?

PAGE

136 Where did the Goths obtain a solid settlement?
When and why did the Romans withdraw from Great Britain?
When did the French monarchy begin? What happy change took place in the public affairs during the last years of Honorius, and to whom was it owing?

VALENTINIAN III., THEODOSIUS II.

137 Upon whom was the crown transferred after the death of Honorius?
Who was reigning in the East?
Why did the prosperity of the Eastern empire decline?
138 What caused still more calamitous events in the West?
What wicked plan was contrived by Ætius to ruin Count Boniface?
What was the sad consequence of his artifice?
139 What the was final result of the contest between Boniface and Ætius?
By what services did Ætius make up for his fault?
What new invasion threatened the empire?
140 How was Attila repulsed from Orleans?
What overthrow did he experience in the plains of Chalons?
141 What were the consequences of the battle?
By what means did Attila succeed in taking Aquileia?
142 What ravages did he commit in the north of Italy?
Who prevailed upon him to retire? When did he die, and what became of the vast empire which he had founded?
143 What was the manner of death both of Ætius and of the emperor Valentinian III?

MARCIAN, LEO THE THRACIAN.

144 Who called the Vandals from Africa, and how was Rome plundered by them?
Who reigned in the East after Theodosius II?
What did Marcian do as soon as he was acknowledged emperor? How did he reply to the deputies of Attila?
How did he assist the pastors of the Church in maintaining the true faith?
145 What were the private qualities of Marcian, and what was the duration of his reign?
Who was his successor? What famous conqueror lived at the same time?
What was now the condition of the Western empire?
How many emperors reigned within a few years?
146 What was done by the patrician Ricimer?
Who was the last emperor of the West? Who took the title of King of Italy?
What circumstances accompanied the fall of the Western empire?
147 How did religion, amidst these revolutions, maintain her influence and dignity?

PART III.—*Foundation of the Principal States of Europe.*

ANGLO-SAXONS IN BRITAIN.—HENGIST.

PAGE

148 When were the principal states now extant in Europe founded?
What had been for a long time the situation of Great Britain?
Whom did the Britons call to their assistance, and how did a war arise between them and their auxiliaries?
149 What victories were gained and what settlements made by the Anglo-Saxons?
When were the Anglo-Saxons converted to Christianity?
What became of the ancient inhabitants?

VISIGOTHS IN SPAIN.—EVARIC.

150 How and when was Spain conquered by the Visigoths?
What were the other conquests of Evaric?
What laws did he give to his people?
When did Evaric die? What acts of cruelty did he commit?

THE FRANKS IN GAUL.—CLOVIS.

151 Who were the Franks? Which of their kings was the real founder of the French monarchy?
Whom did Clovis attack first?
What was the occasion of the conversion of Clovis to Christianity?
152 What were his other wars and conquests?
What reputation was acquired and left by Clovis?
153 What skill did he evince as a politician and a legislator?

OSTROGOTHS IN ITALY.—THEODORIC THE GREAT.

Who was the ablest warrior and statesman of that age? How did Theodoric achieve the conquest of Italy?
154 By what means did he secure his power?
How did he govern both his ancient and new subjects?
155 Who were his chief counsellors?
What was his zeal for learning and for useful institutions?
156 What was the extent of his empire? What faults did he commit at the beginning and towards the end of his reign?
How did he die, and who was his successor?
What must be thought of the administration of Theodoric?

EMPERORS OF CONSTANTINOPLE.—JUSTIN.

157 What were the talents and qualities of Justin I., emperor of Constantinople?
What disasters happened about this time?
By what plagues was Antioch visited?
158 What was the desolation of that city?
Did all the inhabitants perish? How long lasted the earthquake?
What were the feelings and the solicitude of Justin on the occasion of these events?

JUSTINIAN.

PAGE

159 What contributed chiefly to render the reign of Justinian glorious?
What were the views of Justinian with regard to the civil legislation?
What are the different parts of the Justinian compilation of laws?
160 What has been the renown of the Roman law?
What was the situation of the Vandals in Africa?
161 What victories were gained over them by Belisarius?
How was king Gelimer pursued and besieged?
162 How did he surrender himself into the hands of Belisarius?
Where did Belisarius return to? What became of Gelimer?
How was Italy also subdued by Belisarius?
163 How did the Goths retrieve their losses for a time?
What exploits were achieved by Totila?
Who was Narses?
164 What victory was gained by Narses over Totila?
Whom did the Goths put at their head after the death of Totila?
What new battle was fought between the Romans and the Goths?
165 How was Teias slain during the conflict?
With what fury was the battle renewed?
166 What was the result of the battle?
What share did the French take in these broils?
What were the designs of King Theodebertus against Justinian?
Who undertook the defence of the Goths?
167 What became of Leutharis and of his troops?
Where did the armies of Narses and Bucelin meet? What was the result of the battle? What was the number slain on each side?
What disastrous war was, at the same time, carried on between the Romans and the Persians?
168 What fresh calamities visited the empire? Who defeated the Huns? What misfortunes happened to Belisarius?
169 When did both Justinian and Belisarius die? What reverses attended the close of Justinian's reign?
With what other faults is Justinian justly reproached?
What praises does he deserve?

JUSTIN II., TIBERIUS II.

170 Who succeeded Justinian?
What measure was taken by Justin II. to check fraud and extortion?
What firmness was displayed by the prefect of Constantinople?
171 What were the defects of Justin and of the empress Sophia?
172 What revenge is said to have been taken by Narses? With what success did the Lombards invade Italy?

PAGE

What gave rise to a fresh war with the Persians? How was it conducted on both sides?

173 In what battle was King Chosroes defeated?

What were the exertions of Tiberius, the emperor's colleague, for the good of the state?

When was Tiberius left sole master, and how did he defeat the intrigues of the empress Sophia?

174 How long and how successfully did he reign?

MAURITIUS.

Who was Mauritius?

In what manner did the war continue against the Persians?

175 What disturbances took place in Persia? How did Mauritius concur in putting an end to them?

What was the happy effect of his conduct?

Who were the Avari?

How did Priscus, the Roman general, begin his expedition against the Avari?

176 What were the new victories of Priscus?

How were the Gepidæ also entirely defeated?

177 What was the close of Priscus' glorious campaign?

What event brought an odium upon Mauritius?

By what catastrophe was his reign terminated?.

178 By what disasters and calamities was Italy visited?

Who was raised to the chair of St. Peter, and how did he govern the Church?

PHOCAS.

179 Who was Phocas? Who waged war against him?

180 By whom was Phocas dethroned?

HERACLIUS.

In what condition was the empire found at the accession of Heraclius?

How did the Persians pursue the war?

181 How did Heraclius prepare to march against them?

What were the exploits of Heraclius in Armenia and Persia?

182 What was the success of his subsequent campaigns?

Which was his most signal victory? What became of the Persian king?

What had been the character and government of Chosroes II.?

183 Upon what terms was peace concluded between the Persians and the Romans?

What was now the situation of the two empires?

MAHOMETANISM.

Who was Mahomet? When and where was he born? What quality did he assume?

184 What religious system was broached by Mahomet, and what ought to be said of the Koran?

PAGE

What circumstances were favorable to Mahomet's design, and what obstacles did he meet in his way?

To what means did he resort to propagate his religion?

185 What impulse did he give to his followers?

What was another means of his success? What were the three conditions offered when declaring war?

By what names are the followers of Mahomet designated?

PROGRESS OF MAHOMETANISM.

186 What parties arose among the Arabs after the death of Mahomet?

Who was chosen to fill his place?

What exploits were achieved by the Mussulmans under Abu-Beker?

187 What changes in the army were produced by the election of Omar to the dignity of Caliph?

How did the war continue to be carried on between the Greeks and the Saracens?

188 How was the conquest of Syria and Palestine completed by the Saracens?

What was their success in Mesopotamia?

189 What was at that time the conduct of the Greek emperors?

CONQUEST OF THE SARACENS IN EGYPT.

Which of the Mussulman generals marched into Egypt?

What happened to Amrou at Alexandria?

How was Amrou saved from an imminent danger?

190 When did he commence the siege of Alexandria?

How long did the siege last, and how were both the city and the whole country subdued by the Saracens?

What became of the Alexandrian Library?

191 What attempt was made by Amrou? What was the end of Omar's life, and how many conquests were achieved during his reign?

What was the character of Omar?

CONQUEST OF THE SARACENS IN PERSIA, ETC.

192 Under whom was the subjugation of Persia completed?

What exertions were made by the Persians to defend their country?

What was the result of the battle of Cadesia?

What important capture was made, and what new victory gained, by Saad, the Saracen general?

193 What battle gave the deadly blow to the Persian monarchy?

What became of king Isdegerdes, and of his kingdom?

194 What other conquests were achieved about this time by the Mussulmans?

What obstacles checked the further progress of the Saracen arms in western Asia?

195 Who was the head of the Ommiade dynasty?

What parties arose among the Mahometans, which have continued till this day?

THE GREEK EMPIRE, ETC.

PAGE.

How did the Greek emperor, Constantine Pogonatus, begin his reign?

With what courage and skill did he defend his capital against the Saracens?

196 What was the Grecian fire, and by whom had it been invented?

What disasters overtook the Mussulman troops and vessels?

What other services did Pogonatus render to the state, and also to the Church?

197 What events followed his death?

With what success did the Arabs resume their course of conquest?

198 Describe the battle at Yakoubé in Africa?

What was the stratagem resorted to by Zobeir?

How were the Saracens completely victorious?

199 Who gained another victory near Tripoli?

How was conducted the expedition of Oucba?

What imprudence was committed by Oucba?

With what resolution did he fight?

200 What was the result of Zuheir's expedition?

Who attacked and took Carthage?

When was the reduction of northern Africa completed by the Saracens?

SARACENS IN SPAIN.

201 Under what circumstances and by whom were the Saracens called into Spain?

What was the respective strength of the opposite armies?

Describe the battle of Xeres?

202 What event made the Goths lose courage, and what became of king Roderic?

What was the result of the battle of Xeres?

In what part of Spain and under whose conduct did the Christians maintain their independence?

LEO THE ISAURIAN.

203 What disasters befell the Saracens in their second attempt upon Constantinople?

What is said of Leo the Isaurian? Against what did he publish an edict?

How long and cruel a persecution was exercised against the defenders of Images?

CHARLES MARTEL.

204 How did the Arabs and Moors invade France?

What was the danger that threatened France and all Christendom?

205 Who was the hero destined to save both?

How did the French fight the Saracen host near Tours?

What was the importance and the splendor of their victory?

PAGE

206 How did Charles Martel govern the French monarchy?
What circumstances favored the accession of his son Pepin to the throne?
How was an end put to the Merovingian dynasty?

PEPIN, KING OF FRANCE.

How did Pepin show himself worthy of his high station?
207 What was by this time the situation of Italy?
For what motives and with what success did Pepin attack the Lombards?
What was the result of his second expedition?
208 What kind of embassy was sent to him from Constantinople?
To whom did he make a donation of his conquests in Italy?
How were the Mussulman Caliphs Ommiades overthrown and succeeded by the Abassides?
209 Who founded the kingdom of Cordova?
What advantages were gained by Pepin over the Saracens of Spain?
What were the chief qualifications of Pepin?
210 How did he fully make up for the *shortness* of his size?

CHARLEMAGNE, KING, ETC.

By whom was Pepin even surpassed in his great actions?
What are the splendid characteristics of the reign of Charlemagne?
What were the first exploits of Charlemagne?
211 Against whom did he march with his troops into Italy?
What journey did he take to Rome, and how did he annihilate the kingdom of the Lombards?
What was the occasion and the result of his expedition into Spain?
212 What circumstances obliged him repeatedly to fight the Saxons?
What were the exertions of Witikind against a foreign yoke?
What vigor and severity did Charlemagne use against the Saxons?
How was the war still carried on between the two parties?
213 What was the desire of Charlemagne, and what offers did he make to the Saxon leaders?
How was Witikind at length induced to make his submission, and how was an end put to the Saxon war?
214 What other exploits and conquests were achieved by Charlemagne?
By what means did he secure the splendor and tranquillity of his empire?
To what objects did he now chiefly apply himself?
215 What were his exertions for the revival of literature and learning?
What was the reputation of Charlemagne, and how extensive were his dominions?
216 How was the title of emperor conferred upon him?
What modesty did he evince on that occasion?

PAGE

How many titles did Charlemagne now unite in himself?

217 What was the frequency of public calamities in those times, and how far can it be ascribed to a want of civilization?

218 What confusion and evils were produced by the invasion of barbarians?

What was the decay of arts and sciences? How far did it extend? Who were among the eminent scholars? What were some of the discoveries, and when were they made?

How did religion stem the torrent of barbarism?

219 What happy changes did she effect among the conquering tribes?

What was the influence of Christianity on the civilization of Europe?

220 What was done by bishops, priests and monks for the manifold advantage of society?

How zealously did the clergy and monks labor for the preservation of science and the improvement of agriculture?

221 What benefits were conferred by the Popes upon Europe and all Christendom?

PART IV.—*Revival of the Western Empire—Beginning of the Crusades.*

CHARLEMAGNE, EMPEROR.

222 How did Charlemagne signalize the beginning of his reign as emperor?

What losses did he sustain in his family, and how did he close his glorious career?

223 What judgment ought to be passed on Charlemagne? What were his talents for government and his exertions in the administration of justice?

224 What successes did he obtain in war?

How far did he excel in learning and eloquence?

What were the moral and Christian qualities of Charlemagne?

225 What was the simplicity of his manners, and his prudence in the management of his household?

What magnificence did he display as a sovereign, and what public works owed to him their existence?

LOUIS THE DEBONNAIRE, AND HIS SONS.

226 Who was the successor of Charlemagne?

227 Between whom was the empire of Charlemagne divided after the death of Louis the Debonnaire?

What was the rise and the progress of the Feudal system?

ARABIAN AND GREEK EMPIRES.

228 What was the situation of the Arabian empire under Caliph Aaron-Al-Raschid?

Against whom did Aaron-Al-Raschid wage war? What was his character? What is said of his severity? What did he do for literature?

PAGE

What happened to the Arabian monarchy after the death of Aaron-Al-Raschid?

229 What disaster was brought upon the Greeks by the imprudence of their emperor Nicephorus?

By what victories did Leo the Armenian repel the Bulgarians and almost annihilate their power?

230 How did he govern the empire? By whom was he succeeded?

How did the emperor Theophilus wage war against the Saracens?

What happened at the siege and capture of Amorium?

231 Under what prince, and in whose intrigues did the Greek schism originate?

What was the progression of that schism, and the fate of its first author Photius?

232 With what vigor did Basil the Macedonian protect the state against foreign and domestic foes?

What was the happy fruit of the vigilance and firmness of Basil?

233 What accident deprived him of his life? What rank does he deserve among the Greek emperors?

SPAIN DURING THE 9TH AND 10TH CENTURIES.

How did the kingdom of Asturias in Spain increase in extent and power?

234 What kings most contributed to that increase?

How did Alfonso III. quell domestic conspiracies?

What were his last exploits, together with the last disturbances of his reign?

235 With what vicissitudes of success was the war now carried on between the Christians and the Moors of Spain?

What qualities distinguished the Arabian king Abderame III? How did he make arts and sciences flourish in Cordova?

What proved best the greatness and superiority of his mind?

236 Who was Mahomet Almanzor?

With what opponent did he meet at first, and how did he wage war against the Christians?

What victory did he gain over King Burmudes II?

What did Almanzor do to stop the flight of his troops?

237 What did he do after his victory? How was his progress of conquest stopped?

What was now the respective strength of the Moors and of the Christians in Spain?

ENGLAND IN THE 9TH AND 10TH CENTURIES.

238 What was, during the middle ages, the situation of England, and what causes led to the ruin of the Heptarchy?

Who was Egbert, and what contradictions did he first experience?

How did Egbert receive the crown of Wessex, and then extend his authority over a great part of England?

239 Against what new foes had he to defend his kingdom?

PAGE

With what obstinate perseverance did the Danes invade the British isles?

240 Under what unfavorable auspices did the reign of Alfred commence?

What events revived the courage of the Saxons?

How were the Danes defeated, and what terms of peace were imposed on them?

241 How did Alfred improve the British army and navy?

What was his merit as a legislator?

242 What were his exertions for the advancement of science and of all useful arts?

What were his last military achievements?

243 How fully did Alfred deserve the epithet of *Great*, and what was the chief praise of that monarch?

By whom was he succeeded on the throne?

Who was the real founder of the kingdom of England?

244 What calamities and disasters did England again experience?

FRANCE AND GERMANY.

What settlement did the Normans obtain in France; and when was the imperial sceptre transferred from the family of Charlemagne to the German princes? What evils in the meanwhile prevailed throughout the French kingdom?

245 Why was the crown refused to the Duke of Lorraine, and to whom was it offered?

How did he govern the state, and what rule of succession did he establish?

When did the German empire become elective? Who were, under this mode of accession, its first sovereigns?

246 How did Henry the Fowler check the ravages of the barbarians?

With what zeal did he promote the safety and happiness of his people?

Who was chosen to succeed him in the empire?

247 Who occupied the German throne after Otho I?

THE EASTERN NATIONS, ETC.

What was the situation of the Greek empire? Why and when was Nicephorus Phocas raised to the sovereign power?

248 What rendered Nicephorus odious, and occasioned his death?

What were the qualifications of Zimisces?

What victories did he gain over the Russians?

249 What advantages did he obtain over the Saracens? What was the cause and the manner of his death?

250 Who reigned after Zimisces, and how was Bulgaria entirely subdued?

What was the martial spirit of Basil II., and the character of his administration?

What losses were sustained by the Arabian Caliphs?

251 What conquests were achieved by the Seljukian Turks?

IRELAND.

PAGE

Of what country have we now to speak?
What was the origin and the government of the Irish nation?
252 When and by whom were the Irish converted to Christianity?
How far did they excel in virtue and science?
What ravages were committed by the Danes in Ireland?
253 Who put a check to their depredations? How were the Danes again signally defeated?
What were for Ireland the happy consequences of the battle of Clontarf?

DANISH KINGS IN ENGLAND.

254 Who was Edmund *Ironside*, and what did he perform for the defence of his country?
How did Canute treat both his ancient and his new subjects?
What striking proof did Canute give of his piety?
255 What was the extent of his dominions, and how were they divided after his death?
What were the qualities of King Edward the Confessor, and the blessings of his reign?
256 What statutes were published by him, and what honor was paid to his memory?

NORMANS IN ENGLAND.

Who claimed the throne of England after Edward's death?
Who was first proclaimed king? Against whom had Harold to contend?
257 How did William of Normandy land on the shores of England?
Describe the battle of Hastings?
258 How did William obtain a complete victory?
What was the result of the battle?
259 What measures were first adopted by William with regard to government?
Why were the English displeased and discontented?
What severity was now used against them?
260 How did William baffle the efforts of all his enemies?
Where did he die?

NORMANS IN ITALY.

Who obliged the Saracens to abandon the siege of Salernum?
What exploits were performed by the Normans in Italy?
261 Who were the most distinguished among them?

CHIVALRY.

In what did ancient chivalry consist?
262 What was the renown of Diaz of Bivar, otherwise called *El Cid?*
How was Toledo taken from the Saracens?

PAGE

263 Which of the foreign knights most signally assisted the Spaniards in their war against the Moors? And what was the origin of the kingdom of Portugal?

AFFAIR OF INVESTITURE.

What was meant by *Investiture?* How did the German emperor Henry IV., dispose of ecclesiastical dignities, and who opposed him in his wicked practices?

264 What sentence was passed by Pope Gregory VII., against the emperor.

To what signs of penance and humiliation did Henry submit himself?

265 How long did his repentance last, and what competitor was opposed to him by the German lords?

What new excesses did he commit? How did the Pope depart this life?

266 What was the end of the emperor's life, and how was the question of investitures settled after his death?

REMARKS ON THE MIDDLE AGES?

What were the middle ages?

How far did ignorance prevail, and how was it opposed by the Church?

268 How many learned clergymen flourished during those ages?

What must be said to the praise of laymen themselves during the same period?

269 What useful discoveries and improvements did then take place?

Were the Arabs truly superior, in solid acquirements, to the Christian nations of Europe?

270 What do the monuments of architecture still extant prove in favor of the middle ages?

271 What splendid and religious edifices were then built in various parts of Christendom?

What nations of Europe became converted and civilized?

What must be concluded from this variety of evidences and facts in favor of the Catholic Church?

272 What other excellent institution owed its existence to the middle ages?

What had been the sad effects of the Feudal system?

What barrier was opposed by religion to the prevailing evils?

What were the happy results of the Truce of God?

PART V—*From the beginning of the Crusades to their end.*

ORIGIN AND CAUSE OF THE CRUSADES.

274 What eventful period is now to be considered?

What is meant by Crusades, and in what causes did they originate?

PAGE

What cruelties were committed in the Holy Land by the Arabs and Turks against the Christians?

FIRST CRUSADE.

275 Who was Peter the Hermit? What did he contrive for the deliverance of Jerusalem?
With what zeal and success did he preach the crusade?
276 Where and how was taken the final decision for the crusade?
What was the eagerness of the people everywhere to take the cross?
Who were the chief crusaders?
277 Which of them held the first rank in the army? What was the whole number of the crusaders, and what became of their first troops?
Where was the general rendezvous of the various bodies of the army?
What were the feelings of the Greek emperor Alexius at the arrival of so many warriors?
278 What city was besieged first by the Christian host? What is said of this town?
How was Nice attacked and defended? How did it fall into the hands of the emperor Alexius?
279 How did the crusaders begin to make conquests for themselves? Who obtained the sovereign power in Edessa?
What encounter took place near Dorylæum in Phrygia?
280 How were the Turks finally defeated?
What was the respective loss of the Christians and the Turks? What dangers and sufferings had the former now to undergo?
281 What vicissitudes of events happened during the siege of Antioch?
How was Antioch taken by the crusaders?
282 What fresh enemy arrived to attack them?
What famine raged, and what desolation reigned in Antioch?
What circumstances revived the courage of the troops?
283 How did the Christians march out to fight the enemy?
What valor did they evince, and what victory did they obtain?
284 What were the consequences of the battle of Orontes?
What new calamities and losses did the crusaders sustain?
285 How did they advance to Jerusalem? What is said of their pious transports?
What plague afflicted the besieging army?
With what vigor was Jerusalem assaulted?
286 What efforts were made in a new attack, and how was the holy city at length taken?
287 What was the fury of the conquerors in the first moments of victory?
What marks of fervent devotion did they afterwards exhibit, and whom did they appoint king of Jerusalem?
What brilliant victory crowned all the exploits of the crusaders?

GENERAL VIEW, ETC.

PAGE

288 How should the first crusade be regarded?
To what circumstances did the crusaders owe their success?
289 What became of the chief leaders of the crusade?
What story is related of two noble twin-brothers?

KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM.

290 With what wisdom did Godfrey support and govern his kingdom of Jerusalem?
When did he die?
291 What was his character?
292 What were the exertions of the successors of Godfrey, and those of the Greek emperors?
When and how did the prosperity of the eastern Christians begin to decline?

THE SECOND CRUSADE.

293 What was the occasion of the second crusade? Who preached it, and what nations took a share in it?
294 How were the Germans betrayed by the Greeks, and destroyed by the Turks?
What was the first success of the French? What fault was committed by one of their generals?
295 How was the rear of their army entirely defeated?
What city was besieged by the crusaders?
296 How were their efforts totally frustrated?
What grief was produced by the failure of the second crusade, and how did St. Bernard vindicate his conduct in having been its chief promoter?

GERMANY AND ITALY, UNDER FREDERIC I.

How did the emperor Frederic Barbarossa fail in his attempts to raise a schism in the Church and to subjugate Italy?
297 How did he come to a reconciliation with the Pope and the Italians?
298 What disturbances agitated England? What was the extent of Henry Plantagenet's dominions?
What remarkable events took place during his reign? What happened to St. Thomas of Canterbury?
How was Ireland conquered by the English?
299 What qualities did Henry II. evince in his various transactions, and what misfortunes did he experience?

FALL OF THE KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM.

By whom were the affairs of the Christians in the East brought to a rapid decay? What were the abilities of Saladin?
300 How did Saladin invade Palestine, and what resolution was taken by the king of Jerusalem?

PAGE

Under what unfavorable circumstances was fought the battle of Tiberias?

301 In what manner was the battle continued and terminated?

How did Saladin improve his victory, and obtain the surrender of the Holy city?

THIRD CRUSADE.

302 What consternation did the fall of Jerusalem spread through Christendom?

Which of the European monarchs engaged in a new crusade?

Who set out the first for Asia?

303 What triumphs marked the progress of the Germans?

By what fatal accident was their emperor carried off?

What was the result of the death of Frederic?

304 What were the opposite qualities of kings Philip and Richard?

How had the siege of Acre hitherto been conducted?

How did the arrival of the two monarchs contribute to the rendition of Acre?

305 What incidents accompanied the siege of that city?

Why did Philip withdraw from the crusade?

How did the Christian army advance through Palestine?

What engagement took place near Antipatris?

306 How was the engagement renewed, and the enemy again defeated?

307 How did Richard lose the advantage of his victory?

How did he continue to wage war against the Moslems?

How did he repeatedly vanquish the troops of Saladin?

308 What impression was produced by the sight or knowledge of Richard's valor?

309 What truce was agreed upon between him and Saladin?

What was the result of the third crusade, and which of those engaged in it displayed most ability?

310 What were the adventures of Richard on his way back to England?

THE FOURTH CRUSADE.

When and how did Saladin close his career?

311 What dissensions among the Moslems followed his death?

By whom was a new crusade undertaken, and how did it terminate?

THE FIFTH CRUSADE.

Who promoted, who preached, and who undertook another expedition?

312 What treaty was concluded between the new crusaders and the Venitians?

What revolution had lately happened in Constantinople, and how were the crusaders induced to assist the dethroned emperor?

PAGE

313 With what vigor and success was Constantinople attacked by the Latins?

314 What incidents occasioned the utter ruin of the emperors Isaac and Alexius?

What were the feelings of the crusaders at the news of the young emperor's murder?

What was the result of their fresh attempt to storm the celestial city?

315 What was the success of another assault?

How was Constantinople pillaged by the conquerors?

316 Which of the Latin princes was elected emperor?

What became of the heroes of the fifth crusade, and of the empire which they had founded?

WARS THROUGHOUT EUROPE.

What was, by this time, the situation of western Europe, and particularly of Spain?

317 How did the Christians march against the Miramolin?

318 By what exertions of courage did they obtain a complete victory?

What were the subsequent losses of the Moors?

319 By whom was claimed the imperial crown of Germany?

With what advantage did Philip Augustus wage war against the English monarchs? What league was formed against France?

320 Where did the two armies meet?

Describe the battle of Bouvines?

What happened to King John on his return to England?

How was Louis of France called to receive the English crown?

321 How was he obliged to leave the country, and what was the duration of his reign as king of France?

Who were the Albigenses?

What measures were taken in their regard? By whom were they defeated?

CONQUESTS OF GENGHIS-KAN IN ASIA.

323 Of what revolutions was Asia the theatre?

Who was Temujin or Genghis-Kan; and how did he obtain the sovereign power?

How did he confirm his authority, and extend his dominions?

324 How were the Chinese subdued by Genghis-Kan?

What disasters and losses were inflicted on Mohammed, the sultan of Karazm and Persia?

325 How successfully did the sons of Genghis-Kan pursue his conquests in the East?

How far did they carry the devastations of war towards the West?

What ardor for the deliverance of Jerusalem was displayed by children?

THE SIXTH CRUSADE.

PAGE

What was the complicated character of the sixth crusade?

326 How was the city of Damietta besieged and taken by the crusaders?

327 What was their disappointment in their advance toward Cairo?

What losses did they sustain and what conditions were they obliged to accept?

328 What was done by Frederic II. for the recovery of Jerusalem?

Who next visited Palestine?

THE SEVENTH CRUSADE.

What was, at this period, the situation of England?

329 What prosperity did France enjoy under Louis IX.? How did that prince conquer his domestic and foreign enemies?

330 On what occasion did he take the cross? What preparations were made for the crusade?

Where did the Christian army spend the winter, and what country did it attack first?

What happened at the passage of the Nile, and in the attempt upon the city of Massoura?

331 What were the consequences of the battle, and the disasters of the retreat?

332 How did St. Louis behave in his prison? How did he rescue himself from captivity, and when did he return to France?

CIVIL WAR IN ENGLAND.

By what means did he promote the happiness of his people?

333 What important debate was referred to his decision?

Who raised in England the standard of insurrection against King Henry III.?

What made the people desire the restoration of Henry, and how did Prince Edward destroy the league of his enemies?

EIGHTH AND LAST CRUSADE.

334 What considerations induced St. Louis to undertake another crusade?

Why did he land on the shores of Africa?

335 What plague desolated his army, and how was he himself carried off by the contagious disease?

How many different qualities were united in St. Louis? What is said of his religious exercises? Of his piety, etc.?

336 How was the crusade continued and terminated?

337 How did everything now tend to the utter expulsion of the Christians from Syria? By whom was Ptolemais besieged and captured?

What became of the inhabitants of Ptolemais?

338 What rendered fruitless every attempt to renew the crusades?

PAGE

What charges have been brought against the crusades?
What motives animated the crusaders?
Was it proper to go and attack the Moslems of Asia?

339 Upon what reasons did Pope Urban II. urge the Christians to take up arms against the Moslems?

340 What is to be thought of the number of those who are said to have perished in the crusades?
How wrong and unjust is it to inveigh against their devotedness?

341 Does the variety of disorders occasionally committed by them afford a just reason to impeach the lawfulness of the crusades?
Were not also many glorious feats and acts of virtue performed by the crusaders?

342 What made the crusades fail with regard to the possession of Palestine?
What was the first advantage of the crusades? What was another happy effect? What was the third advantage? What was the fourth; and what nations increased in power and wealth?

343 How did they tend to revive literature, arts and science? and what universities grew into existence about this time?
What conclusion ought to be drawn from these remarks, in favor of the crusades?

PART VI. *From the end of the Crusades to the discovery of America.*

ENGLAND, WALES, ETC.

345 What was the duration of the reign of Edward I., and the character of his government?
When and by what exertions did Edward subdue the principality of Wales?

346 How did he succeed in his attempt to conquer Scotland? Who were the most famous champions of Scottish liberty?

GERMANY, ETC.

What was the state of Germany after Frederic II.? By whom was good order and tranquillity restored?

347 What provinces were then lost to the German empire?
What revolution took place in Switzerland?

348 What invasion was prepared against Switzerland; and what victory did the Helvetians win over the Austrians?
What was the valor displayed by fifty exiles?

349 How was the Helvetian confederacy strengthened and completed?

PROSECUTION OF THE KNIGHTS TEMPLARS.

What was the state of degeneracy of the Knights Templars, and of what crimes were they accused?

PAGE

350 What new inquiries were made about their guilt?
What further measure was taken against them?
What was the result of the trials to which they were subjected?
351 What was the fate of the grand-master and other chiefs of the order?
How was the order itself suppressed?
352 What became of its properties?

THE CHRISTIANS IN SPAIN.

What was the situation of Spain at this period?
353 What made not only Spain, but all Christendom tremble?
What were the exertions of King Alfonso XI. to save his country?
354 What signal victory was gained by the Christians over the Moors?
What were the subsequent triumphs of the former and losses of the latter?
355 What struggle commenced then between England and France?

EDWARD III. OF ENGLAND, ETC.

What was the object of the dispute between Edward III. and Philip VI.?
356 By what considerations was Edward induced to declare war against Philip?
What victory was gained at sea by the English?
357 What new efforts were made on each side for the prosecution of the war?
How were the French defeated at Crécy?
What circumstances contributed to the victory of the English?
358 What happened at the siege of Calais?
Who defeated the Scots at Nevil's cross?
359 For what reasons did Edward conclude a truce with Philip?
What dreadful plague visited France and England? What is said of the number of its victims?
What were the qualifications of Philip, and the other occurrences of his reign?
360 Who succeeded him on the throne?
By whom were the hostilities recommenced?
What was the situation of the English at Maupertuis, and how did the French act?
361 How were the French defeated by the English?
What was the consequences of the battle? Where was King John led prisoner?
How did Edward III. endeavor to secure the fruit of his victories?
362 What was the sad condition of France at that period?
How was the next campaign conducted by the Dauphin?
363 What event induced Edward to grant peace, and upon what terms did he grant it?

PAGE

With what fidelity did John comply with the treaty of Bretigny?

364 How did Charles V. restore tranquillity to his kingdom?

What cruelties were committed by the Castilian King, Don Pedro?

By whom was he dethroned, and by whom re-established?

365 How did he repay the services of the Black Prince?

What new struggle took place between Don Pedro and Henry of Transtamare?

What treaty was concluded between the new king of Castile and Charles V.?

366 What were now the successes of the French against the English?

What truce was concluded, and by what events was it followed?

What were the personal, military and political accomplishments of Edward III.?

367 What were the distinguishing features of the government of Charles V.?

OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

368 What new empire arose in the East?

369 What conquests were achieved by Othman and Orcan?

By what institutions and exertions did Amurat consolidate the throne of the Turkish sultans? What city did he choose as his capital, and how did he lose his life?

370 Why was Bajazet I. surnamed *Ilderim?*

Whom did he conquer first, and by whom was he defeated in Moldavia?

371 How did he treat the Greek emperors?

What league was formed against Bajazet?

372 How did he overthrow the French and Hungarians in the battle of Nicopolis?

What were the consequences of the battle?

TAMERLANE, ETC.

373 Who was Tamerlane?

What motives induced Tamerlane and Bajazet to declare war against each other?

What ravages marked the progress of the Tartars?

What awful conflict took place near Ancyra?

374 How was Bajazet treated by his conqueror? What question was asked him, and how did he answer?

What was his fate?

To whom is Tamerlane assimilated? What was the character of his exploits?

375 What virtues did he display in the ordinary transactions of his life?

376 What were his intellectual and political faculties?

What other extraordinary features appeared in Tamerlane?

377 How did he close his career?

What events took place, by this time, in England and France?

How did England quickly reassume her former ascendancy?

HENRY AND CHARLES VI., ETC.

PAGE

378 Who was Henry V.? What was his first success against the French?

How was fought the battle of Agincourt?

379 What fresh advantages were obtained by the English in France?

When did both Charles VI. and Henry V. die, and who were their successors?

380 What was the dejected situation of Charles VII.?

How was the siege of Orleans conducted?

Who was Joan d'Arc? What mission did she claim, and how was she examined at court?

381 How did she raise the siege of Orleans, and defeat the English?

How did she lead the king to Rheims?

How was the ceremony of the coronation performed? How did Joan happen to fall into the hands of the English?

382 How was she neglected by her friends, and treated by her enemies? By whom and when was her condemnation reversed?

What is the substance of the note on pages 383 and 384.

383 Were the English able to stop the progress of the French?

What improvements did France receive from the administration of Charles VII.?

384 In what circumstances were the hostilities renewed, and what losses were sustained by the English?

What was then the state of Poland and of Germany?

FALL OF CONSTANTINOPLE.

385 How did the Turks resume their course of conquests?

What was the design of Mahomet II.?

What were the opposite qualifications of Mahomet II. and Constantine Paleologus?

386 What preparations of war were made on each side?

What military engines were made use of by the Turks during the siege of Constantinople?

387 What exertions were made by the Greeks?

How did the Greeks repel a furious assault?

What victory was won at sea by a Christian flotilla?

388 How did Mahomet succeed in transporting his vessels into the harbor of Constantinople?

389 What virtues were displayed by Constantine Paleologus?

What were the proposals reciprocally made by Constantine and Mahomet?

What apprehensions were entertained by Mahomet, and how did he revive the courage of his troops?

390 How was the garrison of Constantinople affected? What was the last address of Paleologus to his warriors?

When and how did a general assault begin?

391 How did it continue and terminate?

392 How was the imperial city, with its inhabitants, treated by the conquerors?

What remarks can be made on the fall of the Greek empire?

MAHOMET II., ETC.

PAGE

393 What did the Sultan do after his victory, and how did he pursue the course of his conquests?
In what attempt did he fail, and who checked his progress?
Who was John Corvinus Hunniades?
394 How was Belgrade besieged by the Turks, and succored by Hunniades?
What attacks were made on the town?
395 What exploits were performed on both sides?
How were the Turks finally defeated?
396 What was the end of Hunniades, and what grief was produced by the news of his death?
Who was Scanderbeg?
397 Who first experienced the effects of Scanderbeg's undaunted valor?
How were the armies of Mahomet repeatedly defeated by Scanderbeg?
In what circumstances did Scanderbeg happen to die?
398 How much was he regretted?
What were the military qualities of Scanderbeg?
What were his Christian virtues?

MAHOMET AND D'AUBUSSON.

399 What armament was directed against the island and the city of Rhodes?
With what valor did the Rhodians and the Knights of St. John defend themselves?
How was a general assault carried on, and resisted? What was the magnanimity displayed by the Grand-Master?
400 By what other noble and virtuous actions did Peter d'Aubusson distinguish himself?
401 What were the projects of Mahomet, and what put an end to his life?
What judgment ought to be passed upon him?

CONTESTS BETWEEN THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.

In what state of agitation was England?
402 What discontent existed against the court, and who commenced the civil war?
What was the atrocious character, and who were the chief leaders, of that war?
By what alterations of success was it marked?
403 What strange adventures happened to Queen Margaret and her son?
What were her exertions, her hopes, and the final catastrophe of her whole family?
404 What fresh disturbances arose in England? When and how were they terminated?

FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

PAGE

405 How was the Spanish monarchy rendered, at this period, flourishing and powerful?
What losses were sustained by the Moors?
406 In what manner was the siege of Granada conducted by Ferdinand and Isabella?
What considerations induced the king and the inhabitants of Granada to surrender?
407 When did the Castilian sovereigns take possession of the city? What became of King Boabdil?
How were the other Moors treated?
408 How did Spain acquire a high degree of splendor and preponderance?

REMARKS ON DISCOVERIES, ETC.

What remarks can be made on the sixth part of Modern History?
By whom was gunpowder invented, and what influence had this invention on military tactics?
409 To what year is referred the invention of the art of printing?
When and by whom were post-horses established?
410 What were the most important discoveries of the fifteenth century?
What is said about printers in the *note* on page 409?

PART VII.—*From the Discovery of America to the Treaty of Versailles.*

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

411 Was the American continent known to the ancient nations?
Does the ancient population of America form any difficulty among learned men?
412 Can it be accounted for by regular navigation?
" " by the crossing of Behring strait?
" " by winds and tempests?
413 What was, with regard to civilization, the state of the American tribes at the time of their discovery?

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

Who was Christopher Columbus?
414 How did Columbus begin to form his theory about the existence of unknown lands?
What incidents impressed this theory more and more upon his mind?
To whom did he apply for co-operation in the execution of his projects?
415 What encouragement and assistance did he receive from the Spanish court?

PAGE

What were the incidents of his voyage across the Atlantic? What land was first described?

What were the honors then paid to Columbus? What were his own feelings and his subsequent discoveries?

416 When and how did Columbus return to Spain?

417 What reception did he experience at Court?

What grant was obtained by the Spanish sovereigns from the Pope?

418 When did Columbus sail on a second expedition? What was his disappointment on arriving at Hayti?

How were his good intentions and measures counteracted by his companions?

What induced him to return? What happened to him in Spain, and what important discovery did he make in his third voyage?

419 What did the party of his enemies contrive against him?

What magnanimity did Columbus display in the midst of injuries?

How was he received by his sovereigns?

420 What had he to suffer in his last voyage?

What stratagem did he make use of to change the dispositions of the Indians?

421 How did he succeed in his attempt? How was he rescued from his perilous situation?

In what circumstances and with what sentiments of piety did he die?

What were the qualities and excellent views of Columbus?

422 By whom was he deprived of the honor of giving his name to the new world?

PORTUGUESE SETTLEMENTS.

What expeditions from different quarters had followed the first enterprise of Columbus?

423 What rank did the East Indies hold among the states of Asia?

What resistance did the Portuguese experience from Eastern Indians?

How far did the Portuguese extend their commercial relations? What is the antiquity claimed by the Chinese?

What is the population and religion of China?

424 What fortifications protect its northern frontier? Did these fortifications save China from invasion?

What are the good and the bad qualities of the Chinese?

425 What is Japan? What are the revenues and forces of the sovereign of that country?

By whom was Christianity preached, and by whom was it abolished, in Japan?

DECLINE OF THE ITALIAN REPUBLICS.

426 What decline in wealth and power did the Italian republics suffer?

By what other calamity was Italy afflicted? What was the result of the expedition of King Charles VIII.?

PAGE

Under whom did a second expedition take place?

427 Why was a powerful league formed against the Venetians, and soon turned against the French?

What were the reverses of France and of her allies?

428 How were the Swiss defeated at Marignan?

What intrepidity did Francis I. display in the battle?

What were the fruits of his victory? How and when did Ferdinand of Spain terminate his career?

Who contributed most with Ferdinand and Isabella to the glory of their reign?

429 What is said of Cardinal Ximenes?

By whom was promoted the complete revival of fine arts and literature?

LUTHER, ETC.

430 How was the peace of Europe again disturbed?

Who was Luther?

What sort of reputation did he acquire?

How was he led to attack first some private abuses, afterwards ever several tenets universally admitted in the Church?

431 What were, in the beginning, the feelings of Luther; when did he break off all the ties of submission to the Roman Pontiff?

What language did he use against the Pope, and against his various opponents? What circumstances chiefly increased the number of his followers?

432 What did Zuinglius and Calvin endeavor to effect?

Whence came the name of *Protestants?*

When did Luther die, and what council condemned his doctrines?

CHARLES V. AND FRANCIS I.

433 By whom was the imperial crown of Germany stimultaneously claimed?

Who thought himself injured, and how were the hostilities commenced between Charles V. and Francis I.?

How did Francis conduct the war?

What imprudence did he commit?

434 How was his army entirely defeated, and he himself taken prisoner?

On what conditions did he recover his liberty?

How was the war renewed, carried on, and terminated?

CHARLES V. AND SOLIMAN II.

435 What motive induced Charles V. to conclude peace with Francis?

What conquests had been lately made by the Turks?

What was the success of Soliman II. in his first expedition against Hungary?

What resistance did the Knights Hospitallers oppose to his attack upon Rhodes?

PAGE

436 By whom were they betrayed?
How did they leave the island of Rhodes, and obtain a new residence?

437 What were the subsequent occupations of Soliman? How did he again defeat the Hungarians, but fail in the siege of Vienna?
When did he reappear, and how was he opposed by the emperor Charles V.?

CONQUEST OF MEXICO.

438 By whom was the empire of Charles vastly increased? What was the spirit of the Spaniards at this period?
Who conceived the idea of establishing colonies in Mexico?

439 What were the forces of Cortez? How did he make himself independent of Velasquez, and inspire his troops with desperate courage?
What happened to the Spaniards in their march towards Mexico?

440 How did they reach the city? How were they received and treated by the emperor?
How did Montezuma become a prisoner of Cortez, and a vassal of Charles V.?
What new obstacles did Cortez find in his way?

441 By what exertions of activity and courage did he conquer Narvaez?
How were hostilities commenced and conducted between the Mexicans and Spaniards?

442 What happened to Cortez in his combats against the Mexicans?
How disastrous was the retreat of the Spaniards from Mexico?

443 What new danger awaited them in the valley of Otumba?
What were the feelings of Cortez at the sight of the enemy, and how did he array his troops for battle?
How was the perilous conflict carried on?

444 What bold idea came to the mind of Cortez, and how did he execute it?
How signal was the victory won by the Spaniards?

445 What reception was given them at Tlascala?
How active was Cortez in preparing a new expedition against Mexico?
In what manner did he distribute his forces for a successful attack upon the city?

446 How did he himself advance with his brigantines across the lake?
What terrible overthrow did he give to the multitude of Indian canoes?

447 By what series of exertions did the siege finally close in the capture of Mexico?
How was the emperor Guatimozin treated by the conquerors?

448 Did not Cortez himself soon experience the vicissitudes of fortune?

PAGE

What variety of exploits were exhibited in his life, and what brilliant qualities appeared in his person?

449 What rank does Cortez hold among the Spanish heroes?

CONQUEST OF PERU.

Who was Francis Pizarro?

450 What were his plans, attempts, and persevering efforts towards the conquest of Peru?

What circumstances favored the views of Pizarro? How was the Peruvian Inca defeated and dealt with by the Spaniards?

451 With what facility was the reduction of Peru completed? What dissensions arose among the conquerors, and what was the end of Pizarro?

By what new disturbances was the death of Pizarro followed?

CHARLES V.—CONTINUED.

452 With what success did Charles V. wage a new war against France?

What were his exploits and his subsequent disasters in Africa?

What was the result of his long struggle with the Protestant states of Germany?

When and to whom did he resign his crowns?

453 Where did he retire, and in what manner did he die?

What contemporary sovereigns had descended before him into the grave? Why did the war continue between France and Spain?

What overthrow did the French experience at St. Quentin?

454 How did the negligence of the conquerors permit France, not only to defend herself, but even to attack with success?

What treaty was concluded between the belligerent powers?

ENGLAND UNDER THE TUDORS.

What had been the situation of England under Henry VIII.?

455 Why did he separate himself and his kingdom from the See of Rome?

Who established the Protestant doctrine in England? By whom was the Catholic worship restored, and by whom discarded again?

456 What was the fate of Mary Stuart, the queen of Scotland?

What losses did the British Navy inflict on the Spaniards?

How was the Spanish Armada completely defeated?

457 How did Philip II. receive the intelligence of the disastrous event?

WAR AGAINST THE TURKS.

How were hostilities renewed between the Christians and the turks? What armament was sent against Malta?

Who was the Grand-Master of St. John, and what plan did he contrive for the defence of the island?

PAGE

458 What was the heroism displayed by the garrison of Fort St. Elme?
What energy of sentiments and courage animated all classes of people?

459 What intrepid magnanimity appeared in the Grand-Master?
What prodigies of valor were performed by both the besiegers and the besieged?

460 What was the perplexity of the Turkish general? How was he finally reduced to abandon the siege and evacuate the island?

461 How moving was the sight of the remaining defenders of Malta?
In what state of desolation was the country? What noble design did La Valette carry into effect?

462 What was the resentment of Soliman II.? Where did he perform his last exploit, and find the end of his life?
What mixture of bad and good qualities ought to be acknowledged in Soliman?

463 Who was his successor? How was the island of Cyprus conquered by the Turks?
What league was formed against them?

464 What victory did the Christians win at sea?
What effect had the battle of Lepanto on both the vanquished and the conquerors?

PHILIP II.

465 When and how was formed the republic of Holland?
What had been the flourishing state of Portugal? What imprudence was committed by king Don Sebastian, and how did his kingdom pass under the sway of Philip of Spain?

466 How vastly extensive was the monarchy of Philip II., and how firm his administration?
What were his views in regard to France, and how did they fail?

467 When did he die, and who was his successor? Who reigned in England after the death of Elizabeth?

468 What peace did Europe then enjoy? What storm was preparing against the house of Austria, and what event averted it for a time?
What grief was occasioned by the tragical death of Henry IV? How respected, even at present, is the memory of that monarch?

THIRTY YEARS' WAR.

When did the 30 years' war begin?

469 What were the chief belligerent powers on each side? Between whom did the first hostilities take place?
Who was Gustavus Adolphus? Why and how did he invade Germany?
What new advantages were gained, and what losses were subsequently sustained by the Swedish army?

PAGE

470 Who was reigning in France? What had been the administration of Cardinal Richelieu, and how was the war now chiefly carried on between France and Austria?

471 What victories were gained by the French?

When and upon what terms was concluded the treaty of Westphalia?

CIVIL WAR IN ENGLAND.

In what ferment was England at the death of James I., and the accession of Charles I.?

472 What was the Scottish government?

How did Charles and his adversaries come to an open rupture?

473 What battles were won and lost by the king? How was he sold by the Scottish army to the English parliament?

What new party had risen in England? Who was Cromwell?

How was Charles I. tried and executed?

474 How did Cromwell prostrate all his opponents?

How did he govern the English Commonwealth?

475 How did he cause it to be respected abroad?

What treaty of alliance was concluded between him and France?

What expeditions took place in consequence of that treaty?

476 How was terminated the war between France and Spain?

Had Cromwell, in his high station, enjoyed a real happiness?

When did he die?

What revolution placed the house of Stuart again upon the throne of England?

477 What was the state of the British colonies in North America?

When and by whom were the most remarkable of these colonies established?

478 What were the distinguishing features of the settlers of Maryland?

What were the settlements of the French in Canada and Louisiana?

REIGN OF LOUIS XIV.

When did King Louis XIV. take the reins of government into his own hands?

479 What was the character of his public administration?

What was, under him, the splendor of arts and sciences, and the multitude of great men of every description?

480 What brilliant ages of antiquity were revived in the age of Louis XIV.?

What services did the king render to religion and humanity?

What was the glory of his arms?

481 How were hostilities renewed against, and fresh advantages obtained over Spain?

What treaty was concluded between the English and the Dutch?

How did Louis XIV. assist the emperor Leopold against the Turks?

PAGE

482 What succors did he also grant to the Venetians? How long lasted the siege of Candia?

What were the losses sustained on each side? With what vigor and success did the Grand Vizier Kiuperli conduct and conclude the siege? What other services did he render to his sovereign?

483 How did Louis XIV. succeed in checking the depredations of the Algerine pirates?

WAR OF HOLLAND, ETC.

How was Holland invaded by the French, and what saved the Dutch from utter ruin?

What league was formed against Louis XIV.?

484 Who was his only ally, and what victories did he gain at sea?

What battles were fought by the prince of Condé?

485 How did Marshal Turenne conduct his expedition against the Germans?

How did he prepare the execution of his further designs?

How did he surprise the different quarters of the confederates and oblige them to recross the Rhine?

486 What glory did he acquire on that occasion?

What was the last campaign of Turenne?

487 What tribute of grief and honor was paid to his memory?

What was done to compensate his loss? Who followed up his plan with success, and what rendered the year 1675 most remarkable?

Who maintained superiority of the French arms, and what treaty terminated the war?

488 What were, even after the conclusion of peace, the vigorous exertions of Louis XIV.?

LEAGUE OF AUGSBURG.

What fresh league was formed against him, and what new revolution took place in England?

How did James II. lose the battle of the Boyne?

489 How was Admiral Tourville first victorious, and shortly after defeated at sea?

What were the conquests and victories of the other French generals?

490 What was the respective strength of the hostile parties?

What induced the allies to conclude peace?

SUCCESSION OF SPAIN.

491 Why was the war soon renewed, and how far did it extend?

492 When did William III. die? What was his character, and who took his place in the command of the allied armies?

How were the French defeated at Hochstadt?

493 What were now the exertions of Louis XIV.?

What reverses did his arms again experience in Spain, Flanders and Italy?

PAGE

494 What was the subsequent vicissitude of events in Spain and Flanders?

495 How did the winter of 1709 increase the misfortunes of France? Who lost the battle of Malplaquet?

What haughtiness did the confederates show to Louis XIV.?

What victories secured the throne of Spain to Philip V.?

496 What induced Great Britain to withdraw from the confederacy against France?

Whom did Louis XIV. send to fight against his remaining enemies?

497 What important victory did Marshal Villars gain over Prince Eugene at Denain? By what treaties was the war terminated?

When and how did Louis XIV. end his long and glorious reign?

DECLINE OF THE TURKS.

498 What was yet the warlike spirit of the Turks? What army was sent to besiege Vienna?

499 How were they compelled to abandon the siege?

How were they again defeated by king Sobiesky, and by the duke of Lorraine?

What new losses did they sustain? Who was their most formidable enemy?

RISE OF PRUSSIA AND RUSSIA.

500 How did Prussia rise almost suddenly to a high rank among European nations?

Who was Peter I.? What were his views and exertions for the civilization of Russia?

501 How did Charles XII. overcome at first all his enemies?

What victory did he gain at Narva? How was he defeated at Pultawa, and what were his subsequent adventures?

502 What improvements did Peter I. make in his empire, and what glory did he secure to himself?

WESTERN EMPIRE, ETC.

Who were then the other leading sovereigns in Europe?

What was the plan of Cardinal Alberoni, and how was it defeated?

503 What political changes took place in Poland?

What were the advantages gained by the French and the Spaniards over the German emperor?

504 What were the conditions of the treaty of Vienna?

What success was also obtained by the Turks?

505 Were they equally successful in their wars against Persia?

What conquests were achieved by Thamas Kouli Kan? What revolutions took place, after his death, in Persia?

WAR OF THE SUCCESSION, ETC.

506 What event threw all Europe again into war?

What sudden changes of fortune happened to the interested parties?

PAGE

507 What might have ended, and what protracted the hostilities?
How were the French defeated by the English at Dettingen?
How were the English defeated by the French at Fontenoy?
508 What vicissitude of good and ill success followed? By what treaty was the contest terminated?
What invasion was attempted upon England, and how did it fail?
509 What were the adventures of the Pretender?
510 How did he make his escape?
What gave rise to the Old French War?
Who were the allies of France and those of England?
To whom were the first chances of the war favorable?
511 By whom and how were the French defeated at Rosbach?
How did they lose Quebec and all Canada?
512 What losses did they experience at sea? What became of their colonies, and how did their last resource fail?
What advantages were secured to England by the treaty of Paris?

AMERICAN REVOLUTION, ETC.

What act was passed by the British parliament concerning America?
513 How was the stamp-act received by the colonies? How was it repealed?
What further events provoked the resentment of the Americans?
What hostile measures were adopted by both parties?
514 What encounter took place near Lexington?
How was the battle of Bunker-Hill fought?
Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces, and how did Washington compel the British to evacuate Boston?
515 What attempt was made on Canada?
Was there yet any hope or desire of reconciliation between the two parties?
516 When and how was the Declaration of Independence drawn up and proclaimed?
What was the prospect of affairs at the time of the declaration of independence?
517 Under what difficulties did Washington labor? What was the energy of his mind and the firmness of Congress?
What succors were obtained from foreign powers, and what nations aided the cause of America?
518 What spirit and resources were displayed by the English nation?
What disastrous events happened shortly after the declaration of independence?
519 What were the exertions and the exploits of Washington?
What attack was made upon Stony Point?

PAGE

520 What was the intrepidity displayed by General Wayne and his troops?
How was the British commander Burgoyne captured with his whole army?
521 What were the losses of the Americans in the southern states?
How did General Greene recover South Carolina?
522 With what success did Lafayette oppose Lord Cornwallis?
What mighty scheme was formed by Washington?
523 How was Cornwallis obliged to surrender?
How were hostilities carried on in other parts of the world?
When was the independence of the United States solemnly and universally acknowledged?
524 In what manner did Washington resign his commission?
What event properly closed the seventh part of Modern History?

PART VIII.—*From the treaty of Versailles, or Paris, to the year* 1887.

FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, ETC.

525 What was deficient in the confederation of the United States?
How was the framing of a federal constitution desired, prepared, and executed?
526 What are the chief points of the Federal Constitution?
How was it opposed and supported?
When did the newly-framed government begin to act? What was the character of Washington's administration, and the public feeling in his regard?
527 What is the chief praise of Washington?

FRENCH REVOLUTION.

What is thought to have been the proximate cause of the French revolution?
528 To this what may be added?
What was its principal, though remote, cause?
By what fatal circumstances was the evil increased?
529 What spirit animated the assembly of 1789?
What persecution was carried on against the clergy?
What tyranny was exercised against the nobles, and against the king himself?
530 What became of Louis XVI., and of his family?
What slaughters and other excesses were committed in France by the leaders of the revolution?
531 What insurrections took place in various parts of the kingdom?
What was the character of the war in La Vendee?
532 What was done by the emigrants? How were they assisted by foreign powers?
What coalition was formed against the French Republic?
What victories were gained, and what conquests achieved by the French?

NAPOLEON, ETC.

PAGE

533 Who was Napoleon Bonaparte? How did he obtain the chief command of the army in Italy?
What were his peculiar tactics and his first exploits?
534 What victories did he gain, and what treaty put an end to his Italian campaign?
What expedition did he undertake into Egypt?
How were Malta and Alexandria subdued?
How was the expedition carried on, and how did it terminate?
535 How was Bonaparte appointed the head of the French government?
What revolutions had taken place in Italy during his absence?
536 What advantage did he obtain over the Austrians at Marengo?
How did General Brune succeed in Holland, and Moreau in Germany? What treaties did France conclude with the Austrian court and the British government?
537 What different acts of a wise, and then of an unjust administration, were performed by Bonaparte? How was the island of San Domingo totally lost to the French?
538 What increase of power, and what new titles and appellations did Napoleon cause to be conferred on himself?
What led to an open rupture between France and England?
What were the designs of Napoleon against Great Britain?
What signal victory was gained at sea by the English?
539 What splendid achievements were performed by Napoleon on the continent?
540 How successful were the French against the Prussians and the Russians?
What were the terms of the treaty of Tilsit?
What was the Confederation of the Rhine? What was the conduct of the English towards the Danes?
How were hostilities revived between Austria and France?
541 What tremendous defeats and losses were again inflicted on Austria?
What was now the extent of Napoleon's power and glory?
542 What injustice did he commit, and what persecution did he exercise against the Pope?
How unfairly did he act towards the Spaniards? How was the Spanish territory invaded by the French and defended by the inhabitants?
543 Who was the general that most contributed to drive the French from Portugal and Spain?
What formidable host did Napoleon lead against Russia? What plan of defence was adopted by the Russians?
544 What losses and disasters did the French army experience?
What league was now formed against Napoleon? How did he oppose it?
What victories did he gain in Saxony, and how was he in the end entirely defeated?
545 When and with what views did the allied sovereigns invade France?
How did they enter Paris, and settle the French government?

PAGE

546 What events immediately followed the conclusion of peace? How did Napoleon return from Elba?
What declaration was issued against him by the European potentates? What were his own exertions and the plans of his campaign?
547 How was the battle of Waterloo fought?
What decisive operations followed the battle of Waterloo?
548 What became of Napoleon? How did he close his life?

SECOND AMERICAN WAR.

What gave rise to the second American war?
549 What were the fruitless attempts of the Americans upon Canada, and how did they recover their losses?
What was their success at sea? Where was the British general Ross victorious, and where was he defeated?
550 What city was now attacked by the English? How did General Jackson provide for the safety of New Orleans?
What battle was fought, and what victory won by the Americans?
551 What was the conclusion of the war?

VIEW OF THE CIVILIZED WORLD.

What was, for a considerable time, the general state of the civilized nations, after the battle of Waterloo?
552 What remarkable exertions were made by Great Britain for different objects?
What important events took place in France?
553 What was the condition of Austria, Russia, Prussia, and Spain?
When did most of the Spanish colonies assert their independence?
In what state of national prosperity were the United States in 1844, and what was their prospect for the future?

ANNEXATION OF TEXAS, ETC.

554 What events occurred towards the middle of the 19th century?
What were the feelings and protests of the Mexicans at the news of the annexation of Texas?
555 How did the Americans prepare for the approaching war? What was the result of the first encounters?
What were the first exploits of General Taylor?
How did he gain the victory of Resaca de la Palma?
556 How did he personally behave in the various engagements?
What, in the meantime, had taken place at Matamoras?
What new steps were taken by the successful Americans?
557 What were the fortifications and means of defence of Monterey?
How was the siege of that city conducted?
What led the two parties to come to an agreement about the capitulation of Monterey?

PAGE.

By what series of new advantages was the surrender of Monterey followed?

558 How, and by whom, had the conquest of California been achieved?

What was now the respective situation of the Americans and Mexicans?

How was the battle of Buena Vista conducted?

559 How sad was the result of the battle for the Mexicans, and how advantageous to the Americans?

560 Who was now appointed commander-in-chief by the American government?

With what success did General Scott attack the city of Vera Cruz?

What obstacle did he meet in his advance against Mexico?

561 How were the heights of Cerro Gordo carried by the Americans?

What were the results of their victory?

What cities were successively occupied by them?

562 What was the rapidity of their conquests?

What reason induced General Scott to stay for a time in Puebla?

563 By what means and what series of new efforts was Mexico at length taken?

What treaty put an end to the Mexican war?

What losses and what acquisitions accrued from this war to the Americans?

What battles were fought in his farther advance towards Mexico?

564 What took place in the newly acquired possessions?

What was the reward of Generals Taylor and Scott?

DISTURBANCES IN EUROPE.

What was towards 1848 the political situation of Europe?

565 When and how was the government of king Louis Philippe overthrown?

What new form of government was adopted in France?

What were the further views of the socialists?

566 What awful insurrection broke out in Paris?

Who was elected President of the French Republic?

What were, at the same time, the disturbances of the Austrian empire?

567 How was the insurrection in Hungary quelled?

What vicissitudes of events occurred in northern Italy?

Under what circumstances were hostilities renewed between the Austrians and Sardinians?

568 By what masterly movement did Marshal Radetski defeat king Charles Albert?

How were the Sardinians again defeated near Novara?

What glory did Radetski acquire in this campaign?

What treaty was concluded between the two states?

569 With what vigor and success were the insurrections in southern Italy suppressed?

PAGE

What was the peculiar situation of Rome and of Pope Pius IX.?
What acts of vigor did the Pope in his exile?
570 How was an end put to the Roman revolution?
What act of policy did the President of the French Republic resort to in 1851?
What was the result of it?

CRIMEAN WAR.

571 What war broke out in the year 1853?
What powers espoused the cause of the Turkish sultan?
To what strong city did the allies resolve to lay siege?
What victory opened the way to Sebastopol?
What difficulties were met with by the besiegers?
572 What was the conduct of the Russian commander after the storming of the Malakoff tower?
What led to the treaty of Paris?
To what conditions did Russia submit?
Will Russia ever be able to act again against Turkey?

WAR AND REVOLUTIONS IN ITALY.

573 Was the influence of Austria great in Italy before the year 1849?
What project did Victor Emmanuel conceive with regard to Italy?
What were his means of success?
What prince came to his succor, as soon as his dominions had been invaded by the Austrians?
What two defeats were inflicted upon the Austrians?
574 Describe the battle of Solferino?
What reasons induced the victorious powers to come to a speedy arrangement with their enemy?
What was the principal clause of the two treaties of Villafranca and Zurich?
What did France receive afterwards from the King of Piedmont?
When did the revolutionary movements begin in Italy?
To what causes should they be chiefly ascribed?
575 What provinces did Victor Emmanuel unite to his kingdom in March, 1860?
What was then the conduct of the Pope?
What general undertook to form an army for the Pope?
What was the fate of the pontifical volunteers; of Ancona; the Marches and Umbria?
Who caused the revolution to triumph, first in Sicily, and then in the continental possessions of Francis II.?
576 Who came to the succor of Garibaldi, when he was in the Kingdom of Naples?
Who captured Gaeta?
What event happened soon after the surrender of that city?
What is the present capital of the Kingdom of Italy?

PAGE

What means did Victor Emmanuel employ to gain possession of the provinces of Venetia and Rome?
Describe his reverses and final success.
What is the present condition of the Pope?

EUROPEAN EXPEDITIONS TO CHINA, COCHIN-CHINA AND MEXICO.

577 What powers undertook an expedition against China in 1857?
What was the result of it?
What city did they capture in a second expedition, and what new advantages did they obtain?
What powers undertook an expedition againt the emperor of Annam in 1858?
578 What were the first results of it?
When and by whom was it resumed afterwards?
By what treaty was it terminated?
With whom was Spain at war in 1860?
Say what had taken place in Mexico after the war with the United States?
Who was then raised to the Presidency in 1861?
What was the conduct of Juarez with regard to the church and to the European governments?
Which, among the latter, resolved to act against him?
579 What were the intentious of Napoleon III. with regard to Mexico?
What was the success of his troops in that country?
What was the resolution of the Assembly of Notables, convened in the city of Mexico, in 1863?
What prince did they choose for emperor?
When did Maximilian arrive at Mexico, and what were then his hopes of success?
Have these hopes been realized?
Why not?
What was the fate of Maximilian?

CIVIL WAR IN THE UNITED STATES.

What was the cause of the civil war in the United States?
580 When had political agitation with regard to slavery begun?
When did the pro-slavery party resolve actually to secede from the Union?
Mention the thirteen seceding States?
Whom did they choose for the President of the Confederacy?
When and how was the signal of war given?
What feelings arose in the North upon hearing of the attack of Fort Sumter, and what measure was immediately taken by President Lincoln?
What battle was fought on the 21st of July, 1861?
Say what immense preparations for war the Northerners were thereby induced to make, and also what preparations were made by the Southerners?
581 What is said of the capture of Fort Donelson?

PAGE

582 What happened at Pittsburg Landing?
What did the country learn a few days after that bloody battle?
Why did General McClellan land his army at Fortress Monroe?
What first obstacle did he meet with on his route?
What induced him to change his base of operations?
With what circumstances was this movement accompanied?
583 Why did the Confederates conceive the project of invading the Federal territory?
What two great battles were fought during this invasion?
Describe the battles of Fredericksburg.
584 Of Chancellorsville; of Gettysburg.
Was the navigation of the Mississippi river entirely opened before the month of July, 1863?
Did the capture of Vicksburg prove an easy task?
585 By the fall of what stronghold was the surrender of Vicksburg followed?
What double consequence resulted from the capture of these two places?
With what means were the South and the North respectively to continue the war?
By what armies were the two main campaigns of 1864 to be made, and to what end?
What was the plan which General Grant intended to execute in Virginia?
586 What city did he succeed closely to invest with his army in June?
What events were at the same time going on in Georgia?
What two cities were captured by General Sherman's army in Georgia?
What was done afterwards by the same army?
What great events occurred on the 3d and 9th of April?
587 What crime was committed a few days after?
Indicate both the result of the war and the acquisition lately made by the United States.
When and from whom was Alaska purchased?
When was General Grant inaugurated as president?
What events of note occurred during his administration?
588 Who were the successors of Grant?
Mention the principal occurrences of their respective administrations?

WAR IN SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN; IN ITALY AND GERMANY.

How did the Dano-German war arise?
What powers declared against Denmark?
Indicate the conditions of the treaty of Vienna.
589 What was the subsequent conduct of Prussia with regard to Schleswig and Holstein?
What resolution did she take against Austria and with whom did she make alliance?

PAGE

What two battles were fought in Italy?
What German provinces were overrun by the Prussians?
What signal victory did they win over the Austrians?
590 Enumerate the conditions of the treaty of Prague.
Mention the countries annexed by Prussia.
What is the actual condition of Austria?

IMPORTANT EVENTS IN EUROPE BETWEEN 1866–1870.

591 What do you know of the North German "Bund?"
What changes took place in Austria?
What is the Luxemburg question?
What events transpired in Spain about this time?
592 When was the Suez canal opened?
What important dogma was adopted by the Vatican Council?
By what troubles was France now convulsed?

THE FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR.

What was the immediate cause of the war between France and Prussia?
593 What was the disposition made of the troops by the contending powers?
What successes were achieved by the Germans?
Describe the battle of Sedan.
594 What were the results of the battle of Sedan?
What were the circumstances of the siege of Paris?
When and where did the restoration of the German Empire take place?
595 What were the provisions of the Peace of Frankfort?
What excesses were committed by the French communists, and by whom was order restored?
Who was elected President in August, 1871? Who was his successor?
596 Under whose leadership was the Church persecuted?
When were the Religious teaching orders proscribed?
597 Who was re-elected President in 1886?
By whom was he succeeded?
When was the Panama Canal projected?
What famous Encyclical was issued at this time?
598 When was President Sadi-Carnot assassinated?
Who were his successors?
When was Madagascar invaded?
In what other directions did France expand?
599 When did President Faure die and who succeeded him?
Give the particulars of the Dreyfus case?
600 What was the result of the act of the Assumptionist Fathers?
What did the Republican leaders aim at?

PAGE

ENGLAND UNTIL 1902.

601 When did the Sepoy rebellion occur?
When and where was Prince Napoleon killed?
602 What political changes took place since the Liberal victory of 1868?
Under what leader was the Irish Home Rule party organized?
Who were his successors?
What was the result of the organization of the Land League?
603 What was the result of the general election?
What effect had the Irish local Government bill?
When was the Suez Canal completed?
604 When was a revolt instituted by Arabi Pasha?
Where was General Gordon killed?
605 What caused the war in South Africa?
606 Who was asked to take command of the English army?
607 When was the Capital occupied by the British?
When did Queen Victoria die and who was her successor?
608 What was the result of Poland's rebellion against Russia?
609 On what pretext did Russia declare war against Turkey?
610 What victories did Russia gain?
611 What led to and what were the provisions of the treaty of San Stefano?
When did the Congress of Berlin meet, and what were its results?
612 When was Czar Alexander II. assassinated?
What happened under the reign of his successor?
613 What outrages were committed by the Turks in 1895?
What did the Powers compel Turkey to do in 1898?
When was the Peace Congress called?

OTHER EUROPEAN COUNTRIES SINCE 1870.

613 When were the Religious Orders suppressed in Prussia?
614 What was the result of Bismarck's treaties with Russia and Austria?
When did William I. die and who was his successor?
How long did Frederick I. reign and who succeeded him?
What was the result of the military operations of Italy?
615 What happened in Spain after the abdication of Amadeus I.?
Who is the present ruler of Spain?
616 What caused the war between Japan and China?
What was its result?
617 When did the anti-foreign persecution in China break out?
What European nation made the first settlement in Australia?
618 What was one of the causes of the American revolution?
What Provinces formed the Dominion of Canada?
619 What was the result of the Mexican war?
Why did France withdraw her aid from the Grand Duke Maximilian of Austria?
What was the condition of Central America at this time?
620 When did the Spaniards evacuate Peru?
What was the outcome of the war between Chili and Peru?

PAGE

621 What is the history of the revolution of Argentina?
622 When was the abolition of slavery in Brazil completed?
623 Who became governor of Hayti in 1795?

THE UNITED STATES SINCE 1876.

623 When were specie payments resumed?
624 Who became President after the death of James A. Garfield?
Under whose administration was the Presidential succession act passed?
625 What States were admitted into the Union in 1889-1890?
When was the Sherman Act passed?
626 When was the Wilson Tariff bill passed?
What country appealed to the United States for aid in 1895?
When did England begin to recede from her position and with what result?
627 In what year was the Columbian World's Fair held?
What was its principal feature?
What was the principal feature of the Presidential Campaign of 1896?
When was the Republic of Cuba recognized?
628 Describe the "Maine" incident and its result?
629 Where was the Spanish fleet destroyed?
What important military operations took place during the Spanish-American War?
630 When was the leader of the Filipino insurrection captured?
In what condition was the United States in 1900?
Give an account of the assassination of President McKinley, and who was his successor?